

---

# **TASKalfa 3212i**

# **TASKalfa 4012i**

## **SERVICE MANUAL**

Published in March 2018  
Rev.2

---

**CAUTION**

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

It may be illegal to dispose of this battery into the municipal waste stream. Check with your local solid waste officials for details in your area for proper disposal.

**ATTENTION**

IL Y A UN RISQUE D'EXPLOSION SI LA BATTERIE EST REMPLACÉE PAR UN MODÈLE DE TYPE INCORRECT. METTRE AU REBUT LES BATTERIES UTILISÉES SELON LES INSTRUCTIONS DONNÉES.

Il peut être illégal de jeter les batteries dans des eaux d'égout municipales. Vérifiez avec les fonctionnaires municipaux de votre région pour les détails concernant des déchets solides et une mise au rebut appropriée.

**Notation of products in the manual**

For the purpose of this service manual, products are identified by print speed at A4 and black and white modes.

TASKalfa 3212i : 32 ppm model

TASKalfa 4012i : 40 ppm model

## Revision history

| Revision | Date            | Pages  | Revised contents                                 |
|----------|-----------------|--|--|
| 1        | 06/january/2018 | <a href="#">page 2-48</a>                                | Change: Contents of country code list            |
|          |                 | <a href="#">page 4-3</a>                                 | Correction: 302MV9406_ → 302V69411_              |
|          |                 | <a href="#">page 6-141</a><br><a href="#">page 6-142</a> | Correction: Face-up → Face-down                  |
|          |                 | <a href="#">page 6-159</a>                               | Change: Contents of country code list            |
| 2        | 22/March/2018   | <a href="#">page 4-3</a>                                 | Change: Parts No of primary paper feed unit      |
|          |                 | <a href="#">page 5-3</a>                                 | Correction: USB folder structure                 |
|          |                 | <a href="#">page 6-130</a>                               | Correction: Description of setting of auto sleep |
|          |                 | <a href="#">page 6-4</a><br><a href="#">page 6-135</a>   | Correction: Delete the word "Duplex"             |



---

# Safety precautions

---

This booklet provides safety warnings and precautions for our service personnel to ensure the safety of their customers, their machines as well as themselves during maintenance activities. Service personnel are advised to read this booklet carefully to familiarize themselves with the warnings and precautions described here before engaging in maintenance activities.

## Safety warnings and precautions

Various symbols are used to protect our service personnel and customers from physical danger and to prevent damage to their property. These symbols are described below:

**⚠ DANGER:** High risk of serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

**⚠ WARNING:** Serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

**⚠ CAUTION:** Bodily injury or damage to property may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

### Symbols

The triangle ( $\triangle$ ) symbol indicates a warning including danger and caution. The specific point of attention is shown inside the symbol.



General warning.



Warning of risk of electric shock.



Warning of high temperature.

⊘ indicates a prohibited action. The specific prohibition is shown inside the symbol.



General prohibited action.



Disassembly prohibited.

● indicates that action is required. The specific action required is shown inside the symbol.



General action required.





Remove the power plug from the wall outlet.











Always ground the copier.

# 1. Installation Precautions

## WARNING











- Do not use a power supply with a voltage other than that specified. Avoid multiple connections to one outlet: they may cause fire or electric shock. When using an extension cable, always check that it is adequate for the rated current. .... 
- Connect the ground wire to a suitable grounding point. Not grounding the copier may cause fire or electric shock. Connecting the earth wire to an object not approved for the purpose may cause explosion or electric shock. Never connect the ground cable to any of the following: gas pipes, lightning rods, ground cables for telephone lines and water pipes or faucets not approved by the proper authorities. .... 

## CAUTION:





- Do not place the copier on an infirm or angled surface: the copier may tip over, causing injury. .... 
- Do not install the copier in a humid or dusty place. This may cause fire or electric shock. .... 
- Do not install the copier near a radiator, heater, other heat source or near flammable material. This may cause fire. .... 
- Allow sufficient space around the copier to allow the ventilation grills to keep the machine as cool as possible. Insufficient ventilation may cause heat buildup and poor copying performance. .... 
- Always handle the machine by the correct locations when moving it. .... 
- Always use anti-toppling and locking devices on copiers so equipped. Failure to do this may cause the copier to move unexpectedly or topple, leading to injury. .... 
- Avoid inhaling toner or developer excessively. Protect the eyes. If toner or developer is accidentally ingested, drink a lot of water to dilute it in the stomach and obtain medical attention immediately. If it gets into the eyes, rinse immediately with copious amounts of water and obtain medical attention. .... 
- Advise customers that they must always follow the safety warnings and precautions in the copier's instruction handbook. .... 












## 2. Precautions for Maintenance

### WARNING

- Always remove the power plug from the wall outlet before starting machine disassembly. .... 
- Always follow the procedures for maintenance described in the service manual and other related brochures. .... 
- Under no circumstances attempt to bypass or disable safety features including safety mechanisms and protective circuits. .... 
- Always use parts having the correct specifications. .... 
- Always use the thermostat or thermal fuse specified in the service manual or other related brochure when replacing them. Using a piece of wire, for example, could lead to fire or other serious accident. .... 
- When the service manual or other serious brochure specifies a distance or gap for installation of a part, always use the correct scale and measure carefully. .... 
- Always check that the copier is correctly connected to an outlet with a ground connection. .... 
- Check that the power cable covering is free of damage. Check that the power plug is dust-free. If it is dirty, clean it to remove the risk of fire or electric shock. .... 
- Never attempt to disassemble the optical unit in machines using lasers. Leaking laser light may damage eyesight. .... 
- Handle the charger sections with care. They are charged to high potentials and may cause electric shock if handled improperly. .... 


### CAUTION

- Wear safe clothing. If wearing loose clothing or accessories such as ties, make sure they are safely secured so they will not be caught in rotating sections. .... 
- Use utmost caution when working on a powered machine. Keep away from chains and belts. .... 
- Handle the fixing section with care to avoid burns as it can be extremely hot. .... 
- Check that the fixing unit thermistor, heat and press rollers are clean. Dirt on them can cause abnormally high temperatures. .... 

- Do not remove the ozone filter, if any, from the copier except for routine replacement. .... 
- Do not pull on the AC power cord or connector wires on high-voltage components when removing them; always hold the plug itself. .... 
- Do not route the power cable where it may be stood on or trapped. If necessary, protect it with a cable cover or other appropriate item. .... 
- Treat the ends of the wire carefully when installing a new charger wire to avoid electric leaks. .... 
- Remove toner completely from electronic components. .... 
- Run wire harnesses carefully so that wires will not be trapped or damaged. .... 
- After maintenance, always check that all the parts, screws, connectors and wires that were removed, have been refitted correctly. Special attention should be paid to any forgotten connector, trapped wire and missing screws. .... 
- Check that all the caution labels that should be present on the machine according to the instruction handbook are clean and not peeling. Replace with new ones if necessary. .... 
- Handle greases and solvents with care by following the instructions below: .... 
  - Use only a small amount of solvent at a time, being careful not to spill. Wipe spills off completely.
  - Ventilate the room well while using grease or solvents.
  - Allow applied solvents to evaporate completely before refitting the covers or turning the power switch on.
  - Always wash hands afterwards.
- Never dispose of toner or toner bottles in fire. Toner may cause sparks when exposed directly to fire in a furnace, etc. .... 
- Should smoke be seen coming from the copier, remove the power plug from the wall outlet immediately. .... 

### 3. Miscellaneous

 **WARNING**

- Never attempt to heat the drum or expose it to any organic solvents such as alcohol, other than the specified refiner; it may generate toxic gas. .... 



- Keep the machine away from flammable liquids, gases, and aerosols. A fire or an electric shock might occur. ....



# CONTENTS

|          |   |            |
|----------|---|------------|
| <b>1</b> | <b>Specifications .....</b>   | <b>1-1</b> |
| 1 - 1    | Specifications.....   | 1-1        |
| (1)      | Common functions.....   | 1-1        |
| (2)      | Copy Functions.....   | 1-2        |
| (3)      | Printer Functions.....  | 1-3        |
| (4)      | Scanner Functions.....  | 1-3        |
| (5)      | Option .....  | 1-4        |
|          | (5-1)Document Processor .....                                       | 1-4        |
|          | (5-2)Paper Feeder (500-sheet × 2) .....                             | 1-4        |
|          | (5-3)Large Capacity Feeder (1,500-sheet × 2) .....                  | 1-4        |
|          | (5-4)1,000-Sheet Finisher .....                                     | 1-5        |
|          | (5-5)3,000-Sheet Finisher .....                                     | 1-5        |
|          | (5-6)Punch Unit (For 1,000-Sheet/3,000-Sheet Finisher option) ..... | 1-6        |
|          | (5-7)Mailbox (3,000-Sheet Finisher option) .....                    | 1-6        |
|          | (5-8)FAX System (FAX System 12) .....                               | 1-7        |
| 1 - 2    | Part Names.....   | 1-9        |
| (1)      | The main unit (Front side).....                                     | 1-9        |
| (2)      | The main unit (Rear side) .....                                     | 1-11       |
| (3)      | Operation Panel.....  | 1-12       |
| 1 - 3    | Optional configuration.....   | 1-13       |
| <b>2</b> | <b>Installation .....</b>   | <b>2-1</b> |
| 2 - 1    | Environment.....  | 2-1        |
| 2 - 2    | Unpacking and setting of the machine.....                           | 2-2        |
| (1)      | Default setting of the copy mode. ....                              | 2-12       |
| (2)      | Optional unit installation.....                                     | 2-13       |
| 2 - 3    | Installing the optional partst.....                                 | 2-14       |
| (1)      | SD/SDHC memory card.....  | 2-14       |
| (2)      | Hard Disk (HD-12): Except 120 V in 32 ppm model .....               | 2-15       |
| (3)      | Installation of attaching Gigabit Ethernet extension kit.....       | 2-18       |
| (4)      | Wireless LAN interface installation .....                           | 2-18       |
| (5)      | Wireless LAN interface (IB-35) : Except 120 V model .....           | 2-20       |
| (6)      | Document table (DT-730(B)) .....                                    | 2-22       |
| (7)      | Numeric Keypad (NK-7100 / NK-7110) .....                            | 2-25       |
| (8)      | USB keyboard (Except 100V model) .....                              | 2-28       |
| (9)      | card reader installation .....                                      | 2-33       |
| (10)     | Handset attaching.....  | 2-36       |
|          | (10-1)When attaching the main unit directly .....                   | 2-36       |
|          | (10-2)In case installing the document table .....                   | 2-40       |
| 2 - 4    | About Optional Applications.....                                    | 2-47       |
| 2 - 5    | Initializing procedures after installing the FAX system .....       | 2-48       |
| <b>3</b> | <b>Machine Design .....</b>   | <b>3-1</b> |
| 3 - 1    | Mechanical Configuration .....                                      | 3-1        |
| (1)      | Cross-section view.....   | 3-1        |
| 3 - 2    | Electrical parts layout.....  | 3-2        |
| (1)      | PWBs.....   | 3-2        |
| (2)      | Switches and sensors.....   | 3-5        |
| (3)      | Motors.....   | 3-7        |
| (4)      | Others .....  | 3-9        |

|        |                                    |      |
|--------|------------------------------------|------|
| 3 - 3  | Paper feed/conveying section ..... | 3-11 |
| (1)    | Cassette paper feed section .....  | 3-11 |
| (2)    | MP tray paper feed section .....   | 3-13 |
| (3)    | Conveying section .....            | 3-14 |
| 3 - 4  | Drum section .....                 | 3-15 |
| 3 - 5  | Developing section .....           | 3-17 |
| 3 - 6  | Optical section .....              | 3-19 |
| (1)    | Image scanner section .....        | 3-19 |
| (2)    | Laser scanner section .....        | 3-21 |
| 3 - 7  | Transfer/Separation section .....  | 3-22 |
| 3 - 8  | Fuser section .....                | 3-23 |
| 3 - 9  | Eject/Feedshift section .....      | 3-25 |
| 3 - 10 | Duplex conveying section .....     | 3-27 |

## **4 Maintenance ..... 4-1**

|       |  |      |
|-------|--|------|
| 4 - 1 | Precautions for the maintenance .....  | 4-1  |
| (1)   | Precautions .....  | 4-1  |
| (2)   | Storage and handling of the drum .....                                       | 4-1  |
| (3)   | Storage of the toner container .....   | 4-1  |
| (4)   | How to tell a genuine Kyocera toner container .....                          | 4-2  |
| 4 - 2 | Maintenance parts .....  | 4-3  |
| (1)   | List of maintenance parts .....  | 4-3  |
| (2)   | Maintenance kits .....   | 4-4  |
| 4 - 3 | Periodic maintenance procedures .....  | 4-5  |
| 4 - 4 | Maintenance parts replacement procedures .....                               | 4-7  |
| (1)   | Paper feed section .....   | 4-7  |
| (1-1) | Detaching and attaching the primary paper feed unit .....                    | 4-7  |
| (1-2) | Detaching and attaching the MP paper feed roller and MP separation pad ..... | 4-9  |
| (1-3) | Detaching and attaching the registration cleaner .....                       | 4-11 |
| (2)   | Developer section .....  | 4-14 |
| (2-1) | Detaching and reattaching the developer unit .....                           | 4-14 |
| (3)   | Drum section .....   | 4-17 |
| (3-1) | Detaching and reattaching the drum unit .....                                | 4-17 |
| (3-2) | Detaching and attaching the charger roller unit .....                        | 4-20 |
| (4)   | Transfer/Separation section .....  | 4-21 |
| (4-1) | Detaching and attaching the transfer roller unit .....                       | 4-21 |
| (5)   | Fuser section .....  | 4-22 |
| (5-1) | Detaching and attaching the fuser unit .....                                 | 4-22 |
| 4 - 5 | Disassembly and Reassembly procedures .....                                  | 4-23 |
| (1)   | Outer covers .....   | 4-23 |
| (1-1) | Detaching and attaching the front cover .....                                | 4-23 |
| (1-2) | Detaching and attaching the rear upper cover .....                           | 4-25 |
| (1-3) | Detaching and attaching the rear lower cover .....                           | 4-26 |
| (1-4) | Detaching and attaching the inner tray .....                                 | 4-27 |
| (1-5) | Detaching and attaching the front upper cover .....                          | 4-30 |
| (1-6) | Detaching and attaching the exit rear cover .....                            | 4-31 |
| (1-7) | Detaching and refitting the exit rear cover .....                            | 4-32 |
| (2)   | Drive section .....  | 4-33 |
| (2-1) | Detaching and attaching the drive unit 1 .....                               | 4-33 |
| (2-2) | Detaching and attaching the drive unit 2 .....                               | 4-35 |
| (2-3) | Detaching and attaching the fuser press release motor assy .....             | 4-37 |
| (3)   | Optical section .....  | 4-38 |
| (3-1) | Detaching and attaching the Laser Scanner Unit (LSU) .....                   | 4-38 |
| (3-2) | Detaching and attaching the lens unit .....                                  | 4-42 |
| (3-3) | Detaching and attaching the lamp unit .....                                  | 4-45 |
| (4)   | Detaching and reattaching the scanner wires .....                            | 4-48 |
| (4-1) | Detaching the scanner wires .....  | 4-48 |
| (4-2) | Fitting the scanner wires .....  | 4-59 |
| (5)   | PWBs .....   | 4-63 |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| (5-1)Detaching and reattaching the main PWB .....  | 4-63       |
| (5-2)Detaching and reattaching the engine PWB .....  | 4-68       |
| (5-3)Detaching and reattaching the low voltage power source PWB .....  | 4-73       |
| (5-4)Detaching and reattaching the high voltage PWB .....  | 4-75       |
| (5-5)Detaching and reattaching the operation panel PWB 1 .....   | 4-79       |
| (6) Others .....   | 4-86       |
| (6-1)Detaching and reattaching the SSD .....   | 4-86       |
| (6-2)Detaching and attaching the MP tray .....   | 4-89       |
| (6-3)Detaching and reattaching the conveying unit .....  | 4-91       |
| (6-4)Detaching and reattaching the conveying fan motor. ....   | 4-94       |
| (6-5)Detaching and attaching the LSU fan motor .....   | 4-96       |
| (6-6)Detaching and attaching the developer fan motor .....   | 4-99       |
| (6-7)Detaching and attaching the power souce fan motor .....   | 4-100      |
| (7) Direction of installing the principal fan motors .....   | 4-101      |
| <br>   |            |
| <b>5 Firmware .....</b>  | <b>5-1</b> |
| 5 - 1 Firmware update .....  | 5-1        |
| <br>   |            |
| <b>6 Maintenance mode .....</b>  | <b>6-1</b> |
| 6 - 1 Maintenance mode .....   | 6-1        |
| (1) Executing the maintenance mode .....   | 6-1        |
| (2) Maintenance modes list .....   | 6-2        |
| (3) Content of each maintenance mode .....   | 6-6        |
| <br>   |            |
| <b>7 Troubleshooting .....</b>   | <b>7-1</b> |
| 7 - 1 Image formation problems .....   | 7-1        |
| (1) Isolate the place of image failure .....   | 7-1        |
| (2) Scanner Factors (When scanning the front side through DP,<br>or scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP) ..... | 7-2        |
| (2-1)Abnormal image .....  | 7-4        |
| (2-2)Colored background .....  | 7-4        |
| (2-3)Black or color spots .....  | 7-5        |
| (2-4)Horizontal black streaks .....  | 7-5        |
| (2-5)Vertical streaks, band (black or color) .....   | 7-6        |
| (2-6)Vertical streaks, band (white) .....  | 7-7        |
| (2-7)Missing entire image (White / Black) .....  | 7-7        |
| (2-8)Blurred image .....   | 7-7        |
| (2-9)Image is missing partly .....   | 7-8        |
| (2-10)Entire image is light .....  | 7-8        |
| (2-11)Mismatch between the original center line and output image center line (1st side) .....  | 7-9        |
| (2-12)Mismatch between the original center line and output image center line (2nd side) .....  | 7-9        |
| (2-13)Regular mismatch of the leading edge between the original and output image (1st side) .....                                      | 7-10       |
| (2-14)Regular mismatch of the leading edge between the original and output image (2nd side) .....                                      | 7-10       |
| (2-15)Skewed image .....   | 7-10       |
| (2-16)Blurred characters .....   | 7-11       |
| (2-17)Color shift .....  | 7-12       |
| (2-18)Moiré .....  | 7-12       |
| (2-19)Image is dark partly or light .....  | 7-13       |
| (3) Scanner Factors (When scanning the back side through DP) .....   | 7-14       |
| (3-1)Abnormal image .....  | 7-16       |
| (3-2)Colored background .....  | 7-16       |
| (3-3)Black or color spots .....  | 7-17       |
| (3-4)Horizontal black streaks .....  | 7-17       |
| (3-5)Vertical streaks, band (black or color) .....   | 7-18       |
| (3-6)Vertical streaks, band (white) .....  | 7-18       |
| (3-7)Missing entire image (White / Black) .....  | 7-19       |
| (3-8)Blurred image .....   | 7-19       |

|     |  |      |
|-----|--|------|
|     | (3-9)Image is missing partly .....   | 7-20 |
|     | (3-10)Entire image is light .....  | 7-20 |
|     | (3-11)Mismatch between the original center line and output image center line .....   | 7-21 |
|     | (3-12)Regular mismatch of the leading edge between the original and output image .....   | 7-21 |
|     | (3-13)Skewed image .....   | 7-21 |
|     | (3-14)Color shift .....  | 7-22 |
|     | (3-15)Moiré .....  | 7-22 |
|     | (3-16)Image is dark partly or light .....  | 7-22 |
| (4) | Scanner Factors (when scanning on the contact glass) .....   | 7-24 |
|     | (4-1)Abnormal image .....  | 7-26 |
|     | (4-2)Colored background .....  | 7-26 |
|     | (4-3)Black dots .....  | 7-26 |
|     | (4-4)Horizontal black streaks .....  | 7-27 |
|     | (4-5)Vertical streaks, band (black or color) .....   | 7-27 |
|     | (4-6)Vertical streaks, band (white) .....  | 7-28 |
|     | (4-7)No image comes out (White or Black) .....   | 7-28 |
|     | (4-8)Blurred image .....   | 7-28 |
|     | (4-9)Image is missing partly .....   | 7-29 |
|     | (4-10)Entire image is light .....  | 7-29 |
|     | (4-11)Center of the original and output image is inconsistent .....  | 7-30 |
|     | (4-12)Regular mismatch of the leading edge between the original and output image .....   | 7-30 |
|     | (4-13)Skewed image .....   | 7-30 |
|     | (4-14)Blurred characters .....   | 7-31 |
|     | (4-15)Moiré .....  | 7-31 |
|     | (4-16)Image is dark partly or light .....  | 7-31 |
| (5) | Engine Factors (Paper conveying cause: Transfer, Fuser and Separation) .....   | 7-33 |
|     | (5-1)Black dots (toner dirt) .....   | 7-34 |
|     | (5-2)Horizontal streaks, band (White, black) .....   | 7-35 |
|     | (5-3)Vertical streaks or bands .....   | 7-35 |
|     | (5-4)Blank image .....   | 7-36 |
|     | (5-5)Blurred image .....   | 7-36 |
|     | (5-6)Image is missing partly (blank image, white spots) .....  | 7-36 |
|     | (5-7)Entire image is light .....   | 7-36 |
|     | (5-8)Center of the original and output image is inconsistent .....   | 7-37 |
|     | (5-9)Irregular mismatch of the leading edge between the original and output image<br>(paper leading edge timing variation) ..... | 7-37 |
|     | (5-10)Paper skew at the trailing edge .....  | 7-37 |
|     | (5-11)Blurred characters .....   | 7-38 |
|     | (5-12)Offset .....   | 7-38 |
|     | (5-13)Uneven transfer .....  | 7-39 |
|     | (5-14)Dirty reverse side .....   | 7-39 |
|     | (5-15)Fusing failure .....   | 7-39 |
|     | (5-16)Trailing image .....   | 7-40 |
| (6) | Engine Factors (Image forming cause) .....   | 7-41 |
|     | (6-1)Background image is foggy. ....   | 7-43 |
|     | (6-2)Background image is foggy. ....   | 7-43 |
|     | (6-3)Background image is foggy. ....   | 7-44 |
|     | (6-4)No image comes out (Black) .....  | 7-44 |
|     | (6-5)Blank image .....   | 7-44 |
|     | (6-6)Image is missing partly .....   | 7-45 |
|     | (6-7)Blurred image .....   | 7-45 |
|     | (6-8)Entire image is light .....   | 7-45 |
|     | (6-9)Entire image is light .....   | 7-46 |
|     | (6-10)Entire image is light .....  | 7-46 |
|     | (6-11)Periodic toner dirt .....  | 7-46 |
|     | (6-12)Horizontal streaks, band (White, black) .....  | 7-47 |
|     | (6-13)Vertical streaks and bands (black) .....   | 7-47 |
|     | (6-14)Vertical streaks, band (white) .....   | 7-47 |
|     | (6-15)Horizontal uneven density .....  | 7-48 |
|     | (6-16)Vertical uneven density .....  | 7-48 |

|       |  |       |
|-------|--|-------|
|       | (6-17)Offset .....   | 7-48  |
|       | (6-18)Gradation reproducibility is low .....   | 7-49  |
|       | (6-19)Trailing image .....   | 7-49  |
| 7 - 2 | Feeding/Conveying Failures .....   | 7-50  |
| (1)   | Prior standard check items .....   | 7-50  |
|       | (1-1)Paper jam due to the cover-open detection .....   | 7-50  |
|       | (1-2)Paper jam from paper factor .....   | 7-50  |
|       | (1-3)Paper jam due to the dog-ear, paper skew, paper creases, fusing failure or the paper curl .....   | 7-51  |
|       | (1-4)Paper jam due to the guide .....  | 7-51  |
|       | (1-5)Paper jam caused by improperly loaded paper in the cassette .....   | 7-51  |
|       | (1-6)Paper jam due to the inferior paper .....   | 7-51  |
|       | (1-7)Paper jam from the factor of conveying roller, motor or clutch .....  | 7-52  |
|       | (1-8)Paper jam due to the sensor .....   | 7-52  |
|       | (1-9)Paper jam due to the setting / detection failure .....  | 7-52  |
|       | (1-10)Paper jam due to the static electricity .....  | 7-53  |
|       | (1-11)Paper jam caused by the installation environment<br>(Papers inside the cassette are always damp.) .....  | 7-53  |
| (2)   | Paper misfeed detection .....  | 7-54  |
|       | (2-1)Paper misfeed indication .....  | 7-54  |
| (3)   | Paper misfeed detection component .....  | 7-55  |
| 7 - 3 | Self Diagnostic .....  | 7-64  |
| (1)   | Self diagnostic error codes .....  | 7-64  |
|       | (1-1)Error codes list .....  | 7-64  |
|       | (1-2)Content of Self Diagnostic .....  | 7-67  |
| (2)   | System Error (Fxxxx) Outline .....   | 7-123 |
|       | (2-1)System Error code list .....  | 7-123 |
|       | (2-2)Content of System Error (Fxxxx) Outline .....   | 7-123 |
|       | (2-3)System Error (Fxxxx) Outline .....  | 7-127 |
| 7 - 4 | FAX Related Errors .....   | 7-135 |
| (1)   | FAX .....  | 7-135 |
|       | (1-1)C0030: FAX PWB system error .....   | 7-135 |
|       | (1-2)C0070: FAX PWB incompatible detection error .....   | 7-135 |
|       | (1-3)C0830: FAX PWB flash program area checksum error .....  | 7-135 |
|       | (1-4)C0870: PC FAX Image data transmission error .....   | 7-136 |
|       | (1-5)C0920: FAX file system error .....  | 7-136 |
|       | (1-6)The FAX cannot be sent .....  | 7-136 |
|       | (1-7)The beep sounds when the copying or printing is finished .....  | 7-137 |
|       | (1-8)When the data of the A3 or B4 size originals is transmitted,<br>all of it is transmitted as the A4 size data .....  | 7-137 |
| (2)   | FAX Error code .....   | 7-138 |
| 7 - 5 | Send Related Errors .....  | 7-158 |
| (1)   | Send .....   | 7-158 |
|       | (1-1)The sending error 2101 does not disappear even if changing the host name<br>or the security software settings .....   | 7-158 |
|       | (1-2)Sending error 2203 does not disappear .....   | 7-158 |
|       | (1-3)The scanning data from the contact glass is automatically sent .....  | 7-158 |
| (2)   | Sending Errors (Error Codes) .....   | 7-159 |
|       | (2-1)Scan to E-mail Error Codes .....  | 7-159 |
|       | (2-2)Scan to FTP Error Codes .....   | 7-163 |
|       | (2-3)Scan to SMB Error Codes .....   | 7-167 |
| 7 - 6 | Error Messages .....   | 7-169 |
| (1)   | 'Check the document processor' is displayed .....  | 7-169 |
| (2)   | 'Error occurred in cassette X' is displayed even after removing/inserting the cassette<br>and checking/removing paper remaining in the main unit (Cassette 1, 2) ..... | 7-170 |
| (3)   | 'Error occurred in cassette X' is displayed even after removing/inserting the cassette<br>and checking/removing paper remaining in the main unit (Cassette 3, 4) ..... | 7-170 |
| (4)   | 'Error occurred in cassette X' is displayed even after removing/inserting the cassette<br>and checking/removing paper remaining in the main unit (Cassette 3, 4) ..... | 7-171 |
| (5)   | The cover open message appears after closing the front cover .....   | 7-171 |
| (6)   | The cover open message remains after closing the front cover .....   | 7-172 |

|          |  |            |
|----------|--|------------|
| (7)      | The add paper message appears while the paper is loaded on the MP tray.....              | 7-172      |
| (8)      | When DP is used, [Remove the original from document processor] is wrongly displayed..... | 7-172      |
| 7 - 7    | Abnormal Noise .....   | 7-173      |
| (1)      | Abnormal noise (Basic support).....  | 7-173      |
| (2)      | Abnormal sounds from the paper conveying section.....                                    | 7-174      |
| (3)      | Abnormal sound from the developer section.....   | 7-174      |
| (4)      | Abnormal sound from the document processor.....  | 7-174      |
| (5)      | Abnormal sound from the exit section.....  | 7-175      |
| (6)      | Fan rotating sounds are noisy.....   | 7-175      |
| (7)      | Abnormal sound from the paper feed section.....  | 7-175      |
| (8)      | Abnormal sound from the MP feed section.....   | 7-175      |
| (9)      | Abnormal sound from the fuser exit section.....  | 7-176      |
| (10)     | Abnormal sound from the fuser section.....   | 7-176      |
| (11)     | Abnormal sound from inside the machine.....  | 7-176      |
| (12)     | Abnormal sound from inside the machine.....  | 7-176      |
| (13)     | Abnormal sound from inside the machine.....  | 7-177      |
| (14)     | Abnormal sound from rear side of the main unit.....                                      | 7-177      |
| 7 - 8    | Malfunction .....  | 7-178      |
| (1)      | The size of paper set in the cassette is misdetected or not displayed.....               | 7-178      |
| (2)      | The main unit malfunctions even if turning on the power switch.....                      | 7-179      |
| (3)      | No display in the operation panel.....   | 7-179      |
| (4)      | The operation panel remains displaying 'WELCOME' and does not change.....                | 7-179      |
| (5)      | The login fails with other than the ID card.....   | 7-180      |
| <b>8</b> | <b>PWBs .....</b>  | <b>8-1</b> |
| 8 - 1    | PWB description .....  | 8-1        |
| (1)      | Main PWB.....  | 8-1        |
| (1-1)    | PWB photograph.....  | 8-1        |
| (1-2)    | Connector position.....  | 8-1        |
| (1-3)    | Connector lists.....   | 8-2        |
| (2)      | Engine PWB.....  | 8-9        |
| (2-1)    | PWB photograph.....  | 8-9        |
| (2-2)    | Connector position.....  | 8-9        |
| (2-3)    | Connector lists.....   | 8-10       |
| (3)      | Operation panel PWB 1.....   | 8-20       |
| (3-1)    | PWB photograph.....  | 8-20       |
| (3-2)    | Connector position.....  | 8-20       |
| (3-3)    | Connector lists.....   | 8-21       |
| (4)      | Power supply PWB.....  | 8-25       |
| (4-1)    | PWB photograph.....  | 8-25       |
| (4-2)    | Connector position.....  | 8-25       |
| (4-3)    | Connector lists.....   | 8-26       |
| <b>9</b> | <b>Appendixes .....</b>  | <b>9-1</b> |
| 9 - 1    | Appendixes.....  | 9-1        |
| (1)      | Repetitive defects gauge.....  | 9-1        |
| 9 - 2    | Firmware environment commands.....   | 9-2        |
| 9 - 3    | Chart of image adjustment procedures.....  | 9-8        |
| 9 - 4    | Wiring diagram.....  | 9-11       |
| 9 - 5    | Installation Guide.....  | 9-16       |
| (1)      | DP-7100.....   |            |
| (2)      | DP-7110.....   |            |
| (3)      | DP-7120.....   |            |
| (4)      | PF-791.....  |            |
| (5)      | PF-810.....  |            |
| (6)      | DF-791.....  |            |
| (7)      | DF-7120.....   |            |
| (8)      | AK-740.....  |            |

>

---

- (9) MT-730
- (10) PH-7A/C/D
- (11) FAX System 12



# 1 Specifications

## 1 - 1 Specifications

### (1) Common functions

| Items                         |                    | Specifications  |                    |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|---|--------------------|
|                               |                    | 32 ppm model  | 40 ppm model       |
| Type                          |                    | Desktop   |                    |
| Printing Method               |                    | Dry static electric transfer (laser)  |                    |
| Paper Weight                  | Cassette           | 60 to 163 g/m <sup>2</sup>  |                    |
|                               | Multi Purpose Tray | 45 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> (Less than A4/Letter), 209.5 g/m <sup>2</sup> (Postal card)<br>52 to 163 g/m <sup>2</sup> (larger than A4/Letter)  |                    |
| Media type                    | Cassette           | Plain, Thin, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color (Colour), Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, High Quality, Custom, (Duplex:Same as Simplex)  |                    |
|                               | Multi Purpose Tray | Plain, Transparency (OHP film), Thin, Labels, Recycled,Preprinted, Bond, Cardstock, Color (Colour), Prepunched,Letterhead, Envelope, Thick, High Quality, Custom  |                    |
| Paper Size                    | Cassette           | A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, B4, B5-R, B5, 216×340 mm, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K  |                    |
|                               | Multi Purpose Tray | A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, A6-R, B4, B5-R, B5, B6-R, 216×340 mm, Ledger<br>Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, Executive, Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K,ISO B5, Envelope #10, Envelope #9, Envelope #6, Envelope Monarch, Envelope DL, Envelop C5, Envelope C4, Hagaki (Cardstock), Oufuku Hagaki (Return postcard), Youkei 4, Youkei 2, Custom 1 to 4(98 × 148 mm to 297 × 432 mm) |                    |
| Printable Area                |                    | The point 3±2.5 mm, The back point 3±2.5 mm,<br>left/right less than 4 mm or 5+1.5/-2mm (100V model A6R only)   |                    |
| Warm-up Time<br>(23°C, 60%RH) | Power on           | 18 seconds or less  |                    |
|                               | Low Power          | 10 seconds or less  |                    |
|                               | Sleep              | 15 seconds or less  | 12 seconds or less |
| Paper Capacity                | Cassette           | 550 sheets (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) *1<br>500 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) *1  |                    |
|                               | Multi Purpose Tray | 100 sheets (A4/Letter or smaller)(80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )<br>25 sheets (larger size than A4/Letter)(80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )   |                    |
| Output paper tray<br>Capacity | Inner Tray         | 250 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )   |                    |
|                               | Job separator      | 50 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )  |                    |
| Light source                  |                    | White LED   |                    |
| Scanning method               |                    | Flat surface scanning by the CCD image sensor   |                    |
| Photoconductor                |                    | a-Si drum (diameter 30 mm)  |                    |
| Image Write System            |                    | Semiconductor laser system  |                    |
| Charging system               |                    | AC+DC charger roller system   |                    |
| Developer system              |                    | Monocomponent jumping developer system<br>Toner supply system: Automatic replenishing from the toner container  |                    |
| Transfer system               |                    | Transfer roller system  |                    |
| Separation system             |                    | Small diameter separation and separation needle (Impressing DC voltage)   |                    |
| Cleaning system               |                    | Counter blade system  |                    |
| Charge erasing system         |                    | Exposure by eraser (LED)  |                    |
| Fusing system                 |                    | Heat and pressure fusing with the heat roller and the press roller<br>Heat source: halogen heater<br>Abnormally high temperature protection devices: thermostat   |                    |
| Memory                        |                    | 2.0GB   |                    |

| Items                               |                     | Specifications   |                     |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------|--|---------------------|
|                                     |                     | 32 ppm model   | 40 ppm model        |
| Large capacity storage              | 120V model          | SSD 8GB + HDD 320GB  | SSD 8GB + HDD 320GB |
|                                     | Except 120V         | SSD 32GB/ (HDD 320GB: option)  |                     |
| Inter Interface                     | Standard            | USB Interface Connector: 1 (Hi-Speed USB)<br>Network interface: 1 (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX/1000 BASE-T)<br>Hi-Speed USB: 4 (USB Flash memory slot) |                     |
|                                     | Option              | eKUIO: 2 *2<br>Fax: 2 *3<br>Wireless LAN: 1  |                     |
| Operating Environment               | Temperature         | 10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F  |                     |
|                                     | Humidity            | 10 to 80%RH  |                     |
|                                     | Above the sea level | 3,500m/11,482 ft maximum   |                     |
|                                     | Brightness          | 1,500 lux maximum  |                     |
| Dimensions<br>Dimension (W × D × H) |                     | 594 × 696 × 683mm / 23.39" × 27.4" × 26.89"  |                     |
| Weight                              |                     | Approx. 58kg / 127.9 lb (without toner container)  |                     |
| Space Required (W × D)              |                     | 873 × 696mm / 31.82" × 19.97" (Using multi purpose tray)   |                     |
| Power source                        |                     | 100V AC, 50/60Hz, 13.0A<br>AC110V, 60Hz, 12.5A<br>120V AC, 60Hz, 11.6A<br>220-240V AC, 50/60Hz, 6.3A   |                     |

\*1: \*1: Up to upper limit height line in the cassette.

\*2: \*2: When two optional interface are installed, a fax line can not be installed.

\*3: When IB-50 or IB-51 is installed, only one fax line can be installed.

## (2) Copy Functions

| Items  |              | Specifications   |                          |
|--|--------------|--|--------------------------|
|  |              | 32 ppm model   | 40 ppm model             |
| Copy Speed   | A4/Letter    | 32 sheets/min  | 40 sheets/min            |
|  | A4R/Letter R | 23 sheets/min  | 29 sheets/min            |
|  | A3/Ledger    | 17 sheets/min  | 21 sheets/min            |
|  | B4/Legal     | 17 sheets/min  | 21 sheets/min            |
|  | B5           | 32 sheets/min  | 40 sheets/min            |
|  | B5R          | 20 sheets/min  | 23 sheets/min            |
|  | A5R          | 15 sheets/min  | 18 sheets/min            |
| First Copy Time<br>(The main unit cassette paper feed, A4) |              | Less than 4.3 seconds *1   | Less than 3.6 seconds *1 |
| Zoom Level   |              | Manual mode: 25 to 400%, 1% increments<br>Fixed zoom rate: 400%, 200%, 141%, 122%, 115%, 100%, 86%, 81%, 70%, 50%, 25% |                          |
| Continuous Copying   |              | 1 to 999 sheets  |                          |
| Resolution   |              | 600 × 600 dpi, 9600 dpi equivalent × 600 dpi   |                          |
| Supported Original Types                                   |              | Sheet, Book, 3-dimensional objects (maximum original size: A3/Ledger)  |                          |
| Original Feed System                                       |              | Fixed  |                          |

\*1: Except the system safety time after the main power switches on

## (3) Printer Functions

| Items   |              | Specifications  |                          |
|---|--------------|---|--------------------------|
|   |              | 32 ppm model  | 40 ppm model             |
| Printing Speed  | A4/Letter    | 32 sheets/min   | 40 sheets/min            |
|   | A4R/Letter R | 23 sheets/min   | 29 sheets/min            |
|   | A3/Ledger    | 17 sheets/min   | 21 sheets/min            |
|   | B4/Legal     | 17 sheets/min   | 21 sheets/min            |
|   | B5           | 32 sheets/min   | 40 sheets/min            |
|   | B5R          | 20 sheets/min   | 23 sheets/min            |
|   | A5R          | 15 sheets/min   | 18 sheets/min            |
| First Print Time<br>(The main unit cassette paper feed, A4) |              | Less than 4.9 seconds *1  | Less than 4.2 seconds *1 |
| Resolution  |              | 600dpi, 1200dpi   |                          |
| Operating System  |              | Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 8.1, Windows 10, Windows Server 2008/R2, Windows Server 2012/R2, Windows Server 2016<br>Mac OS X v10.5 or more   |                          |
| Interface   |              | USB Interface Connector: 1 (Hi-Speed USB)<br>Network interface: 1<br>(1000 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX/10 BASE-T (IPv6, IPv4, IPSec), 302.3az supported)<br>Optional Interface (Option): 2 (For IB-50/IB-51 mounting)<br>Wireless LAN (Option): 1 (For IB-35 mounting) |                          |
| Page Description Language                                   |              | PRESCRIBE   |                          |
| Emulations  |              | PCL6 (PCL-XL/PCL-5c), KPDL3 (PostScript3 compatible), PDF, XPS, Open XPS  |                          |

\*1: Except the system safety time after the main power switches on

## (4) Scanner Functions

| Items  | Specifications   |
|--|--|
| Resolution   | 300 dpi × 300 dpi (Default), 200 dpi × 200 dpi, 200 dpi × 100 dpi<br>600 dpi × 600 dpi, 400 dpi × 400 dpi, 200 dpi × 400 dpi |
| File Format  | TIFF, JPEG, XPS, Open XPS, PDF (MMR/JPEG compression/High compressive PDF/OCR Text Recognition PDF(Optional))                |
| The consecutive originals<br>Reading velocity *1<br>(A4, 300 dpi, Image quality Text/<br>Photo mode) | 1-side: B/W 80 images/min, Color 80 Images/min<br>2-sided: B/W 160 Images/min, Color 160 Images/min                          |
| Interface  | Ethernet (10 BASE-T/100 BASE-TX/1000 BASE-T)   |
| Network protocol   | TCP/IP   |
| Transmission Protocol  | SMB, SMTP, FTP, FTP over SSL, TWAIN*2, WIA*2, WSD  |

\*1 When using the document processor (Dual Scan DP) (except TWAIN scanning)

\*2 Available OS: Windows Vista/Windows Server 2003/Windows Server 2008/Windows Server 2008, R2/Windows 7/  
Windows 8/Windows 8.1/Windows 10/Windows Server 2012/Windows Server 2012 R2/Windows Server 2016

## (5) Option

## (5-1) Document Processor

| Items                               | Specifications   |  |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|--|
|                                     | Automatic 2-Sided  |  | dual scan  |
| Type                                | DP-7100  | DP-7120  | DP-7110  |
| Document feed method                | Automatic feed   |  |  |
| Supported Original Types            | Sheet originals  |  |  |
| Paper Size                          | Maximum: A3/Ledger (297 × 432 mm) (Long-sized: 297 × 1,900 mm)             |  |  |
|                                     | Minimum:<br>A6-R/Statement-R<br>(105 × 148 mm)                             | Minimum:<br>A5-R/Statement-R<br>(140 × 182 mm)                             | Minimum:<br>A6-R/Statement-R<br>(105 × 148 mm)                             |
| Paper Weight                        | 1-sided: 35 to 160 g/m <sup>2</sup><br>2-sided: 50 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 1-sided: 45 to 160 g/m <sup>2</sup><br>2-sided: 50 to 120 g/m <sup>2</sup> | 1-sided: 35 to 220 g/m <sup>2</sup><br>2-sided: 50 to 220 g/m <sup>2</sup> |
| Loading Capacity                    | 140 sheets maximum<br>(50 to 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )*1                       | 50 sheets maximum<br>(50 to 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )*1                        | 270 sheets maximum<br>(50 to 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )*1                       |
| Dimensions<br>Dimension (W × D × H) | 593 × 531 × 138.5 mm /<br>23.35" × 20.91" × 5.46"                          | 600 × 502 × 128 mm /<br>23.35" × 20.91" × 5.46"                            | 600 × 513 × 170 mm /<br>23.35" × 20.91" × 5.46"                            |
| Weight                              | Approx. 9 kg /19.84 lb   | Approx. 7.3 kg /16.09 lb   | Approx. 14.5 kg /31.97 lb  |

## (5-2) Paper Feeder (500-sheet × 2)

| Items                               | Specifications  |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Paper Supply system                 | Feed & reverse roller system<br>(Store Sheets: 550 sheets(64 g/m <sup>2</sup> )×2 cassettes / 500 sheets(80g/m <sup>2</sup> )× 2 cassettes) |
| Paper Size                          | A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, B4, B5-R, B5, 216×340 mm, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K                |
| Supported Paper                     | Paper weight: 60 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup><br>Media types: Plain, Recycled, Thick   |
| Dimensions<br>Dimension (W × D × H) | 590 × 589 × 332 mm /23.23" × 23.19" × 13.07"  |
| Weight                              | Approx. 20 kg /44.09 lb   |

## (5-3) Large Capacity Feeder (1,500-sheet × 2)

| Items                               | Specifications   |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| Paper Supply Method                 | Feed & reverse roller system<br>(Store Sheets: 3,500 sheets(64 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) / 3,000 sheets(80g/m <sup>2</sup> )) |
| Paper Size                          | A4, B5, Letter   |
| Supported Paper                     | Paper weight: 60 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup><br>Media types: Plain, Recycled, Thick  |
| Dimensions<br>Dimension (W × D × H) | 590 × 626.9 × 332 mm /23.23" × 24.68" × 13.07"   |
| Weight                              | Approx. 29 kg /63.93 lb  |

## (5-4)1,000-Sheet Finisher

| Items                                |  | Specifications  |   |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|---|
| Number of Trays                      |  | 1 tray  |   |
| Paper Size<br>(80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) | Finisher<br>Tray<br>(When no stapling) | A3, A5-R, B4, B5-R, B6-R, 216×340 mm, Ledger, Legal, Statement-R<br>Executive, Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R: 500 sheets<br>A4-R, A4, B5, B6-R, Letter-R, Letter, 16K: 1,000 sheets |   |
| Paper thickness                      |  | When stapling: 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> or less  |   |
| Stapling                             | Number of sheets to limit              | A3, B4, B5-R, 216×340 mm, Ledger<br>Legal, Oficio II, 16K-R, 8K   | 30 sheets (52 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> )<br>2 cover sheets only (106 to 300 g/m <sup>2</sup> )   |
|                                      |  | A4-R, A4, B5, Letter-R, Letter, 16K   | 50 sheets (52 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> )<br>40 sheets (91 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> )<br>2 cover sheets only (106 to 300 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) |
| Media type                           |  | Plain, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color,Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom  |   |
| Dimensions<br>Dimension (W × D × H)  |  | 548 × 618.5 × 1,050 mm /21.57" × 24.35" × 41.34"  |   |
| Weight                               |  | Approx. 30 kg or less /66.14 lb or less   |   |
| Machine space measure (W × D)        |  | 666 × 618.5 mm /26.22" × 24.35" (with the tray pulled out)  |   |

## (5-5)3,000-Sheet Finisher

| Items                                |                           | Specifications  |  |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|---|--|
| Number of Trays                      |                           | 2 tray  |  |
| Paper Size<br>(80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) | Tray A<br>(Non-Stapling)  | A3, B4, B5-R, 216×340 mm, Ledger, Legal, Executive, Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R:<br>1,500 sheets<br>A4-R, A4, B5, Letter-R, Letter, 16K: 3,000 sheets<br>A5-R, B6-R, Statement-R: 500 sheets  |  |
|                                      | Tray B                    | A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, A6, B4, B5-R, B5, B6-R, 216×340mm, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter,<br>Legal, Statement-R, Executive, Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K,ISO B5, Hagaki<br>(Cardstock), Oufuku Hagaki (Return postcard), Custom (98 × 148 mm to 297 × 432<br>mm): 200 sheets |  |
| Paper thickness                      |                           | When stapling: 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> or less  |  |
| Stapling                             | Number of sheets to limit | A3, B4, B5-R, 216×340mm, Ledger,<br>Legal, Oficio II, 8K, 16K-R   | 30 sheets (52 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> )<br>2 cover sheet only (106 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> )   |
|                                      |                           | A4-R, A4, B5, Letter-R, Letter, 16K   | 70 sheets (52 to 74 g/m <sup>2</sup> )<br>65 sheets (75 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> )<br>55 sheets (91 to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> )<br>2 cover sheet only (106 to 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) |
| Media type                           |                           | Plain, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color,Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom  |  |
| Dimensions<br>Dimension (W × D × H)  |                           | 607.2 × 668.5 × 951.3 mm /23.91" × 26.32" × 37.45"  |  |
| Weight                               |                           | Approx. 40 kg or less /88.18 lb or less   |  |
| Machine space measure<br>(W × D)     |                           | 725 × 668.5 mm /28.54" × 26.32" (with the tray pulled out)  |  |

## (5-6)Punch Unit (For 1,000-Sheet/3,000-Sheet Finisher option)

| Items                        | Specifications  |
|------------------------------|---|
| Utilized possible paper size | A3, A4-R, A4, A5-R, B4, B5-R, B5, Ledger, Letter-R, Letter, Legal, Statement-R, Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K |
| Paper thickness              | 45 to 300 g/m <sup>2</sup>  |
| Media type                   | Plain, Preprinted, Bond, Recycled, Letterhead, Color, Thick, Coated, High Quality, Custom 1 to 8      |

## (5-7)Mailbox (3,000-Sheet Finisher option)

| Items                            | Specifications  |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Number of Trays                  | 7 trays   |
| Paper Size(80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) | A3, B4, Ledger, Legal: 50 sheets<br>A4-R, A4, A5-R, B5-R, B5, B5-R, B5, 216×340 mm, Letter-R, Letter, Statement-R, Oficio II, Folio, 8K, 16K-R, 16K |
| Dimensions<br>(W × D × H)        | 510 × 400 × 470 mm / 20.08" × 15.75" × 18.51"   |
| Weight                           | Approx. 10 kg /22.05 lb   |

## (5-8)FAX System (FAX System 12)

| Item                                       | Specifications   |
|--|--|
| Intercommunication                         | G3   |
| Applicable line                            | Subscriber telephone line  |
| Transmission Time                          | Less than 3 seconds (33600 bps, JBIG, ITU-T A4-R #1 chart)   |
| Transmission Speed                         | 33600/31200/28800/26400/24000/21600/19200/16800/14400/12000/9600/7200/4800/2400 bps  |
| Coding Scheme                              | JBIG/MMR/MR/MH   |
| Error Correction                           | ECM  |
| Original size                              | Max. width: Max. width: 297 mm/11", Max. length: 1,600 mm/63"  |
| Number of originals to auto feed           | Max. 270 sheets (with optional document processor)   |
| Resolution                                 | Scan:<br>200 × 100 dpi Normal (8 dot/mm × 3.85 line/mm)<br>200 × 200 dpi Fine (8 dot/mm × 7.7 line/mm)<br>200 × 400 dpi Super (Super Fine) (8 dot/mm × 15.4 line/mm)<br>400 × 400 dpi Ultra (Ultra Fine) (16 dot/mm × 15.4 line/mm)<br>600 × 600 dpi<br>Print: 600 × 600 dpi |
| Gradations                                 | 256 shades (Error diffusion)   |
| One Touch Key                              | 1000 keys  |
| Broadcast TX                               | Max. 500 destinations (Maximum number of stations: 500, maximum of 100 stations for i-Fax)   |
| Substitute Memory Reception                | 7000 sheets or more (when using ITU-T A4 #1)   |
| Memory capacity for the image accumulation | Standard memory (170MB) (for FAX transmission/reception)   |
| Report Output                              | Send result report, FAX RX result report, Activity report, Status page   |
| Option                                     | Hand set, Multi port, internet FAX kit   |

## Network FAX functions

| Item                    | Specifications  |
|-------------------------|---|
| Hardware                | IBM PC-AT compatible computer   |
| Interface               | 10BASE-T / 100BASE-TX / 1000BASE-T  |
| Operating system        | Windows Vista, Windows 7, Windows 8, Windows 8.1, Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2008 R2, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2016 |
| TX resolution           | Ultra fine (400 × 400dpi), Fine (200 × 200dpi), Normal (100 × 200dpi), 600 × 600dpi   |
| Original size           | Letter, Legal, Ledger (11x17), Statement, A3, A4, A5, Folio, B4, B5(JIS)  |
| Time specified TX       | Time setting by Network FAX driver (within 24 hours, 1 minute increments)   |
| Simultaneous output     | Possible output on the main unit at the same time as FAX TX   |
| Sequential broadcast TX | Max. 500 destinations (Maximum number of stations: 500, maximum of 100 stations for i-Fax)  |

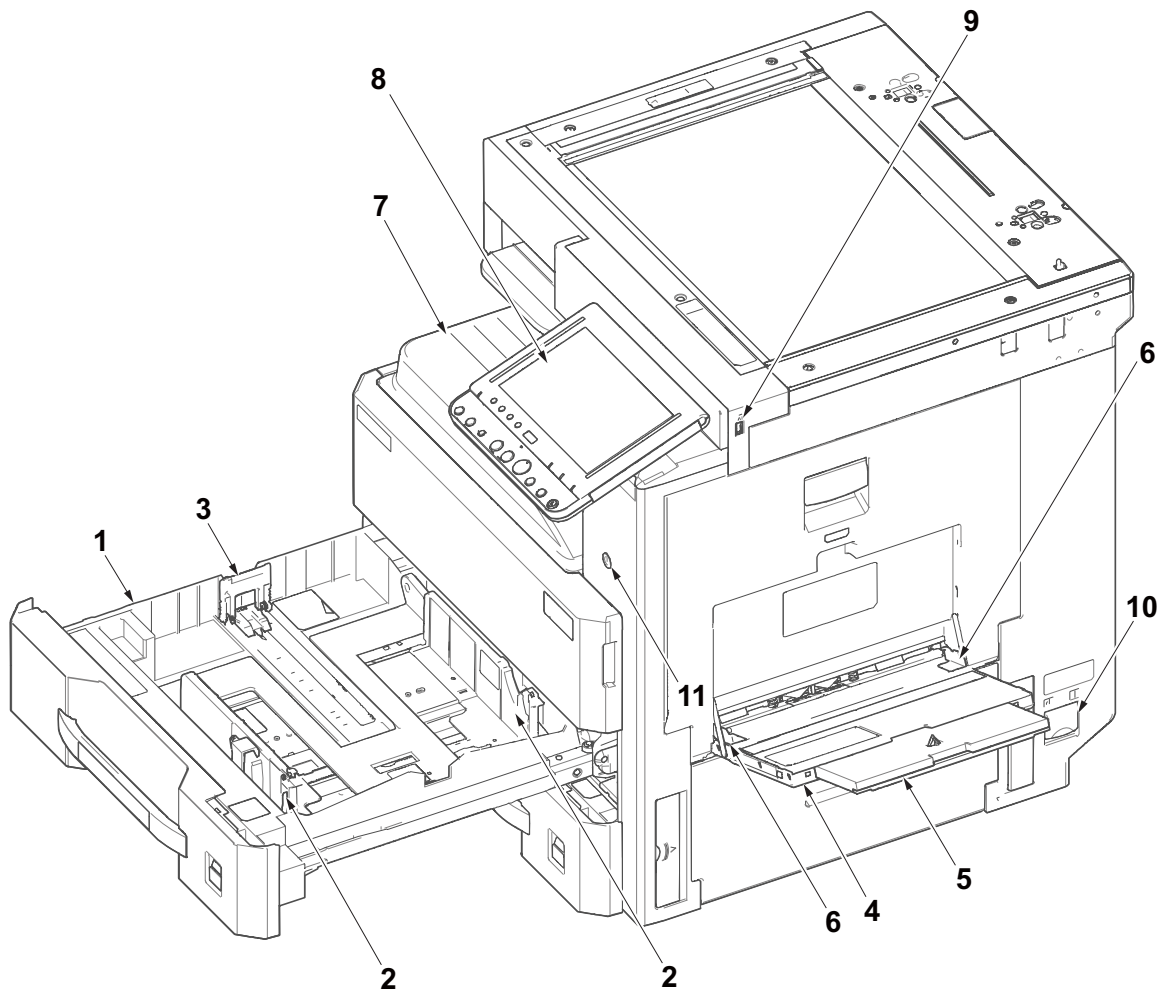
| Item                  | Specifications   |
|-----------------------|--|
| <b>Job Accounting</b> | Register the login user name and password in the Network FAX driver setting when [User] is set on the main unit.<br>Register the account ID in the Network FAX driver setting when [Job accounting] is set on the main unit. |
| <b>Cover Page</b>     | It is possible to select format and create template in the Network FAX driver.   |

(The specification is to change for efficiency improvement without notice.)

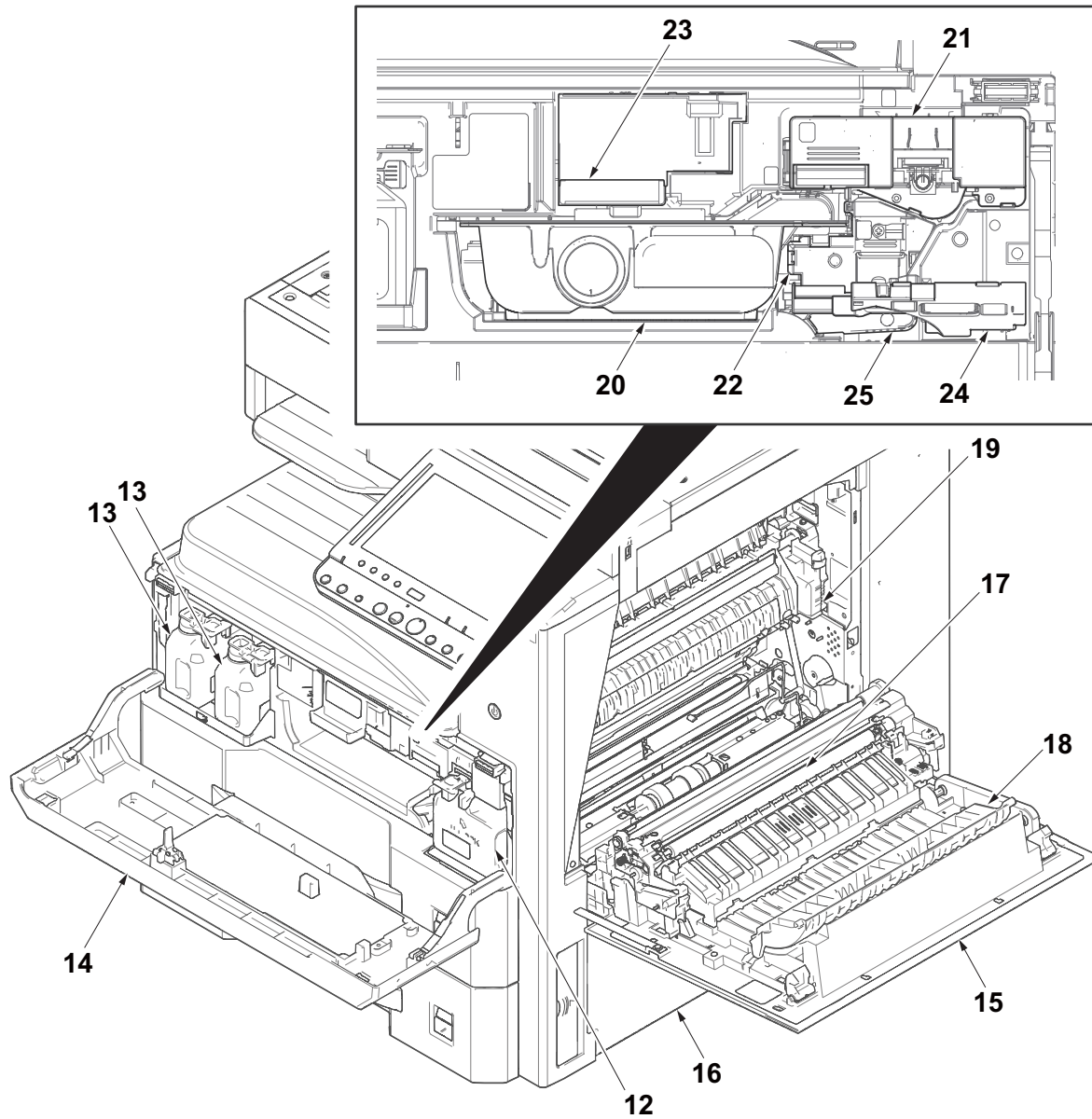


## 1 - 2 Part Names

## (1) The main unit (Front side)



- |                         |                      |
|-------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 Cassette              | 7 Inner Tray         |
| 2 Paper Width Guides    | 8 Operation Panel    |
| 3 Paper Length Guide    | 9 USB Memory Slot    |
| 4 MP Tray               | 10 Main Power Switch |
| 5 MP sub tray           | 11 Power switch      |
| 6 MP Paper Width Guides |                      |



12 Toner waste box

13 Toner waste box (Spare)

14 Front Cover

15 Right Cover 1

16 Right Cover 2

17 Transfer roller

18 Diverge guide

19 Fuser unit

20 Toner Container

21 Drum unit

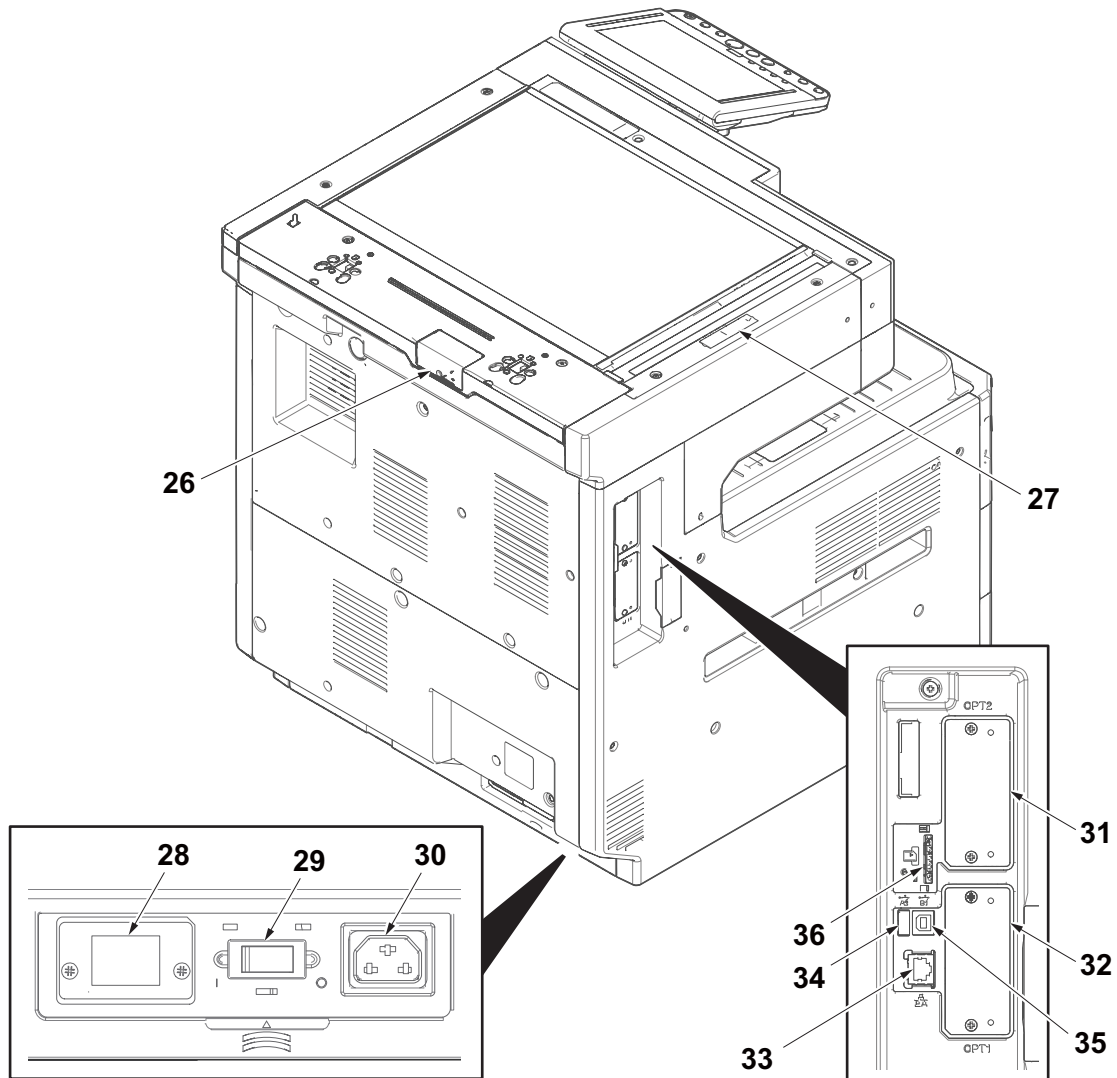
22 Developer unit

23 Toner Container lever

24 Developer Stopper

25 Developer lever

(2) The main unit (Rear side)



26 DP link connector cover

27 Scanner lock cover

28 Coin vendor connector

29 Cassette heater switch

30 Inlet connector

31 Option Interface  
Slot 2

32 Option Interface Slot  
Slot 1

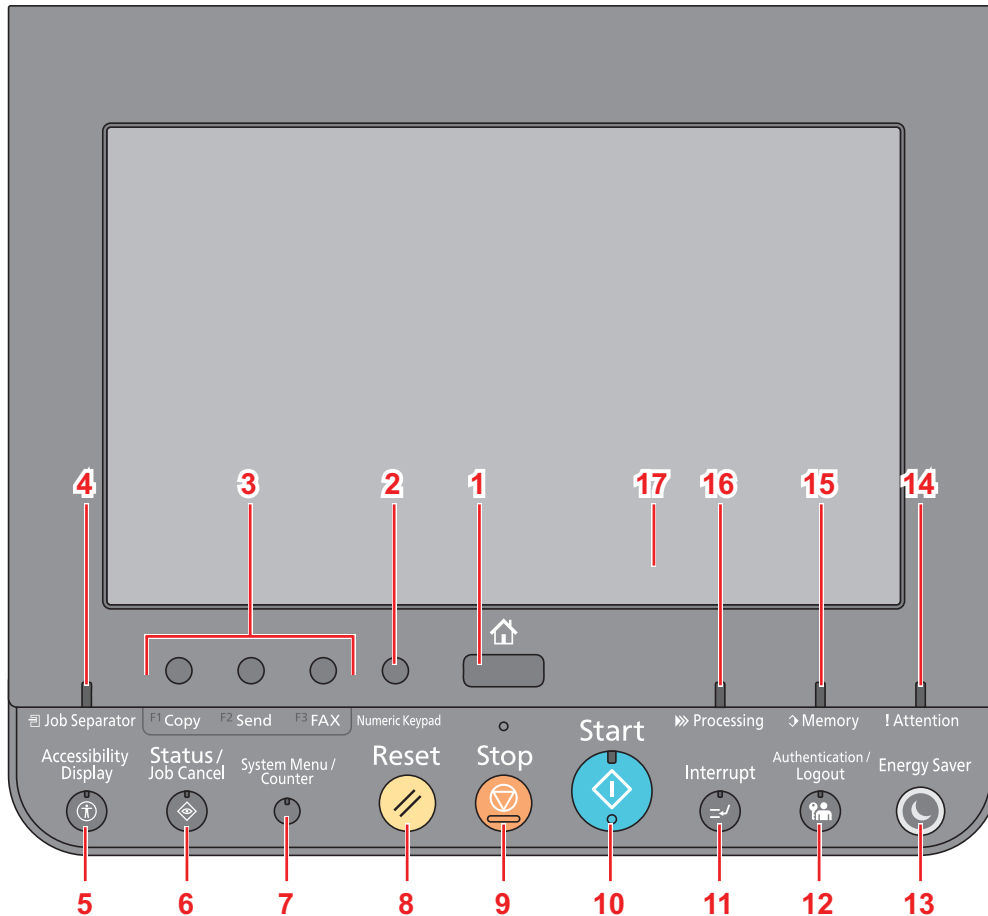
33 Network interface  
Connectors

34 USB port

35 USB Interface Connector

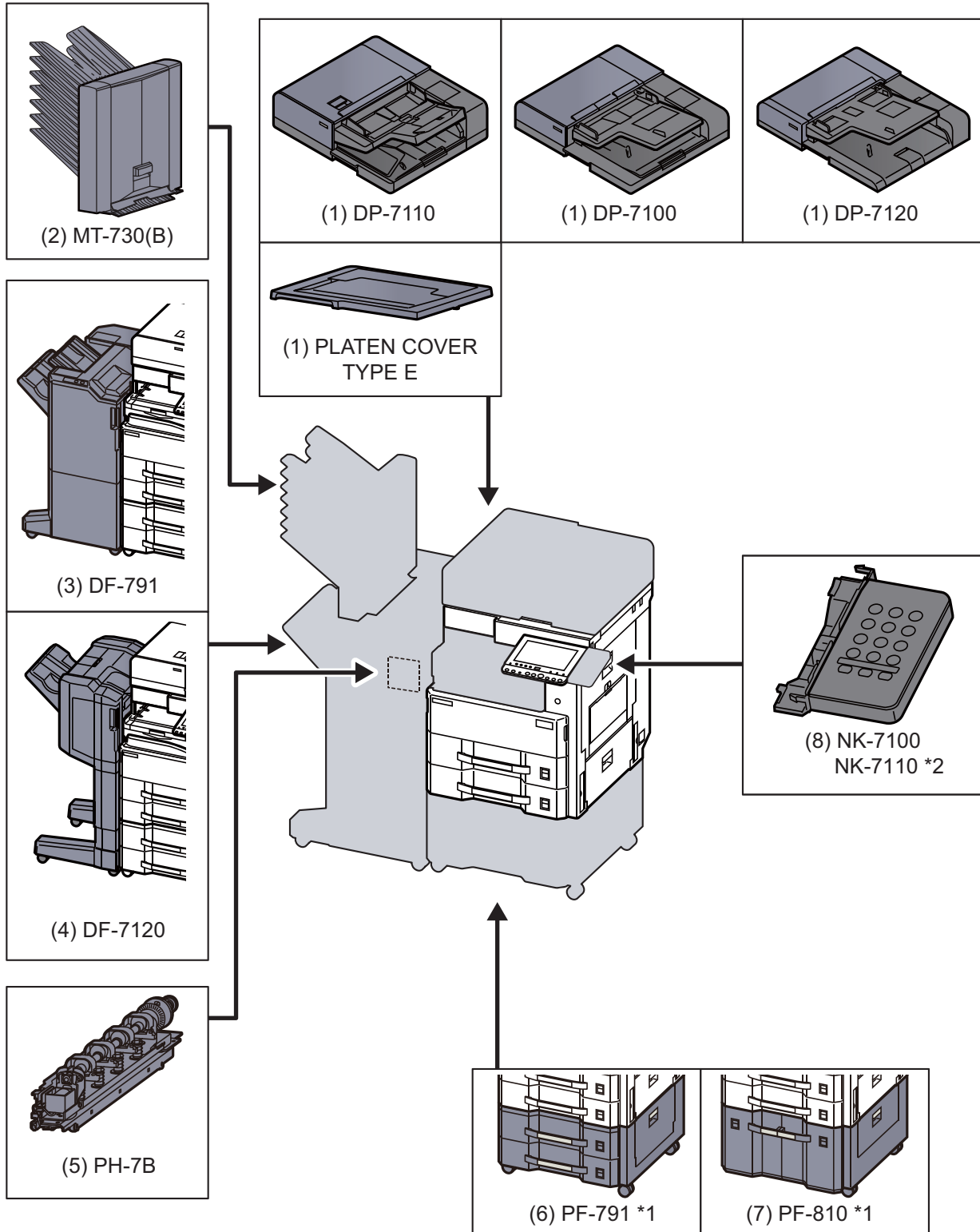
36 SD card slot

## (3) Operation Panel



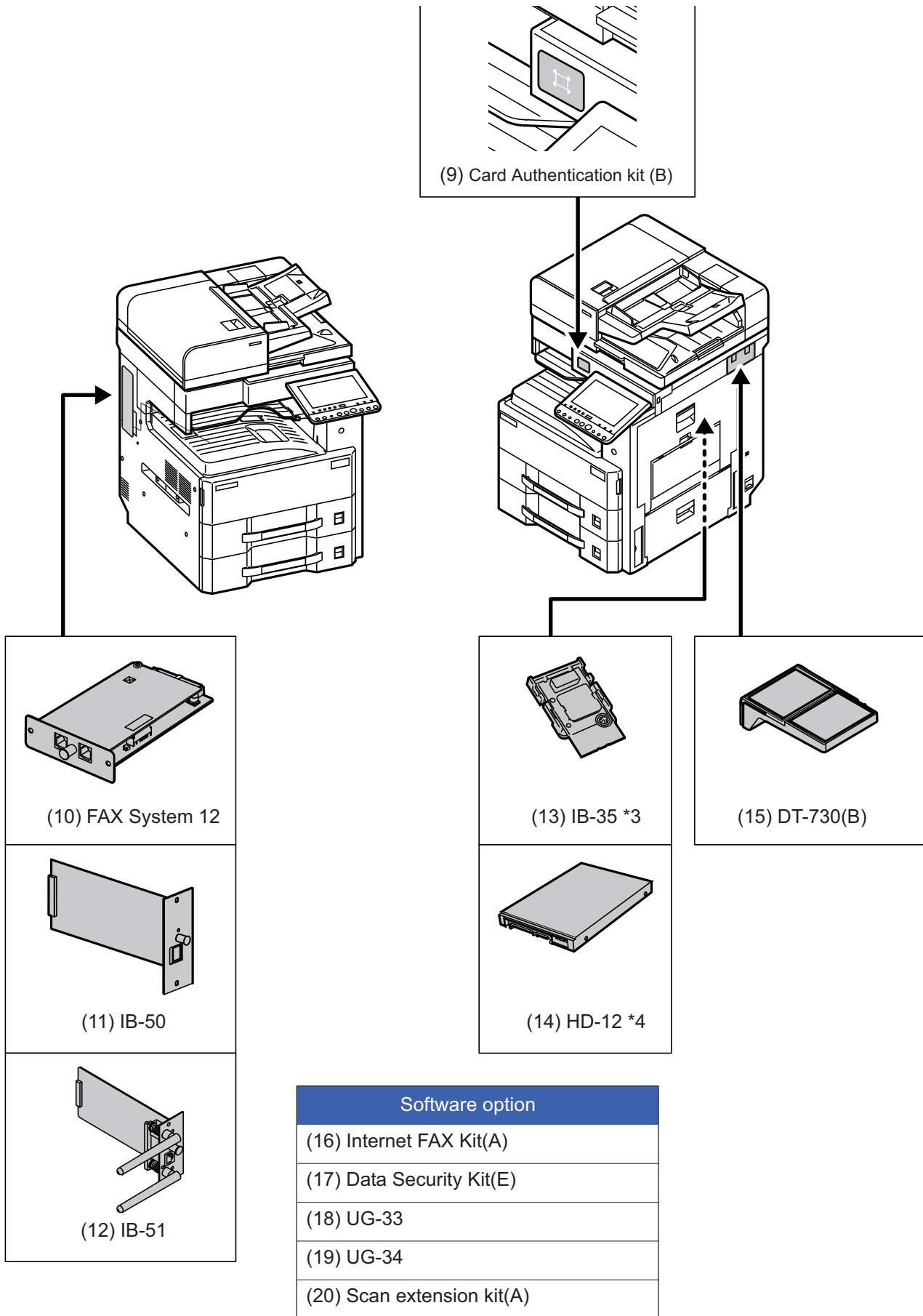
- 1 [Home] key: Displays the Home screen.
- 2 [Numeric Keypad] key: Displays numeric keys on the touch panel.
- 3 Function Key: These keys enable various functions and applications, including copy and scan, to be registered.
- 4 [Job Separator] indicator: Lights when there is paper in the job separator tray.
- 5 [Accessibility Display] key: Switches the touch panel display on the Copy screen and the Send screen to a magnified view.
- 6 [Status/Job Cancel] key: Displays the Status/Job Cancel screen.
- 7 [System Menu/Counter] key: Displays the System Menu screen.
- 8 [Reset] key: Returns settings to their default states.
- 9 [Stop] key: Cancels or pauses the job in progress.
- 10 [Start] key: Starts copying and scanning operations and processing for setting operations.
- 11 [Interrupt] key: Displays the Interrupt Copy screen.
- 12 [Authentication/Logout] key: Authenticates user switching, and exits the operation for the current user (i.e. log out).
- 13 [Energy Saver] key: Puts the machine into Sleep Mode. Recovers from Sleep if in Sleep Mode. Recovers from Sleep if in Sleep Mode.
- 14 [Attention] indicator: Lights or blinks when an error occurs and a job is stopped.
- 15 [Memory] indicator: Blinks while the machine is accessing the hard disk, fax memory or USB memory (general purpose item).
- 16 [Processing] indicator: Blinks while printing or sending/receiving.
- 17 Touch Panel: Displays the icons here and configures machine settings.

### 1 - 3 Optional configuration



\*1: In case of attaching the next option, it needs to attach the metal fitting of the fall prevention : PF-791, PF-810

\*2: Only 120 V model: NK-7110



\*3: Except 120 V model, \*4: Except 120 V in 32 ppm model

## 2 Installation

### 2 - 1 Environment

#### Installation environment

- 1 Temperature: 50 to 90.5°F (10 to 32.5 °C)
- 2 Humidity: 15 to 80%RH
- 3 Usable power source: 100V AC 13.0A / 120V AC 11.6A / 220-240V AC 6.3A
- 4 Frequency fluctuation: 50Hz+/-2% or 60Hz+/-2%

#### Installation location

Avoid the place exposed direct sunlight and the strong lightning. Don't expose the photoreceptor to the direct sunlight and the strong lightning in case of the paper jam.

Avoid the locations where high temperature and humidity, low temperature and humidity and the surrounding temperature of the machine rapidly change or the locations where cool wind and hot wind expose directly.

Avoid the locations with dust and much vibration.

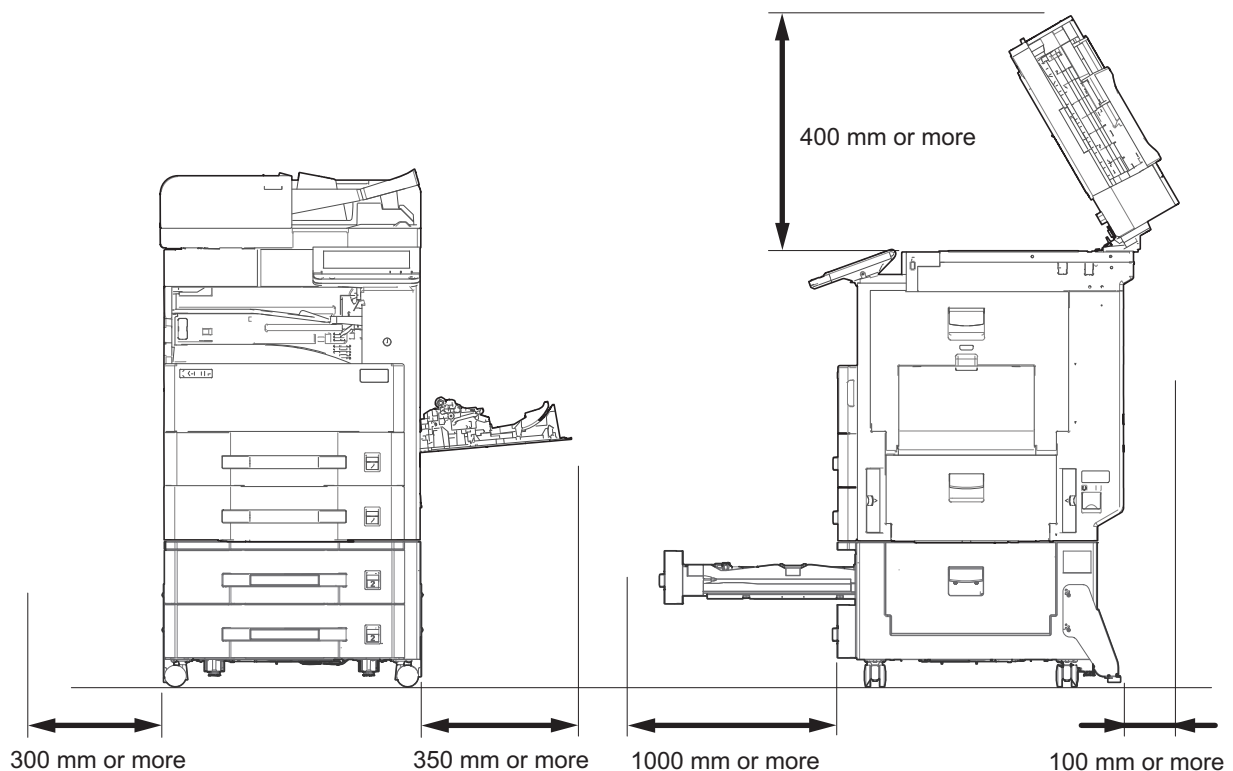
When setting on the stand, use the stand which can sufficiently endure in the machine weight.

Set the horizontal location. (Horizontal degree: Left and right front and rear are 5mm or less, Twisting is 3mm or less.)

Avoid the locations where the substances which can be transformed the machine and the photoreceptor (the gas and the chlorine-based organic solvents that the vapor which the mercury, acid and alkali are, the inorganic gas, NOx and SOx ) are drifting.

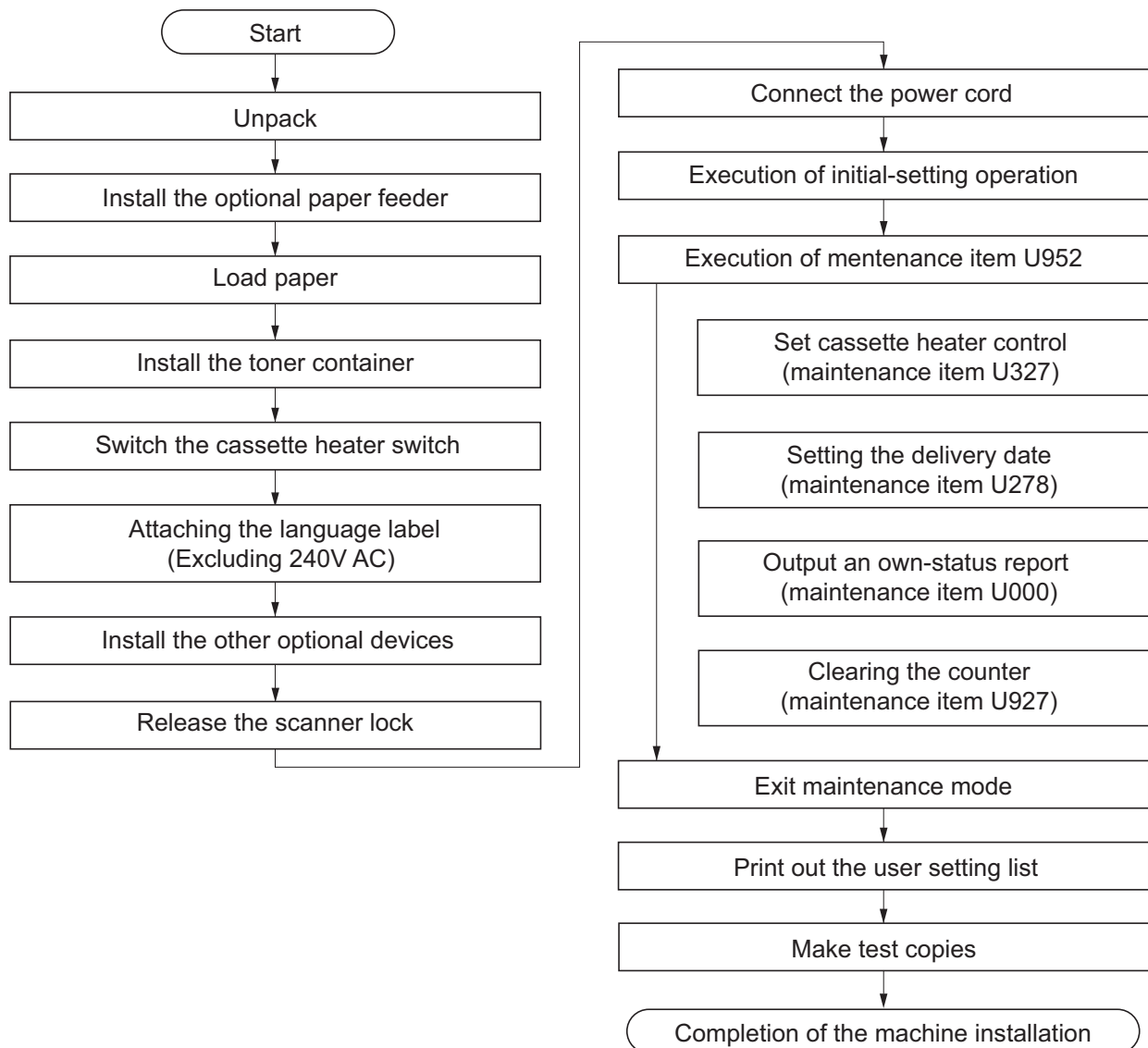
Select the good ventilated location.

Set the space which needed for the operation and the maintenance of the machine as following.



## 2 - 2 Unpacking and setting of the machine

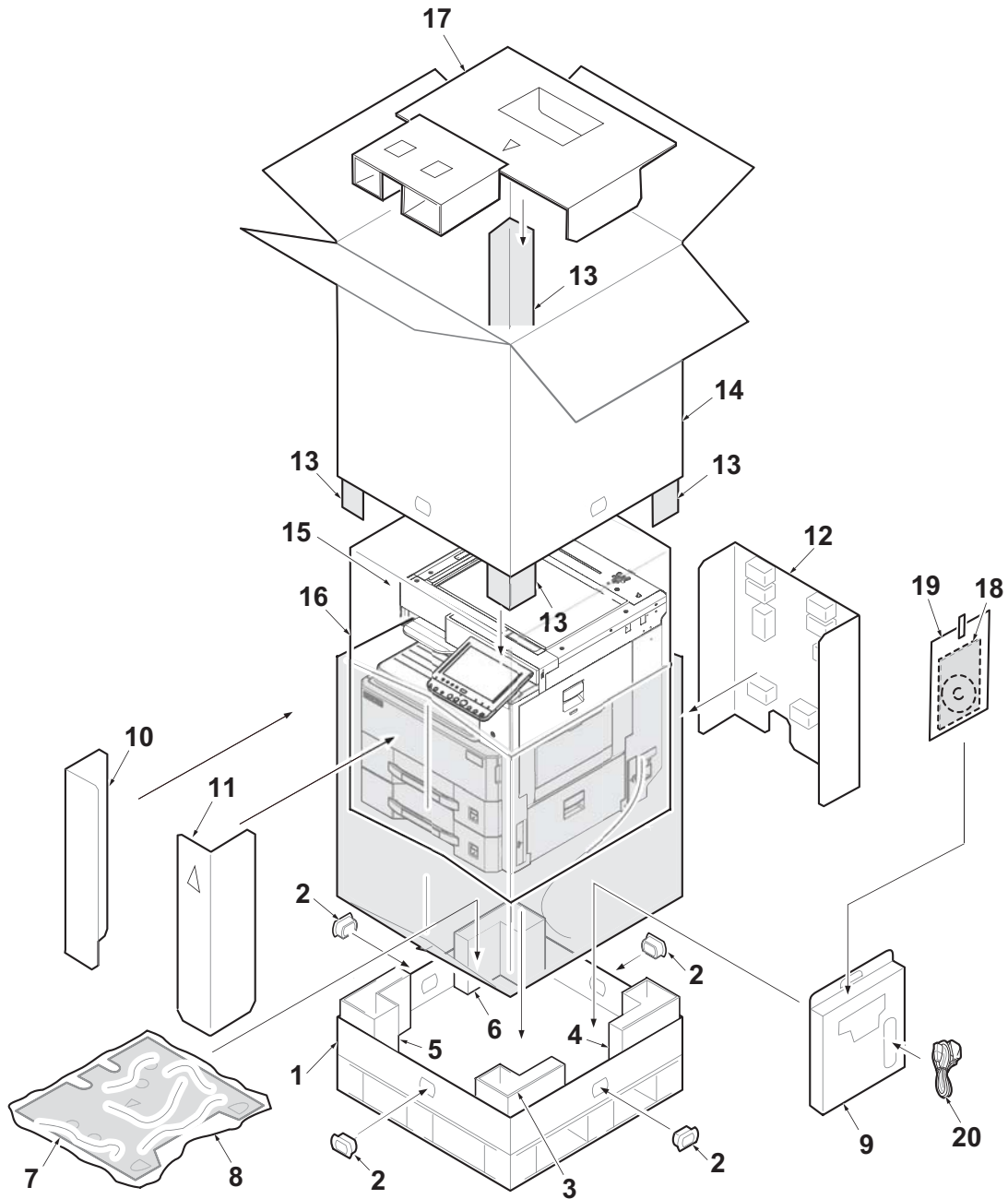
### Installation procedures





Machine unpacking

Take out the main unit and accessories from the packing case.  
Remove the tape and cushioning materials for packing from the main unit.

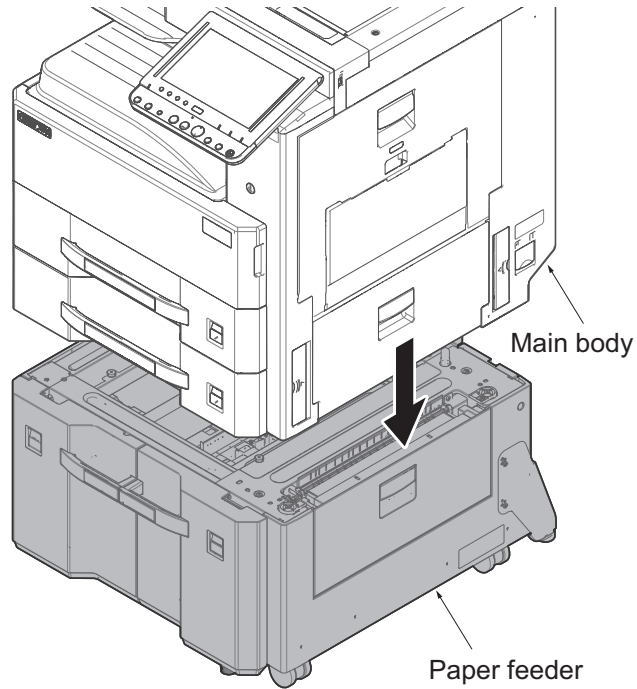


- |                          |                          |                       |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 Skid                   | 8 Plastic bag            | 15 Main unit          |
| 2 Hinge                  | 9 Accessory box          | 16 Plastic bag        |
| 3 Bottom pad right front | 10 Inner pad front left  | 17 Upper pad          |
| 4 Bottom pad right rear  | 11 Inner pad front right | 18 Install guide etc. |
| 5 Bottom pad left front  | 12 Inner pad rear        | 19 Plastic bag        |
| 6 Bottom pad left rear   | 13 Stay                  | 20 Power cord         |
| 7 Bottom pad center      | 14 Outer case            |                       |

Note: Make sure to install the main unit on a horizontal locations.

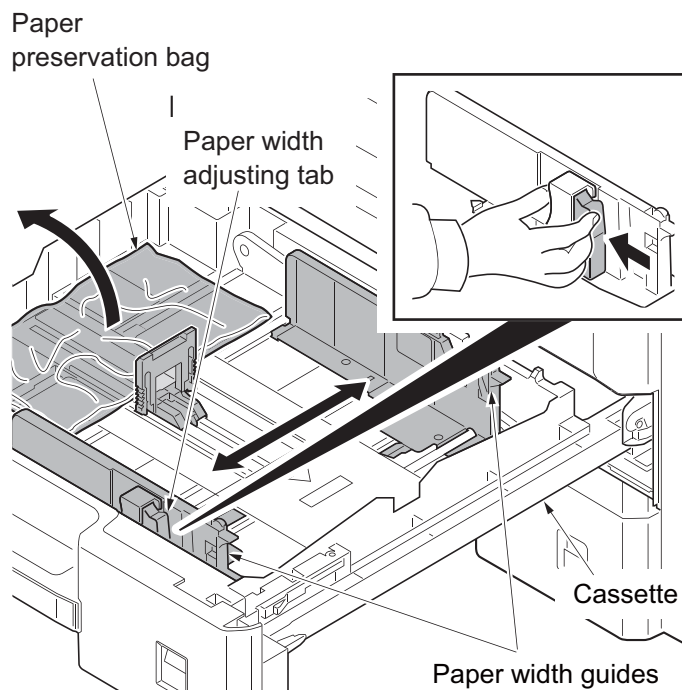
### Paper Feeder installment

- 1 In case of attaching the operational paper feed, install it.  
Refer the setting procedure of paper feed if you want to see the detail.

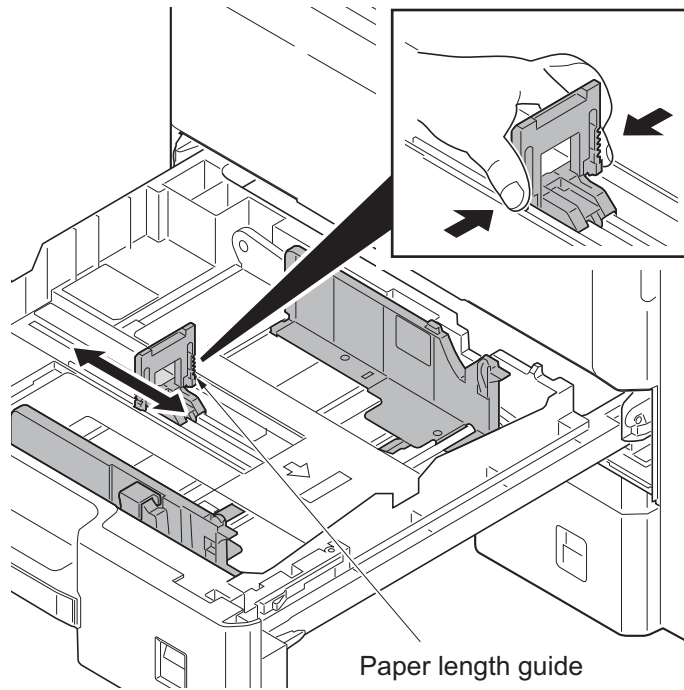


### Loading Paper

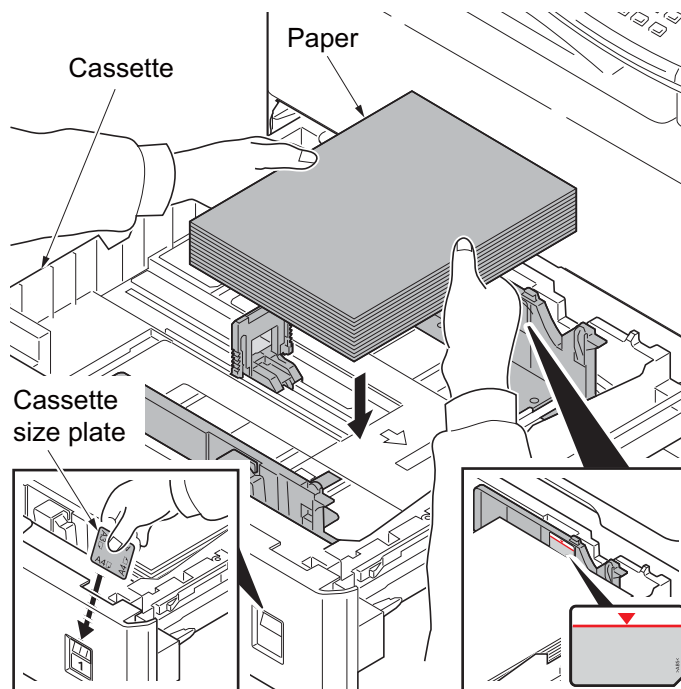
- 1 Pull out the paper storage bag.
- 2 Hold the switch knob of the wide size, adjust the paper width guide on the paper width.



- 3 Adjust the paper length guide on the paper length.

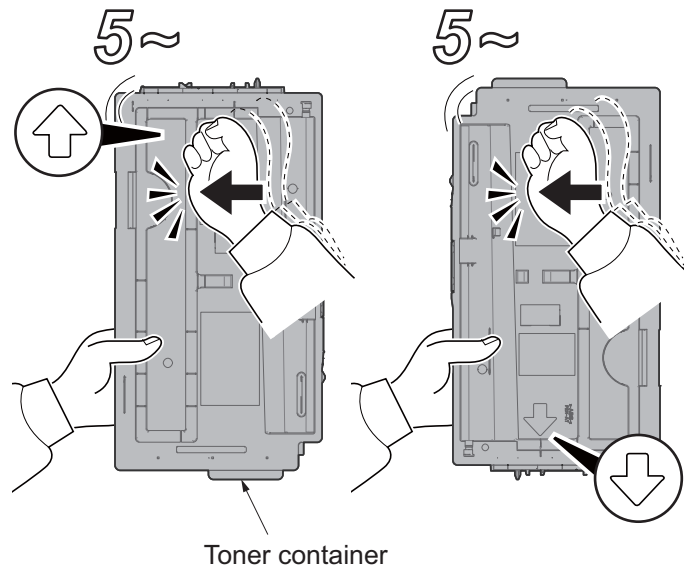


- 4 Set the paper in the cassette
- 5 Insert the cassette size plate.
- 6 Push in quietly the cassette.

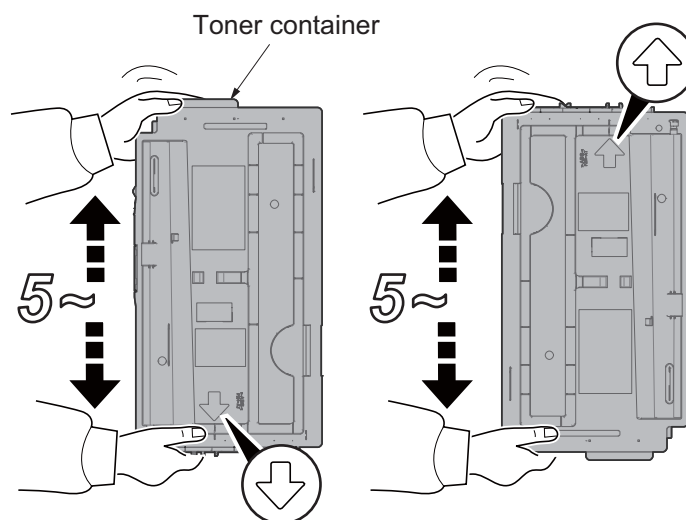


## Toner Container installment

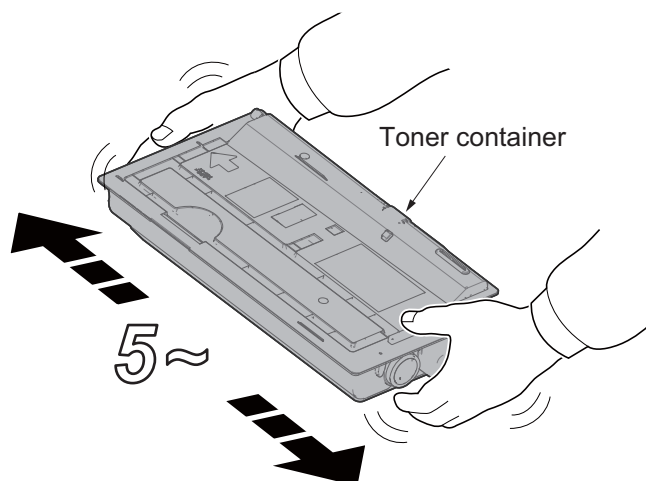
- 1 Open the front cover.
- 2 Turn the toner container vertically, beat the upper section more than five times.
- 3 Reverse high and low, beat the upper section more than five times.



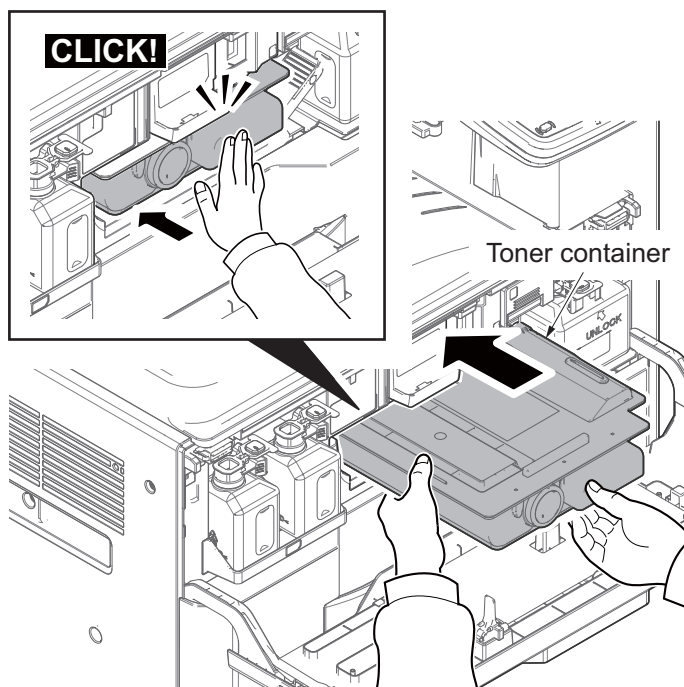
- 4 Turn the toner container vertically, shake the upper section more than five times.
- 5 Reverse high and low, shake the upper section more than five times.



- 6 Shake the toner container in sideways five or six times.

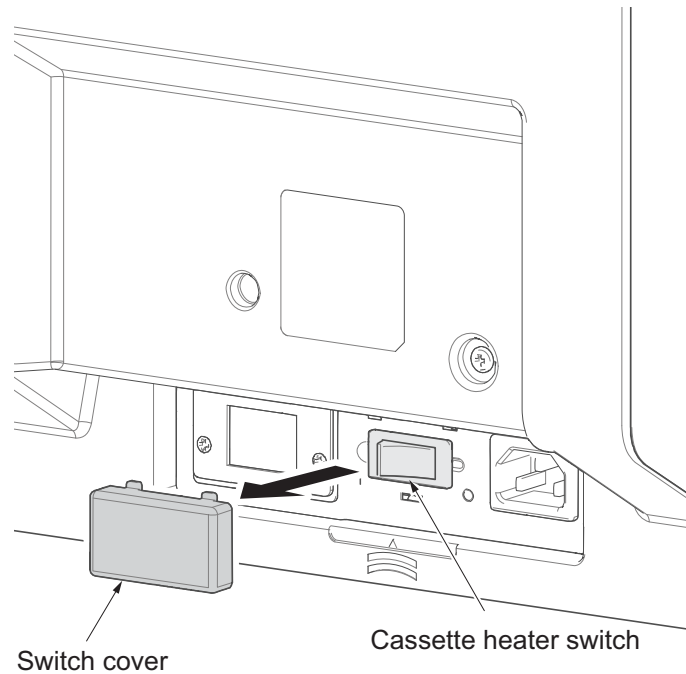


- 7 Push in the toner container along the guide of the main unit.  
Push in the back till being locked.



### The change of Cassette heater switch

- 1 Remove the cover of the cassette heater switch.
- 2 Change the cassette heater switch.  
\* In case of only using the cassette heater switch, switch ON.
- 3 Attach the removed switch cover.



In case of changing the switch, execute the maintenance mode U0327 after inputting the power source.

- 1 Input "10871087" using the numeric keys and set the maintenance mode.
- 2 Input "327" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.
- 3 Select [On] or [Off] and press the [Start] key.
- 4 Press the [Stop] key.

### Precaution for Loading Paper

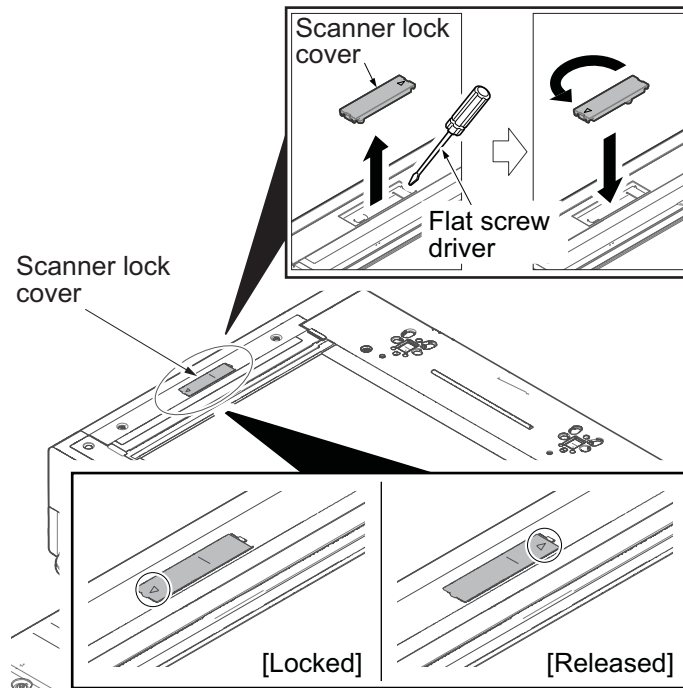
- If paper is left in the cassette for a long period, heat from the cassette heater may discolor it.

### The other optional equipment

In case of installing the other optional equipment (finisher, fax kit, etc), install respectively.

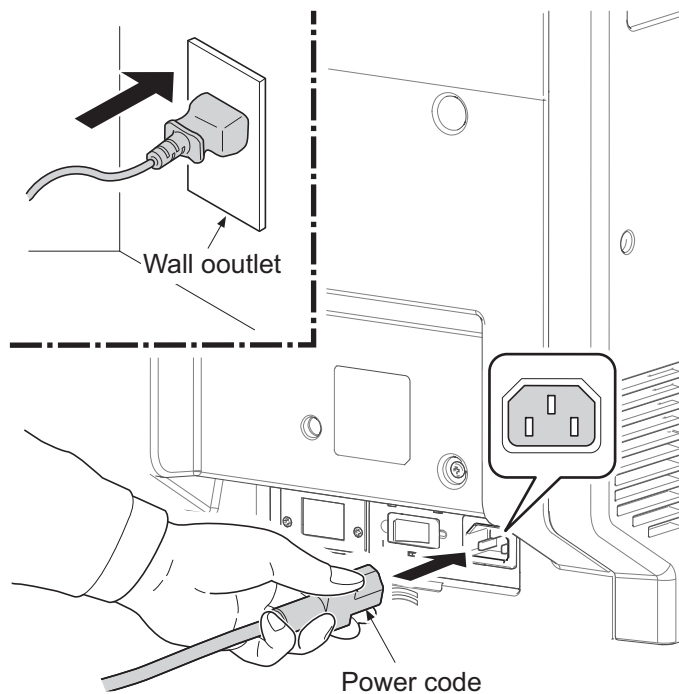
### The release of the scanner lock

- 1 Remove the scanner lock cover with a flat-bladed screwdriver.
  - 2 Reinstall the cover in the opposite direction, so both arrows face each other.
- Release the lock of the scanner unit.
  - If not releasing the lock, the error message (C3100) is displayed when inputting the power source.



### Connecting the Power Cord

- 1 Connect the power cord to the main unit and the outlet.
- 2 Fix the ground terminal of the power cord to the ground near the outlet by the screw.



**The execution of toner installment**

- 1 Turn the main power switch ON. The toner install is started.
  - \* It takes about ten minutes till the state which is to be able to copy in the initial power ON.
- 2 If the toner installation completes, the drive stops.

**The execution of Maintenance mode U952**

- 1 Input "10871087" using the numeric keys and set the maintenance mode.
  - 2 Input "952" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.
  - 3 Select the [Execute] function.
  - 4 Select [Full] and press the [Start] key.
- When executing this simulation, the execution history is recorded.
  - Include the following clause in the maintenance mode U952 [SETUP].  
If not executing the U952, set it in the following procedures.

**[Cassette heater control setting(the execution of the maintenance mode U327)]**

- 1 Input "10871087" using the numeric keys and set the maintenance mode.
- 2 Input "327" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.
- 3 Select "On".
- 4 Press the [Start] key and determine the setting.
- 5 Press the [Stop] key.

**[Setting the machine delivery date (Execution of the maintenance mode U278)]**

- 1 Input "278" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select "Today".
- 3 Press the [Start] key and set the machine delivery date.
- 4 Press the [Stop] key.

**[Output the status report (Execution of the maintenance mode U000)]**

- 1 Input "000" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Maintenance], press the [Start] key and output the status report.
- 3 Press the [Stop] key.



**[Clearing the counts (Execution of the maintenance mode U927)]**

- 1 Input "927" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the [Execute] function.
- 3 Press the [Start] key and clear the counts.
- 4 Press the [Stop] key.

## Release of the maintenance mode

- 1 Input "001" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.

## Output each kind of setting report for user,

- 1 Select "report output" from the system menu and can output each setting report of the user.

## The execution of the test copy.

- 1 Set the originals and test a copy.

## Install completion of the main unit.

## (1) Default setting of the copy mode.

The machine in case of the factory shipment is set as following.

| The maintenance mode No. | Contents  | Default setting in the factory shipping                                  |
|--------------------------|---|--|
| U250                     | The setting or the clear of the maintenance counts preset value | 600000<br>0<br>300000<br>300000<br>300000<br>300000                      |
| U251                     | The setting or the clear of the maintenance counts value        | 0/0/0/0/0/0  |
| U252                     | Destination setting   | Destination  |
| U253                     | The setting of the double or the single counts                  | DBL(A3/Ledger)   |
| U260                     | Switch of the counts of the paper feeding or the paper ejection | Eject  |
| U265                     | Destination setting   | -  |
| U278                     | The setting of the delivery date                                | -  |
| U285                     | The setting of the service status page                          | On   |
| U286                     | Optional language setting                                       | 0/0/0/0/0  |
| U287                     | Automatically function  | Off<br>Off<br>Off<br>Off<br>Off<br>Off<br>Off<br>Off<br>Off<br>Off<br>On |
| U326                     | The setting of the black streaks clear display                  | On/8   |
| U327                     | Cassette heater control setting                                 | Off  |
| U332                     | The size coefficient setting<br>Rate                            | 1.0  |
| U340                     | The application mode<br>Image<br>Copy<br>Printer                | 0<br>10<br>-   |
| U341                     | The setting of the exclusive printer cassette tray.             | Off/Off/Off/Off  |
| U343                     | The dual prior mode setting                                     | Off  |
| U345                     | Display setting of the close inspection                         | 0  |
| U346                     | The sleep operation setting                                     | On   |

## (2) Optional unit installation

Install necessary optional units in the main unit by referring to the installation procedures.

| Category | Product name                    | 40 ppm model | 32 ppm model | Page |
|----------|---------------------------------|--------------|--------------|------|
| DP       | DP-7100 / (Document processor)  | ○            | ○            | 9-16 |
|          | DP-7110 / (Document processor)  | ○            | ○            | 9-17 |
|          | DP-7120 / (Document processor)  | ○            | ○            | 9-18 |
| PF       | PF-791 / (500 x 2 Paper feeder) | ○            | ○            | 9-19 |
|          | PF-810 / (3000-sheet deck)      | ○            | ○            | 9-20 |
| DF       | DF-791 / (3000-sheet finisher)  | ○            | ○            | 9-21 |
|          | DF-7120 / (1000-sheet finisher) | ○            | ○            | 9-22 |
|          | AK-740 / (Bridge unit)          | ○            | ○            | 9-23 |
|          | MT-730 / (Mailbox)              | ○            | ○            | 9-24 |
|          | PH-7A/C/D / (Punch unit)        | ○            | ○            | 9-25 |
| FAX kit  | FAX System 12                   | ○            | ○            | 9-26 |

## 2 - 3 Installing the optional partst

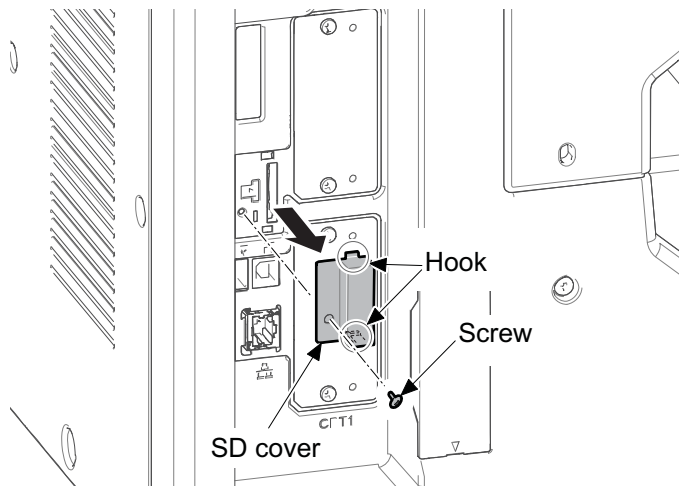
### (1) SD/SDHC memory card

#### Reading the SD/SDHC memory Card

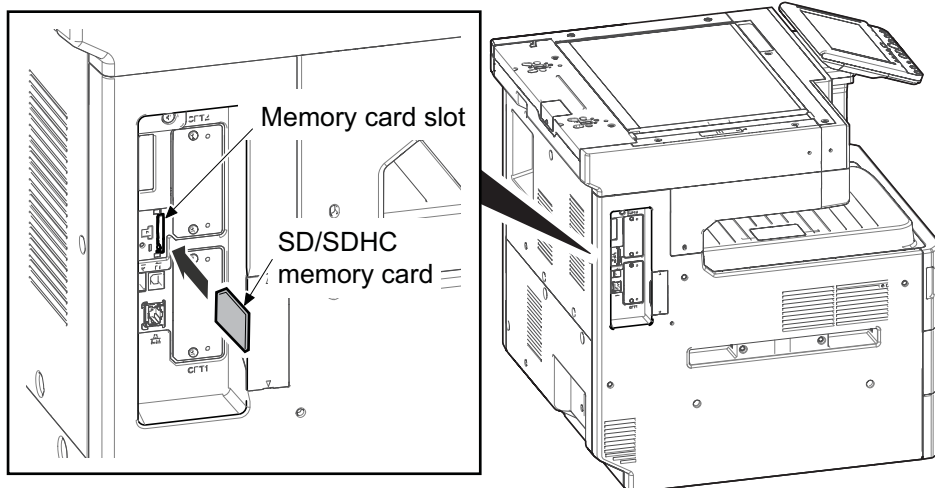
The contents of the SD/SDHC memory card are read into the main unit after turning the power on.

#### SD/SDHC memory card installation

- 1 Turn off the main unit and disconnect the power cord and all interface cables.
  - Before inserting the memory card, make sure that the power switch is turned off.
- 2 Remove the screw (M3x8).
- 3 Release the hook in the direction of the arrow and then remove the SD card cover.



- 4 Install an SD/SDHC memory card in the memory card slot.



- 5 Reattach the covers.

#### Formatting an SD/SDHC Memory Card

To use an unused SD/SDHC card, you must first format it.

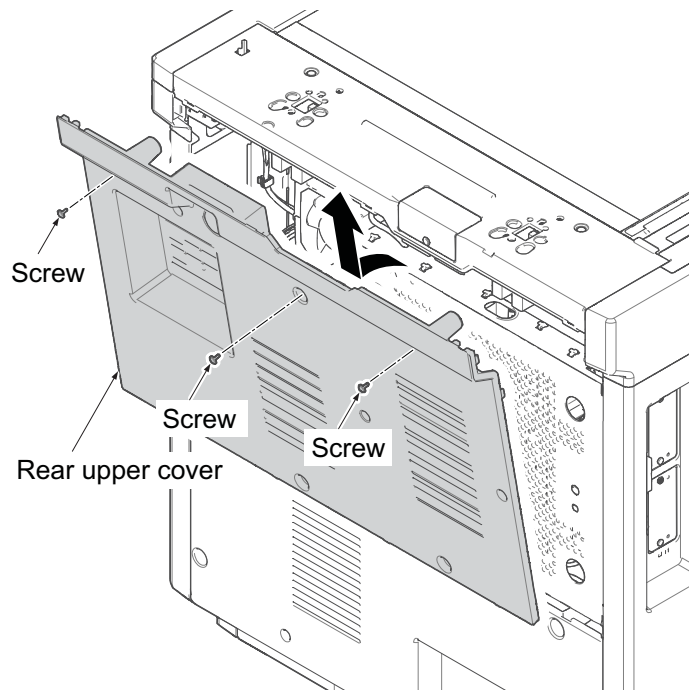
- Formatting will delete all existing data on the SD card.
- If you have installed an application, do not format the SD card to avoid the removal of the application in the SD card.
- Format it with a PC or Prescribe command in advance.

## (2) Hard Disk (HD-12): Except 120 V in 32 ppm model

Installation of the hard disk requires the following parts.

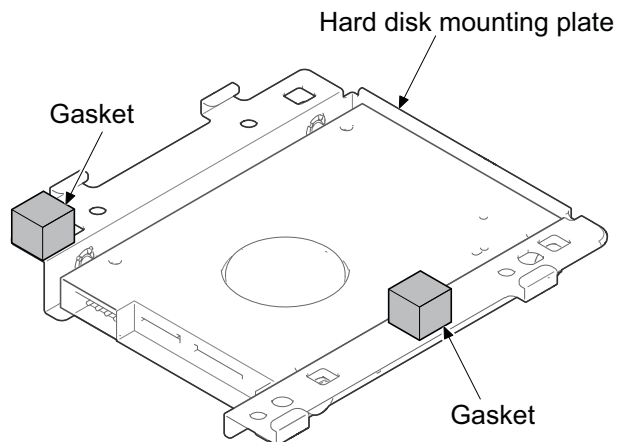
| Parts             | Number | Parts number         |
|-------------------|--------|----------------------|
| Hard Disk (HD-12) | 1      | 1503RS0UN0 (Product) |

- 1 Turn off the main unit and disconnect the power cord and all interface cables.
- 2 Detach three screws.
- 3 Open the upper section of the rear upper cover and detach in the direction of the arrow.

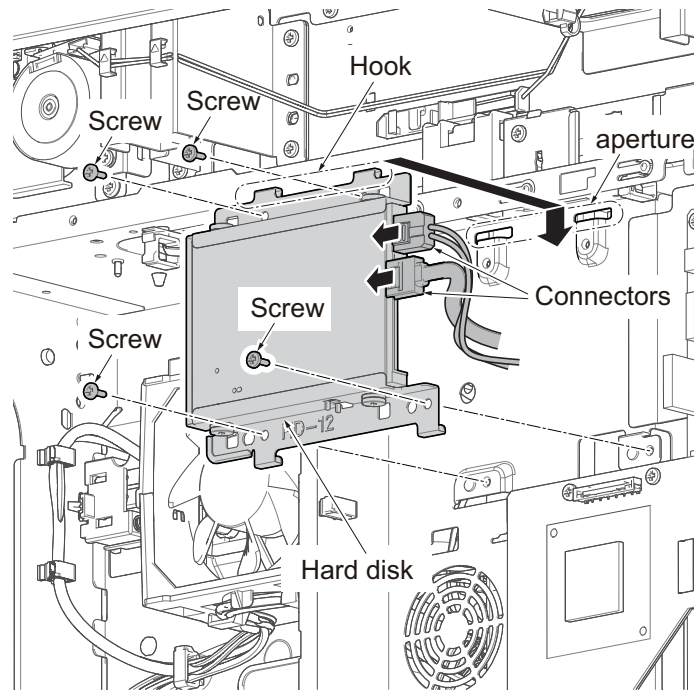


✔ **Important**

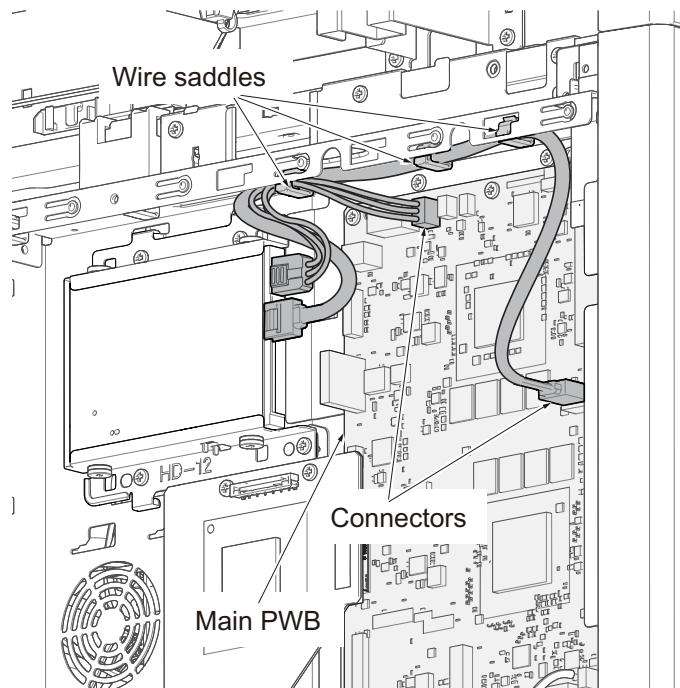
Check two gaskets are affixed to the hard disk mounting plate before installing it.



- 4 Connect two connectors of the cables to the hard disk.
- 5 Latch two hooks on the aperture and attach the hard disk with four screws (M3x8).



- 6 Connect two connectors of the hard disk to two connectors of the main PWB.
- 7 Fix the wire with three wire saddles.



- 8 Reattach the parts in the original position.
  - When installing a new HDD, it is automatically formatted at the first start-up.
  - The memory LED blinks when forming a preview image in an HDD after restart if data exists in the FAX box.

## Formatting a hard disk

- Please follow the procedure as necessary.
  - 1 Input "10871087" using the numeric keys to enter the maintenance mode.
  - 2 Input "024" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.
  - 3 Select [Format].
  - 4 Select [Full].
  - 5 Select [Execute].
  - 6 Press the [Start] key to initialize.
  - 7 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.
- When an optional HDD is inserted into the main unit for the first time, it must be formatted before use.
  - Formatting will delete all existing data on the HDD.

### (3) Installation of attaching Gigabit Ethernet extension kit

Giga Ethernet extention kit installation requires the following parts.

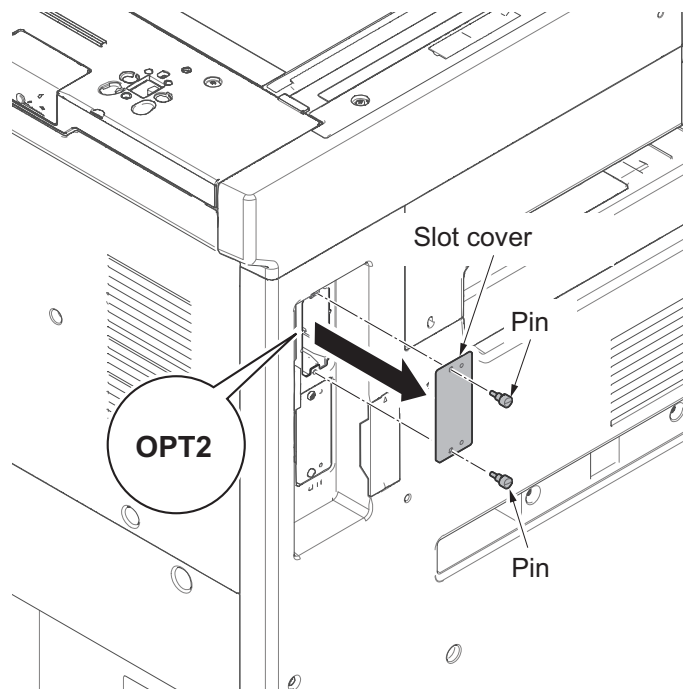
| Parts                                  | Number | Parts number         |
|--|--------|----------------------|
| Gigabit Ethernet extension kit (IB-50) | 1      | 1505JV0UN0 (Product) |

### (4) Wireless LAN interface installation

Wireless LAN interface installation requires the following parts.

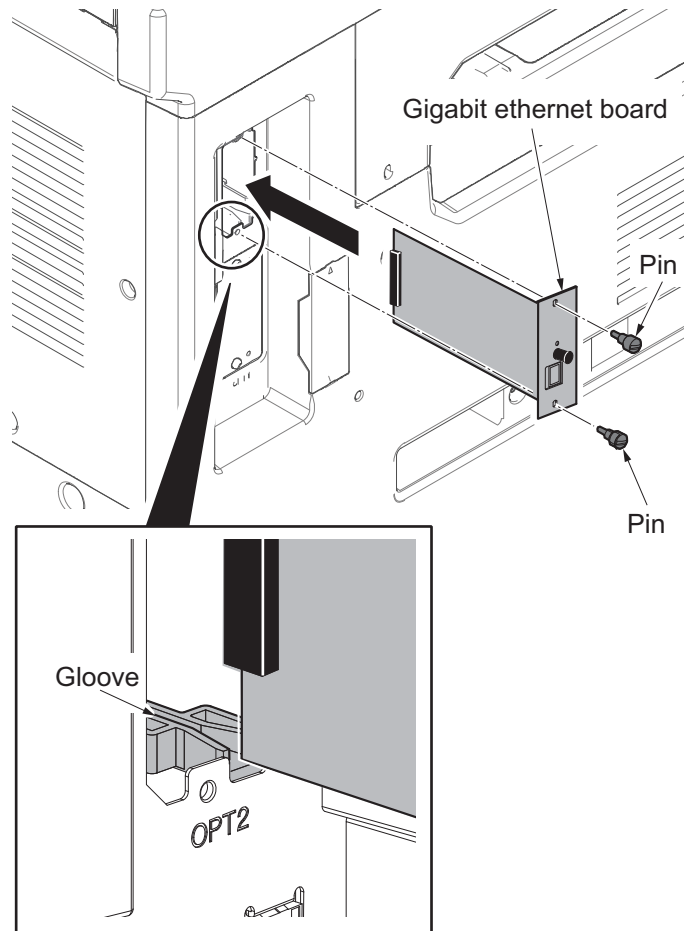
| Parts                              | Number | Parts number         |
|------------------------------------|--------|----------------------|
| Wireless LAN interface kit (IB-51) | 1      | 1505J50UN0 (Product) |

- 1 After checking to press the power source key, put out the power source lamp and memory lamp, turn the main power switch OFF and unplug the power plug.
- 2 Detach two pins, remove the OPT2 slot cover.

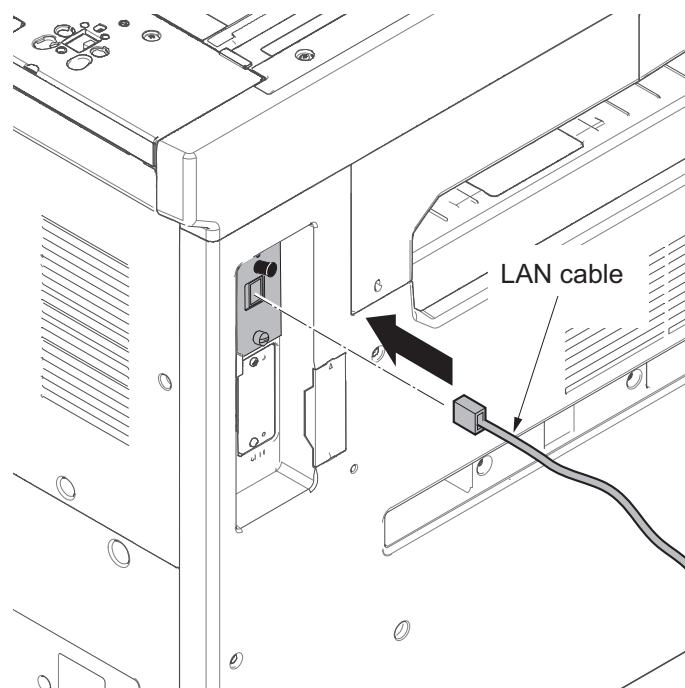




- 3 Insert the kit PWB along the OPT2 gulf, fix to two pins which detached in step 2.
  - Do not touch directly to the terminal of the kit PWB.
  - In case of inserting the kit PWB, hold the top and bottom or the protuberance of the PWB.



- 4 Insert the LAN cable into the interface conncctor.



## (5) Wireless LAN interface (IB-35) : Except 120 V model

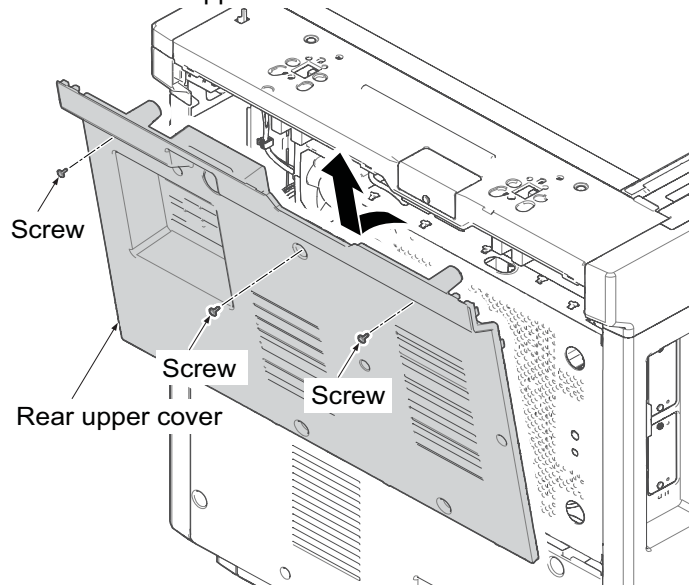
Wireless LAN interface installation requires the following parts.

| Parts                              | Number | Parts number         |
|------------------------------------|--------|----------------------|
| Wireless LAN interface kit (IB-35) | 1      | 1503RR0UN0 (Product) |

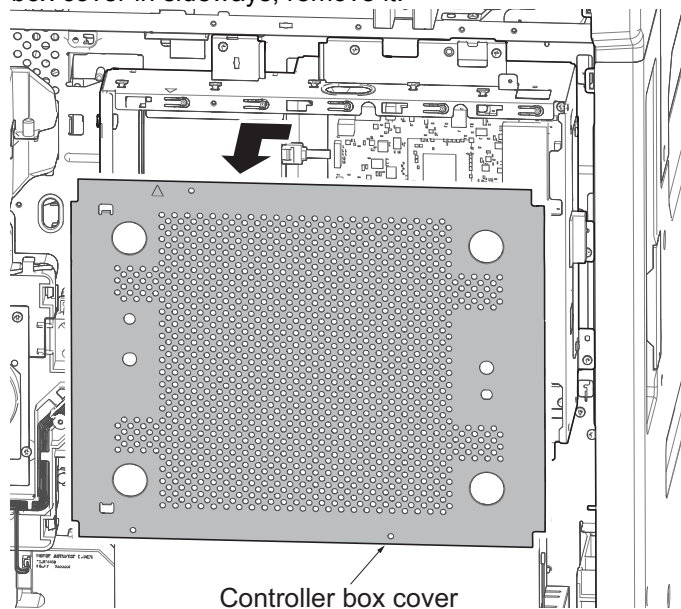
**Bundled parts of Wireless LAN interface**

PWB unit 1 pc  
Screw (M3x8) 1 pc

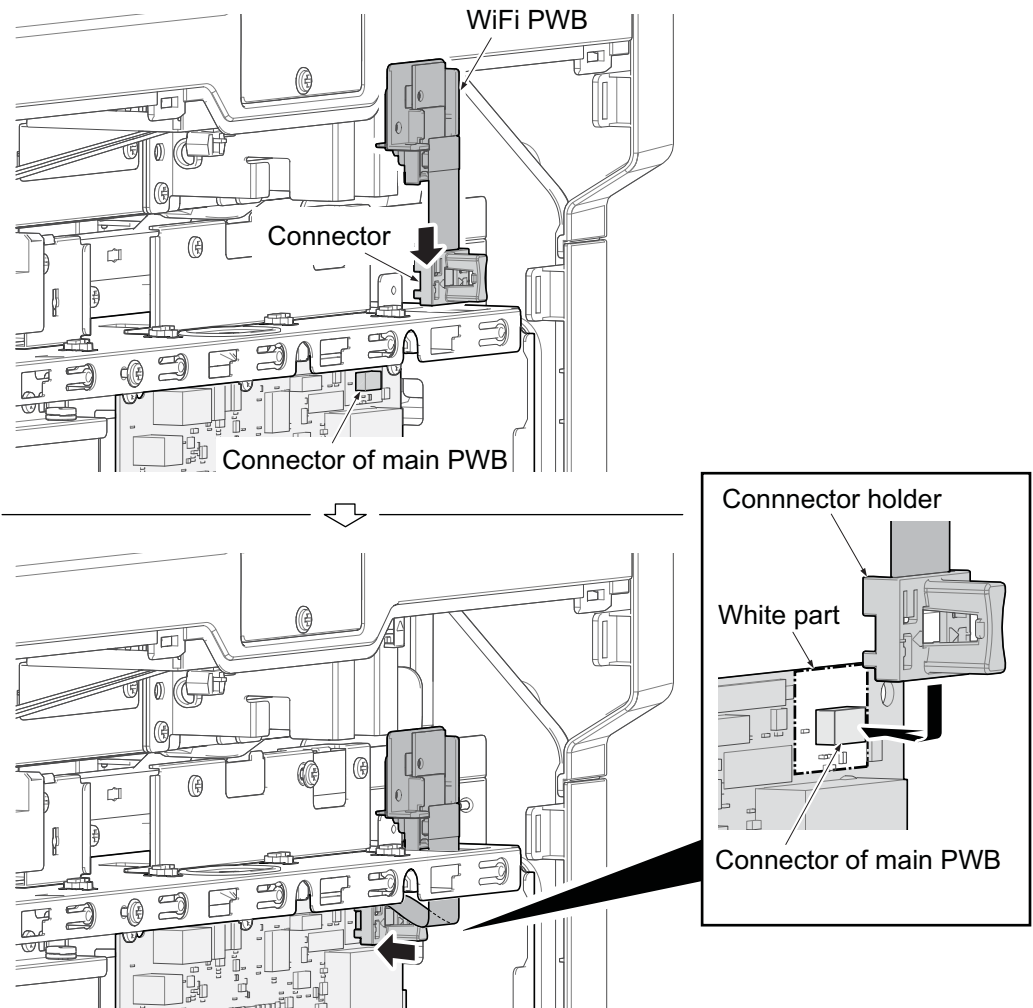
- 1 Turn off the main unit and disconnect the power cord and all interface cables.
- 2 Detach three screws.
- 3 Open the upper section of the rear upper cover and detach in the direction of the arrow.



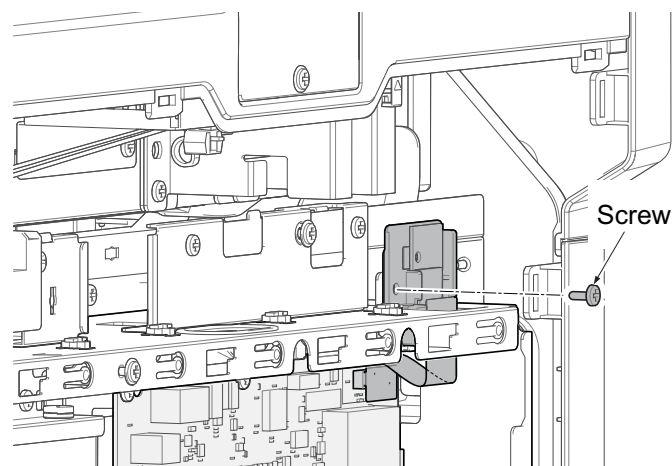
- 4 Slide the controller box cover in sideways, remove it.



- 5 Insert the connector of WiFi PWB into the controller box.
- 6 Connect the WiFi PWB connector into the main PWB connector.
  - Insert the connector while aligning the white part of the main PWB to the outer shape of the connector holder



- 7 Attach the WiFi PWB by using one screw.
- 8 Reattach the removed parts in the original position.



## (6) Document table (DT-730(B))

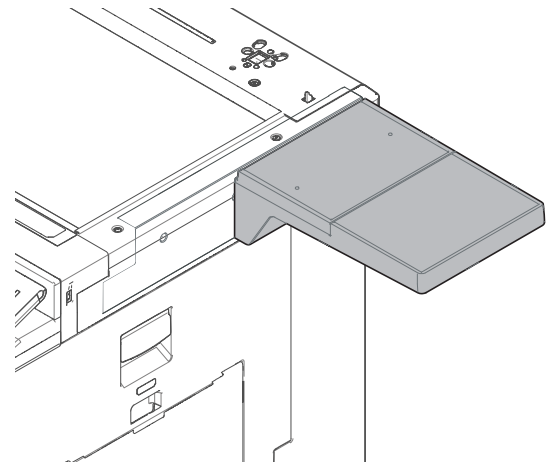
Document table installation requires the following parts.

| Parts                      | Number | Parts number         |
|----------------------------|--------|----------------------|
| Document table (DT-730(B)) | 1      | 1902LC0UN2 (Product) |

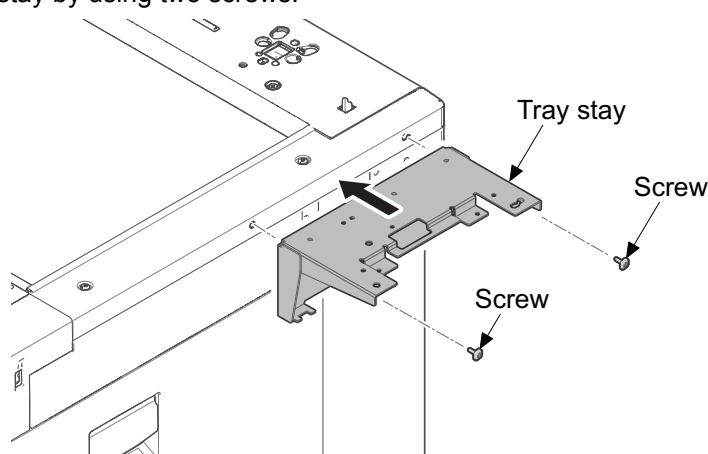
**Bundled parts of Document table**

|   |      |
|---|------|
| Tray stay                                 | 1 pc |
| Tray mounting plate                       | 1 pc |
| Tray cover                                | 1 pc |
| Tray lower cover                          | 1 pc |
| Tray fixing plate                         | 1 pc |
| Sheet                                     | 2 pc |
| Pin                                       | 2 pc |
| Nut M4 *1                                 | 2 pc |
| Screw (M4x8 screw with the binding head)  | 7 pc |
| Screw (M4x14 screw with the binding head) | 2 pc |

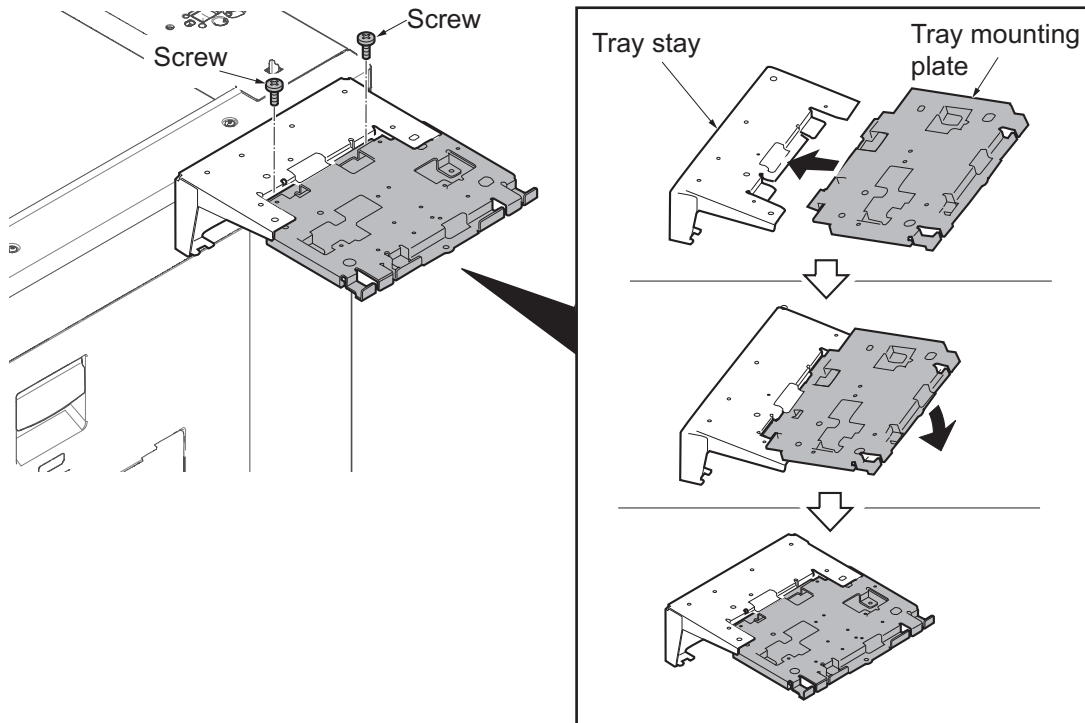
\*1: Not used in this model.



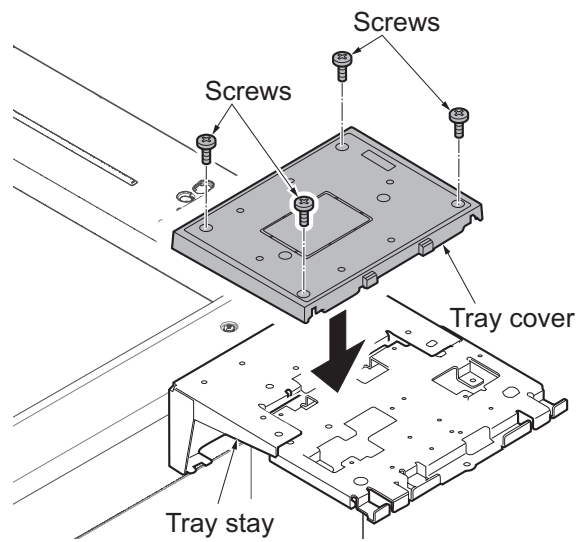
- 1 Turn the power switch off and disconnect the power plug.
- 2 Attach the tray stay by using two screws.



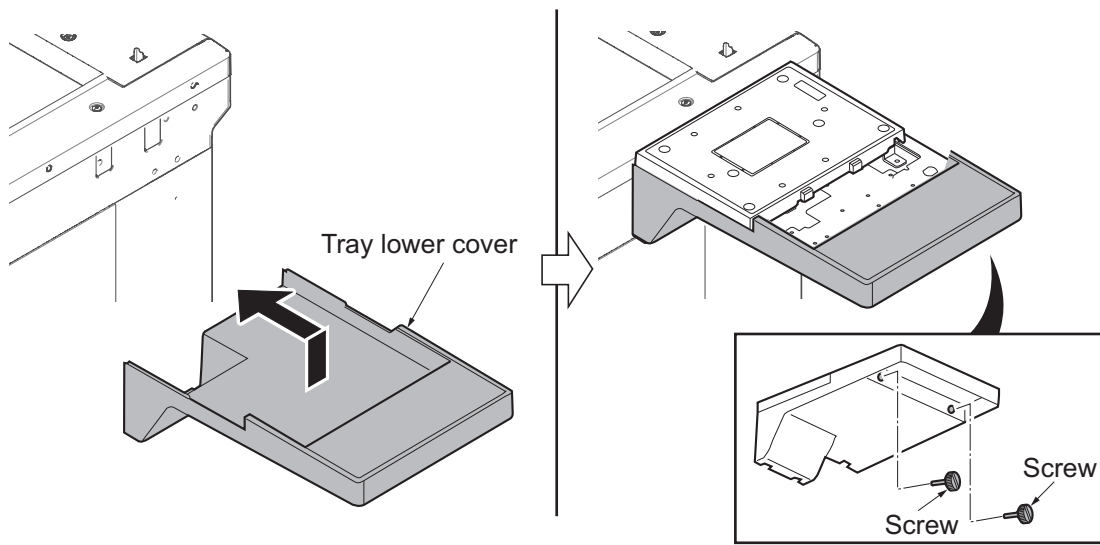
- 3 Insert the mounting plate into the tray stay by using two screws.



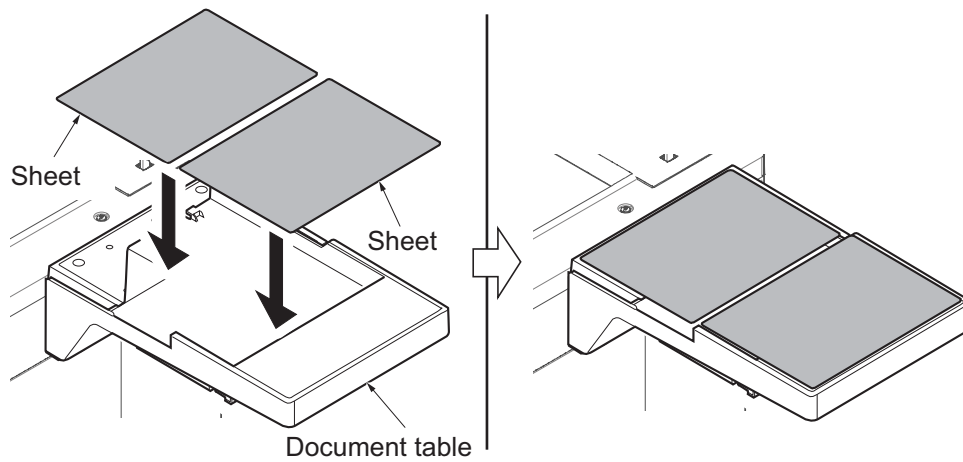
- 4 Attach the tray cover to the tray stay by using four screws.



- 5 Attach the tray lower cover.
- 6 Fix the tray lower cover by using two pins.



- 7 Affix the two sheets on the document table.



## (7) Numeric Keypad (NK-7100 / NK-7110)

Numeric Keypad installation requires the following parts.

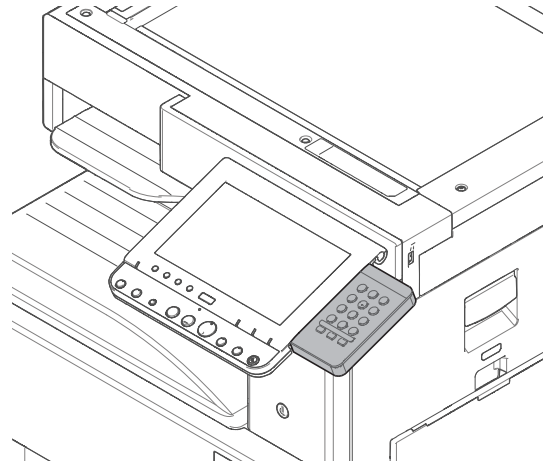
| Parts                       | Number | Parts number         |
|-----------------------------|--------|----------------------|
| Numeric Keypad (NK-7100) *1 | 1      | 1903RT0UN0 (Product) |
| Numeric Keypad (NK-7110) *2 | 1      | 1903RT0US0 (Product) |

\*1: Except KDA, \*2: KDA only

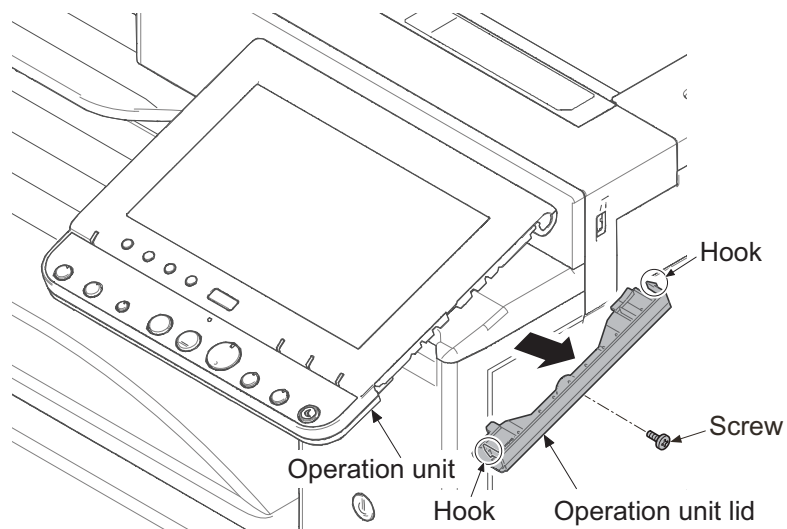
## Bundled parts of Numeric Keypad

Numeric Keypad 1 pc  
 Numeric Keypad cover 1 pc  
 Screw (M3x8) 2 pc  
 Label 1 pc

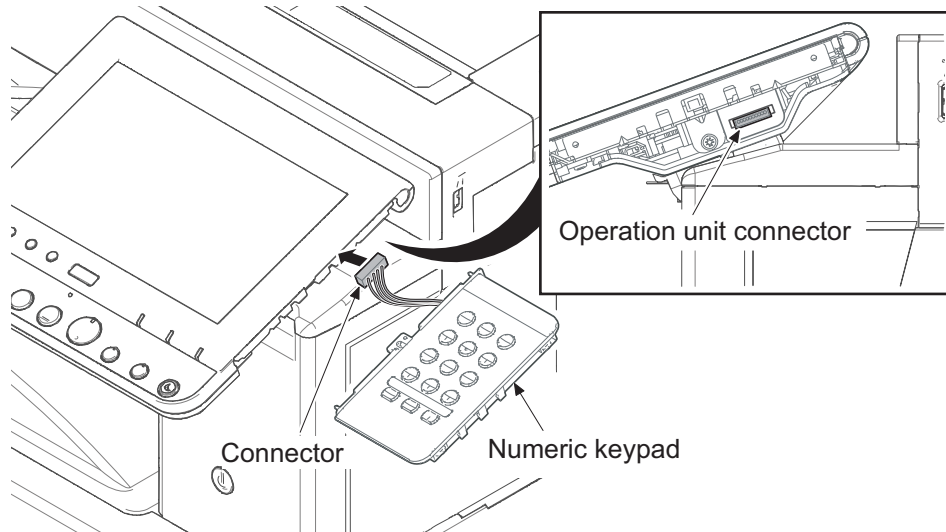
\*:NK-7100 only



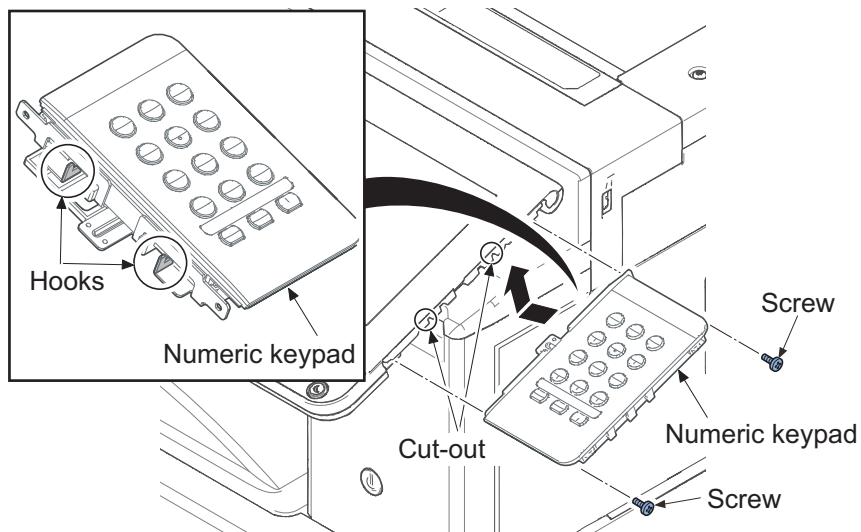
1. Turn the power switch off and disconnect the power plug.
2. Remove one screw from the operation unit.
3. Release two hooks, and then remove the operation unit lid in the direction of the arrow.



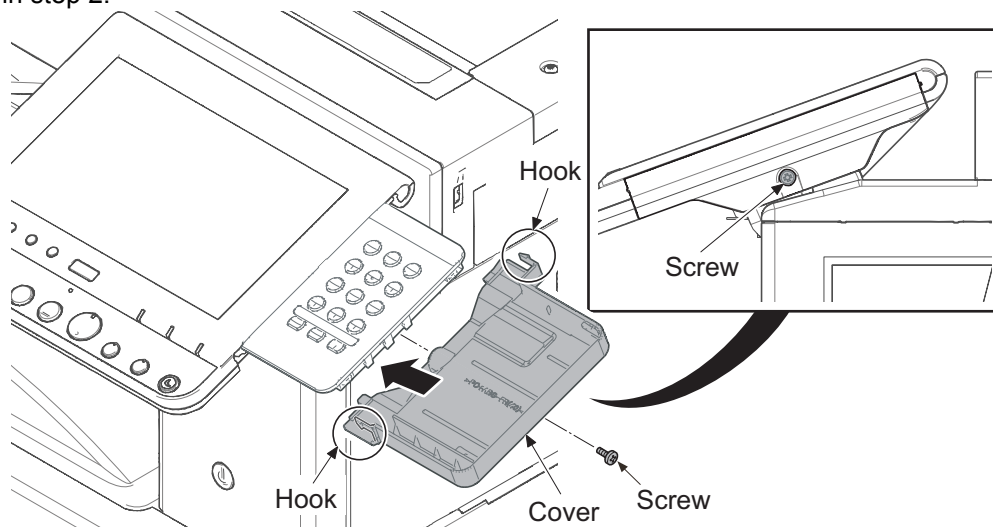
- 1 Connect the connector of the numeric keypad to the connector of the operation unit.



- 2 Latch two hooks on the cut-out of the operation unit, and then attach the numeric keypad by using two screws.

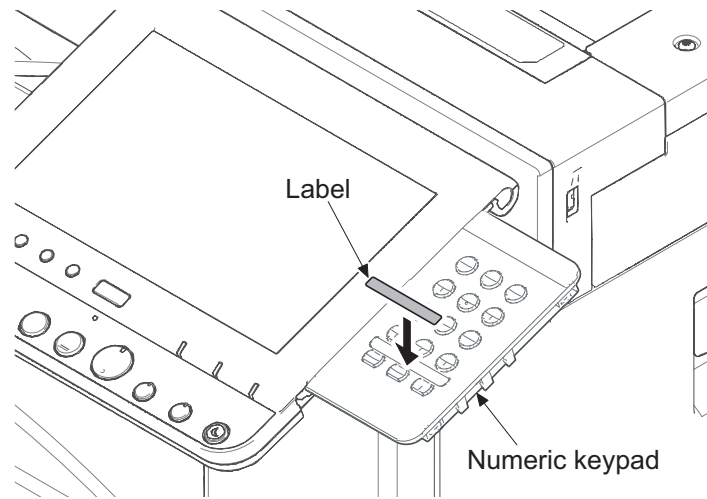


- 3 Slide the cover in the direction of the arrow and latch two hooks, and attach by using one screw which removed in step 2.





- 4 Affix the label on the numeric keypad. (Except 120v model)



(8) USB keyboard (Except 100V model)

USB keyboard installation requires the following parts.

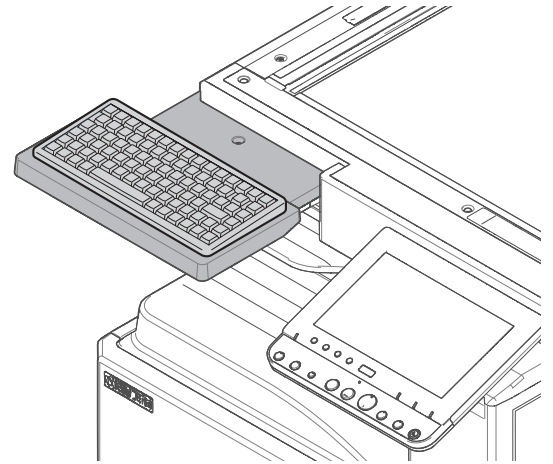
| Parts              | Number | Parts number         |
|--------------------|--------|----------------------|
| Keyboard holder 10 | 1      | 1709AN0UN0 (Product) |
| USB keyboard       | 1      | -                    |

**Bundled parts of Keyboard holder 10**

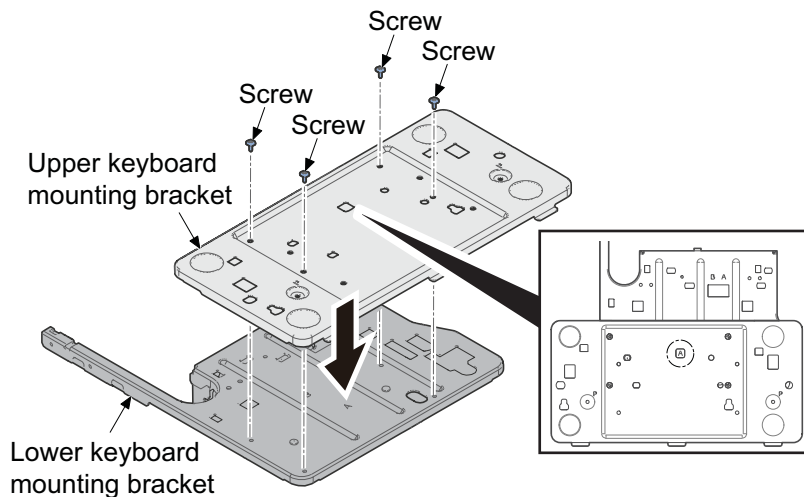
|                                       |         |
|---------------------------------------|---------|
| Upper keyboard mounting bracket ..... | 1 pc    |
| Lower keyboard mounting bracket ..... | 1 pc    |
| Upper keyboard cover .....            | 1 pc    |
| Lower keyboard cover .....            | 1 pc    |
| Upper lid .....                       | 1 pc    |
| Lower lid .....                       | 1 pc    |
| Hook-and-loop fastener .....          | 2 pairs |
| Binding band .....                    | 1 pc    |
| Screws (M3x8 S-tite)*1 .....          | 6 pcs   |
| Screws (M3x8 S-tite Black) .....      | 2 pcs   |
| Screws (M3x8 P-tite) .....            | 2 pcs   |
| Screws (M4x8 S-tite)*2 .....          | 4 pcs   |
| Screws (M4x8 S-tite) .....            | 2 pcs   |

\*1: 4 pc is used for this model.

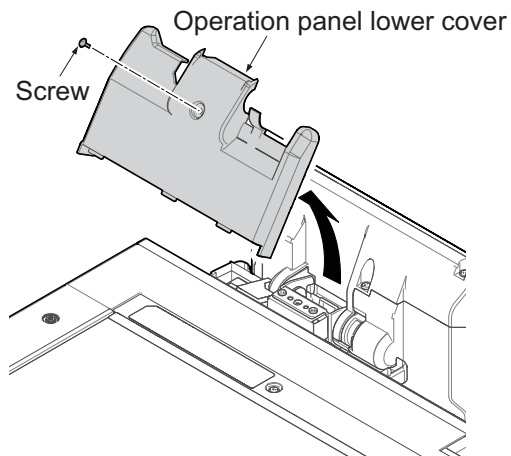
\*2: Not used in this model.



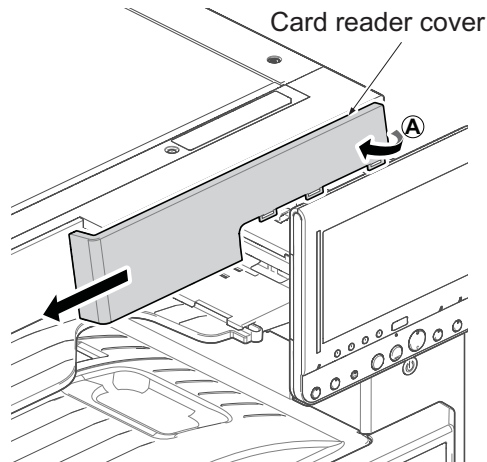
- 1 Turn the power switch off and disconnect the power plug.
- 2 Attach the upper keyboard mounting bracket onto the lower keyboard mounting bracket by using the four screws.
  - Align the location of the mark A and attach.



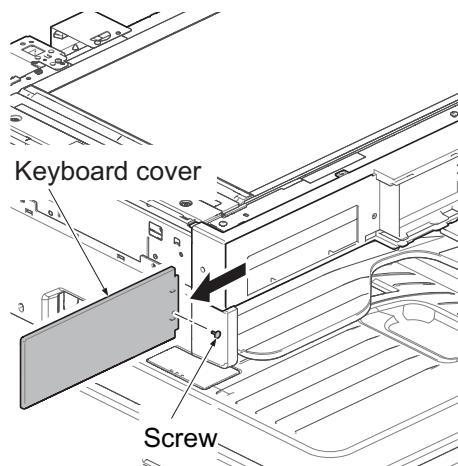
- 3 Raise the operation panel.
- 4 Detach the screw and remove the operation panel lower cover.



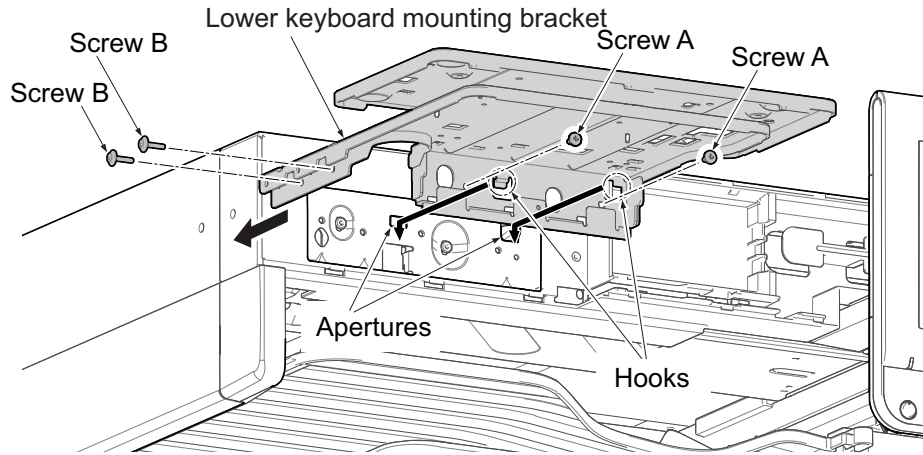
- 5 Twist in front of the A section of the card reader cover, remove to pull in the left direction.



- 6 Remove one screw, slide the keyboard cover in the direction of the arrow and remove it.

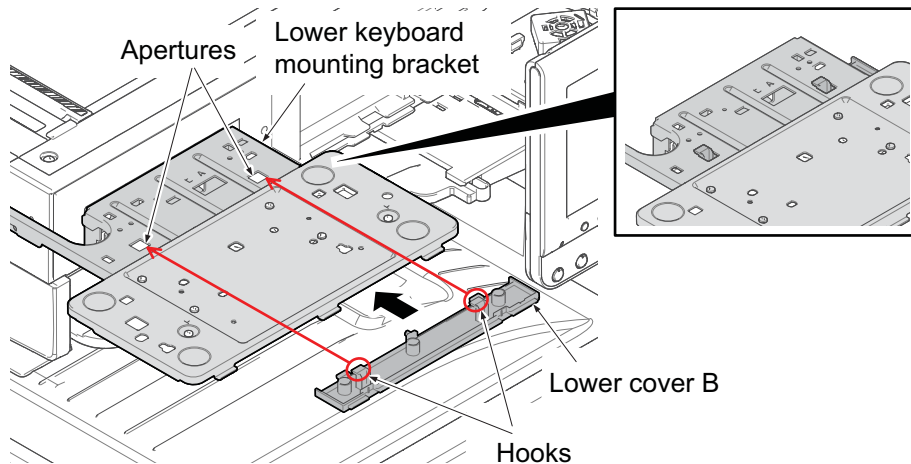


- 7 Latch two hooks of the lower keyboard mounting on two apertures.
- 8 Attach the lower keyboard mounting bracket by using two screws A(M4x8).
- 9 Fix the arms of the lower keyboard mounting bracket by using two screws B(M4x14).

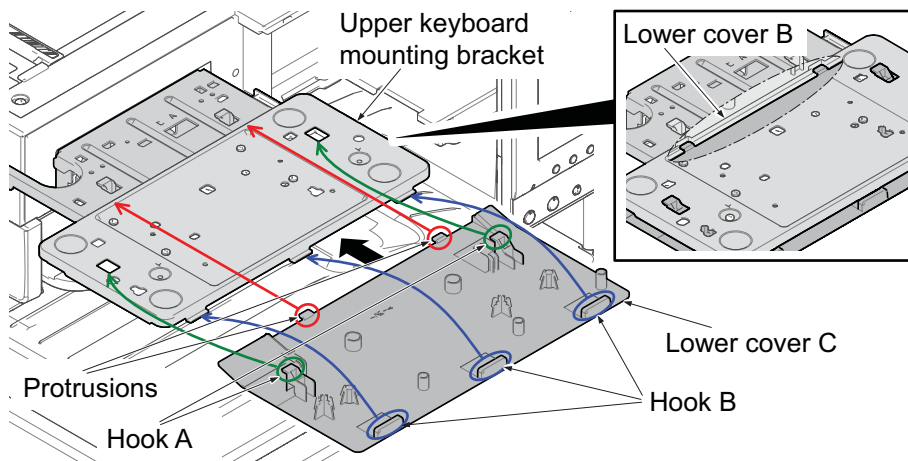


- 10 Attach to latch two hooks of lower cover B in the aperture of the lower keyboard mounting bracket.

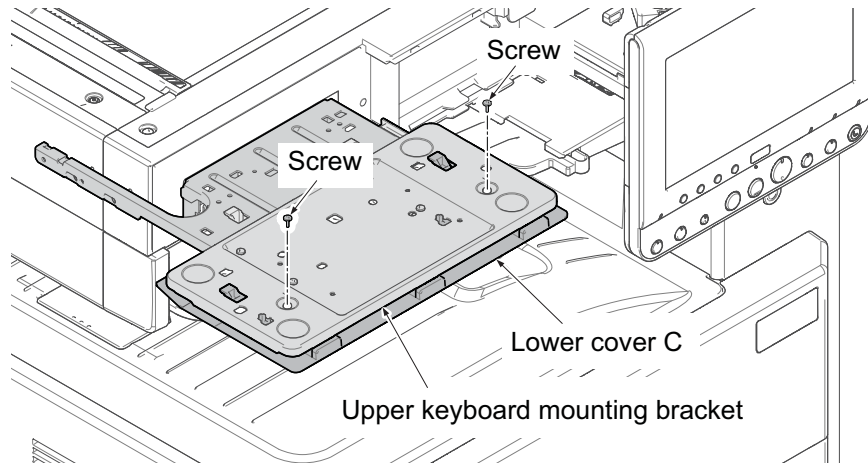
- Attach it while the hooks come to the punch mark B.



- 11 Insert two protrusions of the lower cover C, two hooks A and three hooks B into the cut-out of the lower cover B, the aperture and the protrusion of the upper keyboard mounting bracket.

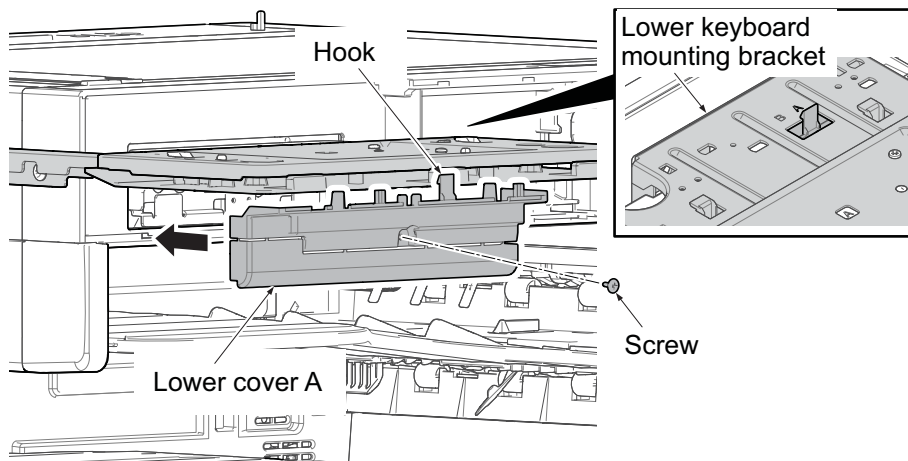


12 Attach the lower cover C on the keyboard mounting bracket by using two screws.

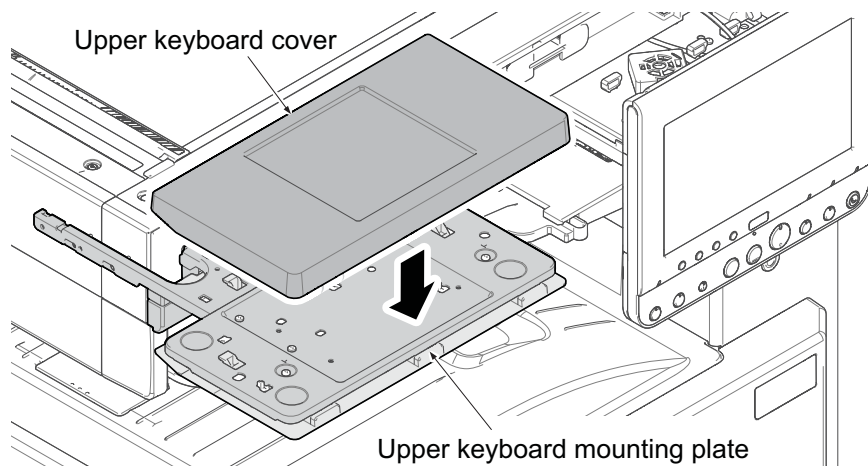


13 Attach to latch the hook of the lower cover A in the hole of the keyboard mounting bracket by using one screw.

- Attach it while the hooks come to the punch mark B.

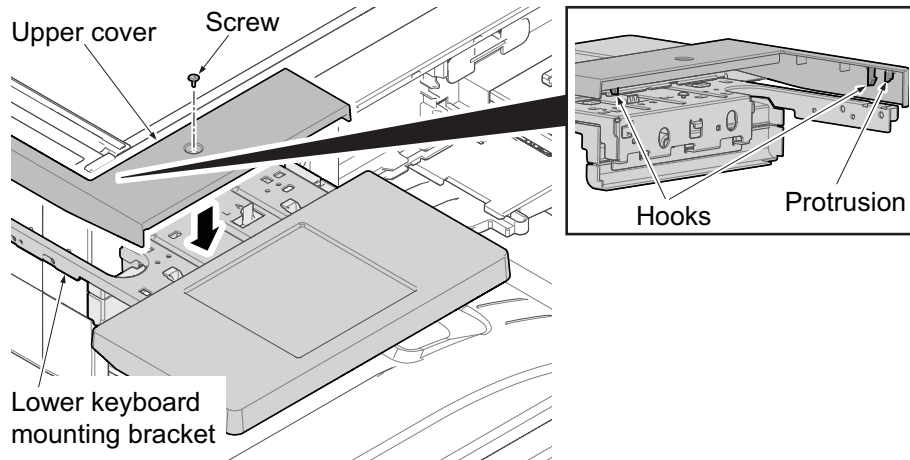


14 Insert the upper keyboard cover into the upper keyboard mounting plate and attach it.

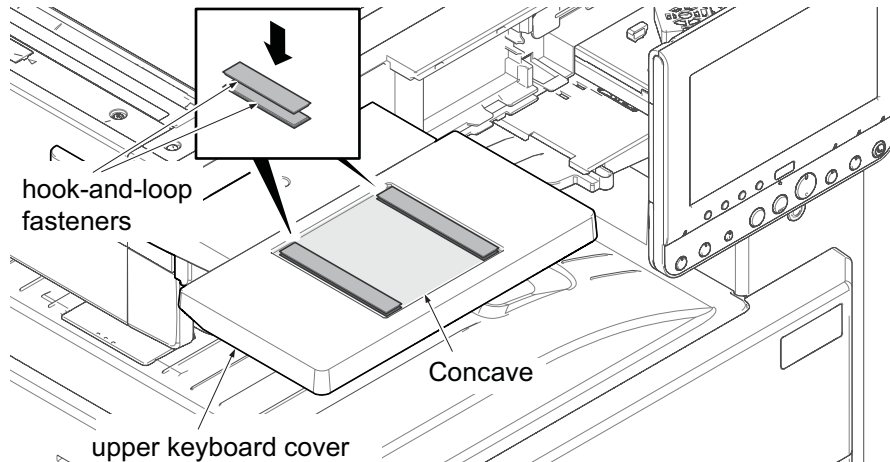


15 Put two hooks and the protrusion together and attach the upper cover to the lower keyboard mounting bracket.

16 Fix the upper cover to the lower keyboard mounting bracket by using the one screw.

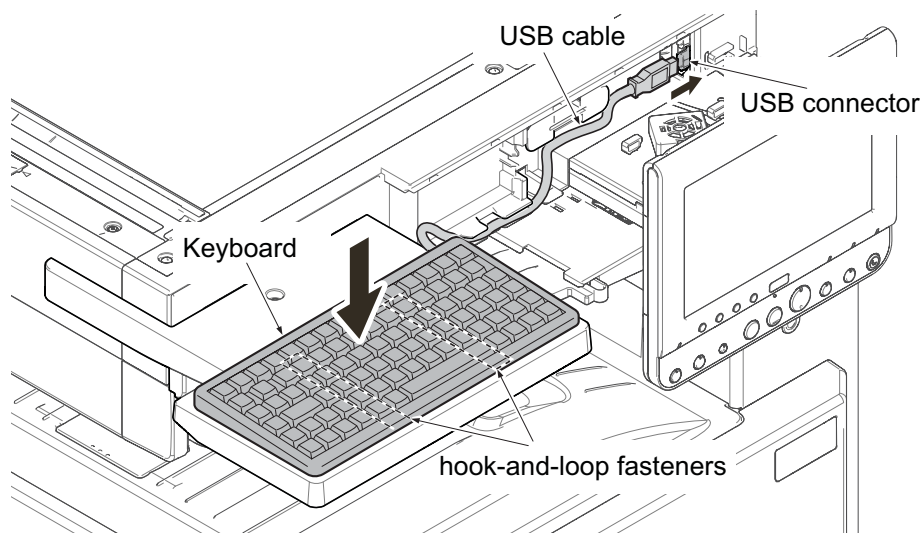


17 Affix a pair of two hook-and-loop fasteners to the concave of the upper keyboard cover.



18 Place the keyboard on the hook-and-loop fastener and press it to fix.

19 Connect the USB cable with the USB connector on the main unit.



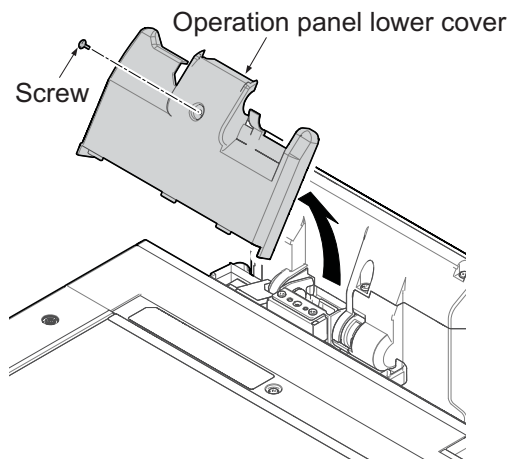
20 Reattach the removed card reader cover and the below operation panel cover in the original position.

## (9) card reader installation

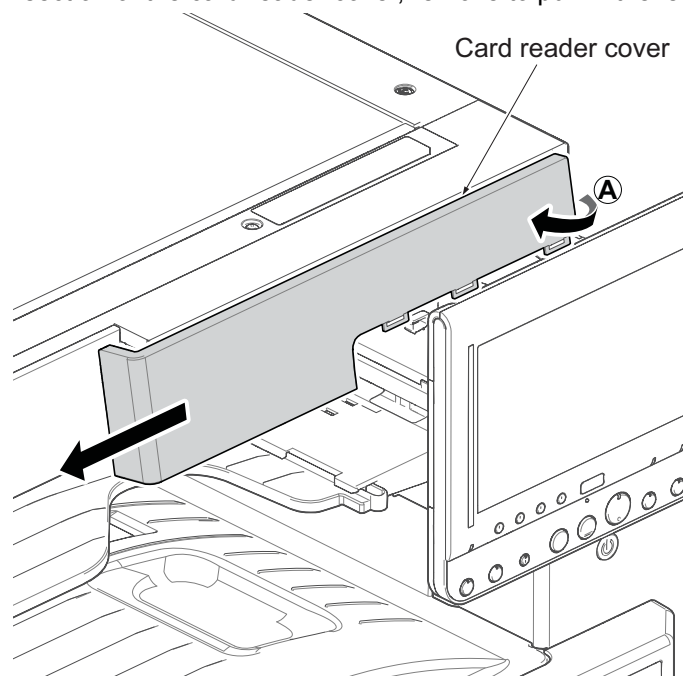
ID card reader installation requires the following parts.

| Parts      | Number | Parts number                      |
|------------|--------|-----------------------------------|
| Card label | 1      | 302ND3423_<br>(Bundled main unit) |

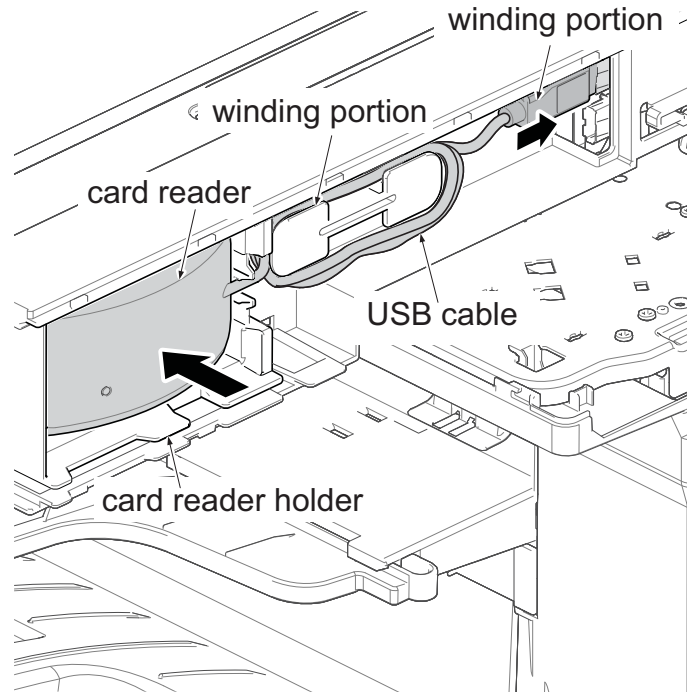
- 1 After checking to press the power source key, put out the power source lamp and memory lamp, turn the main power switch OFF and unplug the power plug.
- 2 Detach the screw (b) and remove the operation panel lower cover.



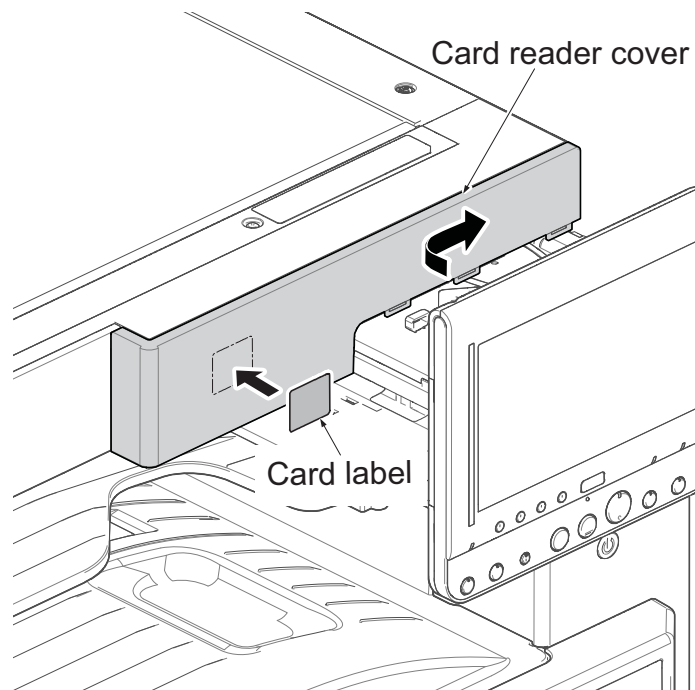
- 3 Twist in front of the A section of the card reader cover, remove to pull in the left direction.



- 4 Insert the card reader into the card reader holder.
- 5 Wind the extra USB cable in the winding portion.
- 6 Connect the winding portion.



- 7 Pull the card reader cover (a) in the right side and attach it.
- 8 Affix the card label (b).
- 9 Reattach the operation panel lower cover in the original position.





## Activating Card Authentication

### Important

Need the License Key in the introduction procedure. If access the designated website of your dealer or service representative, and register the "Machine No." indicated on your machine and the "Product ID" indicated on the License Certificate ,the License Key will be issued.

- 1 Turn the power switch off.
- 2 Press th system menu key, and press the "System Key".
  - If user login administration is invalidity, the user authentication screen is displayed.
- 3 Enter a login user name and password, and press [Login].
  - Login with administrator privileges here.
- 4 Press "Next to" of "Optional function".
- 5 Select "CARD AUTHENTICATION KIT(B)" and press "Start-up".
- 6 The screen which enters the license key is displayed.  
Enter the license key by using the numeric keyboard and press "Regular using".
- 7 Check the product name "CARD AUTHENTICATION KIT(B)" and press "Yes".
- 8 In case of using SSFC card, execute the maintenance mode U222 and set "SSFC".
  - If enter the sleep mode of the power saving priority, IC card does not recognize. When you want to be functioned the reader during the sleep, refer the instruction for use, set the sleep level to sleep terms.
  - If the optional Network Interface Kit is installed, the setting does not need.

(10) Handset attaching

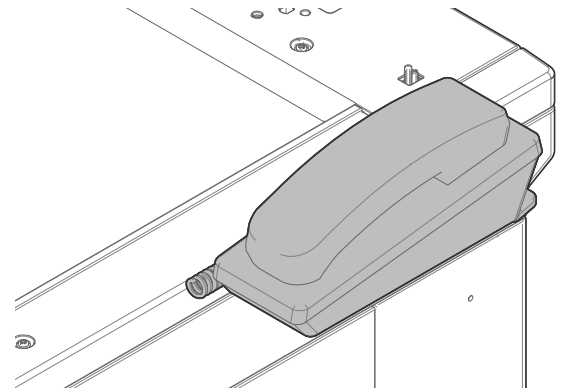
(10-1)When attaching the main unit directly

Handset installation requires the following parts.

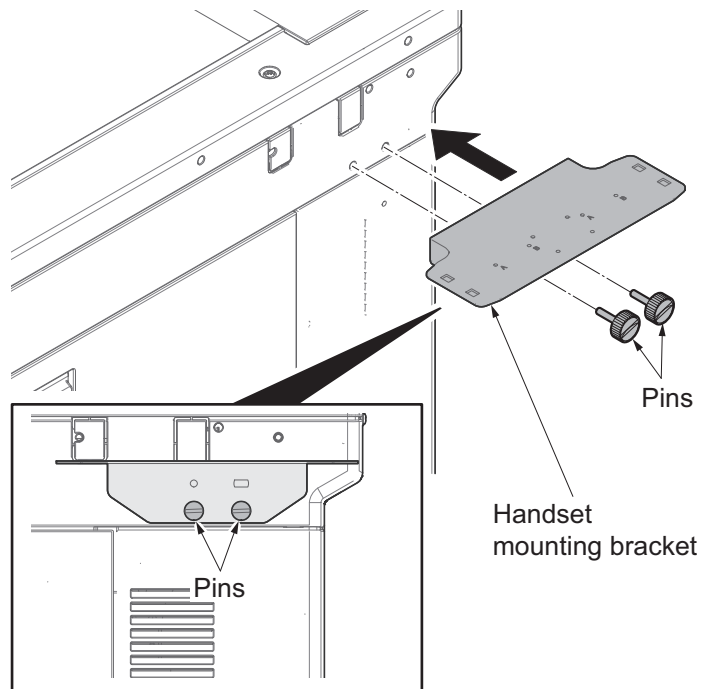
| Parts   | Number | Parts number         |
|---------|--------|----------------------|
| Handset | 1      | 1909AG9JP0 (Product) |

**Bundled parts of handset**

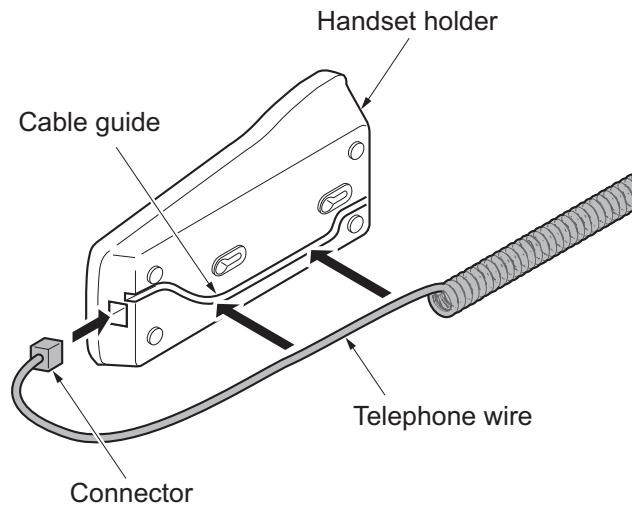
|                        |       |       |
|------------------------|-------|-------|
| Handset                | ..... | 1 pc  |
| Handset holder         | ..... | 1 pc  |
| Handset mounting plate | ..... | 1pc   |
| Protection cover       | ..... | 1pc   |
| Pin                    | ..... | 2 pcs |
| Telephone wire         | ..... | 1 pc  |
| Modular cord           | ..... | 1 pc  |
| Nut M4                 | ..... | 2pcs  |



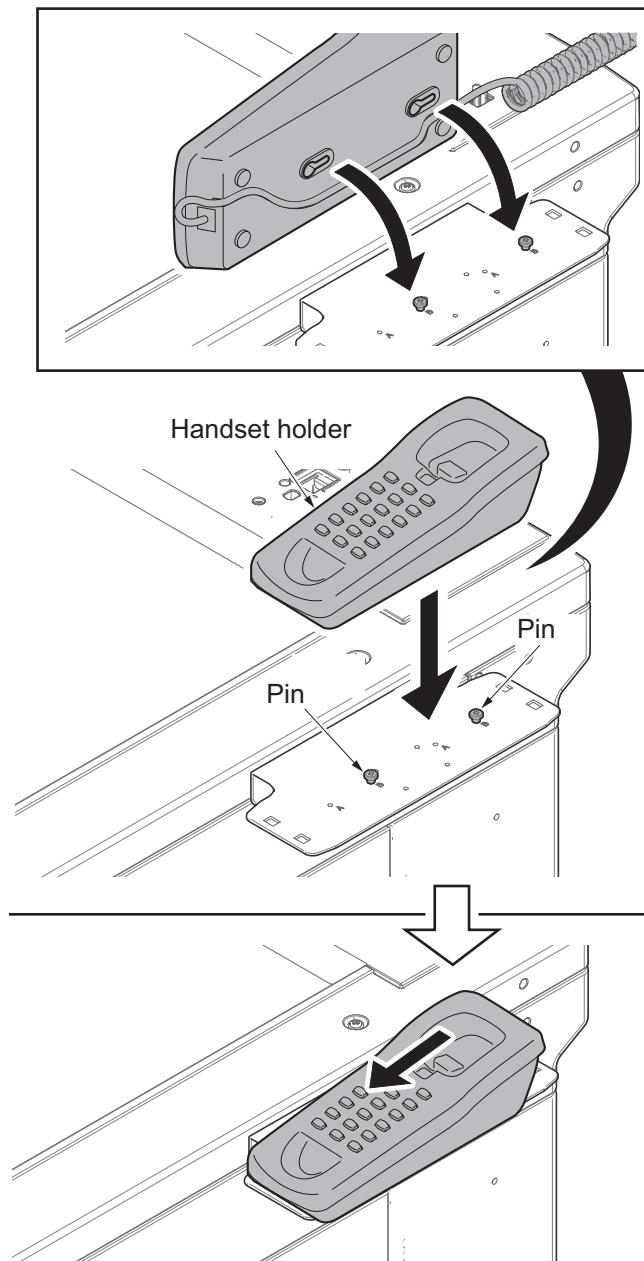
- 1 After checking to press the power source key, put out the power source lamp and memory lamp, turn the main power switch OFF and unplug the power plug.
- 2 Attach the handset mounting bracket to the right top of the main unit by using two pins.
  - Use the lower screw holes of the handset mounting bracket.



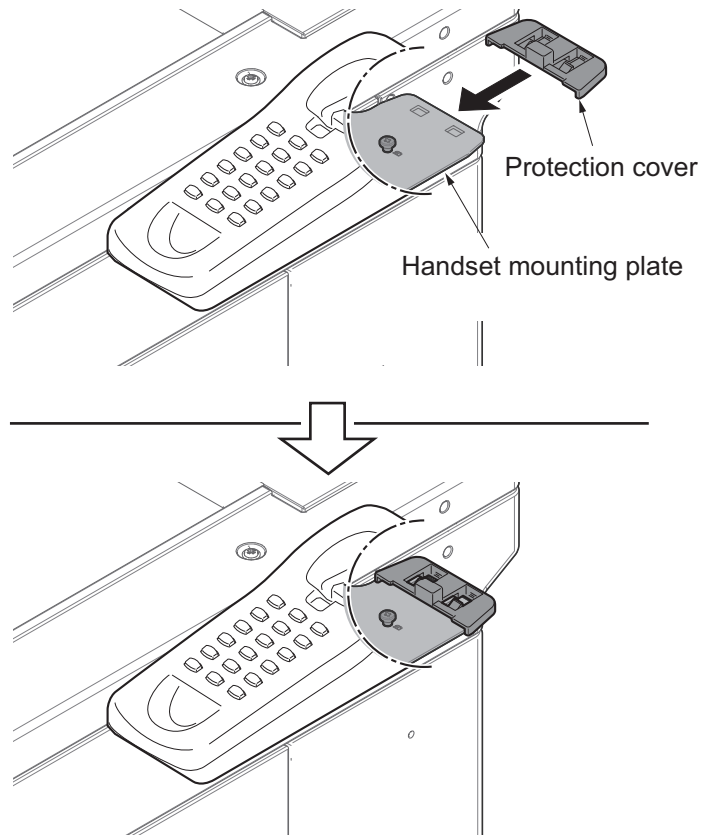
- 3 Connect the connector of the telephone wire to the handset holder.
- 4 While stretch the telephone wire, insert it into the cable guide.



- 5 Put two pins into the catches at the backside of the handset holder,slide it toward you and fix it.

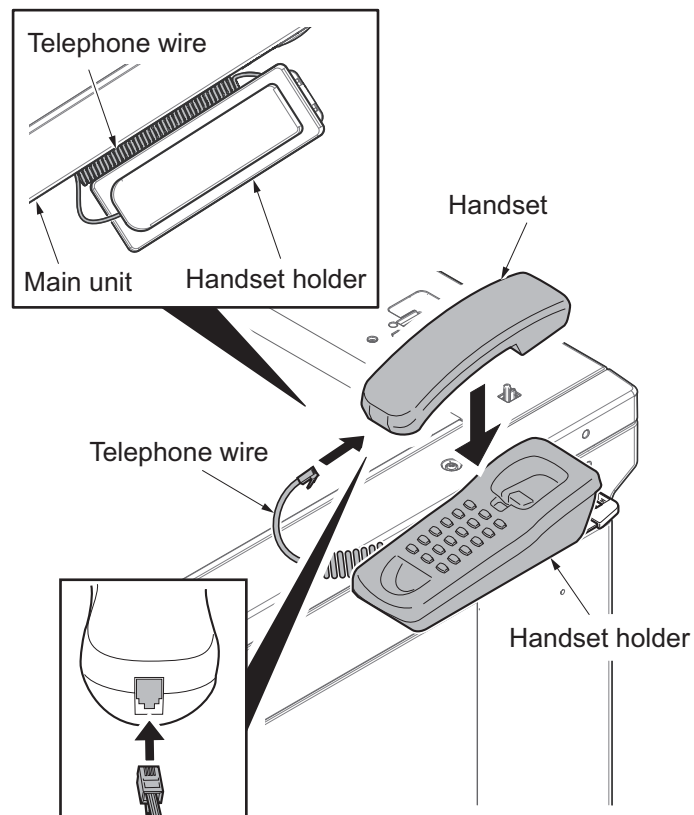


- 6 Attach the protection cover to the handset mounting plate.

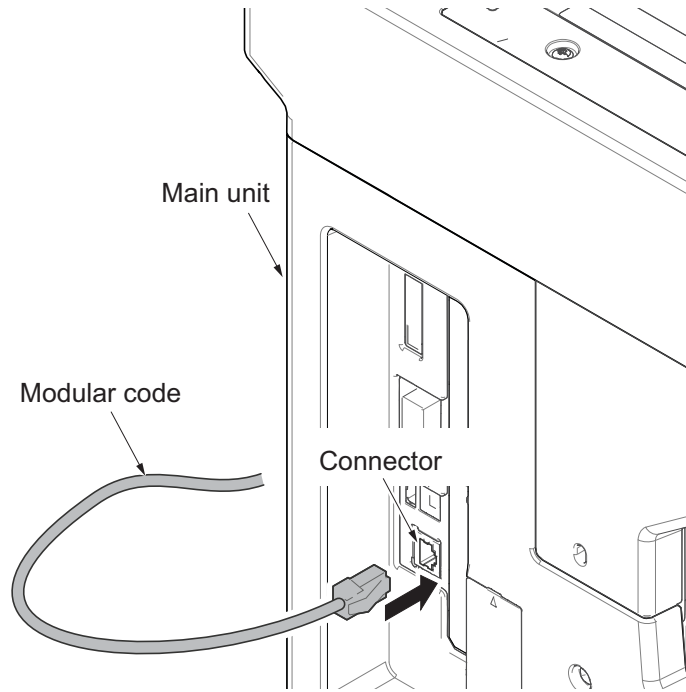


- 7 Connect the telephone wire to the handset.

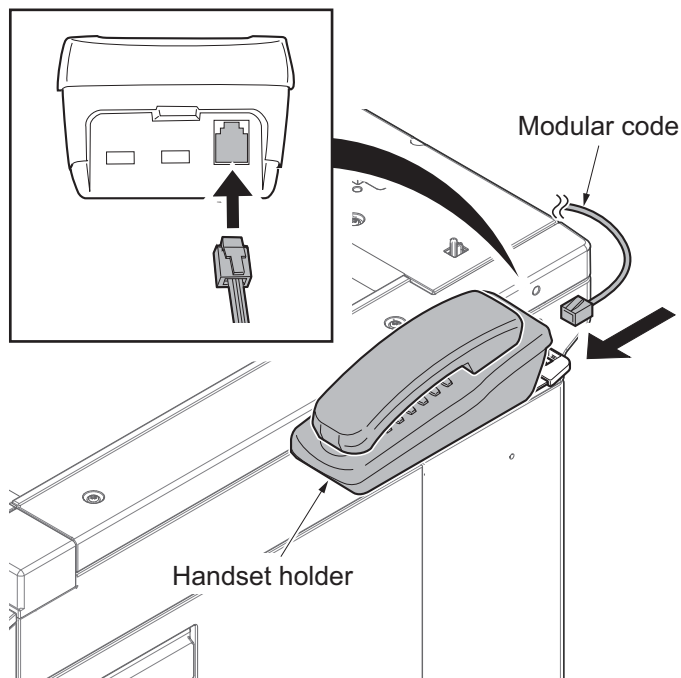
- Insert the telephone wire into between the handset holder and main unit.



- 8 Connect the modular code to the connector of the main unit left side .



- 9 Connect the modular cord to the another handset holder.



(10-2)In case installing the document table

Handset installation requires the following parts.

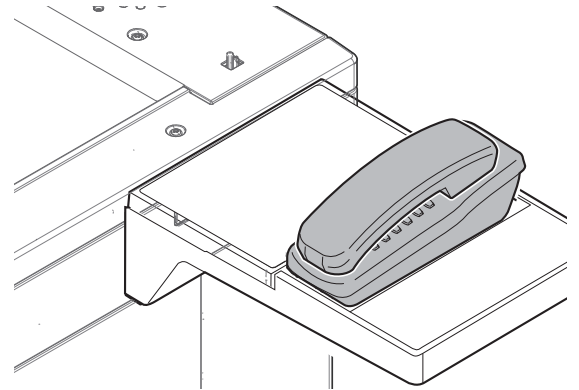
| Parts          | Number | Parts number         |
|----------------|--------|----------------------|
| Handset        | 1      | 1909AG9JP0 (Product) |
| Document table | 1      | 1902LC0UN1 (Product) |

**Bundled parts of handset**

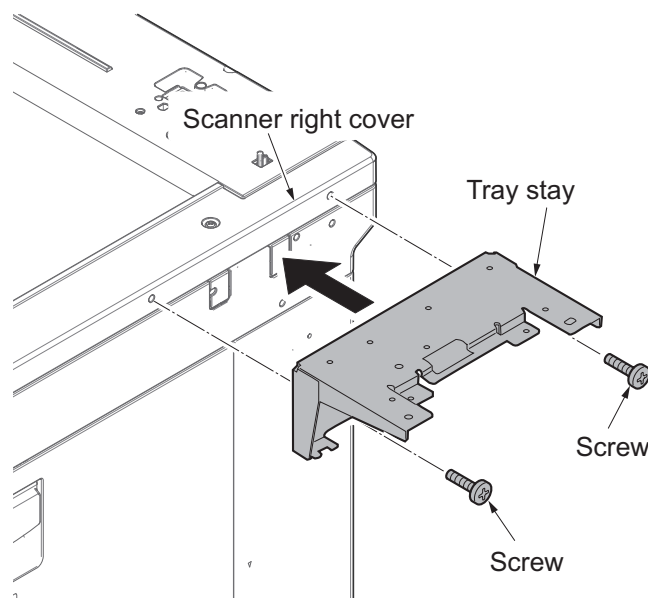
|                        |       |       |
|------------------------|-------|-------|
| Handset                | ..... | 1 pc  |
| Handset holder         | ..... | 1 pc  |
| Handset mounting plate | ..... | 1pc   |
| Protection cover       | ..... | 1pc   |
| Pin                    | ..... | 2 pcs |
| Telephone wire         | ..... | 1 pc  |
| Modular cord           | ..... | 1 pc  |
| Nut M4                 | ..... | 2pcs  |

**Bundled parts of Document table**

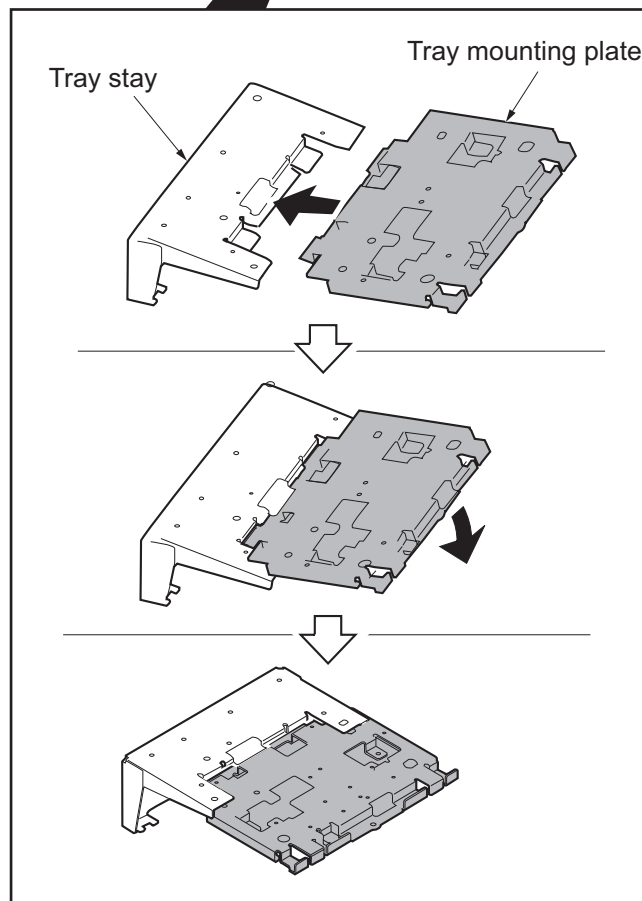
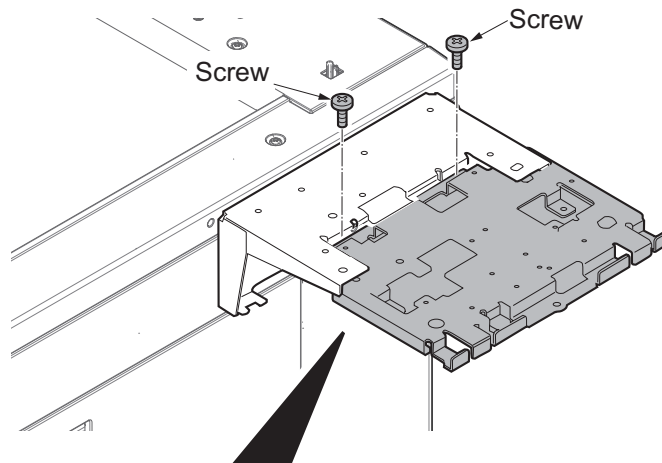
|                       |       |       |
|-----------------------|-------|-------|
| Tray stay             | ..... | 1 pc  |
| Tray mounting bracket | ..... | 1pc   |
| Tray cover            | ..... | 1 pc  |
| Tray lower cover      | ..... | 1 pc  |
| Tray fixing plate     | ..... | 1 pc  |
| Sheet                 | ..... | 2pcs  |
| Pin                   | ..... | 1 pc  |
| Nut M4                | ..... | 2pcs  |
| Screw (M4x8)          | ..... | 2 pcs |
| Nut M4                | ..... | 7pcs  |
| Screw (M4x14)         | ..... | 2 pcs |



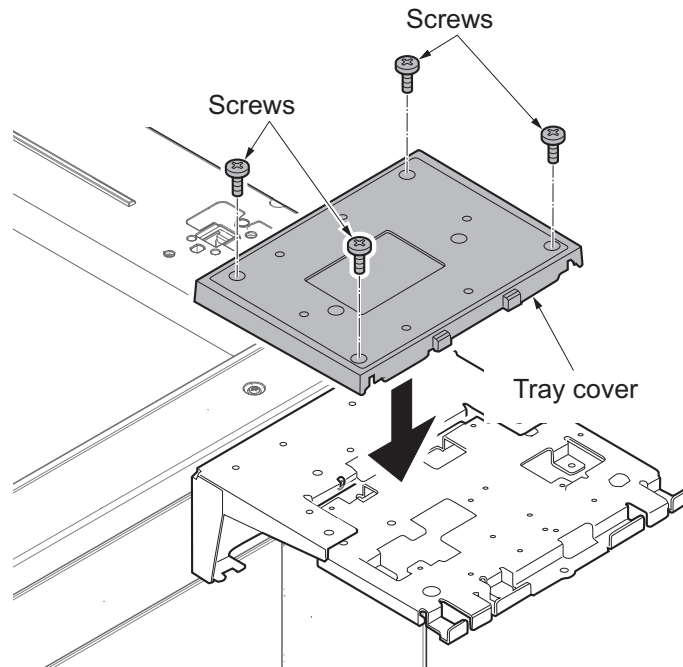
- 1 After checking to press the power source key, put out the power source lamp and memory lamp, turn the main power switch OFF and unplug the power plug.
- 2 Attach the tray stay to the scanner right cover by using two screws (M4×14).



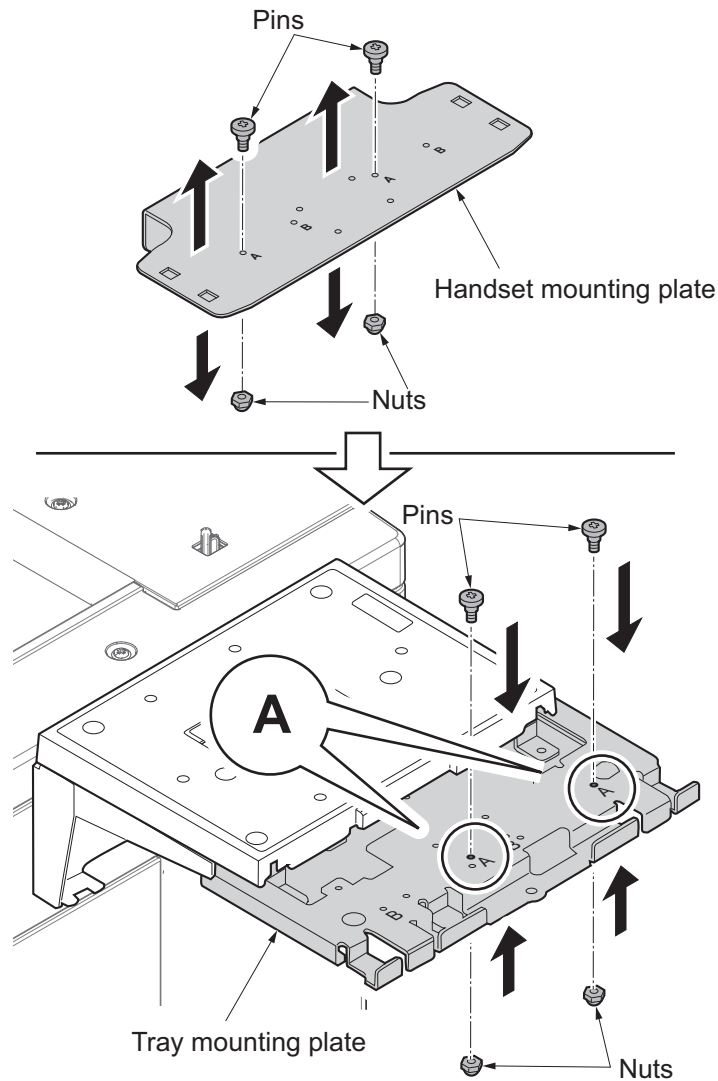
- 3 Insert the tray mounting plate into the tray stay and attach by using two screws (M4×8).



- 4 Attach the tray cover to the tray stay with four screws (M4×8).

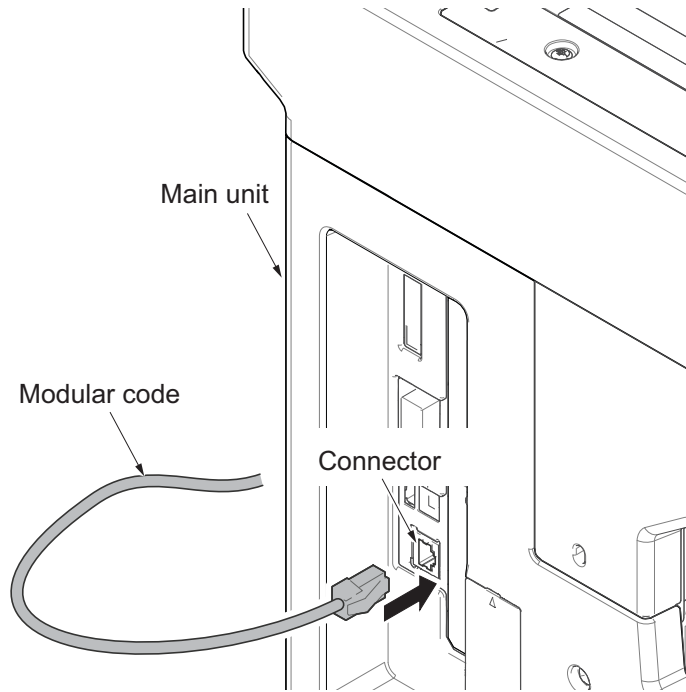


- 5 Remove two nuts and two pins from the handset mounting plate.  
6 Attach two removed nuts and two pins to the mark A location of the tray mounting plate.

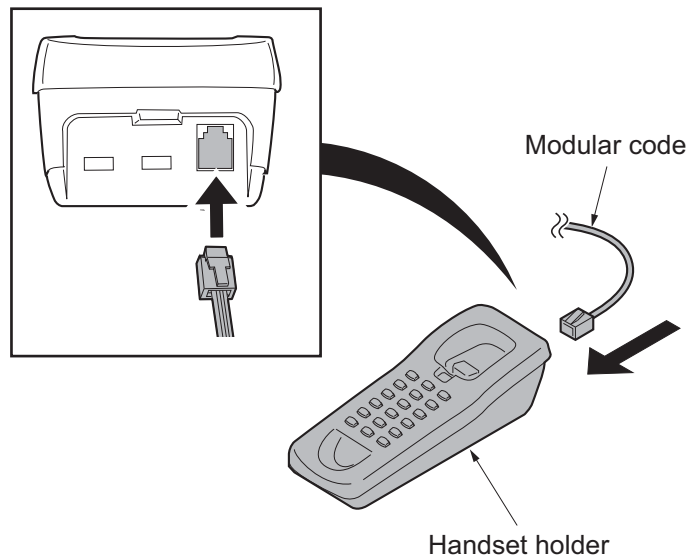




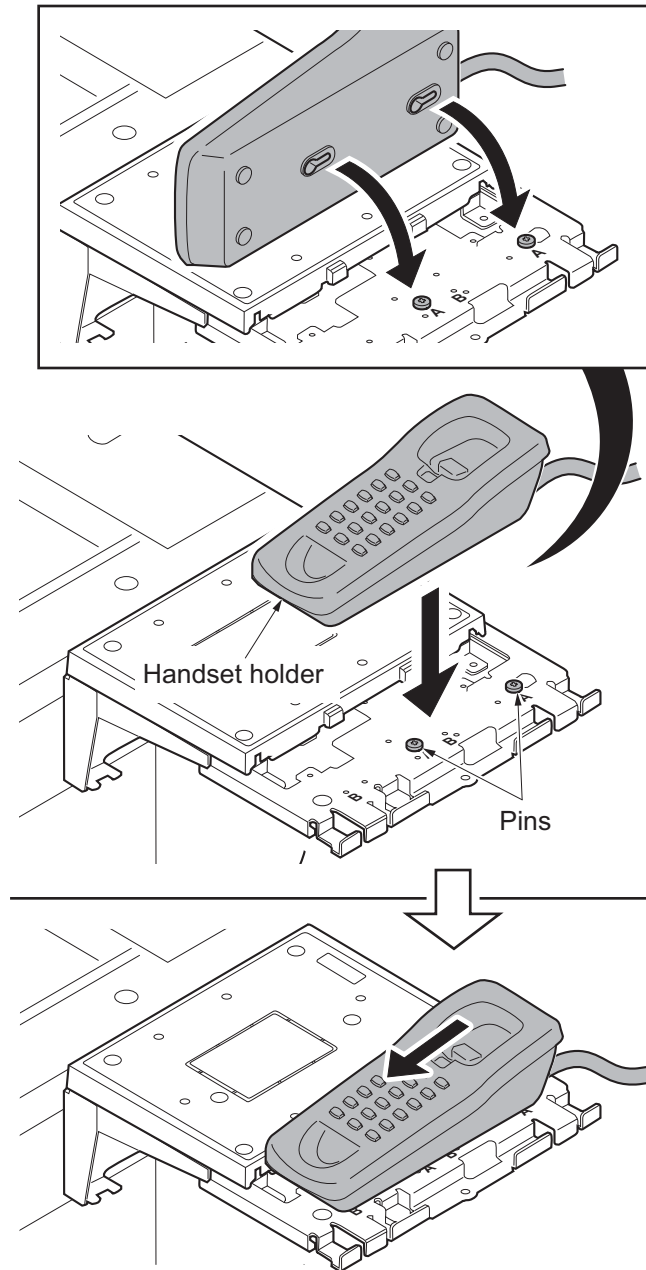
- 7 Connect the modular code to the connector of the main unit left side .



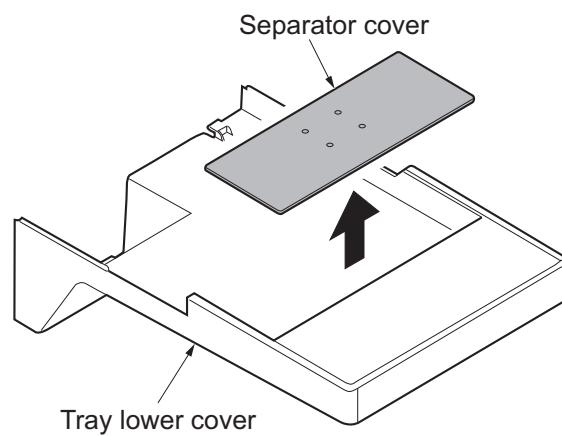
- 8 Connect the modular cord to the another handset holder.



- 9 Put two pins into the catches at the backside of the handset holder,slide it toward you and fix it.

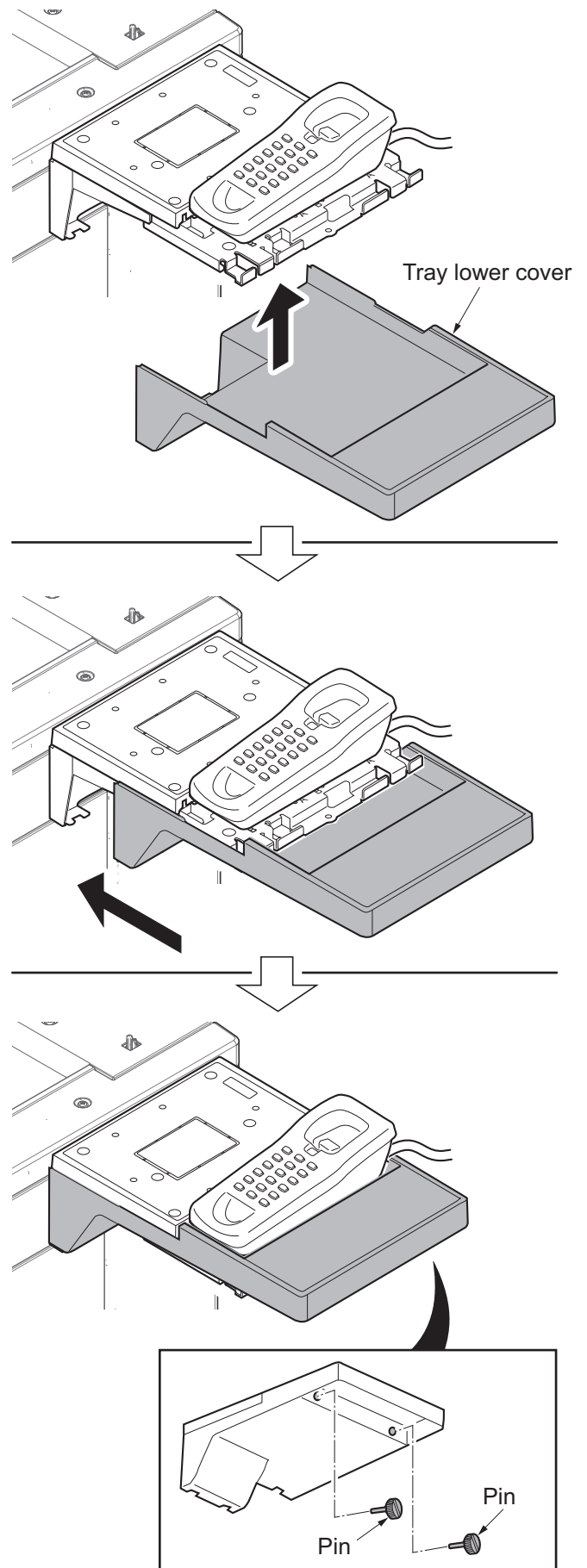


- 10 Cut the separator cover of the tray lower cover by using the nipper, etc.

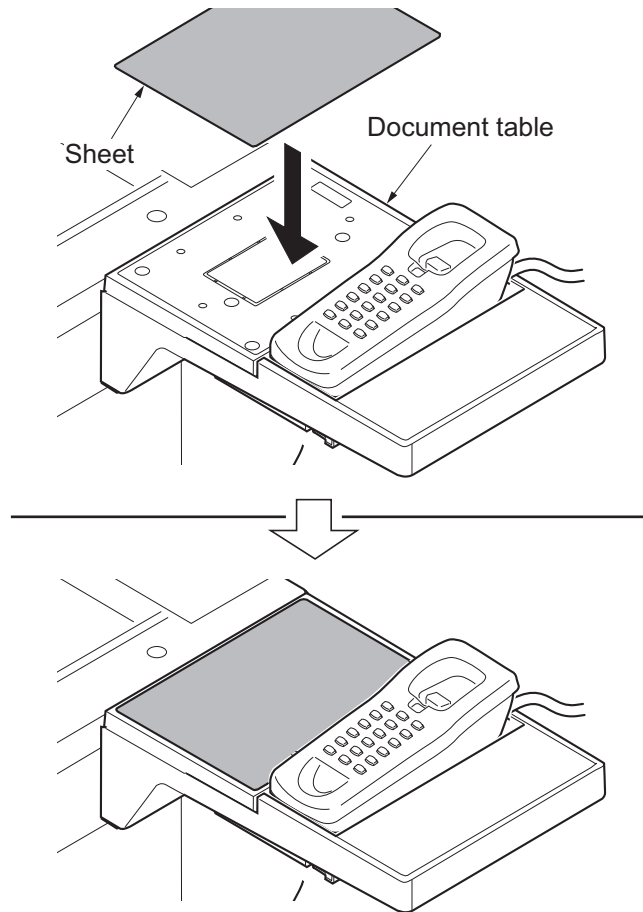


11 Attach the tray lower cover.

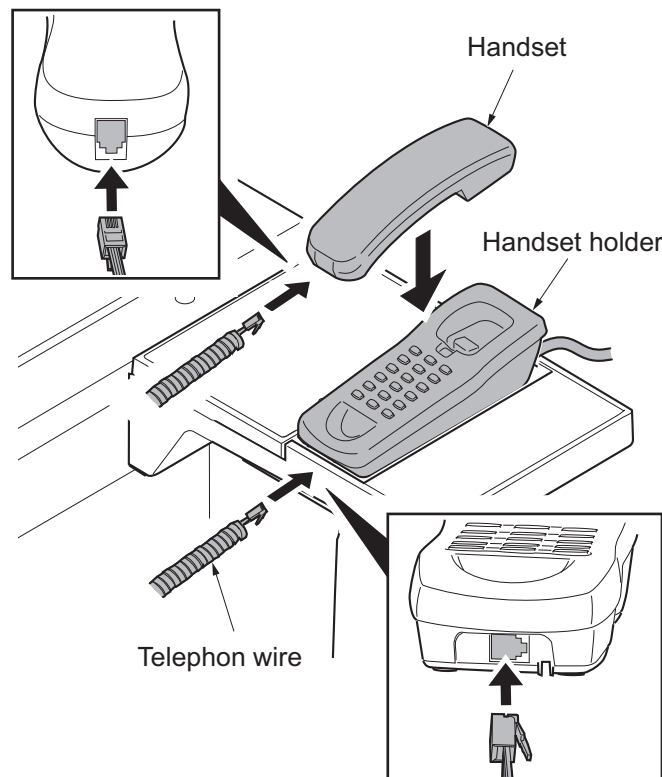
12 Fix the tray lower cover by using two pins.



13 Affix the sheet on the left side of document table.



14 Connect the telephone wire to the handset holder.



## 2 - 4 About Optional Applications

| Application               |  |                       |
|---------------------------|--|-----------------------|
| Data Security Kit         |  | Internet FAX kit      |
| Card Authentication Kit*1 |  | Emulation upgrade kit |
| ThinPrint Option*1        |  |                       |

\*1: This can be used on a trial basis for a limited time.

- Restrictions such as the number of times the application can be used during the trial period differ depending on the application.
- If you change the date/time while using the trial version of an application, you will no longer be able to use the application.

### Starting Use of an Application

Use the procedure below to start using an application.

- 1 Select [System Menu/Counter] key > [System/Network] > [Optional Function].




#### Note

If the user authentication screen appears, enter your login user name and login password and select [Login]. Login with administrator privileges.

The factory default login user name and login password are set as shown below.

| Model Name      | 32 ppm model | 40ppm model |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| Login User Name | 3200         | 4000        |
| Login Password  | 3200         | 4000        |

- 2 Select the desired application to start use and select [Activate].
  - You can view detailed information on the selected application by selecting [] or [Details].

| Item          |
|---------------|
| Function      |
| License       |
| Trial Counts  |
| Date of Trial |
| Status        |

- 3 Select [Official] and enter a license key.  
Some applications do not require you to enter a license key. If the license key entry screen does not appear, go to Step 4.
  - To use the application as a trial, select [Trial] without entering the license key.
- 4 Select [Yes] in the confirmation screen.  
Icons of activated application are displayed in the Home screen.



#### Note

If you started the Security Kit or Thin Print option and entered the license key, turn the power OFF/ON. Icons of activated application are displayed in the Home screen.

## 2 - 5 Initializing procedures after installing the FAX system

- 1 Connect the power plug of the main unit to the outlet and turn the power on.
- 2 Input "10871087" using the numeric keys to enter the maintenance mode.
- 3 Input "600" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.
- 4 Select [Country Code] and enter a country code using the numeric keys.
  - Refer to the following country code list.
- 5 Select [Execute].
- 6 Press the [Start] key to start data initialization.
  - Press the [Stop] key to cancel the data initialization.

### Country code list

| Country code | Destination      | Country code | Destination         |
|--------------|------------------|--------------|---------------------|
| 000          | Japan            | 181          | North America *2    |
| 156          | Asian nations *1 | 181          | South America *3    |
| 254          | Taiwan           | 253          | European nations *4 |
| 097          | Korea            | 009          | Australia           |
| 038          | China            | 126          | New Zealand *5      |

\*1 Applied for Sales company competent Singapore, India, Thailand, Hong Kong.

\*2 Applied for Sales company competent USA, Canada, Mexico.

\*3 Applied for Sales company competent Bolivia, Chile, Peru, Argentina, Brazil.

\*4 Applied for Sales company competent Italy, Germany, Spain, U.K., Netherlands, Sweden, France, Austria, Switzerland, Belgium, Denmark, Finland, Portugal, Ireland, Norway, Turkey, Russia, Saudi Arabia.

\*5 Change the country code when selling in New Zealand. The country code to input is 126.

- 7 After completing installation, execute communication test to check if FAX normally operates.

### Important

Note the following points when installing the FAX system in the line via ISDN or PBX.

Check if the line to connect supports the V.34 (Super G3) FAX communication.

Especially, when communicating between extensions in PBX (private line via TDM), only 14400bps or 9600bps of FAX communication speed is guaranteed and communication errors or TX/RX image failure may occur at V.34 communication in such a line.

### Corrective Measures

Set the following maintenance mode if the communication speed guaranteed on the line is 14400bps.

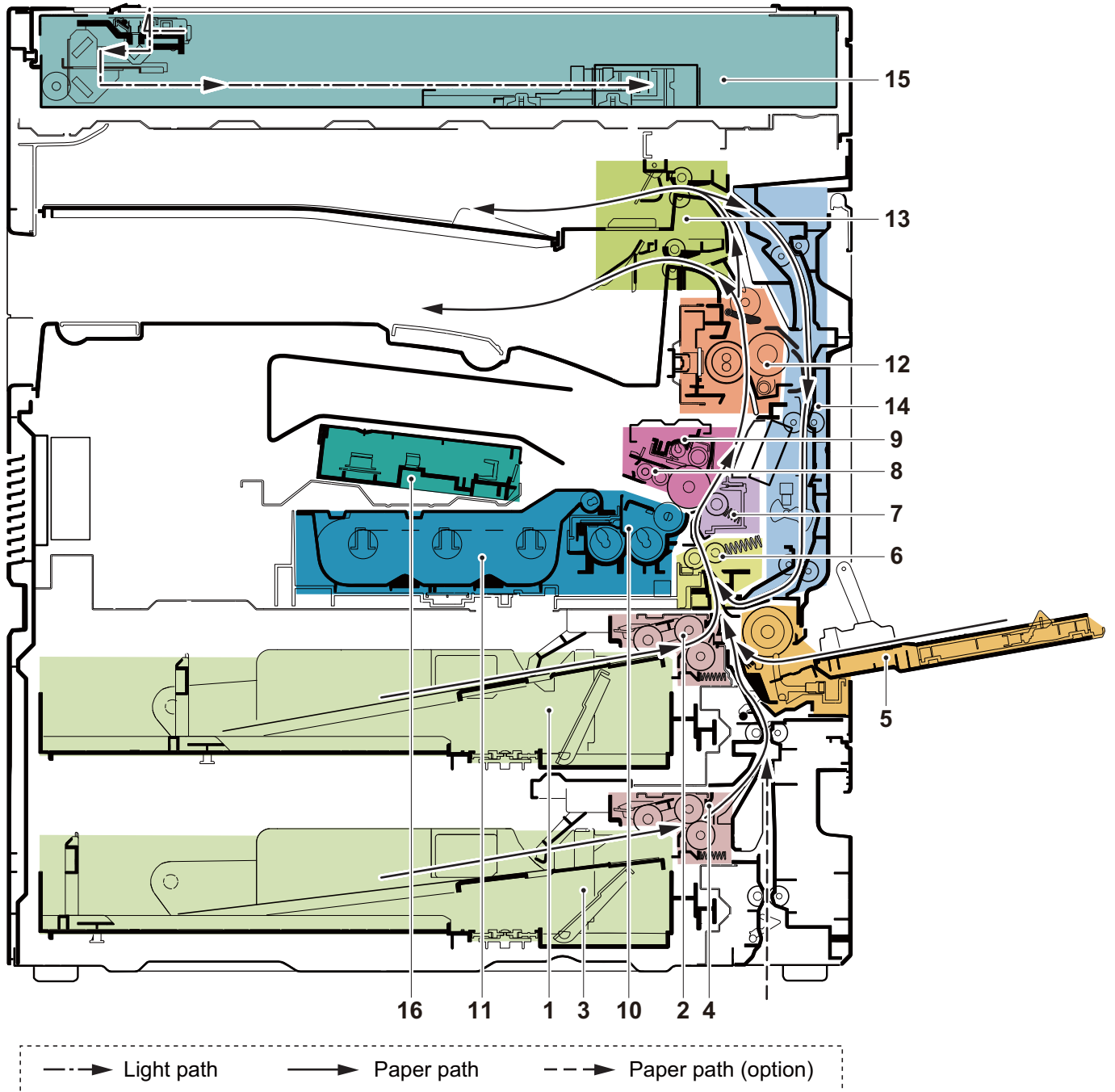
U633 [Enables or disables the V.34 communication]: Off (See page 6-177)

U630 [Setting TX speed and RX speed] (See page 6-172)

## 3Machine Design

### 3 - 1 Mechanical Configuration

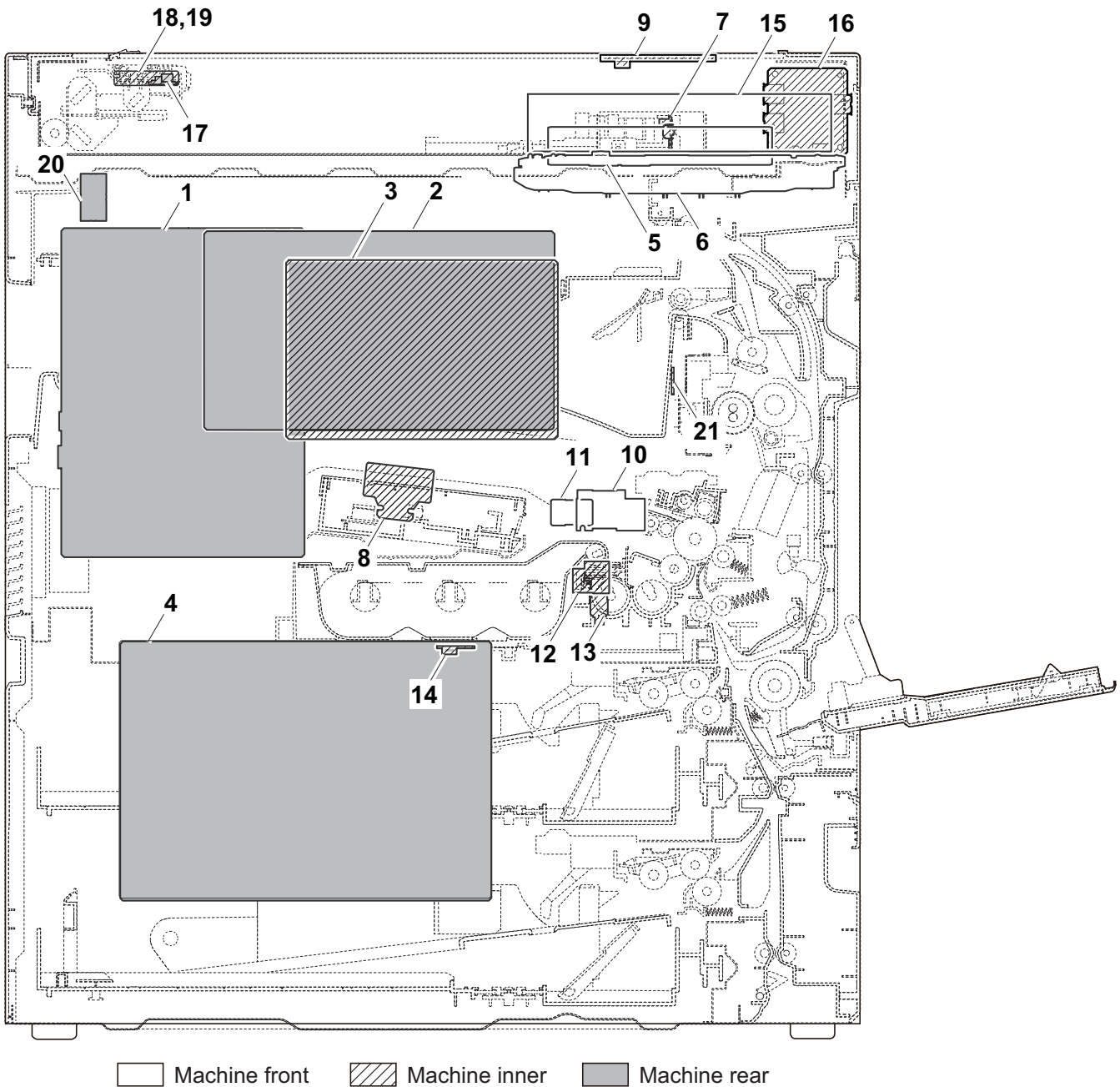
#### (1) Cross-section view



- |                                    |                              |                           |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 Cassette 1                       | 7 Transfer/ Separate section | 13 Eject section          |
| 2 Cassette 1 paper feed section    | 8 Charger roller unit        | 14 Dual conveying section |
| 3 Cassette 2                       | 9 Drum unit                  | 15 Image Scanner Unit     |
| 4 Cassette 2 paper feed section    | 10 Developer unit            | 16 Laser Scanner Unit     |
| 5 Multi Purpose paper feed section | 11 Toner Container section   |                           |
| 6 Conveying section                | 12 Fuser unit                |                           |

## 3 - 2 Electrical parts layout

## (1) PWBs



## 1.Main PWB

Controls the software such as the print data processing and provides the interface with computers.

## 2.Engine PWB

Controls printer hardware such as high voltage/bias output control, paper conveying system control, and fuser temperature control, etc.

## 3.High voltage PWB

Generates main charging, developing bias, transfer bias.

## 4.Low voltage power source PWB

After full-wave rectification of AC power source input, switching for converting to 24 V DC/5 V DC for output. Controls the fuser heater.

## 5.Operation panel PWB 1

Consists of the LCD, LED indicators and key switches.

## 6.Operation panel PWB 2

Consists of the LED indicators and key switches.

## 7.CCD PWB

Reads the image of originals.



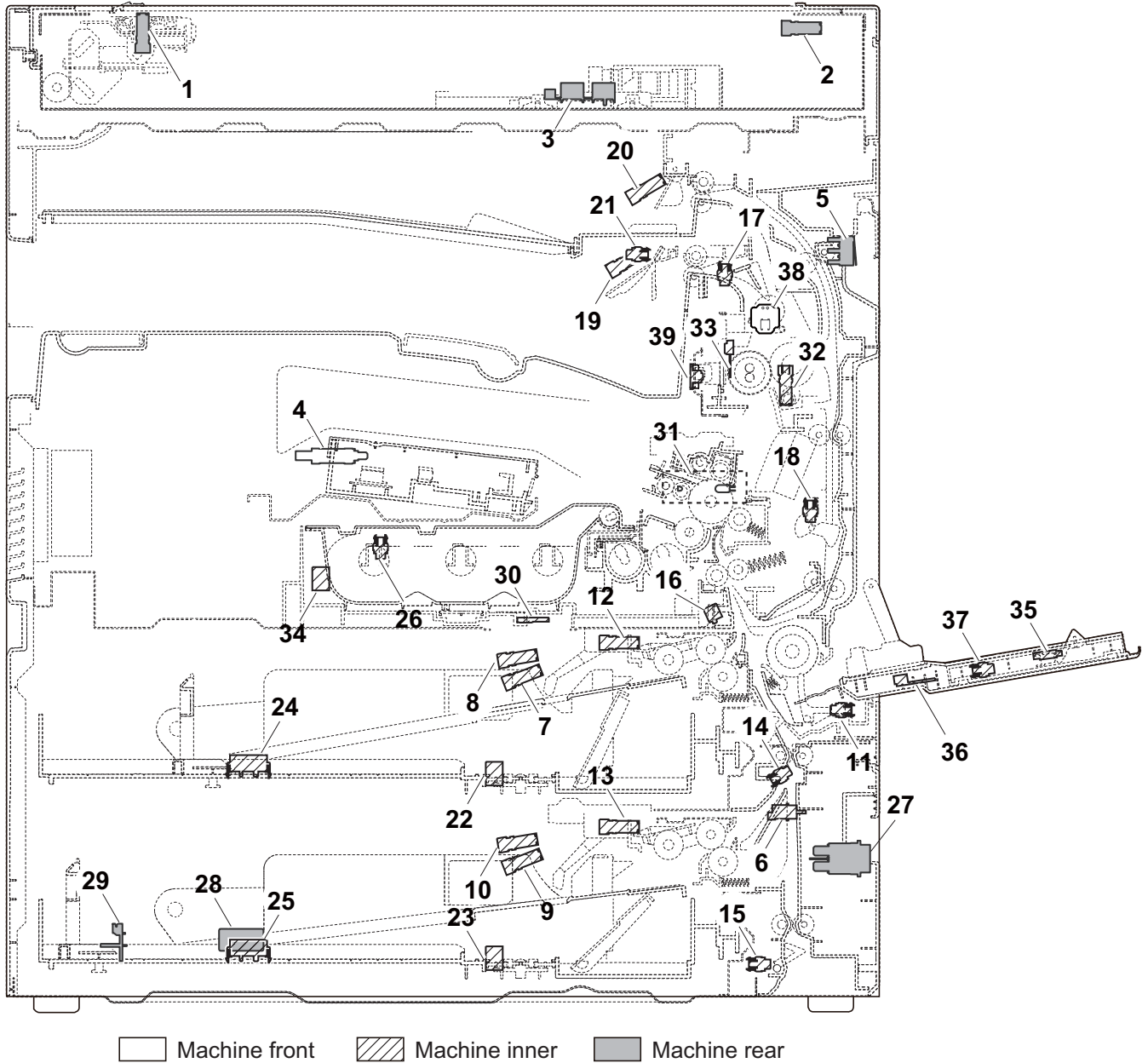
|                         |   |
|-------------------------|---|
| 8.APC PWB               | Generates and controls the laser beam.  |
| 9.NFC PWB               | Antenna circuit for wireless communication.   |
| 10.Drum PWB             | Relays wirings from electrical components on the drum unit.<br>Drum individual information in EEPROM storage.                     |
| 11.Drum relay PWB       | Consists of wiring relay circuit between engine PWB and the drum unit.  |
| 12.Developing PWB       | Relays wirings from electrical components on the developing unit.<br>Developing individual information in EEPROM storage.         |
| 13.Developing relay PWB | Consists of wiring relay circuit between engine PWB and the developer unit and contain the temperature sensor inside the machine. |
| 14.RFID PWB             | Reads the container information.  |
| 15.Touch Panel          | Operation panel.  |
| 16.USB PWB              | USB PWB slot distribution.  |
| 17.LED drive PWB        | Control of scanning light source  |
| 18.LED-F PWB            | Side flood scan light source (front)  |
| 19.LED R PWB            | Side flood scan light source (rear)   |
| 20.Wi-Fi PWB            | Send and receive wireless data  |
| 21.Zener PWB            | Voltage potential control of fixing heat roller (countermeasure for offset)   |

#### List of correspondences of PWB names

| No. | Name used in service manual  | Name used in parts list  | Part No.                          |
|-----|------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1   | Main PWB                     | PARTS PWB MAIN ASSY SP<br>PARTS PWB MAIN ASSY EU SP            | 302V69402_<br>302V69403_          |
| 2   | Engine PWB                   | PATRS PWB ENGINE ASSY SP                                       | 302V69404_                        |
| 3   | High voltage PWB             | PARTS UNIT HIGH VOLTAGE SP                                     | 602P19426_                        |
| 4   | Low voltage power source PWB | PARTS UNIT LOW VOLTAGE 100 SP<br>PARTS UNIT LOW VOLTAGE 200 SP | 302RH9422_<br>302RH9423_          |
| 5   | Operation panel PWB 1        | PARTS PWB OPERATION ASSY SP                                    | 302RH9404_                        |
| 6   | Operation panel PWB 2        | PARTS PWB PANEL MAIN ASSY SP                                   | 302RH9403_                        |
| 7   | CCD PWB                      | -<br>(PARTS IMAGE SCANNER ASSY SP)                             | -<br>(302V69310_)                 |
| 8   | APC PWB                      | -<br>(LK-7106)<br>(LK-6115)                                    | -<br>(302RH9303_)<br>(302P19308_) |
| 9   | NFC PWB                      | PARTS PWB NFC ASSY SP  | 302RH9405_                        |
| 10  | Drum PWB                     | -<br>(DK-7125)   | -<br>(302V69302_)                 |
| 11  | Drum relay PWB               | PARTS PWB DRUM CONNECT ASSY SP                                 | 302K39408_                        |
| 12  | Developer PWB                | -<br>(DV-7125)   | -<br>(302V69301_)                 |
| 13  | Developer relay PWB          | PARTS PWB DEVE CONNECT ASSY SP                                 | 302P19421_                        |
| 14  | RFID PWB                     | PARTS PWB RFID ASSY SP   | 302V69405_                        |

| No. | Name used in service manual | Name used in parts list                                | Part No.                   |
|-----|-----------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| 15  | Touch panel                 | PARTS TABLET OPERATION SP<br>(PARTS OPERATION UNIT SP) | 302RH9407_<br>(302RH9414_) |
| 16  | USB PWB                     | PARTS PWB USB HUB ASSY SP                              | 302RH9402_                 |
| 17  | LED drive PWB               | -  | -                          |
| 18  | LED-F PWB                   | (PARTS MOUNT LED ASSY SP)                              | (302V69308_)               |
| 19  | LED R PWB                   |  |                            |
| 20  | Wi-Fi PWB                   | PARTS WIFI UNIT SP                                     | 303RR9401_                 |
| 21  | Zener PWB                   | PARTS PWB ZENER ASSY SP                                | 302P19422_                 |

## (2) Switches and sensors

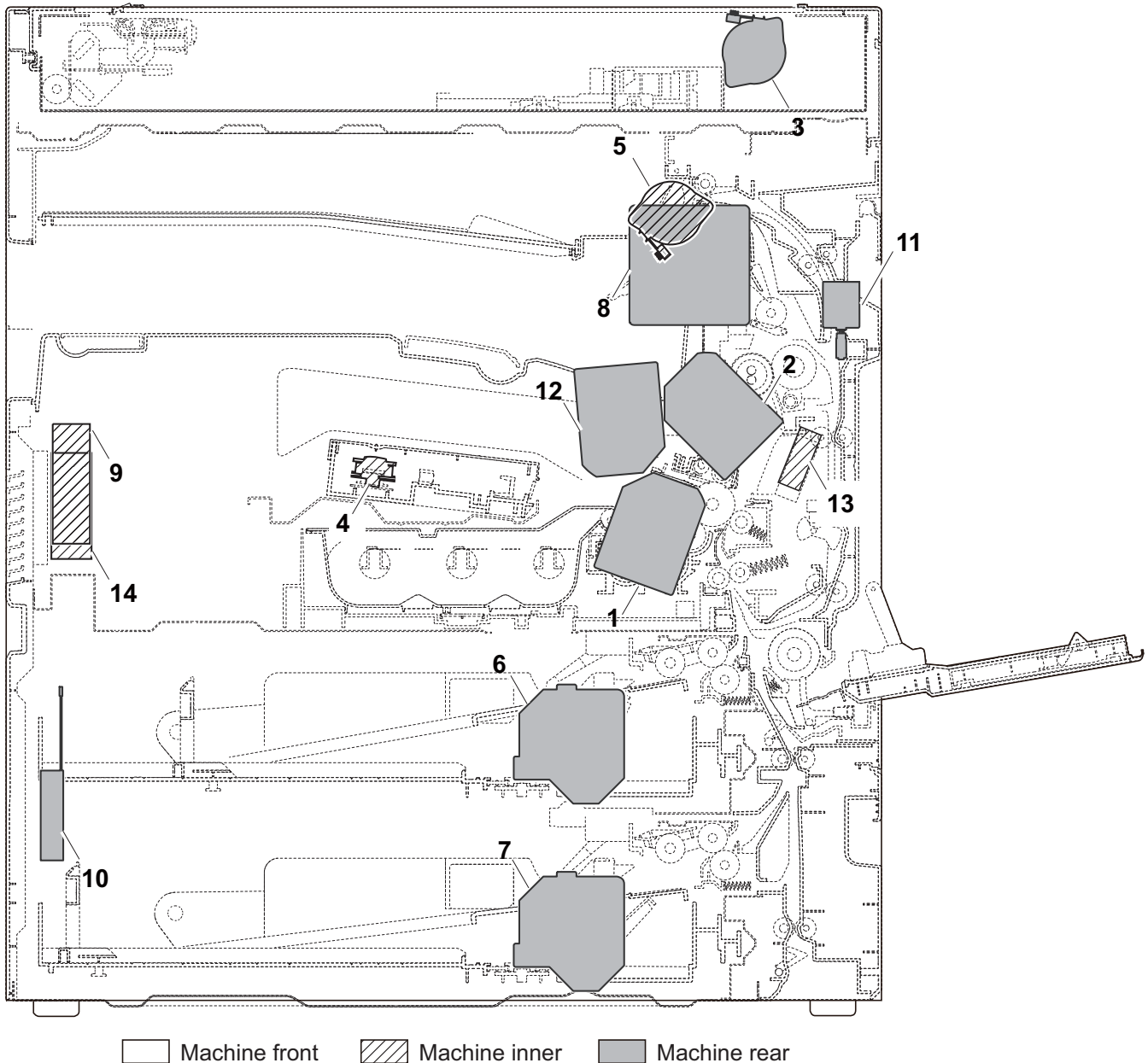


- |                               |   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 1.Home position sensor        | Detects the ISU in the home position.                 |
| 2.Original size timing sensor | Operates the original size sensor.                    |
| 3.Original size sensor        | Detects the size of the original.                     |
| 4.Front cover switch          | Detects the opening and closing of the front cover.   |
| 5.Right cover switch 1        | Detects the opening and closing of the right cover 1. |
| 6.Right cover switch 2        | Detects the opening and closing of the right cover 2. |
| 7.Paper sensor 1              | Detects the presence of paper in the cassette 1.      |
| 8.Paper sensor 2              | Detects the presence of paper in the cassette 1.      |
| 9.Paper sensor 3              | Detects the presence of paper in the cassette 2.      |
| 10.Paper sensor 4             | Detects the presence of paper in the cassette 2.      |

---

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 11.MP paper sensor               | Detects the presence of paper on the MP tray.                            |
| 12.Lift sensor 1                 | Detects activation of upper limit of the bottom plate in the cassette 1. |
| 13.Lift sensor 2                 | Detects activation of upper limit of the bottom plate in the cassette 2. |
| 14.Conveying sensor 1            | Detects a paper misfeed in the vertical conveying section.               |
| 15.Conveying sensor 2            | Detects a paper misfeed in the vertical conveying section.               |
| 16.Registration sensor           | Controls the secondary paper feed start timing.                          |
| 17.Exit sensor                   | Detects a paper misfeed in the fuser or eject section.                   |
| 18.DU sensor                     | Detects a paper jam in the duplex section.                               |
| 19.Paper full sensor             | Detects the paper full in the inner tray.                                |
| 20.Job paper full sensor         | Detects the paper full in the job separator tray.                        |
| 21.Job eject papersensor         | Detects the presence of paper in the job separator.                      |
| 22.Paper size width switch 1     | Detects the width of paper in the cassette 1.                            |
| 23.Paper size width switch 2     | Detects the width of paper in the cassette 2.                            |
| 24.Paper size length switch 1    | Detects the length of paper in the cassette 1.                           |
| 25.Paper size length switch 2    | Detects the length of paper in the cassette 2.                           |
| 26.Toner container lock sensor   | Detects the lock of toner in the toner container.                        |
| 27.Main power switch             | Turns ON/OFF the AC power source.  |
| 28.Cassette heater switch        | Turns ON/OFF the cassette heater power source.                           |
| 29.Temperature sensor            | Detects the temperature and absolute humidity outside the machine.       |
| 30.Toner sensor                  | Detects the amount of toner remaining in the toner container.            |
| 31.Waste toner sensor            | Detects when the waste toner box is full.                                |
| 32.Fuser pressure release sensor | Detects the switching condition of the fuser pressure.                   |
| 33.Fuser thermistor 2            | Detects the heat roller temperature. (noncontact / center)               |
| 34.Toner container switch        | Detects the presence of toner container.                                 |
| 35.MP tray switch                | Detects the position of the MP sub tray.                                 |
| 36.MP paper width switch         | Detects the width of paper in the MP tray.                               |
| 37.P paper length switch         | Detects the length of paper in the MP tray.                              |
| 38.Power source switch           | Power source of Main PWB, engine PWB and Operation panel PWB.            |
| 39.Thermopile                    | Detects the surface temperature of the fuser roller.                     |

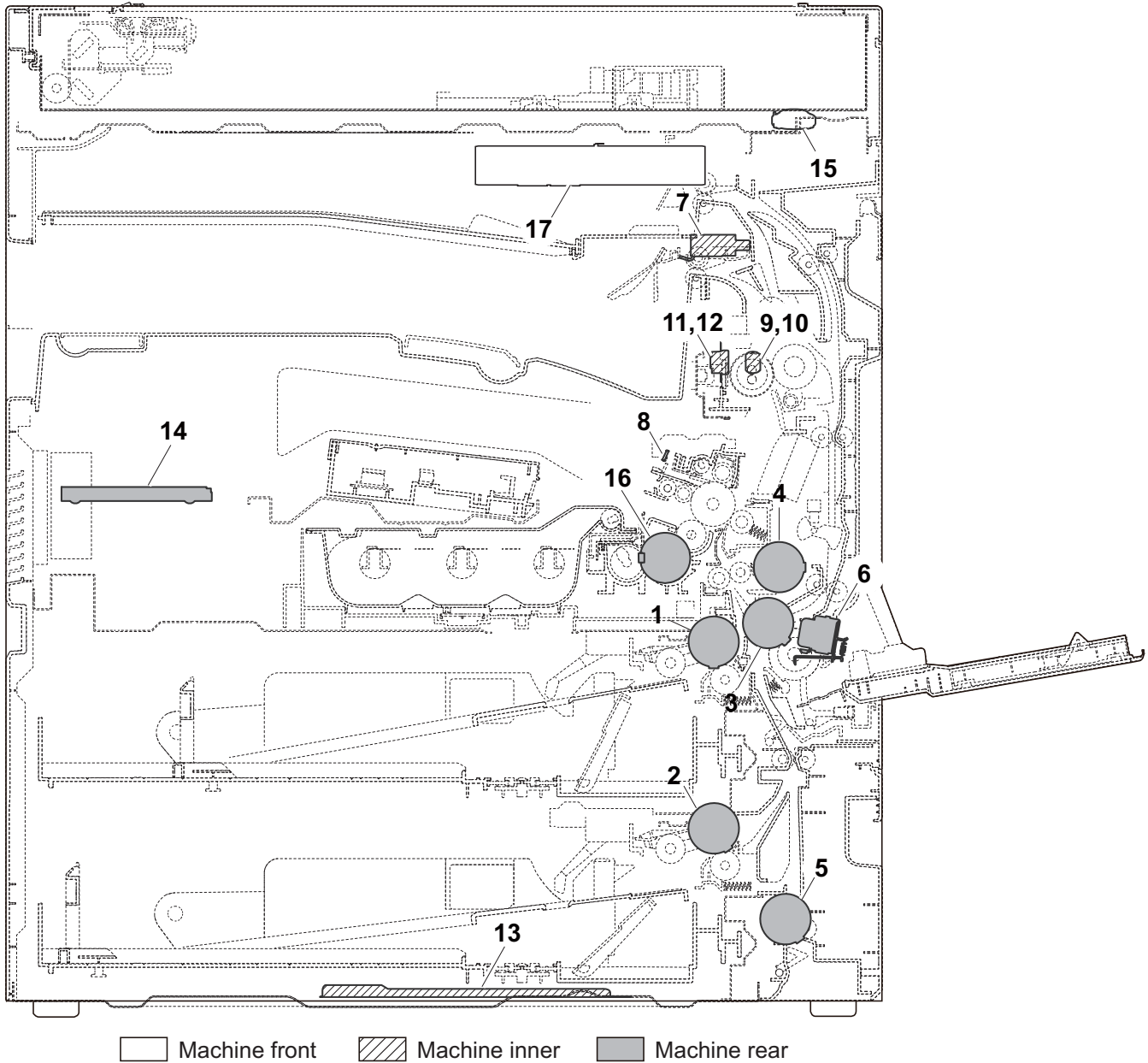
## (3) Motors



- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| 1.Main motor              | Drives the paper feed section and conveying section.               |
| 2.Fuser motor             | Drives the fuser unit.   |
| 3.Scanner motor           | Drives the scanner.  |
| 4.Polygon motor           | Drives the polygon mirror.   |
| 5.Eject motor             | Drives the fuser section and eject section.                        |
| 6.Lift motor 1            | Operates the bottom plate in the cassette 1.                       |
| 7.Lift motor 2            | Operates the bottom plate in the cassette 2.                       |
| 8.Eject fan motor         | Cools the fuser and eject sections.                                |
| 9.LSU fan motor           | Cools the LSU section.   |
| 10.Power source fan motor | Cools the low voltage power source PWB and the laser scanner unit. |

- 
- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 11.Fuser pressure release motor | Driving the fuser pressure release.       |
| 12.Developer motor              | Drives the developer unit.                |
| 13.Conveying fan motor          | Stabilize paper conveying after transfer. |
| 14.Developer fan motor          | Cools the developer section.              |

## (4) Others



- |                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| 1.Paper feed clutch 1 | Controls the primary paper feed from cassette 1.          |
| 2.Paper feed clutch 2 | Controls the primary paper feed from cassette 2.          |
| 3.Registration clutch | Controls the secondary paper feed.                        |
| 4.DU clutch           | Controls the drive of the duplex feed roller.             |
| 5.Mid clutch          | Controls the paper conveying.                             |
| 6.MP solenoid         | Controls the MP bottom plate.                             |
| 7.Feedshift solenoid  | Operates the feedshift guide.                             |
| 8.Eraser              | Eliminates the residual electrostatic charge on the drum. |
| 9.Fuser heater 1      | Heats the heat roller.                                    |
| 10.Fuser heater 2     | Heats the heat roller.                                    |

---

|                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| 11.Fuser thermostat 1 | Prevents overheating of the heat roller.                      |
| 12.Fuser thermostat 2 | Prevents overheating of the heat roller.                      |
| 13.Cassette heater    | Dehumidifies the cassette section.                            |
| 14.Hard disk          | Stores the image data and information of job accounting mode. |
| 15.Speaker            | Generates an error sound.                                     |
| 16.Developer clutch   | Control drive of the developer unit.                          |
| 17.LCD                | Displaying the operation screen.                              |

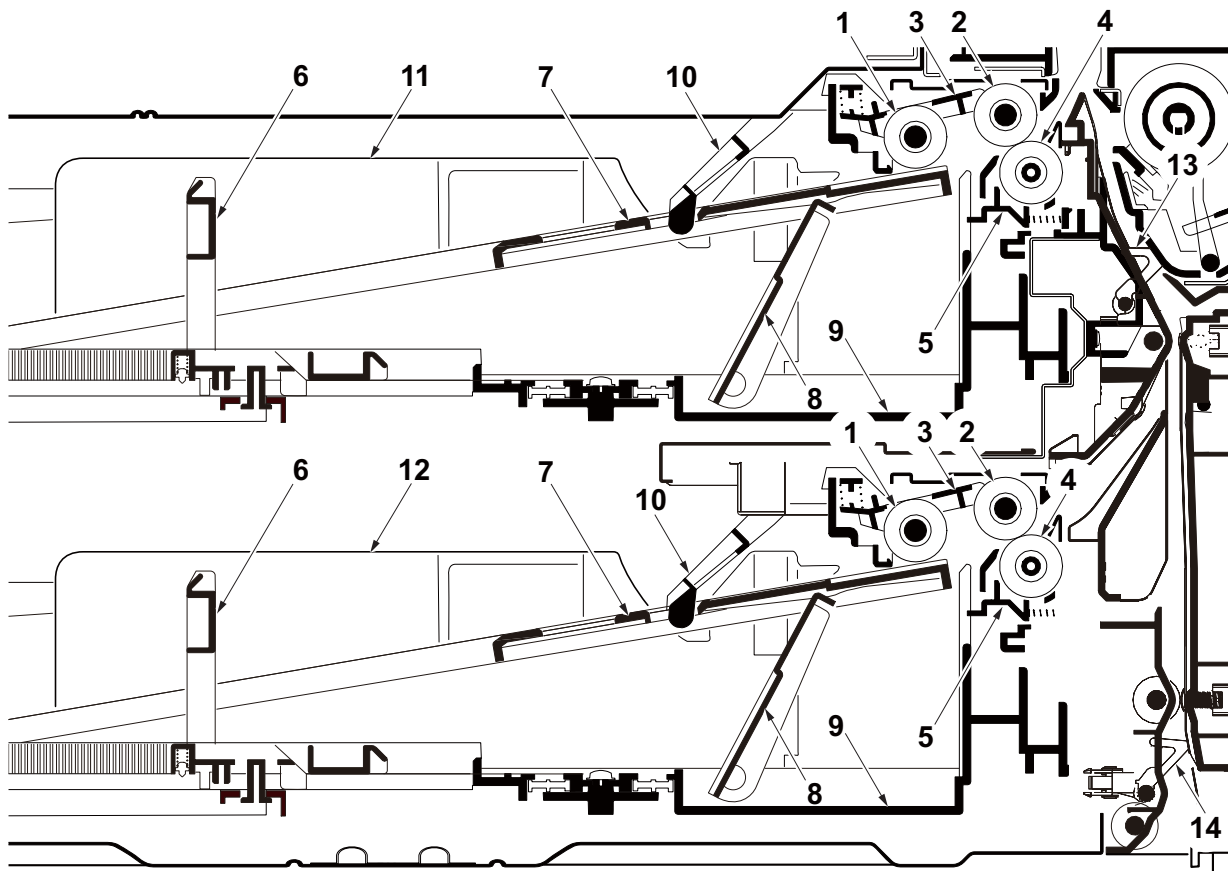


### 3 - 3 Paper feed/conveying section

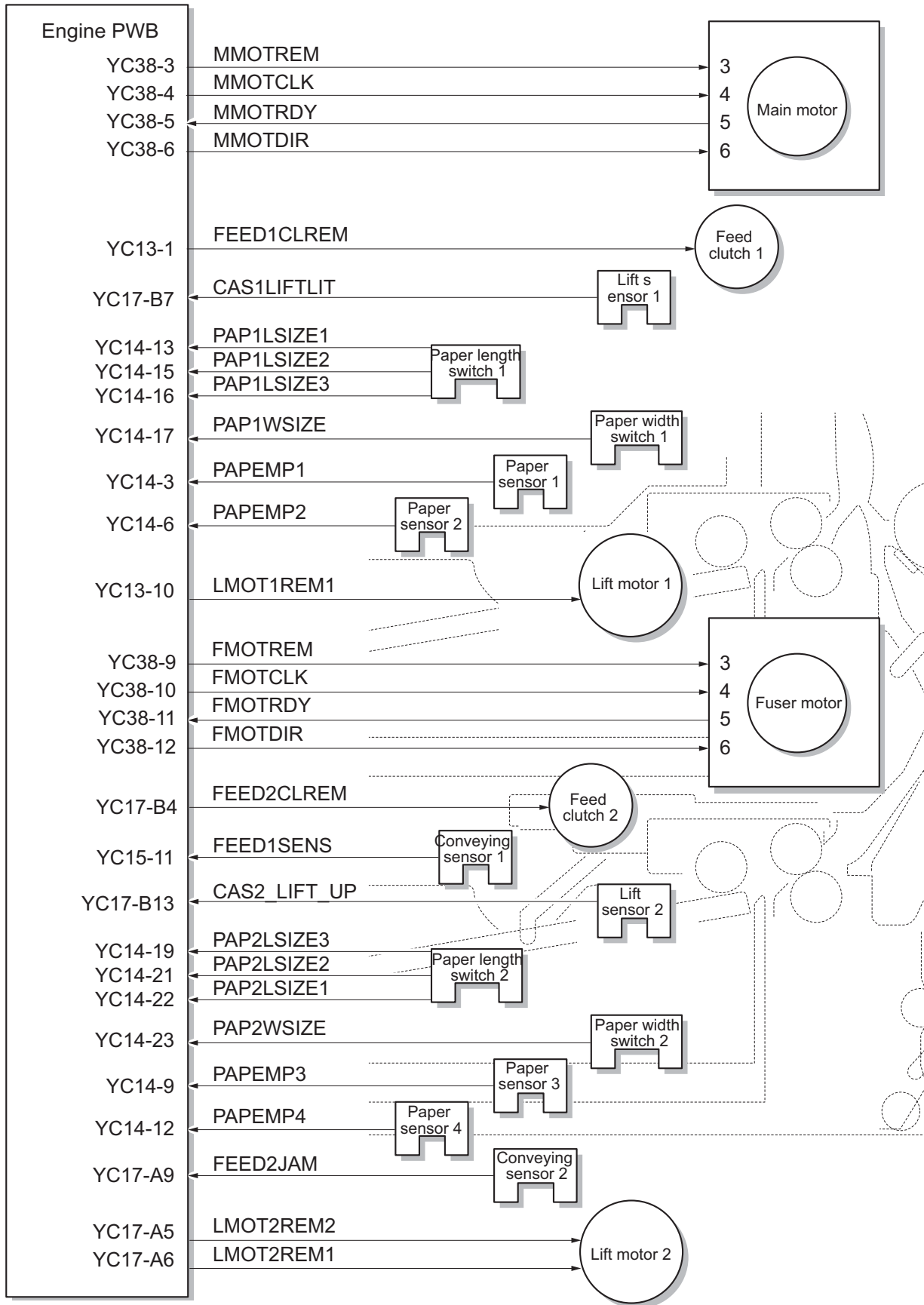
The paper feed/conveying section consists of the paper feed unit that feeds paper from the cassette and the MP tray paper feed unit that feeds paper from the MP tray, and the paper conveying section that conveys the feed paper to the transfer/separation section.

#### (1) Cassette paper feed section

The cassette can contain 500 sheets. The sheet from the cassette is pulled out by rotation of the pickup roller and sent to the paper conveying section by rotation of the paper feed roller. Also the retard roller prevents multiple feeding of paper.

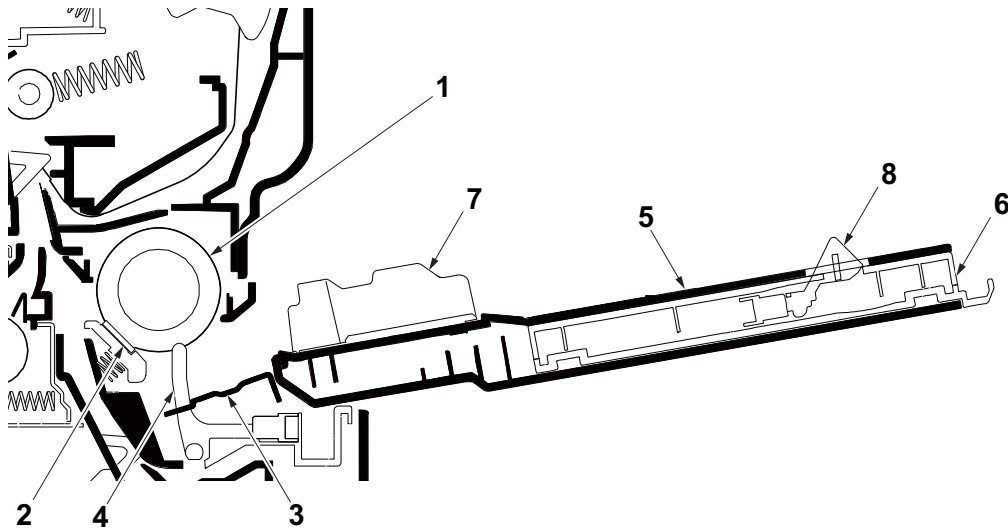


- |                  |                             |                                     |
|------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Pickup roller | 6. Paper length guide       | 11. Cassette 1                      |
| 2. Feed roller   | 7. Lift plate               | 12. Cassette 2                      |
| 3. Feed holder   | 8. Lift work plate          | 13. Acuator<br>(conveying sensor 1) |
| 4. Retard roller | 9. Cassette base            | 14. Acuator<br>(conveying sensor 2) |
| 5. Retard holder | 10. Actuator (paper sensor) |                                     |

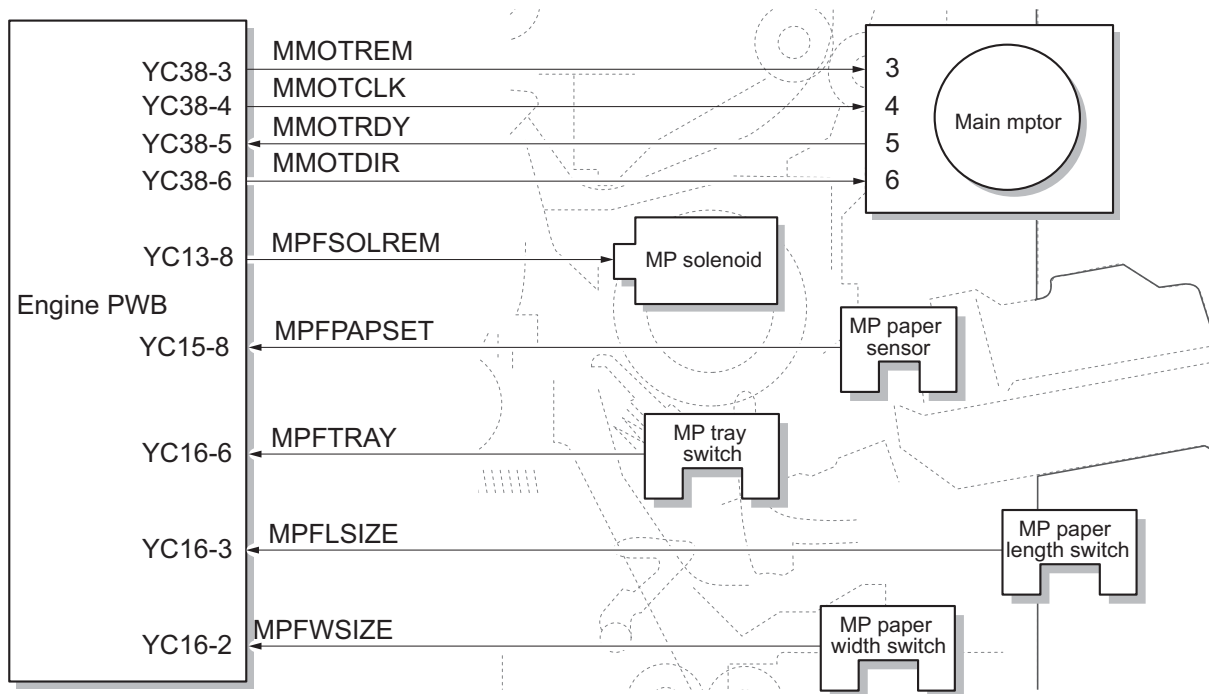


(2) MP tray paper feed section

The MP tray can contain 100 sheets. Feeding from the MP tray is performed by the rotation of the MP paper feed roller. Also, function of the MP separation pad prevents paper from multiple feeding.

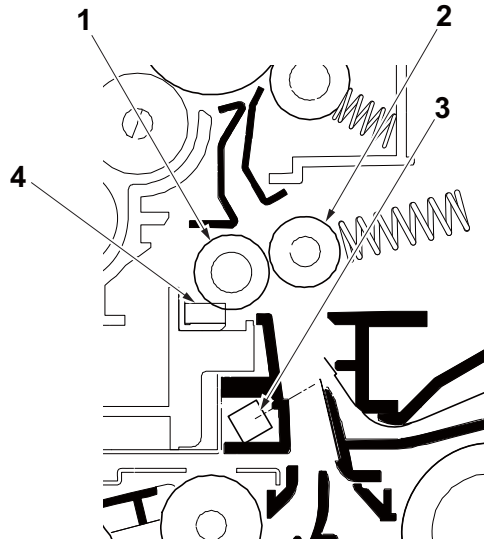


- |                      |                              |   |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---|
| 1. MP feed roller    | 4. Actuator(MP paper sensor) | 7. MP paper width guide                 |
| 2. MP separation pad | 5. MP tray                   | 8. Actuator<br>(MP paper length switch) |
| 3. MP lift plate     | 6. MP tray extension         |   |

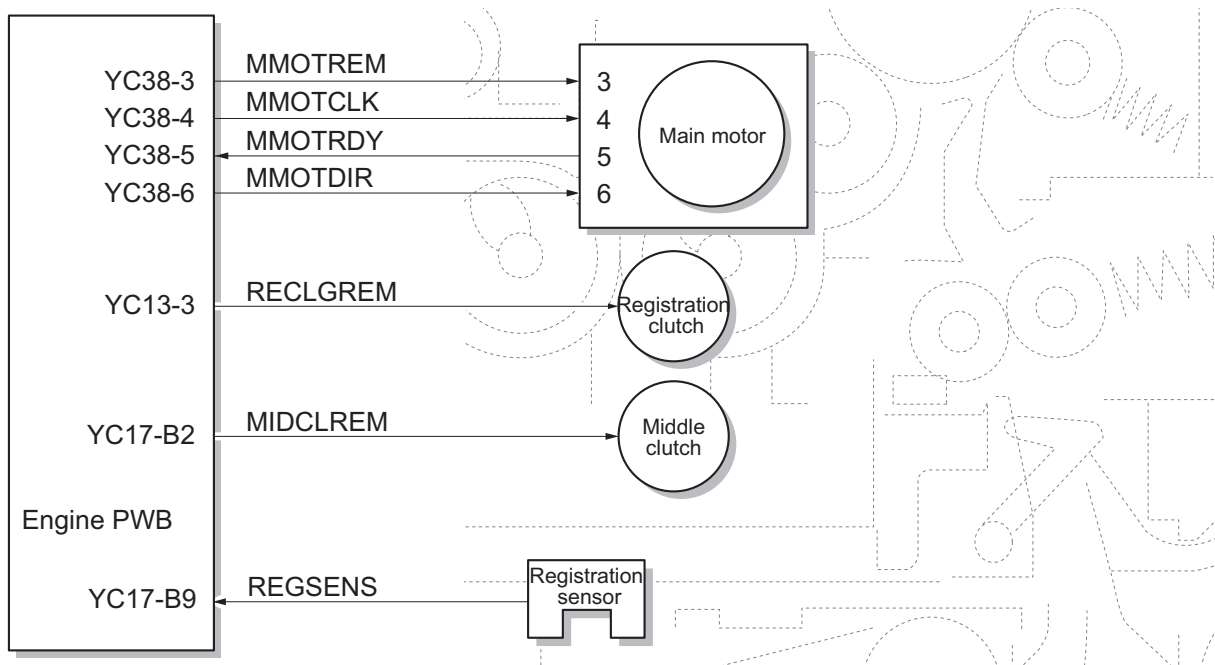


### (3) Conveying section

The conveying section conveys paper to the transfer/separation section as paper feeding from the cassette or MP tray, or as paper refeeding for duplex printing. Paper by feeding is conveyed by the paper feed roller to the position where the registration sensor is turned on, and then sent to the transfer/separation section by the right registration roller and left registration roller.



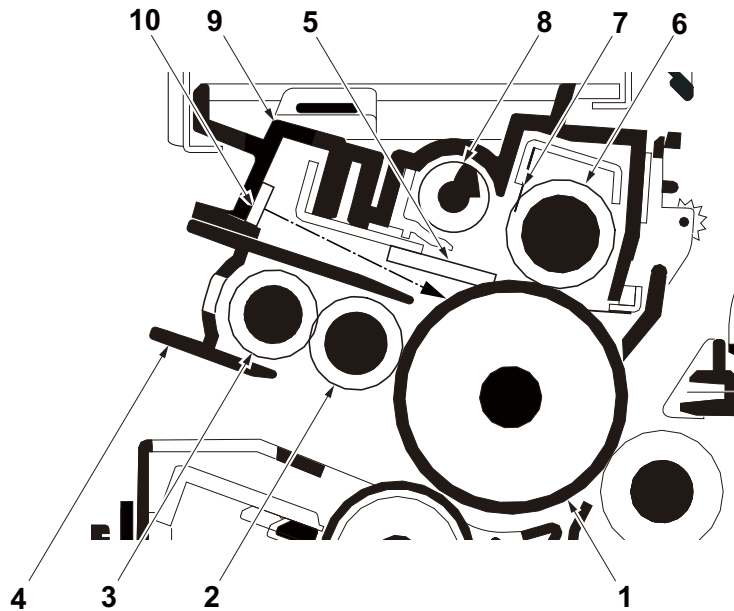
- |                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Left registration roller  | 3. Registration sensor  |
| 2. Right registration roller | 4. Registration cleaner |



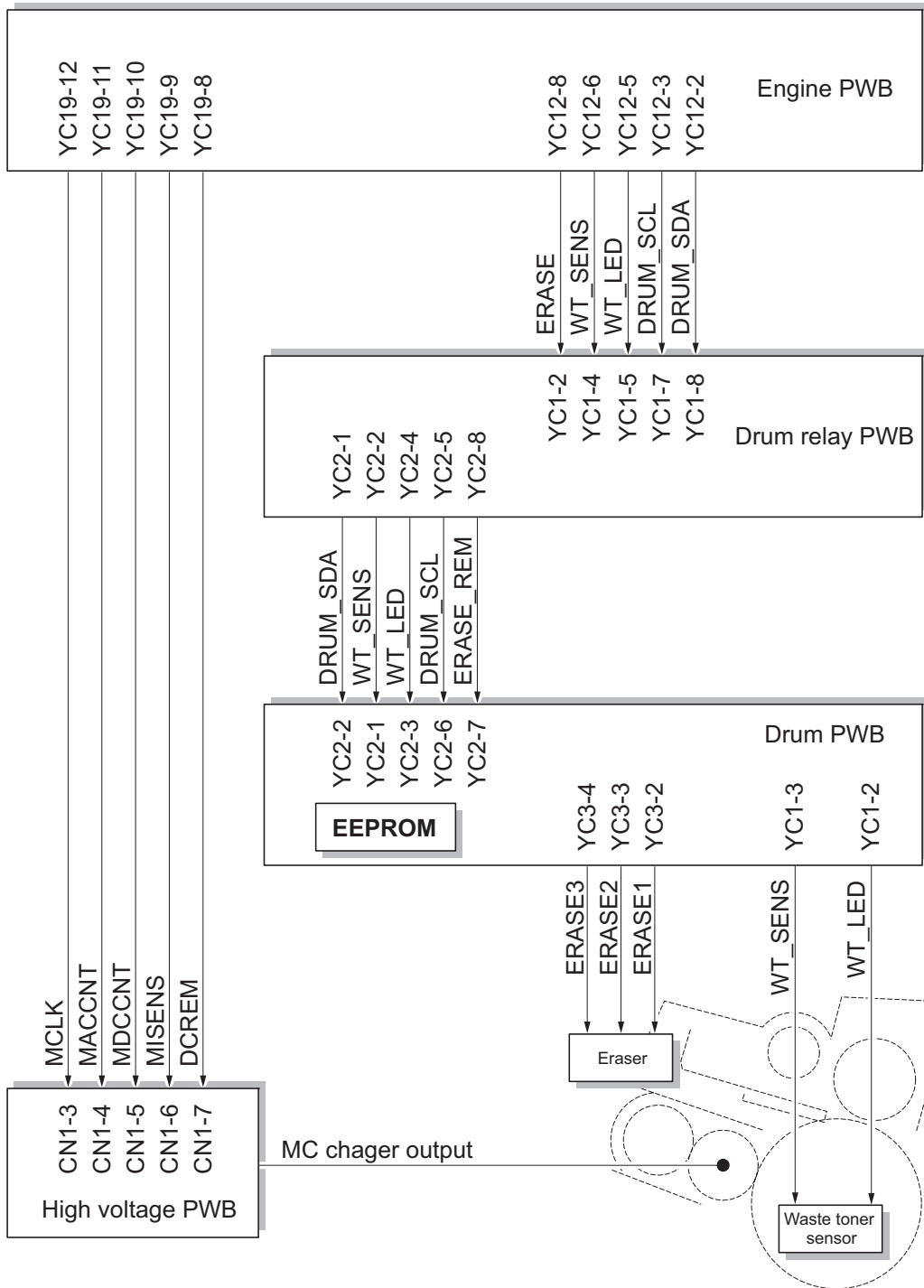
### 3 - 4 Drum section

The drum section consists of the drum, the charger roller unit, and the cleaning unit, and the drum surface is uniformly charged in preparation for formation of residual image by laser beam.

After transfer is complete, toner remaining on the drum surface is chipped off with the cleaning blade and is collected to the waste toner box with the drum screw. The eraser consists of LEDs and removes residual charge on the drum before main charging.

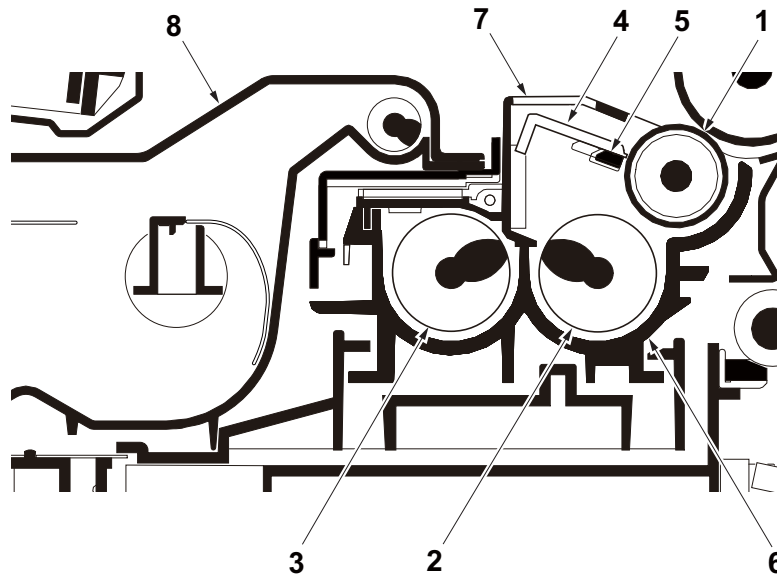


- |                       |                    |               |
|-----------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| 1. Drum               | 5. Cleaning blade  | 9. Drum frame |
| 2. MC roller          | 6. Cleaning roller | 10. Eraser    |
| 3. MC cleaning roller | 7. Scraper         |               |
| 4. MC case            | 8. Sweep roller    |               |

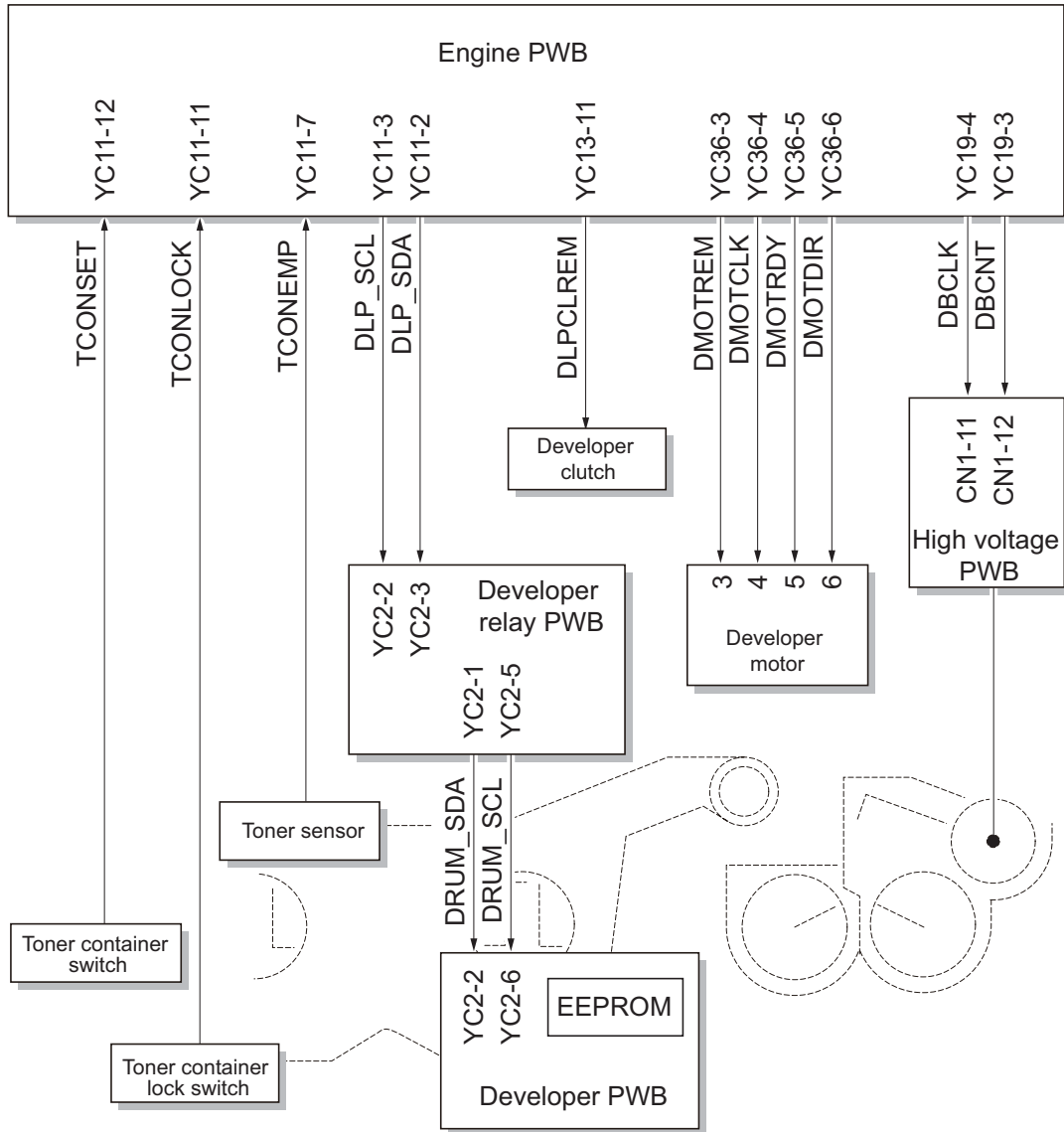


### 3 - 5 Developing section

The developing unit consists of the developing roller that forms the magnetic brush, the developing blade and the developing screws that agitate the toner. Also, the toner sensor checks whether or not toner remains in the developing unit.



- |                       |                     |                          |
|-----------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Developing roller  | 4. Developing blade | 7. Upper developer cover |
| 2. Developing screw A | 5. Magnet blade     | 8. Toner container       |
| 3. Developing screw B | 6. Developer case   |                          |





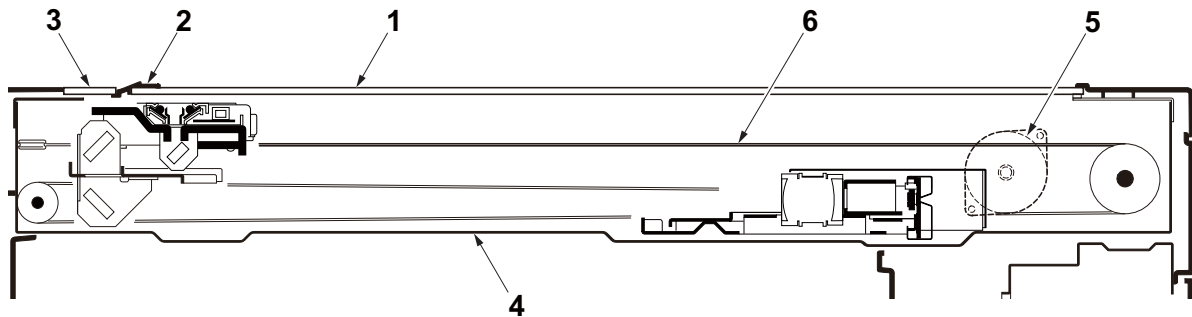
### 3 - 6 Optical section

The optical section consists of the image scanner section for scanning and the laser scanner section for printing.

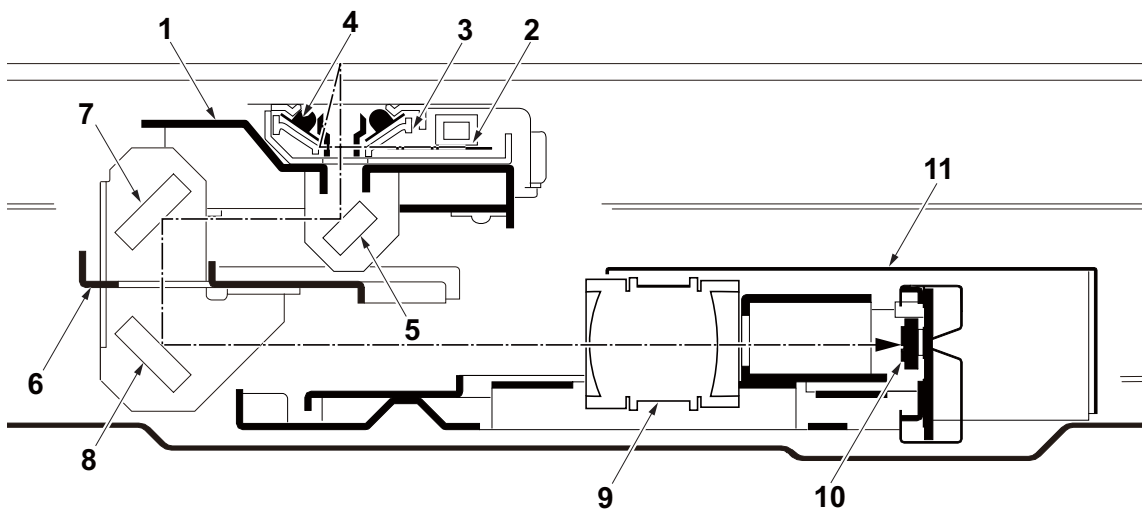
#### (1) Image scanner section

The original image is illuminated by the exposure lamp and scanned by the CCD image sensor in the CCD PWB via the three mirrors and ISU lens, the reflected light being converted to an electrical signal.

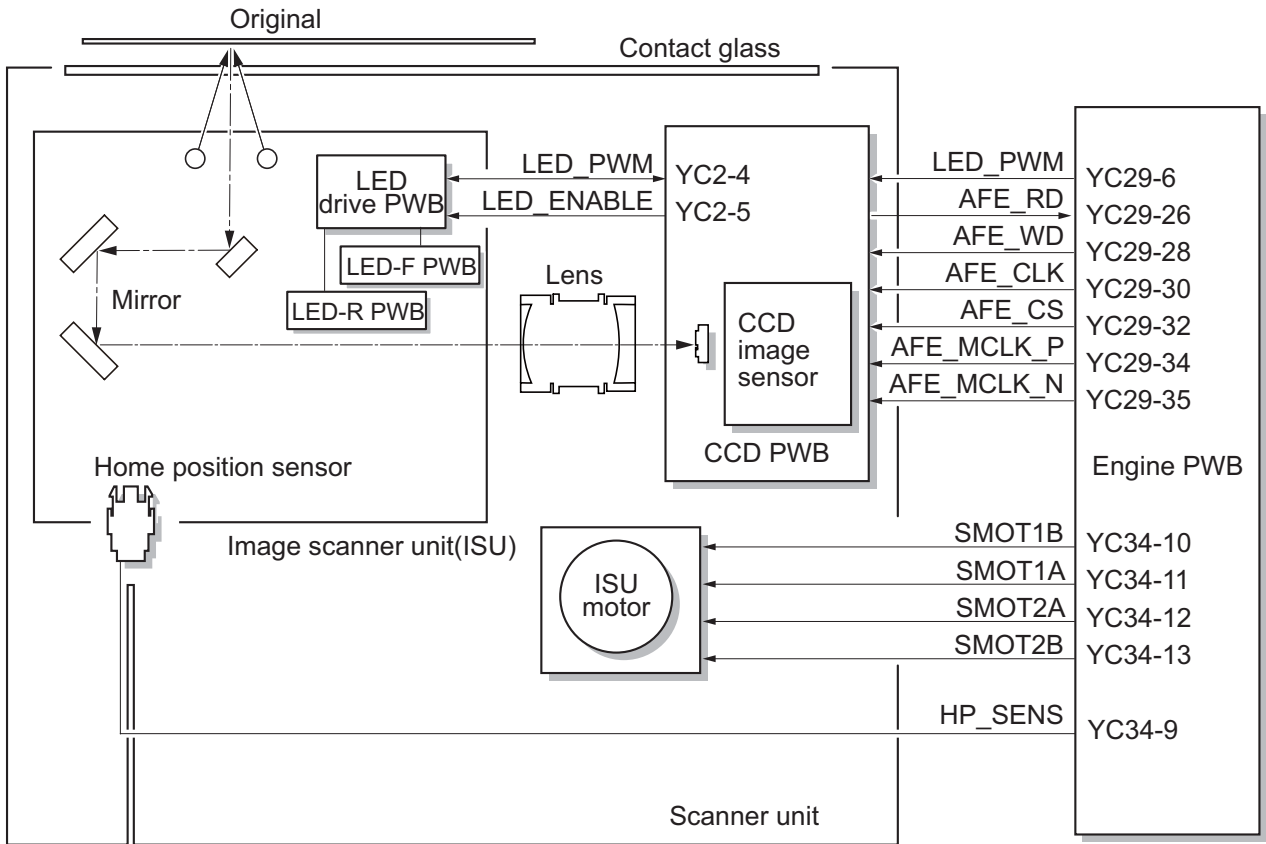
If a document processor is used, the image scanner unit stops at the position of the DP contact glass and scans sequentially one row of the image on the original in synchronization with the moving timing of the original in the sub scan direction by driving the DP.



- |                                  |                     |                  |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| 1. Contact glass                 | 3. DP contact glass | 5. Scanner motor |
| 2. Original size indicator plate | 4. Scanner frame    | 6. Scanner wire  |

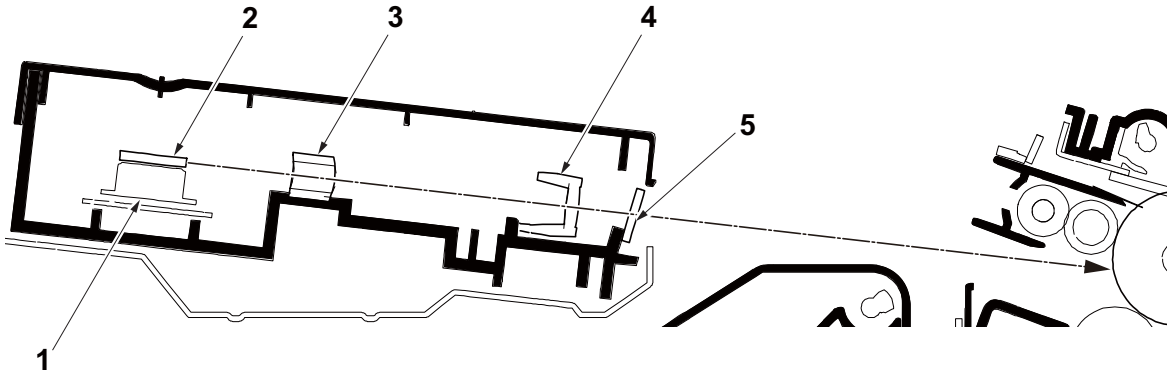


- |                       |                   |                   |
|-----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Mirror frame A     | 5. Mirror A       | 9. ISU lens       |
| 2. LED drive PWB      | 6. Mirror frame B | 10. CCD PWB       |
| 3. Light guide holder | 7. Mirror B       | 11. Scanner cover |
| 4. Light guide        | 8. Mirror C       |                   |

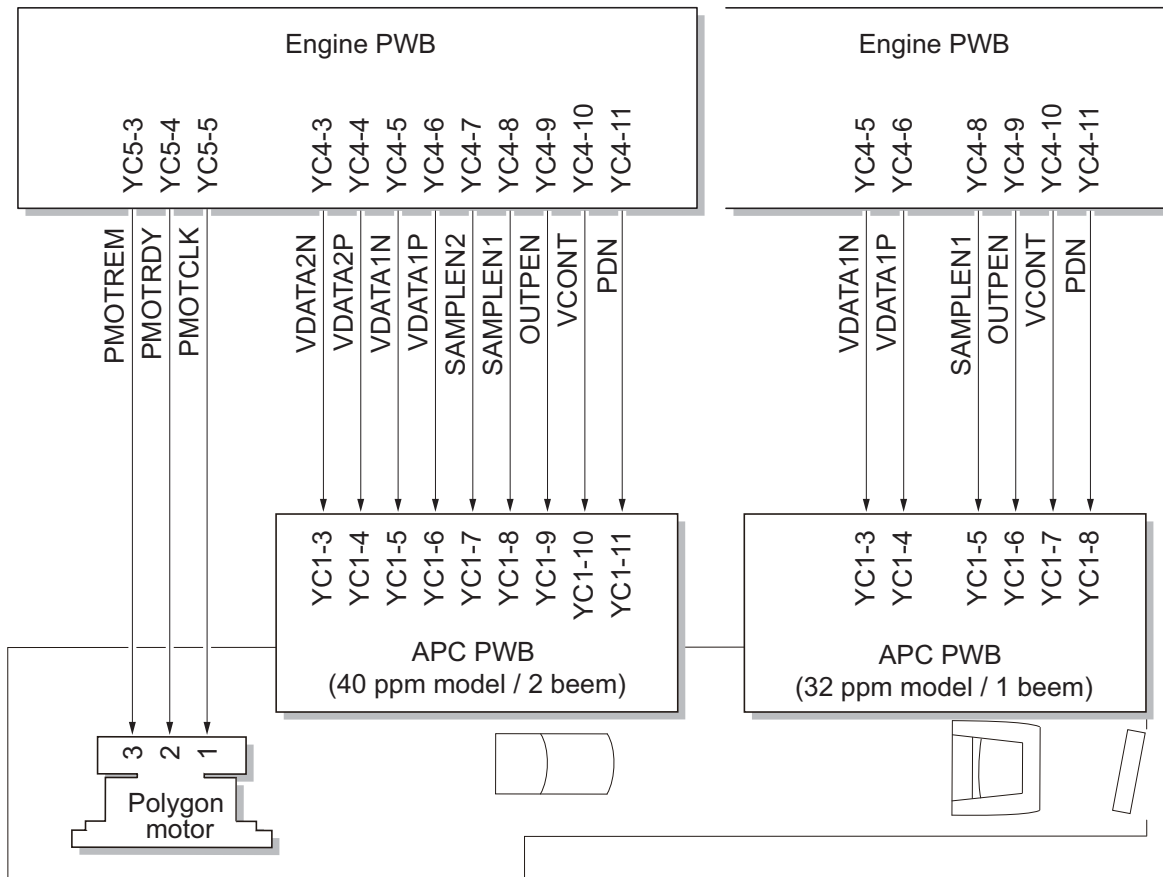


(2) Laser scanner section

The charged surface of the drum is then scanned by the laser beam from the laser scanner unit. The laser beam is dispersed as the polygon motor revolves to reflect the laser beam over the drum. Various lenses and mirror are housed in the laser scanner unit, adjust the diameter of the laser beam, and focalize it at the drum surface. Also the LSU cleaning motor is activated to conduct automatically cleaning of the LSU dust shield glass.



- 1. Polygon motor
- 2. Polygon mirror
- 3. fθ lens A
- 4. fθ lens B
- 5. LSU dust shield glass

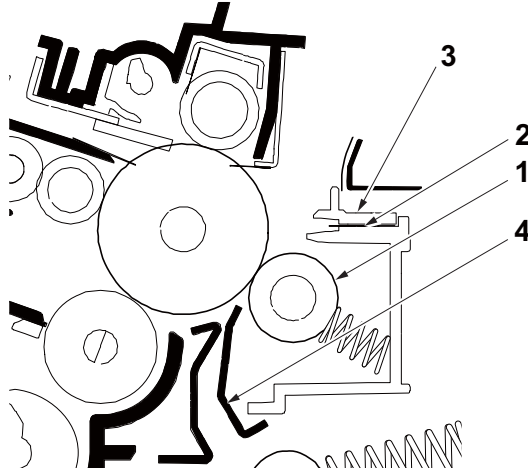


### 3 - 7 Transfer/Separation section

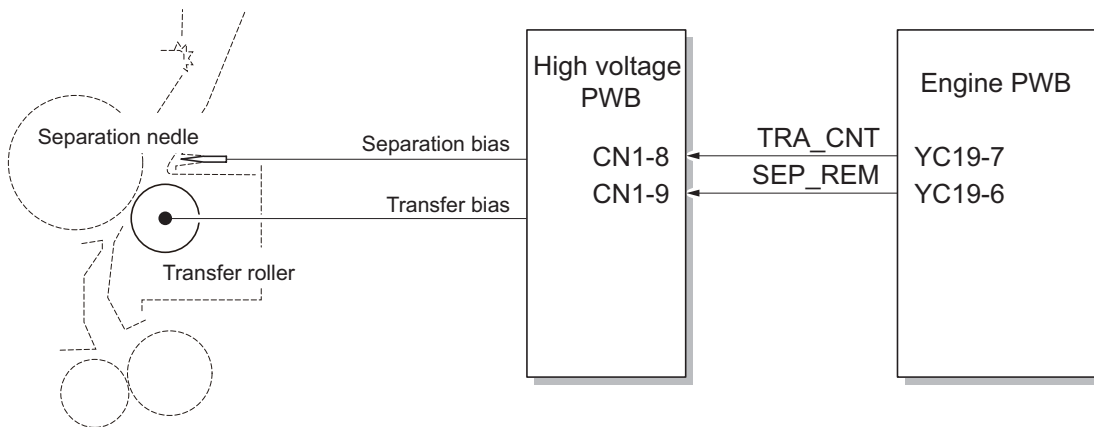
The transfer and separation section consists mainly of the transfer roller, separation electrode and drum separation claws.

A high voltage generated by the high voltage PWB is applied to the transfer roller for transfer charging.

Paper after transfer is separated from the drum by applying separation charging that is output from the high voltage PWB to the separation electrode.

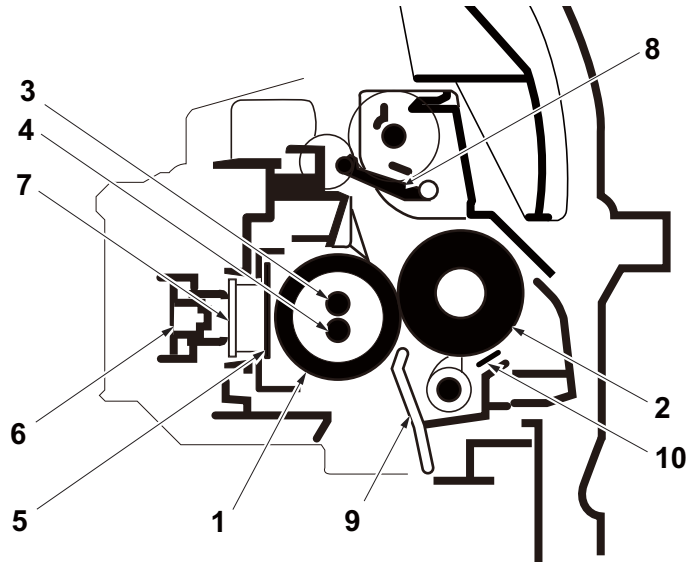


- |                      |                             |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Transfer roller   | 3. Separation needle holder |
| 2. Separation needle | 4. Paper chute guide        |

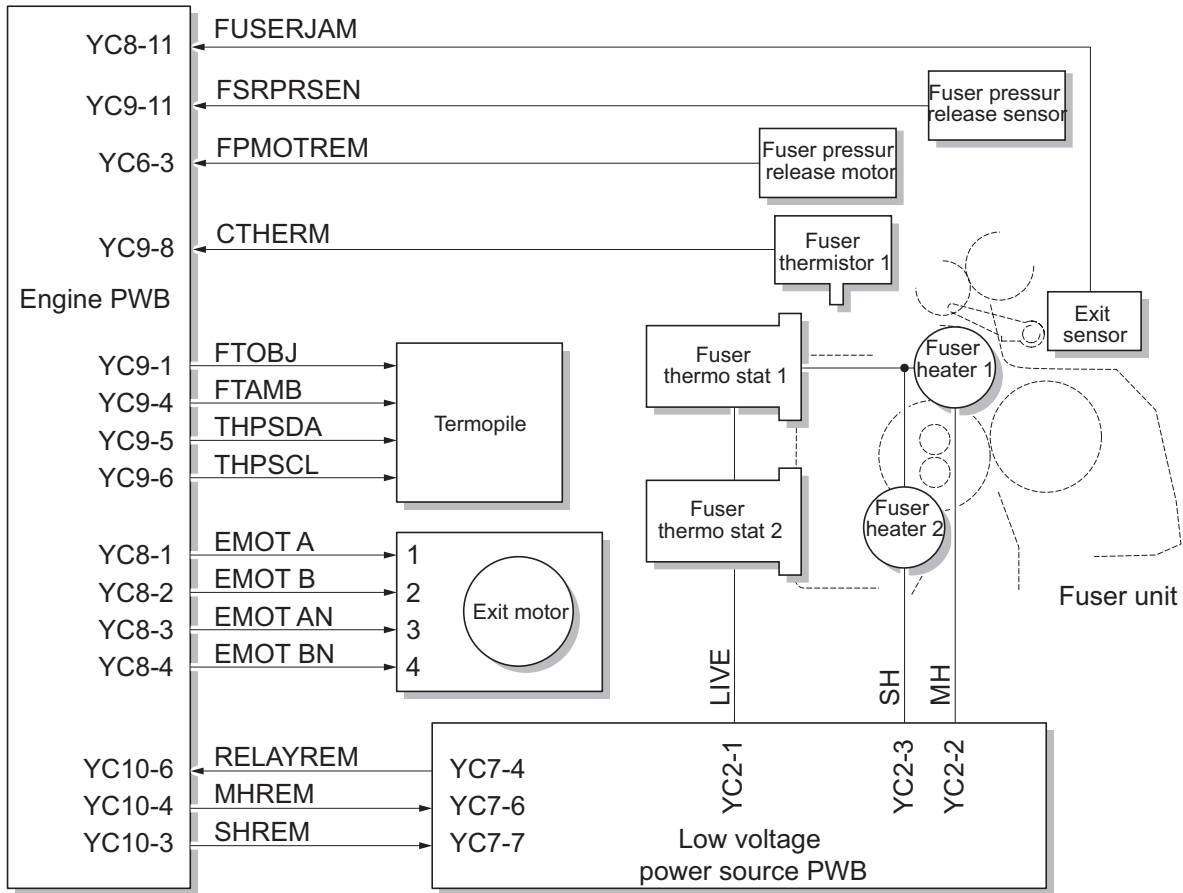


### 3 - 8 Fuser section

The paper sent from the transfer/separation section is interleaved between the heat roller and the press roller. The heat roller is heated by the fuser heater, and the toner is fused by heat and pressure and fixed onto the paper because the press roller is pressed by the fuser press spring. The surface temperature of heat roller is detected by the fuser thermistor and controlled by the engine PWB. If the fuser section shows extremely high temperature, the power line will be shut off and the fuser heater is forced to turn off.

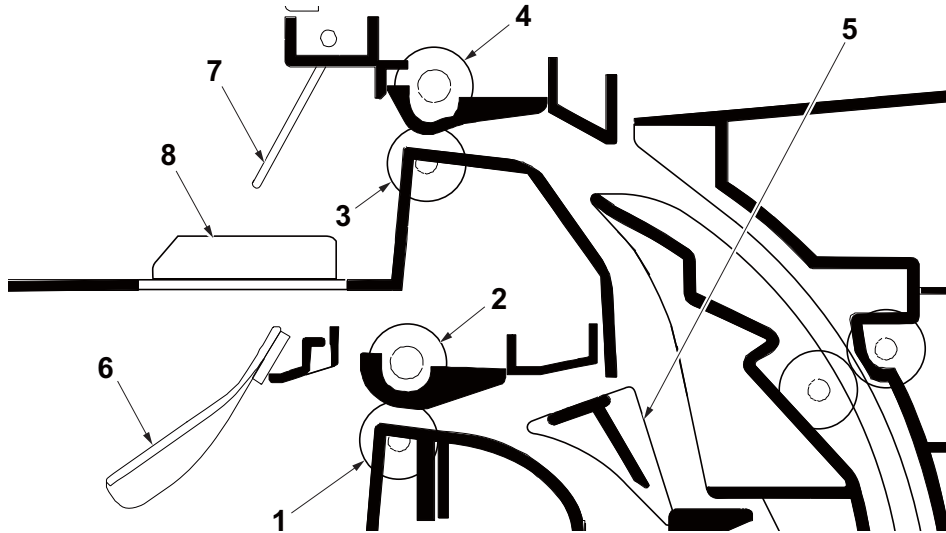


- |                   |   |                       |
|-------------------|---|-----------------------|
| 1. Heat roller    | 5. Fuser thermistor 1<br>(contact / edge) | 9. Fuser paper guide  |
| 2. Press roller   | 6. Thermopile                             | 10. Discharging plate |
| 3. Fuser heater 1 | 7. Fuser thermostat                       |                       |
| 4. Fuser heater 2 | 8. Actuator (exit sensor)                 |                       |

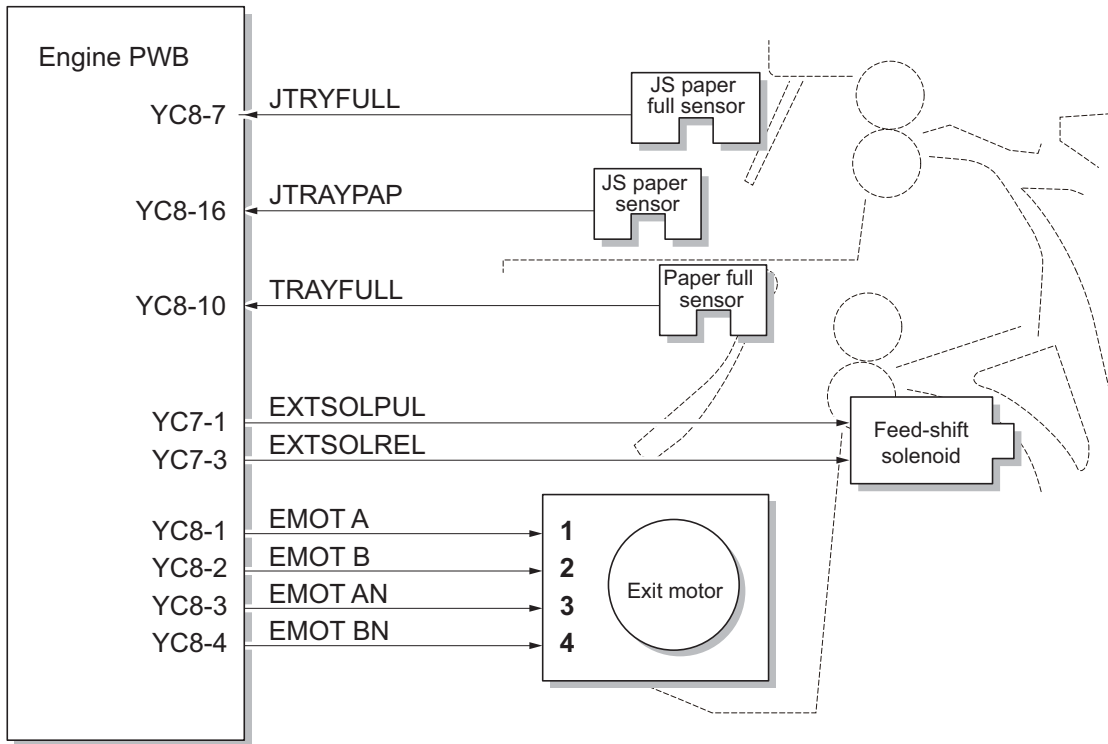


### 3 - 9 Eject/Feedshift section

The paper eject/feedshift section consists of the conveying path which sends the paper that has passed the fuser section to the inner tray, the job separator tray or the duplex conveying section.



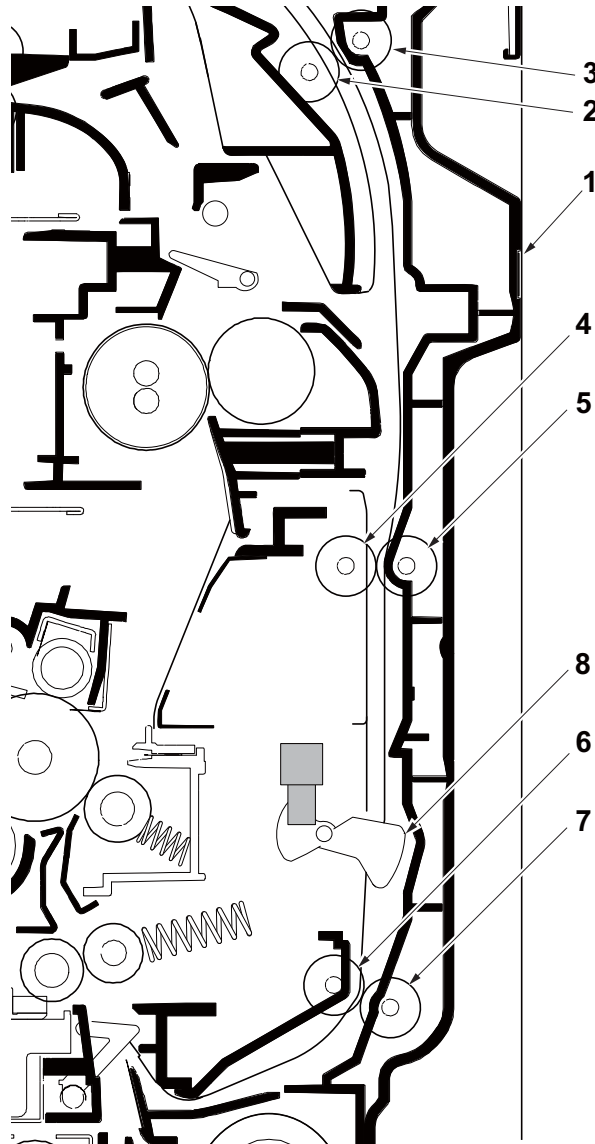
- |    |               |    |                              |    |                                    |
|----|---------------|----|------------------------------|----|------------------------------------|
| 1. | Exit roller A | 4. | Exit pulley B                | 7. | Actuator<br>(JS paper full sensor) |
| 2. | Exit pulley A | 5. | Feed-shift guide             | 8. | Actuator (JS paper sensor)         |
| 3. | Exit roller B | 6. | Actuator (paper full sensor) |    |                                    |



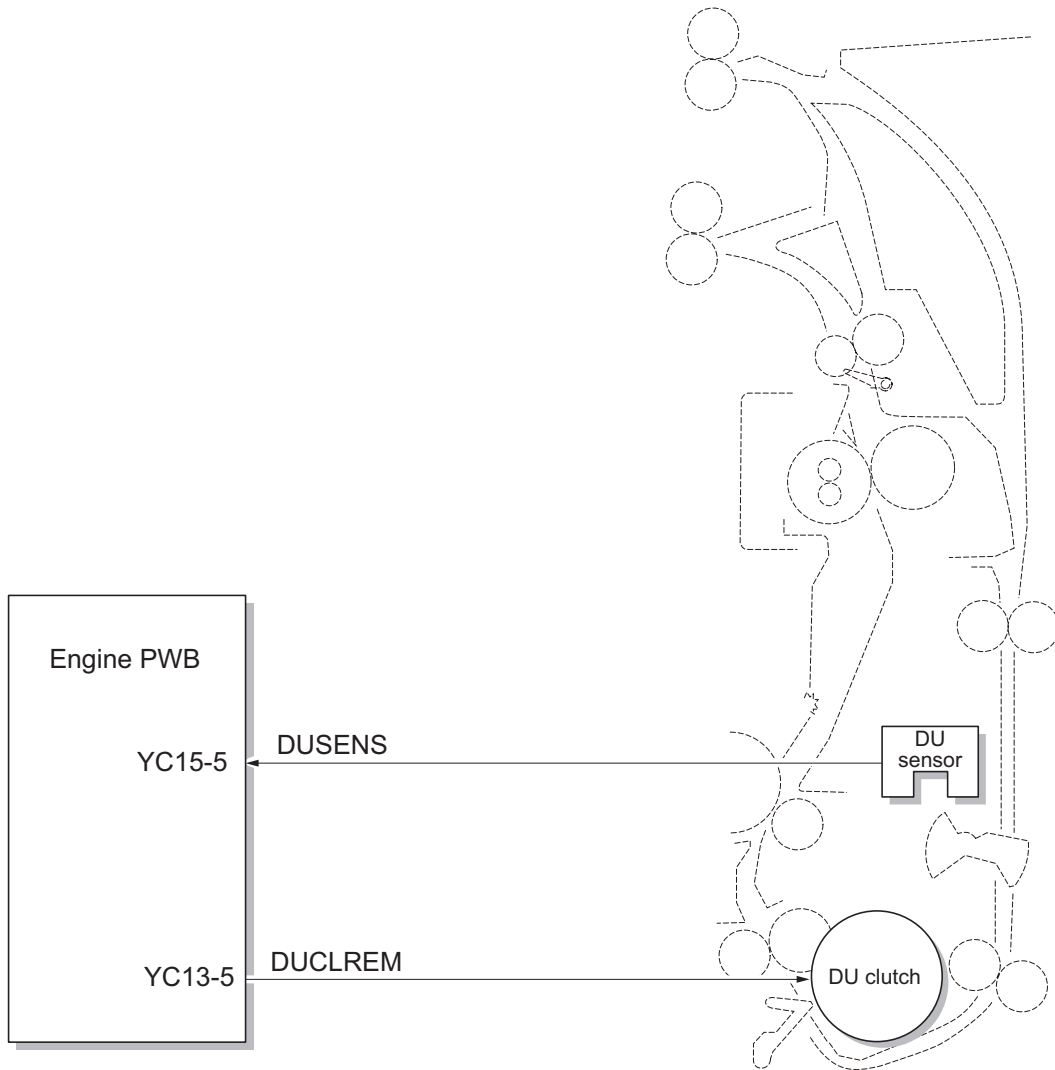


### 3 - 10 Duplex conveying section

The duplex conveying section consists of conveying path which sends the paper sent from the eject/feedshift section to the paper feed/conveying section when duplex printing.



- |    |                       |    |                       |    |                       |
|----|-----------------------|----|-----------------------|----|-----------------------|
| 1. | Right cover 1         | 4. | DU conveying roller B | 7. | DU conveying pulley C |
| 2. | DU conveying roller A | 5. | DU conveying pulley B | 8. | Actuator(DU sensor)   |
| 3. | DU conveying pulley A | 6. | DU conveying roller C |    |                       |



## 4Maintenance

### 4 - 1 Precautions for the maintenance

#### (1) Precautions

Before starting disassembly, press the Power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the Power lamp is off before turning off the main power switch. Unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.

When the fax kit is installed, be sure to disconnect the modular code before starting disassembly.

When handling PWBs (printed wiring boards), do not touch parts with bare hands. The PWBs are susceptible to static charge.

Do not touch any PWB containing ICs with bare hands or any object prone to static charge.

When removing the hook of the connector, be sure to release the hook.

Take care not to get the cables caught.

To reassemble the parts, use the original screws. If the types and the sizes of screws are not known, refer to the PARTS LIST.

#### (2) Storage and handling of the drum

Note the following when handling or storing the drum unit.

When removing the drum unit, never expose the drum surface to strong direct light.

Keep the place where an ambient temperature is between  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}/-4^{\circ}\text{F}$  and  $40^{\circ}\text{C}/104^{\circ}\text{F}$  and at a ambient humidity is not higher than 85% RH. Avoid abrupt changes in temperature and humidity.

Avoid exposure to any substance which is harmful to or may affect the quality of the drum unit.

Do not touch the drum surface with any object. Do not touch the bare hand and glove etc. When touch the surface of the drum by hand or adhere to the oil etc, make sure to clean it.

#### (3) Storage of the toner container

Store the toner container in a cool, dark place.

Avoid direct light and high humidity.

#### (4) How to tell a genuine Kyocera toner container

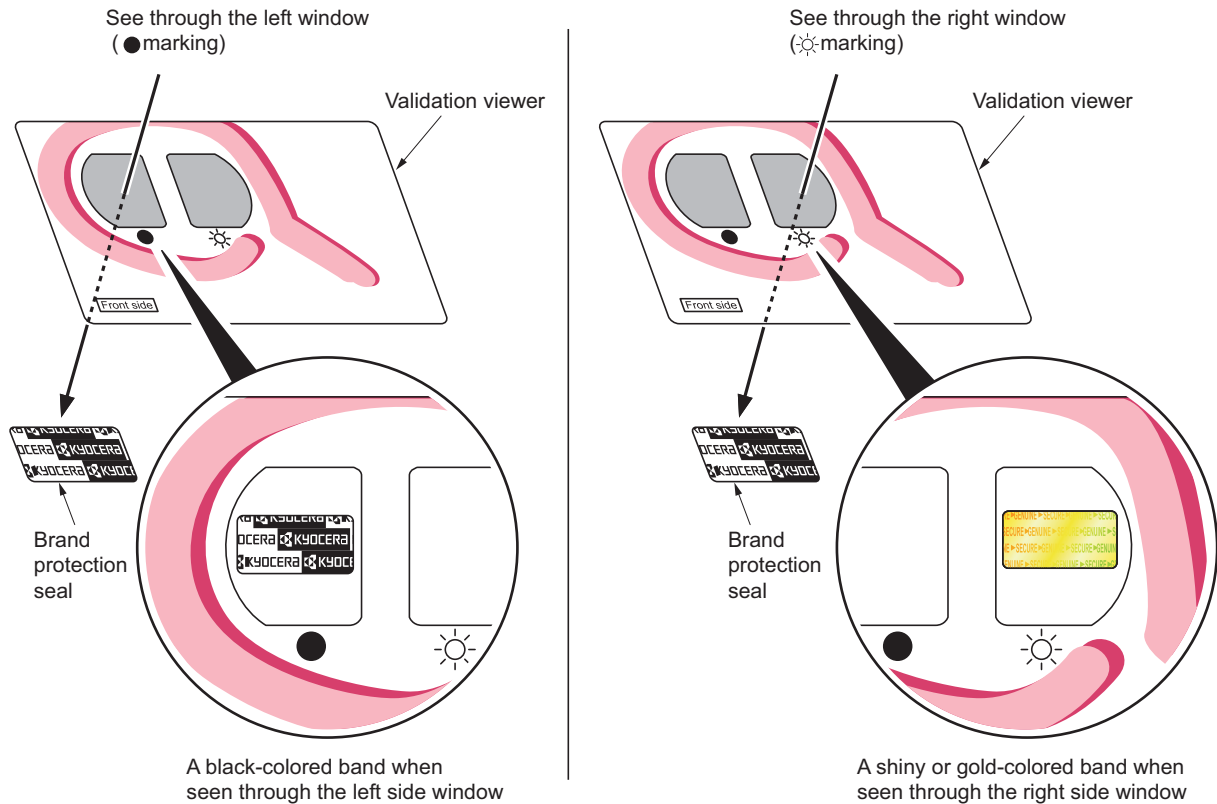
As a means of brand protection, the Kyocera toner container utilizes an optical security technology to enable visual validation. A validation viewer is required to accomplish this. Hold the validation viewer over the left side part of the brand protection seal on the toner container.

Seeing through each of two windows, validate genuineness or spuriousness by appearances of the brand protection seal.

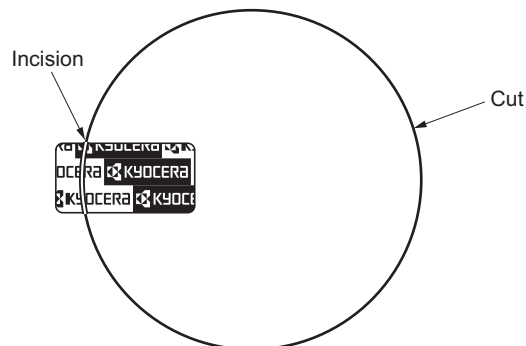
The brand protection seal is black color when seen through the left side window ( ● )

The brand protection seal is Gold color when seen through the right side window ( ☀ )

The above will reveal that the toner container is a genuine Kyocera branded toner container, otherwise, it is a counterfeit.



The brand protection seal has an incision as shown below to prohibit reuse.



## 4 - 2 Maintenance parts

### (1) List of maintenance parts

| Maintenance part name       |  | Part No.                 |
|-----------------------------|--|--------------------------|
| Name used in service manual | Name used in parts list  |                          |
| Registration cleaner        | PARTS CLEANER REGIST ASSY SP                                     | 302NL9404_               |
| Primary paper feed unit     | PARTS PRIMARY FEED ASSY SP                                       | 302MV9406_               |
| MP paper feed roller        | PARTS ROLLER MPF ASSY SP   | 302MV9402_               |
| MP separation pad           | PARTS PAD SEPARATION ASSY SP                                     | 302RH9418_               |
| Exit unit                   | PARTS EXIT UNIT SP<br>PARTS EXIT UNIT B SP                       | 302V69406_<br>302V69407_ |
| Contact glass               | PARTS CONTACT-GLASS ASSY(I) SP<br>PARTS CONTACT-GLASS ASSY(C) SP | 302RH9415_<br>302RH9416_ |
| Mirror A/B/C                | MIRROR A/B/C   | -                        |
| ISU lens                    | -<br>(PARTS ISU ASSY H SP)                                       | -<br>(302ND9311_)        |
| LED unit                    | PARTS MOUNT LED ASSY SP  | 302V69308_               |
| ISU rail                    | -  | -                        |
| Original size timing sensor | SENSOR OPT.  | 302ND9480_               |
| ISU                         | -  | -                        |
| Roller                      | ROLLERS  | -                        |
| Pulley                      | PULLEYS  | -                        |
| Guide                       | GUIDES   | -                        |
| Clutch                      | CLUTCHS  | -                        |
| Sensor                      | SENSORS  | -                        |
| Cover                       | OUTER COVERS   | -                        |

## (2) Maintenance kits

| Maintenance part name   |   | Part No.                           |
|---|---|------------------------------------|
| Name used in service manual   | Name used in parts list   |                                    |
| MK-7125/MAINTENANCE KIT<br>(600,000sheet)<br>Transfer roller unit<br>Drum unit<br>Developier unit<br>Fuser unit | MK-7125/MAINTENANCE KIT<br><br>TR-7125<br>DK-7125<br>DV-7125<br>FK-7125 | 1702V68NL0<br><br>-<br>-<br>-<br>- |
| MK-7126/MAINTENANCE KIT<br>(600,000sheet)<br>Transfer roller unit<br>Drum unit<br>Developier unit<br>Fuser unit | MK-7126/MAINTENANCE KIT<br><br>TR-7125<br>DK-7125<br>DV-7125<br>FK-7126 | 1702V69JP0<br><br>-<br>-<br>-<br>- |
| MK-7127/MAINTENANCE KIT<br>(600,000sheet)<br>Transfer roller unit<br>Drum unit<br>Developerunit<br>Fuser unit   | MK-7127/MAINTENANCE KIT<br><br>TR-7125<br>DK-7125<br>DV-7125<br>FK-7127 | 1702V67US0<br><br>-<br>-<br>-<br>- |
| MK-7129/MAINTENANCE KIT<br>(600,000sheet)<br>Transfer roller unit<br>Drum unit<br>Developier unit<br>Fuser unit | MK-7129/MAINTENANCE KIT<br><br>TR-7125<br>DK-7125<br>DV-7125<br>FK-7125 | 1702V68AS0<br><br>-<br>-<br>-<br>- |

## 4 - 3 Periodic maintenance procedures

(CH: Check, CL: Clean, AD: Adjust, LU: Lubrication, RE: Replace)

- Check the maintenance counts by the maintenance mode U901.

### Set up

| Maintenance part/location | User call | PM maintenance (x1000 counts) |          |          |  |  | Points and cautions              |
|---------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|----------|----------|--|--|----------------------------------|
|                           |           | 600                           | 1200     | 1800     |  |  |                                  |
| Image Quality             | CH<br>AD  | CH<br>AD                      | CH<br>AD | CH<br>AD |  |  | Perform at the maximum copy size |

### PF and Conveying section

| Maintenance part/location | User call | PM maintenance (x1000 counts) |      |      |  |  | Points and cautions   |
|---------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|------|------|--|--|---|
|                           |           | 600                           | 1200 | 1800 |  |  |   |
| Registration cleaner      | CL        | CL                            | CL   | CL   |  |  | CL: VACUUM  |
| Primary paper feed unit   | CL        | RE                            | RE   | RE   |  |  | CL:Alcohol or dry cloth if no replacement.<br>RE: Performing U901 and check feeding count: Target to replace at 300K. |
| MP paper feed roller      | CL        | RE                            | RE   | RE   |  |  | CL:Alcohol or dry cloth if no replacement.<br>RE: Performing U901 and check feeding count: Target to replace at 300K. |
| MP separation pad         | CL        | RE                            | RE   | RE   |  |  | CL:Alcohol or dry cloth if no replacement.<br>RE: Performing U901 and check feeding count: Target to replace at 300K. |
| Rollers ,Pulleys          | CL        | CL                            | CL   | CL   |  |  | CL: alcohol or dry cloth  |
| Guides                    | CL        | CL                            | CL   | CL   |  |  | CL: alcohol or dry cloth  |

### Exit and Duplex Section

| Maintenance part/location | User call | PM maintenance (x1000 counts) |      |      |  |  | Points and cautions      |
|---------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|------|------|--|--|--------------------------|
|                           |           | 600                           | 1200 | 1800 |  |  |                          |
| Exit unit                 |           | CL                            | CL   | CL   |  |  | CL: VACUUM               |
| Rollers ,Pulleys          | CL        | CL                            | CL   | CL   |  |  | CL: alcohol or dry cloth |
| Guides                    |           | CL                            | CL   | CL   |  |  | CL: alcohol or dry cloth |

## Image scanner section

| Maintenance part/location | User call | PM maintenance (x1000 counts) |      |      |  |  | Points and cautions  |
|---------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|------|------|--|--|--|
|                           |           | 600                           | 1200 | 1800 |  |  |  |
| Contact glass             | CL        | CL                            | CL   | CL   |  |  | CL: Slit glass for DP: Clean by dry cloth or alcohol when inatalling DP, clean with dry cloth.<br>Contact glass for putting the original on: Dry cloth after cleaning with alcohol (FACE SIDE)<br>Wipe the back side with dry cloth after cleaning with alcohol only when unusual image (line or stain) appears. (BACK SIDE) |
| Mirror A/B/C              | CL        |                               |      |      |  |  | CL: Airblow after dry cloth only when unusual image(line) appears  |
| ISU lens                  | CL        |                               |      |      |  |  | CL: Airblow after dry cloth only when unusual image(line) appears  |
| Exposure unit             | CL<br>RE  |                               |      |      |  |  | RE: Replace if there are image problems  |
| ISU rail                  | LU        |                               |      |      |  |  | Check abnormal noise and jitter.<br>LU: scanner rail grease PG-671(P/N 60170000)   |
| Original detection switch | CH<br>CL  |                               |      |      |  |  | CL:Alcohol or dry cloth if there is problem. (lighting part and light reception part.)   |
| ISU                       | CH<br>RE  |                               |      |      |  |  | Replace if there are image problems  |

## Drive and other section

| Maintenance part/location | User call | PM maintenance (x1000 counts) |      |      |  |  | Points and cautions   |
|---------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|------|------|--|--|---|
|                           |           | 600                           | 1200 | 1800 |  |  |   |
| Clutch                    | CH<br>RE  | CH                            | CH   | CH   |  |  | CH: Check the copy registration and paper feed condition on registration and paper feed section |
| Sensor                    | CH        | CH                            | CH   | CH   |  |  | CH: Dry cloth or airblow if light reception part of photo sensor is dirt or paper dust          |

## Cover

| Maintenance part/location | User call | PM maintenance (x1000 counts) |      |      |  |  | Points and cautions   |
|---------------------------|-----------|-------------------------------|------|------|--|--|---|
|                           |           | 600                           | 1200 | 1800 |  |  |   |
| Cover                     |           | CL                            | CL   | CL   |  |  | CL: Alcohol or dry cloth  |
| Inside of machine         | CL        | CL                            | CL   | CL   |  |  | CL: VACUUM: Remove toner and paper dust especially at the paper conveying part and around the image formation part. |

**Caution**

Please do not use spray containing flammable gas for air-blow or air-brush purposes.



## 4 - 4 Maintenance parts replacement procedures

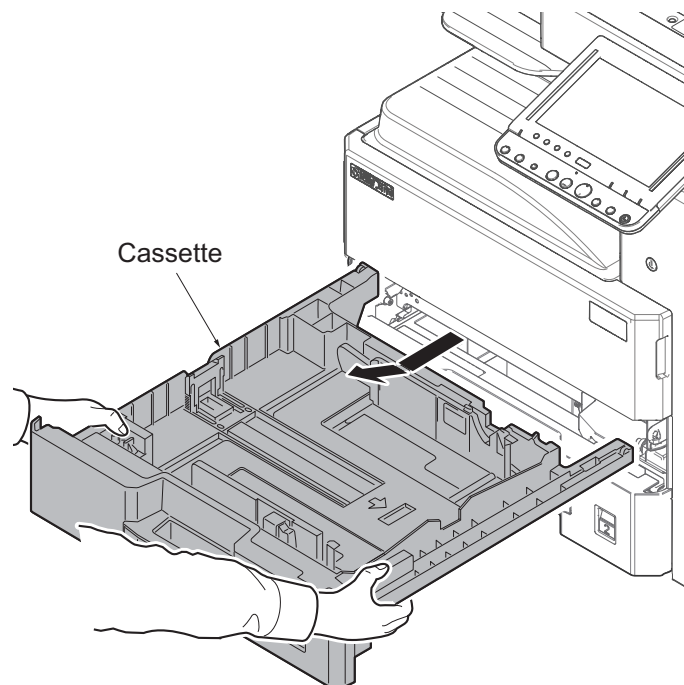
Replacement of the maintenance kit is required after about 600,000 images. The message [Replace MK.] appears at the replacement timing.

Execute maintenance mode U251 to reset the count after replacing the maintenance kit in the following procedures.

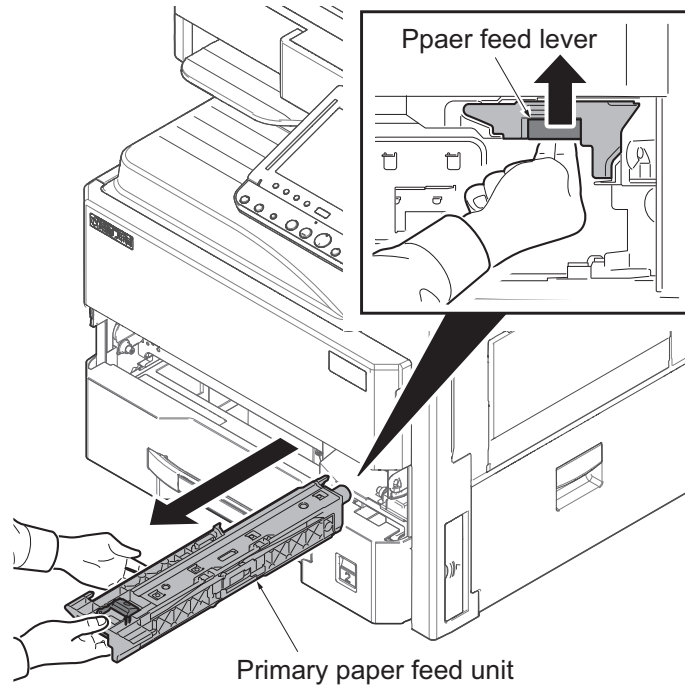
### (1) Paper feed section

#### (1-1) Detaching and attaching the primary paper feed unit

- 1 Pull the cassette, remove in the direction of the arrow.

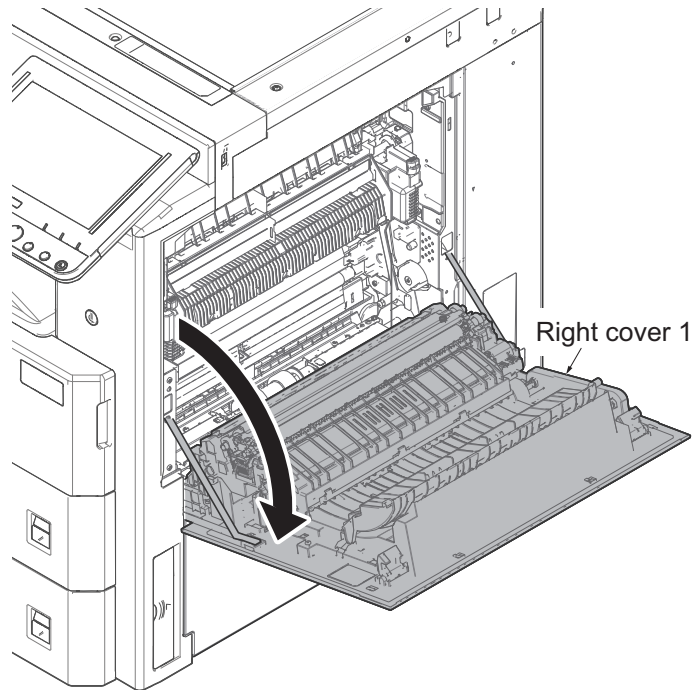


- 2 Release the paper feed lever and then remove the primary paper feed unit.
- 3 Check or replace the primary paper feed unit and refit all the removed parts.
- 4 When replacing the new unit, proceed as follows:
  - (1) Performs maintenance mode U901 (Checking copy counts by paper feed locations). (See page 6-194 )

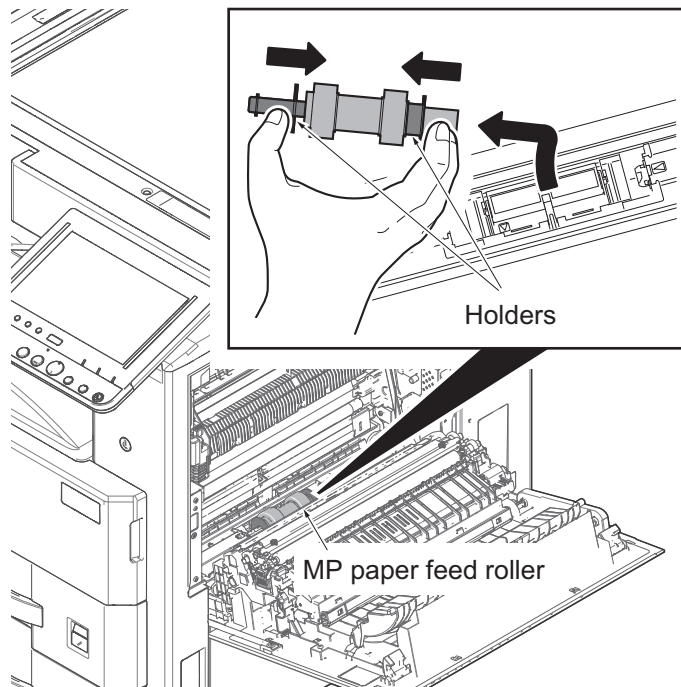


## (1-2) Detaching and attaching the MP paper feed roller and MP separation pad

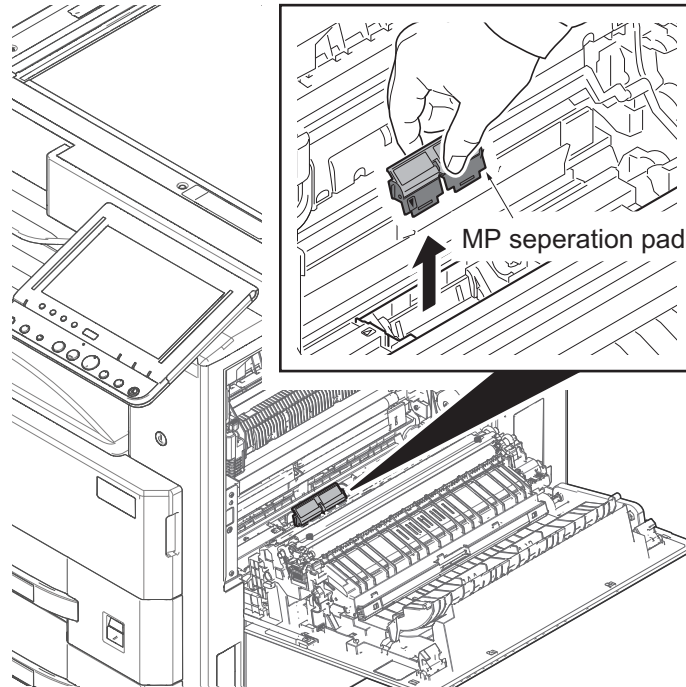
- 1 Open the right cover 1.



- 2 While squeezing the holders inward, remove the MP paper feed roller.

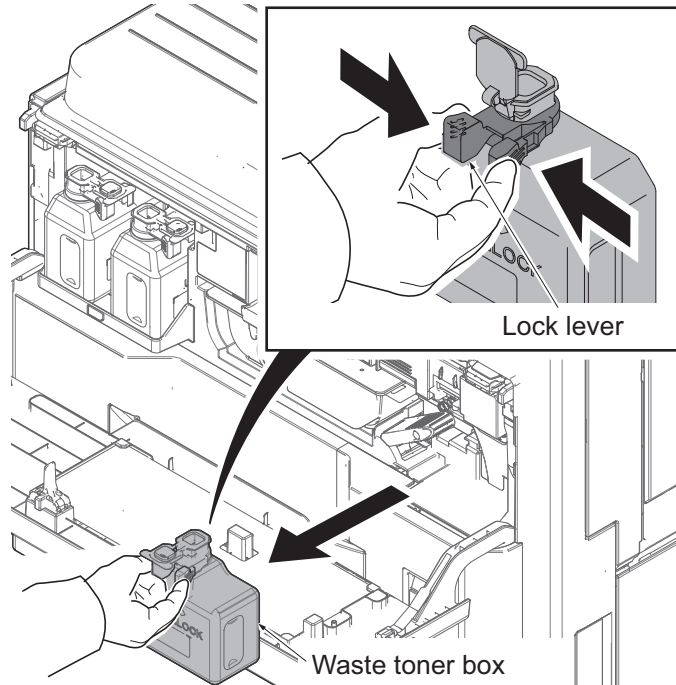


- 3 Tilt the MP separation pad forward and then remove it upwards.
- 4 Check or replace the MP paper feed roller and MP separation pad and refit all the removed parts.
- 5 When replacing the new unit, proceed as follows:  
Performs maintenance mode U901 (Checking copy counts by paper feed locations).(See page 6-194 )

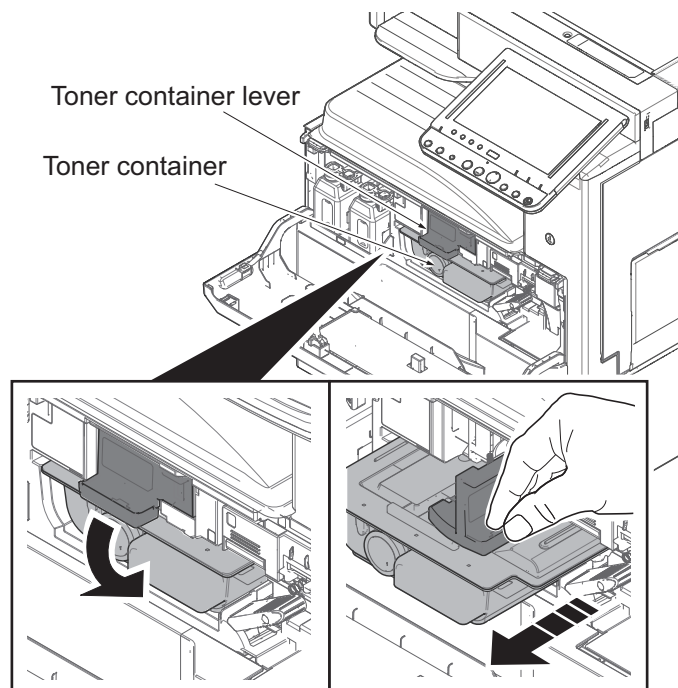


### (1-3) Detaching and attaching the registration cleaner

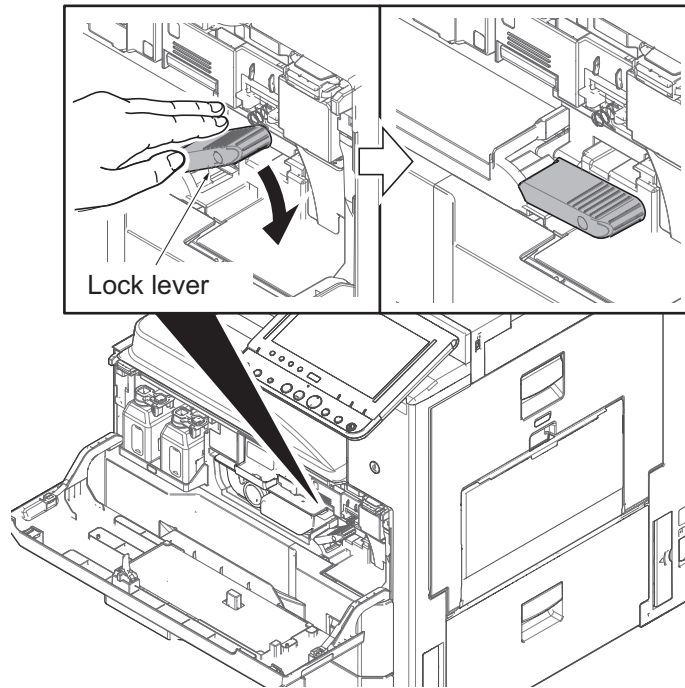
- 1 Open the front cover.
- 2 Release the lock lever and remove the waste toner box.



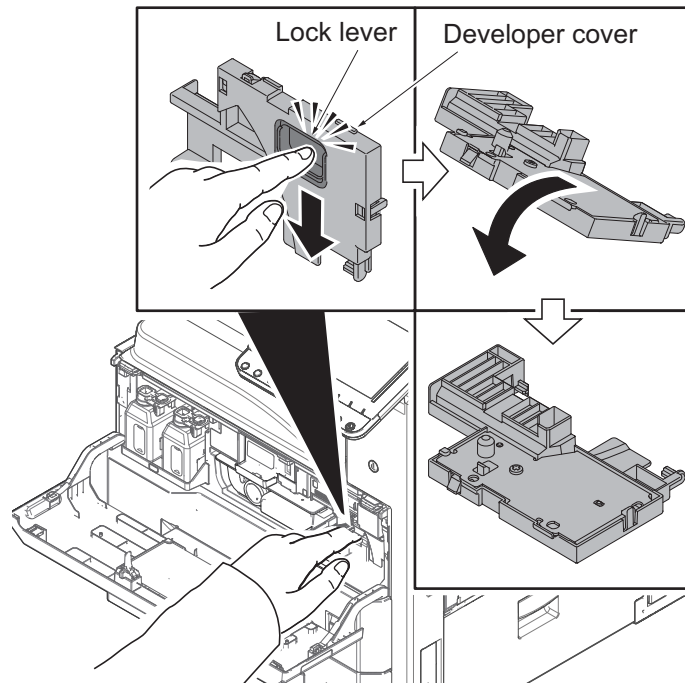
- 3 Release the toner container lever and then remove the toner container.



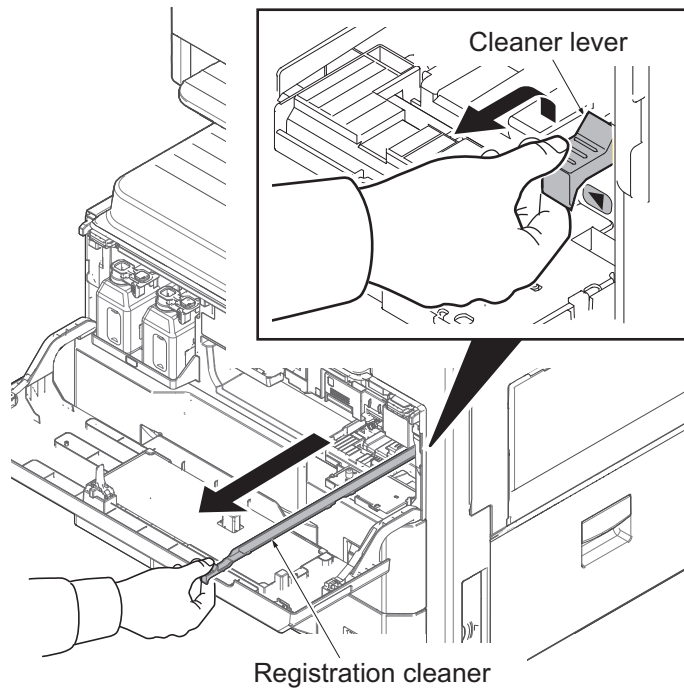
4 Release the lock lever.



5 Release the lock lever and open the developer cover.



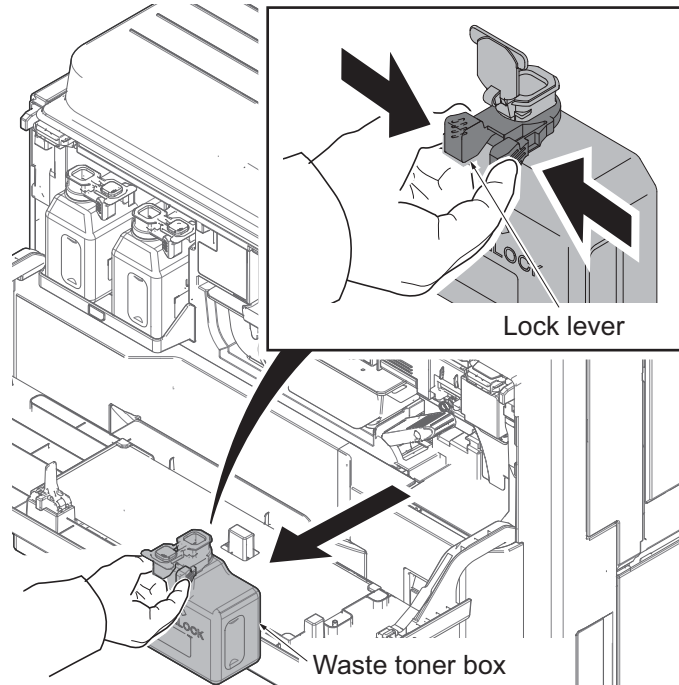
- 6 Set the cleaner lever up and draw the registration cleaner frontward.
- 7 Check or replace the registration cleaner and refit all the removed parts.



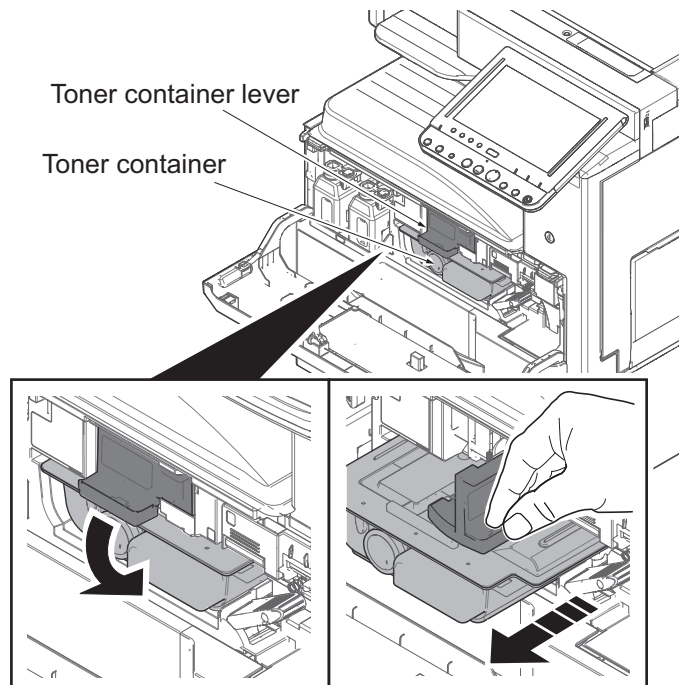
## (2) Developer section

### (2-1) Detaching and reattaching the developer unit

- 1 Open the front cover.
- 2 Release the lock lever and remove the waste toner box.

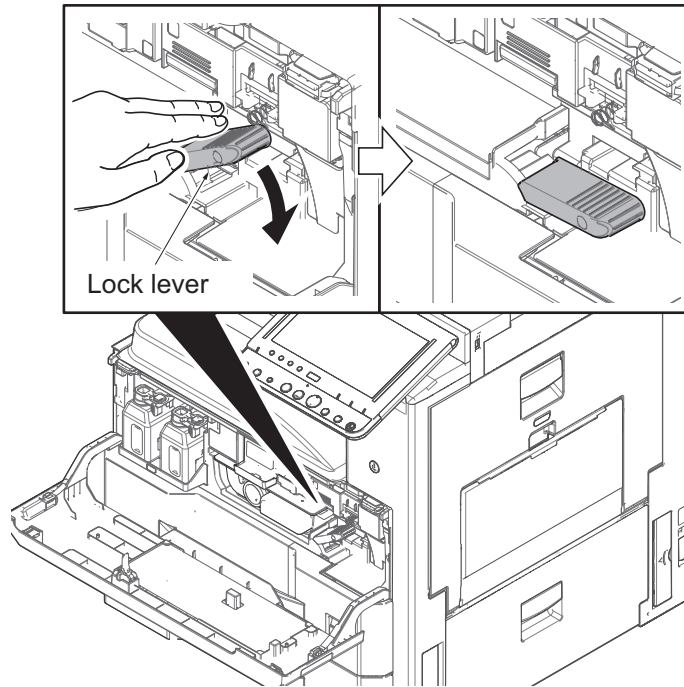


- 3 Release the toner container lever and then remove the toner container.

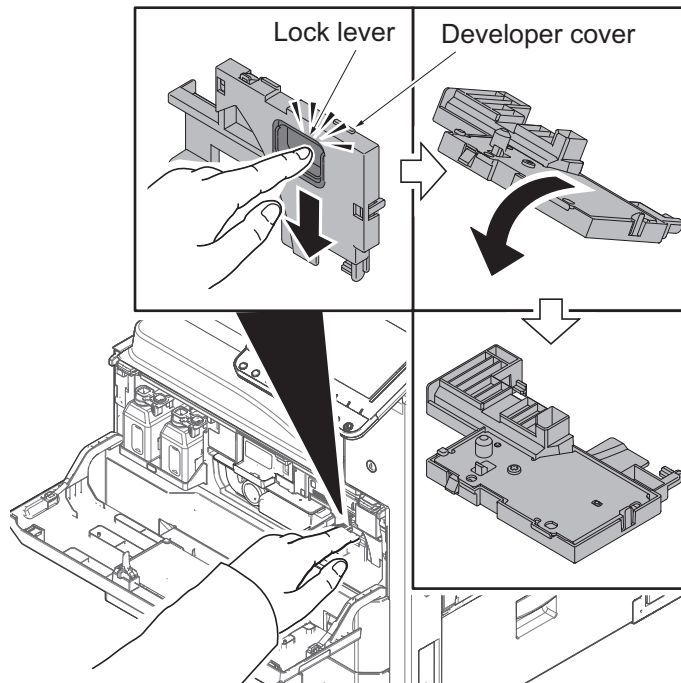




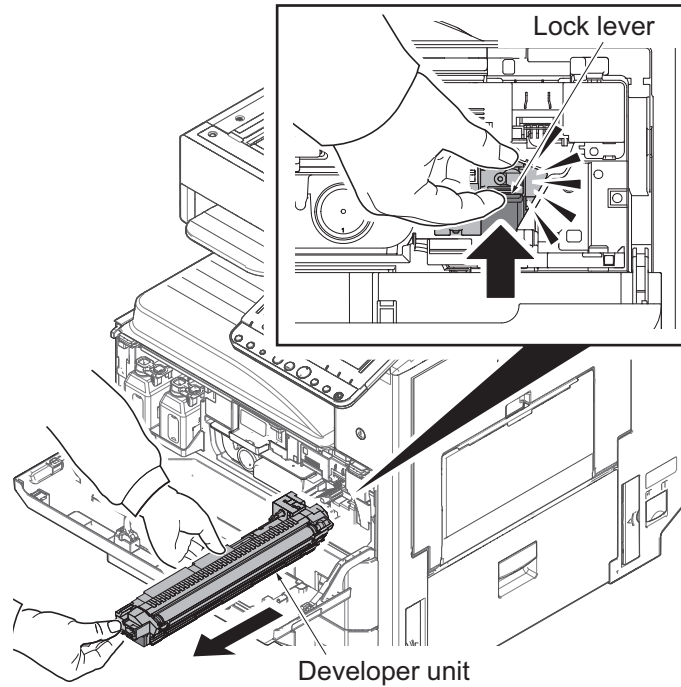
4 Release the lock lever.



5 Release the lock lever and open the developer cover.



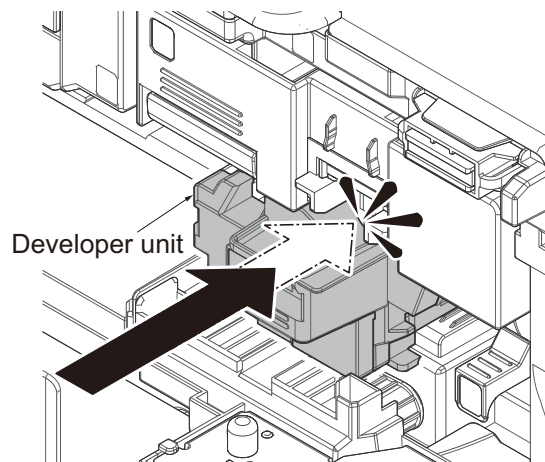
- 6 Release the lock lever and then remove the developer unit.
- 7 Check or replace the developer unit and reattach the removed parts in the original position.
- 8 When replacing the new unit, proceed as follows:
  - (1) Perform maintenance mode U130 (Set Toner Install). (See page 6-71)
  - (2) Execute maintenance mode U410 (Halftone automatic adjustment) (See page 6-136)



### Precautions when installing the developer unit

**✔ Important**

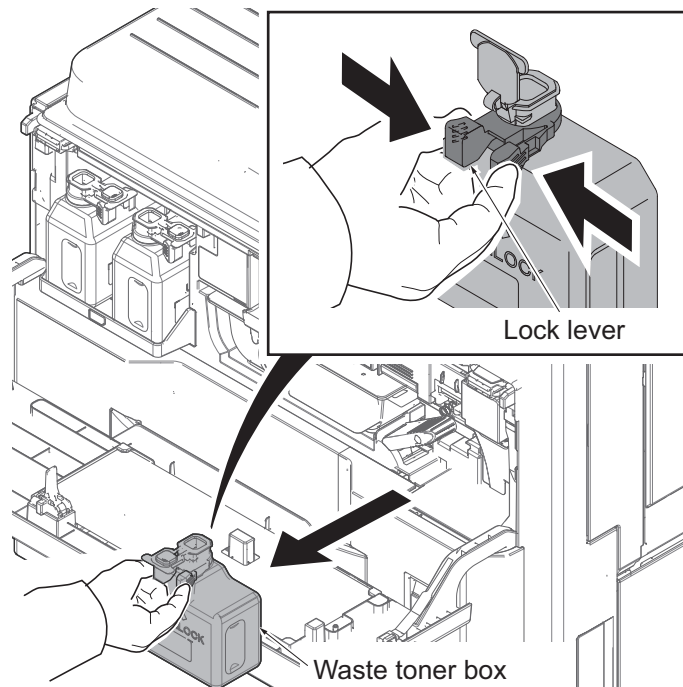
When installing the developer unit, push the developer unit until it clicks.



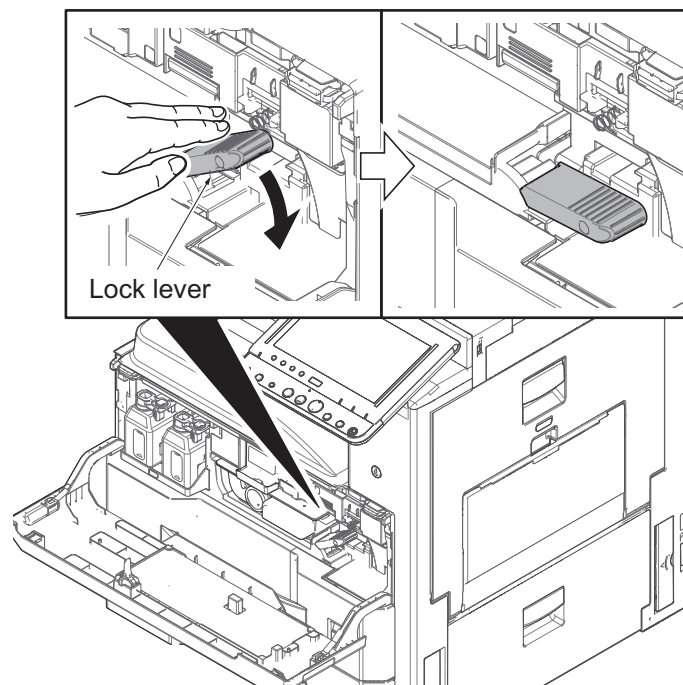
### (3) Drum section

#### (3-1) Detaching and reattaching the drum unit

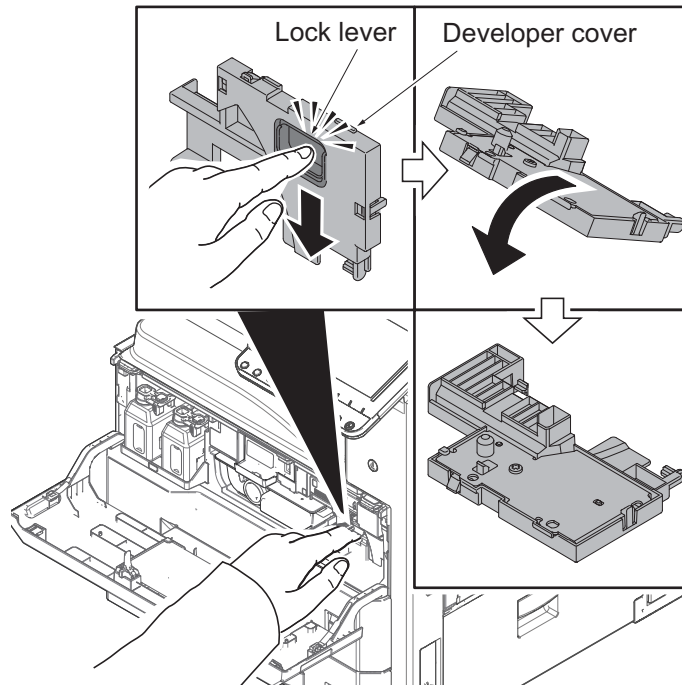
- 1 Open the front cover.
- 2 Release the lock lever and remove the waste toner box.



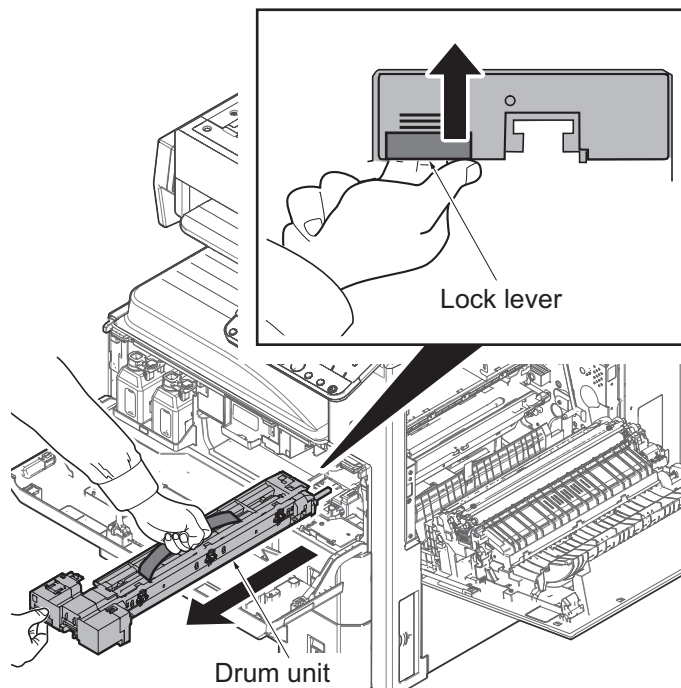
- 3 Release the lock lever.



- 4 Release the lock lever and open the developer cover.



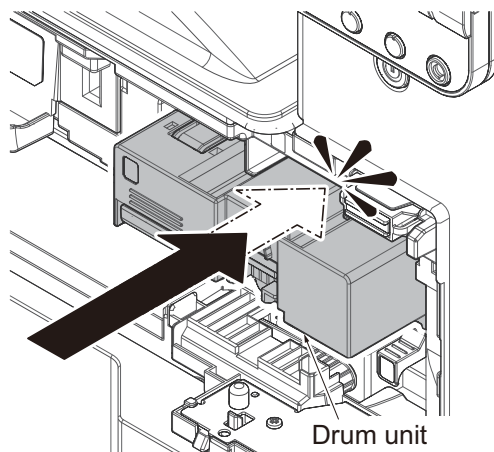
- 5 Open the right cover 1.
- 6 Release the lock lever and then remove the drum unit.
- 7 Check or replace the drum unit and refit all the removed parts.
- 8 When replacing the new unit, proceed as follows:
  - (1) Performs maintenance mode U410 (Halftone automatic adjustment) (See page 6-136 )



## Precautions when installing the drum unit

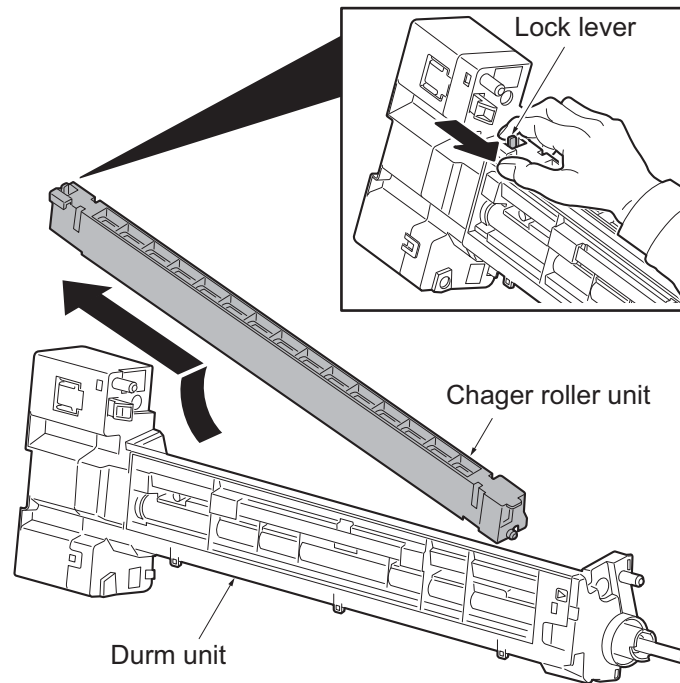
### ✔ Important

When installing the drum unit, push the drum unit it clicks.



### (3-2) Detaching and attaching the charger roller unit

- 1 Remove the drum unit. (See page 4-17 )
- 2 Release the lock lever and then remove the charger roller unit.
- 3 Check or replace the charger roller unit and reattach the removed parts in the original position.
- 4 When replacing the charger roller, execute as following procedures.
  - 1)Execute maintenance mode U930 (Clear or check charger roller counts). (See page 6-205 )
  - 2)Execute maintenance mode U410 (Halftone automatic adjustment) (See page 6-136 )



#### (4) Transfer/Separation section

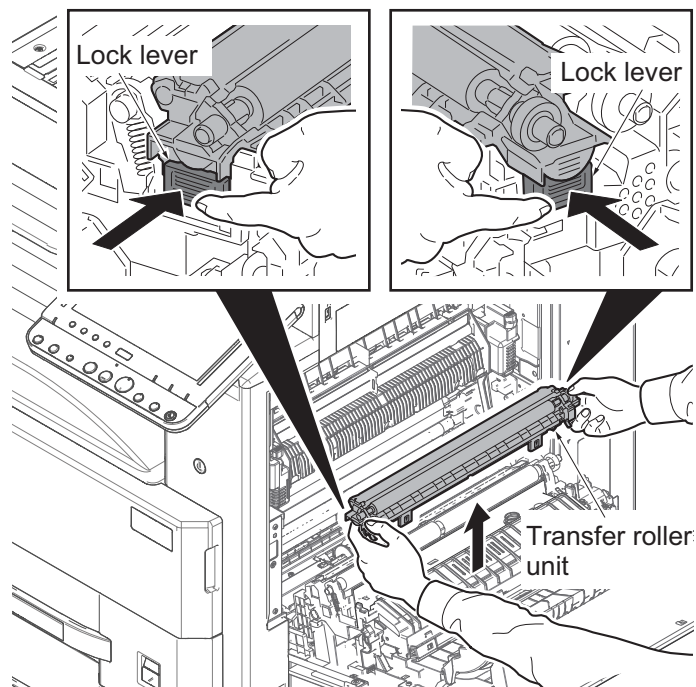
##### (4-1) Detaching and attaching the transfer roller unit

- 1 Open the right cover 1.
- 2 Release two lock levers and then remove the transfer roller unit.
- 3 Check or replace the transfer roller unit and refit all the removed parts.
- 4 When replacing the new unit, proceed as follows:
  - 1) Performs maintenance mode U127 (Clear Transfer Roller Counter). (See page 6-70 )
  - 2) Execute maintenance mode U410 (Halftone automatic adjustment) (See page 6-136 )



#### Caution

Inserting the transfer roller unit in place until it click in, when reattaching it.

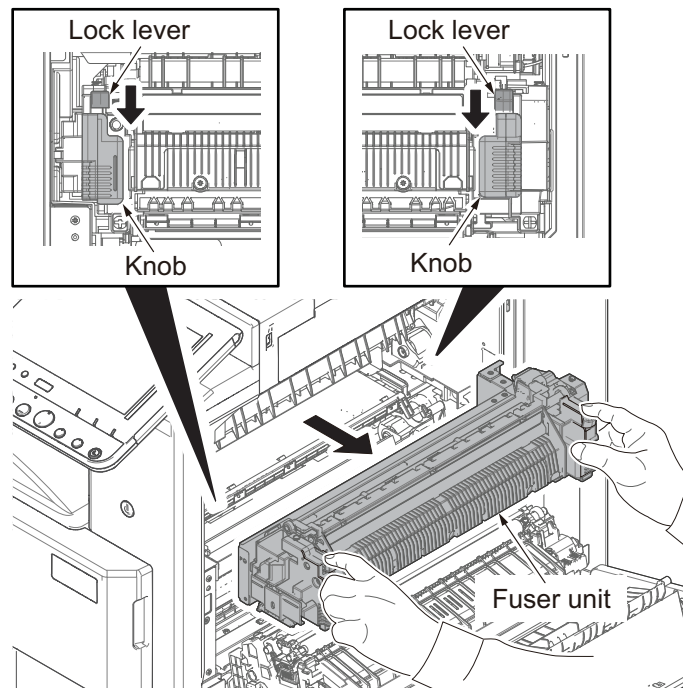


## (5) Fuser section

### (5-1) Detaching and attaching the fuser unit

- 1 Open the right cover 1.
- 2 Release the lock by pushing down the lock lever and then remove the fuser unit by gripping the knobs.
- 3 Check or replace the fuser unit and reattach the removed parts in the original position.
- 4 When replacing the new unit, execute as following procedure.

(1)Performs maintenance mode U410 (Halftone automatic adjustment) (See page 6-136 )



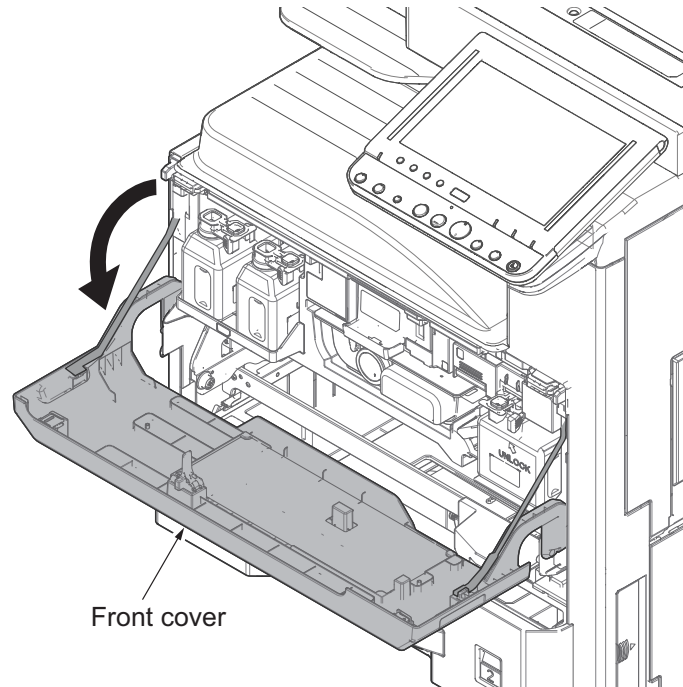


## 4 - 5 Disassembly and Reassembly procedures

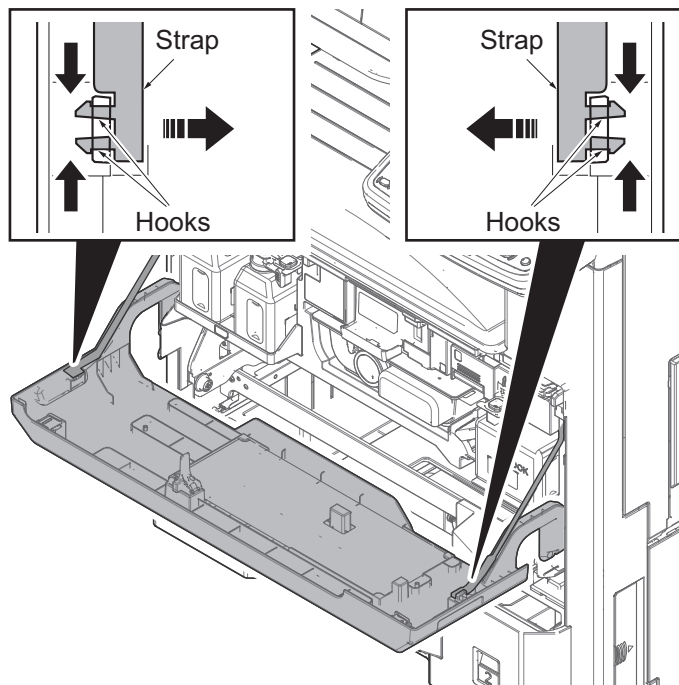
### (1) Outer covers

#### (1-1) Detaching and attaching the front cover

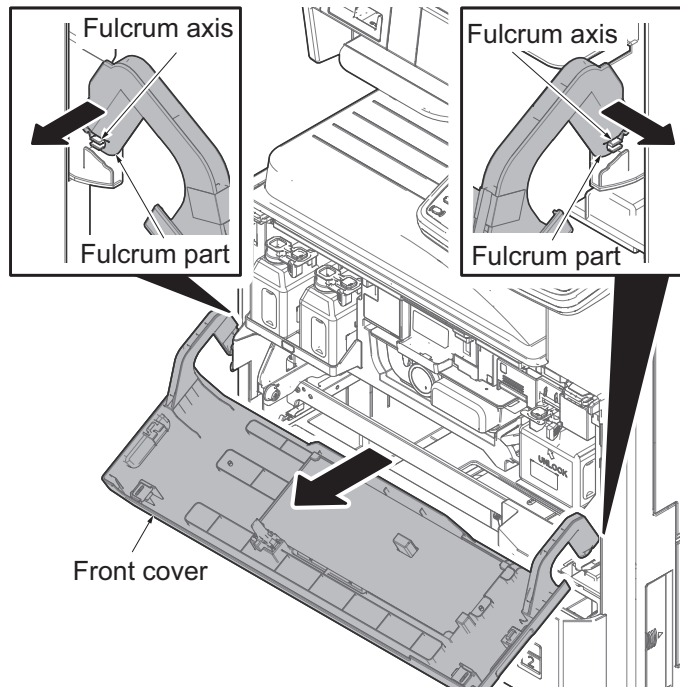
- 1 Remove the cassette.
- 2 Open the front cover.



- 3 Unhitch the straps by squeezing the hooks inward as shown.

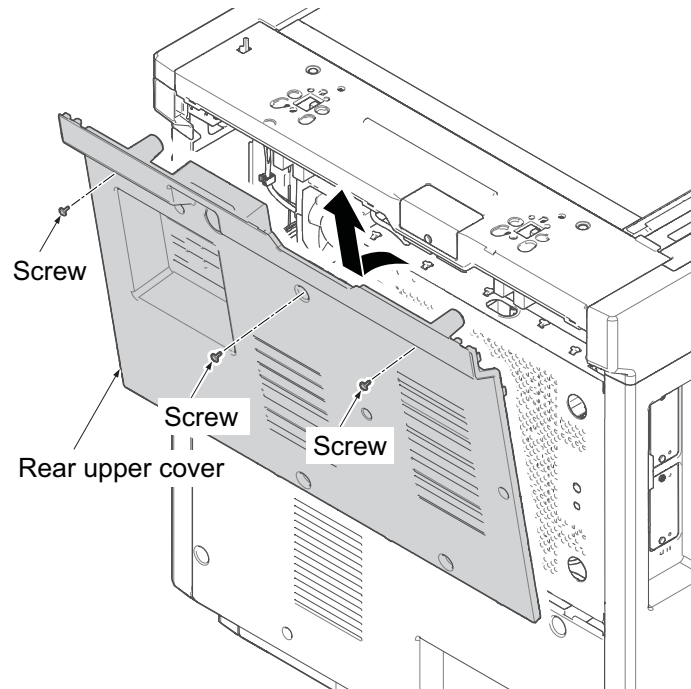


- 4 Remove two fulcrum axes of the front cover.
- 5 Remove the front cover.



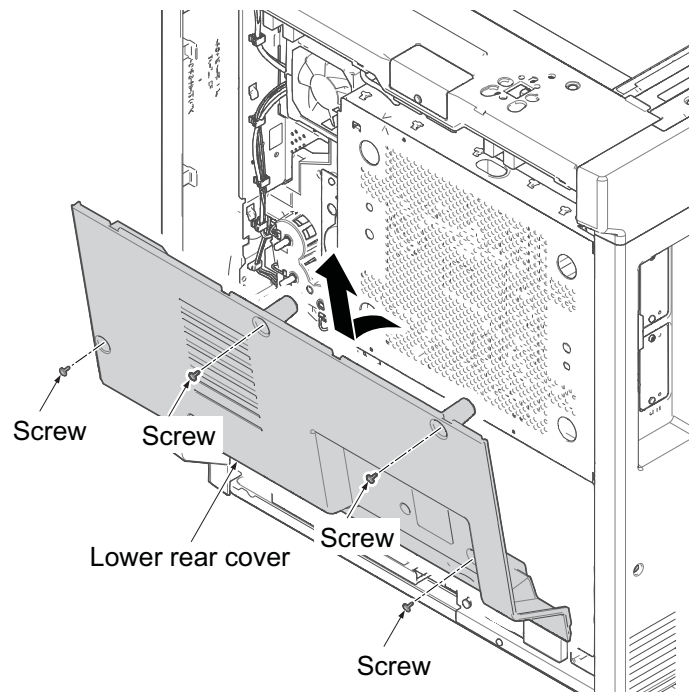
## (1-2) Detaching and attaching the rear upper cover

- 1 Detach three screws.
- 2 Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



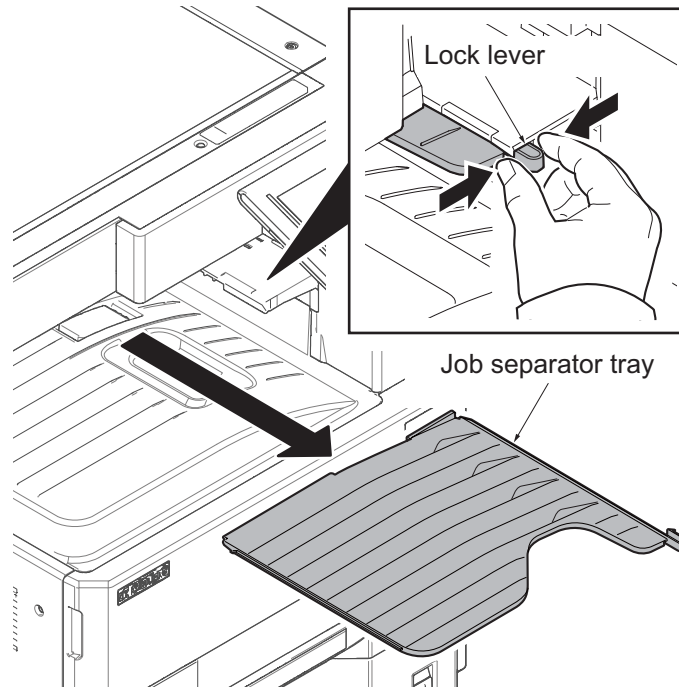
### (1-3) Detaching and attaching the rear lower cover

- 1 Remove the rear upper cover.
- 2 Detach four screws.
- 3 Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.

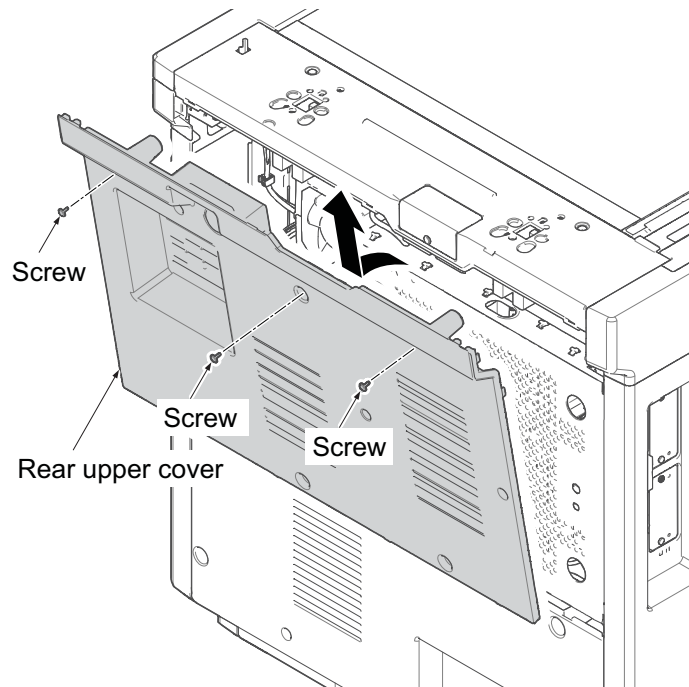


## (1-4) Detaching and attaching the inner tray

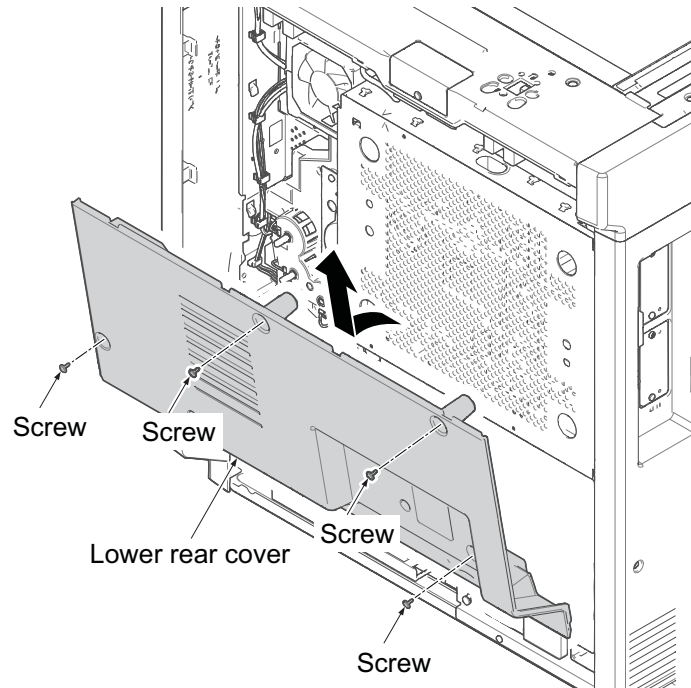
- 1 Release the lock lever and then remove the job separator tray.



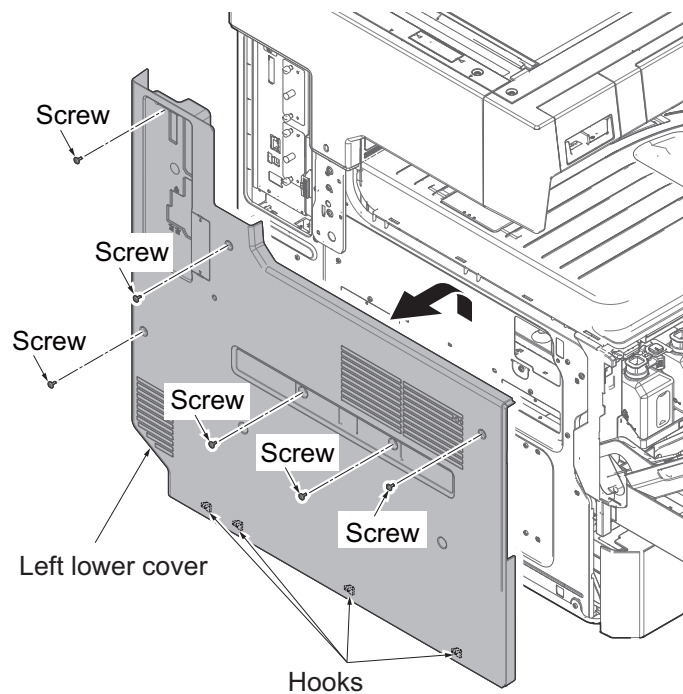
- 2 Detach three screws.
- 3 Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



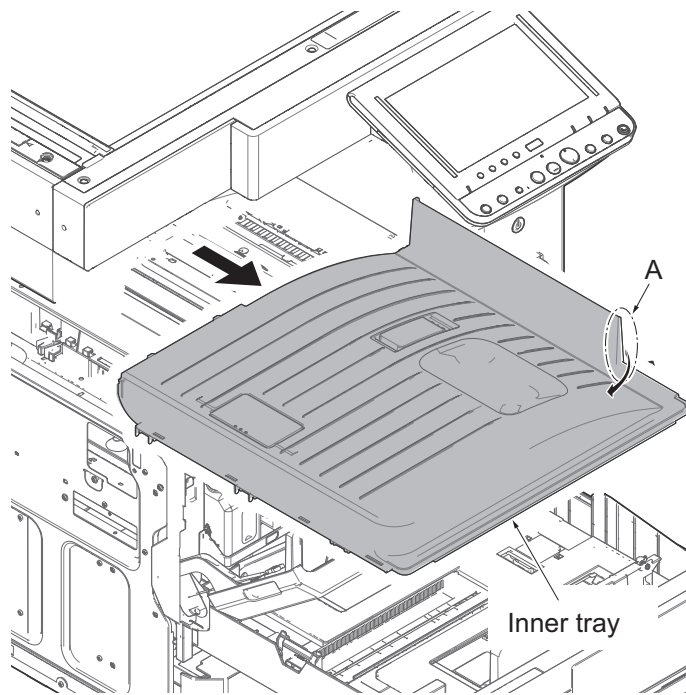
- 4 Detach four screws.
- 5 Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



- 6 Remove the cassette.
- 7 Open the front cover.
- 8 Detach six screws.
- 9 Pull upwards and then release four hooks.
- 10 Remove the left lower cover.

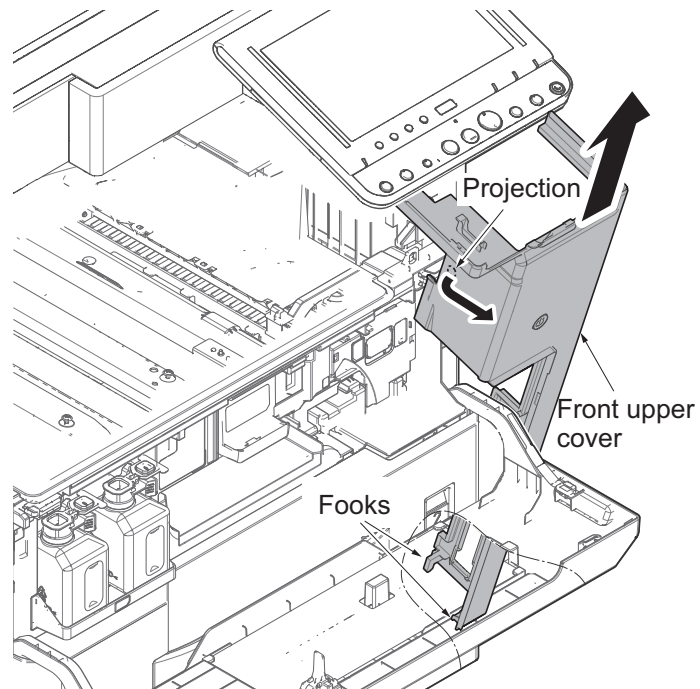


- 11 While pulling the A portion in the direction of the arrow, remove the inner tray.



### (1-5) Detaching and attaching the front upper cover

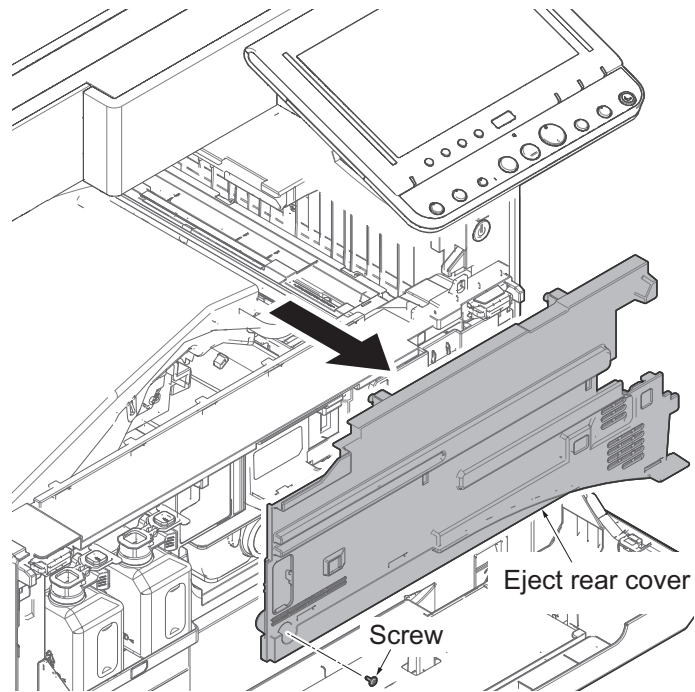
- 1 Pull the cassette forward.
- 2 Open the right cover 1 and 2.
- 3 Remove the inner tray.
- 4 Release the projection of the front upper cover.
- 5 Tilt the front upper cover forward and then unhook two hooks by taking out it upward.





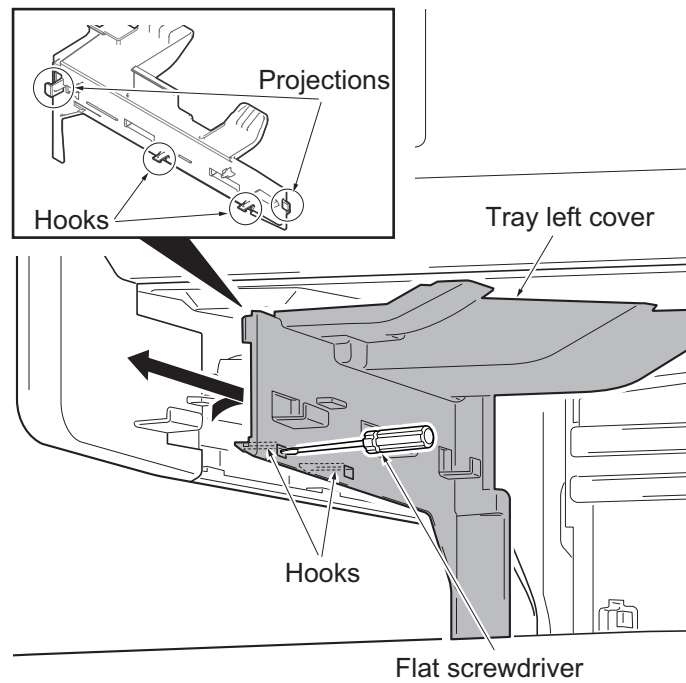
## (1-6) Detaching and attaching the exit rear cover

- 1 Remove the screw and the exit rear cover.



### (1-7) Detaching and refitting the exit rear cover

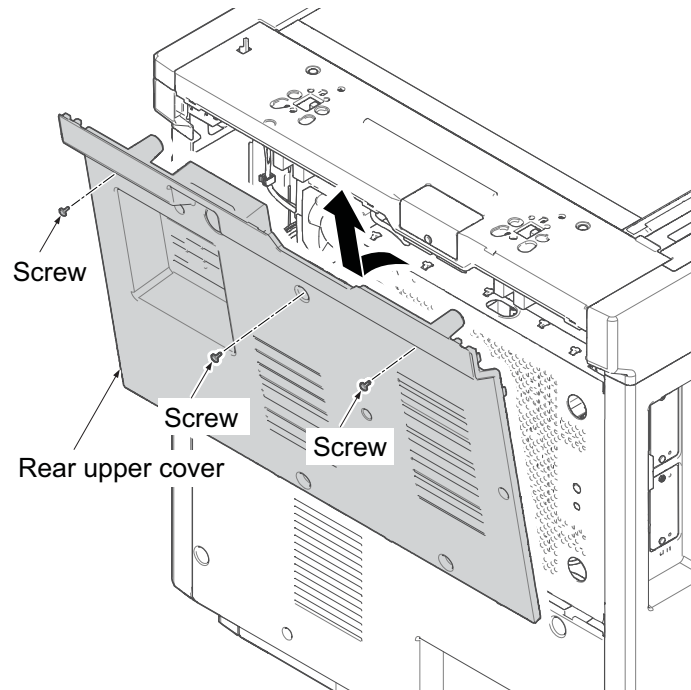
- 1 Release two hooks by using a flat screwdriver.
- 2 Remove the tray left cover by releasing two projections.



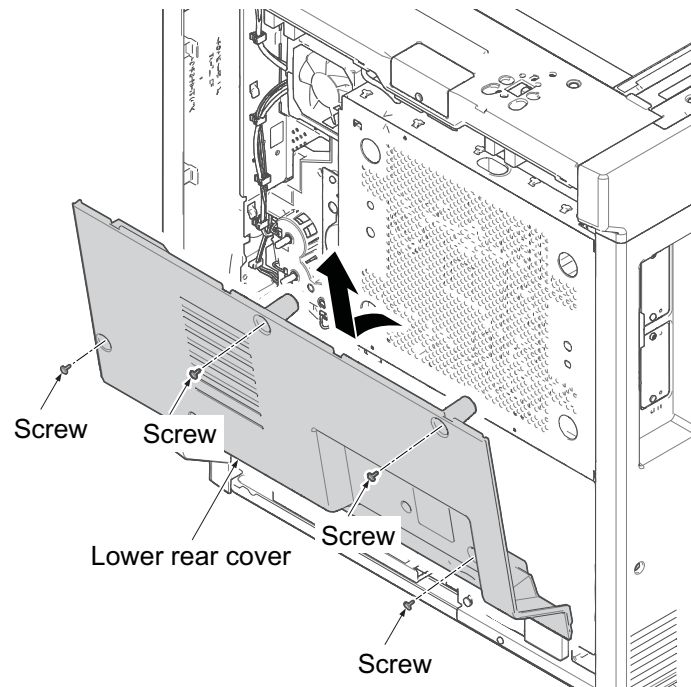
## (2) Drive section

### (2-1) Detaching and attaching the drive unit 1

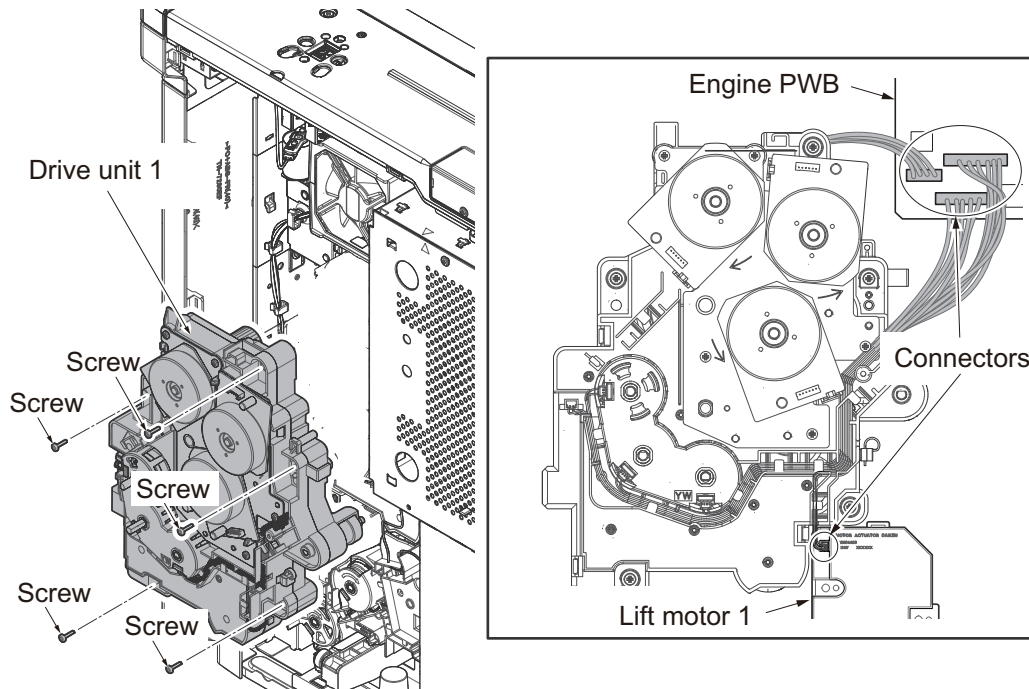
- 1 Detach three screws.
- 2 Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



- 3 Detach four screws.
- 4 Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.

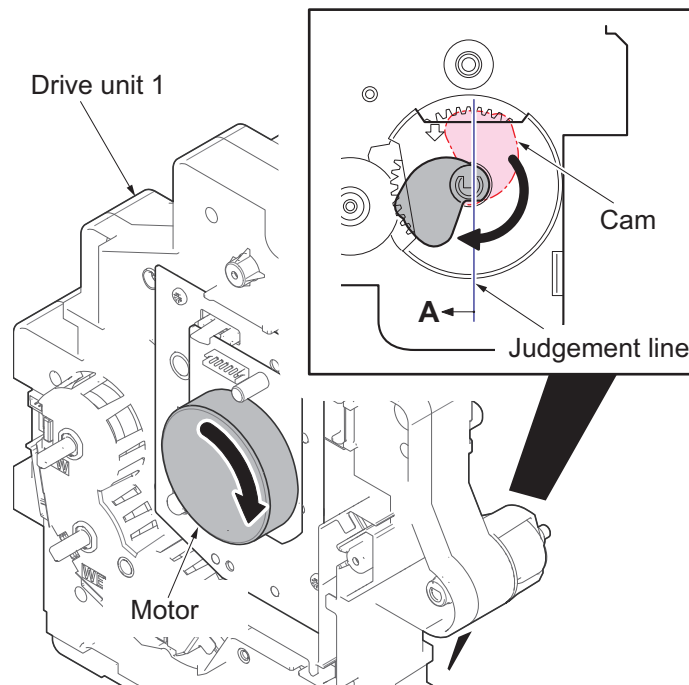


- 5 Remove four connectors.
- 6 Detach five screws and then remove the drive unit 1.
- 7 Check or replace the drive unit 1 and reattach the removed parts in the original position.



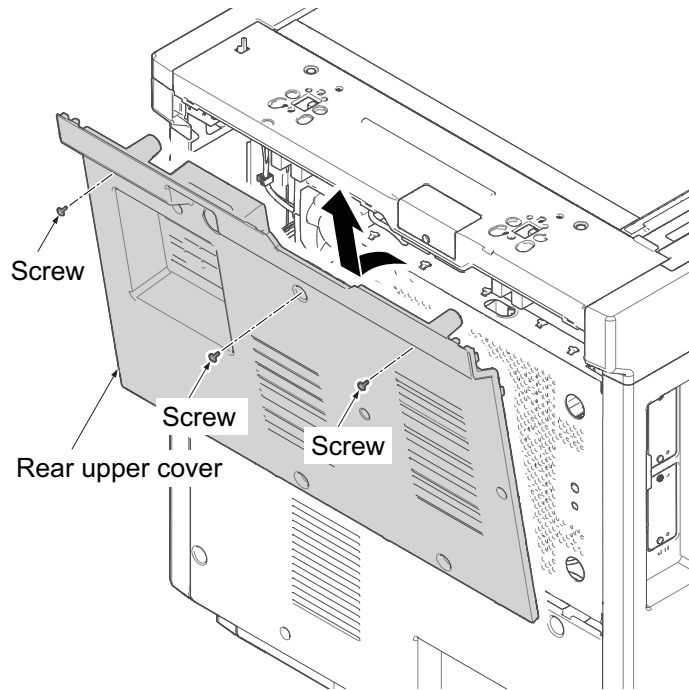
ⓧ **Important**

- When refitting the drive unit 1, check that the position of a cam is in the A side from the judgement line.
- When cam isn't in the A side from the judgement line, turn the motor by hand and bring the cam into the A side.

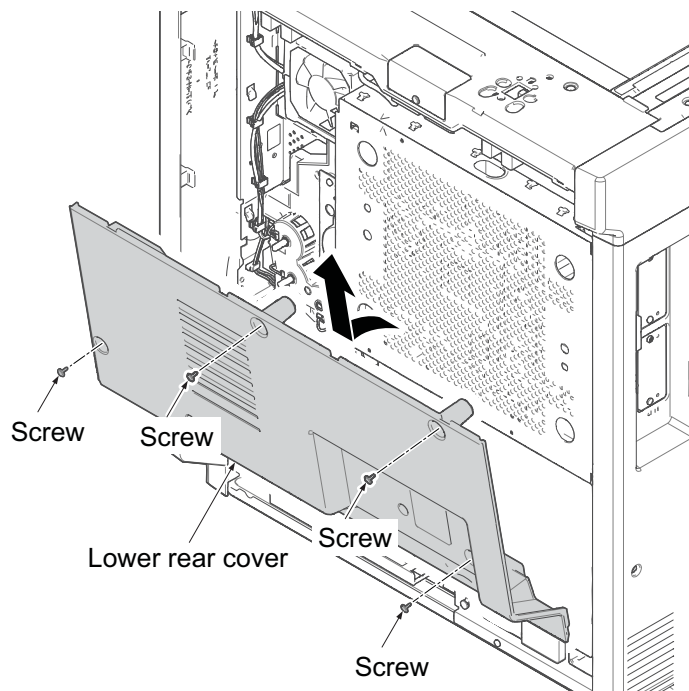


## (2-2) Detaching and attaching the drive unit 2

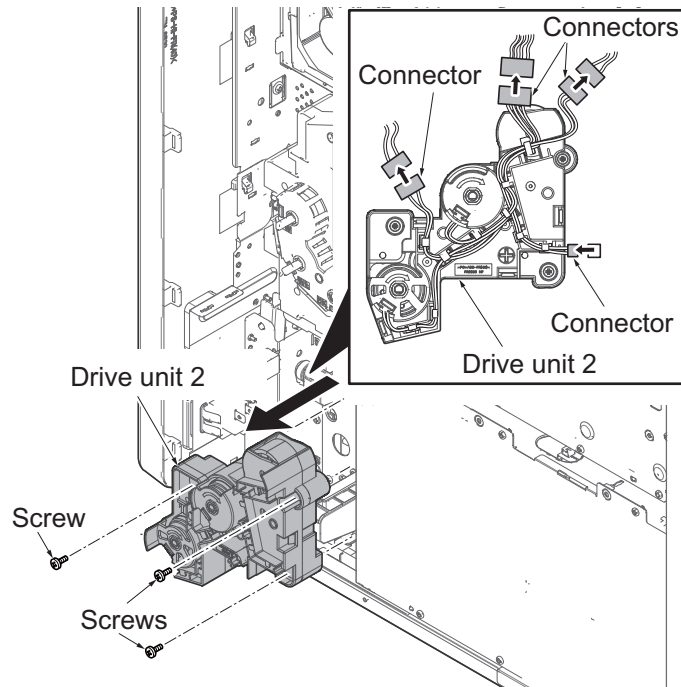
- 1 Detach three screws.
- 2 Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



- 3 Detach four screws.
- 4 Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.

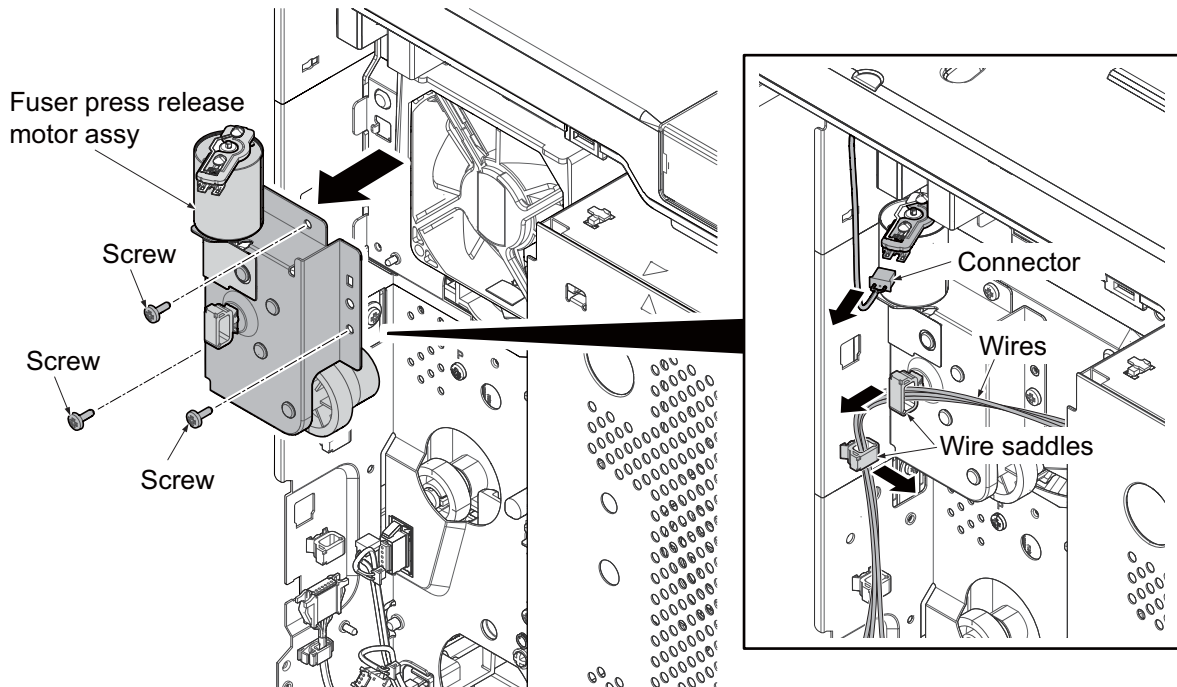


- 5 Remove four connectors.
- 6 Detach three screws and then remove the drive unit 2.
- 7 Check or replace the drive unit 2 and reattach the removed parts in the original position.



**(2-3) Detaching and attaching the fuser press release motor assy**

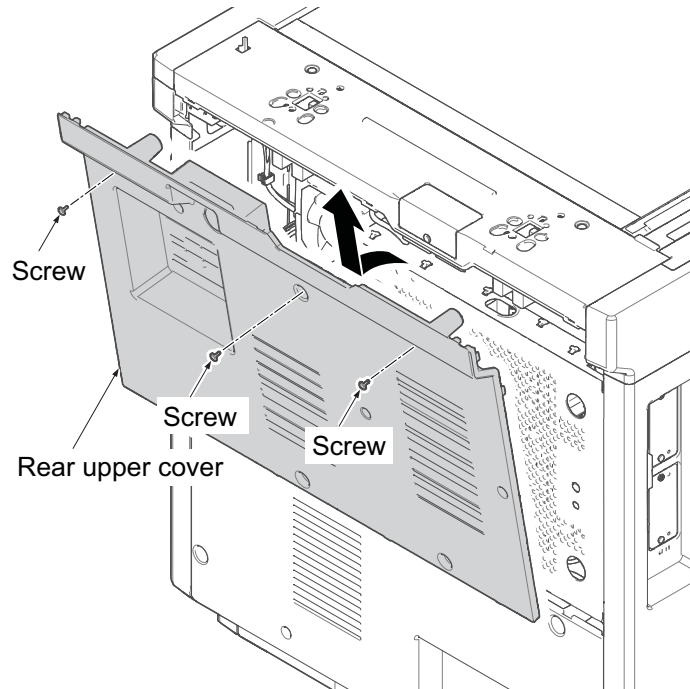
- 1 Remove the rear upper cover and the rear lower cover and then the drive unit 1.
- 2 Open the right cover 1 and the right cover 2 and then remove the right rear cover
- 3 Remove the connector
- 4 Release the wires from two wire saddles.
- 5 Detach three screws and remove the fuser press release motor assy



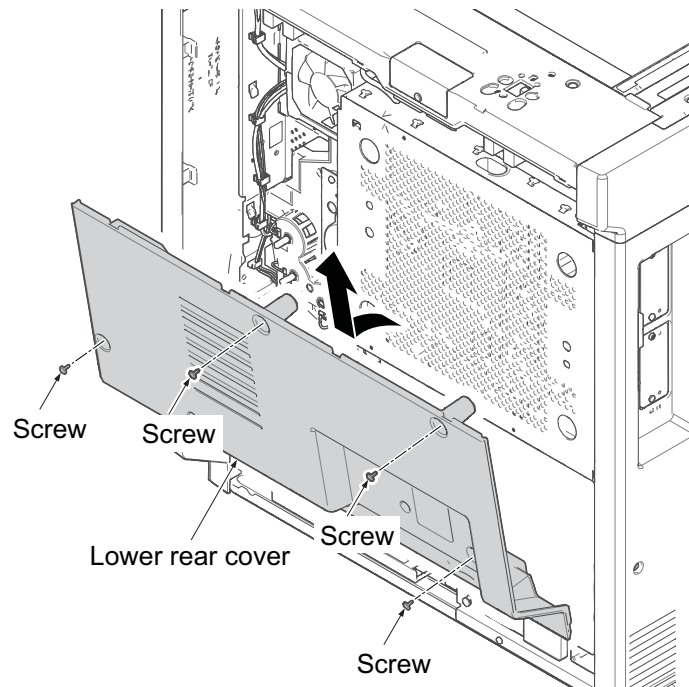
### (3) Optical section

#### (3-1) Detaching and attaching the Laser Scanner Unit (LSU)

- 1 Detach three screws.
- 2 Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.

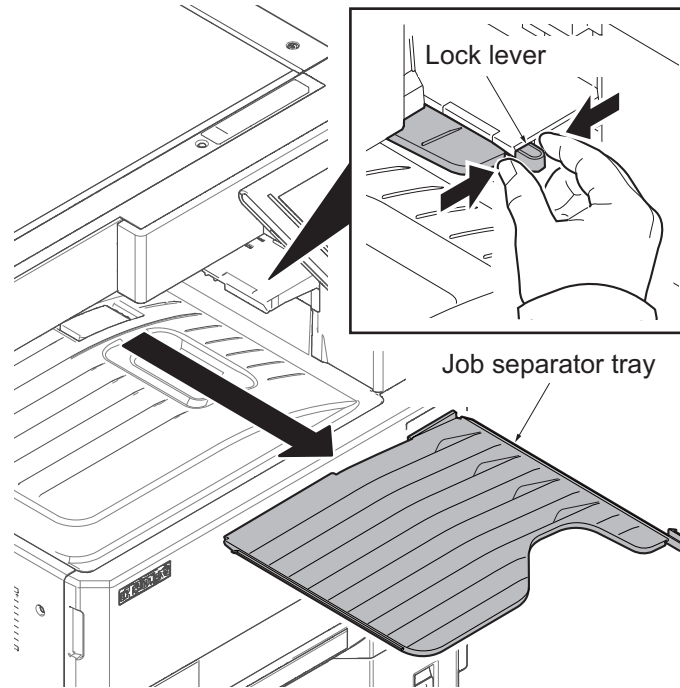


- 3 Detach four screws.
- 4 Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.

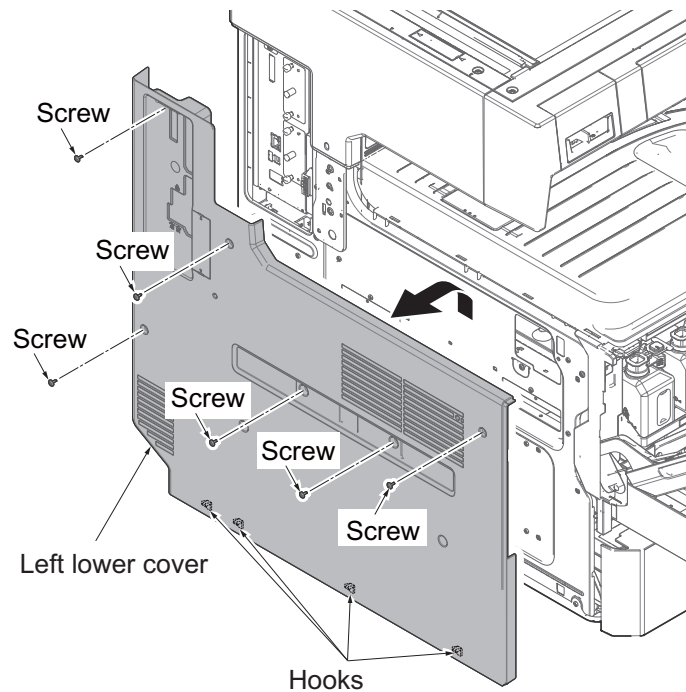




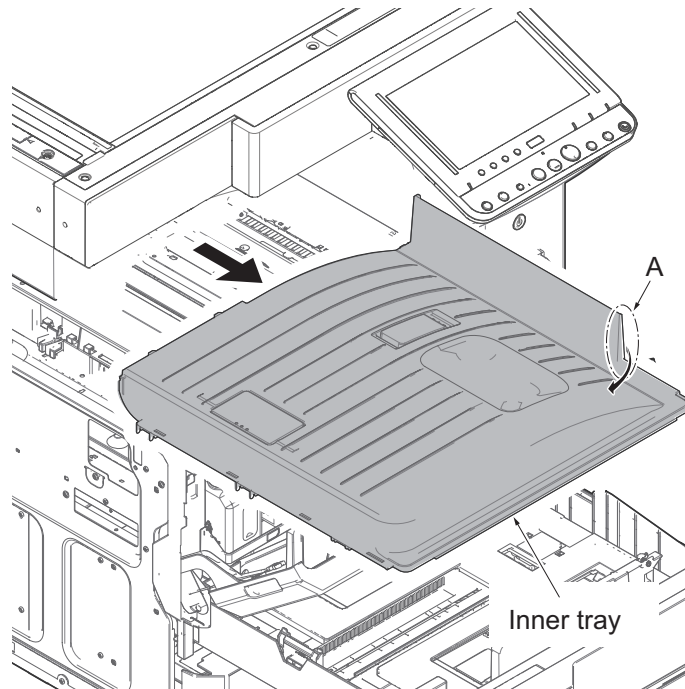
- 5 Release the lock lever and then remove the job separator tray.



- 6 Remove the cassette.
- 7 Open the front cover.
- 8 Detach six screws.
- 9 Pull upwards and then release four hooks.
- 10 Remove the left lower cover.



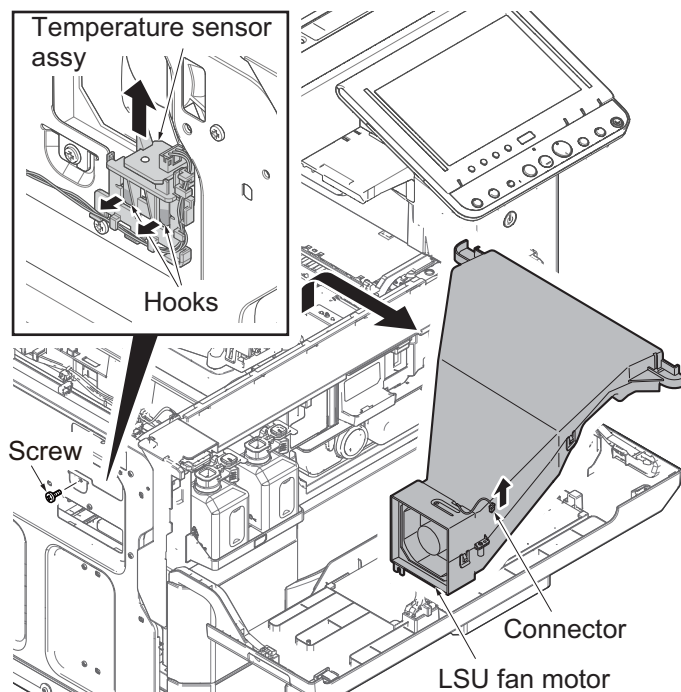
- 11 While pulling the A portion in the direction of the arrow, remove the inner tray.



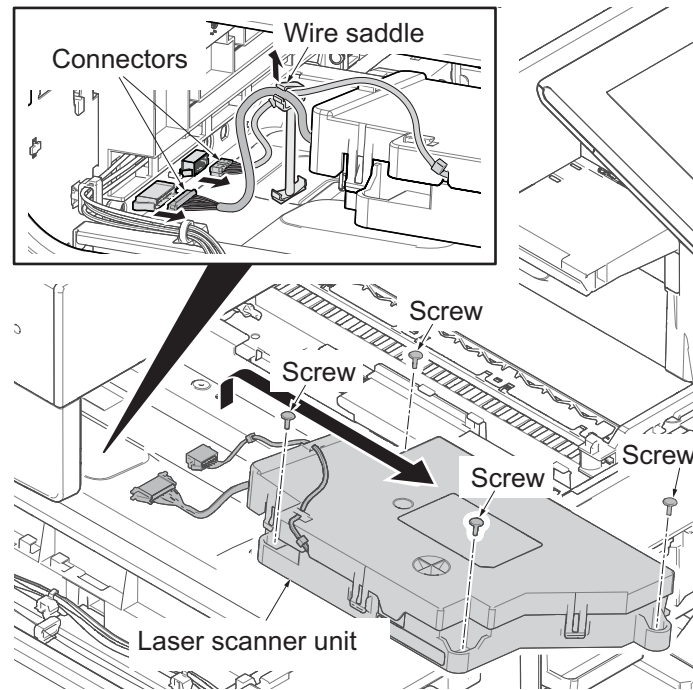
- 12 Release two hooks and remove the temperature sensor assy.

- 13 Remove the connector of LSU fan motor.

- 14 Detach the screw and then remove the LSU fan motor.



- 15 Remove the connector.
- 16 Detach four screws and then remove the laser scanner unit.
- 17 Check or replace the laser scanner unit and refit all the removed parts.

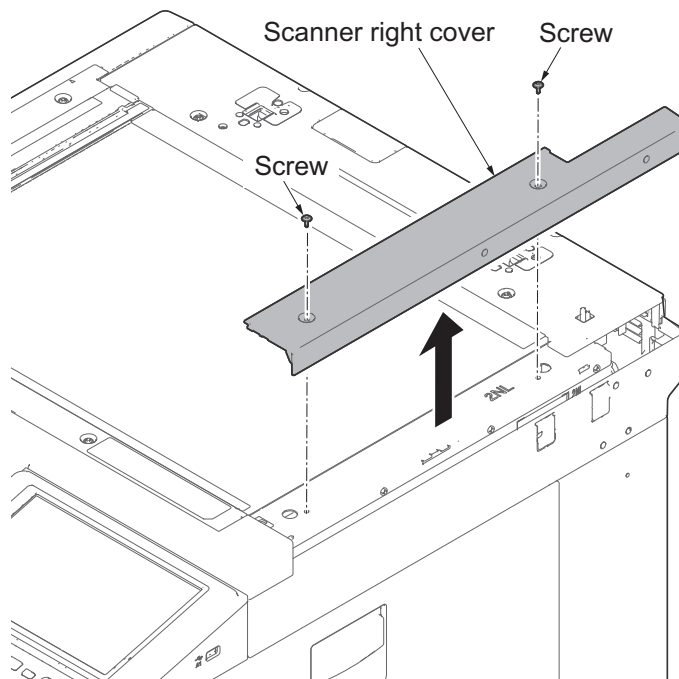


### (3-2) Detaching and attaching the lens unit

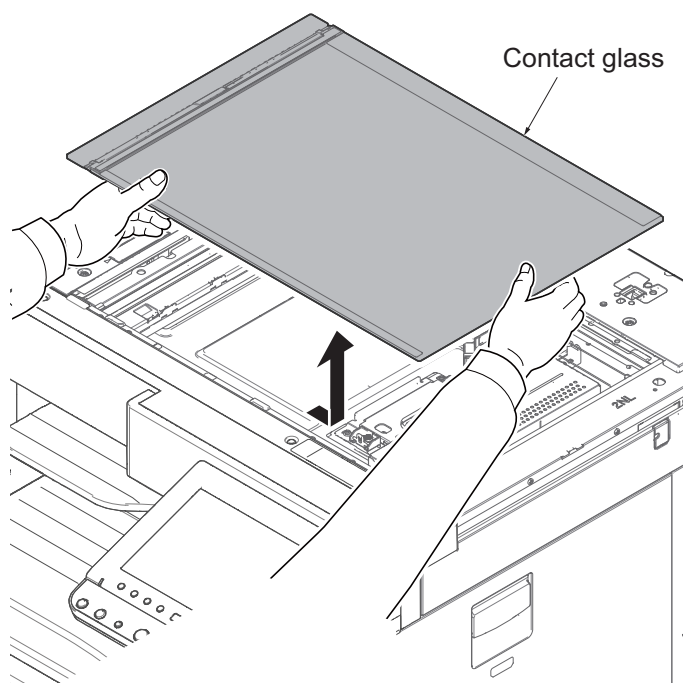
- 1 Detach two screws and then remove the scanner right cover.

 **Note**

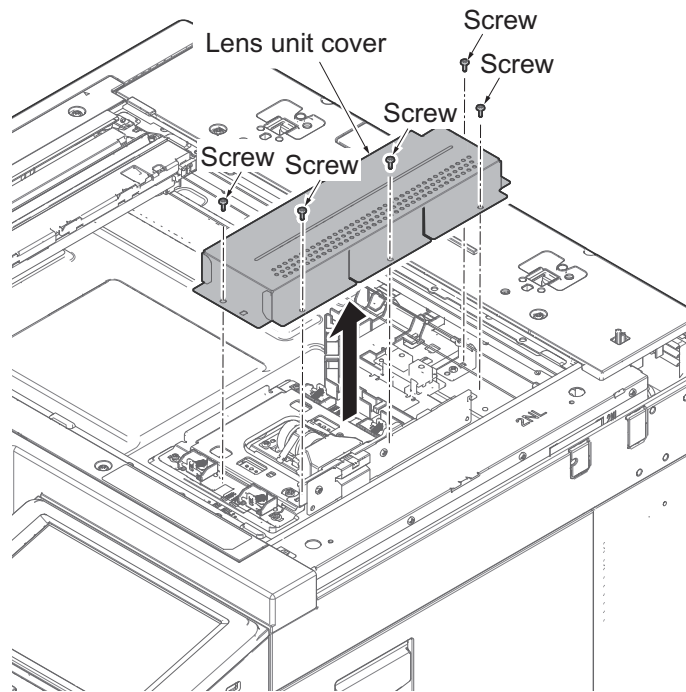
When installing, attach close to the contact glass.



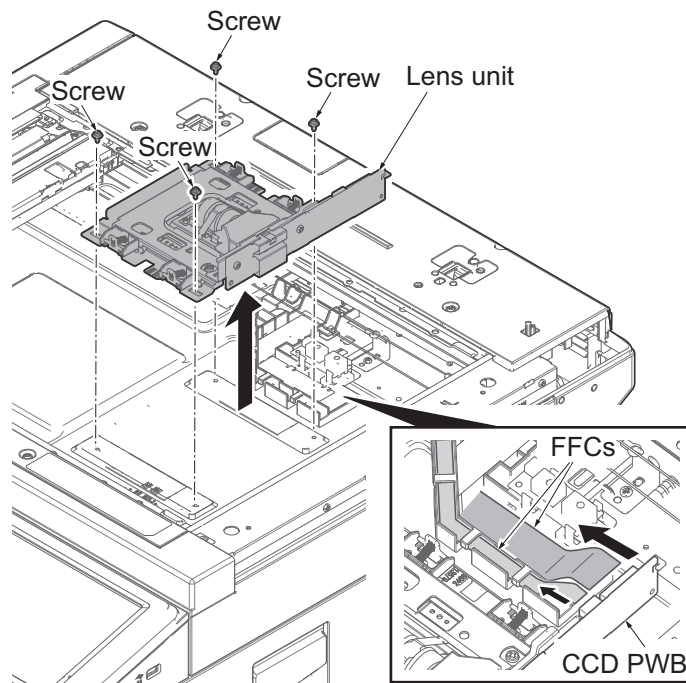
- 2 Remove the contact glass by pulling rightward.



- 3 Detach five screws and then remove the lens unit cover.



- 4 Remove the FFC and the connector.
- 5 Remove four screws and then remove the lens unit.



## Attaching the lens unit

- 1 When reinstalling, fix by adjusting to the scale of a original position.

When replacing, decide the fix position of lens unit by the following.

The right and left direction of machine:

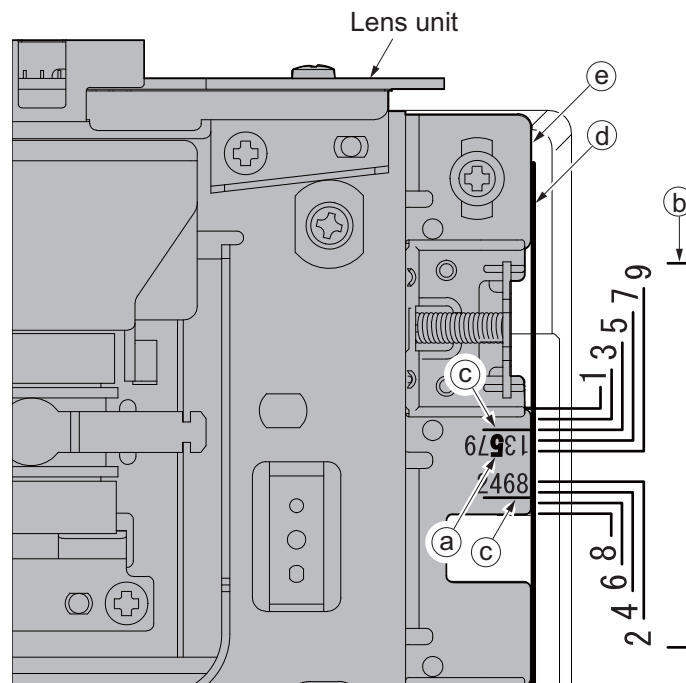
Check the marked number (a) and then adjust the frame side of positioning line (b) of the same number and the line (c) of lens unit.

(Line (c) is the side which is marked corresponding number of the two lines.)

The rear and front of machine:

Match the edge (e) of lens unit to the positioning line (d) on frame side.

- 2 Fix the lens unit as before with four screws.
- 3 Check or replace the lens unit and refit all the removed parts.

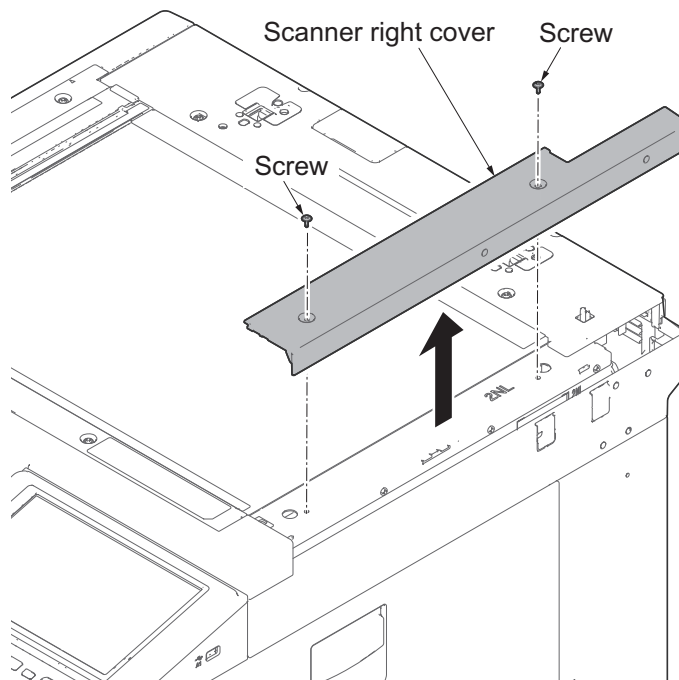


### (3-3) Detaching and attaching the lamp unit

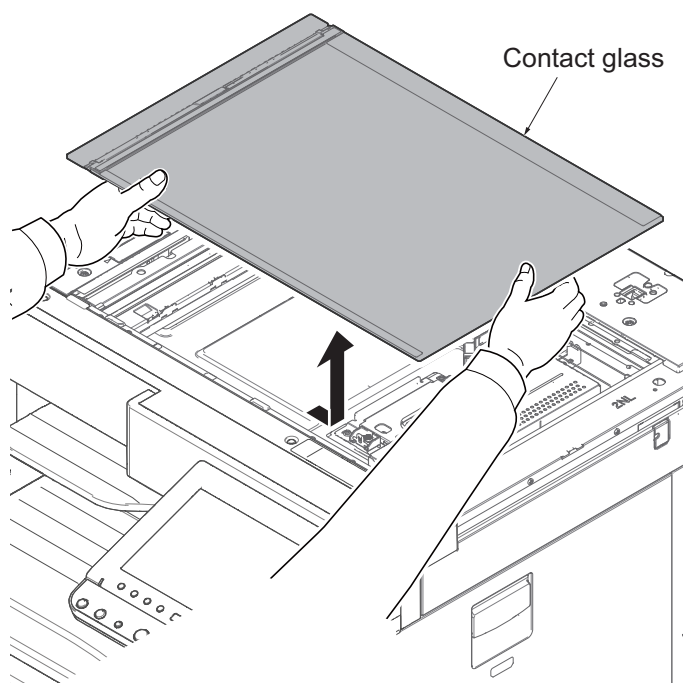
- 1 Detach two screws and then remove the scanner right cover.

 **Note**

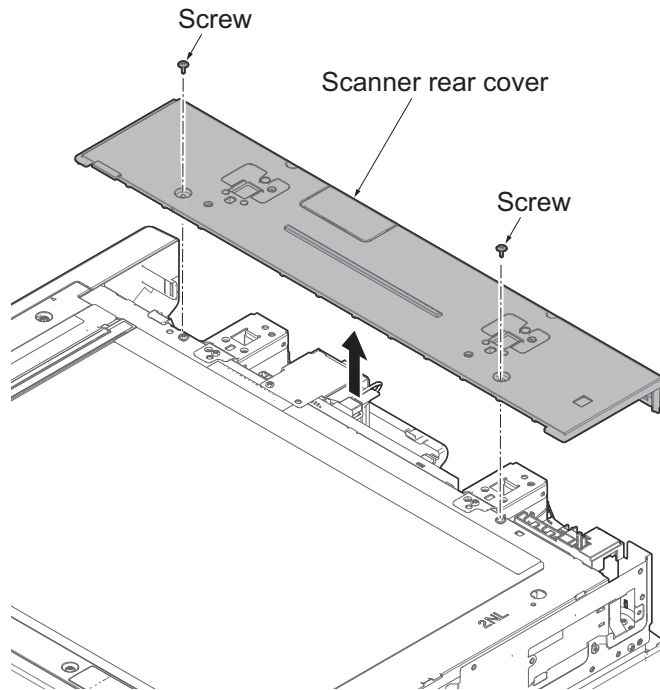
When installing, attach close to the contact glass.



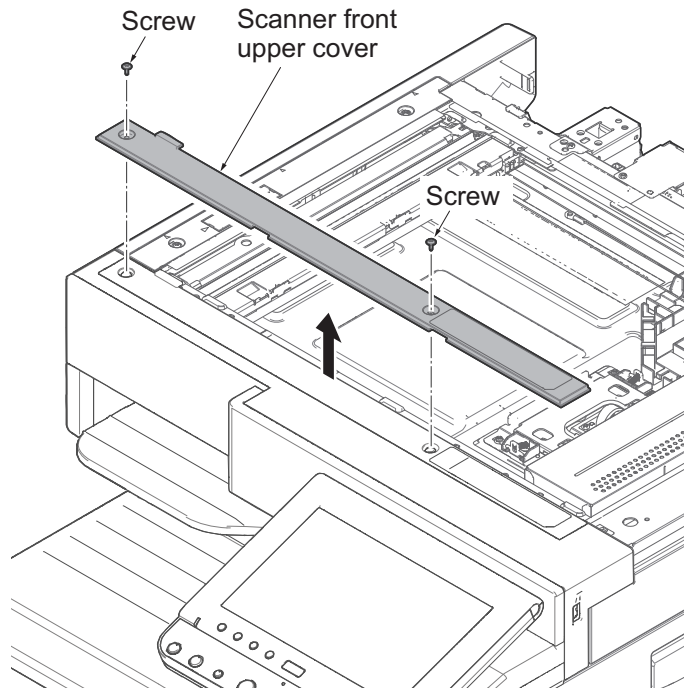
- 2 Remove the contact glass by pulling rightward.



- 3 Detach two screws and then remove the scanner rear cover.

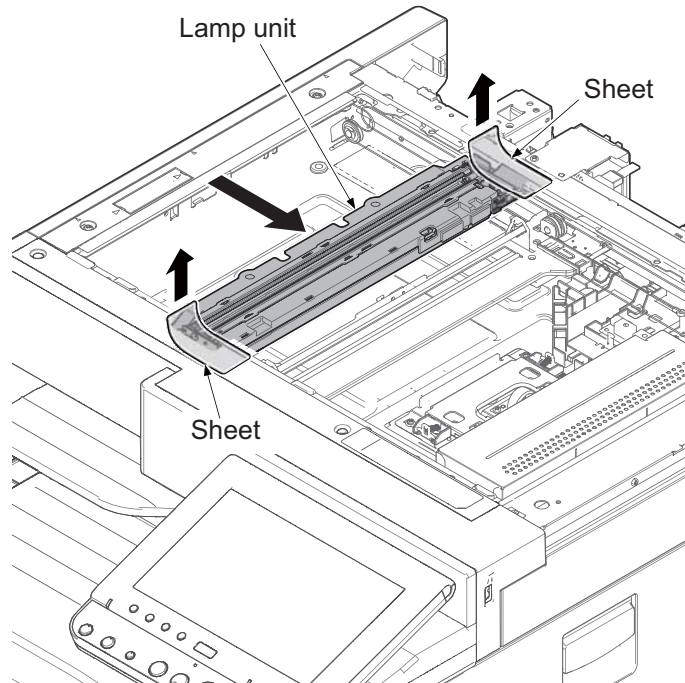


- 4 Detach two screws and remove the scanner front upper cover.

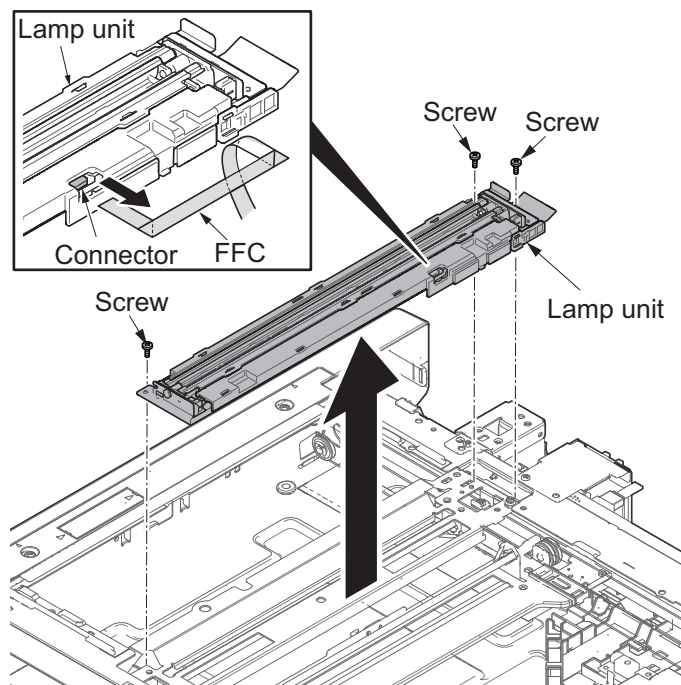




- 5 Peel off two sheets.
- 6 Move the lamp unit to the cutting lack part.



- 7 Remove the FFC from the connector of the lamp unit.
- 8 Detach three screws and then remove the lamp unit.
- 9 Check or replace the lamp unit and reattach the removed parts in original position.

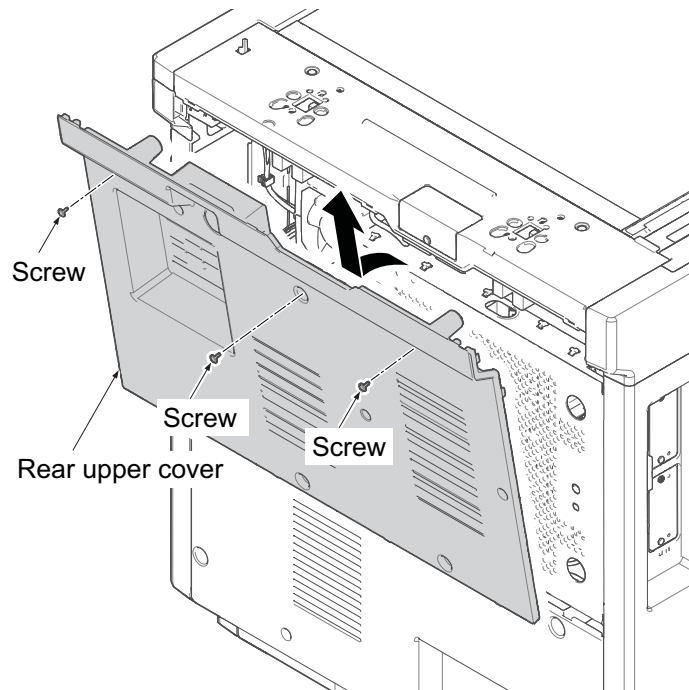


#### (4) Detaching and reattaching the scanner wires

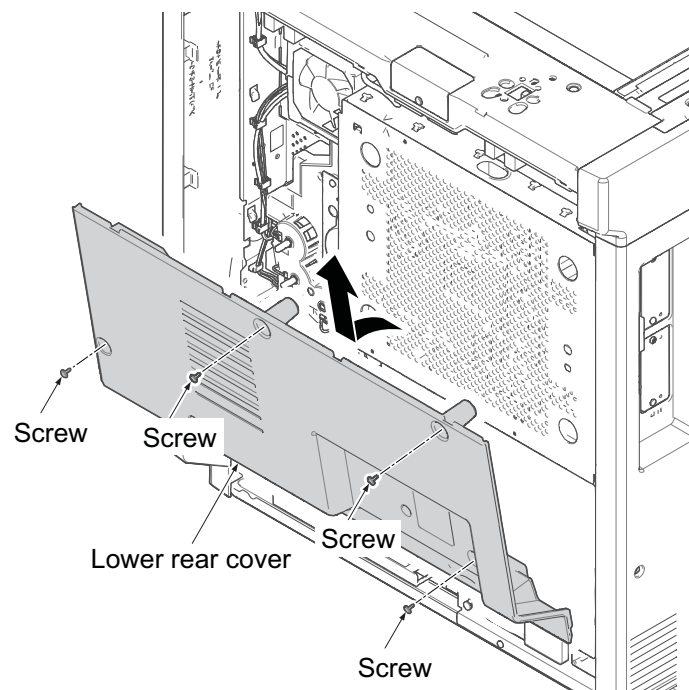
Follow the procedures below when the scanner wires are broken or to be replaced.

##### (4-1) Detaching the scanner wires

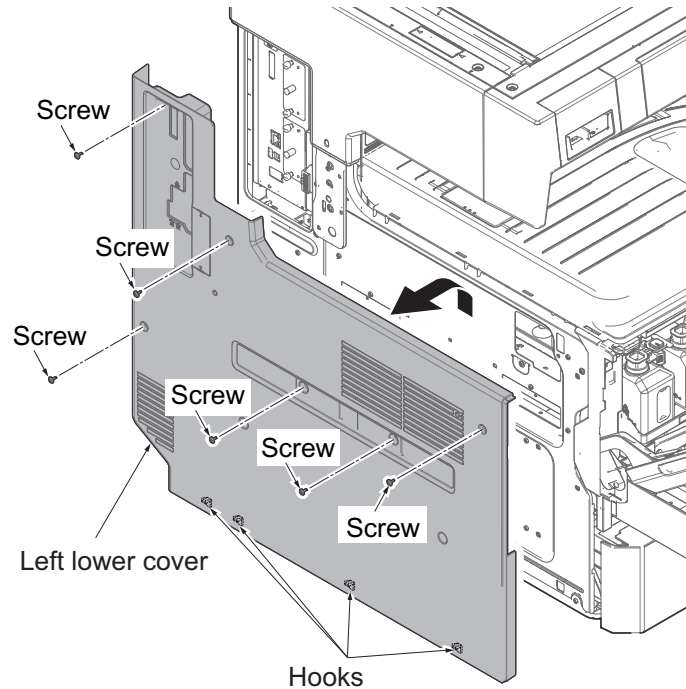
- 1 Detach three screws.
- 2 Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



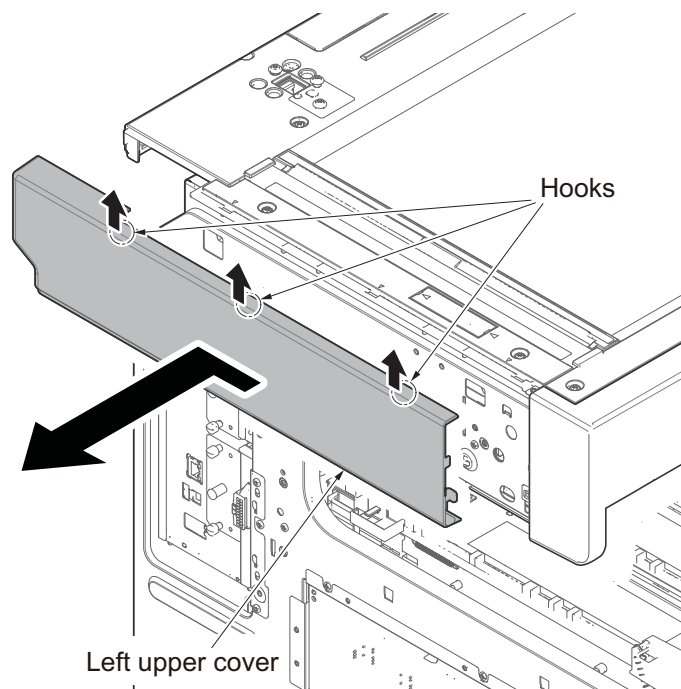
- 3 Detach four screws.
- 4 Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



- 5 Remove the cassette.
- 6 Open the front cover.
- 7 Detach six screws.
- 8 Pull upwards and then release four hooks.
- 9 Remove the left lower cover.

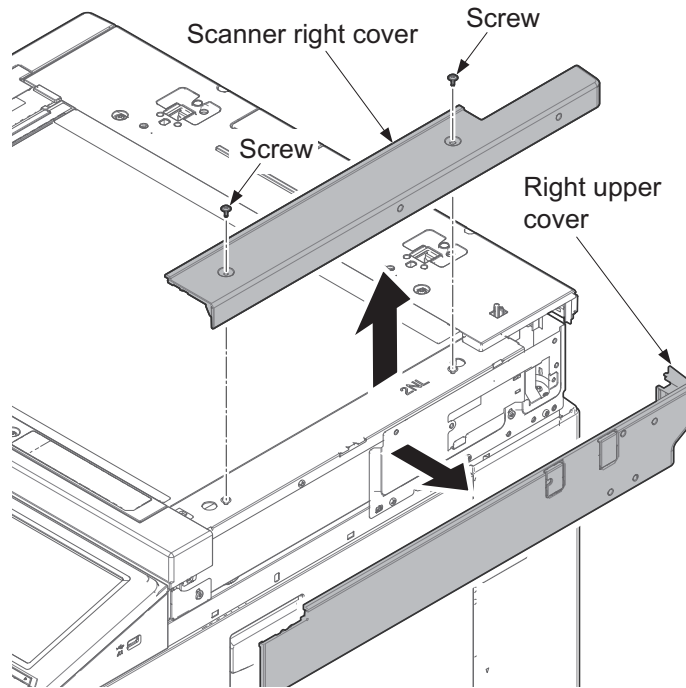


- 10 Release three hooks upwards.
- 11 Remove the left upper cover by sliding it backward.

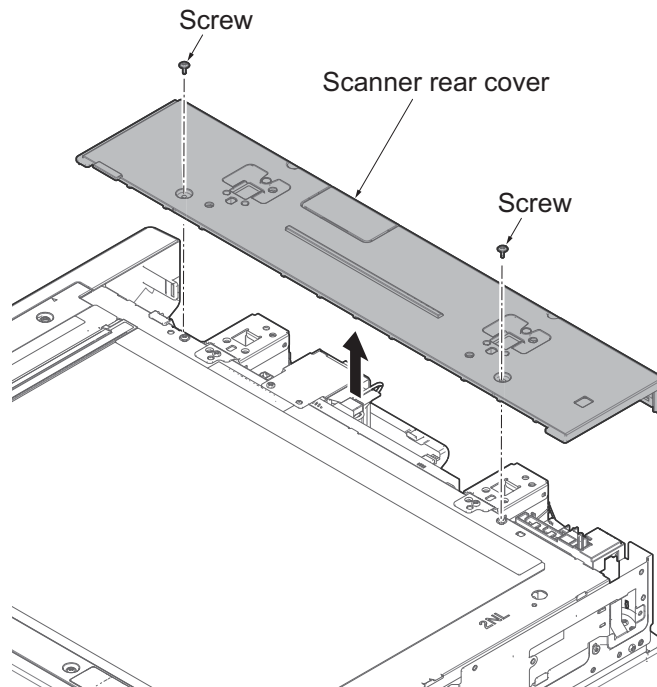


12 Detach two screws and remove the scanner right cover.

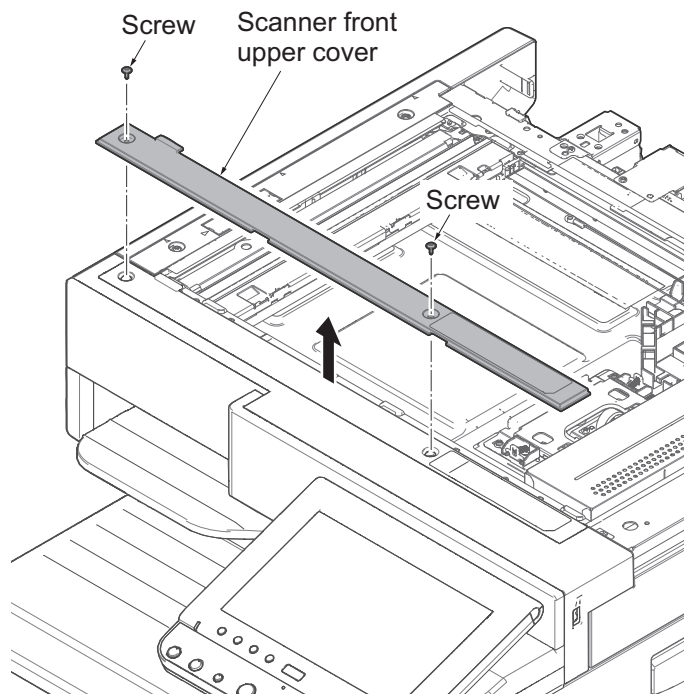
13 Remove the right upper cover.



14 Detach two screws and remove the scanner rear cover.

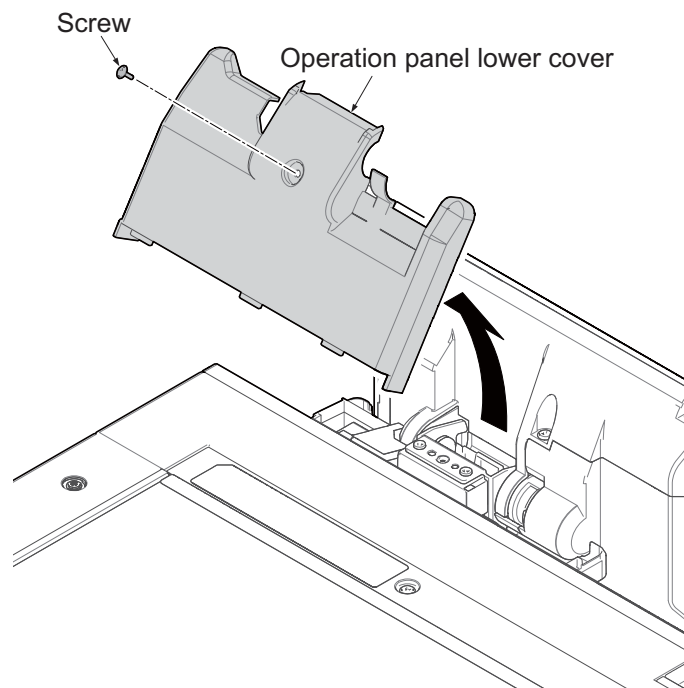


15 Detach two screws and remove the scanner front upper cover.

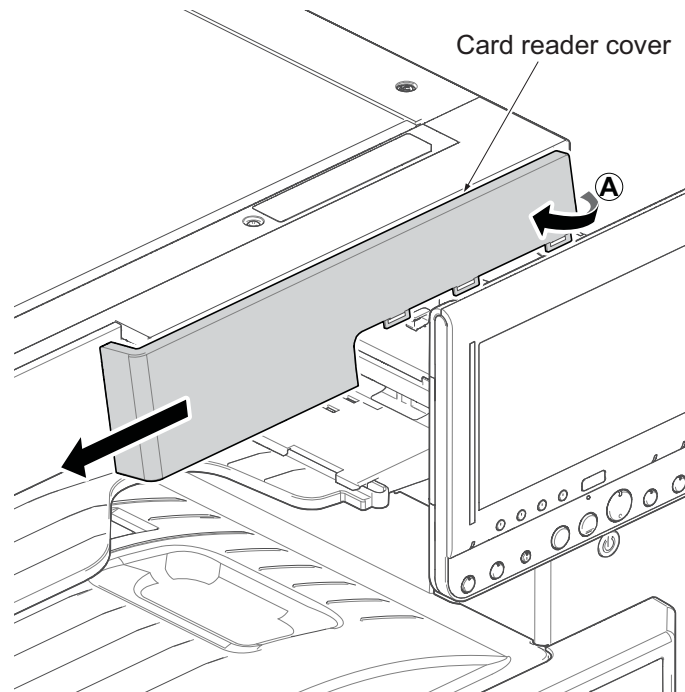


16 Raise the operation panel.

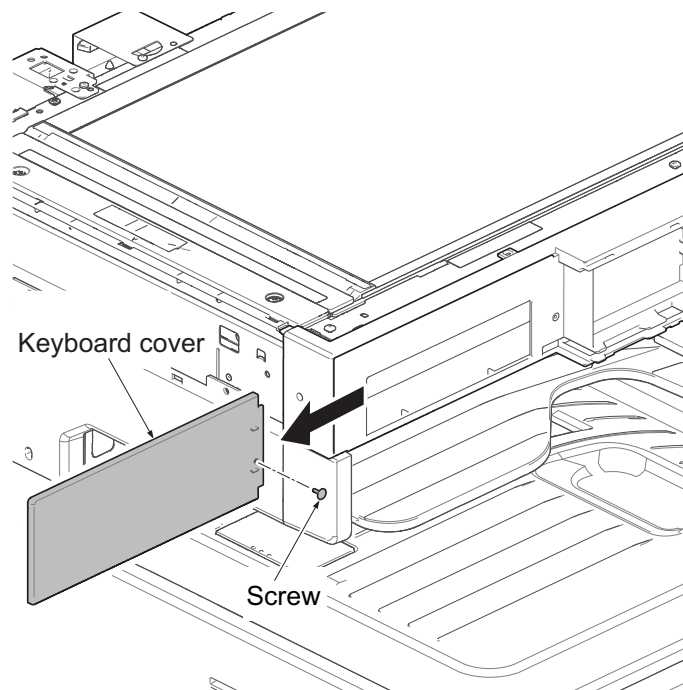
17 Detach the screw and then remove the operation panel lower cover.



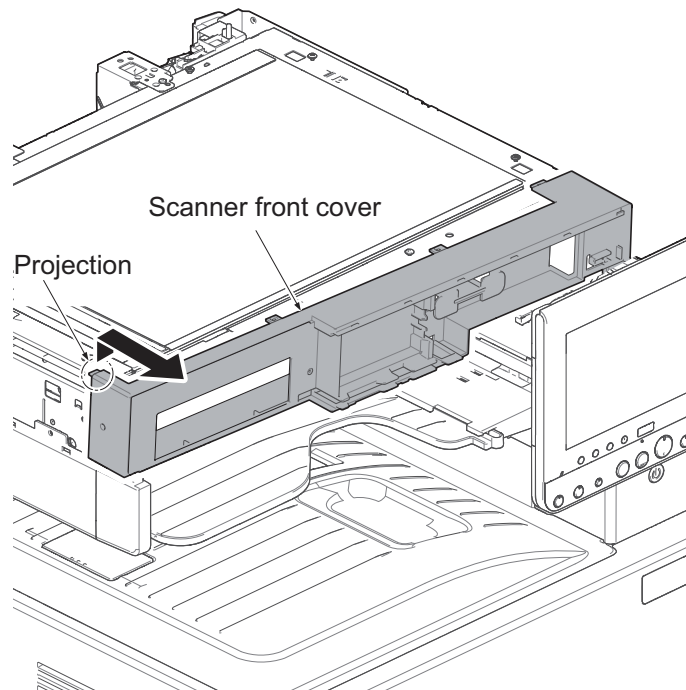
- 18 Twist the A section of card reader cover in front and remove to pull in the left direction.



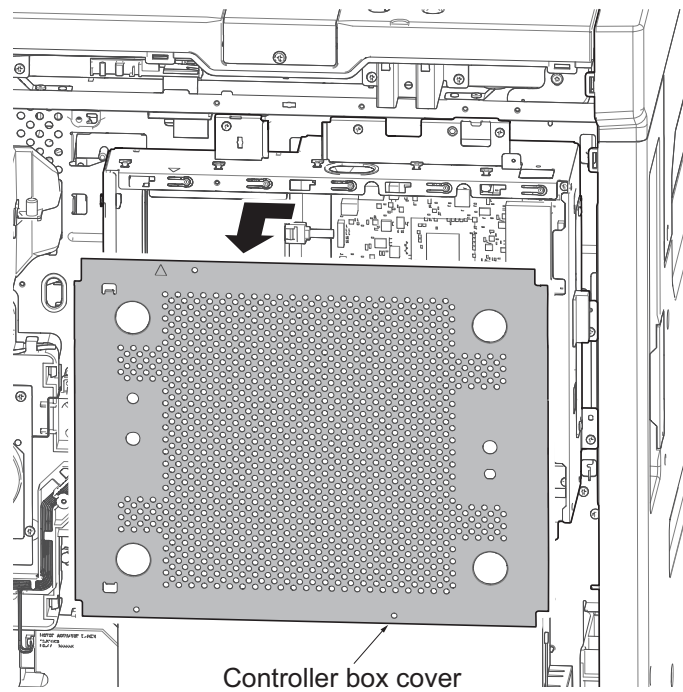
- 19 Detach one screw, slide the keyboard cover in the direction of the arrow and remove it.



20 After lifting the protrusion, remove the scanner front cover.

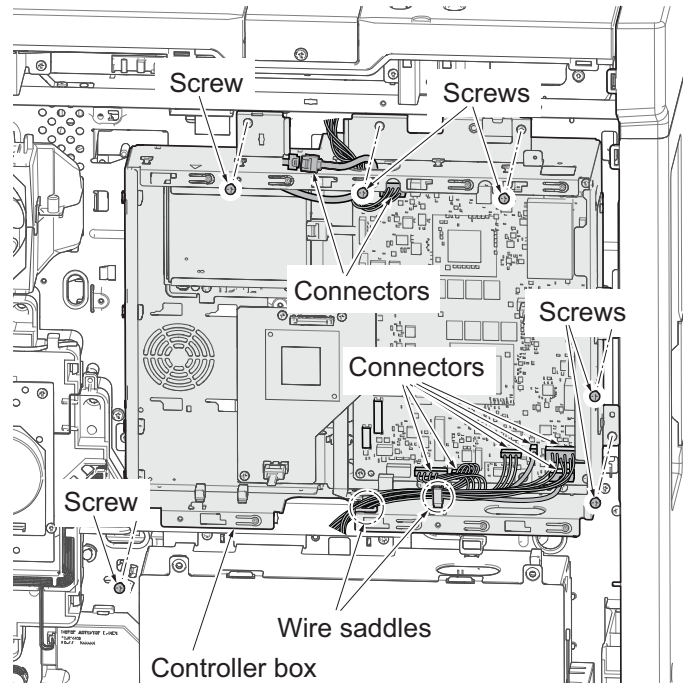


21 Slide the controller box cover in sideways, and remove it.



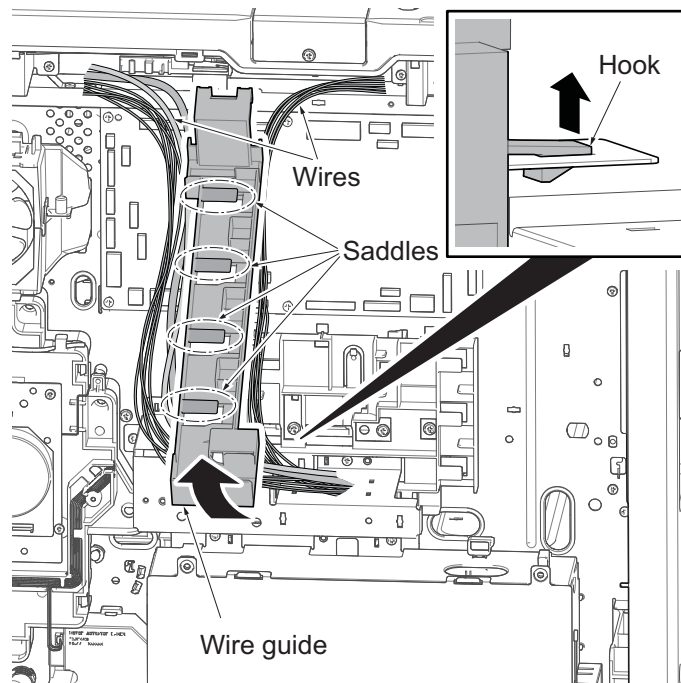
22 Remove seven connectors and release two wire saddles.

23 Detach six screws and then remove the controller box.



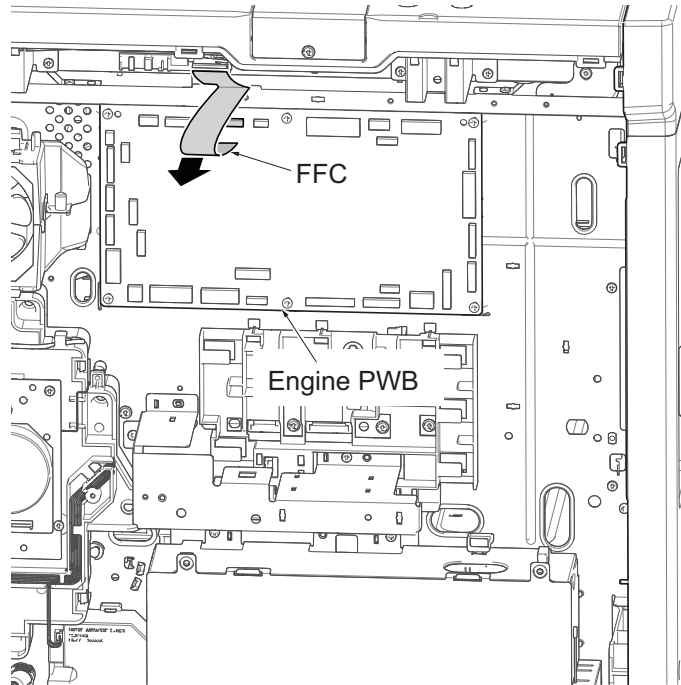
24 Remove the wire from the saddle of the wire guide.

25 Release the hook, lift the wire guide in front and remove it.



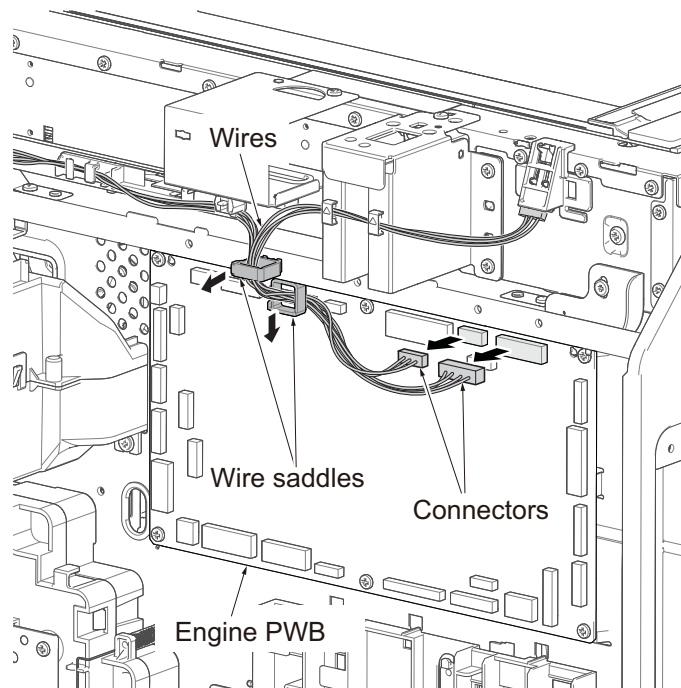


26 Remove FFC from the engine PWB.

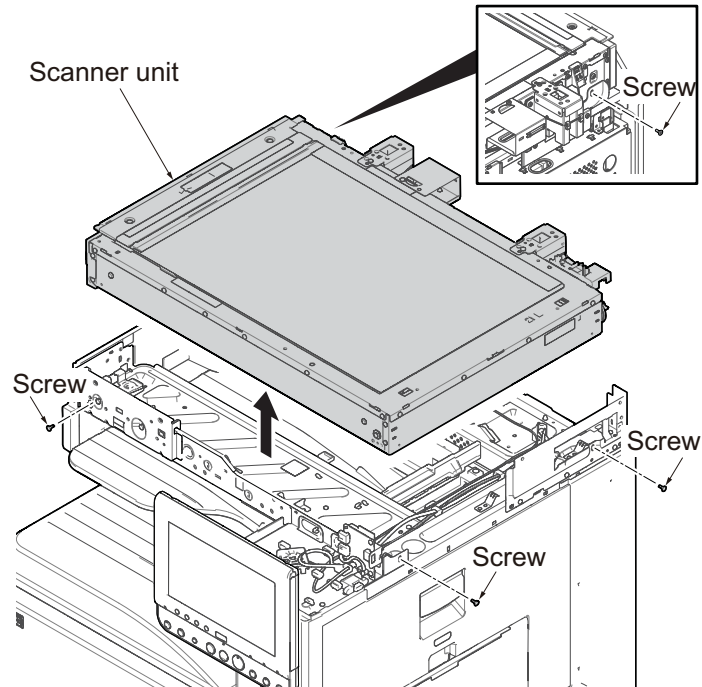


27 Remove two connectors from the engine PWB.

28 Release the wires from two wire saddles.

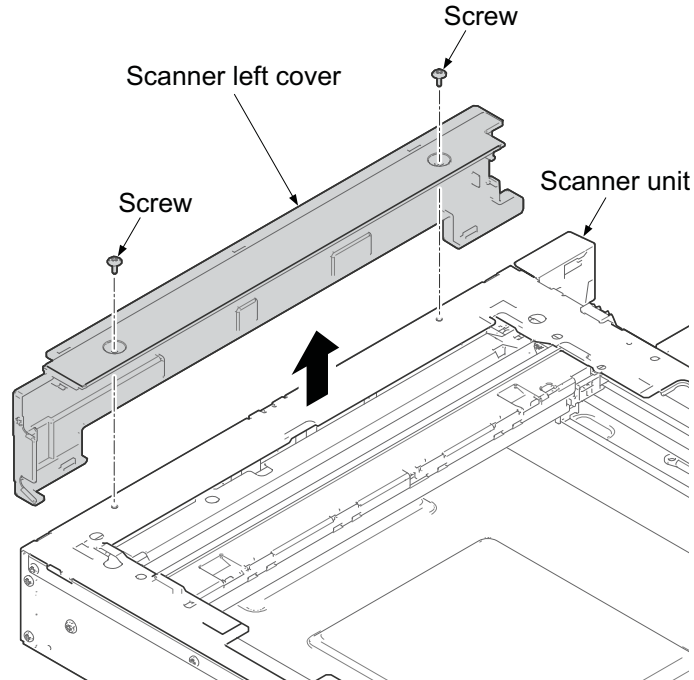


29 Remove the four screws and then remove the scanner unit upward.

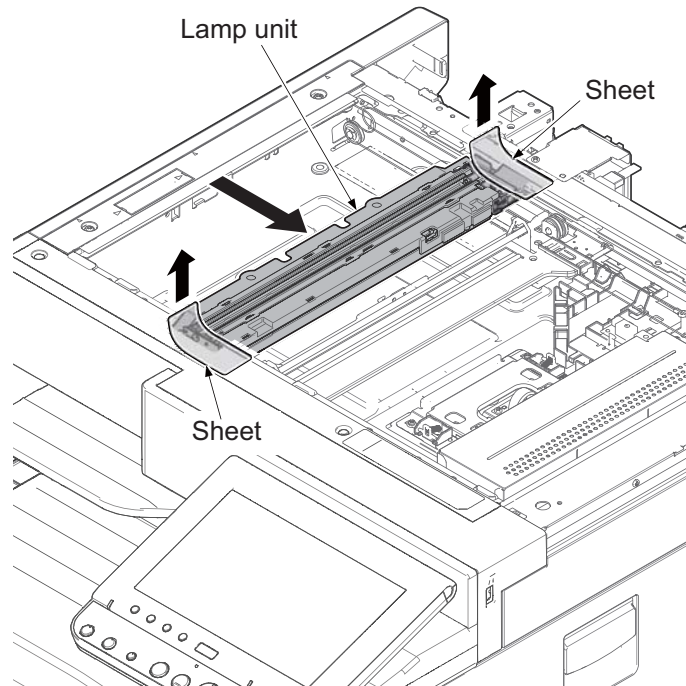


30 Remove the two screws.

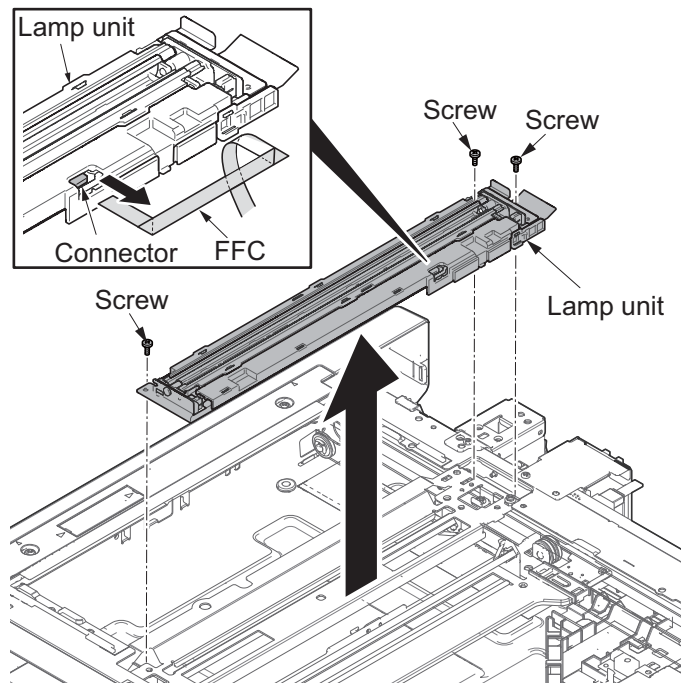
31 Remove the scanner left cover and the contact glass assembly.



- 32 Move the exposure unit to the cutout portion.
- 33 Peel off the sheet.
- 34 Release the hook and then remove the FFC cover.

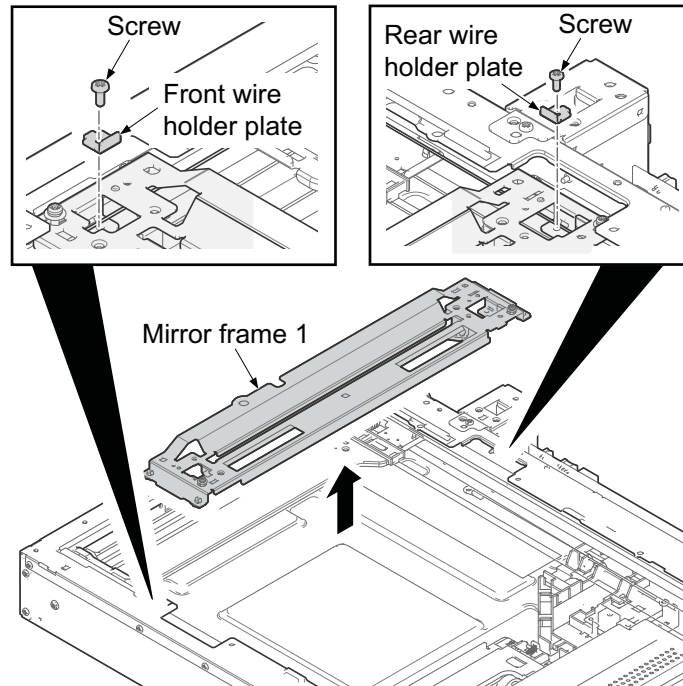


- 35 Remove the FFC from the connector.
- 36 Detach two screws and then remove the LED unit.



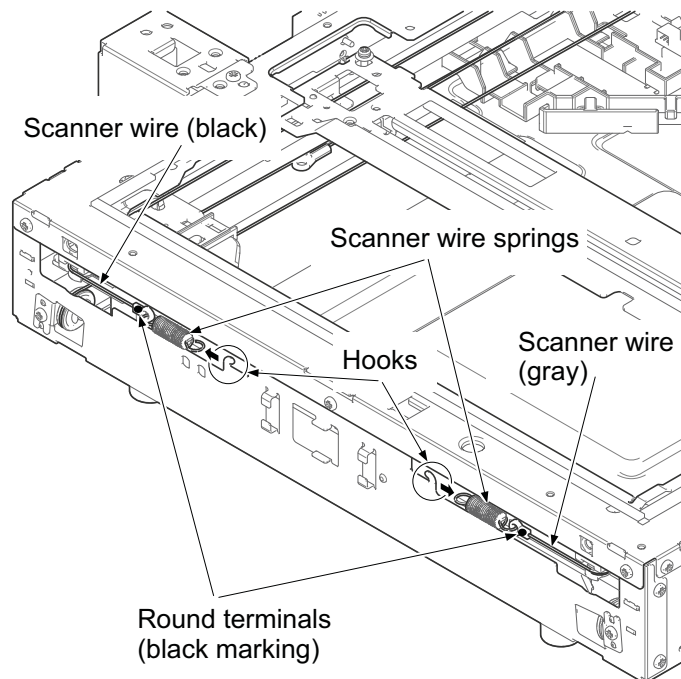
37 Remove each screw and remove front and rear wire holder plates.

38 Remove the mirror frame 1 from the scanner unit.



39 Remove the scanner wire springs from the hooks.

40 Remove the scanner wires.



## (4-2) Fitting the scanner wires

### ✔ Important

When fitting the wires, be sure to use those specified below.

Machine front: (P/N:302K317150), gray

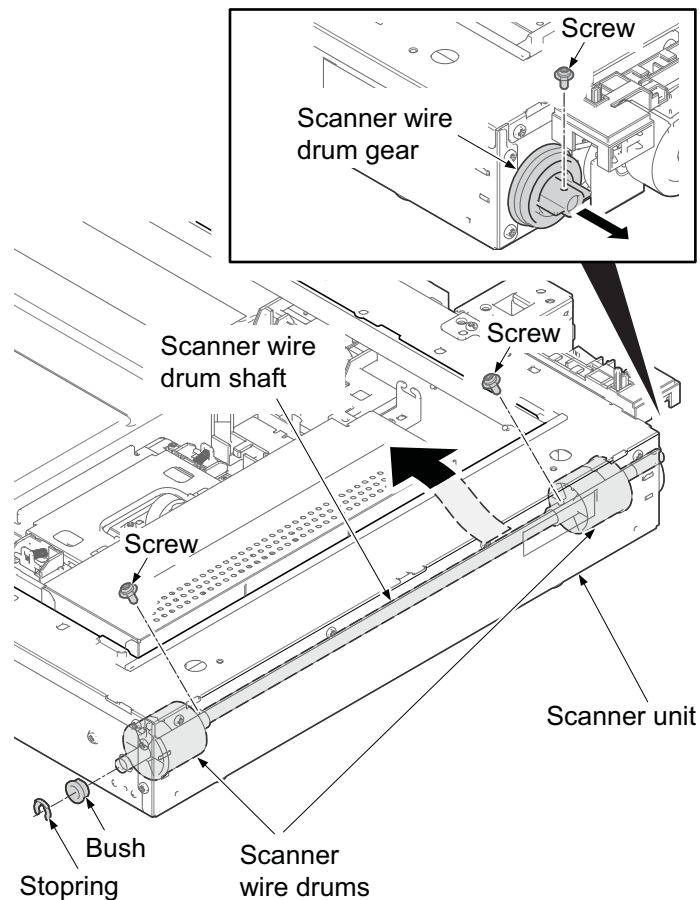
Machine rear: (P/N:302K317140), black

Fitting requires the following tools

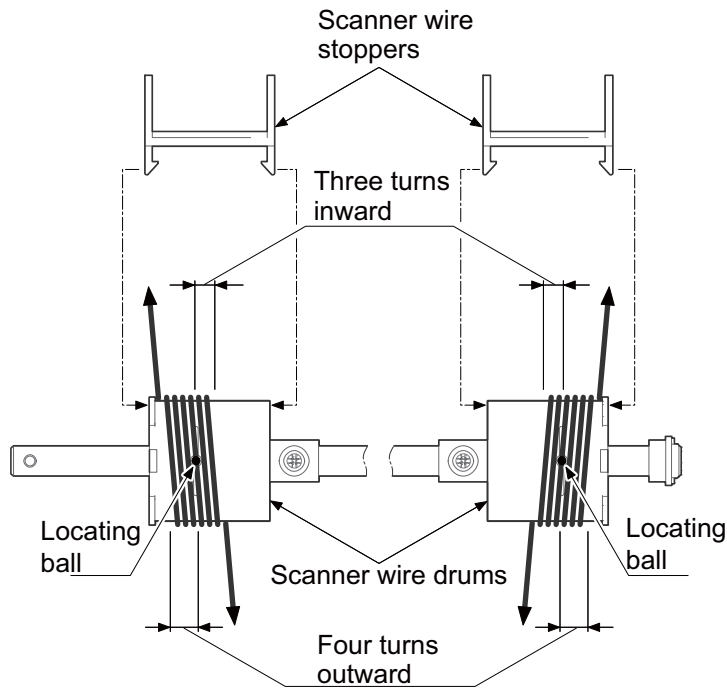
Two frame securing tools (P/N 302FZ17100)

Two scanner wire stoppers (P/N 302RH94010)

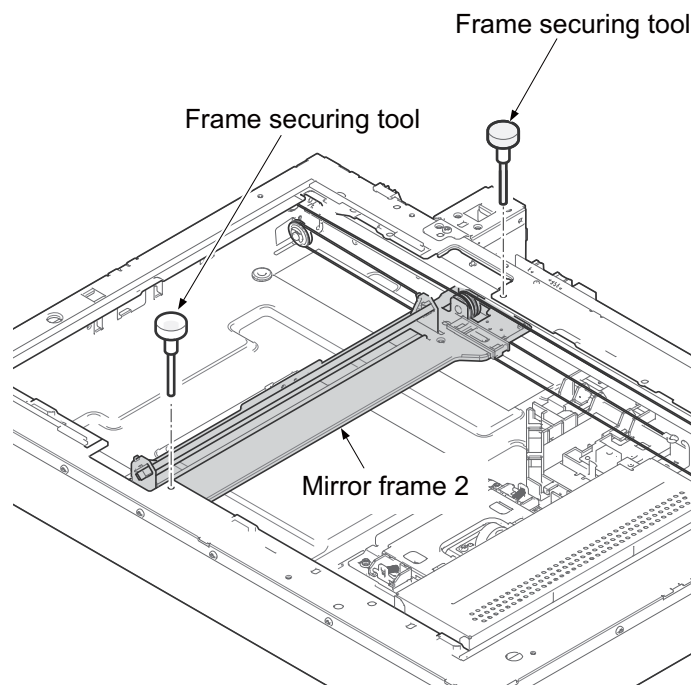
- 1 Remove the screw and remove the scanner wire drum gear.
- 2 Remove the screw at two scanner wire drums.
- 3 Remove the stop ring and bush from the front of the scanner wire drum shaft.
- 4 Remove the scanner wire drum shaft from the scanner unit.



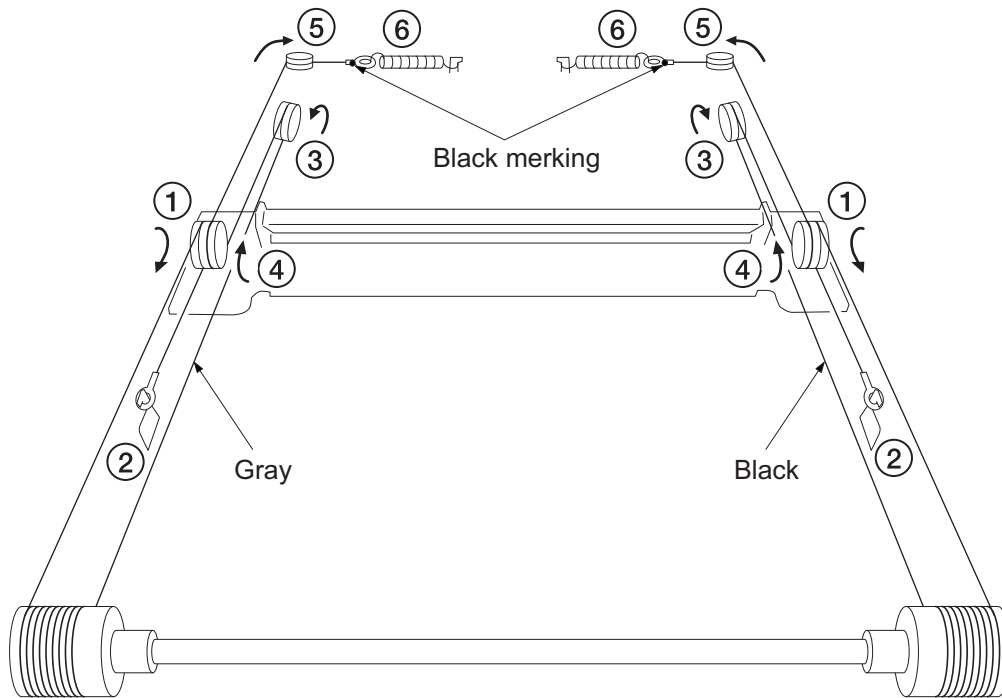
- 5 Insert the locating ball of each scanner wires into the hole in the respective scanner wire drum and wind the scanner wire three turns inward and four turns outward.  
With the locating ball as the reference point, wind the shorter end of each of the wires outward.
- 6 Secure the scanner wires using the scanner wire stoppers.



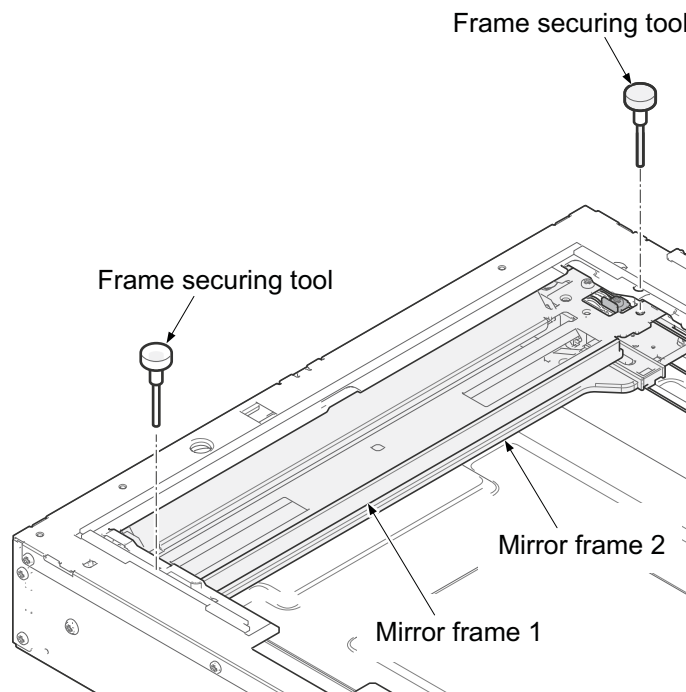
- 7 Refit the scanner wire drum shaft to the scanner unit.
- 8 Insert the two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the scanner unit to fix the mirror frame 2 in position.



- 9 Wind the outer scanner wires from above to below on the outside grooves in the pulleys at the secondary mirror frame. ....(1)
- 10 Hook the round terminals to the catches inside the scanner unit. ....(2)
- 11 Wind the inner scanner wires from below to above in the grooves of left side scanner unit. ....(3)
- 12 Wind from below to above inside grooves of the secondary mirror frame pulley. ....(4)
- 13 Wind the scanner wires around the grooves in the pulleys at the left of the scanner unit .....(5)
- 14 Hook the round terminals to the scanner wire springs. ....(6)



- 15 Remove the two scanner wire stoppers and the mirror frame securing tools.
- 16 Move to center the portion of the locating ball in the scanner wire drum, and the scanner wires to inside.
- 17 Move the mirror frame 2 from side to side in order to correctly locate the wires in position.
- 18 Refit the mirror frame 1.
- 19 Move the mirror frame 1 and 2 to the left side of the machine, and insert the two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the scanner unit to secure the frames in position.
- 20 Hold the wires and fix each front and rear wire holder plate to the mirror frame 1 with the screw.
- 21 Remove the two frame securing tools.
- 22 Refit all the removed parts.

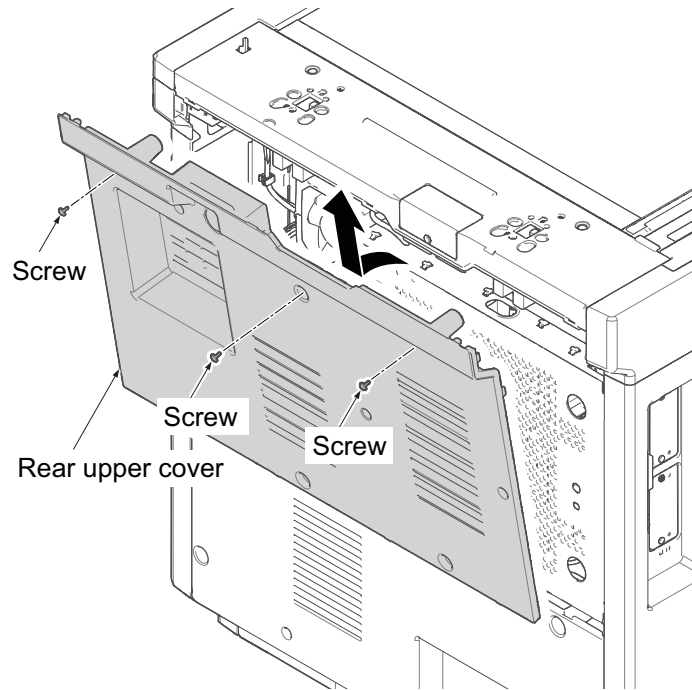




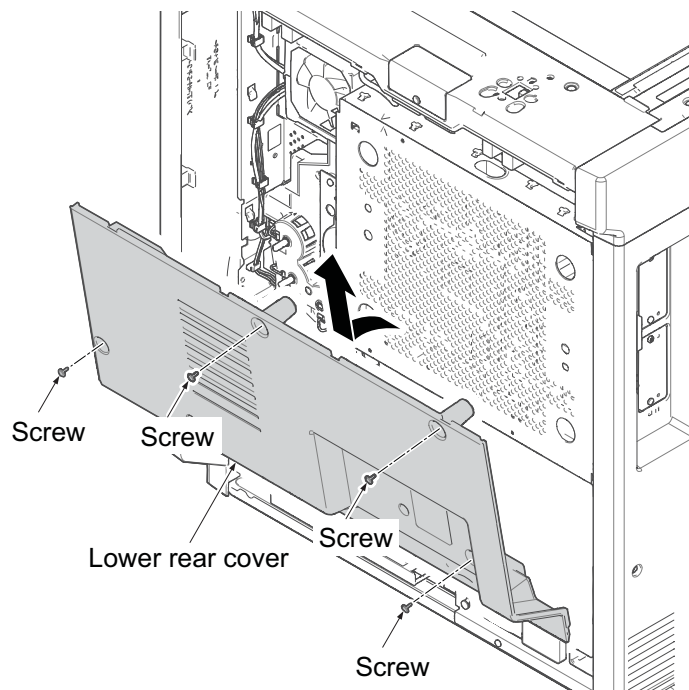
## (5) PWBs

### (5-1) Detaching and reattaching the main PWB

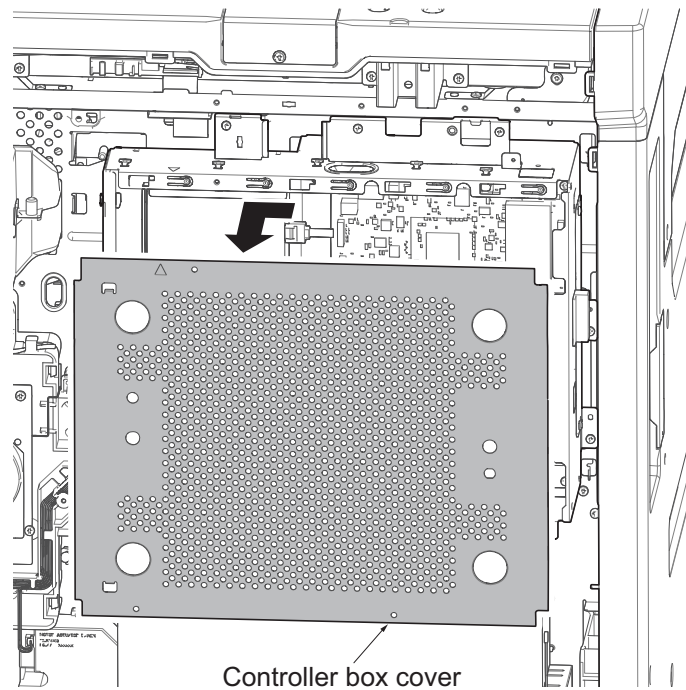
- 1 Detach three screws.
- 2 Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



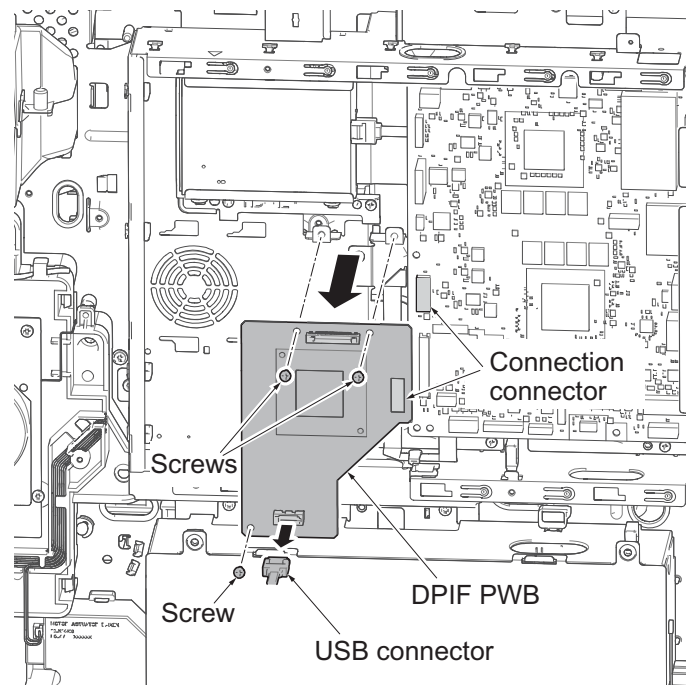
- 3 Detach four screws.
- 4 Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



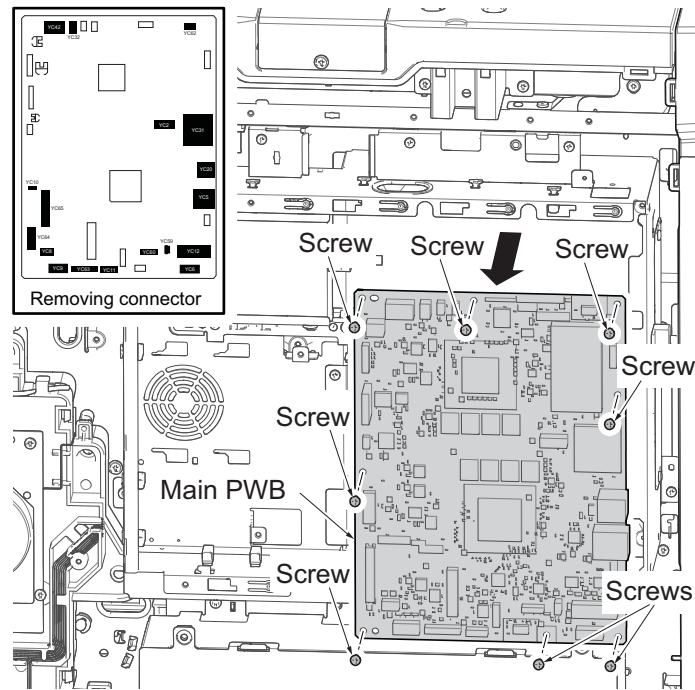
- 5 Slide the controller box cover in sideways, and remove it.



- 6 Detach the USB connector and three screws.
- 7 Unplug the connector and detach DP connect PWB.



- 8 Remove all connectors and FFC from the main PWB.
- 9 Detach eight screws and then remove the main PWB.
- 10 Check or replace the main PWB and reattach the removed parts in the original position.



### Notes when replacing the main PWB

When replacing the main PWB, make sure to remove the SSD from the old board and install it in the new main board. (4-86 Reference)

#### ✔ Important

A machine without the SSD does not start up.

Do not replace the main PWB, engine PWB and SSD at the same time.

**Execute the following setting after replacing the main PWB.****1 Machine No. (maintenance mode U004)**

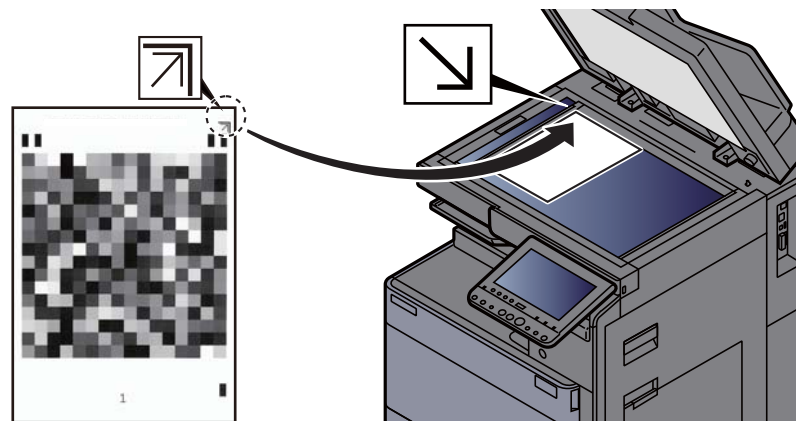
- If the C0180 error occurs, execute U004 to match the serial numbers in the PWBs.  
Execute it after confirming the engine PWB machine serial number matches the main unit serial number.  
Wrong data will be written when there is a discrepancy in U004.
  - Before executing U004, execute U026/ Flash, return to the SSD back up data.
- (1) Input "004" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.
  - (2) Select [Execute] and press the [Start] key.
  - (3) Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

**2 Firmware update (See page 5-1)**

- Check the latest firmware and upgrade it.

**3 Adjusting the halftone automatically (maintenance mode U410)**

- (1) Input "410" using the numeric keys.
- (2) Press the [Start] key.
  - Execution information screen is displayed.
  - Test patterns 1 and 2 are output on the A4 paper.
- (3) Set the output test pattern 1 as original, in the back side which the direction of the arrow is, looking down the side which is printing to the original glass.
  - Set test pattern 1 and place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on it.



- (4) Press the [Start] key.
  - The 1st auto adjustment is executed.
- (5) Set the output Test Pattern 2 as the original.
  - Set test pattern 2 and place approximately 20 sheets of white paper on it.
- (6) Press the [Start] key.
  - The 2nd auto adjustment is executed.
- (7) [Finish] displays after normal completion.

**4 Resetting the initial settings**

Reset the user default setting and FAX default setting (e.g. the local FAX information) from the System Menu or Command Center.

## 5 Resetting the maintenance mode

Reset the following maintenance mode if necessary

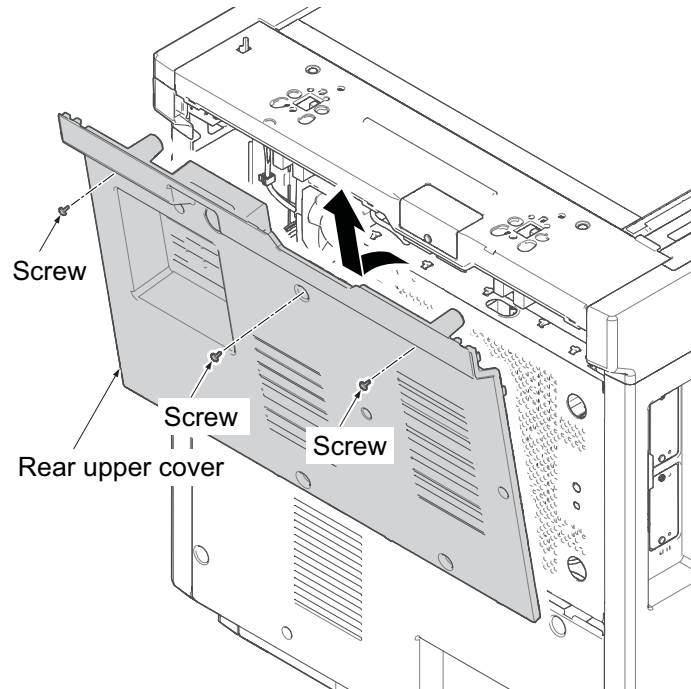
| No.  | Maintenance mode relating to the main unit | No.  | Maintenance mode relating to the main unit |
|------|--|------|--|
| U250 | Maintenance counter preset                 | U603 | User data 1                                |
| U251 | Maintenance counter clear                  | U604 | User data 2                                |
| U253 | Double/single count switch                 | U610 | System 1                                   |
| U260 | Feed/eject counter switch                  | U611 | System 2                                   |
| U345 | Maintenance timing pre-caution setting     | U612 | System 3                                   |
| U402 | Print margin adjustment                    | U625 | Communication Setting                      |
| U403 | Scanning margin adjustment (table)         | U695 | FAX function customization                 |
| U404 | Scanning margin adjustment (DP)            |      |  |
| U425 | Target adjustment                          |      |  |

## 6 Exiting from the maintenance mode

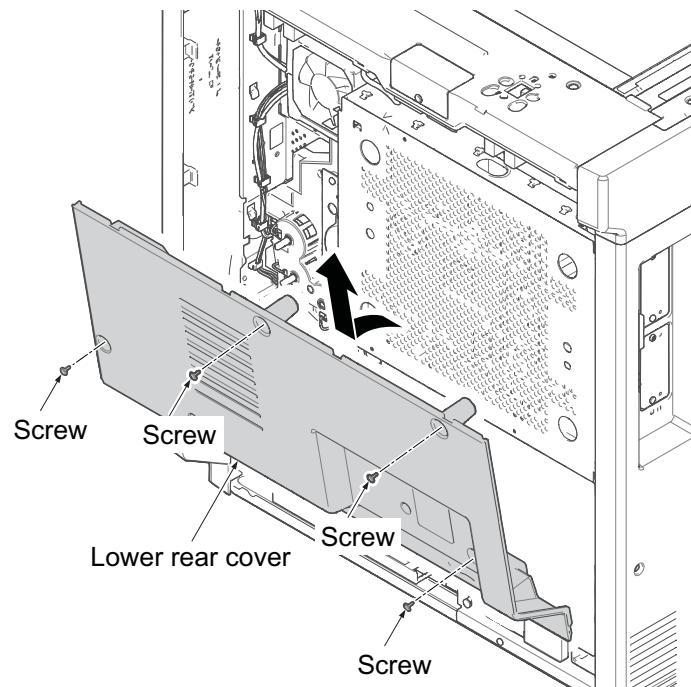
Input "001" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.

## (5-2) Detaching and reattaching the engine PWB

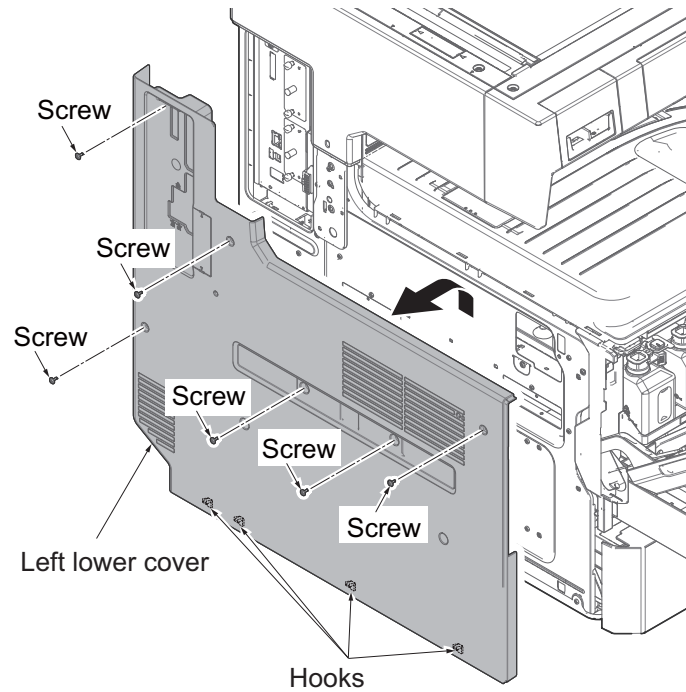
- 1 Detach three screws.
- 2 Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



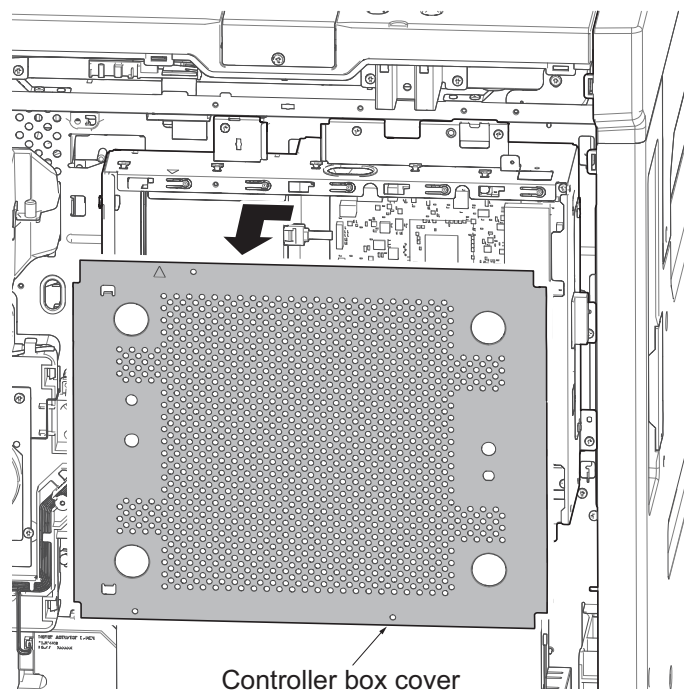
- 3 Detach four screws.
- 4 Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



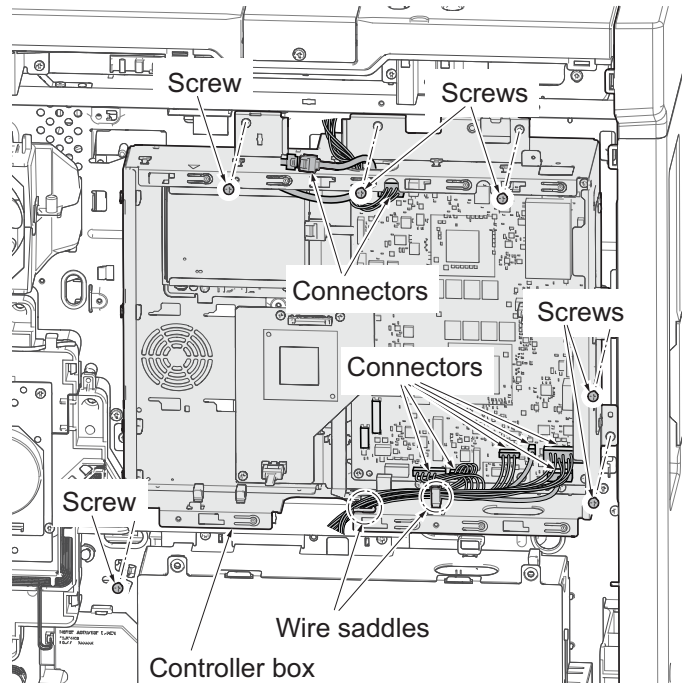
- 5 Remove the cassette.
- 6 Open the front cover.
- 7 Remove six screws.
- 8 Pull upwards and then release four hooks.
- 9 Remove the left lower cover.



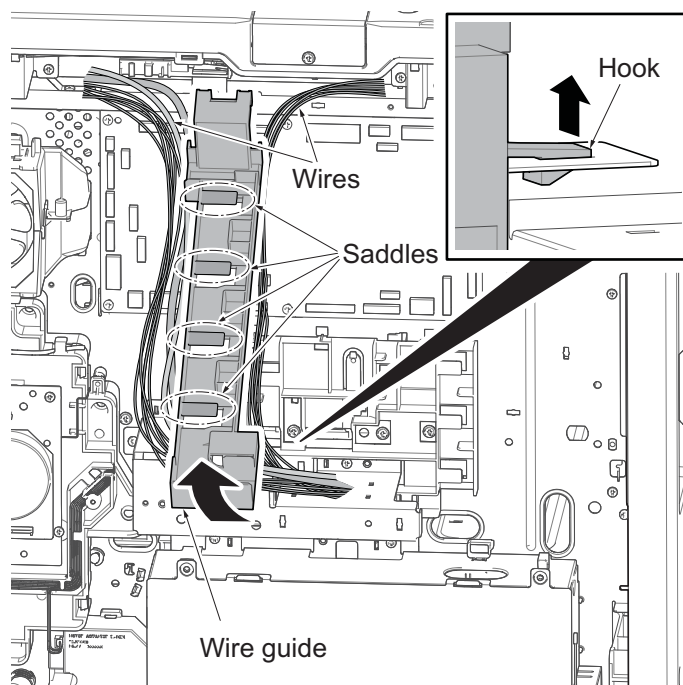
- 10 Slide the controller box cover in sideways, and remove it.



- 11 Remove seven connectors and release two wire saddles.
- 12 Detach six screws and then remove the controller box.

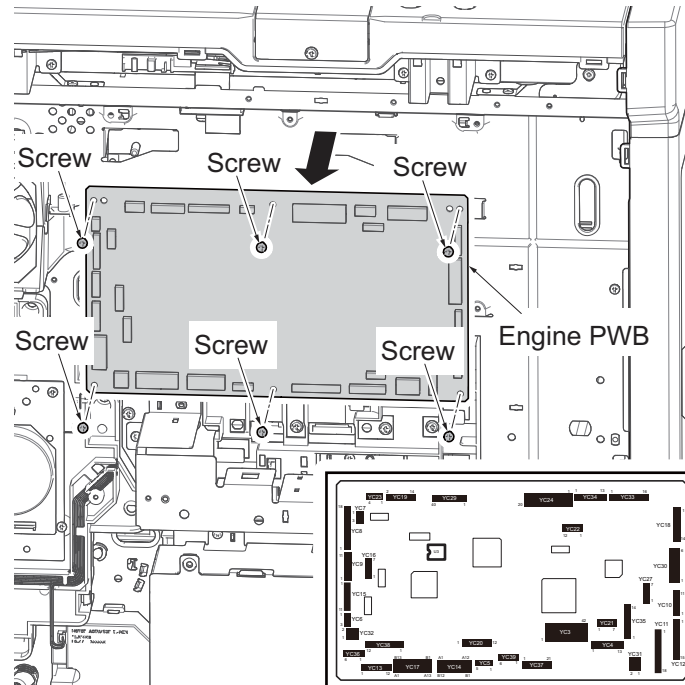


- 13 Remove the wire from the saddle of the wire guide.
- 14 Release the hook, lift the wire guide in front and remove it.



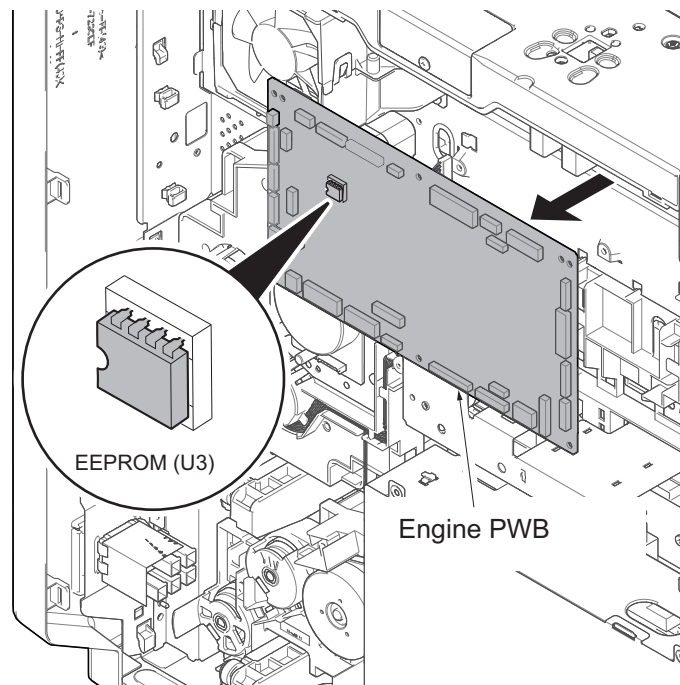


- 15 Remove all connectors and FFC from the engine PWB.
- 16 Detach six screws and then remove the engine PWB.
- 17 Check or replace the engine PWB and reattach the removed parts in the original position.



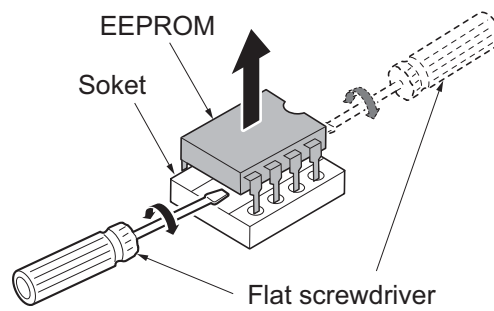
### Notes when replacing the engine PWB

When replacing the engine PWB, remove the EEPROM (U3) from the PWB and then reattach it to the new PWB.



**Detaching of EEPROM**

- 1 The flat screwdriver is inserted between EEPROM and socket.
- 2 Detach it little by little right and left and alternately while noting the transformation and the damage of the pin.

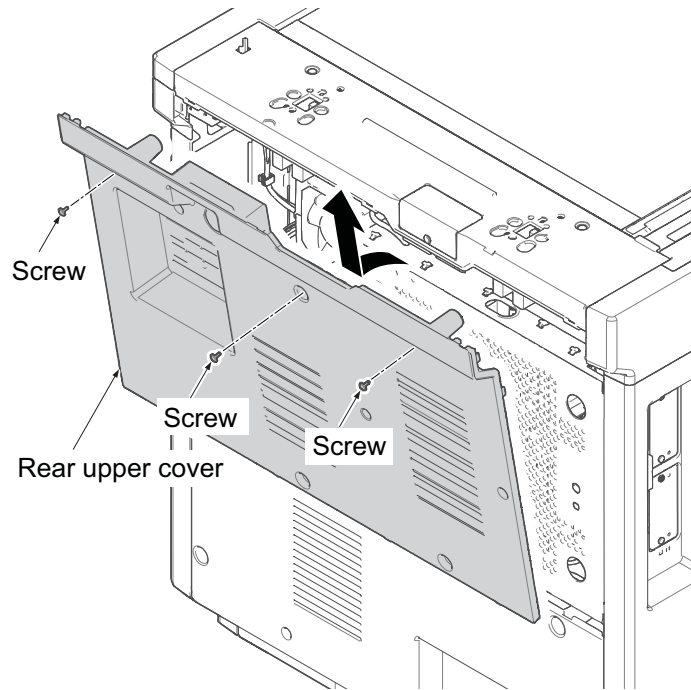
**Execute the following setting after replacing the engine PWB.**

Scanner auto adjustment (maintenance mode U411): Table(ChartA)

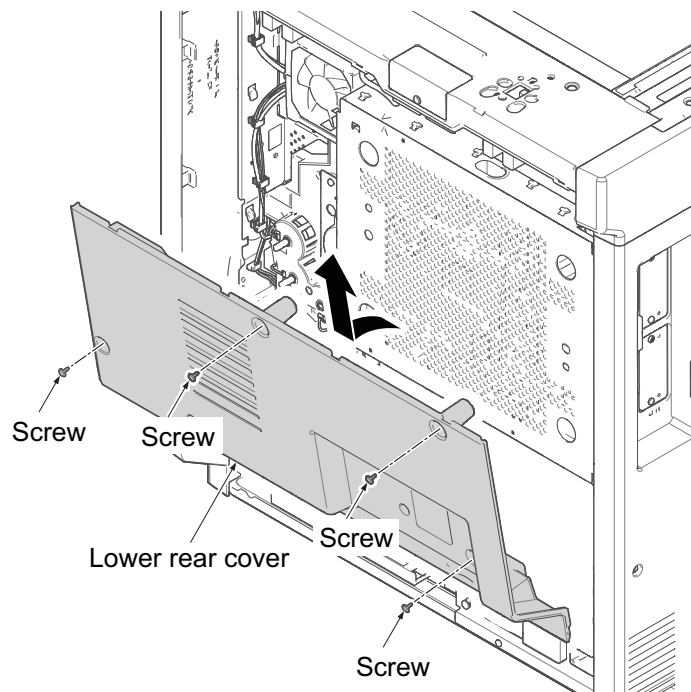
- Adjusts using the digital color chart (Parts number: 7505000005).

### (5-3) Detaching and reattaching the low voltage power source PWB

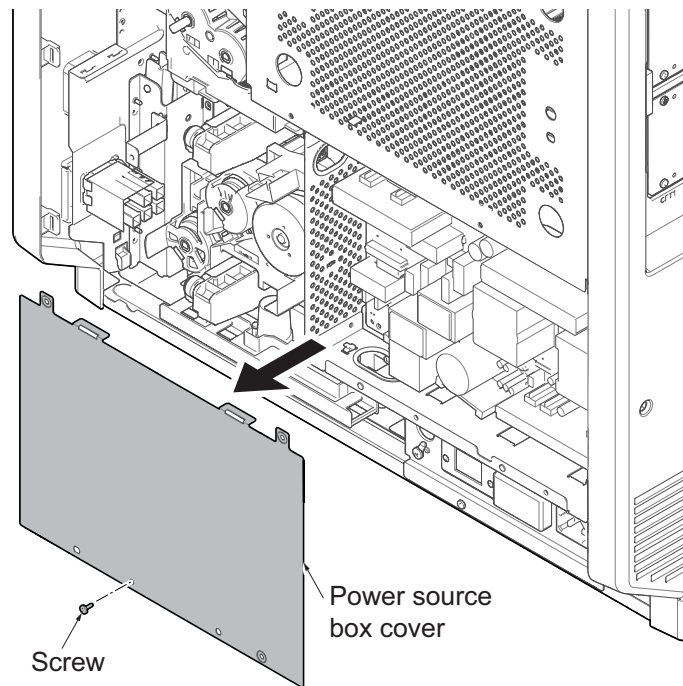
- 1 Detach three screws.
- 2 Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



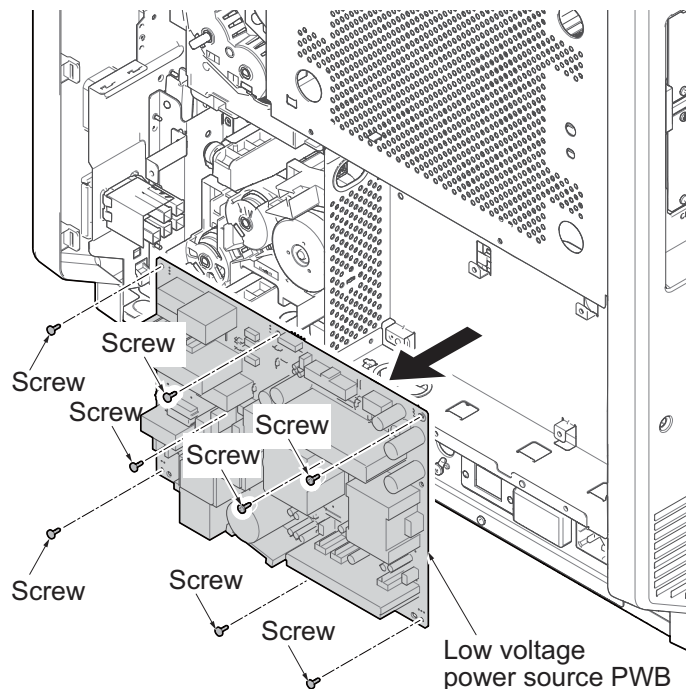
- 3 Detach four screws.
- 4 Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



- 5 Detach one screw and then remove the power source box cover.



- 6 Remove all connectors from the low voltage power source PWB.
- 7 Detach eight screws and then remove the low voltage power source PWB.
- 8 Check or replace the low voltage power source PWB and reattach the removed parts in the original position.

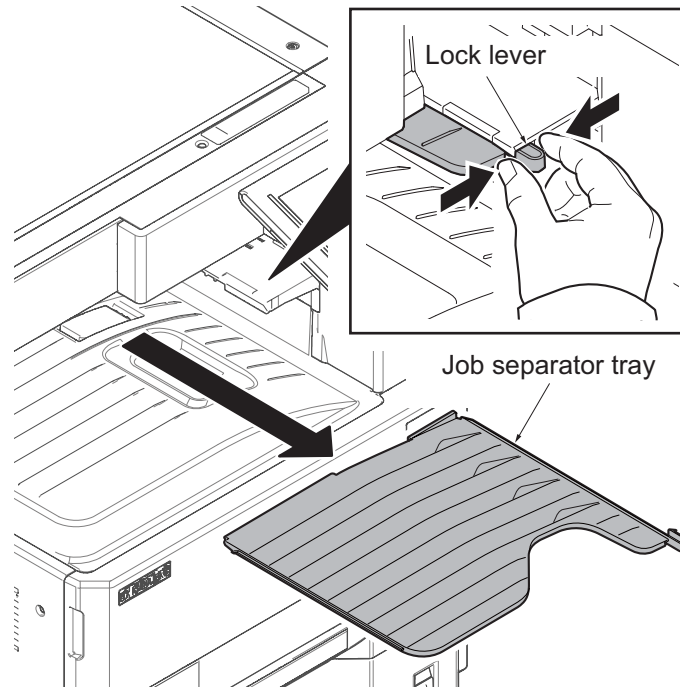


**Caution**

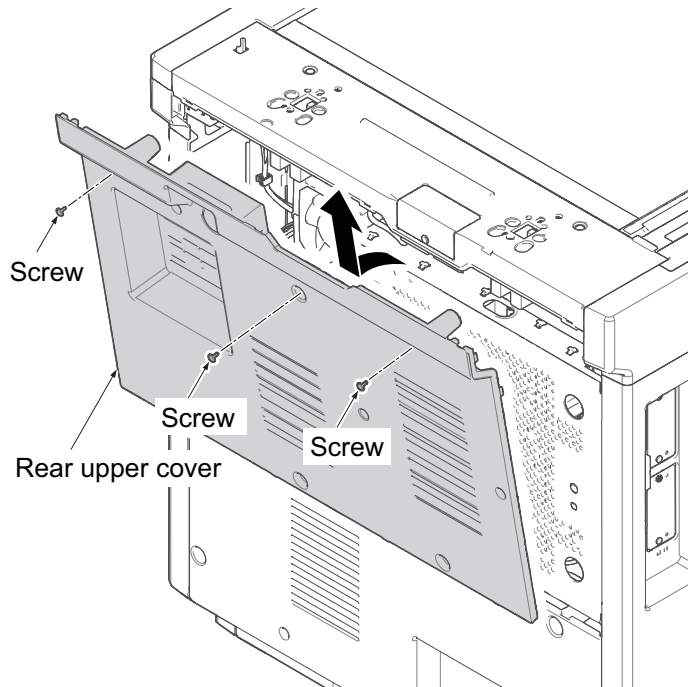
Even if the power switch of the main unit is turned off and the power cord is unplugged, the electric charge may remain in the capacitors on the low voltage power source PWB, so that please be careful not to touch the mounted parts to protect you from electric shock.

### (5-4) Detaching and reattaching the high voltage PWB

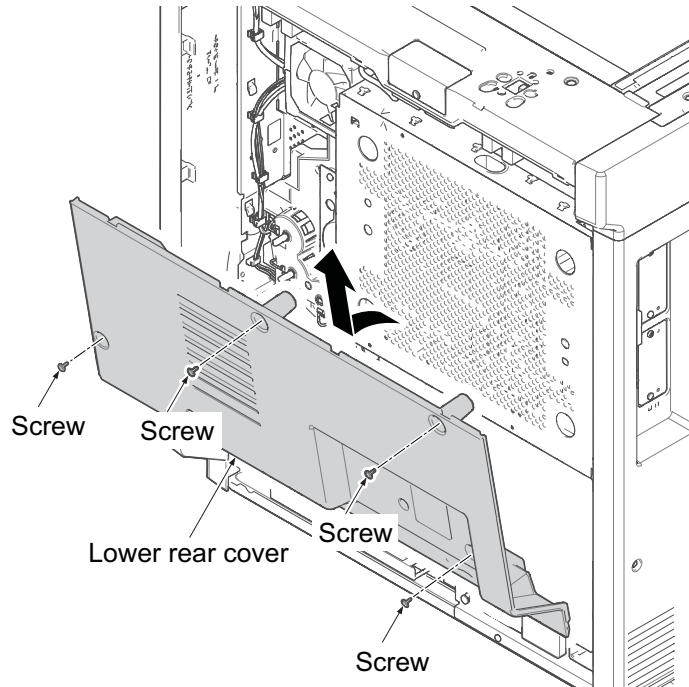
- 1 Release the lock lever and then remove the job separator tray.



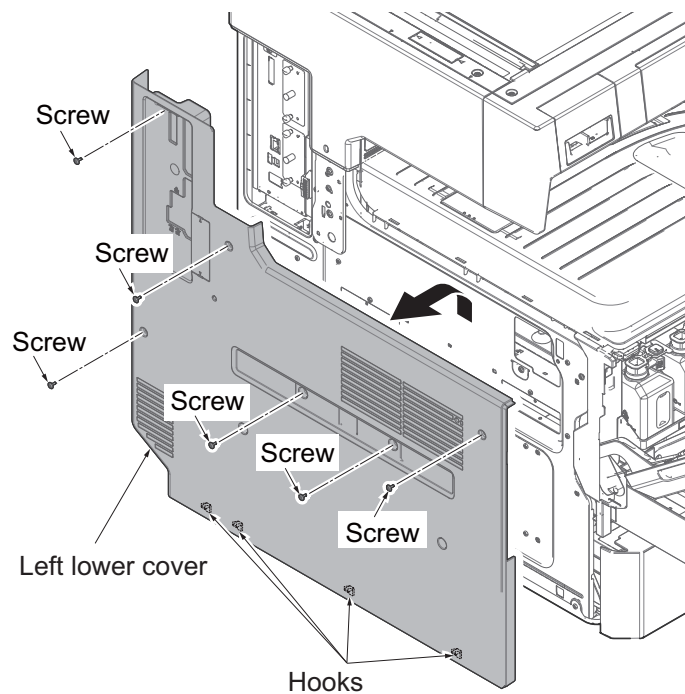
- 2 Detach three screws.
- 3 Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



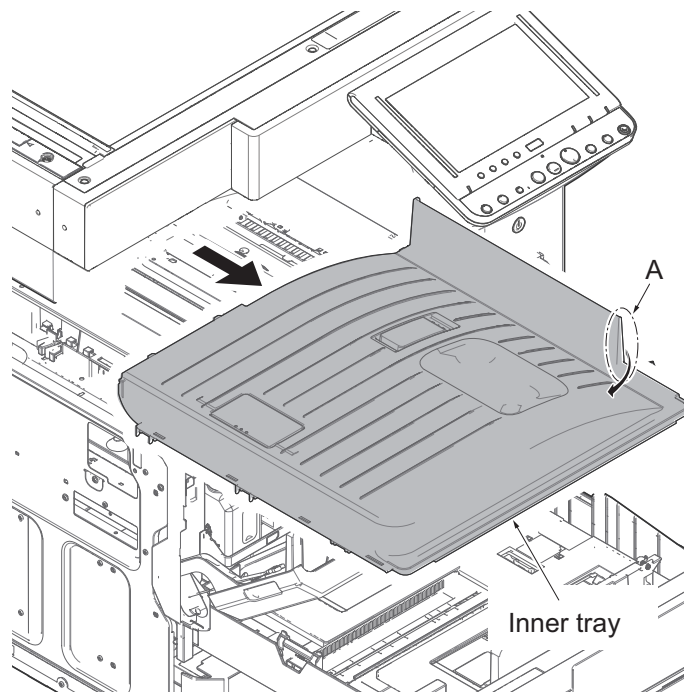
- 4 Detach four screws.
- 5 Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



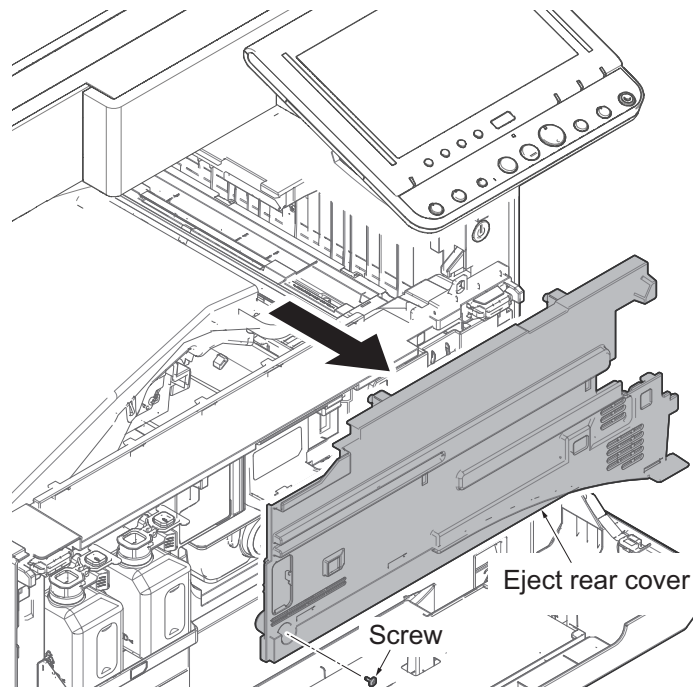
- 6 Remove the cassette.
- 7 Open the front cover.
- 8 Detach six screws.
- 9 Pull upwards and then release four hooks.
- 10 Remove the left lower cover.



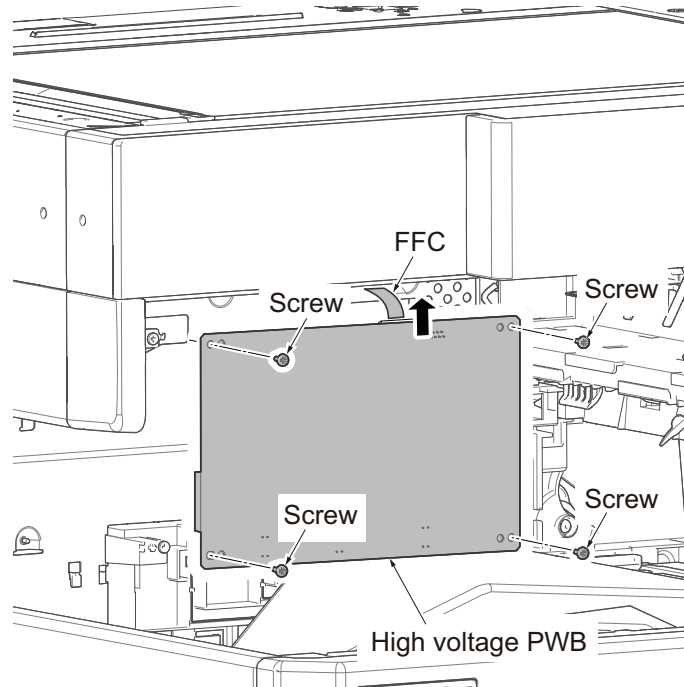
- 11 While pulling the A portion in the direction of the arrow, remove the inner tray.



- 12 Remove the screw and the eject rear cover.



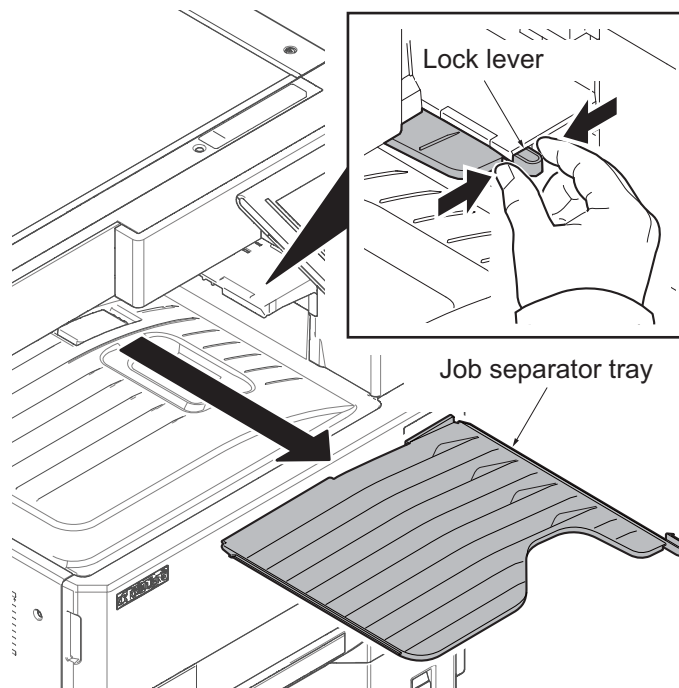
- 13 Remove FFC from the high voltage PWB.
- 14 Detach four screws and remove the high voltage PWB.
- 15 Check or replace the high voltage PWB and reattach the removed parts in the original position.



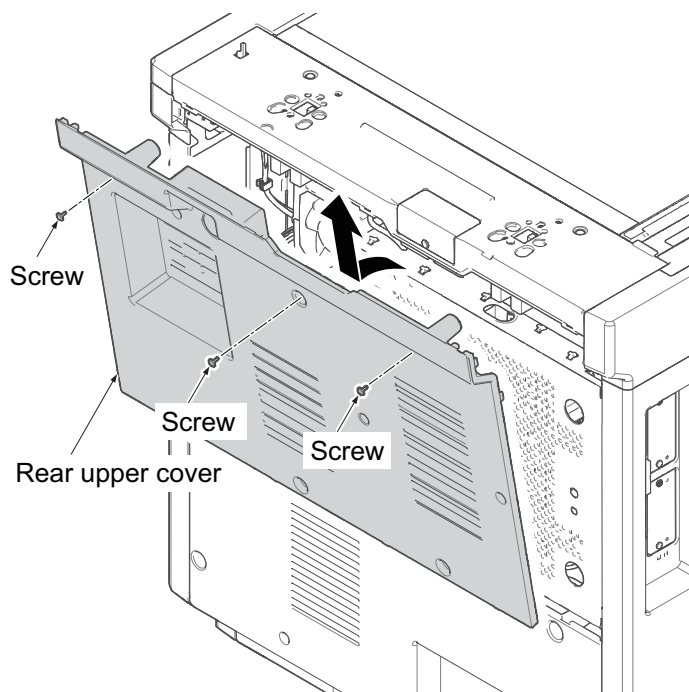


**(5-5) Detaching and reattaching the operation panel PWB 1**

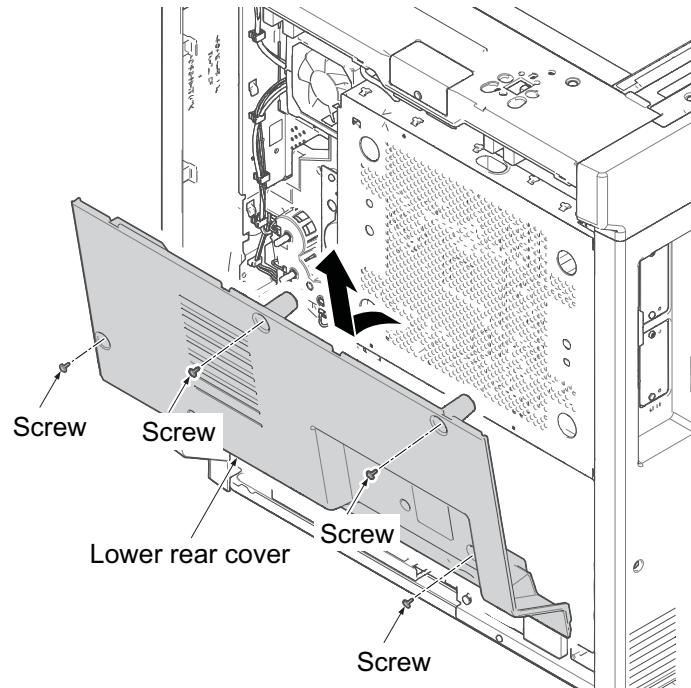
- 1 Release the lock lever and then remove the job separator tray.



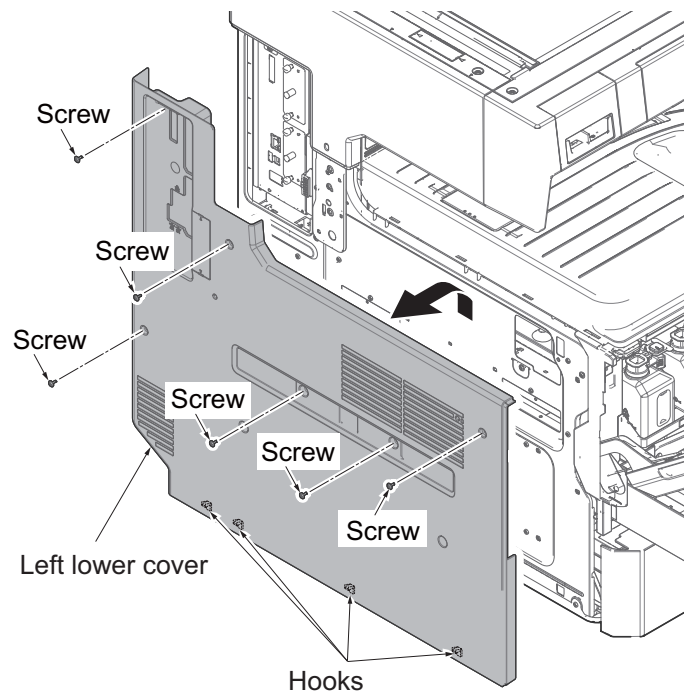
- 2 Detach three screws.
- 3 Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



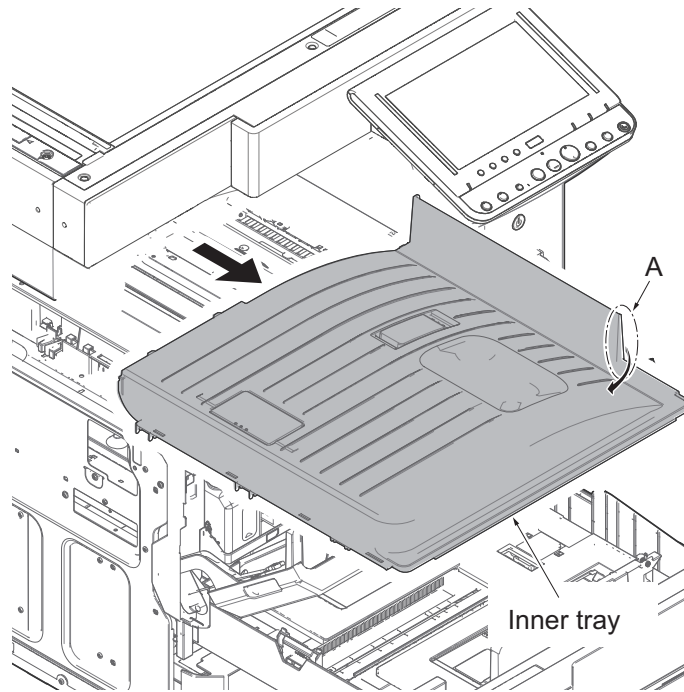
- 4 Detach four screws.
- 5 Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



- 6 Remove the cassette.
- 7 Open the front cover.
- 8 Detach six screws.
- 9 Pull upwards and then release four hooks.
- 10 Remove the left lower cover.



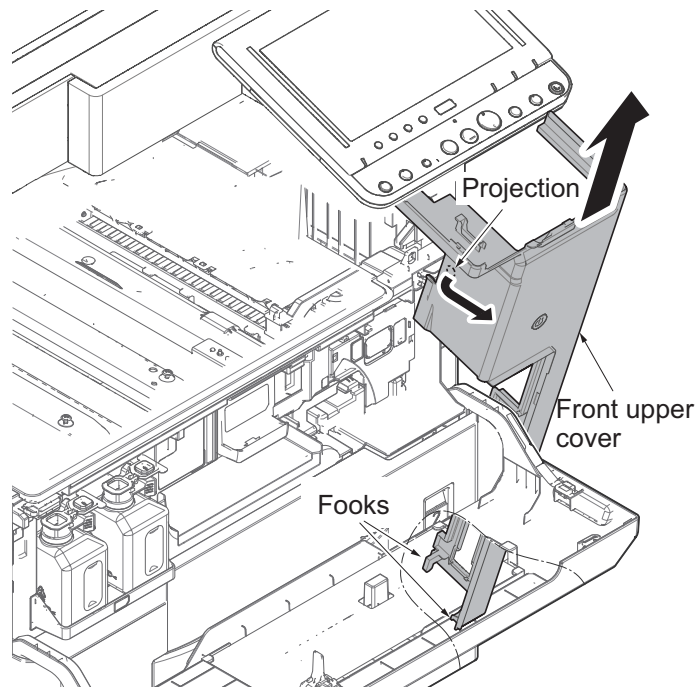
- 11 While pulling the A portion in the direction of the arrow, remove the inner tray.



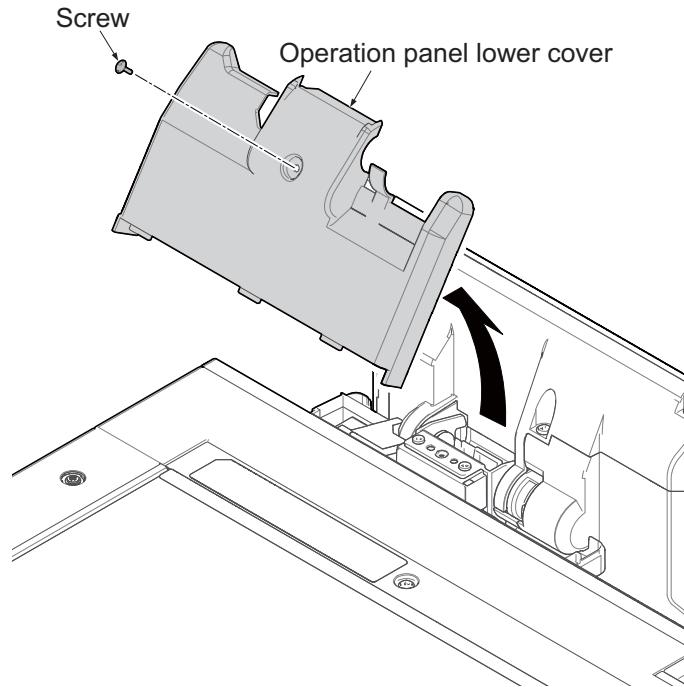
- 12 Open the right cover 1 and 2.

- 13 Release the projection of the front upper cover.

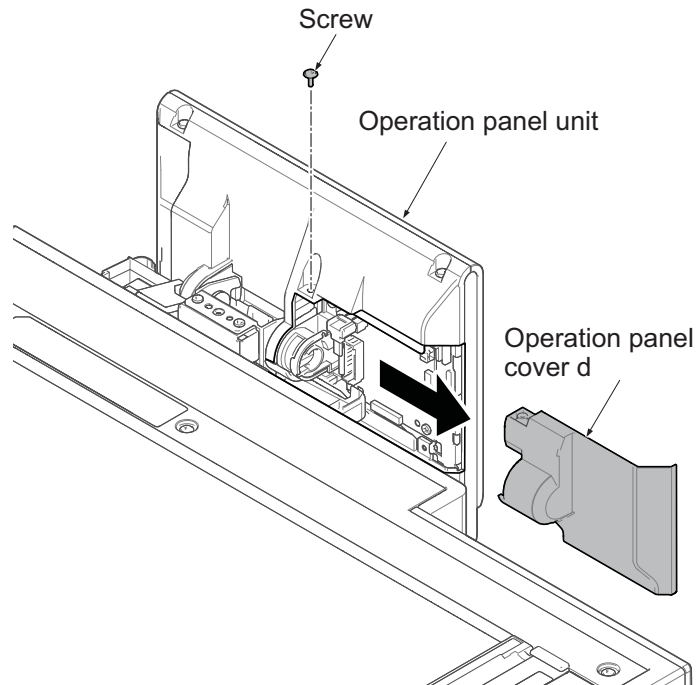
- 14 Tilt the front upper cover forward and then unhook two hooks by taking out it upward.



- 15 Detach the screw and then remove the operation panel lower cover in the direction of the arrow.



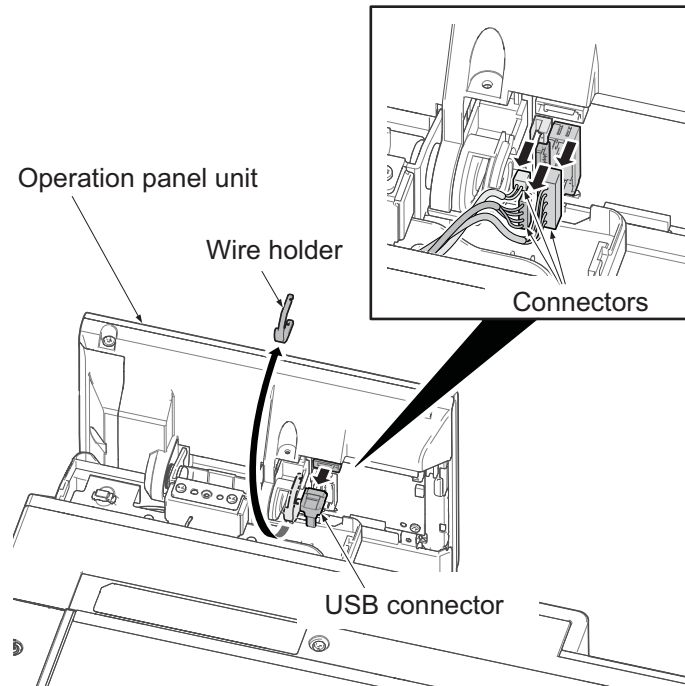
- 16 Remove the screw and then remove the operation panel cover d from the operation panel upper unit.



17 Remove the wire holder in the fulcrum.

18 Remove USB connector.

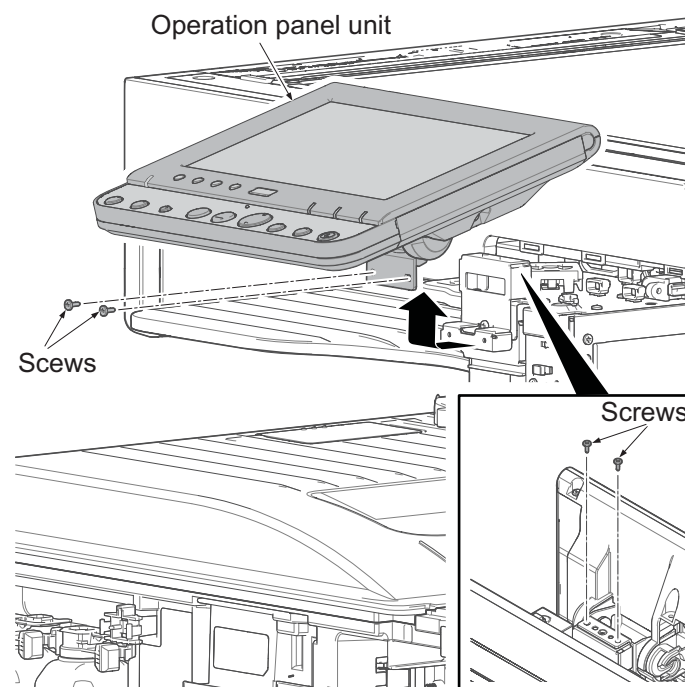
19 Remove three connectors.



20 Remove two screws in the upper portion of the fulcrum.

21 Knock down the operation panel and detach two screws in front of the fulcrum.

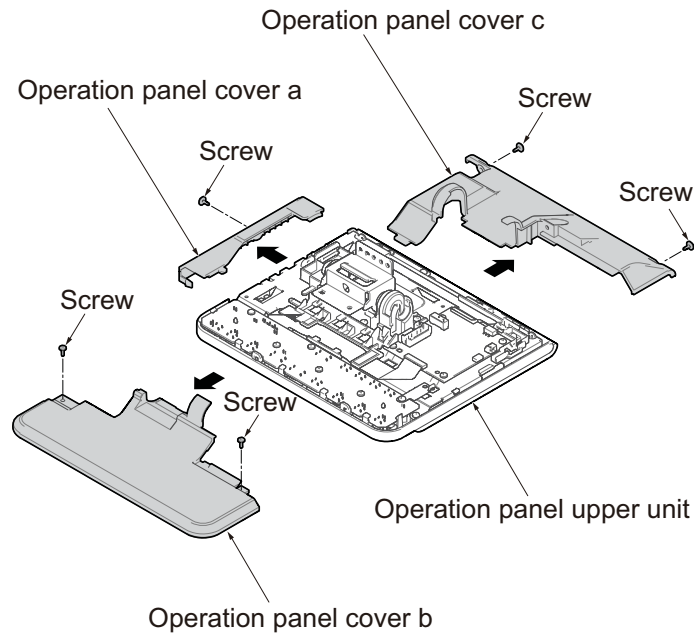
22 Remove the operation panel in the direction of the arrow.



23 Detach one screw from operation panel upper unit and remove the operation panel cover a.

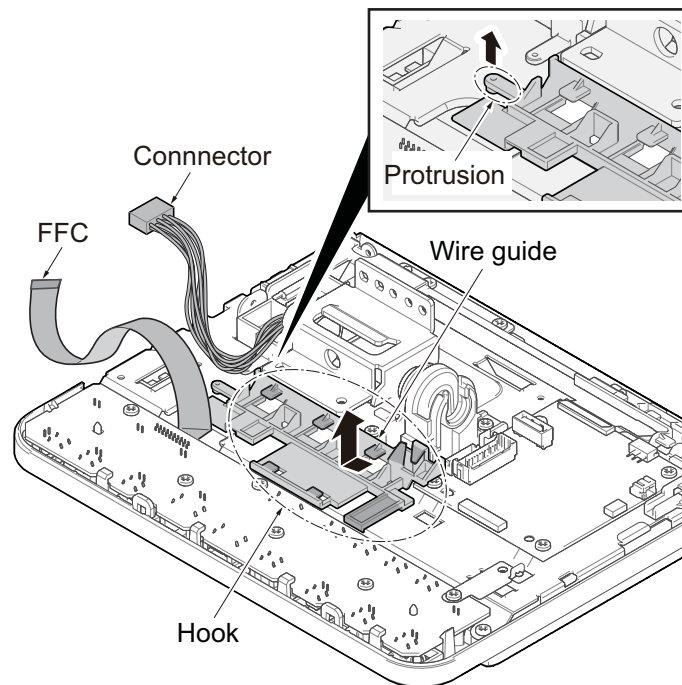
24 Detach two screws and then remove the operation panel cover b.

25 Detach two screws and then remove the operation panel cover c.

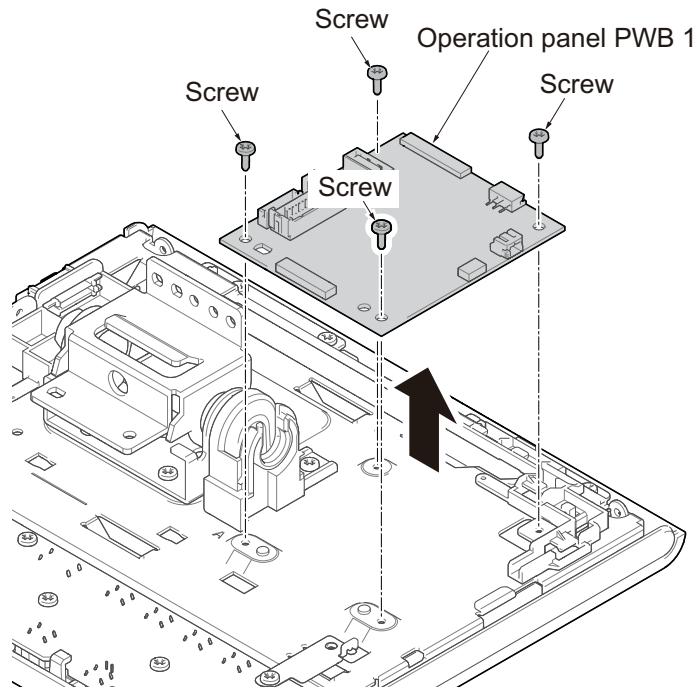


26 Remove the connector and FFC and release from the hook.

27 Lift the protrusion of the wire guide, slide in the direction of the arrow and remove it.



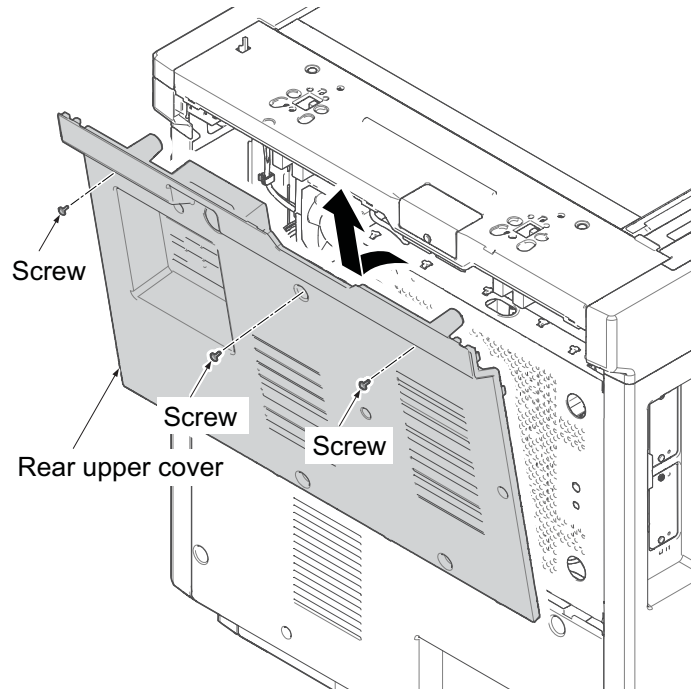
- 28 Remove all connectors and FFC from the operation panel PWB 1.
- 29 Detach four screws and remove the operation panel PWB 1.
- 30 Check or replace the operation panel PWB 1 and reattach the removed parts in the original position.



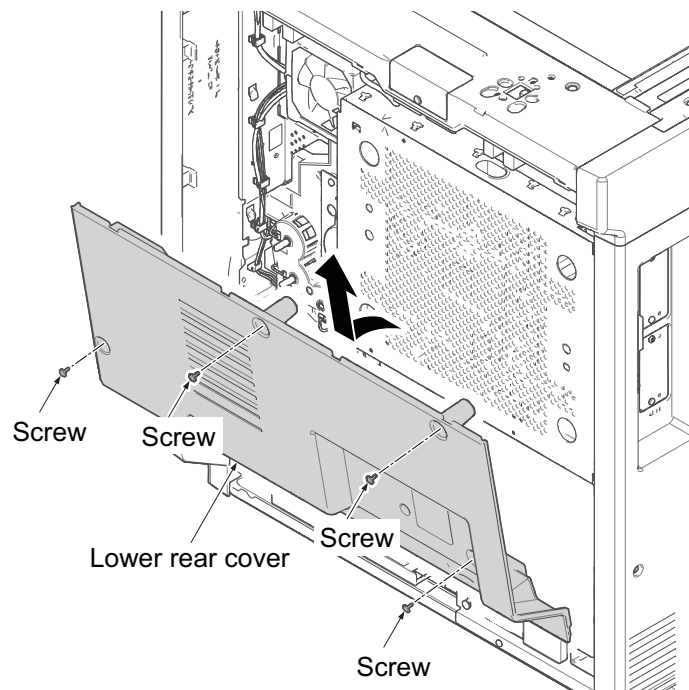
## (6) Others

## (6-1) Detaching and reattaching the SSD

- 1 Detach three screws.
- 2 Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.

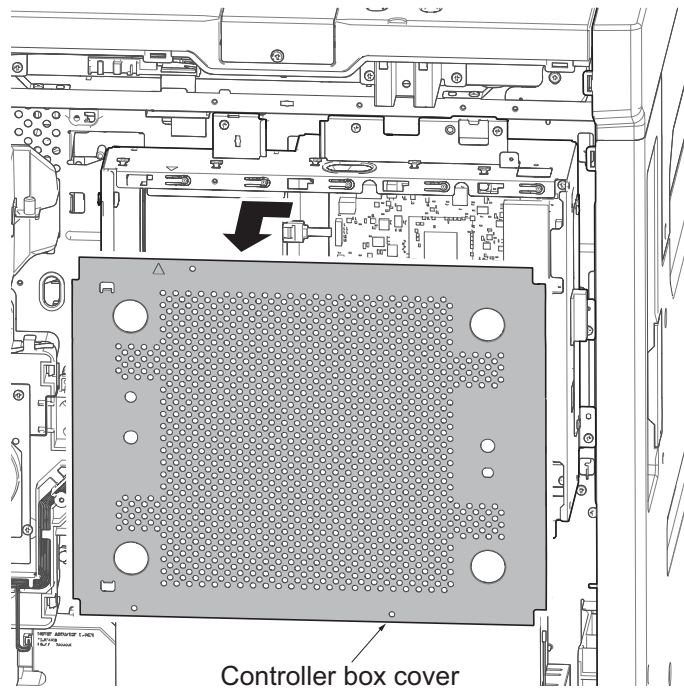


- 3 Detach four screws.
- 4 Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.

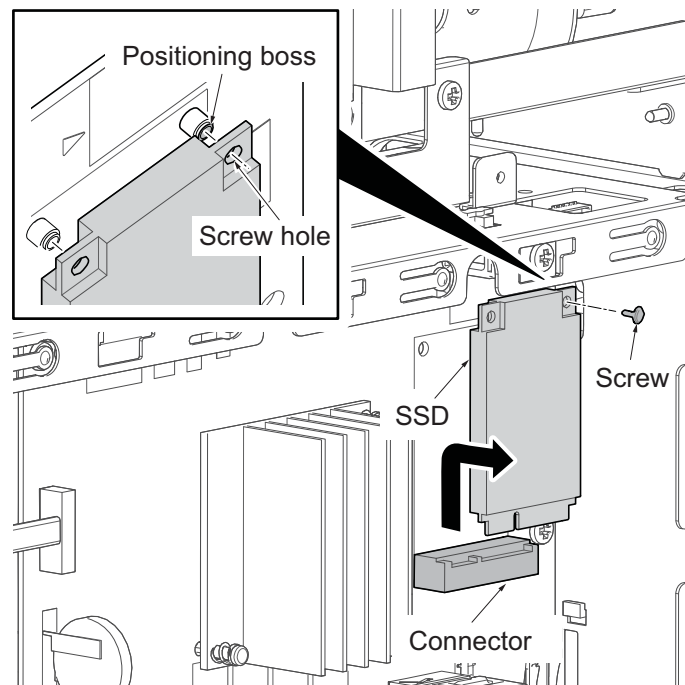




- 5 Slide the controller box cover in sideways, and remove it.



- 6 Remove one screw (M2).
- 7 Remove the SSD from the connector.
- Use a Phillips 1 screwdriver and take care not to damage the screws.
  - Do not use other screw than the item below that is dedicated to securing the SSD.  
(7BB000204H BIND M SCREW 2x4)



**Important**

To avoid damage when attaching the SSD, align the screw hole to the positioning boss.  
Do not replace the main PWB, engine PWB and SSD at the same time.

**SSD replacement procedures when the SSD replacement is indicated.**

- Data transfer by U026 is not available since data cannot be read when SSD is broken or it is in Read Only mode.

Preparation: 2 USB memory (for firmware and data backup)

Before operating, perform data backup in U917.

**1 Firmware storage in a USB memory (USB memory A)**

(1) Store the firm upgrade pack of latest version in USB memory or release firmware (Main/MMI/BROWSER/Dictionary/LANGUAGE/OCR).

- Check the firmware applicable to the target model. When inputting the software of outside the target, becomes unstable in action.

In order to reboot, require minimum main.

**2 SSD data backup (USB memory B)**

- When fully back up 32G SSD, it need 64GB USB memory.

(1) Install the USB memory B.

(2) Execute maintenance mode U026

Input "026" using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.

Select [SSE].

Select [Backup]. Press the [Start] key.

Turn the power off after completion.

(3) Replace the new SSD.

- When equipping with SSD (8G/32G) which the capacity is different from the specification, pay attention as F010 SSD and communication error happen.

(4) Turn ON the power with equipping with USB memory A.

As the program from SSD can't load, SSD recovery program which is SNOR on the main PWB start up, is formatted automatically.

- When forgot the USB memory equipment, pay attention as F010 displays.

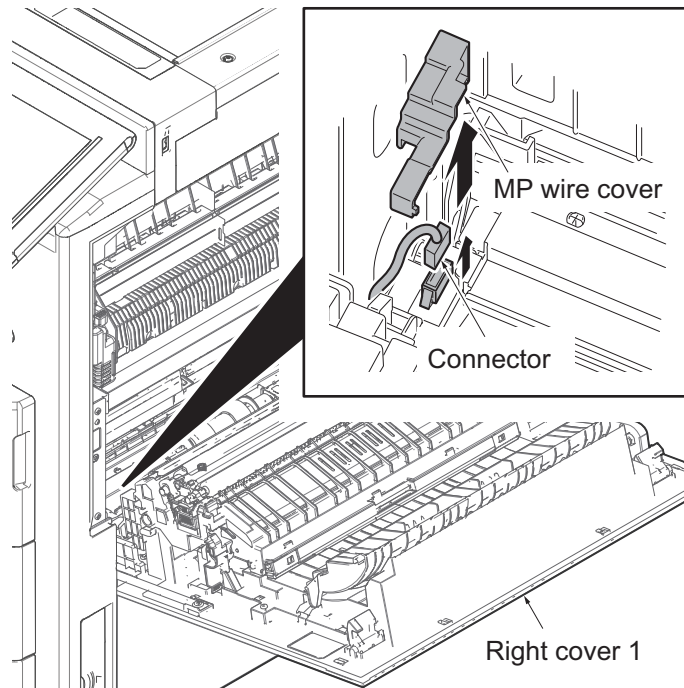
(5) If UPDATE completion is displayed on the control panel, turn OFF/ON the power with inserted USB memory A.

**3 Update firmware. (See page 5-1)****4 Retrieve the data backed up in the USB memory B.****5 Install from HyPAS application(FMU), application screen.**

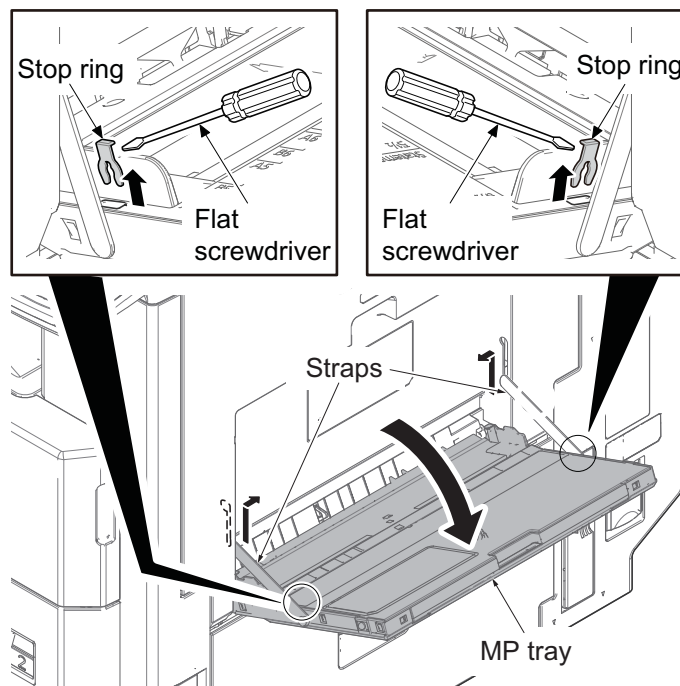
- Check the kind of HyPAS application which is displayed in the application screen before replacing and reinstall.

**(6-2) Detaching and attaching the MP tray**

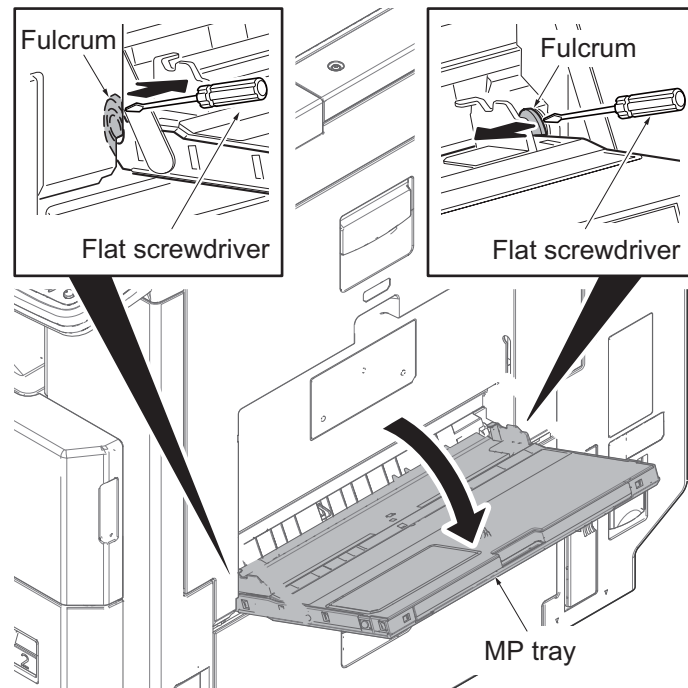
- 1 Open the right cover 1.
- 2 Remove the MP wire cover and then remove the connector.
- 3 Close the right cover 1.



- 4 Open the MP tray.
- 5 Remove two stop rings by using the flat-bladed screwdriver.
- 6 Pull two straps upwards and remove them.

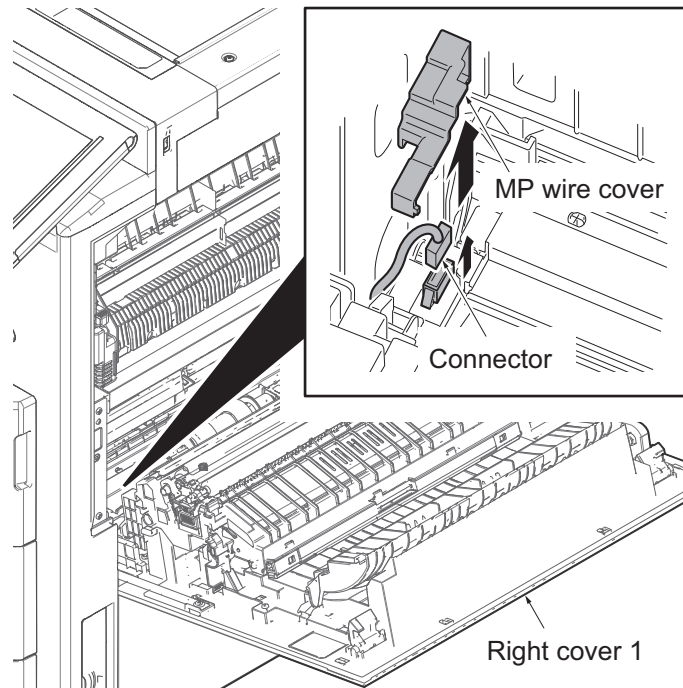


- 7 Release two fulcrums of the MP tray by using a flat screwdriver.
- 8 Remove the MP tray.

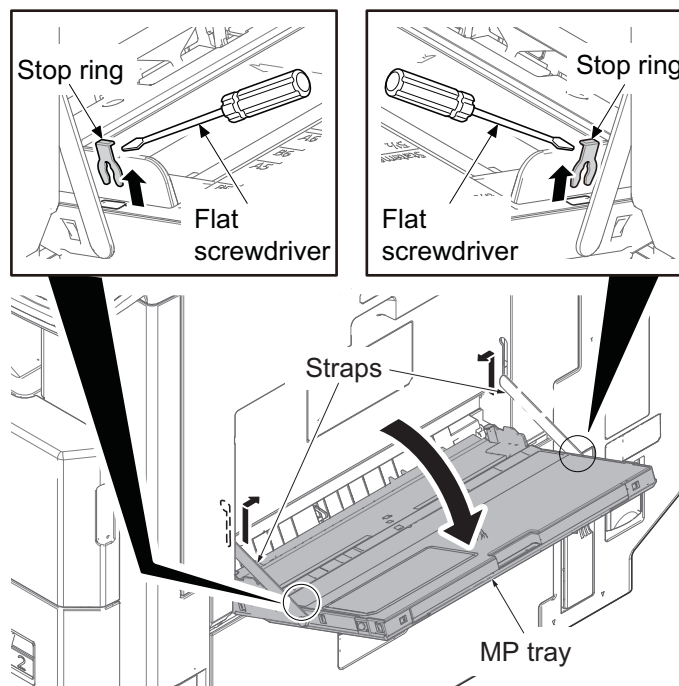


**(6-3) Detaching and reattaching the conveying unit**

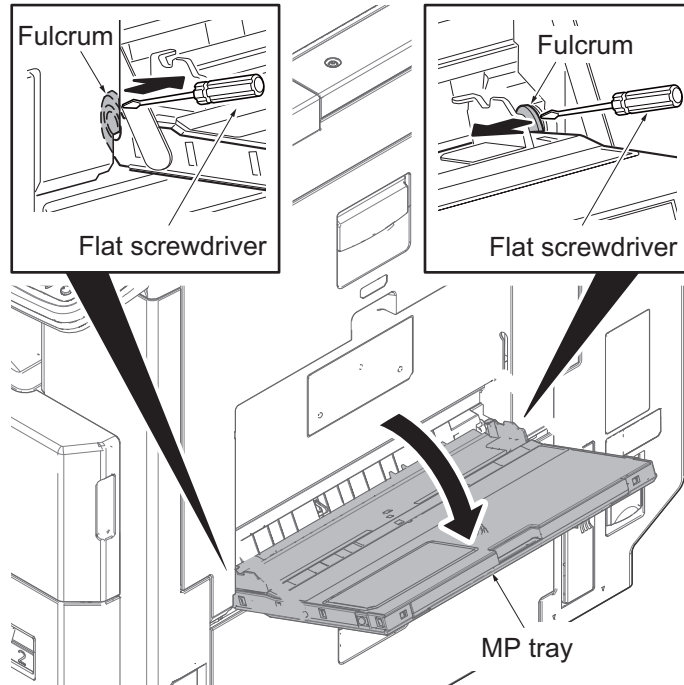
- 1 Open the right cover 1.
- 2 Remove the MP wire cover and then remove the connector.
- 3 Close the right cover 1.



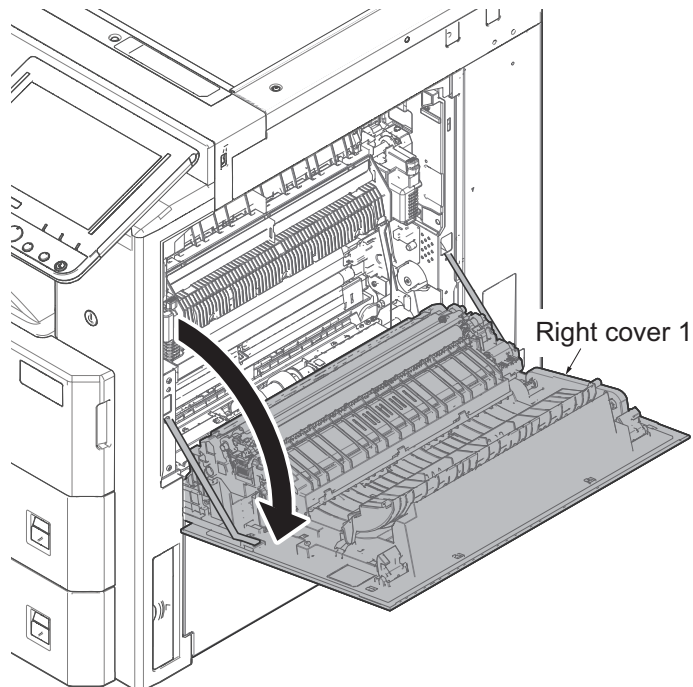
- 4 Open the MP tray.
- 5 Remove two stop rings by using the flat-bladed screwdriver.
- 6 Pull two straps upwards and remove them.



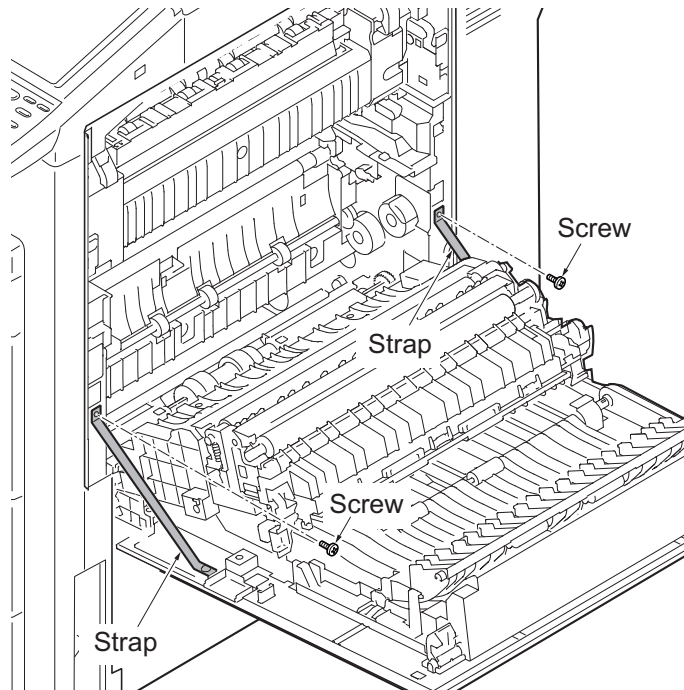
- 7 Release two fulcrums of the MP tray by using a flat screwdriver.
- 8 Remove the MP tray.



- 9 Open the right cover 1.



10 Remove two screws and then remove two straps.

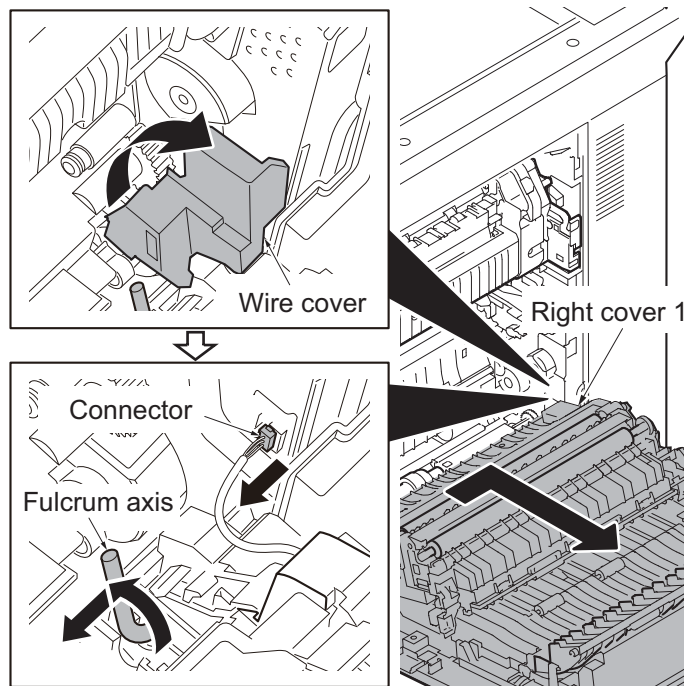


11 Rotate the wire cover.

12 Remove the connector.

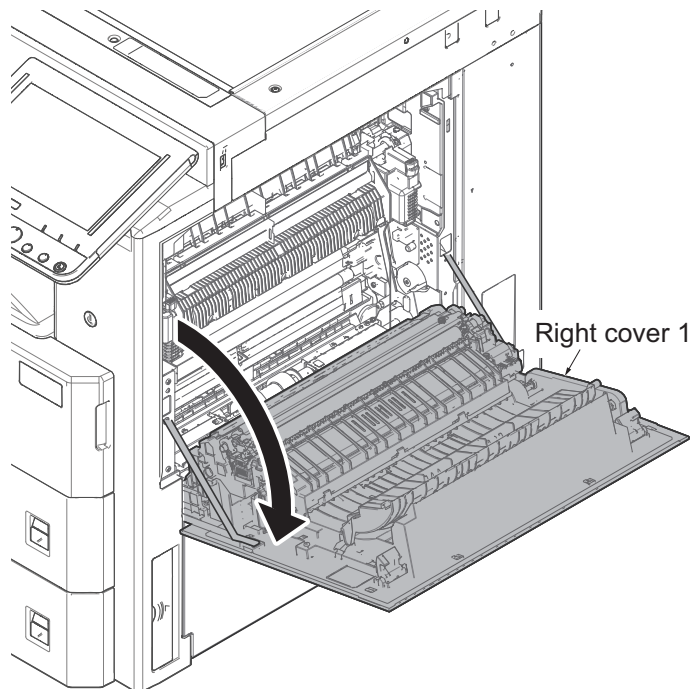
13 Rotate the fulcrum axis and slide it forward.

14 Pull the right cover 1 backward and then remove it.

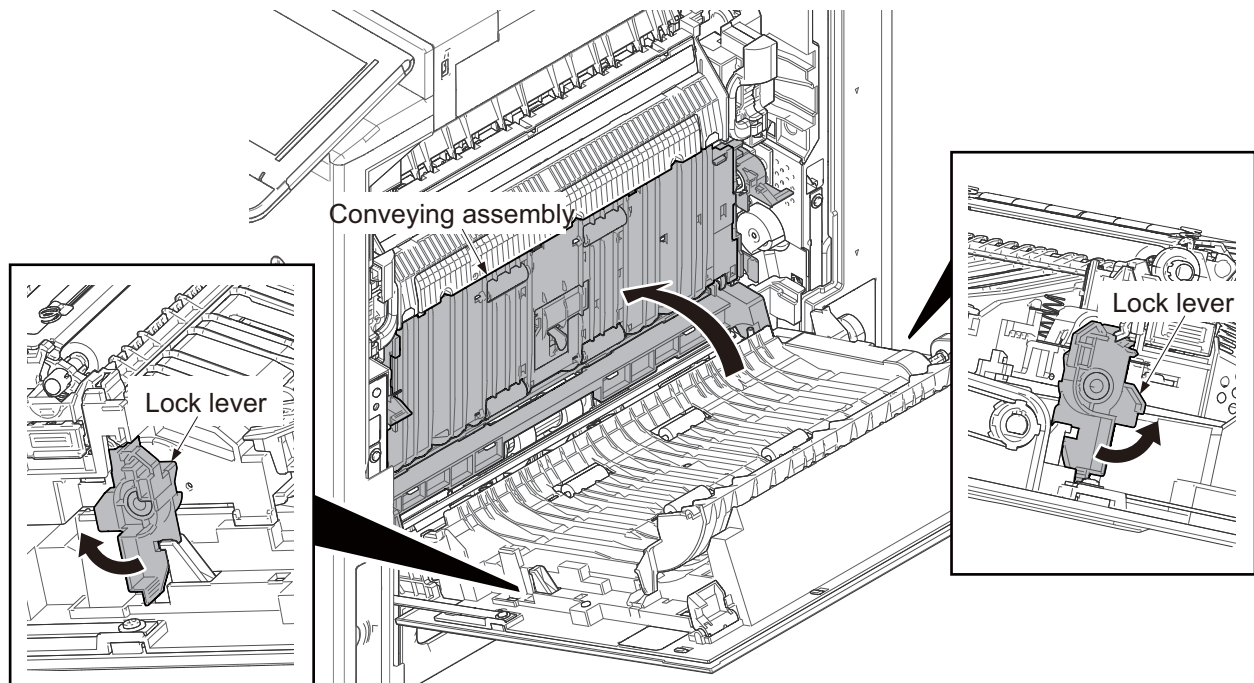


**(6-4) Detaching and reattaching the conveying fan motor.**

- 1 Open the right cover 1.

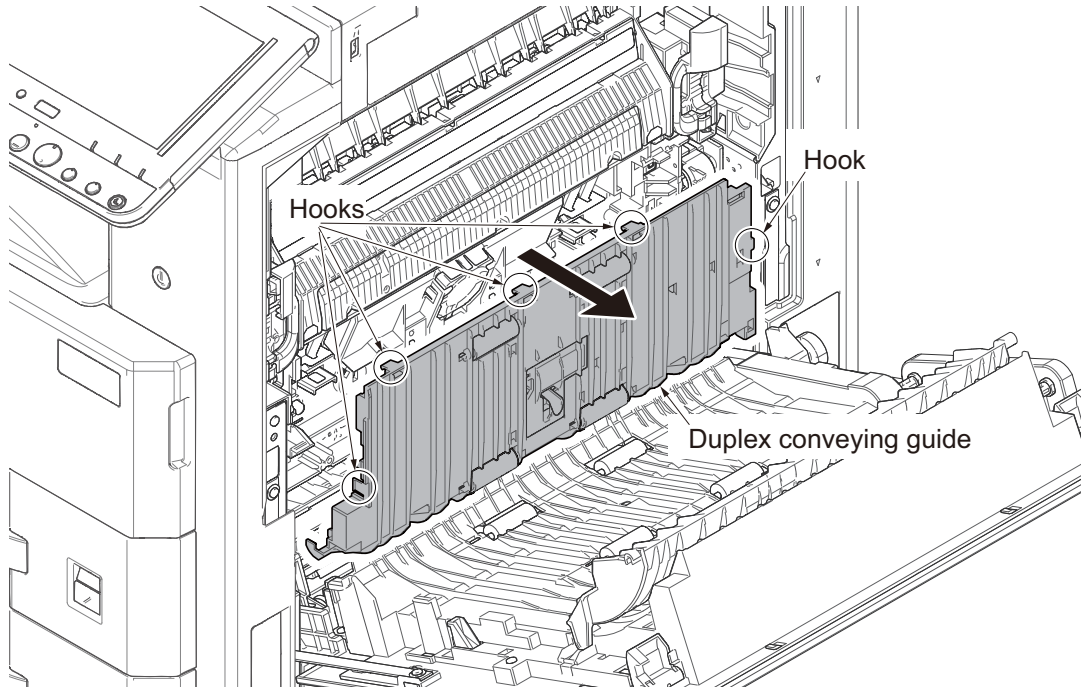


- 2 Release the front and rear lock levers and close the conveying assembly.

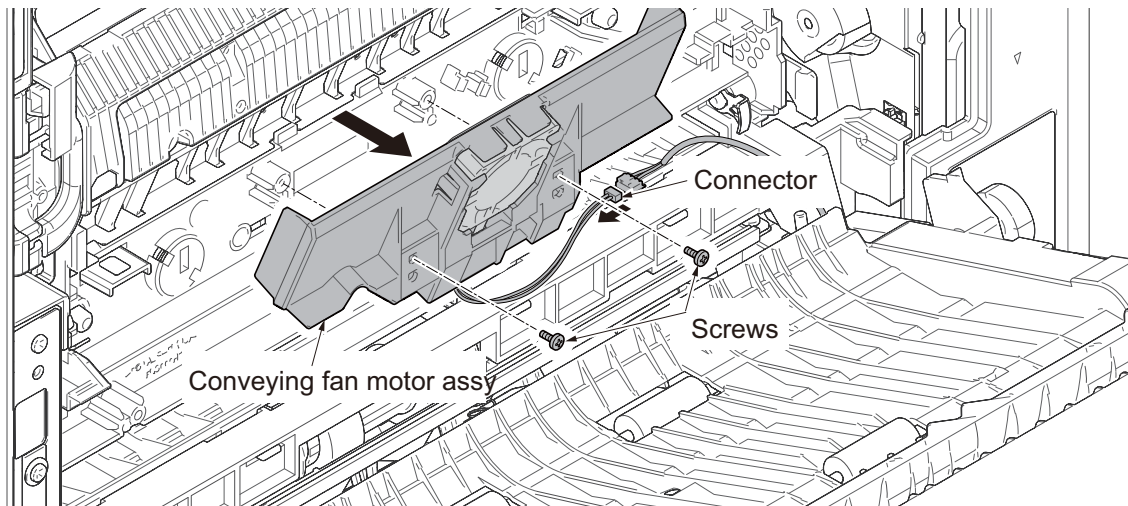




- 3 Release five hooks and detach the duplex conveying guide.

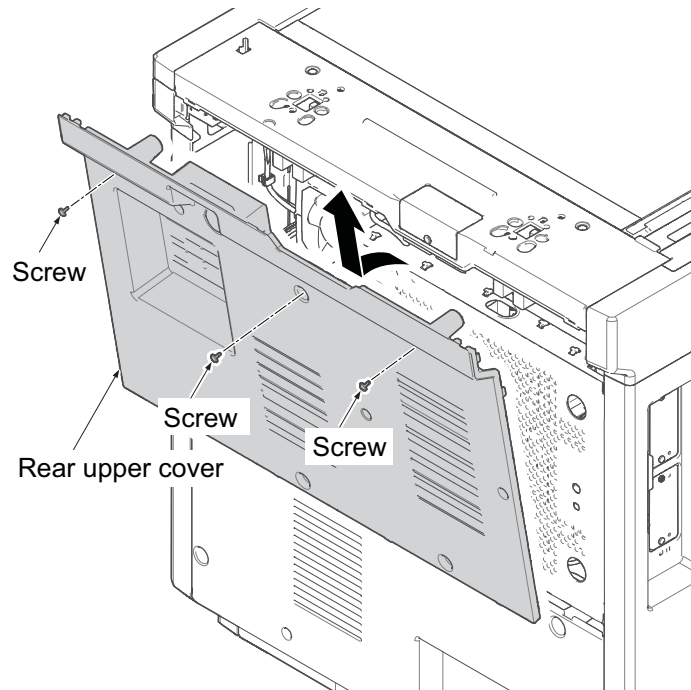


- 4 Disconnect the connector of the conveying fan motor.
- 5 Detach two screws and then detach the conveying fan motor assy.

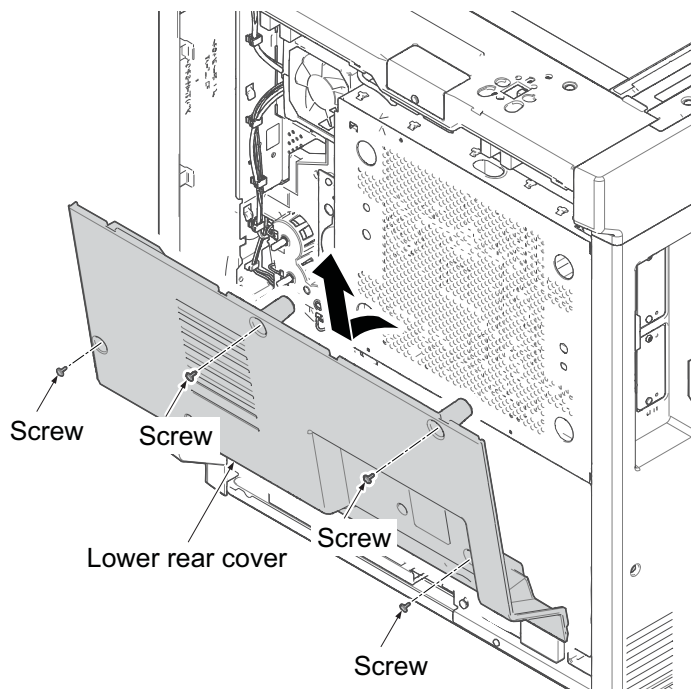


### (6-5) Detaching and attaching the LSU fan motor

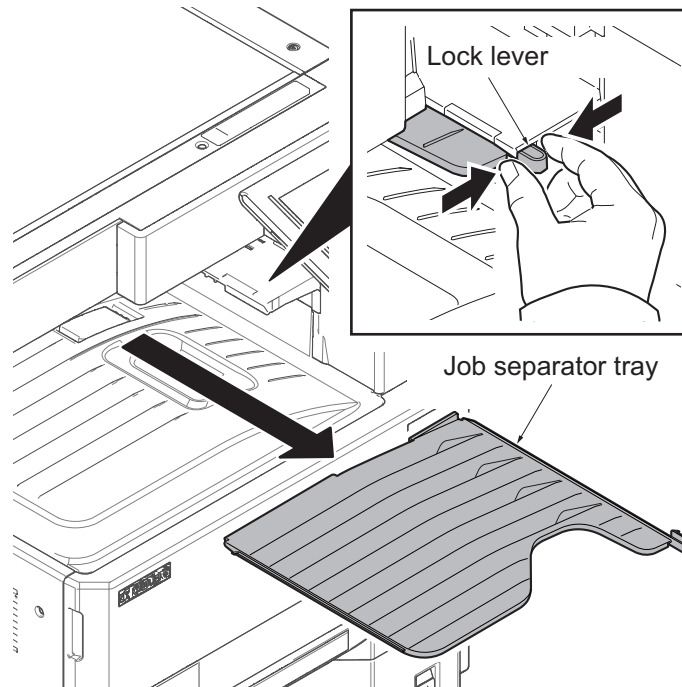
- 1 Detach three screws.
- 2 Open the top part of the rear upper cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



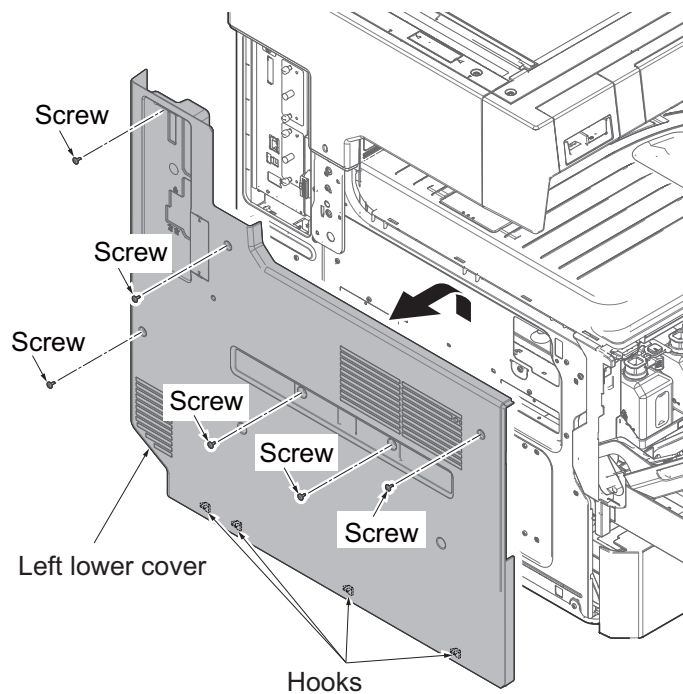
- 3 Detach four screws.
- 4 Open the top part of the rear lower cover, remove in the direction of the arrow.



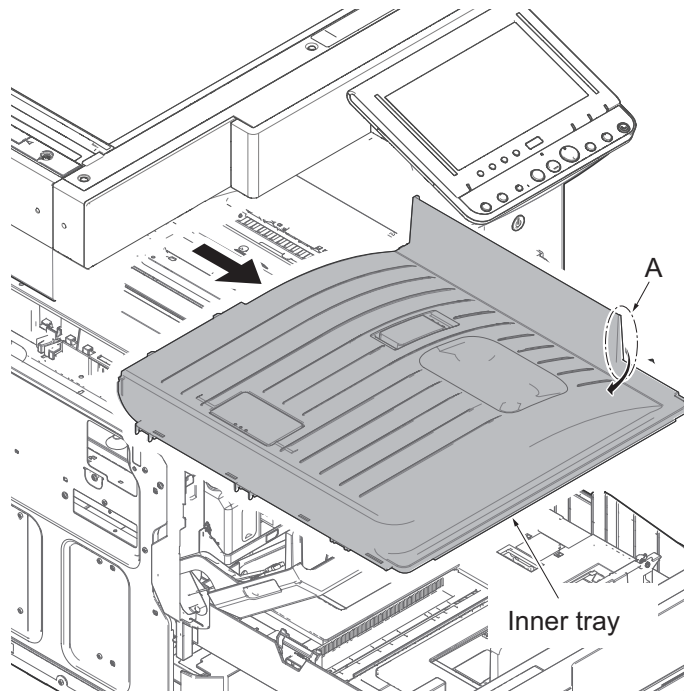
- 5 Release the lock lever and then remove the job separator tray.



- 6 Remove the cassette.
- 7 Open the front cover.
- 8 Detach six screws.
- 9 Pull upwards and then release four hooks.
- 10 Remove the left lower cover.



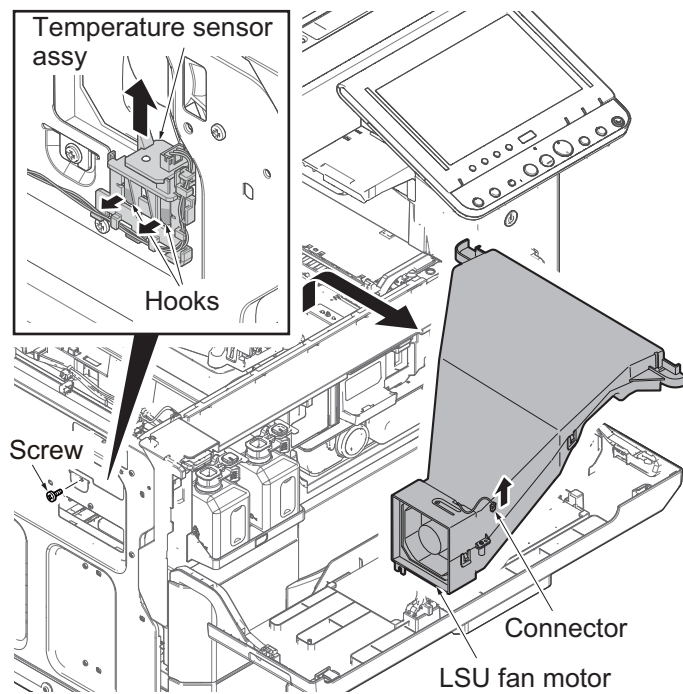
- 11 While pulling the A portion in the direction of the arrow, remove the inner tray.



- 12 Release two hooks and remove the temperature sensor assy.

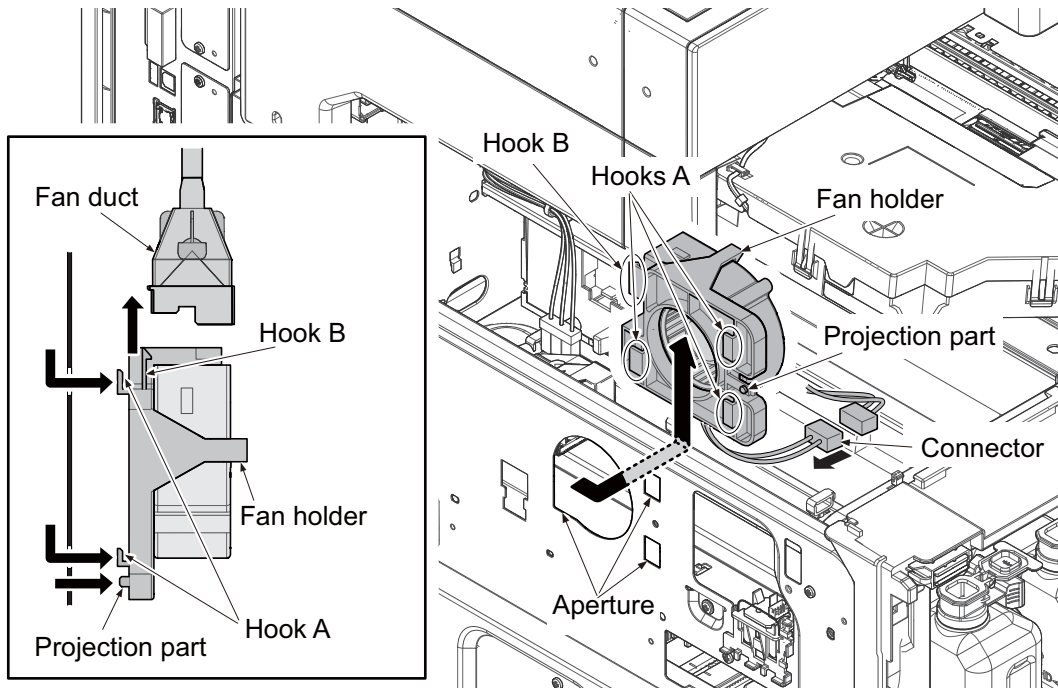
- 13 Remove the connector of LSU fan motor.

- 14 Detach the screw and then remove the LSU fan motor.



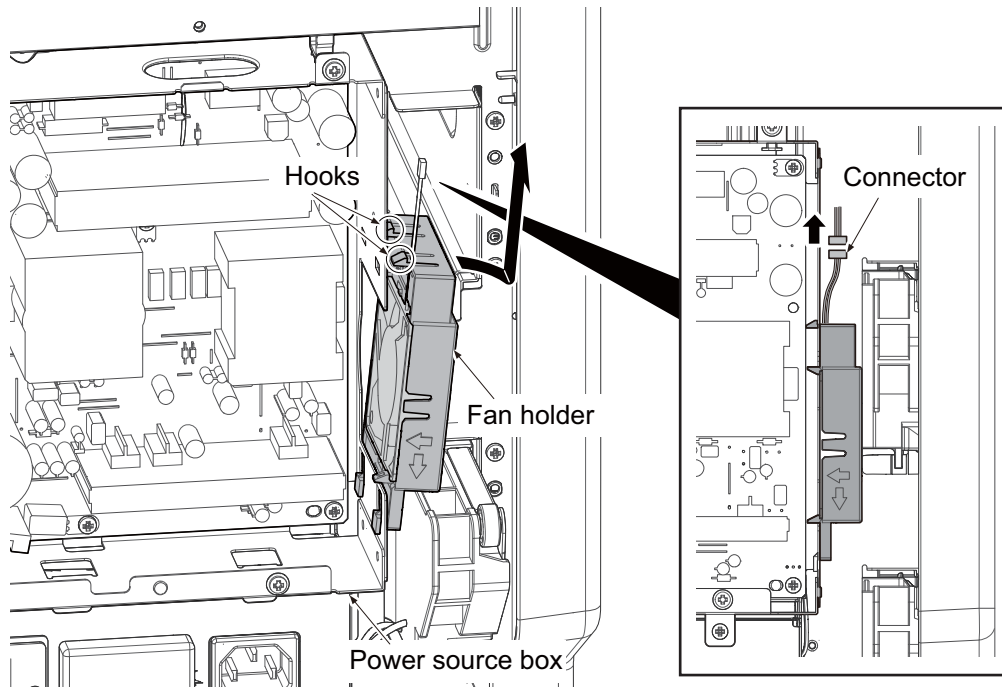
**(6-6) Detaching and attaching the developer fan motor**

- 1 Remove the inner tray and then the LSU fan motor.
- 2 Remove the connector of the developer fan motor.
- 3 Remove the fan holder by releasing the projection part and three hooks A from the aperture of frame.
- 4 Release the hook B and remove the fan duct.



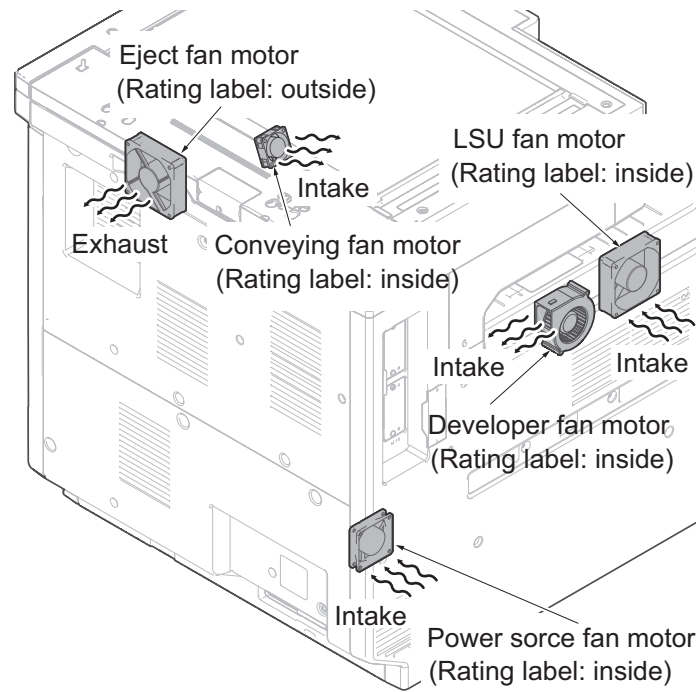
**(6-7) Detaching and attaching the power source fan motor**

- 1 Remove the lower rear cover and then the power source box cover.
- 2 Pull the upper cassette out.
- 3 Remove the connector of fan motor.
- 4 Release two hooks of fan holder from the power source box.
- 5 Remove the fan holder in the direction of the arrow.



## (7) Direction of installing the principal fan motors

When detaching or reattaching the fan motor, take careful of the installing direction (intake or exhaust).



## 5 Firmware

### 5 - 1 Firmware update

Execute the following to update the firmware below.

- The processing time is reduced with simultaneous processing by group.

#### [GROUP1 UPDATE]

| UPDATE step | Target                 | Master file name | Message |
|-------------|------------------------|------------------|---------|
| 1           | Controller data        | DL_CTRL.2V6      | CTRL    |
| 2           | Panel data             | DL_PANL.2V6      | PANL    |
| 3           | Optional language data | DL_OPT.2V6       | OPT     |
| 4           | Dictionary data        | DL_DIC.2ND       | DIC     |
| 5           | Browser data           | DL_BRWS.2ND      | BRWS    |
| 6           | OCR dictionary data    | DL_OCR.2R6       | OCR     |

#### [GROUP2 UPDATE]

| UPDATE step | Target         | Master file name | Message |
|-------------|----------------|------------------|---------|
| 1           | Slot 1 FAX PWB | DL_FAX.3R2       | FAX1    |
| 2           | Slot 2 FAX PWB |                  | FAX2    |

#### [GROUP3 UPDATE]

| UPDATE step | Target          | Master file name | Message  |
|-------------|-----------------|------------------|----------|
| 1           | MAIL BOX        | DL_03N0.2ND      | MAIL-BOX |
| 2           | PUNCH UNIT      | DL_03NK.2RH      | P-UNIT   |
| 3           | 1000-sheets DF  | DL_03RW.2ND      | 1000DF   |
| 4           | 3000-sheetsDF   | DL_03NB.2RH      | 3-4000DF |
| 5           | 500-sheets×2 PF | DL_03N4.2RH      | 500X2PF1 |
| 6           | 3000-sheets PF  | DL_03PC.2RH      | 3000PF1  |
| 7           | Engine PWB      | DL_ENGN.2V6      | ENGN     |

#### [GROUP4 UPDATE]

| UPDATE step | Target                       | Master file name | Message |
|-------------|------------------------------|------------------|---------|
| 1           | DP(inversion)                | DL_03R7.2ND      | DP-REV  |
| 2           | DP(CIS)                      | DL_03R8.2ND      | DP-CIS  |
| 3           | DP(inversion: bargain price) | DL_03RJ.2ND      | DP-LOW  |
| 4           | Scanner                      | DL_SCAN.2RH      | SCAN    |

#### [GROUP5 UPDATE]

| UPDATE step | Target    | Master file name | Message |
|-------------|-----------|------------------|---------|
| 1           | Panel PWB | DL_SPNL.2ND      | SPNL    |



**Verify the signature at firmware update**

Verify the signature of the update file to prevent the firmware update with illegally falsified data.

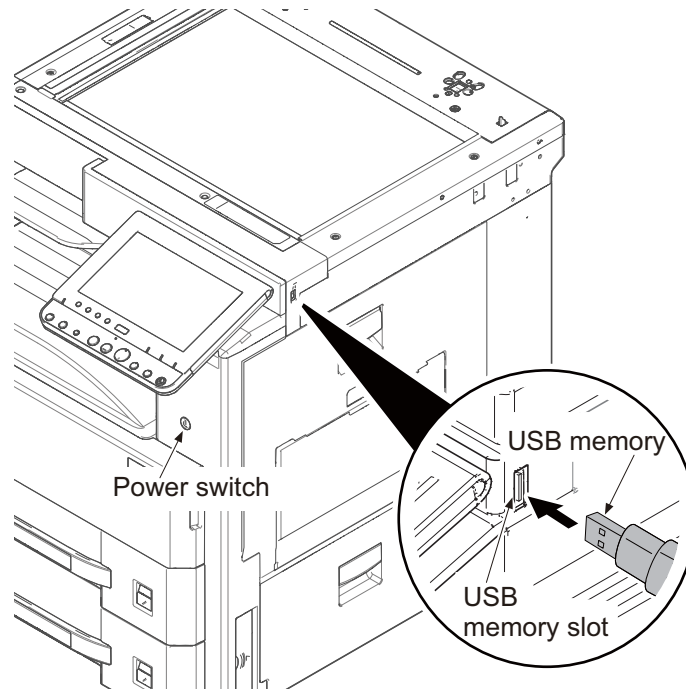
**File names of the signature and firmware certificate**

| Target                 | Signature file name | Firmware certificate file name |
|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| Controller data        | 2V6_CTRL_sign.bin   | 2V6_CTRL_cert.pem              |
| Panel data             | 2V6_PANL_sign.bin   | 2V6_PANL_cert.pem              |
| Optional language data | 2V6_OPT_sign.bin    | 2V6_OPT_cert.pem               |
| Dictionary data        | 2ND_DIC_sign.bin    | 2ND_DIC_cert.pem               |
| Browser data           | 2ND_BRWS_sign.bin   | 2ND_BRWS_cert.pem              |
| OCR dictionary data    | 2R6_OCR_sign.bin    | 2R6_OCR_cert.pem               |
| FAX PWB                | 3R2_FAX_sign.bin    | 3R2_FAX_cert.pem               |
| PUNCH UNIT             | 2RH_03NK_sign.bin   | 2RH_03NK_cert.pem              |
| MAIL BOX               | 2ND_03N0_sign.bin   | 2ND_03N0_cert.pem              |
| 3000-sheets DF         | 2RH_03NB_sign.bin   | 2RH_03NB_cert.pem              |
| 1000-sheets DF         | 2ND_03RW_sign.bin   | 2ND_03RW_cert.pem              |
| 3000-sheets PF         | 2RH_03PC_sign.bin   | 2RH_03PG_cert.pem              |
| 500-sheets×2 PF        | 2RH_03N4_sign.bin   | 2RH_03N4_cert.pem              |
| Engine PWB             | 2V6_ENGN_sign.bin   | 2V6_ENGN_cert.pem              |
| DP                     | 2ND_03R7_sign.bin   | 2ND_03R7_cert.pem              |
|                        | 2ND_03R8_sign.bin   | 2ND_03R8_cert.pem              |
|                        | 2ND_03RJ_sign.bin   | 2ND_03RJ_cert.pem              |
| Scanner PWB            | 2RH_SCAN_sign.bin   | 2RH_SCAN_cert.pem              |
| Panel PWB              | 2ND_SPNL_sign.bin   | 2ND_SPNL_cert.pem              |

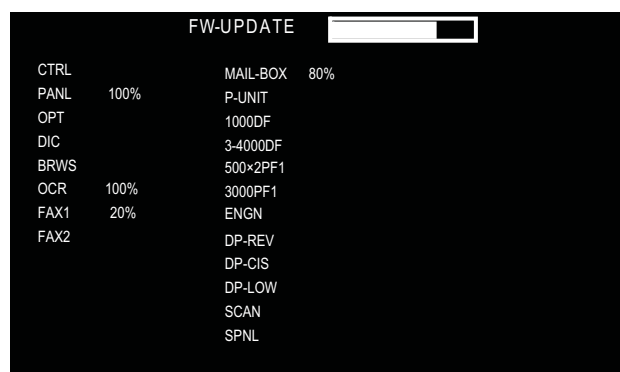
### Preparations

Unzip the file containing the downloaded firmware and then copy the firmware and high-speed master file (skip files: ES\_SKIP.ON) in [FWUP\_02V6] folder of the root folder of the USB memory.

- If the high-speed master file exists, the same version firmware update is skipped.
- 1 After turning the power switch on and the screen is properly displayed, turn the power switch off.
  - 2 Insert the USB memory with the firmware into the USB memory slot.
  - 3 Turn the power switch on.



- 4 [FW-UPDATE] and the progress indicator is displayed.
- Several kinds of firmware updates are processed simultaneously.



- 5 "Completed" is displayed when the firmware update is completed.
- 6 Check if the new firmware versions are displayed.

```

FW-UPDATE      Completed
CTRL  2RH_2000.001.03  MAIL-BOX  No Change
PANL   No Change      P-UNIT    No Change
OPT    No Change      1000DF   No Change
DIC    No Change      3-400DF  No Change
BRWS   No Change      500×2PF1 No Change
OCR    No Change      3000PF1  No Change
FAX1   -----        ENGN     2RH_1000.001.005*
FAX2   -----        DP-REV   No Change
                                   DP-CIS   No Change
                                   DP-LOW   No Change
                                   SCAN     No Change
                                   SPNL     No Change
    
```

- When there is no corresponding master file, "No Change" is displayed.  
\* is displayed after the firmware version update that has been skipped.
- -----is displayed when the FAX PWB, the option equipment, etc. is not installed.

**For the case of an error**

When an error occurs during the firmware upgrade, the process is immediately interrupted and the error code and error message are indicated.

```

FW-UPDATE      Error
CTRL  2RH_2000.001.03  MAIL-BOX  No Change
PANL   No Change      P-UNIT    No Change
OPT    No Change      1000DF   No Change
DIC    No Change      3-400DF  No Change
BRWS   No Change      500×2PF1 No Change
OCR    No Change      3000PF1  No Change
FAX1   -----        ENGN     Error 0801
FAX2   -----        DP-REV   No Change
                                   DP-CIS   No Change
                                   DP-LOW   No Change
                                   SCAN     No Change
                                   SPNL     No Change
    
```

| Error code | Error content                       | Error code | Error content   |
|------------|-------------------------------------|------------|---|
| 0000       | Other                               | S000       | Other signature verification error *1                                     |
| 0100       | No Master file                      | S001       | Signature verification file is inadequate                                 |
| 0200       | Version mismatch of the master file | N001       | Network connection failed. *2<br>(There is no upgrade target interrupted) |
| 03xx       | No Download File (No.xx)            |            |   |
| 04xx       | File (No.xx) Checksum mismatch      | N002       | Network connection failed. *3<br>(There is an upgrade target interrupted) |
| 05xx       | File (No.xx) Preparation failure    |            |   |
| 06xx       | File (No.xx) Oversize               |            |   |
| 08xx       | File (No.xx) Writing failure        |            |   |

\*1: Including the expired FW certificate

\*2: Automatically restarted for the normal start-up since the normal start-up is available next time.

\*3: Transferred to the USB upgrade mode instead of the automatic restart since the normal start-up may not be available next time.

**Indication of the signature verification result**

| Official signature verification file  | Result indication |
|---|-------------------|
| Both certificate and signature files exist and verification is successful.          | Version number    |
| Both certificate and signature files exist but verification is unsuccessful.        | S000              |
| Neither certificate nor signature files exist.<br>Or either of them does not exist. | S001              |

- 1 Unplug the power cord and disconnect the USB memory.
- 2 Plug in the power cord and turn the power switch (a) on.
- 3 Check that the "Home" screen is displayed and then turn the power switch (a) off.

 **Important**

Never turn the power switch (a) off or disconnect the USB memory (b) during the firmware update.

**Safe-Update**

When the firmware update was interrupted by power shut-off or disconnecting the USB memory during the firmware update, the firmware update is retried at the next power-on.

Turn the main power on again while the USB memory is installed.

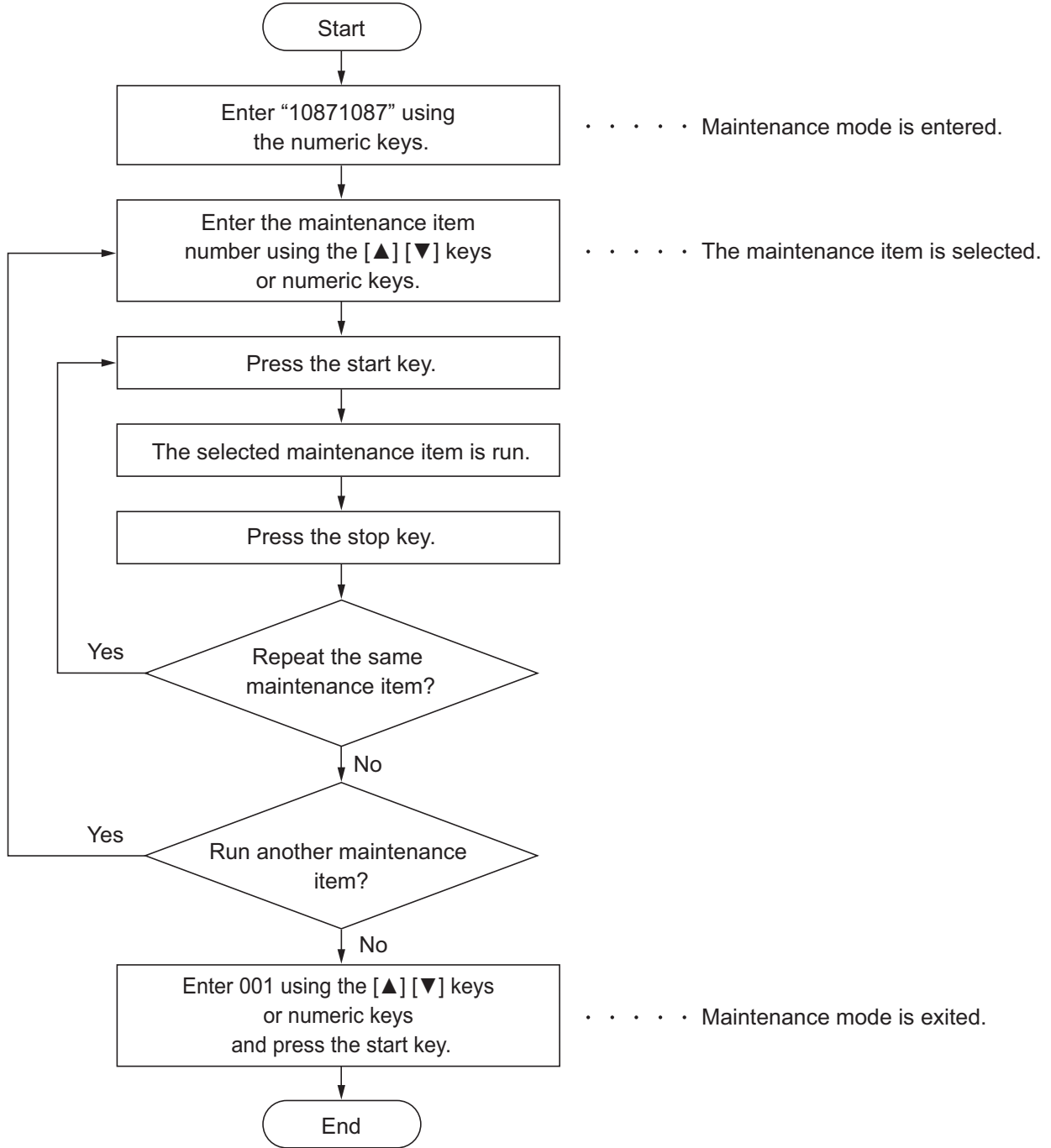
- The firmware update that was already completed before power shut-down is skipped.

## 6 Maintenance mode

### 6 - 1 Maintenance mode

The machine is equipped with a maintenance function which can be used to maintain and service the machine.

#### (1) Executing the maintenance mode



## (2) Maintenance modes list

| Section                                     | Maintenance item                                       | Outline   |
|---|--|---|
| General                                     | U000 Output Maintenance Report                         | Printing the reports and exporting them to a USB memory                     |
|   | U001 Exit Maintenance Mode                             | Exiting from the maintenance mode   |
|   | U002 Set Factory Default                               | Initializing to the factory-default setting                                 |
|   | U003 Set Telephone Number for Service Call             | Sets the telephone number of the service person.                            |
|   | U004 Machine Number                                    | Display of the machine serial number and setting                            |
|   | U010 Set Maintenance Mode ID                           | Setting the maintenance mode ID   |
|   | U018 Check Firmware Checksum                           | Check the firmware falsification.   |
|   | U019 Firmware Version                                  | Displays the firmware version of the PWB                                    |
| Initialization                              | U021 Initialize Memory                                 | Initializing the backup RAM   |
|   | U024 Format HDD  | Formats/configures the HDD  |
|   | U025 Firmware update (S)                               | Updates the firmware  |
|   | U026 Pulling Backup Data                               | Retrieve the backup data  |
| Drive<br>Paper feed<br>Conveying<br>Cooling | U030 Motor operation check                             | Drive the drive motor   |
|   | U031 Check the conveying switch                        | Check the conveying switch On/Off   |
|   | U032 Clutch operation check                            | Check the paper conveying clutch operation                                  |
|   | U033 Solenoid operation check                          | Drive the paper conveying and toner supply solenoids                        |
|   | U034 Paper timing data adjustment                      | Adjusting the leading edge timing and the center line                       |
|   | U035 Folio size setting                                | Sets the Folio paper length and width.                                      |
|   | U037 Fan motor operation check                         | Drive each fan motor.   |
|   | U051 Registration paper loop amount adjustment         | Adjusts the paper loop amount between the rollers                           |
| Optical                                     | U053 Adjusting the motor speed                         | Sets each motor's speed correction  |
|   | U061 Lamp lighting check                               | Turns the exposure lamp on  |
|   | U063 Shading position adjustment                       | Changes the scanner shading position  |
|   | U065 Adjusting the magnification for table scanning    | Adjusting the magnification for table scanning                              |
|   | U066 Adjusting the table scanning timing               | Adjusting the leading edge timing for table scanning                        |
|   | U067 Adjusting the table scanning center line          | Adjusting the center line for table scanning                                |
|   | U068 DP scanning position adjustment                   | Adjusting the starting position for DP scanning                             |
|   | U070 DP magnification adjustment                       | Adjusting the magnification for DP scanning                                 |
|   | U071 Adjusting the DP leading edge Timing              | Adjusting the DP scanning timing  |
|   | U072 Adjusting the DP original center                  | Adjusting the center line for DP scanning                                   |
|   | U073 Scanner motor operation check                     | Move the scanner in the set condition                                       |
|   | U074 Adjusting the DP input characteristics            | Sets the DP image scanning density  |
|   | U087 Setting the DP scanning position change operation | Change the scanning position as the corrective measures for the black lines |
|   | U089 MIP-PG pattern output                             | Output MIP-PG pattern   |
| High voltage system                         | U091 White lines correction setting                    | Sets the white lines detection threshold                                    |
|   | U099 Original size detection setting                   | Sets the original size detection check and detection threshold              |
|   | U100 Main high voltage adjustment                      | Adjust the drum surface potential   |
|   | U101 Primary transfer voltage adjustment               | Sets high voltage except the main high voltage and outputs                  |
|   | U108 Separation Shift bias adjustment                  | Adjust ON/OFF timing of separation shift bias.                              |
|   | U110 Drum counter                                      | Displays/sets the drum counter  |
|   | U111 Drum drive time.                                  | Displays the drum drive time.   |
|   | U117 Drum unit number                                  | Displays the drum number  |
|   | U118 Drum unit history                                 | Displays the drum history   |
| U120 Drum drive distance counter            | Display the drum drive distance counter.               |   |
| U127 Clearing the transfer count            | Displaying the counts                                  |   |

| Section                               | Maintenance item                            | Outline  |
|---------------------------------------|---|--|
| Developer system                      | U130 Developer agent initial setting        | Installs initial toner in the developer unit   |
|                                       | U136 Toner level detection setting          | Sets the number of pages printable at toner near end   |
|                                       | U139 Temperature, humidity                  | Displays the machine inside and outside humidity   |
|                                       | U140 Developer bias adjustment              | Adjust the developer bias values.  |
|                                       | U147 Setting the toner applying mode        | Sets the overcharge toner removal mode   |
|                                       | U148 Drum refresh mode setting              | Setting auto drum refresh  |
|                                       | U150 Check Toner Sensor Operation           | Displays the ON/OFF status of each switch and sensor in related toner.                       |
|                                       | U157 Developer drive time                   | Displays/sets the developer drive time   |
|                                       | U158 Developer counter                      | Displays/sets the developer counter  |
| Fuser                                 | U161 Fuser temperature adjustment           | Sets the fuser control temperature   |
|                                       | U167 Clearing the fuser count               | Displaying/clearing the counts   |
|                                       | U198 Set Fuser Phase Control                | Switch the fuser phase control.  |
|                                       | U199 Fuser temperature                      | Monitor the fuser temperature  |
| Operation section / Support equipment | U200 All LEDs lighting                      | Light all the LEDs on the operation panel  |
|                                       | U201 Initializing the touch panel           | Correct the X and Y axis position of the touch panel   |
|                                       | U203 Check DP operation                     | Checking the DP paper conveying operation with the DP alone                                  |
|                                       | U204 Key card/key counter setting           | Key card/key counter connection setting  |
|                                       | U206 Sets the coin vendor                   | Sets the coin vendor   |
|                                       | U207 Operation key check                    | Check the operation panel key operation  |
|                                       | U221 USB host lock function setting         | Sets USB Host lock function ON/OFF   |
|                                       | U222 Setting the IC card type               | Sets the ID card type  |
|                                       | U223 Operation panel lock                   | Set On/Off of the operation unit lock  |
|                                       | U224 Setting Original Panel Display         | Sets the opening screen  |
|                                       | U230 Optional device serial number          | Displays the optional device serial number   |
|                                       | U234 Setting destination for punch          | Set the punch destination  |
|                                       | U237 Finisher eject volume limit            | Sets the main tray stack capacity  |
|                                       | U240 Finisher operation check               | Checks the drive operation   |
|                                       | U241 Finisher switch check                  | Check the switch operation   |
|                                       | U243 Checking the DP motor                  | Drive the DP motor   |
|                                       | U244 DP switch check                        | Check the DP sensor  |
|                                       | U245 Checking the message                   | Check message  |
|                                       | U246 Finisher adjustment                    | Sets the finisher adjustment value   |
| U247 Paper feed operation check       | Drives the PF motor and clutch              |  |
| Mode Setting                          | U250 Set Maintenance Counter Pre-set        | Changes the preset value   |
|                                       | U251 Clearing the maintenance counter       | Displaying/clearing/changing the counter value   |
|                                       | U252 Destination                            | Sets the machine operation and indication depending on the specification of each destination |
|                                       | U253 Switching the double/single counts     | Sets the counter by color mode   |
|                                       | U260 Switching the timing for copy counting | Setting the count-up timing  |
|                                       | U265 Setting by destination                 | Sets the OEM code  |
|                                       | U278 Delivery date setting                  | Register Delivery Date   |
|                                       | U285 Set Service Status Page                | Setting the print coverage report output   |
|                                       | U286 Optional language setting              | Add/delete/change the optional language  |
|                                       | U287 Automatic recovery function            | Sets whether to automatically recover after error  |
|                                       | U326 Black line cleaning indication         | Switch the black line cleaning guidance indication   |
|                                       | U327 Cassette heater control setting        | Selects the cassette heater control setting  |

| Section                         | Maintenance item  | Outline  |
|---------------------------------|---|--|
| Mode Setting                    | U332 Adjusting the black coverage coefficient                               | Setting the coefficient of the custom size   |
|                                 | U340 Setting the applied mode   | Sets the memory allocation   |
|                                 | U341 Printer cassette setting   | Sets the cassette to printer output only   |
|                                 | U343 Duplex priority mode   | Switches the duplex printing priority mode   |
|                                 | U345 Setting the value for maintenance due indication                       | Setting the maintenance timing display   |
|                                 | U346 Selecting Sleep Mode   | Setting the BAM related sleep mode   |
| Image processing                | U402 Adjusting the printing margins   | Adjusts the margin for writing images  |
|                                 | U403 Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the contact glass        | Adjusts the margin for scanning originals  |
|                                 | U404 Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the document processor | Adjusts the margin for scanning originals  |
|                                 | U407 Adjusting the writing timing (Reversal)                                | Adjusting the writing timing in rotated 180 degrees  |
|                                 | U410 Adjusting the halftone automatically                                   | Acquiring the data for the automatic halftone adjustment and the ID correction                                   |
|                                 | U411 Scanner auto adjustment  | Adjusting the scanner and DP automatically   |
|                                 | U415 Adjusting the print position automatically                             | Execute the automatic adjustment of the timing   |
|                                 | U425 Set Target   | Inputs the Lab value printed on an adjustment original   |
|                                 | U470 Setting the JPEG compression rate                                      | Sets the JPEG compression rate   |
|                                 | U485 Image process mode setting   | Sets the image processing  |
|                                 | U520 TDRS setting   | Checking/setting the TDRS  |
| FAX                             | U600 Initialize: All Data   | Initializes all data and image memory.   |
|                                 | U601 Initialize: Keep data  | Initializing the software switches of other than the machine data  |
|                                 | U603 User data 1  | Makes user settings to enable the use as a FAX   |
|                                 | U604 User data 2  | Makes user settings to enable the use as a FAX   |
|                                 | U605 Data clear   | Initializing the FAX communication data  |
|                                 | U610 System 1   | Set the number of lines to be ignored when receiving a FAX at 100% magnification and in the auto reduction mode. |
|                                 | U611 System 2   | Number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction.  |
|                                 | U612 System 3   | Setting regarding the FAX communication operation  |
|                                 | U615 System 6   | Sets the size to print at FAX reception and received image size  |
|                                 | U620 FAX system   | Sets the signal detection method for remote switching  |
|                                 | U625 Communication settings   | Sets the auto redialing interval and the number of times of auto redialing                                       |
|                                 | U630 Communication control procedures 1                                     | Setting the FAX communication  |
|                                 | U631 Communication control procedures 2                                     | Sets the FAX communication   |
|                                 | U632 Communication control procedures 3                                     | Setting the FAX communication  |
|                                 | U633 Communication control procedures 4                                     | Setting the FAX communication  |
|                                 | U634 Communication control procedures 5                                     | Set the acceptable error when judging the received TCF signal  |
|                                 | U640 Communication time setting 1   | Setting the detection time by remote switching mode  |
|                                 | U641 Communication time setting 2   | Sets the time-out time for the fax communication   |
|                                 | U650 Modem 1  | Sets the G3 transmission cable equalizer   |
|                                 | U651 Modem 2  | Sets the modem output level  |
| U660 Ring setting               | Setting the NCU (network control unit)                                      |  |
| U670 List output                | Outputting the list of the fax communication data                           |  |
| U671 FAX backup data clear      | Clear the FAX backup data   |  |
| U695 FAX function customization | FAX batch transmission is set up.   |  |



| Section                                 | Maintenance item  | Outline  |
|---|---|--|
| FAX                                     | U698 Setting the maintenance port   | Set the port to apply  |
|   | U699 Software switch: Set   | Sets the software switches individually                        |
| Others                                  | U901 Clearing the counters by paper source                                      | Displays/clears the counters by paper source                   |
|   | U903 Clearing the jam counter   | Displays/clears number of occurrence by jam trigger code       |
|   | U904 Clearing the service call error counter                                    | Displays/clears the service call error and system error counts |
|   | U905 Optional counter   | Displaying the counts  |
|   | U906 Resetting the partial operation  | Resets the partial operation                                   |
|   | U908 Total counter  | Displays the FAX count   |
|   | U910 Black rate data  | Clearing the print coverage data and its period                |
|   | U911 Counter by media type  | Displays/clears the counts by media type                       |
|   | U917 Read/Write Backup Data   | Reading/writing the backup data to a USB memory                |
|   | U920 Billing counter  | Displays the billing count                                     |
|   | U927 Clearing all the billing/life counters                                     | Clearing the billing count and machine life count              |
|   | U928 Machine life counter   | Displays the machine life count                                |
|   | U930 Clear the main charger roller counts                                       | Displaying/setting the counts                                  |
|   | U933 Setting the maintenance mode log   | Sets the maintenance mode log                                  |
|   | U935 Maintenance Relay Board  | Set the disorder mode setting.                                 |
|   | U942 DP loop amount setting   | Adjust the paper loop amount when using the document processor |
|   | U952 Maintenance mode workflow  | Execute the maintenance flow with the WorkFlow data            |
|   | U964 Log check  | Transfer the log files save in the HDD to a USB memory         |
|   | U969 Toner area code  | Displays the toner area code                                   |
|   | U977 Setting the data capture mode  | Stores the data sent to the main unit into a USB memory        |
| U981 Set/Check CBM Alert Data           | Refers and changes the information on CBM (condition based maintenance) in KFS. |  |
| U984 Developer unit number              | Displays the developer unit number  |  |
| U985 Developer unit history             | Displays the developer unit number history                                      |  |
| U989 HDD scan disk                      | Execute the HDD scan disk   |  |
| U990 Clearing the scanner lighting time | Displays the accumulated CIS lighting time                                      |  |
| U991 Scanner counter                    | Displays the scanner count  |  |

### (3) Content of each maintenance mode

#### U000 Output Maintenance Report

##### (Message: Output Maintenance Report)

###### Contents

Prints the list of the current settings of the maintenance items, paper jam and service call error occurrences. Output the event log and service status page.

Also, sends output data to a USB memory.

###### Purpose

Checks the current settings of the maintenance items, paper jam and service call error occurrences.

Before initializing or replacing the backup memory, print the list of the current settings of the maintenance items to reenter the settings after initialization or replacement.

###### Execution

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to output.

| Items          | Output list                          |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| Maintenance    | Maintenance mode setting status list |
| User Status    | Output User Status Page              |
| Service Status | Output Service Status Page           |
| Event          | Output the event log report          |
| Network Status | Output Network Status Page           |
| LLU Report     | Output LLU report                    |
| All            | All reports output                   |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to output the list.

If A4 paper is available, it is output with this size. If A4 paper is unavailable, select the paper source. Output status is displayed.

###### Execution: when sending output data to a USB memory

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Insert a USB memory into the USB memory slot.
- 3 Select the item to send.
- 4 Select [USB(Text)] or [USB(HTML)].

| Items     | Output list                                   |
|-----------|---|
| Print     | A report is printed.                          |
| USB(Text) | Destination: send to USB memory (text format) |
| USB(HTML) | Destination: send to USB memory (HTML format) |

- 5 Press the [Start] key.

The output data is sent to the USB memory.

###### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

Detail of event log

## Event Log

**MFP**  
**TASKalfa 4012i**

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX  
(2) 2017/03/19 15:15

---

(1) Firmware version 2V6\_2000.001.133 2017.02.02

[XXXXXXXXXX] [XXXXXXXXXX] [XXXXXXXXXX]  
(3) (4) (5)

---

(6) Machine No.:Z2C5Y00100

(7) Life Count:100000

---

**(8) Paper Jam Log**

| #  | Count.  | Event Descriptions | Date and Time    |
|----|---------|--------------------|------------------|
| 12 | 5555555 | 0501.01.08.01.00   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 11 | 4444444 | 4002.01.08.01.00   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 10 | 3333333 | 0501.01.08.01.00   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 9  | 2222222 | 4002.01.08.01.00   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 8  | 1111111 | 0501.01.08.01.00   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 7  | 9999999 | 4002.01.08.01.00   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 6  | 8888888 | 0501.01.08.01.00   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 5  | 7777777 | 0501.01.08.01.00   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 4  | 6666666 | 0501.01.08.01.00   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 3  | 5555555 | 0501.01.08.01.00   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 2  | 4444444 | 0501.01.08.01.00   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 1  | 1       | 4002.01.08.01.00   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |

**(10) Maintenance Log**

| # | Count.  | Item. | Data and Time    |
|---|---------|-------|------------------|
| 2 | 4444444 | 02.01 | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 1 | 2222222 | 02.02 | 2014/02/12 17:30 |

|                  |     |     |     |     |
|------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 0501.01.08.01.00 |     |     |     |     |
| (a)              | (b) | (c) | (d) | (e) |

**(9) Service Call Log**

| # | Count.  | Service Code | Data and Time    |
|---|---------|--------------|------------------|
| 8 | 1111111 | 01.00.6000   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 7 | 9999999 | 01.01.2100   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 6 | 8888888 | 01.01.0000   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 5 | 7777777 | 01.00.6000   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 4 | 6666666 | 01.00.2100   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 3 | 5555555 | 01.01.4000   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 2 | 4444444 | 01.00.6000   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 1 | 1       | 01.00.2100   | 2014/02/12 17:30 |

**(11) Unknown toner Log**

| # | Count.  | Serial Number    | Item. | Data and Time    |
|---|---------|------------------|-------|------------------|
| 5 | 1111111 | 0123456789ABCDEF | 01.00 | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 4 | 9999999 | 0123456789ABCDEF | 01.00 | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 3 | 8888888 | 0123456789ABCDEF | 01.00 | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 2 | 7777777 | 0123456789ABCDEF | 01.00 | 2014/02/12 17:30 |
| 1 | 6666666 | 0123456789ABCDEF | 01.00 | 2014/02/12 17:30 |

---

1

# Event Log



MFP

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

TASKalfa 4012i

2017/03/19 15:15

Firmware version 2V6\_2000.001.133 2017.02.02

[XXXXXXXXXX] [XXXXXXXXXX] [XXXXXXXXXX]

Machine No.:Z2C5Y00100

Life Count:100000

## (12) Counter Log

|            |     |            |        |
|------------|-----|------------|--------|
| (f) J0000: | 0   | J4302:     | 0      |
| J0100:     | 1   | J4303:     | 1      |
| J0101:     | 11  | J4304:     | 11     |
| J0104:     | 222 | J4309:     | 2      |
| J0105:     | 1   | J9000:     | 1      |
| J0106:     | 1   | J9004:     | 0      |
| J0107:     | 1   | J9010:     | 1      |
| J0110:     | 1   | J9060:     | 1      |
| J0111:     | 1   | J9061:     | 2      |
| J0211:     | 1   | J9062:     | 1      |
| J0212:     | 1   | J9110:     | 1      |
| J0213:     | 999 | J9120:     | 0      |
| J0501:     | 1   | J9200:     | 1      |
| J0502:     | 1   | J9210:     | 1      |
| J0503:     | 1   | J9220:     | 2      |
| J0504:     | 1   |            |        |
| J0508:     | 1   | (g) C0000: | 0      |
| J0509:     | 1   | C0001:     | 1      |
| J0511:     | 1   | C0002:     | 2      |
| J0512:     | 1   | C0003:     | 3      |
| J0513:     | 1   | C0004:     | 4      |
| J0514:     | 1   | C0005:     | 5      |
| J0518:     | 1   | C0006:     | 6      |
| J0519:     | 1   | C0007:     | 7      |
| J1403:     | 1   | C0008:     | 8      |
| J1404:     | 1   | C0009:     | 9      |
| J1413:     | 1   | C0010:     | 10     |
| J1414:     | 1   | CF245:     | 11( 0) |
| J1604:     | 1   | CF248:     | 12( 0) |
| J1614:     | 1   | CF345:     | 13( 0) |
| J4002:     | 1   | (h) T00:   | 10     |
| J4003:     | 1   | M00:       | 20     |
| J4004:     | 1   | M02:       | 30     |
| J4009:     | 1   |            |        |
| J4012:     | 1   |            |        |
| J4013:     | 1   |            |        |
| J4014:     | 1   |            |        |
| J4019:     | 1   |            |        |
| J4201:     | 1   |            |        |
| J4202:     | 0   |            |        |
| J4203:     | 1   |            |        |
| J4204:     | 1   |            |        |
| J4208:     | 0   |            |        |
| J4209:     | 1   |            |        |
| J4211:     | 11  |            |        |
| J4212:     | 222 |            |        |
| J4213:     | 1   |            |        |
| J4214:     | 2   |            |        |
| J4218:     | 1   |            |        |
| J4219:     | 2   |            |        |
| J4301:     | 1   |            |        |

## Description of event log

| No. | Items  | Contents   |  |                             |
|-----|--|--|--|-----------------------------|
| (1) | System version   |  |  |                             |
| (2) | System date  |  |  |                             |
| (3) | Engine firmware version  |  |  |                             |
| (4) | Engine boot version  |  |  |                             |
| (5) | Operation panel firmware version   |  |  |                             |
| (6) | Machine serial number  |  |  |                             |
| (7) | Paper Jam Log  |  |  |                             |
|     | #  | Count.   | Event Descriptions   | Date and Time               |
|     | Record 1 to 16 of occurrence. If the past paper jam occurrence is less than 16, all of them are indicated. The oldest log is deleted when exceeding 16 events.   | The total page count at the time of a paper jam.   | Log code ( 5 types in hexadecimal)<br><br>(a) Cause of paper jam<br>(b) Paper source<br>(c) Paper size<br>(d) Paper type<br>(e) Paper eject  | Date and time of occurrence |
|     | (a)Detail of cause of paper jam (Hexadecimal)  |  |  |                             |
|     | Refer to "2-2 Paper Misfeed Detection",for the detail of cause of paper jam. (P.7-54)  |  |  |                             |
|     | (b) Detail of paper source (Hexadecimal)   |  |  |                             |
|     | 00: MP tray<br>01: Cassette 1<br>02: Cassette 2 (paper feeder)<br>03: Cassette 3 (paper feeder)<br>04: Cassette 4 (paper feeder)<br>05 to 09: Unused   |  |  |                             |
|     | (c) Detail of paper size (Hexadecimal)   |  |  |                             |
|     | 00: Not specified<br>01: Monarch<br>02: Business<br>03: International DL<br>04: International C5<br>05: Executive<br>06: Letter-R<br>86: Letter-E<br>07: Legal<br>08: A4R<br>88: A4E<br>09: B5R<br>89: B5E<br>0A: A3 | 0B: B4<br>0C: Ledger<br>0D: A5R<br>0E: A6<br>0F: B6<br>10: Commercial #9<br>11: Commercial #6<br>12: ISO B5<br>13: Custom size<br>1E: C4<br>1F: Hagaki<br>20: Oufuku Hagaki<br>21: Oficio II | 22: Special 1<br>23: Special 2<br>24: A3 Wide<br>25: Ledger Wide<br>26: Full bleed paper (12 x 8)<br>27: 8K<br>28: 16K-R<br>A8: 16K-E<br>32: Statement-R<br>B2: Statement-E<br>33: Folio<br>34: Youkei type 2<br>35: Youkei type 4 |                             |

| No.          | Items  | Contents   |  |  |
|--------------|--|--|--|--|
| (7)<br>cont. | Paper Jam Log<br>(d) Detail of paper type (Hexadecimal)  | 01: Plain<br>02: Transparency<br>03: Preprinted<br>04: Labels<br>05: Bond<br>06: Recycled<br>07: Vellum<br>08: Rough<br>09: Letterhead | 0A: Color<br>0B: Prepunched<br>0C: Envelope<br>0D: Cardstock<br>0E: Coated<br>0F: 2nd side<br>10: Media 16<br>11: High quality   | 15: Custom 1<br>16: Custom 2<br>17: Custom 3<br>18: Custom 4<br>19: Custom 5<br>1A: Custom 6<br>1B: Custom 7<br>1C: Custom 8 |
| (8)          | Service Call Log<br>#<br>Remembers 1 to 8 th of occurrence of self diagnostics error.<br>If the occurrence of the previous self-diagnostic error is 8 or less, all of the diagnostics errors are logged. | Count.<br>The total page count at the time of the self diagnostic error.   | Service Code<br>The first two digits (identification)<br>01: Service call / System error<br>02: Unit replacement<br>Next two digits (Auto reboot information)<br>00: Without auto reboot<br>01: Auto reboot execution<br>Last four digits<br>Self diagnostic error code (P.7-64See page )<br>(Example) 01.00.6000<br>01 indicates Self diagnostic error, 00 without auto beboot and 6000 Self diagnostic error code.<br>U287 sets the auto reboot function | Date and Time<br>Date and time of occurrence   |

| No. | Items   | Contents   |  |                             |
|-----|---|--|--|-----------------------------|
| (9) | Maintenance Log   |  |  |                             |
|     | #   | Count.   | item   | Date and Time               |
|     | Remembers 1 to 8 of occurrence of unknown toner detection. If the occurrence of the previous unknown toner detection is less than 8, all of the unknown toner detection are logged. | <p>Total page count at the time of the replacement of the maintenance item.</p> <p>The toner replacement log is triggered by toner empty. This record may contain such a reference as the toner container is inserted twice or a used toner container is inserted.</p> | <p>Maintenance item code (1-byte value to indicate 2 items)</p> <p>First byte (Replacing item)<br/>02: Maintenance kit</p> <p>Second 1 byte (replacement item type)</p> <p>01: MK-7125<br/>MK-7126<br/>MK-7127<br/>MK-7129</p> | Date and time of occurrence |

| No.   | Contents   |  |  |               |
|---|--|--|--|---------------|
| (10)  | Toner Log  |  |  |               |
|   | #  | Count.   | Item. Serial Number  | Date and Time |
| Remembers 1 to 32 of occurrence of unknown toner detection. If the occurrence of the previous unknown toner detection is less than 32, all of the unknown toner detection are logged. | The total page count at the time of the request of toner container replacement.  | log code<br>First 1byte(Replacing item)<br>01: Genuine product<br>02: Non-genuine product<br><br>Next 1byte (type of replacement item)<br>00: Black<br><br>Last 16 digits<br>Displays the serial number of the toner container.  | Date and time of occurrence  |               |
| (11)  | Counter Log  |  |  |               |
|   | (f) Paper jam  | (g) Self diagnostic error  | (h) Replacement for maintenance item   |               |
| Indicates the log counter of paper jams depending on location.<br>Refer to Paper Jam Log.<br><br>All instances including those not having occurred are displayed.                     | Indicates the log counter of self diagnostics errors depending on cause.<br><br>The number of auto reboot is also displayed at the service call/system error.<br><br>(Example) CF245: 4(2)<br>System Error 245 occurred last four times and then executed the auto reboot twice. | Indicates the log counter depending on the maintenance replacing item.<br><br>T: Toner container<br>00: Black<br><br>M: Maintenance kit<br>01: MK-7125<br>MK-7126<br>MK-7127<br>MK-7129<br><br>Example: T00: 1<br>The toner container (Black) has been replaced once.<br><br>The toner replacement log is triggered by toner empty. This record may contain such a reference as the toner container is inserted twice or a used toner container is inserted. | Consist of three log counters of paper jams, self diagnostics errors, and maintenance replacement items. |               |



Detail of service status page

# Service Status Page



MFP  
TASKalfa 4012i

(2) ZKG6400006

(3) 01/08/2017 14:30

(4)(5) [2.1.6] [2V6\_F000.001.008]

(1) Firmware Version 2V6\_Q000.001.146 2017.08.01

(6)(7)(8) [2V6\_1000.001.020] [2V6\_1100.001.001] [2V6\_7000.001.216]

**Controller Information**

**Memory Status**

Standard Size 1.0 GB

Option Slot 0 MB

(9) Total Size 1.0 GB

**Time**

(10) Local Time Zone

GMT Greenwich Mean Time: Dublin, Edinburgh, Lisbon, London

(11) Date and Time 04/08/2016 01:46

(12) Time Server

**Installed Options**

- (13) Document Processor Installed
- (14) Paper Feeder Cassette (500 x 2)
- (15) Hard Disk \*1 Not Installed
- (16) SD Card Not Installed
- (17) Finisher Not Installed
- (18) Mail Box Not Installed
- (19) Card Authentication Kit (B) Installed
- (20) Internet Fax Kit (E) Not Installed
- (21) Data Security Kit (E) Not Installed
- (22) UG-33 Installed
- (23) UG-34 Installed
- (24) USB Keyboard Not Connected
- (25) USB Keyboard Type US-English
- (26) Scan extension Kit (A) Installed

**(27) Print Coverage**

Average (%) / Usage Page(A4/Letter Conversion)

- (28) Total / 0.00
- K: 0.00 / 0.00
- (29) Copy / 0.00
- K: 0.00 / 0.00
- (30) Printer / 0.00
- K: 0.00 / 0.00
- (31) FAX / 0.00
- K: 0.00 / 0.00
- (32) Period ( - 04/08/2016 01:46)
- (33) Last Page (%) 0.00
- (34) Last Job (%) 0.00

**(35) FRPO Status**

- Reserved B0 00
- Default Pattern Switch B8 00
- Page Orientation C1 00
- Default Font Number C5\*10000+C2\*100+C3 00000
- Reserved C6 00
- PCL Font Switch C8 00
- Print density D4 03
- Reserved D6 03
- Host Buffer Size H8 05
- FF Time Out H9 06
- Reserved I5 01
- Reserved I6 00
- Zoom J0 00
- Text wrap mode J7 00
- Horizontal user offset K0+K1/100 0.00
- Vertical user offset K2+K3/100 0.00
- Default KANJI number K4 00
- KANJI code switch K6 00
- Reserved K9 00

|                           |                  |               |
|---------------------------|------------------|---------------|
| KIR Mode                  | N0               | 02            |
| Duplex mode               | N4               | 00            |
| Sleep Timer               | N5               | 120           |
| EcoPrint Mode             | N6               | 00            |
| Reserved                  | N7               | 00            |
| Print Resolution          | N8               | 01            |
| Default Emulation         | P1               | 06            |
| CR/LF Action              | P2/P3            | 1/1           |
| AES Mode                  | P4               | 00            |
| AES Option 1/2            | P7               | 10            |
| Command Recognition       | P9               | 82            |
| Default Paper Output      | R0               | 01            |
| Default Paper Size        | R2               | 00            |
| Reserved                  | R3               | 00            |
| Default Paper Source      | R4               | 01            |
| Override A4/LT            | S4               | 01            |
| Host Buffer Size Rate     | S5               | 01            |
| RAM Disk Size             | S6               | 128           |
| RAM Disk Mode             | S7               | 01            |
| Wide A4                   | T6               | 00            |
| Default Line Spacing      | U0+U1/100        | 6.00          |
| Default Character Spacing | U2+U3/100        | 10.00         |
| Reserved U4 01            |                  |               |
| Country Code/Symbol Set   | U6/U7            | 41/53         |
| Default Pitch             | U8+U9/100        | 10.00         |
| Default Font Height       | V0*100+V1+V2/100 | 12.00         |
| Default Font Name         | V3               | Courier       |
| Default KANJI Font Size   | V4*100+V5+V6/100 | 10.00         |
| Default KANJI Font Name   | V7               | MTHSMINCHO-W3 |
| Courier/LetterGothic      | V9               | 05            |
| MP Tray Paper Type        | X0               | 01            |
| Cassette 1 Paper Type     | X1               | 01            |
| Cassette 2 Paper Type     | X2               | 01            |
| Cassette 3 Paper Type     | X3               | 01            |
| PCL Paper Source          | X9               | 00            |
| Auto Error Clear          | Y0               | 00            |
| Error Clear Timer         | Y1               | 06            |
| Finishing error           | Y3               | 127           |
| Special Type Act Mode     | Y4               | 00            |
| PDF mode                  | Y5               | 00            |
| e-MPS error control       | Y6               | 03            |

**RP Code**

- (36) 0008 01E2 3177
- (37) 0008 027A C873
- (38) FFFF FFFF FFFF
- (39) 0008 01E2 31F5

\*1: Only except KDA of 32 ppm model

# Service Status Page

MFP  
TASKalfa 4012i

Firmware Version 2V6\_Q000.001.146 2017.08.01



ZKG6400006

01/08/2017 14:30

[2.1.6] [2V6\_F000.001.008]

[2V6\_1000.001.020] [2V6\_1100.001.001] [2V6\_7000.001.216]

## Controller Information

### Print Settings

(40) MP Tray Priority Off

### (41) Altitude Adjustment

Status Normal

### (42) System Firmware(Details)

2V6\_Q000.001.146  
2V6\_QA00.001.146  
2V6\_R000.001.146  
2V6\_R100.001.146  
2V6\_R200.001.146  
2V6\_R300.001.146  
2V6\_R400.001.146  
2V6\_R500.001.146  
2V6\_R600.001.146  
2V6\_R700.001.146  
2V6\_R800.001.146  
2V6\_R900.001.146  
2V6\_RB00.001.146  
2V6\_RD00.001.146  
2V6\_S100.001.146

## Engine Information

(43) NVRAM Version \_Cb26630\_Cb26630

(44) FAX Slot1

FAX BOOT Version 2GR\_5000.001.001

FAX APL Version 2GR\_5100.001.001

FAX IPL Version 2GR\_5200.001.001

(45) MAC Address 00:17:C8:16:84:04

(46) DP Counters

Total 0



| No.  | Items  | Contents   |
|------|--|--|
| (1)  | Firmware Version   | -  |
| (2)  | Machine serial number  | -  |
| (3)  | System date  | -  |
| (4)  | API version of the HyPAS application                               | -  |
| (5)  | Browser version  | -  |
| (6)  | Engine firmware version  | -  |
| (7)  | Engine boot version  | -  |
| (8)  | Operation panel firmware version                                   | -  |
| (9)  | Total memory size  | -  |
| (10) | Local time zone  | -  |
| (11) | Report output date   | Day/Month/Year hour : minute   |
| (12) | NTP server name  | -  |
| (13) | Whether the DP is installed or not                                 | Installed/Not Installed  |
| (14) | Whether the paper feeder is installed or not                       | Cassette(500-sheet×2) / Cassette(1500-sheet×2) / Not Installed   |
| (15) | Availability of the Hard Disk<br>(Only except KDA of 32 ppm model) | Installed/Not Installed  |
| (16) | Availability of the SD memory card                                 | Installed/Not Installed  |
| (17) | Availability of the finisher                                       | 1000-sheet finisher/<br>3000-sheet finisher/not installed  |
| (18) | Availability of Mailbox  | Installed/Not Installed  |
| (19) | Availability of the ID Card Authentication Kit                     | Introduced/ before introduction/trial  |
| (20) | Availability of the Internet FAX Kit(A)                            | Installed/Not Installed  |
| (21) | Availability of the Security Kit(E)                                | Installed/Not Installed  |
| (22) | Availability of UG-33  | Introduced/ before introduction/trial  |
| (23) | Availability of UG-34  | Installed/Not Installed  |
| (24) | USB keyboard connection status                                     | Connected/Not connected  |
| (25) | Type of the USB keyboard   | US-English/US-English with Euro symbol/German<br>France  |
| (26) | Availability of the Scan extension kit(A)                          | Introduced/ before introduction/trial  |
| (27) | Page count converted to the A4/Letter size                         | Print Coverage provides a close-matching reference of toner consumption and will not match the actual toner consumption. |
| (28) | Entire average coverage  | Black  |
| (29) | Average coverage for copy  | Black  |
| (30) | Average printer coverage   | Black  |
| (31) | Average coverage for FAX   | Black  |
| (32) | Cleared date and output date                                       | -  |
| (33) | Coverage on the last output page                                   | -  |
| (34) | Last job coverage information                                      | -  |
| (35) | FRPO setting   | -  |
| (36) | RP code  | Coding the engine firmware version and the date of the previous update.  |
| (37) | RP code  | Code the main software version and the date of the latest update.  |
| (38) | RP code  | Coding the engine firmware version and the date of the previous update.  |
| (39) | RP code  | Code the main software version and the date of the previous update.  |

| No.  | Items                                      | Contents  |
|------|--|---|
| (40) | MP tray priority setting                   | Off (No setting)/Auto(Auto paper feed)/Always(All times)  |
| (41) | High altitude adjustment set data          | Normal/1001-2000m/2001-3000m/3001-3500m   |
| (42) | System Firmware (detail)                   | -   |
| (43) | NVRAM version                              | <p>_ 1F3 1225 _ 1F3 1225<br/>           (a)(b)(c)(d)(e)(f)<br/>           (a) Consistency of the current firmware version and the database<br/>             _ (underscore): OK<br/>             * (Asterisk): NG<br/>           (b) Database version<br/>           (c) The oldest time stamp of database version<br/>           (d) Consistency of the present software version and the ME firmware version<br/>             _ (underscore): OK<br/>             * (Asterisk): NG<br/>           (e) ME firmware version<br/>           (f) The oldest time stamp of the ME firmware version<br/>           Normal if (a) and (d) are underscored, and (b) and (e) are identical with (c) and (f).</p> |
| (44) | FAX firmware version                       | -   |
| (45) | Mac address                                | -   |
| (46) | DP counter                                 | The number of times of DP feeding   |
| (47) | Destination information                    | -   |
| (48) | Area information                           | -   |
| (49) | Margin setting                             | Top margin/Left margin  |
| (50) | Top offset                                 | -   |
| (51) | Left offset                                | -   |
| (52) | L parameters                               | Top margin integer part/Top margin decimal part/Left margin integer part /Left margin decimal part  |
| (53) | Life counter (cassette 1)                  | Machine life/MP tray/Cassette/Paper feeder 1/Paper feeder 2/ Duplex   |
| (54) | Life counter (cassette 2)                  | Drum unit/Transfer unit/MC roller/Fuser unit  |
| (55) | Life counter (cassette 3)                  | Maintenance kits  |
| (56) | Panel lock information                     | F00: OFF<br>F01: Partial lock1<br>F02: Partial lock2<br>F03: Partial lock3<br>F04: Full lock  |
| (57) | USB information                            | U00: Not Connected<br>U01: Full speed<br>U02: Hi speed  |
| (58) | Paper handling information                 | 0: Paper source select<br>1: Paper source fixed   |
| (59) | Auto cassette change                       | 0: OFF<br>1: ON (Default)   |
| (60) | Black and white printing double count mode | 0: All single counts<br>1: A3 (Less than 420 mm length), Single counts<br>2: Legal(Less than 356mm length), Single counts<br>3: Folio (Less than 330 mm length), Single counts  |

| No.  | Items   | Contents  |
|------|---|---|
| (61) | Billing counts timing   | 0: When secondary paper feed starts<br>1: When completing output  |
| (62) | Temperature (machine inside)  | -   |
| (63) | Temperature (machine outside)   | -   |
| (64) | Relative humidity (machine outside)   | -   |
| (65) | Absolute humidity (machine outside)   | -   |
| (66) | Machine inside humidity   | -   |
| (67) | LSU1 humidity information   | -   |
| (68) | LSU2 humidity information   | -   |
| (69) | DRT information   | -   |
| (70) | Asset Number  | -   |
| (71) | Job end judgment time-out time  | -   |
| (72) | Job end detection mode  | 0: Detects as one job, even if contained multiple jobs<br>1: Detects as individual job, dividing multiple jobs at a break in job  |
| (73) | Prescribe environment reset   | 0: Off<br>1: On   |
| (74) | Scan to SMB mode setting  | 0: Off<br>1: On   |
| (75) | Media type attributes<br>1 to 28 (Not used: 18, 19, 20)<br><br>For details on settings, refer to MDAT command in "Prescribe Commands Reference Manual". | Weight settings    Fuser settings<br>0: Light    0: High<br>1: Normal 1    1: Middle<br>2: Normal 2    2: Low<br>3: Normal 3    3: Vellum<br>4: Heavy 1<br>5: Heavy 2    Duplex settings<br>6: Heavy 3    0: Disable<br>7: Heavy 4    1: Enable<br>8: Heavy 5<br>9: Extra Heavy |
| (76) | RFID information  | -   |
| (77) | RFID reader/writer version  | -   |
| (78) | Toner install mode information  | 0: Off<br>1: On   |
| (79) | Cassette3 software version  | -   |
| (80) | LCF1 software version   | -   |
| (81) | Option message version  | -   |
| (82) | Maintenance information   | -   |
| (83) | MC correction   | 1 to 7  |
| (84) | Low coverage setting  | 0.1 to 100.0  |
| (85) | Middle coverage setting   | 0.1 to 100.0  |
| (86) | Toner low setting   | 0: Disabled<br>1: Enabled   |
| (87) | Toner low detection level   | 0 to 100 (%)  |
| (88) | Shift regulation for a single original  | 0: disable (shift regulation off)<br>1: enable (shift regulation on)  |
| (89) | ErP applied mode setting  | 0: ErP non-applied mode<br>1: ErP applied mode  |

| No.  | Items                   | Contents  |
|------|-------------------------|---|
| (90) | Full-page print mode    | 0: Normal mode (Factory setting)<br>1: Full-page mode |
| (91) | Wake-up mode            | 0: Off (Don't wake up)<br>1: On (Do wake up)          |
| (92) | Drum serial number      | -   |
| (93) | Developer serial number | -   |

## U001 Exit Maintenance Mode

### (Message:Exit Maintenance Mode)

#### Contents

Exits the maintenance mode and returns to the normal copy mode.

#### Purpose

Exit the maintenance mode.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 The normal copy mode is entered.

## U002 Set Factory Default

### (Message: Set Factory Default)

#### Contents

Sets the machine initial setting values to the factory default.

#### Purpose

Executes the machine initial settings when shipping from factory.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Mode1(All)].
- 3 Press the [Start] key.

| Items      | Contents  |
|------------|---|
| Mode1(All) | Sets the machine initial setting values to the factory default. |

- 4 Turn the power switch off.

An error code is displayed in case of the initialization error.

When errors occur, turn the power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance mode U002.

Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

#### Error codes

| Codes | Contents                   |
|-------|----------------------------|
| 0001  | Controller (Entity error)  |
| 0002  | Controller (Counter error) |
| 0003  | Controller (OS error)      |
| 0020  | Engine error               |
| 0040  | Scanner error              |



## U003 Set Telephone Number for Service Call

### (Message: Set Telephone Number for Service Call)

#### **Contents**

Sets the phone number indicated at the service call error.

#### **Purpose**

Execute to set the service telephone number at the installation of the machine.

#### **Setting**

- 1 Press the [Start] key.  
Input keys are indicated on the touch panel.
- 2 Input telephone number (15 digits maximum).
- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### **Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U004 Machine Number

### (Message: Machine Number)

#### Contents

Sets or displays the machine serial number.

#### Purpose

Checks the machine serial number

After the main/engine PWB replacement, execute if the "C0180 machine number mismatch" occurs.

#### Caution

Do not execute U004, select [Execute] and press [Start] key if the machine serial number in the engine PWB is different from the main unit serial number. A different machine serial number is overwritten in the main PWB.

#### Execution

- 1 Press the [Start] key.

**When the machine serial number in the engine PWB matches the one in the main PWB,**

| Items       | Contents                            |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|
| Machine No. | Displays the machine serial number. |

**When the machine serial number in the engine PWB does not match the one in the main PWB,**

| Items             | Contents  |
|-------------------|---|
| Machine No.(Main) | Displays the machine serial number in the main PWB.   |
| Machine No.(Eng)  | Displays the machine serial number in the engine PWB. |

#### Setting

**Execute if the serial numbers do not match.**

- 1 Select [Execute].
- 2 Press the [Start] key.  
The serial number writing starts.
- 3 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U010 Set Maintenance Mode ID

### (Message: Set Maintenance Mode ID)

#### Contents

Change the maintenance mode ID for service.

#### Purpose

Modify maintenance mode ID for service for more security.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.

| Items             | Contents   |
|-------------------|--|
| New ID            | Enter a new 8-digit maintenance ID               |
| New ID(Reconfirm) | Enter a new 8-digit maintenance ID (to confirm)  |
| Initialize        | Initializes the maintenance mode ID for service. |

#### Setting: New ID

- 1 Select [New ID].
- 2 Press ten keys (0–9, \*, #) to enter a new 8-digit ID.  
Either [\*] or [#] must be included.
- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
- 4 Select [New ID(Reconfirm)].
- 5 Press ten keys (0–9, \*, #) to re-enter the new 8-digit ID.
- 6 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Method: Initialize

- 1 Select [Initialize].
- 2 Press the [Start] key to initialize the maintenance mode ID.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

#### Error codes

| Codes | Contents                             |
|-------|--------------------------------------|
| 0001  | Do not include "#" or "*" in the ID. |
| 0002  | ID does not match.                   |
| 0003  | 8-digit ID is not input              |

## U018 Check Firmware Checksum

### (Message: Check Firmware Checksum)

#### Contents

Verifies that the firmware is not falsified.

#### Purpose

Re-calculate the checksum to verify the firmware is not falsified.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.

| Items    | Contents                             |
|----------|--------------------------------------|
| Expected | Displays the checksum expected value |
| Result   | Displays the checksum calculation    |
| Execute  | Execute self-verification            |

- 2 Select [Execute].

- 3 Press the [Start] key.

After execution, display the checksum obtained in the [Expected].

#### The following appears if the verification result is illegal.

| Codes | Contents   |
|-------|--|
| f001  | The expected value file does not exist                     |
| f002  | Expected value file read failure                           |
| f003  | Illegal data of the expected value file (not 64-byte data) |
| s001  | Fails to obtain the checksum                               |
| NG    | Expected value and checksum are different                  |

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U019 Firmware Version

### (Message: Firmware Version)

#### Contents

Displays the firmware version installed in each PWB.

#### Purpose

Check the firmware version installed in each PWB

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.  
The firmware version is displayed.
- 2 Change the screen using the [▲][▼] key.

| Items               | Contents                    |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Main                | Main firmware               |
| MMI                 | Operation firmware          |
| Panel Main          | Panel firmware              |
| Panel Boot          | Panel Boot                  |
| Browser             | Browser firmware            |
| Engine              | Engine firmware             |
| Engine Boot         | Engine boot                 |
| Scanner             | Scanner                     |
| Scanner Boot        | Scanner Boot                |
| RFID                | RFID                        |
| Dictionary          | Dictionary firmware         |
| Option Language     | Optional language firmware  |
| OCR                 | OCR dictionary firmware     |
| HyPAS Embedded API  | HyPAS Embedded API firmware |
| DP                  | DP firmware                 |
| DP Boot             | DP Boot                     |
| DP SSW              | DP SSW                      |
| PF1                 | Paper feeder 1 firmware     |
| PF1 Boot            | Paper Feeder 1 boot         |
| DF                  | finisher firmware           |
| DF Boot             | finisher boot               |
| PH                  | Punch firmware              |
| PH Boot             | Punch Boot                  |
| MT                  | mailbox Firmware            |
| MT Boot             | mailbox boot                |
| Fax APL1            | Fax APL1                    |
| Fax Boot1           | FAX Boot1                   |
| Fax IPL1            | Fax IPL1                    |
| Fax APL2            | Fax APL2                    |
| Fax Boot2           | FAX Boot2                   |
| Fax IPL2            | Fax IPL2                    |
| Application Name 01 | Application 1 firmware      |
| Application Name 02 | Application 2 firmware      |
| Application Name 03 | Application 3 firmware      |

| Items               | Contents                |
|---------------------|-------------------------|
| Application Name 04 | Application 4 firmware  |
| Application Name 05 | Application 5 firmware  |
| Application Name 06 | Application 6 firmware  |
| Application Name 07 | Application 7 firmware  |
| Application Name 08 | Application 8 firmware  |
| Application Name 09 | Application 9 firmware  |
| Application Name 10 | Application 10 firmware |
| Application Name 11 | Application 11 firmware |
| Application Name 12 | Application 12 firmware |
| Application Name 13 | Application 13 firmware |
| Application Name 14 | Application 14 firmware |
| Application Name 15 | Application 15 firmware |
| Application Name 16 | Application 16 firmware |

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U021 Initialize Memory

### (Message: Initialize Memory)

#### Contents

Initializes all settings, except those pertinent to the type of machine, namely each counter, service call error history and mode setting. Also, initializes the backup RAM according to the area specification selected in the maintenance mode U252 (Setting the destination).

#### Purpose

Initialize the backup data except machine settings to the factory default in the field

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Execute].

| Items   | Contents  |
|---------|---|
| Execute | Initialize data according to the destination information. |

- 3 Press the [Start] key.  
All data other than for adjustments is initialized by the destination setting.
- 4 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.  
An error code is displayed in case of the initialization error.  
When errors occur, turn the power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance mode U021.

#### Error codes

| Codes | Contents                   |
|-------|----------------------------|
| 0001  | Controller (Entity error)  |
| 0002  | Controller (Counter error) |
| 0020  | Engine error               |
| 0040  | Scanner error              |

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U024 Format HDD

### (Message: Format HDD)

#### Contents

Initialize the HDD.

#### Purpose

Initialize the HDD when replacing the HDD in the field.

#### Precautions

The following settings are initialized if the HDD is initialized.

System Menu (User Management, Job Accounting, Address Book, One Touch Key, Document Box, etc.), Shortcut key, Panel program.

If executing full-format, the following installed software is deleted.

Optional language, HyPAS application (FMU, etc.), OCR dictionary software, color table.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to execute.

| Items      | Contents                 |
|------------|--------------------------|
| HDD Format | Executing the HDD format |
| SSD Format | Executing the SSD format |

- 3 Select the item to execute. Displays the item to delete.

| Items | Contents                                       |
|-------|--|
| Full  | Full format                                    |
| Data  | Data format (save in the application software) |

- 4 Select [Execute].

| Items   | Contents         |
|---------|------------------|
| Execute | Starts operation |

- 5 Press the [Start] key to execute the initialization.
- 6 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Manually reinstall deleted software.

Optional language, OCR dictionary software, (OCRDATA): Install using a USB memory.

Install the HyPAS application (FMU, etc.) from the Application screen.

If there is no OCR dictionary software, a warning dialog is displayed, and the OCR function is unavailable.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.



## U025 Firmware update (S)

(Message: Firm Update(Security))

### Contents

Executes Firmware-Update from the USB memory while "Very High" is selected in the Security Level settings under the System Menu.

### Supplement

Initiate the firmware upgrade by a service person by executing U025 while a USB memory is inserted

### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Execute].

| Items   | Contents             |
|---------|----------------------|
| Execute | Updates the firmware |

- 3 Press the [Start] key.  
This is not executable when a USB memory is not installed.
- 4 After normal completion, turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U026 Pulling Backup Data

### (Message: Pulling Backup Data)

#### Contents

Execute to retrieve backup data after replacing the main PWB.

#### Purpose

Restores the setting values backup from the HDD to the flash memory on the main PWB.

Data is transferred from an SSD to another via a USB memory.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to execute.

| Items | Contents  |
|-------|---|
| Flash | Backup data is retrieved to flash memory.                           |
| SSD   | SSD data is backed up and retrieved when a USB memory is installed. |

#### Method:Flash

- 1 Select [Restore].

| Items   | Contents                |
|---------|-------------------------|
| Restore | Restore the backup data |

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

#### Method:SSD

- 1 Select the item to execute.

| Items   | Contents                |
|---------|-------------------------|
| Backup  | Backup the SSD data     |
| Restore | Restore the backup data |

- 2 Press the [Start] key.
- 3 After [Restore] completion, turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

Indicates "NG" when completing abnormally.

Saved data:

U278 Delivery date setting

U402 margin adjustment

U952 Maintenance workflow data

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U030 Motor operation check

### (Message: Check Motor Operation)

#### Contents

Drive each motor.

#### Contents

Execute to check each motor's operation.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the motor to operate.
- 3 Press the [Start] key.  
Each operation starts.

| Items     | Contents                  |
|-----------|---------------------------|
| Main      | Operate the main motor    |
| Exit(CW)  | Drive the Exit(CW) motor  |
| Exit(CCW) | Drive the Exit(CCW) motor |
| DLP       | Operate the DLP motor     |
| Fuser     | Operate the Fuser motor   |
| Bridge    | Operate the bridge motor  |

To stop the operation, press the [Stop] key.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U031 Check the conveying switch

### (Message: Check Conveying Switch)

#### Contents

Displays the on/off status of each switch and sensor to detect paper on the paper conveying path.

#### Purpose

Execute to check the conveying switches and sensors are operating correctly.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Check the switches and sensors by manually turning them on/off.
- 3 The switch indication is inverted when the switch is detected.

| Items               | Contents   |
|---------------------|--|
| FeedA               | Displays the feed sensor Astatus                     |
| FeedB               | Displays the feed sensor B status                    |
| Regist              | Display the registration sensor status               |
| Duplex              | Displays the DU sensor status                        |
| Bridge1             | Displays the bridge conveying sensor 1 switch status |
| Bridge2             | Displays the bridge conveying sensor 2 switch status |
| Fuser               | Displays the exit sensor status                      |
| Face Down Tray Full | Display the paper full sensor state                  |
| Job separator Full  | Display the job paper full sensor state              |
| Contain             | Displays the toner container switch status           |

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U032 Clutch operation check

(Message: Check Clutch Operation)

### Contents

Supply power to each clutch.

### Purpose

Execute to check each clutch operation.

### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the clutch to operate.
- 3 Press the [Start] key.  
Each operation starts.

| Items  | Contents                                |
|--------|---|
| Feed 1 | Operate the vertical conveying clutch 1 |
| Feed 2 | Operate the vertical conveying clutch 2 |
| Regist | Operate the registration clutch         |
| Duplex | Operate the DU clutch                   |
| Middle | Operate the middle clutch               |
| DLP    | Operate the developer clutch            |
| Motor  | Operate the motor                       |

The clutch operation is available while the motor is operated.

- 4 To stop the clutch operation, press the [Stop] key.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U033 Solenoid operation check

### (Message: Check Solenoid Operation)

#### Contents

Supply power to each solenoid.

#### Purpose

Execute to check each solenoid's operation.

#### Method

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select the solenoid to operate.

3 Press the [Start] key.

Each operation starts.

Select the motor before checking the motor rotation.

| Items | Contents                   |
|-------|----------------------------|
| MPT   | Operate the MPT solenoid   |
| Eject | Operate the eject solenoid |
| Motor | Operate the motor          |

The solenoid operation is available while the motor is operated.

4 To stop the operation of the solenoid, press the [Stop] key.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U034 Paper timing data adjustment

### (Message: Adjust Paper Timing Data)

#### Contents

Adjust the leading edge registration or center line.

#### Purpose

Executed if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original.

Adjusted if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to adjust.  
The screen for adjusting is displayed.

| Items            | Contents  |
|------------------|---|
| LSU Out Top Full | Adjust the leading edge timing of full speed output |
| LSU Out Left     | Adjusts the center line                             |

#### Adjustment: LSU Out Top Full

- 1 Select the item to adjust.
- 2 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3 Press the [Start] key to output a test pattern.
- 4 Press the [System Menu] key.

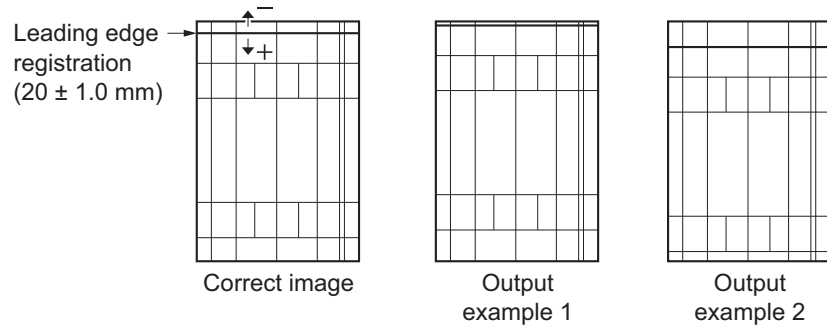
| Items     | Contents  | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-----------|---|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| MPT       | Adjust the leading edge timing for the MP tray                      | -128 to 127   | 0               | 0.1mm          |
| Cassette1 | Adjusts the leading edge timing for cassette 1 feed                 | -128 to 127   | 0               | 0.1mm          |
| Cassette2 | Adjusts the leading edge timing for cassette 2 feed                 | -128 to 127   | 0               | 0.1mm          |
| Cassette3 | Adjusts the leading edge timing for cassette 3 (Optional unit) feed | -128 to 127   | 0               | 0.1mm          |
| Cassette4 | Adjusts the leading edge timing for cassette 4 (Optional unit) feed | -128 to 127   | 0               | 0.1mm          |
| Duplex    | Adjust the leading edge timing for the duplex paper feed            | -128 to 127   | 0               | 0.1mm          |

- 5 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the test pattern 1, increase the value.

For the test pattern 2, decrease the value.

When the setting value is increased, the image moves backward, and it moves forward when the setting value is decreased.



- 6 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Precautions

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, adjust the following in the maintenance mode.

U034 > U066(P.6-48) > U071(P.6-52)

### Adjustment: LSU Out Left

- 1 Select the item to adjust.
- 2 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3 Press the [Start] key to output a test pattern.
- 4 Press the [System Menu] key.

| Items     | Contents   | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-----------|--|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| MPT       | Adjust the center line for the MP tray                     | -128 to 127   | 0               | 0.1mm          |
| Cassette1 | Adjust the center line for cassette 1 feed                 | -128 to 127   | 0               | 0.1mm          |
| Cassette2 | Adjust the center line for cassette 2 feed                 | -128 to 127   | 0               | 0.1mm          |
| Cassette3 | Adjust the center line for cassette 3 (Optional unit) feed | -128 to 127   | 0               | 0.1mm          |
| Cassette4 | Adjust the center line for cassette 4 (Optional unit) feed | -128 to 127   | 0               | 0.1mm          |
| Duplex    | Adjusting the center line when duplex copying (Back page)  | -128 to 127   | 0               | 0.1mm          |

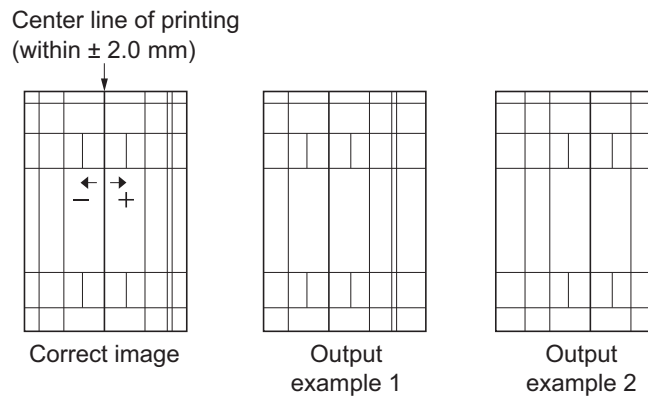


- 5 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the test pattern 1, increase the value.

For the test pattern 2, decrease the value.

When the setting value is increased, the image moves to right, and it moves to left when the setting value is decreased.



- 6 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Precautions

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, adjust the following in the maintenance mode.

U034 < U067(P.6-49) < U072(P.6-54)

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U035 Folio size setting

(Message: Adjust Folio Size)

### Contents

Changes the printable area when copying with Folio paper.

### Purpose

Setting the actual size of Folio to use prevents the image dropout at the trailing edge or right/left edges.

### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.
- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items  | Contents                     | Setting range   | Initial setting | Data variation |
|--------|------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Length | Sets the Folio paper length. | 318 to 356 (mm) | 330             | 1(mm)          |
| Width  | Sets the Folio paper width.  | 200 to 220 (mm) | 210             | 1(mm)          |

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U037 Fan motor operation check

### (Message: Check Fan Motor Operation)

#### Contents

Drive each fan motor.

#### Contents

Execute to check each fan motor's operation.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the fan motor to operate.
- 3 Press the [Start] key.  
Each operation starts.

| Items       | Contents                                       |
|-------------|--|
| All         | Operate all the fan motors                     |
| Eject       | Operate the eject fan motor                    |
| Low Power   | Operate the low voltage power source fan motor |
| LSU Cooling | Operate the LSU fan motor                      |
| Conveying   | Operate the conveying fan motor                |
| DLP         | Operate the developer fan motor                |

To stop the operation, press the [Stop] key.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U051 Registration paper loop amount adjustment

### (Message: Adjust Paper Loop Amount)

#### Contents

Adjusts the paper loop amount.

#### Purpose

The leading edge of the image may drop, image position may shift irregularly or paper is folded in a Z-shape.

Use to check/adjust skew feed.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to adjust.  
The screen for adjusting is displayed.

| Items       | Contents  |
|-------------|---|
| Full        | Paper loop amount adjustment of full speed        |
| Half        | Paper loop amount adjustment of half speed        |
| Full(Heavy) | Paper loop amount adjustment of full speed(Heavy) |
| Half(Heavy) | Paper loop amount adjustment of half speed(Heavy) |

#### Adjustment: Full/Half

- 1 Select the item to adjust.
- 2 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3 Place an original and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.
- 4 Press the [System Menu] key.  
The screen for adjusting is displayed.

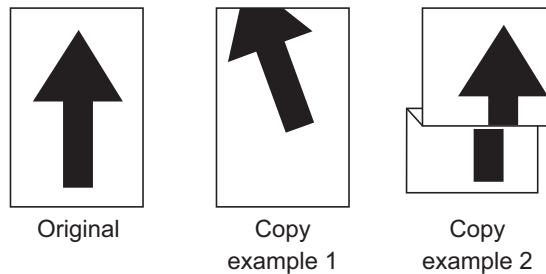
| Items      | Contents   | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|------------|--|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| MPT        | Loop amount adjustment for the MP tray paper feed      | -30 to 20     | -5              | 1mm            |
| Cassette 1 | Loop amount adjustment for cassette 1 paper feed       | -30 to 20     | -5              | 1mm            |
| Cassette 2 | Loop amount adjustment for cassette 2 paper feed       | -30 to 20     | -3              | 1mm            |
| PF         | Loop amount adjustment for PF(Cassette 3,4) paper feed | -30 to 20     | -3              | 1mm            |
| Duplex     | Loop amount adjustment for the duplex paper feed       | -30 to 20     | -7              | 1mm            |

- 5 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, increase the value.

For the copy example 2, decrease the value.

When the setting value is increased, the paper loop amount increase, and it decreases when the setting value is decreased.



- 6 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Adjustment: Full(Heavy)/Half(Heavy)

- 1 Select the item to adjust.
- 2 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3 Place an original and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.
- 4 Press the [System Menu] key.

The screen for adjusting is displayed.

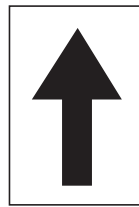
| Items      | Contents   | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|------------|--|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| MPT        | Loop amount adjustment for the MP tray paper feed      | -30 to 20     | -5              | 1mm            |
| Cassette 1 | Loop amount adjustment for cassette 1 paper feed       | -30 to 20     | -5              | 1mm            |
| Cassette 2 | Loop amount adjustment for cassette 2 paper feed       | -30 to 20     | -1              | 1mm            |
| PF         | Loop amount adjustment for PF(Cassette 3,4) paper feed | -30 to 20     | -1              | 1mm            |
| Duplex     | Loop amount adjustment for the duplex paper feed       | -30 to 20     | -5              | 1mm            |

- 5 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, increase the value.

For the copy example 2, decrease the value.

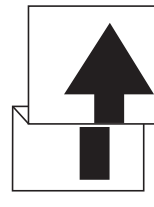
When the setting value is increased, the paper loop amount increase, and it decreases when the setting value is decreased.



Original



Copy  
example 1



Copy  
example 2

- 6 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U053 Adjusting the motor speed

### (Message:Adjust Motor Speed)

#### Contents

Execute the motor speed fine tuning.

#### Purpose

No need to change the basic settings. Change the set value when an image failure occurs.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to adjust.  
The screen for adjusting is displayed.

| Items | Contents                                      |
|-------|---|
| Full  | Set the speed correction value of full speed. |
| Half  | Set the speed correction value of half speed. |

#### Adjustment: Full/Half

- 1 Select the item to adjust.
- 2 The screen for adjusting is displayed.
- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items        | Contents                                  | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|--------------|---|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Main         | Set main motor's speed correction.        | -50 to 50     | 0               | 0.1%           |
| Main(MPT)    | Set Main(MPT) motor's speed correction    | -50 to 50     | 0               | 0.1%           |
| Main(Duplex) | Set Main(Duplex) motor's speed correction | -50 to 50     | -4              | 0.1%           |
| Cassette2    | Set PF main motor's speed correction      | -50 to 50     | 0               | 0.1%           |
| Fuser        | Set Fuser motor's speed correction        | -50 to 50     | 0               | 0.1%           |
| Polygon      | Set Polygon motor's speed correction      | -20 to 20     | 0               | 0.1%           |
| Exit         | Set Exit motor's speed correction         | -50 to 50     | 0               | 0.1%           |
| DLP          | Set DLP motor's speed correction          | -50 to 50     | 0               | 0.1%           |
| Bridge       | Set Bridge motor's speed correction       | -50 to 50     | 0               | 0.1%           |

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U061 Lamp lighting check

(Message: Check Lamp ON)

### Contents

Turns the exposure lamp on.

### Purpose

Light the exposure lamp to confirm.

### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to operate.

| Items | Contents   |
|-------|--|
| CCD   | Turns the exposure lamp on   |
| CIS   | Turn the CIS lamp on (when the simultaneous duplex scanning document processor is installed) |

- 3 Press the [Start] key. Lamps are lit.  
Press the [Stop] key to turn the lamp off.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.



## U063 Shading position adjustment

(Message: Adjust Shading Position)

### Contents

Changes the scanner shading position.

### Purpose

Execute if the vertical white lines appears on the image and they are not improved after cleaning the shading plate, namely there are scratches or dirt inside the shading plate.

By changing the shading position, shading is available where there is no influence of dirt or scratch of the shading plate.

### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items    | Contents                             | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|----------|--------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Position | Changes the scanner shading position | 0 to 18       | 0               | 0.16mm         |

If the set value is increased, the shading position moves toward the machine left side and toward the right side if the value is reduced.

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Precautions

Test copy of the original is available by pressing the [System Menu] key as interruption copy mode when executing this maintenance mode.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U065 Adjusting the magnification for table scanning

### (Message: Adjust Scanner Motor Speed)

#### Contents

Adjust the magnification in the main and sub scanning direction of the table scanning.

#### Purpose

Adjusts the magnification in the main and sub scanning direction of the table scanning if the above incorrect

#### Precautions

The magnification adjustment in the main scanning direction could cause black streaks depending on the content of the original document.

Adjust the magnification of the scanner in the following order.

U065(main scanning direction)(P.6-46)>U065((sub scanning direction)(P.6-46)

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3 Place an original and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.
- 4 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 5 Select the item to adjust.

| Items     | Contents  | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-----------|---|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Main Scan | Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction        | -75 to 75     | 0               | 0.02%          |
| Sub Scan  | Adjusts scanner magnification in the sub-scanning direction | -125 to 125   | 0               | 0.02%          |

#### Adjustment: Main Scan

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, increase the value.

For the copy example 2, decrease the value.

When the setting value is increased, the image widens, and it narrows when the setting value is decreased.



Original



Copy example 1



Copy example 2

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Adjustment: Sub Scan**

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, increase the value.

For the copy example 2, decrease the value.

When the setting value is increased, the image get longer, and it shortens when the setting value is decreased.



Original



Copy  
example 1



Copy  
example 2

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U066 Adjusting the table scanning timing

### (Message: Adjust Table Leading Edge Timing)

#### Contents

Adjusts the leading edge timing for the table scanning.

#### Purpose

Executed if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original.

#### Adjustment

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3 Place an original and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.
- 4 Press the [System Menu] key.

| Items | Contents                                 | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------|--|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Front | Adjusts the scanner leading edge margin. | -30 to 30     | 0               | 0.16 mm        |

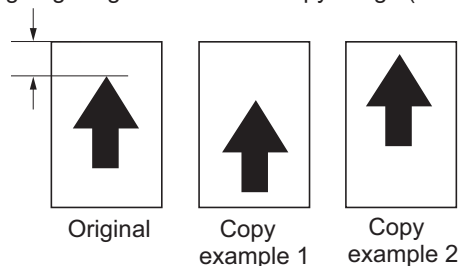
- 5 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, increase the value.

For the copy example 2, decrease the value.

When the setting value is increased, the image moves forward, and it moves backward when the setting value is decreased.

Leading edge registration of the copy image (+1.0/-1.5 mm or less)



- 6 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Precautions

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, adjust the following in the maintenance mode.

U034(P.6-35) > U065(P.6-46) > U066

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U067 Adjusting the table scanning center line

(Message: Adjust Table Center)

### Contents

Adjusts the center line for the table scanning.

### Purpose

Adjusted if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original.

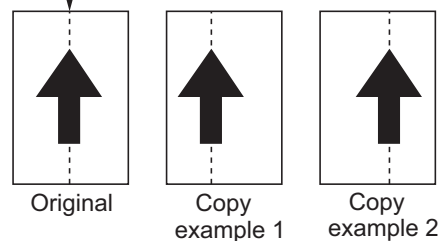
### Adjustment

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3 Place an original and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.
- 4 Press the [System Menu] key.

| Items | Contents                        | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------|---------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Front | Adjusts the scanner center line | -60 to 60     | 0               | 0.085 mm       |

- 5 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.  
 For the copy example 1, increase the setting value.  
 For the copy example 2, decrease the setting value.  
 When the setting value is increased, the image moves to right, and it moves to left when the setting value is decreased.

Center line of the copy image (within  $\pm 2.0$  mm)



- 6 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Precautions

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, adjust the following in the maintenance mode.

U034(P.6-35) > U065(P.6-46) > U067

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U068 DP scanning position adjustment

### (Message: Adjust DP Scan Position)

#### Contents

Adjusts the starting position for scanning originals from the DP.

Execute test copy at the four scanning positions after adjustment.

#### Purpose

Adjust if the image fogging occurs because the scanning position is not proper when the DP is used

Execute U071 to adjust the timing of the DP leading edge when the scanning position is changed.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to adjust.

| Items      | Contents   | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|------------|--|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| DP Read    | Adjusts the starting position for scanning originals.      | -38 to 38     | 0               | 0.16 mm        |
| Black Line | Adjusts the scanning position for the test copy originals. | 0 to 3        | 0               | -              |

#### Adjustment: DP Read

- 1 Select [DP Read].
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.  
When the setting value is increased, the image moves backward, and it moves forward when the setting value is decreased.
- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Adjustment: Black Line

- 1 Select [Black Line].
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.
- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
- 4 Set the original (the one of which density is known) in the DP and press the [System Menu] key.
- 5 Press the [Start] key to execute the test copy.
- 6 Perform the test copy at each scanning position with the setting value from 0 to 3 and check that no black line appears and the image is normally scanned.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U070 DP magnification adjustment

### (Message: Adjust DP Motor Speed)

#### Contents

Adjusting the magnification for DP scanning.

#### Purpose

Adjusted if the magnification is incorrect in the auxiliary scanning direction when the DP is used

#### Adjustment

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3 Place an original on the DP and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.  
Check the duplex scanning by setting [Duplex] when test copying.
- 4 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 5 Select the item to adjust.

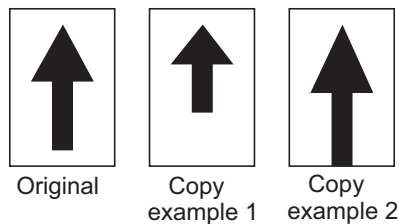
| Items           | Contents   | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-----------------|--|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Sub Scan (F)    | Adjusting the magnification for table scanning   | -125 to 125   | 0               | 0.02%          |
| Sub Scan (B)    | Adjusts the 2nd side magnification in the sub scanning direction when duplex scanning        | -125 to 125   | 0               | 0.02%          |
| Main Scan (CIS) | Adjusts the 2nd side magnification in the main scanning direction when duplex scanning (CIS) | 0 to 75       | 0               | 0.02%          |
| Sub Scan (CIS)  | Adjusts the 2nd side magnification in the sub scanning direction when duplex scanning (CIS)  | -125 to 125   | 0               | 0.02%          |

- 6 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, increase the value.

For the copy example 2, decrease the value.

When the setting value is increased, the image get longer, and it shortens when the setting value is decreased.



- 7 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U071 Adjusting the DP leading edge Timing

### (Message: Adjust DP Leading Edge Timing)

#### Contents

Adjusts the DP original scanning timing.

#### Purpose

Adjusted if there is a regular error between the leading or trailing edges of the original and the copy image when the DP is used

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3 Place an original on the DP and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.  
Check the duplex scanning by setting [Duplex] when test copying.
- 4 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 5 Select the item to adjust.

#### DP-7100

| Items      | Contents                                 | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|------------|--|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Front Head | Leading edge registration. (Front page)  | -32 to 32     | 0               | 0.21 mm        |
| Front Tail | Trailing edge registration. (Front page) | -32 to 32     | 0               | 0.21 mm        |
| Back Head  | Leading edge registration. (Back page)   | -32 to 32     | 0               | 0.21 mm        |
| Back Tail  | Trailing edge registration. (Back page)  | -32 to 32     | 0               | 0.21 mm        |

#### DP-7110

| Items      | Contents  | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|------------|---|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Front Head | Leading edge registration. (Front page)               | -27 to 27     | 0               | 0.297 mm       |
| Front Tail | Trailing edge registration. (Front page)              | -27 to 27     | 0               | 0.297 mm       |
| Back Head  | Leading edge registration. (Back page)                | -27 to 27     | 0               | 0.297 mm       |
| Back Tail  | Trailing edge registration. (Back page)               | -27 to 27     | 0               | 0.297 mm       |
| CIS Head   | Adjusts the leading edge timing for the CIS scanning  | -27 to 27     | 0               | 0.297 mm       |
| CIS Tail   | Adjusts the trailing edge timing for the CIS scanning | -27 to 27     | 0               | 0.297 mm       |

#### DP-7120

| Items      | Contents                                 | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|------------|--|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Front Head | Leading edge registration. (Front page)  | -66 to 66     | 0               | 0.229 mm       |
| Front Tail | Trailing edge registration. (Front page) | -66 to 66     | 0               | 0.229 mm       |
| Back Head  | Leading edge registration. (Back page)   | -66 to 66     | 0               | 0.229 mm       |
| Back Tail  | Trailing edge registration. (Back page)  | -66 to 66     | 0               | 0.229 mm       |



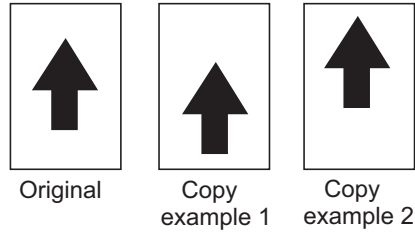
**Adjustment: Front Head/Back Head/CIS**

- 6 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, increase the value.

For the copy example 2, decrease the value.

When the setting value is increased, the image moves forward, and it moves backward when the setting value is decreased.



- 7 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Precautions**

Check the 2nd side after adjusting the 1st side. Adjust if necessary.

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, adjust the following in the maintenance mode.

U034(P.6-35) > U071

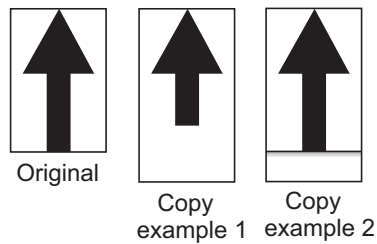
**Adjustment: Front Tail/Back Tail/CIS Tail**

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, increase the value.

For the copy example 2, decrease the value.

When the setting value is increased, the image get longer, and it shortens when the setting value is decreased.



- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U072 Adjusting the DP original center

### (Message: Adjust DP Original Center)

#### Contents

Adjusts the DP original center line.

#### Purpose

Adjusted if there is a regular error between the center lines of the original and the copy image when the DP is used

#### Adjustment

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3 Place an original on the DP and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.  
Check the duplex scanning by setting [Duplex] when test copying.
- 4 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 5 Select the item to adjust.

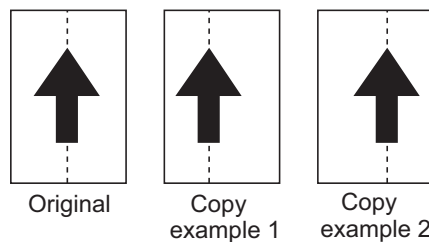
| Items | Contents                      | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Front | DP center line. (Front page)  | -60 to 60     | 0               | 0.085 mm       |
| Back  | DP center line. (Back page)   | -60 to 60     | 0               | 0.085 mm       |
| CIS   | Adjusts the DPCIS center line | -39 to 39     | 0               | 0.085 mm       |

- 6 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, decrease the value.

For the copy example 2, increase the value.

When the setting value is increased, the image moves to left, and it moves to right when the setting value is decreased.



- 7 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Precautions

Check the 2nd side after adjusting the 1st side. Adjust if necessary.

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, adjust the following in the maintenance mode.

U034(P.6-35) > U065(P.6-46) > U067(P.6-49) > U072

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U073 Scanner motor operation check

### (Message: Check Scanner Motor Operation)

#### Contents

Simulate the scanner operation in any condition.

#### Purpose

Execute the scanner operation to check the abnormal operation and dust adhesion on the slit glass.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to execute.

| Items         | Contents   |
|---------------|--|
| Scanner Motor | Execute the scan operation                             |
| Home Position | Home positioning operation                             |
| Dust Check    | Check if there is dust by turning the exposure lamp on |
| DP Reading    | scan position operation for the document processor     |

- 3 Press the [Start] key.  
Scanning starts with the condition specified.
- 4 To stop the operation, press the [Stop] key.

#### Setting: Scanner Motor

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items | Contents                         | Setting range   | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------|----------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Zoom  | Magnification                    | 25 to 400 (%)   | 100             | 1%             |
| Size  | Original size                    | 100 to 10200    | 10200           | 100            |
| Lamp  | Turning the exposure lamp on/off | 0: OFF<br>1: ON | 1: ON           | -              |

#### Paper size corresponding to each set value

| setting | Destination   | setting | Destination | setting | Destination |
|---------|---------------|---------|-------------|---------|-------------|
| 4300    | B5            | 6100    | B5R         | 8600    | B4          |
| 5000    | A4            | 6600    | 8 1/2"×11"  | 9000    | 11"×15"     |
| 5000    | A5R           | 7100    | A4R         | 10000   | A3          |
| 5100    | 11"×8 1/2"    | 7800    | Folio       | 10200   | 11"×17"     |
| 5100    | 5 1/2"×8 1/2" | 8400    | 8 1/2"×14"  |         |             |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
- 4 Select [Execute].
- 5 Press the [Start] key.  
Scanning starts with the condition specified.
- 6 To stop the operation, press the [Stop] key.

### **Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U074 Adjusting the DP input characteristics

### (Message: Adjust DP Input)

#### Description

Sets the DP image scanning density

#### Purpose

Changes the setting if the background image appears when scanning bluish original or originals with slightly thick background Adjusts the image difference between the table scanning and DP scanning CIS scanning is not corrected.

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.
- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items           | Contents   | Setting range  | Initial setting |
|-----------------|--|--|-----------------|
| Coefficient     | DP image scanning density correction                   | 0: No correction<br>1: Low-level<br>2: Middle-level<br>3: High-level | 1               |
| DP Color Regist | Permitting the color registration correction operation | 0: Off<br>1: On  | 1               |

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U087 Setting the DP scanning position change operation

### (Message: Set DP Scanning Position Operation)

#### Contents

If dust can be detected by comparing the original trailing edge scanned data with the scanned data after the original feed, change the original scan position next time.

Also, reduce the black lines by image correction.

#### Purpose

Use as the corrective measures for the black lines appearing with dust on the original scanning position when using the document processor.

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.
- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items      | Contents  | Setting range | Initial setting |
|------------|---|---------------|-----------------|
| Front      | Set the 1st side scanning data threshold                    | 0 to 128      | 48              |
| Back       | Set the threshold of the back page scan data at duplex scan | 0 to 128      | 48              |
| Black Line | Initialize the original scanning position                   | 0 to 255      | -               |

If the set value is reduced, dark density image is regarded as dust and dust detection becomes more likely.  
If the set value is increased, dust detection becomes less likely.

#### Method: Black Line

- 1 Select [Clear].
- 2 Press the [Start] key.  
Original scan position returns to the initial line.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U089 MIP-PG pattern output

### (Message: Output MIP-PG Pattern)

#### Contents




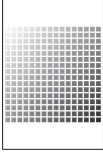
Select and output the MIP-PG pattern generated by the main unit.

#### Purpose

When adjusting the image scanning items, execute to check the machine status except the scanner section using the MIP-PG pattern output without image scanning process.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the MIP-PG pattern to output

| Display       | Output contents  | Purpose   |
|---------------|--|---|
| Gray scale    | Gray scale patten PG<br>                  | Check of the gradation reproducibility                          |
| Mono 1        | PG for the gray check(Density: 0)<br>    | Check the drum quality  |
| Mono 4        | PG for the gray check(Density: 7.0)<br> | Check the drum quality  |
| 256 Gradation | 256 Gradation PG<br>                    | Check of the gradation reproducibility                          |
| Sample Set    | Gray scale patten PG<br>PG for the gray check(Density: 7.0)  | The output patterns for the long life unit warranty application |

- 3 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 4 Press the [Start] key to output a MIP-PG pattern.
- 5 Press the [System Menu] key.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U091 White lines correction setting

### (Message: Set White Line Correction)

#### Contents

Set the error detection threshold for white lines correction and display the abnormal pixel count.

#### Purpose

Execute when replacing the CIS, DP main PWB or CIS roller.

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.
- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items               | Contents                                   | Setting range                                     | Initial setting | Data variation |
|---------------------|--|---|-----------------|----------------|
| Coefficient(R)      | Displays the red pixel error counts        | 0 to 8191   | -               | -              |
| Coefficient(G)      | Displays the green pixel error counts      | 0 to 8191   | -               | -              |
| Coefficient(B)      | Displays the Blue pixel error counts       | 0 to 8191   | -               | -              |
| Threshold(R)        | Sets the red error detection threshold     | 0 to 1023   | 112             | -              |
| Threshold(G)        | Sets the green error detection threshold   | 0 to 1023   | 112             | -              |
| Threshold(B)        | Sets the blue error detection threshold    | 0 to 1023   | 112             | -              |
| Threshold(Abnormal) | Sets the abnormal pixel threshold          | 0 to 8191   | 75              | -              |
| Mode                | Set the white lines correction mode        | 0: No correction<br>1: Correction<br>2: Test mode | 0               | -              |
| Execute             | Execute retaining the white reference data | -   | -               | -              |

Normally do not change the threshold from the initial value of 112.

Increase the value if white lines appear while the CIS roller/glass is not dirty.

Reduce the set value if thin lines disappear depending on the original to use.

Set in the range of 50 to 200. (In the case of out of range, it may affect the image output)

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Method: Execute

- 1 Select [Execute].
- 2 Press the [Start] key.  
Starts retaining the white reference data.
- 3 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 4 Set the gray original face-down on the document processor and set paper in the cassette.  
Match the original and paper size.
- 5 Press the [Start] key.  
Outputs 2-sheet test pattern.  
1st sheet: black band of about 60mm width  
2nd sheet: blank (or may be gray band of about 60mm width)



6 Setting is correctly complete if no vertical line is observed on both sheets.

If a vertical black line appears on blank paper or a gray band or vertical white line appear on the black band, execute the white line correction again after cleaning the CIS roller or CIS glass.

White line correction is complete if both sheets have vertical black lines or vertical white lines. However, check the engine since there are factors of vertical streaks at the engine Side.

7 Press the [System Menu] key.

Mode is set to [1].

### How to check the test copy

| Blank paper | Black band  | Factor                         | Corrective action                               |
|-------------|-------------|--------------------------------|---|
| No lines    | No lines    | -                              | Completion                                      |
| Black line  | White lines | CIS roller/glass contamination | Execute the U091 CIS roller/glass contamination |
| Black line  | No lines    | Engine PWB                     | Check engine PWB after completing U091          |
| No lines    | White lines | Engine PWB                     | Check engine PWB after completing U091          |

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U099 Original size detection setting

### (Message: Set Original Size Detection)

#### Description

Sets the original size detection check and detection threshold

#### Purpose

Changes the detection threshold if the original size is often mis-detected with entirely dark originals (high density) or dark originals at edges only

Changes the detection threshold.

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.  
The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items      | Contents  |
|------------|---|
| Data1      | Display of the original width of RGB each three color   |
| B/W Level1 | Original size detection threshold setting   |
| Data2      | Display of the original copies width of RGB each three color (when the document processor is installed) |

#### Execution: Data1/Data2

- 1 Place an original copy on the table and close the original copy cover or document processor.
- 2 The light source is turned on and the CCD sensor detects the original width. The original size sensor detects the original lengthwise. (Detected twice when the document processor is installed)

| Items              | Contents   |
|--------------------|--|
| Original Area(dot) | Detected number of pixels (dot) in the original width          |
| Original Area(mm)  | Detected number of pixels (mm) in the original width           |
| Size SW L          | Indicating ON/OFF of the original length sensor (0: Off/1: On) |

**Setting: B/W Level1**

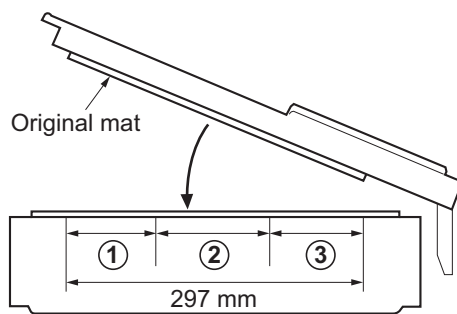
- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items     | Contents                                 | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-----------|--|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Original1 | Sets the threshold to judge the original | 0 to 255      | 20 *1/50 *2     | 1              |
| Original2 | Sets the threshold to judge the original | 0 to 255      | 30 *1/50 *2     | 1              |
| Original3 | Sets the threshold to judge the original | 0 to 255      | 40 *1/50 *2     | 1              |

\*1: Without DP, \*2: With DP

Lowering the setting value improves the sensor's sensitivity and high density originals can be detected but the original mat may be detected as an original.

If differentiating each setting value, mis-detection may appear depending on the condition of placing the original.



| Fig. | Original R/G/B | Original width size range |              |
|------|----------------|---------------------------|--------------|
| ①    | 1              | A4R to A3                 | 8.5" to 11"  |
| ②    | 2              | B6R to A4R                | 5.5" to 8.5" |
| ③    | 3              | to B6R                    | to 5.5"      |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U100 Main high voltage adjustment

### (Message: Adjust Main High Voltage Output)

#### Contents

Adjust the surface potential by changing the voltage impressed to the main charge roller.

#### Purpose

Change the set value to adjust the image when an image failure (background image) occurs.

#### Method

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select the item to set.

The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items              | Contents   |
|--------------------|--|
| Adj DC Bias        | Adjust the main charge AC bias of each color       |
| Set AC Auto Adj *1 | Sets the automatic AC bias adjustment              |
| Set DC Bias        | Displays the main charge DC bias correction value. |
| Adj DC Bias        | Adjust the surface potential additional value      |
| Set Charger Freq   | Sets the frequency of the main charger             |
| Chk Current        | Displays the electric current flows                |

#### Setting: Adj AC Bias

1 Select the item to set.

2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

When the setting value is increased, the image get thinner, and it gets thicker when the setting value is decreased.  
Set value is variable depending on the environment.

| Items      | Contents                  | Setting range | Initial setting |
|------------|---------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| AC Bias(K) | Main charge AC bias value | 400 to 2300   | 950             |

3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Setting: Set AC Auto Adj

1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                       |
|-------|--------------------------------|
| On    | Adjust automatically (1)       |
| Off   | Not adjusted automatically (0) |

Initial setting: On (1)

2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: Set DC Bias**

- 1 Displays the current setting.

| Items       | Contents  | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------------|---|---------------|-----------------|
| DC1 Bias(K) | Main charge DC bias correction value (Full speed) | 350 to 700    | 450             |

**Setting: Adj DC Bias**

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

When the setting value is increased, the image get thinner, and it gets thicker when the setting value is decreased.

| Items       | Contents  | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------------|---|---------------|-----------------|
| DC2 Bias(K) | Main charge DC bias additional value (Full speed) | -128 to 127   | 0               |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: Set Charger Freq**

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

When the setting value is increased, the image get thicker, and it gets thinner when the setting value is decreased.

| Items     | Contents   | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-----------|--|---------------|-----------------|
| Generally | Setting the frequency of the main charger (Normal speed) | 500 to 3000   | 1800            |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: Chk Current**

Displays the current setting.

| Items | Contents             |
|-------|----------------------|
| K     | Inflow current value |

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U101 Primary transfer voltage adjustment

### (Message: Adjust 1st Transfer Voltage Output)

#### Contents

Set the primary transfer control voltage

#### Purpose

Change setting if a failure such as faint image, etc. occurs.

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.
- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items         | Contents              | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|---------------|-----------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| On Timing     | On Timing setting     | -1000 to 1000 | 0               | 0.1 ms         |
| Off Timing    | Off Timing setting    | -1000 to 1000 | 0               | 0.1 ms         |
| Pre On Timing | Pre On Timing setting | -1000 to 1000 | 0               | 1 ms           |
| Pre Bias      | Pre Bias setting      | 0 to 2400     | 0               | 0.1 $\mu$ A    |
| Bias(L)       | Bias(L) setting       | 100 to 2400   | 935             | 0.1 $\mu$ A    |
| Bias(M)       | Bias(M) setting       | 100 to 2400   | 1213            | 0.1 $\mu$ A    |
| Bias (S)      | Bias (S) setting      | 100 to 2400   | 1763            | 0.1 $\mu$ A    |
| Bias(L)       | Bias(L) setting       | 100 to 2400   | 423             | 0.1 $\mu$ A    |
| Bias(M)       | Bias(M) setting       | 100 to 2400   | 483             | 0.1 $\mu$ A    |
| Bias (S)      | Bias (S) setting      | 100 to 2400   | 643             | 0.1 $\mu$ A    |

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Precautions

Test copy of the original is available by pressing the [System Menu] key as interruption copy mode when executing this maintenance mode.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U108 Separation Shift bias adjustment

(Message: Adjust Separation Shift Bias)

### Description

Adjust ON/OFF timing of the separation shift bias

### Purpose

Execute when the poor paper separation occurs.

### Execution

- 1 Press the [Start] key.

| Display | Content to adjust | Setting range | Initial setting |
|---------|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Mode    | Mode setting      | 1 to 8        | 1               |

- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.
- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U110 Drum counter

(Message: Drum Unit Counter)

### Contents

Displays the drum counter values.

### Purpose

Execute to check the drum usage status.

### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.

The drum counter is displayed.

| Items | Contents                        |
|-------|---------------------------------|
| K     | Displays the black drum counter |

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U111 Drum drive time.

## (Message: Drum Driving Time)

**Contents**

Display the drum drive time which is used in the high voltage time correction.

**Purpose**

Execute to check the drum usage status.

**Method**

- 1 Press the [Start] key.  
Display the drum drive time.

| Items | Contents                           |
|-------|------------------------------------|
| K     | Display the Black drum drive time. |

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U117 Drum unit number

## (Message: Drum Unit Number)

**Contents**

Displays the drum number.

**Purpose**

Execute to check the drum number.

**Method**

- 1 Press the [Start] key.  
Displays the drum number.

| Items | Contents                       |
|-------|--------------------------------|
| K     | Displays the black drum number |

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.



## U118 Drum unit history

### (Message: Drum Unit History)

#### Contents

Displays the machine serial number and drum counter history.

#### Purpose

Execute to check the machine serial number and drum counter values.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to refer to.

| Items | Contents                        |
|-------|---------------------------------|
| K     | Displays the black drum history |

Displays the machine serial number and 3 items of the drum counter history.

| Items                 | Contents                      |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| Machine History1 to 3 | Machine serial number history |
| Cnt History1 to 3     | The drum counter history      |

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U120 Drum drive distance counter

### (Message: Drum Driving Distance Counter)

#### Contents

Display the drum drive distance counter.

#### Purpose

Execute to display the drum control counter.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.  
Display the counter value.

| Items | Contents                                      |
|-------|---|
| K     | Display the Black drum drive distance counter |

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U127 Clearing the transfer count

### (Message: Clear Transfer Roller Counter)

#### Contents

Display and clear the transfer counts for the transfer high-voltage output correction etc.

#### Purpose

Execute when checking the counts after replacing transfer roller unit. Also, clear the counts after replacement.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.

The transfer counter value appears.

| Items | Contents                    |
|-------|-----------------------------|
| Cnt   | Display the transfer counts |
| Clear | Clear the transfer counts   |

#### Execution: Clear

- 1 Select [Clear].
- 2 Press the [Start] key, clear the counts.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

Back to the maintenance mode No. selecting screen.

## U130 Developer agent initial setting

### (Message: Set Toner Install)

#### Contents

Installs initial toner in the developer unit

#### Purpose

Insert the initial toner into the developer unit when arriving and replacing the new developer.

#### Execution

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select [Execute].

The screen for executing is moved.

| Items   | Contents                        |
|---------|---------------------------------|
| Execute | Execute the toner install mode. |

#### Execution

1 Select [Execute].

2 Press the [Start] key.

Toner installation is started.

Display "Finish" after the toner installation is completed.

#### Error codes

| Codes | Contents  |
|-------|---|
| E001  | In case of opening the main unit cover while executing. |
| E002  | In case of detecting the toner empty while executing.   |
| E003  | In case of fully detecting the waste toner box.         |
| E004  | In case of detecting the C call.                        |

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U136 Toner level detection setting

### (Message: Set Toner Near End Detection)

#### Contents

Execute the level setting of printable pages between toner near end and toner empty.

#### Purpose

Change the timing of detecting toner near end earlier than the current setting if the interval between toner near end and toner empty is too short.

#### Setting

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select the item to set.

By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items | Contents                      | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| K     | Setting the black toner level | 0 to 9        | 3               | -              |

If the set value is increased, the time interval from the toner near end to the toner empty becomes longer.

If the set value is reduced, the time interval from toner near end to toner empty becomes shorter.

0: no toner near end detection

3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.



#### Note

The set value is not reflected if set when Toner Low is already indicated.

Turn the main switch off and on to change the setting when Toner Low is already indicated toner hopper.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U139 Temperature, humidity

### (Message: Temperature/Humidity)

#### Contents

Displays the machine inside and outside temperature and machine outside humidity.

#### Purpose

Check the machine inside and outside temperature and machine outside humidity.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.

| Items      | Contents   |
|------------|--|
| Ext/Int    | Machine inside and outside temperature (°C) and machine outside humidity (%) |
| Developing | Current temperature is displayed (°C)  |

#### Method: Ext/Int

- 1 Displays the current temperature and humidity

| Items             | Contents                         |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|
| External Temp     | Machine outside temperature (°C) |
| External Humidity | Machine outside humidity (%)     |

#### Method: Developing

- 1 Displays the current temperature and humidity

| Items         | Contents   |
|---------------|--|
| Internal Temp | Temperature around the developer section inside the machine (°C) |

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U140 Developer bias adjustment (Message: Adjust Developing Bias)

### Contents

Displays/changes each setting value of the developer bias.

### Purpose

If an image failure (background image, etc.) appears, change the setting value to adjust the image.

### Execution

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.
- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items            | Contents                                 | Setting range | Initial setting |        |
|------------------|--|---------------|-----------------|--------|
|                  |  |               | 40 ppm          | 32 ppm |
| Bias             | Bias setting                             | 120 to 220    | 180             | 180    |
| Duty             | Duty setting                             | 40 to 70      | 50              | 56     |
| Clock            | Clock setting                            | 2600 to 3000  | 2700            | 2700   |
| Bias (Half)      | Bias (Half) setting                      | 120 to 220    | 180             | 180    |
| Duty (Half)      | Duty (Half) setting                      | 40 to 70      | 59              | 59     |
| Clock (Half)     | Clock (Half) setting                     | 2600 to 3000  | 2700            | 2700   |
| Image Preference | Toner density setting in case of copying | -             | -               | -      |

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Execution: Image Preference

- 1 Select [Copy]
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items | Contents                                 | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------|--|---------------|-----------------|
| Copy  | Toner density setting in case of copying | -1 to 1       | 0               |

Initial setting: 0 (-1: light 0: Normal 1: Dark)

- 3 Press the [Start] key, set the setting.
- 4 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U147 Setting the toner applying mode

### (Message: Set Toner Apply Mode)

#### Contents

Mode selection for the operation to remove overcharged toner in the developer unit (Toner applying mode).

#### Purpose

Normally no need to change the setting. However change the mode when output in large quantities the usual low coverage originals(Reference: less than 1 %)

Density is lowered if overcharged toner stays in the developer unit.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.

| Items  | Contents               |
|--------|------------------------|
| Mode 0 | Nomal mode             |
| Mode 1 | Toner consumption mode |

Initial value: Mode 1

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U148 Drum refresh mode setting

### (Message: Set Drum Refresh Mode)

#### Contents

Sets the mode to use the drum refresh in the user adjustment.

#### Purpose

Change the setting if the drum refresh is frequently operated.

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items | Contents               | Setting range                                | Initial setting |
|-------|------------------------|--|-----------------|
| Mode  | Sets Auto drum refresh | 0: Off<br>1: Short<br>2: Standard<br>3: Long | 2               |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U150 Check Toner Sensor Operation

### (Message: Check Toner Sensor Operation)

#### Contents

Display the ON/OFF status each switch sensor status in relation to the toner.

#### Purpose

Execute to check if each switch sensor is operating correctly.

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Check the ON/OFF status of switch sensor.  
The display of applicable switch sensor becomes "1" when the switch "ON" is detected.

| Items            | Contents   |
|------------------|--|
| Container Set    | Display the switch status of toner container set |
| Container Sensor | Display the status of toner sensor               |
| Waste Box Sensor | Display the status of waster toner sensor        |
| Motor            | Drive the main motor.                            |

- 3 To stop the motor drive, press the [Stop] key.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.



## U157 Developer drive time

### (Message: Developing Unit Drive Time)

#### Contents

Displays the developer drive time to be a reference for the toner density control correction.

#### Purpose

Execute to check the developer drive time since replacing the developer unit.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.

Displays the developer drive time.

| Items | Contents                         |
|-------|----------------------------------|
| K     | Display the developer drive time |

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U158 Developer counter

### (Message: Developing Unit Counter)

#### Contents

Displays the developer counter

#### Purpose

Execute to check the developer unit usage status.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.

The developer count is displayed.

| Items | Contents                        |
|-------|---------------------------------|
| K     | Displaying the developer counts |

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U161 Fuser temperature adjustment

### (Message: Adjust Fuser Control Temperature)

#### Contents

Set the fuser control temperature, control temperature correction, other setting value.

#### Purpose

Normally no need to change. However, change the setting as corrective measures for paper curl, creases and fusing failure on thick paper.

#### Method

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select the item to set.

The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items      | Contents   |
|------------|--|
| Warm Up    | Control temperature for printing and feeding                 |
| Grain Mode | Setting the granular image control mode                      |
| Belt Mode  | Image offset (white dot missing) countermeasure mode setting |

#### Setting:Warm Up

1 Select the item to set.

2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items            | Contents                                     | Setting range | Initial setting   |                   |
|------------------|--|---------------|-------------------|-------------------|
|                  |  |               | 40 ppm            | 32 ppm            |
| 1st Feed(Center) | Print start temperature (Center) setting     | 50 to 185     | 160 <sup>*1</sup> | 150 <sup>*1</sup> |
|                  |  |               | 165 <sup>*2</sup> | 155 <sup>*2</sup> |
| Print(Center)    | Temperature (Center) setting during printing | 100 to 210    | 175               | 165               |
| Standby(Center)  | Standby temperature (Center) setting         | 120 to 185    | 165 <sup>*1</sup> | 155 <sup>*1</sup> |
|                  |  |               | 170 <sup>*2</sup> | 160 <sup>*2</sup> |
| 1st Feed(Duty)   | Printing start duty setting                  | 0 to 100      | 25                | 25                |
| 2nd Feed(Duty)   | Secondary paper feed start Duty setting      | 0 to 100      | 35                | 335               |

<sup>\*1</sup>:100 V model , <sup>\*2</sup>:Except 100 V model

3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Setting:Grain mode

1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents   |
|-------|--|
| Mode0 | Current level (no special control is done {OFF})   |
| Mode1 | Granular image reduction mode (Low) (Standby temperature: -10°C, Control temperature: -5°C)  |
| Mode2 | Granular image reduction mode (High) (Standby temperature: -20°C, Control temperature: -5°C) |

Initial setting value:Mode0

- When Mode change (Mode 0 ↔ Mode 1 or 2), we recommend implementing "U 410 Adjusting the halftone automatically".

2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting:Belt Mode**

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents   |
|-------|--|
| Mode0 | No drive at Standby (Ready, Low Power) (Default)                             |
| Mode1 | Full-speed drive for 500ms at every 10 minutes at Standby (Ready, Low Power) |
| Mode2 | Full-speed drive for 500ms at every 3 minutes at Standby (Ready, Low Power)  |

Initial setting value:Mode0

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U167 Clearing the fuser count (Message: Clear Fuser Counter)

**Contents**

Displays and clears the fuser count.

**Purpose**

Verify the fuser count after replacement. Also, clear the counts after replacement.

**Method**

- 1 Press the [Start] key.  
The fuser count is displayed.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items | Contents                                   |
|-------|--|
| Cnt   | Displays and change the fuser unit counts. |
| Clear | Clears the fuser count                     |

**Method: Clear**

- 1 Select [Clear].
- 2 Press the [Start] key.  
Fuser unit counts are cleared.

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U198 Set Fuser Phase Control

### (Message: Set Fuser Phase Control)

#### Contents

Switch the fuser phase control.

#### Purpose

Switch the fuser phase control.

#### Execution

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items | Contents                    | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------|-----------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Mode  | Set the phase control mode. | 0 to 1        | 0               |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U199 Fuser temperature

### (Message: Fuser Temperature)

#### Contents

Fuser temperature is displayed.

#### Purpose

Execute to check the fuser temperature.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.  
Fuser temperature is displayed.

| Items              | Contents   |
|--------------------|--|
| Heat Roller Edge 1 | Displays the heat roller edge temperature (°C)   |
| Heat Roller Center | Displays the heat roller center temperature (°C) |

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U200 All LEDs lighting

(Message: Turn ON All Panel LEDs)

### Contents

All the LEDs on the operation panel are lit.

### Purpose

Execute to check the operation panel LED lighting.

### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Execute].
- 3 Press the [Start] key.  
All the LEDs on the operation panel are blinking.
- 4 Press the [Stop] key to turn the display off.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U201 Initializing the touch panel (Message: Initialize Touch Panel)

### Contents

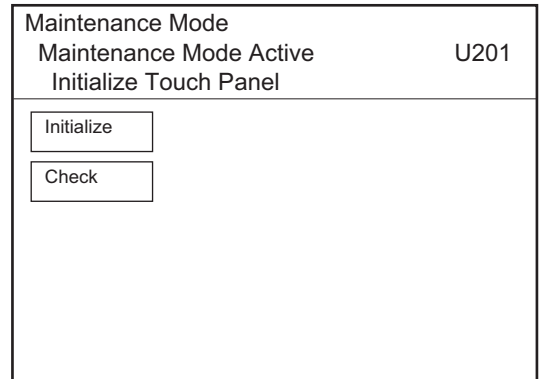
Adjusts touch panel detecting positions.

### Purpose

Correct and confirm the touch panel detecting positions, when the panel PWB or the operation panel is replaced or if the detecting positions are not aligned.

### Method

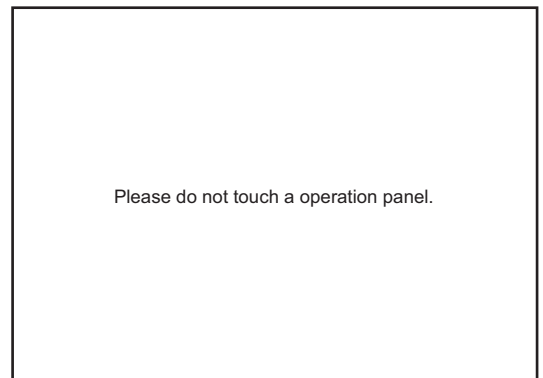
- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to execute.
- 3 Press the [Start] key.  
The screen for executing is displayed.



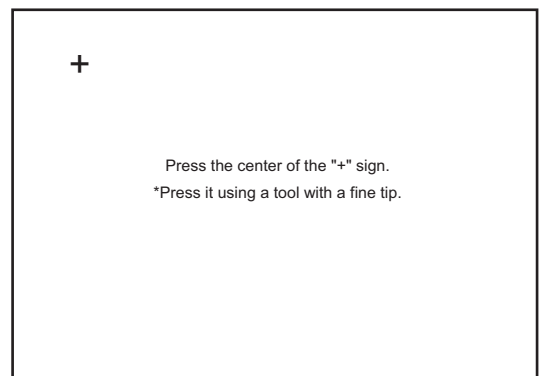
| Items      | Contents  |
|------------|---|
| Initialize | Automatically corrects the touch panel display position |
| Check      | Checks the touch panel display position                 |

### Method: Initialize

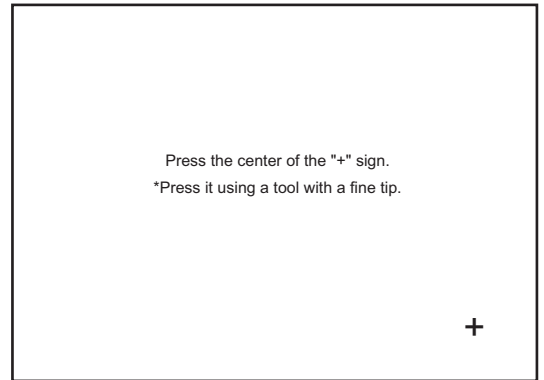
Do not touch the touch panel.



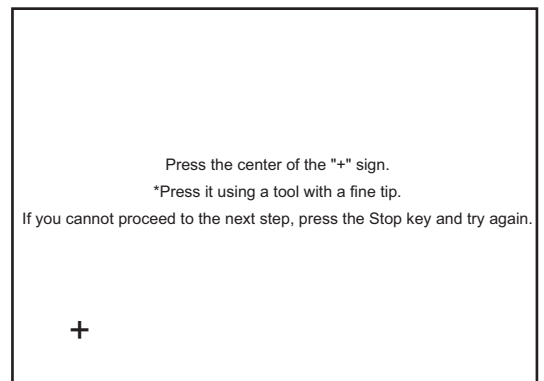
- 1 Press the center of indicated "+".



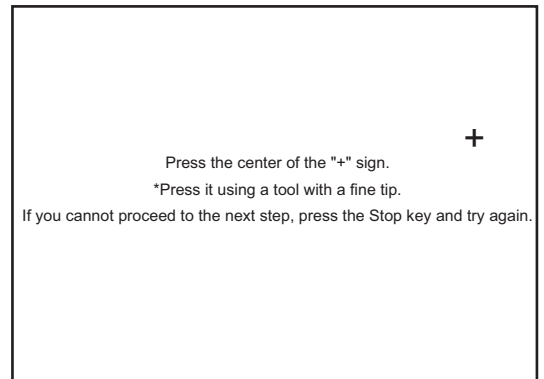
2 Press the center of indicated "+".



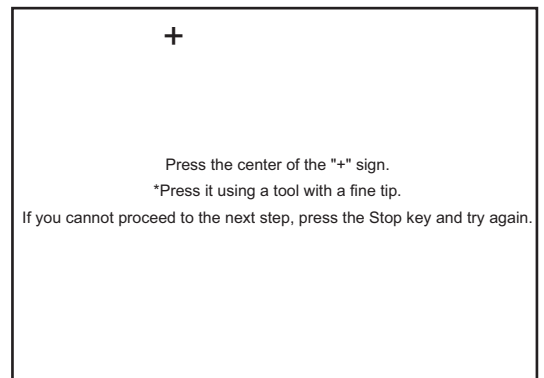
3 Press the center of indicated "+".



4 Press the center of indicated "+".



5 Press the center of indicated "+".



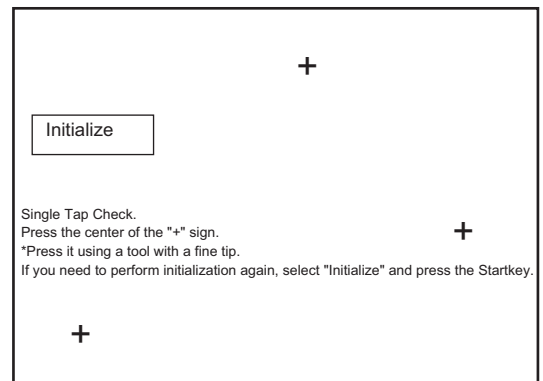
- 6 [Initialize Completed] appears after setting and the touch panel is automatically corrected.
- 7 After finishing setting, the [Check] screen is automatically displayed.



### Method: Check

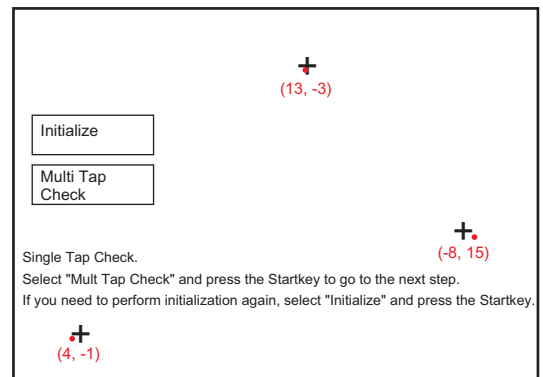
#### Single Tap Check

- 1 Press the center of indicated three "+", and then check the display position.



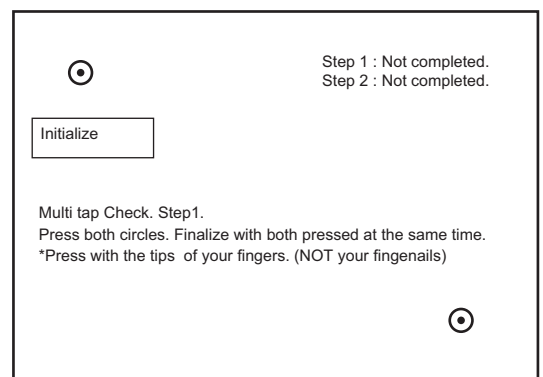
- 2 Check that the gap of the X and Y axis of the displayed coordinate is 6 or less.

If out of the specified value, select [Initialize] and press the [Start] key to return to Step.1.



#### Multi Tap Check

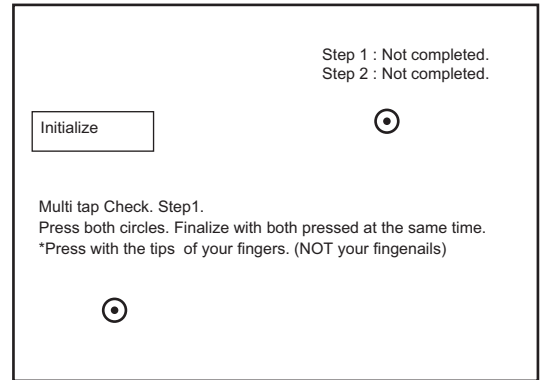
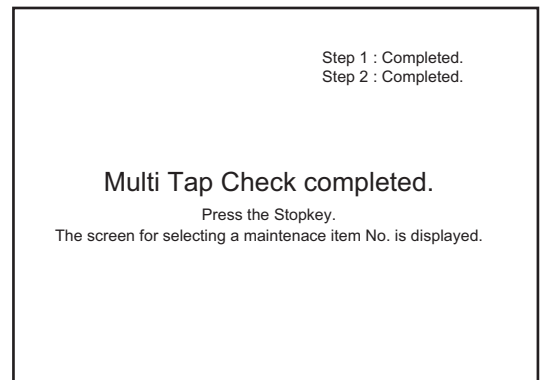
- 1 Select [Multi Tap Check] and press the [Start] key.
- 2 Press 2 points of [○] simultaneously. (Step1)  
Displays the detected point with a red dot if it is out of the default value.  
If out of the specified value, select [Initialize] and press the [Start] key to return to Step.1.





**3 Press 2 points of [○] simultaneously. (Step2)**

[Completed] appears in Step1 and Step2 if it is within the default value.

**4 [Multi Tap Check completed.] appears when the setting is complete.****Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U203 Check DP operation

### (Message: Check DP Operation)

#### Contents

Simulate the original conveying operation separately in the DP.

#### Purpose

Check the DP operation

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Place an original in the DP if running this simulation with paper.
- 3 Select the scan speed

| Items        | Contents                                   |
|--------------|--|
| Normal Speed | Normal scanning (600dpi)                   |
| High Speed   | High speed scanning                        |
| Mode         | Set the conveying timing inspection mode   |
| Reset        | Reset the conveying timing inspection data |
| Result       | Check the conveying timing                 |

#### Method: Normal Speed/High Speed

- 1 Select the item to operate.

| Items            | Contents  |
|------------------|---|
| CCD ADP          | With paper, a single-sided original is fed to the CCD                           |
| CCD RADP         | With paper, a double-sided original is fed to the CCD                           |
| CIS              | With paper, a double-sided original is fed to the CIS                           |
| CCD ADP (Non-P)  | Without paper, a single-sided original is fed to the CCD (continuous operation) |
| CCD RADP (Non-P) | Without paper, a double-sided original is fed to the CCD (continuous operation) |
| CIS(Non-P)       | Without paper, a double-sided original is fed to the CIS (continuous operation) |

- 2 Press the [Start] key.  
The operation starts.
- 3 To stop the operation, press the [Stop] key.

#### Setting: Mode

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents  |
|-------|---|
| On    | Set the conveying timing inspection mode to On  |
| Off   | Set the conveying timing inspection mode to Off |

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Method: Reset**

- 1 Select [Execute].
- 2 Press the [Start] key to reset.

**Method: Result**

- 1 Displays the conveying timing data.

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U204 Key card/key counter setting

### (Message: Set Key-Card/Key-Counter)

#### Contents

Sets the optional key card or key counter connection.

#### Purpose

Execute when installing the key card or key counter.

#### Method

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select the item to set.

The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items   | Contents   |
|---------|--|
| Device  | Sets the key card/key counter connection.                    |
| Message | Sets the message indicated when the device is not installed. |

#### Setting: Device

1 Select the type of the optional counter.

| Items                | Contents   |
|----------------------|--|
| Key-Card             | Key card installation  |
| Key-Counter          | Key counter installation   |
| Parallel Coin Vender | Use Parallel Coin Vender (Displays when U 206 On / Off Config is set to Off) |
| Off                  | Not installed  |

Initial setting: Off

2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

3 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

#### Setting: Message

1 Select the item to set.

| Items       | Contents  |
|-------------|---|
| Key Device  | Prioritized display of the key device on the login screen when multiple devices are used.   |
| Coin Vendor | Prioritized display of the coin vendor on the login screen when multiple devices are used . |

Initial setting: Coin Vendor

2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

3 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U206 Sets the coin vendor

### (Message: Set Coin Vendor Mode)

#### Description

Sets the optional Coin Vendor connection.

Also, sets the details such as the operation mode and unit price when the coin vendor is installed. (This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines.)

#### Purpose

To run this maintenance item if a coin vendor is installed.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.  
The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items           | Contents   |
|-----------------|--|
| On/Off Config   | Sets the presence or absence of the coin vendor<br>(When U204 Device is other than Parallel Coin Vender) |
| No Coin Action  | Behavior when change runs out during copying   |
| Price           | Charge per copy by size and color  |
| Boot Mode       | Setting activation mode  |
| Apl Charge Mode | Extended charge unit price   |

#### Setting: On/Off Config

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                         |
|-------|----------------------------------|
| On    | The coin vendor is installed     |
| Off   | The coin vendor is not installed |

Initial setting: Off

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
- 3 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

#### Setting: No Coin Action

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items      | Contents                    |
|------------|-----------------------------|
| All Clear  | All clear at coin shortage  |
| Auto Clear | Auto clear at coin shortage |
| Off        | Do nothing at coin shortage |

Initial setting: Off

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: Price**

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items  | Contents                   |
|--------|----------------------------|
| Normal | Charge setting: Normal     |
| AD     | Charge setting: Commercial |
| Print  | Charge setting: Print      |
| Apl    | Charge setting: Extended   |

**Setting: Normal / AD**

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items      | Contents             |
|------------|----------------------|
| B/W        | Black & White        |
| CMY        | Single color C, M, Y |
| RGB        | Single color R, G, B |
| Full Color | Full color           |

- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the charger setting value.

| Items     | Contents       | Setting range | Initial setting |                       |
|-----------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
|           |                |               | B/W             | CMY /RGB / Full Color |
| A3-Ledger | A3/Ledger size | 0 to 300      | 10              | 100                   |
| B4        | B4 size        | 0 to 300      | 10              | 50                    |
| Card      | Cardstock      | 0 to 300      | 10              | 30                    |
| Other     | Others         | 0 to 300      | 10              | 50                    |

Settable in 10-yen increments

Value of 0 allows non-restricted copying. (At a periodic maintenance, etc.)

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: Print**

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items      | Contents      |
|------------|---------------|
| B/W        | Black & White |
| Full Color | Full color    |

- 2 Select the item to set.

- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the charger setting value.

| Items     | Contents       | Setting range | Initial setting |            |
|-----------|----------------|---------------|-----------------|------------|
|           |                |               | B/W             | Full Color |
| A3-Ledger | A3/Ledger size | 0 to 300      | 10              | 100        |
| B4        | B4 size        | 0 to 300      | 10              | 50         |
| Card      | Cardstock      | 0 to 300      | 10              | 30         |
| Other     | Others         | 0 to 300      | 10              | 50         |

Settable in 10-yen increments

Value of 0 allows non-restricted copying. (At a periodic maintenance, etc.)

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Setting: Apl

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the charger setting value.

| Items | Contents                       | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------|--------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Apl1  | Expanded charging unit 1       | 0 to 300      | 10              |
| Apl2  | Expanded charging unit price 2 | 0 to 300      | 10              |
| Apl3  | Expanded charging unit price 3 | 0 to 300      | 10              |
| Apl4  | Expanded charging unit price 4 | 0 to 300      | 10              |
| Apl5  | Expanded charging unit price 5 | 0 to 300      | 10              |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Setting: Boot Mode

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items        | Contents                                  |
|--------------|---|
| Normal       | Assign activation to normal mode          |
| Copy Service | Assign activation to copy service display |

Initial setting: Copy Service

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
- 3 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

### Setting: Apl Charge Mode

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                              |
|-------|---------------------------------------|
| On    | The extended charge unit is used.     |
| Off   | The extended charge unit is not used. |

Initial setting: Off

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U207 Operation key check

### (Message: Check Panel Key Operation)

#### Contents

Check the operation panel keys.

#### Purpose

Check the operation of all the keys and LEDs on the operation panel.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key to display execution window.
- 2 [Count 0] appears and the LED at the most left column in the operation panel is turned on.
- 3 Pressing the keys in order from the top at the row where the LED is lit, count increases one by one. When pressing all the keys at the row and there is an LED at the next right side row, the LED is lit.  
The job separator LED is lit during execution and turns off when completing.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.



## U221 USB host lock function setting

### (Message: Set USB Host Lock Function)

#### Contents

Sets ON/OFF of the USB Host lock function. When setting it to on, the device connected to the USB host is not recognized.

#### Purpose

Change the setting according to the user's request

#### Method

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select [Host Lock].

The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items     | Contents                                |
|-----------|---|
| Host Lock | Turns the USB Host lock function on/off |

3 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                                    |
|-------|---|
| On    | The USB Host lock function is available     |
| Off   | The USB Host lock function is not available |

Initial setting: Off

4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

5 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

\*: The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U222 Setting the IC card type

### (Message: Set IC Card Type)

#### Contents

Sets the ID card type

#### Purpose

Change the type of ID card

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents   |
|-------|--|
| Other | Select when the ID card type is other than SSFC. |
| SSFC  | Select when the ID card type is SSFC.            |

Initial setting: Other

SSFC: Shared Security Formats Cooperation

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U223 Operation panel lock

### (Message: Set Panel Operation Lock)

#### Contents

Execute setting the operation panel function.

#### Purpose

Execute to prohibit the system menu and job cancel operations from the operation panel by the users other than those with administrator privileges.

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.

| Items          | Contents   |
|----------------|--|
| Unlock         | Unlock System Menu operation   |
| Partial Lock 1 | Lock System Menu operation and Input/Output setting  |
| Partial Lock 2 | Lock System Menu operation, Input/Output setting and Job execution setting                 |
| Partial Lock 3 | Lock System Menu operation, Input/Output setting, Job execution setting and Paper settings |
| Lock           | Lock System Menu operation and Job Cancel operation  |

Initial setting: Unlock

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

| Operation item                               | Partial Lock 1 | Lock        |
|--|----------------|-------------|
| Entering the maintenance mode                | Prohibition    | Prohibition |
| Switching to System Menu                     | Prohibition    | Prohibition |
| Send, Send from Document Box                 | Prohibition    | Prohibition |
| Switches the Yellow developer On/Off setting | Prohibition    | Prohibition |
| Switch to registration/editing Document Box  | Prohibition    | Prohibition |
| Pressing the [Stop] key                      | Permission     | Prohibition |
| Pressing the [Status/Job Cancel] key         | Permission     | Prohibition |
| Disconnect the FAX line                      | Permission     | Prohibition |

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U224 Setting Original Panel Display

### (Message: Install Original Panel Display)

#### Description

Changes the image data and the message of the opening screen at the machine startup and the image data and the message of the service call screen to user specified data.

#### Purpose

Change the setting according to the user's request

#### Setting

- 1 Write the image data or the message data to the USB memory.
- 2 Insert a USB memory into the USB memory slot.
- 3 Turn the power switch on.
- 4 Press the [Start] key.
- 5 Select the item to set.

| Items     | Contents   |
|-----------|--|
| Install   | Installs the image data or the message data      |
| UnInstall | Restores the original image data or message data |

- 6 Select the item to set.

| Operation item  | Partial Lock 1         | Lock                                    |
|-----------------|------------------------|---|
| Opening Img     | Startup screen         | Entire start display                    |
| Call Img        | Service call screen    | Graphic display area                    |
| Home Menu Img   | Home Menu screen       | Home Menu display area                  |
| Call Msg Top    | Service call message 1 | Message display area (top)              |
| Call Msg Detail | Service call message 2 | Message display area (descriptive area) |

- 7 Press the [Start] key.  
Installation or uninstallation is started.
- 8 When normally completed, [OK] is displayed.

#### Supplement 1: File information

| Description            | File name                  | Image size (in pixels)     | File format       |
|------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------|
| Startup screen         | opening_ext_image.png      | Length: 480<br>Width : 800 | PNG               |
| Service call screen    | callwin_ext_image.png      | Length: 200<br>Width : 180 | PNG               |
| Home Menu screen       | menu_background.png        | Length: 480<br>Width : 800 | PNG               |
| Service call message 1 | callwin_ext_mes_top.txt    | -                          | TEXT<br>(Unicode) |
| Service call message 2 | callwin_ext_mes_detail.txt | -                          | TEXT<br>(Unicode) |

**Supplement 1: Displaying Startup screen**

The pre-installed graphics file is displayed at power on or recovering from sleeping.

**Graphics display on service call screen**

The pre-installed graphics file is displayed at a service call.

**How to change the message**

Entering #562 (4 letters) using the numeric keypad during a service call screen display will be displayed service call messages 1 and 2.

**How to reset the message display**

Reverting the maintenance mode will automatically reset the message to the previous.

**Caution**

The graphics file for startup screen must be opaque. (To avoid the background from overlapping at recovering from sleeping.)

The total size of the files installable is approximately 4 MB.

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

**U230 Optional device serial number****(Message: Optional Device Serial No)****Contents**

Displays the optional device serial number

**Purpose**

Specify the production lot from the serial number to make it help of investigation at problem occurrence.

**Method**

1 Press the [Start] key.

Displays the serial number.

| Items    | Contents                                       |
|----------|--|
| DP       | Displays the document processor serial number. |
| Finisher | Displays the finisher serial number.           |
| PF1      | Displays the paper feeder 1 serial number.     |

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U234 Setting destination for punch

### (Message: Set Punch Destination)

#### Contents

Sets destination of the punch unit for the finisher.

#### Purpose

Execute when installing the punch unit for the destination different from the main unit.

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Destination].

| Items         | Contents                          |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| Auto          | Match the destination setting.    |
| Japan Metric  | Japan metric                      |
| Inch          | North American inch specification |
| Europe Metric | European metric                   |

Initial setting: Destination

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
- 4 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U237 Finisher eject volume limit

(Message: Set Finisher Paper Stack Limit)

### Contents

Sets the stacking count of the main tray and middle tray.

### Purpose

Execute when stacking failure occurs.

### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Main Tray].
- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items       | Contents                            | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Main Tray   | Sets the main tray stack capacity   | 0 to 1        | 0               |
| Middle tray | Sets the middle tray stack capacity | 0 to 1        | 0               |

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
- 5 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

| Main tray input value | Main Tray           |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
|                       | 3000-sheet finisher | 1000-sheet finisher |
| 0                     | 3000 sheets         | 1000 sheets         |
| 1                     | 1500 sheets         | 500 sheets          |

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U240 Finisher operation check

(Message: Check Finisher Operation)

### Contents

Turn the finisher's motors and solenoids on.

### Purpose

Execute for the finisher's motors and solenoids operation check.

### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to operate.  
The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items    | Contents                          |
|----------|-----------------------------------|
| Motor    | Finisher motor operation check    |
| Solenoid | Finisher solenoid operation check |
| Mail Box | Mail Box motor operation check    |



**Method: Motor**

- 1 Select the item to operate.
- 2 Press the [Start] key.

The operation starts.

| Items              | Contents  |
|--------------------|---|
| Feed In(H)         | Drive the DF paper entry motor at high speed.   |
| Feed In(L)         | Drive the DF paper entry motor at low speed.  |
| Middle(H)          | Drive the DF middle motor at high speed.  |
| Middle(L)          | Drive the DF middle motor at low speed.   |
| Eject(H)           | Drive the DF exit motor at high speed.  |
| Eject(L)           | Drive the DF exit motor at low speed.   |
| Save(H) *1         | Drives the DF relief drum motor at high speed   |
| Save(L) *1         | Drives the DF relief drum motor at low speed  |
| Tray               | Drive the DF tray motor.<br><br>Operation pattern: After descending to the lower limit, ascends and descends again when passing 1s after detecting the middle sensor off. ascends again when detecting the middle sensor on and stops at the upper limit. |
| Staple Move        | Drive the DF slide motor.   |
| Staple             | Drive the DF staple motor.  |
| Width Test(A3)     | Drive the DF side registration motor 1, 2.  |
| Width Test(LD)     | Drive the DF side registration motor 1, 2.  |
| Beat               | Drive the DF paddle motor.  |
| Eject Unlock(HP)   | Drive the DF exit release motor at the home position.   |
| Sort Test *1       | Execute the DF shift operation.   |
| Eject Unlock(30)   | Drive the DF exit release motor at the 30-sheet bundle position   |
| Eject Unlock(50)   | Drive the DF exit release motor at the 50-sheet bundle position   |
| Eject Unlock(Fix)  | Drive the DF exit release motor at the fixed position   |
| Eject Unlock(Full) | Drive the DF exit release motor at the full open position   |
| Punch              | Drive the punch motor.  |
| Punch Move         | Drive the punch slide motor.  |
| Eject Conv(H) *2   | Drive the DF drum motor at high speed.  |
| Eject Conv(L) *2   | Drive the DF drum motor at low speed.   |

\*1: 3000-sheet DF only, \*2: 1000-sheet DF only

To stop the operation, press the [Stop] key.

**Method: Solenoid**

- 1 Select the item to operate.
- 2 Press the [Start] key.

The operation starts.

| Items        | Contents                             |
|--------------|--------------------------------------|
| Sub Tray *1  | Turn the DF feed-shift solenoid 1 on |
| Save Drum *1 | Turn the DF feed-shift solenoid 2 on |
| Punch        | Turn the punch solenoid on           |

\*1: 3000-sheet DF only

To stop the operation, press the [Stop] key.

**Method: Mail Box**

- 1 Select the item to operate.
- 2 Press the [Start] key.

The operation starts.

| Items  | Contents                                  |
|--------|---|
| Conv   | Drives the MB drive motor to convey paper |
| Branch | Drives the MB drive motor for feed-shift  |

To stop the operation, press the [Stop] key.

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U241 Finisher switch check

### (Message: Check Finisher Switches)

#### Contents

Displays the status of finisher's switches and sensors operation.

#### Purpose

Execute for the finisher's switches and sensors operation check.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to operate.  
The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items    | Contents  |
|----------|---|
| Finisher | Check the finisher switch and sensor operation.   |
| Mail Box | Check the mail Box switch and sensor operation.   |
| Punch    | Check the punch unit switch and sensor operation. |

#### Method: Finisher

Check the switches and sensors by manually turning them on/off.

The switch indication is inverted when the switch is detected.

| Items              | Contents                  |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| Front Cover        | DF front cover switch     |
| Eject cover *1     | DF exit cover switch      |
| Top Cover *2       | DF top cover switch       |
| Tray U-Limit       | DF tray sensor 1          |
| Tray HP2 *1        | DF tray sensor 2          |
| Tray Middle        | DF tray sensor 3          |
| Tray L-Limit       | DF Tray sensor 4          |
| Tray Top           | DF tray upper side sensor |
| HP                 | DF paper entry sensor     |
| Sub Tray Eject *1  | DF sub tray exit sensor   |
| Middle Tray Eject  | DF middle exit sensor     |
| Drum *1            | DF drum sensor            |
| Staple HP          | DF slide sensor           |
| Middle Tray        | DF bundle exit sensor     |
| Width Front HP     | DF width adjustment 1     |
| Width Tail HP      | DF width adjustment 2     |
| Bundle Eject HP    | DF bundle exit sensor     |
| Match Paddle       | DF adjustment sensor      |
| Lead Paddle        | DF paddle sensor          |
| Shift Front HP *1  | DF shift sensor 1         |
| Shift Tail HP *1   | DF shift sensor 2         |
| Shift Unlock HP *1 | DF shift release sensor   |
| Sub Tray Full *1   | DF sub tray full sensor   |
| Shift Set *1       | DF shift set sensor       |

\*1: 3000-sheet DF only, \*2: 1000-sheet DF only

**Method: Mail Box**

- 1 Check the switches and sensors by manually turning them on/off.

The switch indication is inverted when the switch is detected.

| Items       | Contents                   |
|-------------|----------------------------|
| Eject       | MB tray exit sensor        |
| Cover       | MB cover open close switch |
| Over Flow1  | MB tray sensor 1           |
| Over Flow2  | MB tray sensor 2           |
| Over Flow3  | MB tray sensor 3           |
| Over Flow4  | MB tray sensor 4           |
| Over Flow5  | MB tray sensor 5           |
| Over Flow 6 | MB tray sensor 6           |
| Over Flow 7 | MB tray sensor 7           |
| Motor HP    | MB home position switch    |

**Method: Punch**

- 1 Check the switches and sensors by manually turning them on/off.

The switch indication is inverted when the switch is detected.

| Items       | Contents                   |
|-------------|----------------------------|
| Punch HP    | Punch home position sensor |
| Edge Face 1 | Punch paper edge sensor 1  |
| Edge Face 2 | Punch paper edge sensor 2  |
| Edge Face 3 | Punch paper edge sensor 3  |
| Edge Face 4 | Punch paper edge sensor 4  |
| Tank        | Punch tank set switch      |
| Tank Full   | Punch tank full sensor     |

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U243 Checking the DP motor

(Message: Check DP Motors)

### Contents

Drive the motor of the document processor.

### Purpose

Check the operation of the motor of the document processor.

### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to operate.

| Items            | Contents   |
|------------------|--|
| Feed Motor *3    | Drive the DP papaer feed motor for normal rotation |
| Conv Motor       | DP conveying motor                                 |
| Rev Motor *2     | Drive DP feedshift motor.                          |
| Lift Motor *3    | DP lift motor                                      |
| Feed clutch *2   | Drive DP feed clutch.                              |
| Regist clutch *2 | DP registration clutch                             |
| Eject motor *3   | DP eject motor                                     |
| Regist Motor *1  | DP registration motor                              |
| DP Fan *1        | DP drive fan motor                                 |
| CIS Fan *1       | DP CIS fan motor                                   |

\*1: DP-7110 only, \*2: DP-7120 only, \*3: Except DP-7120

- 3 Press the [Start] key. Each operation starts.  
To stop the operation, press the [Stop] key.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U244 DP switch check

### (Message: Check DP Switches)

#### Contents

Displays each switch and sensor status of the document processor.

#### Purpose

Execute to check the operation of switches and sensors of the document processor.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Check the switches and sensors by manually turning them on/off.  
The switch indication is inverted when the switch is detected.

| Items              | Contents                            |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Feed               | Check DP feed sensor.               |
| Regist             | Check DP registration sensor.       |
| Timing             | Check DP timing sensor.             |
| CIS Head *2        | Check DP timing sensor.             |
| Set                | Check DP original detection sensor. |
| Longitudinal       | Check DP original length sensor.    |
| Lift U-Limit *3    | Check DP lift upper limit sensor.   |
| Lift L-Limit *3    | Check DP lift lower limit sensor.   |
| Cover Open         | Check DP top cover switch.          |
| Open               | Check DP open/close switch.         |
| Eject *3           | Check DP exit sensor.               |
| Branch Motor HP *1 | Check DP feedshift sensor.          |

\*1: DP-7100 only, \*2: DP-7110 only, \*3: Except DP-7120

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U245 Checking the message

### (Message: Check Display Message)

#### Contents

Displays messages indicated on the touch panel of the operation panel.

#### Purpose

Execute to check messages indicated.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Using the [▲] [▼] key, display messages in order.  
Enter the message number using the numeric keys, then press the [Start] key to display the message of the designated number.
- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys key, switch the language.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U246 Finisher adjustment

### (Message: Adjust Finisher)

#### Contents

Execute adjustment for the finisher installation.

#### Purpose

- Punch registration stop timing adjustment in the punch mode.  
Adjust if paper skews or is folded in A z-shape in the punch mode.
- Punch position stop timing adjustment in the punch mode.  
Adjust if the punch hole position is not as specified in the punch mode.
- Punch center position timing adjustment in the punch mode.  
Adjust the punch center position if it is shifted in the punch mode.
- Front/rear width adjuster home position adjustment  
Adjust when the consistency of the side registration guides and paper is not good and paper jam occurs.
- Adjustment of front/rear shift home position  
Performed when adjustment is lost with the ejected paper
- Front/rear staple home position adjustment  
Adjust if the staple is not centered on the paper in the staple mode.
- Adjustment of upper/lower side registration home position  
Adjust when the consistency of the side registration guides and paper is not good and paper jam occurs.

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.  
The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items    | Contents                              |
|----------|---------------------------------------|
| Finisher | Setting the finisher adjustment value |

#### Setting: Finisher

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items             | Contents   |
|-------------------|--|
| Punch Regist      | Punch registration stop timing adjustment in the punch mode. |
| Punch Feed        | Punch position stop timing adjustment in the punch mode.     |
| Punch Width       | Punch center position timing adjustment in the punch mode.   |
| Width Front HP    | Front width adjuster home position adjustment                |
| Width Tail HP     | Rear width adjuster home position adjustment                 |
| Shift Front HP *1 | Adjustment of front shift home position                      |
| Shift Tail HP *1  | Adjustment of rear shift home position                       |
| Staple HP         | Front/rear staple home position adjustment                   |

\*1: 3000-sheet DF only



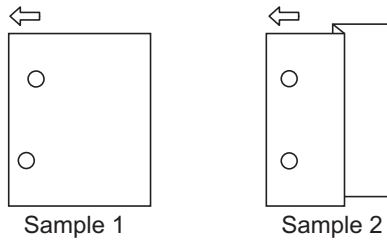
**Setting: Punch Regist**

- 1 Select [Punch Regist].
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Content to adjust                            | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|--|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Adjusting the punch registration stop timing | -5 to 5       | 0               | 1 mm           |

Increase the value if paper is skewed (sample 1).

Reduce the set value if paper is folded in a Z-shape (sample2).



Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

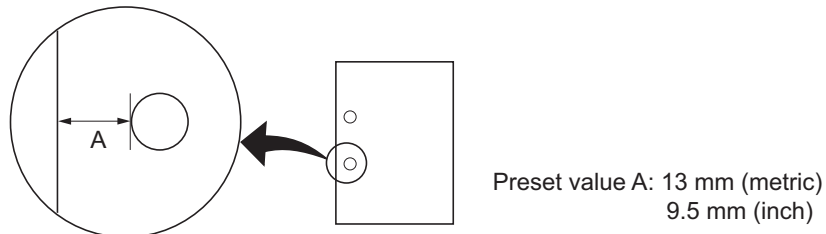
**Setting: Punch Feed**

- 1 Select [Punch Feed].
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Content to adjust               | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|---------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Adjusting the punch stop timing | -5 to 5       | 0               | 1 mm           |

Increase the specified value if the punch position is shorter than specified.

Reduce the specified value if the punch position is longer than specified.



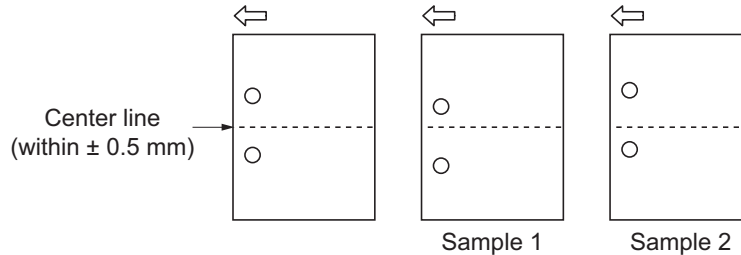
- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: Punch Width**

- 1 Select [Punch Width].
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Content to adjust                       | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|---|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Punch center position timing adjustment | -5 to 5       | 0               | 1 mm           |

Reduce the specified value if the punch position is shorter than specified.  
Increase the specified value if the punch position is longer than specified.



- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: Width Front HP / Width Tail HP**

- 1 Select [Width Front HP] or [Width HP].
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Content to adjust                             | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|---|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Front width adjuster home position adjustment | -5 to 5       | 0               | 1 mm           |
| Rear width adjuster home position adjustment  | -5 to 5       | 0               | 1 mm           |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
- 4 Press the [Stop] key to return to the screen to select the maintenance item No.
- 5 Enter U240 and select [Motor] and then [Width Test(A4R)].  
The middle tray side registration guides move to A4R size position.
- 6 Insert paper into the side registration guides to check the consistence.
- 7 Repeat the above adjustment until the consistency is appropriate.

**Setting: [Shift Front HP/Shift Tail HP]**

- 1 Select [Shift Front HP] or [Shift Tail HP].
- 2 Change the setting value using the +/- keys or numeric keys.

| Content to adjust                       | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|---|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Adjustment of front shift home position | -5 to 5       | 0               | 1 mm           |
| Adjustment of rear shift home position  | -5 to 5       | 0               | 1 mm           |

- 3 Press the start key. The value is set.
- 4 Press the stop key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.
- 5 Enter maintenance mode U240 and select [Motor], then [Sort Test].

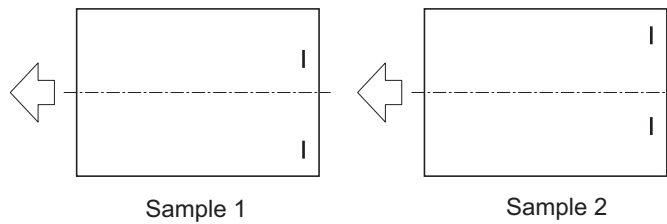
- 6 Repeat the above adjustment until eject paper is properly in position.

### Setting: Staple HP

- 1 Select [Staple HP].
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Content to adjust                          | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|--|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Front/rear staple home position adjustment | -5 to 5       | 0               | 1 mm           |

Increase the set value if the staple position is shifted to the machine front side (sample1).  
Lower the set value if the staple position is shifted to the machine rear side (sample2).



- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U247 Paper feed operation check

### (Message: Check Paper Feeder)

#### Contents

Turn the motor and clutch power on for each feed unit.

#### Purpose

Execute to check motor and clutch operation of each feed unit.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to operate.  
The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items | Contents                         |
|-------|----------------------------------|
| LCF   | Operate the high capacity feeder |

#### Setting

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Display            |                    | Contents                             |
|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Motor              | Off                | PF paper feed motor OFF              |
|                    | On                 | PF paper feed motor ON               |
| Clutch             | C1 Clutch          | PF paper feed clutch 1: ON           |
|                    | C2 Clutch          | PF paper feed clutch 2: ON           |
|                    | V Feed Clutch      | PF vertical conveying clutch ON      |
|                    | H Feed 1 Clutch    | PF horizontal conveying clutch 1: ON |
|                    | H Feed 2 Clutch    | PF horizontal conveying clutch 2: ON |
|                    | Cassette1 Solenoid | PF 1 solenoid ON                     |
| Cassette2 Solenoid | PF 2 solenoid ON   |                                      |
| Execute            |                    | Starts operation                     |

- 2 Select [Execute].
- 3 Press the [Start] key. Starts the motor operation.  
To stop the operation of the motor, press the [Stop] key.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U250 Set Maintenance Counter Pre-set

### (Message: Set Maintenance Counter Pre-set)

#### Contents

Changes the pre-set values for the maintenance cycle and automatic grayscale adjustment.

#### Purpose

Change the timing to display the message for maintenance and automatic grayscale adjustment

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.
- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items         | Contents  | Setting range | Initial setting |
|---------------|---|---------------|-----------------|
| M.Cnt A       | Changes the maintenance counter (Kit A)                     | 0 to 9999999  | 600000          |
| M.Cnt HT      | Change the maintenance counter preset value (HT adjustment) | 0 to 9999999  | 0               |
| Cassette 1    | Change the maintenance counter preset value (Cassette 1)    | 0 to 9999999  | 300000          |
| Cassette 2    | Change the maintenance counter preset value (Cassette 2)    | 0 to 9999999  | 300000          |
| Cassette 3 *1 | Change the maintenance counter preset value (Cassette 3)    | 0 to 9999999  | 300000          |
| Cassette 4 *1 | Change the maintenance counter preset value (Cassette 4)    | 0 to 9999999  | 300000          |

\*1: 500 X 2 cassettes / 1500-sheet X 2 lines only

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U251 Clearing the maintenance counter

### (Message: Clear Maintenance Counter)

#### Contents

Displays, clears or changes the maintenance count.

#### Purpose

Execute to check the maintenance count

Also, clear the count at the maintenance.

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.
- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items         | Contents                                     | Setting range |
|---------------|--|---------------|
| M.Cnt A       | Maintenance cycle counter (Kit A)            | 0 to 9999999  |
| M.Cnt HT      | Maintenance cycle counter (HT adjustment)    | 0 to 9999999  |
| Cassette 1    | Maintenance cycle counter value (cassette 1) | 0 to 9999999  |
| Cassette 2    | Maintenance cycle counter value (cassette 2) | 0 to 9999999  |
| Cassette 3 *1 | Maintenance cycle counter value (cassette 3) | 0 to 9999999  |
| Cassette 4 *1 | Maintenance cycle counter value (cassette 4) | 0 to 9999999  |
| Clear         | Clears all the maintenance counts            | 0             |

\*1: 500 X 2 cassettes / 1500-sheet X 2 lines only

#### Clearing

- 1 Select [Clear].
- 2 Press the [Start] key to clear the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U252 Destination

### (Message: Set Destination)

#### Contents

Switch the operations and screens of the main unit according to the destination.

#### Purpose

Execute after initializing the backup RAM, in order to return the setting to the value before replacement or initialization

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.

| Items            | Contents      |
|------------------|---------------|
| Japan Metric *1  | Japan metric  |
| Inch *2          | Inch          |
| Europe Metric *2 | Europe Metric |
| Asia Pacific *2  | Asia Pacific  |
| Australia *2     | Australia     |
| China *2         | China         |
| Korea *2         | Korea         |

\*1: 100 V model only, \*2: Except 100 V model

Initial setting: Seted destination

- 3 Press the [Start] key.  
Initializes according to the destination
- 4 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.  
An error code is displayed when an error occurs.  
When errors occur, turn the power switch off then on, and execute initialization using maintenance mode U252.

#### Error codes

| Codes | Contents                  |
|-------|---------------------------|
| 0001  | Controller (Entity Error) |
| 0002  | Controller error          |
| 0020  | Engine error              |
| 0040  | Scanner error             |

## U253 Switching the double/single counts

### (Message: Set Double/Single Count)

#### Contents

Switches the count timing for the total counter and other counters by color mode.

#### Purpose

Select, according to user's request (copy service provider), if the maximum size paper is to be counted as one sheet (single count) or two sheets (double count)

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Color] or [B/W].

| Items | Contents  |
|-------|---|
| B/W   | Switch the counter for B/W mode (Single/Double Count) |

- 3 Select [SGL(All)] or [DBL(Folio)].

| Items          | Contents   |
|----------------|--|
| SGL(All)       | Set single count for all the paper sizes           |
| DBL(A3/Ledger) | Set double count for A3(420mm) size or larger      |
| DBL(B4)        | Set double count for larger than Legal(356mm) size |
| DBL(Folio)     | Set double count for Folio size or larger *2       |

Initial setting: DBL(A3/Ledger)

\*2: The Folio length can be set to between 330 and 356 mm using maintenance mode U035. However, the double count will be applied when the set value is 330mm (Initial value) or longer.

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.



## U260 Switching the timing for copy counting

### (Message: Set Copy Count Mode)

#### Contents

Switches the count timing for the total counter and other counters between paper feed and eject.

#### Purpose

Change the count timing according to the user's request

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Selects the copy count timing.

| Items | Contents                          |
|-------|-----------------------------------|
| Feed  | When secondary paper feed starts. |
| Eject | Selects the paper eject timing    |

Initial setting: Eject

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U265 Setting by destination

### (Message: Set Model Destination)

#### Contents

Sets the OEM code.

#### Purpose

Execute when replacing the main PWB, etc.

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items | Contents              |
|-------|-----------------------|
| No.   | Displays the OEM code |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
- 4 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U278 Delivery date setting

### (Message: Set Delivery Date)

#### Contents

Registers the date of delivery of the machine.

#### Purpose

Execute when installing the machine. Execute to check the delivery date of the machine.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Today].
- 3 Press the [Start] key.  
Sets the delivery date of the machine.

#### Clearing

- 1 Select [Clear].
- 2 Press the [Start] key.  
Clears the delivery date of the machine.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U285 Set Service Status Page

(Message: Set Service Status Page)

### Contents

Determines whether to display the digital dot coverage report on the report print.

### Purpose

Change the setting according to the user's request

### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                                 |
|-------|--|
| On    | Displays the digital dot coverage.       |
| Off   | Not to display the digital dot coverage. |

Initial setting: On

- 3 Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U286 Optional language setting (Message: Set Option Language)

### Description

Add/delete/change the optional language

### Purpose

Sets the optional languages selectable from System Menu

### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.

| Items             | Contents                    |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| Option Language 1 | Optional language 1 setting |
| Option Language 2 | Optional language 2 setting |
| Option Language 3 | Optional language 3 setting |
| Option Language 4 | Optional language 4 setting |
| Option Language 5 | Optional language 5 setting |

- 3 Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.
- 4 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

**Setting**

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.

| Items      | Contents                 |
|------------|--------------------------|
| ARABIC     | Installed langauage list |
| BULGARIAN  |                          |
| CATALAN    |                          |
| CHINESE-S  |                          |
| CHINESE-T  |                          |
| CROATIAN   |                          |
| CZECH      |                          |
| DANISH     |                          |
| ESTONIAN   |                          |
| FINNISH    |                          |
| GREEK      |                          |
| HEBREW     |                          |
| HUNGARIAN  |                          |
| JAPANESE   |                          |
| KOREAN     |                          |
| LATVIAN    |                          |
| LITHUANA   |                          |
| NORWEGIAN  |                          |
| POLISH     |                          |
| PORTUGUESE |                          |
| ROMANIA    |                          |
| SLOVAK     |                          |
| SLOVENE    |                          |
| SWEDISH    |                          |
| THAI       |                          |
| TURKISH    |                          |
| VIETNAMESE |                          |
| None       |                          |

Display varies depending on installed optional language package.

- 3 Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U287 Automatic recovery function (Message: Set Auto Reset Function)

### Description

Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the service call error

Purpose

Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the service call error or system error

### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents   |
|-------|--|
| C0XXX | Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the service call error            |
| C1XXX | Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C1xxx code service call error |
| C2XXX | Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C2xxx code service call error |
| C3XXX | Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C3xxx code service call error |
| C4XXX | Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C4xxx code service call error |
| C5XXX | Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C5xxx code service call error |
| C6XXX | Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C6xxx code service call error |
| C7XXX | Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C7xxx code service call error |
| C8XXX | Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C8xxx code service call error |
| C9XXX | Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the C9xxx code service call error |
| CFXXX | Sets whether to enable the automatic recovery function after the CF code service call error    |

- 3 Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U326 Black line cleaning indication

### (Message: Set Black Line Clean Display)

#### Contents

Sets whether to indicate the black lines cleaning guidance when detecting black lines.

#### Purpose

Displays the cleaning guidance to reduce the service call with the black lines by dust on the contact glass when scanning from the document processor.

#### Method

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select the item to set.

The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items           | Contents   |
|-----------------|--|
| Black Line Mode | Sets On/Off of the black line cleaning guidance indication |

3 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                                      |
|-------|---|
| On    | Indicate the black lines cleaning guidance    |
| Off   | Black line cleaning guidance is not indicated |

Initial setting: On

4 Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U327 Cassette heater control setting

### (Message: Set Cassette Heater Control)

#### Contents

Selects the cassette heater control setting.

#### Purpose

Selects the cassette heater control setting

Sets if there is the cassette heater for the optional cassette.

#### Method

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents  |
|-------|---|
| On    | Sets the cassette heater control On (installed).      |
| Off   | Sets the cassette heater control Off (not installed). |

Initial setting: Off

Drum refresh is not executed at power-up when the cassette heater control is [On].

3 Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.



## U332 Adjusting the black coverage coefficient

### (Message: Adjust Coverage Size Calculation Rate)

#### Contents

Sets the coefficient of custom size with A4/Letter size. The coefficient set here is used to convert the black ratio in relation to the A4/Letter size and to display the result in the service status page.

#### Purpose

Set the coefficient for converting the black ratio for custom sizes in relation to the A4/Letter size

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.
- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items | Contents   | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------|--|---------------|-----------------|
| Rate  | Set the coefficient for converting the black ratio for custom sizes in relation to the A4/Letter size. | 0.1 to 3.0    | 1.0             |

- 1 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U340 Setting the applied mode

### (Message: Set Applied Mode)

#### Description

Allocates memory to ensure that there is sufficient memory available for the printer to use as a working area.

#### Purpose

Modify the memory allocation if insufficient memory for transparency support or XPS direct printing occurs.

#### Method

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select the item to set.

The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items       | Contents                             |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| Adj Memory  | Sets the memory allocation           |
| Adj Max Job | Setting the maximum of multiple jobs |

#### setting: Adj Memory

1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items | Contents                                      | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------|---|---------------|-----------------|
| Image | Area temporarily used to create output image. | -50 to 50(MB) | 0               |

Set the values below in case print failure occurs with the memory shortage. (recommended value)

Image : +100

The work area for copy is small and it may cause output failure if the values are large.

2 Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.

3 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

4

#### Setting: Adj Max Job

1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items   | Contents                             | Setting range | Initial setting |
|---------|--------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Copy    | Maximum copy (Scan To Print) Jobs    | 10 to 50      | 10              |
| Printer | Maximum printer (Host To Print) Jobs | 10 to 50      | -               |

The maximum [Printer] jobs should be (maximum jobs) – (maximum copy jobs).

2 Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U341 Printer cassette setting

### (Message: Set Printer Exclusive Cassette)

#### Contents

Sets the cassette to printer output only.

#### Purpose

Execute it when securing a cassette for printer. The cassette set to on is for printer only and it cannot be used for copy.

#### Setting

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select the item to set.

Multiple cassettes are selectable.

| Items      | Contents  |
|------------|---|
| Cassette1  | Setting cassette 1 to the printer paper source                |
| Cassette2  | Setting cassette 2 to the printer paper source                |
| Cassette3  | Setting cassette 3 to the printer paper source (paper feeder) |
| Cassette 4 | Setting cassette 4 to the printer paper source (paper feeder) |

Initial setting: Off (Cassette1 to 4)

3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U343 Duplex priority mode

### (Message: Set Duplex Priority Mode)

#### Contents

Switches between duplex or simplex copy for the initial copy mode.

#### Purpose

Sett the frequently used settings depending on the user's usage.

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.

Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                          |
|-------|-----------------------------------|
| On    | Duplex print priority is enabled  |
| Off   | Duplex print priority is disabled |

Initial setting: Off

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U345 Setting the value for maintenance due indication

### (Message: Set Maintenance Time Soon Display)

#### Contents

Sets when to display a message notifying that the time for maintenance is about to reach, by setting the number of prints that can be made before the current maintenance cycle reaches.

Displays the maintenance precaution message when the page count reaches the set value before the maintenance count.

#### Purpose

Change the time for maintenance precaution display.

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.
- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items | Contents  | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------|---|---------------|-----------------|
| Cnt   | Setting the maintenance time precaution display<br>(Remaining number of prints that can be made before the current maintenance cycle reaches) | 0 to 9999     | 0               |

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U346 Selecting Sleep Mode

### (Message: Selecting Sleep Mode)

#### Contents

Changes the sleep mode settings.

#### Purpose

Changes the sleep mode settings.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.  
The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items             | Contents                            |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Timer/Sleep Level | BAM conformity country setting      |
| Auto sleep        | Switches AutoSleep function setting |

#### Setting: Timer/Sleep Level

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items            | Contents   |
|------------------|--|
| More Energy Save | BAM conformity setting On<br>Sleep mode is disabled (Quick Recovery setting is disabled) |
| Less Energy Save | BAM conformity setting Off<br>Sets Sleep Level (Quick Recovery or Energy Saver)          |

Initial setting: More Energy Save

- 2 Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.
- 3 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

#### Setting: Auto sleep

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                     |
|-------|------------------------------|
| On    | Enable auto sleep function.  |
| Off   | Disable auto sleep function. |

Initial setting: On

If it is set to Off, sleep shift operation will not be performed even if sleep mode is set in the system menu.

Peel off the energy saver label when setting it to off.

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U402 Adjusting the printing margins

### (Message: Adjust Print Margin)

#### Contents

Adjusts the scan image margins.

#### Purpose

Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect

- If the leading edge margin is less than the specified value, it may cause jam at the fuser.
- If there is no bottom margin, when continuously printing, it may cause an image smudge on the second page.

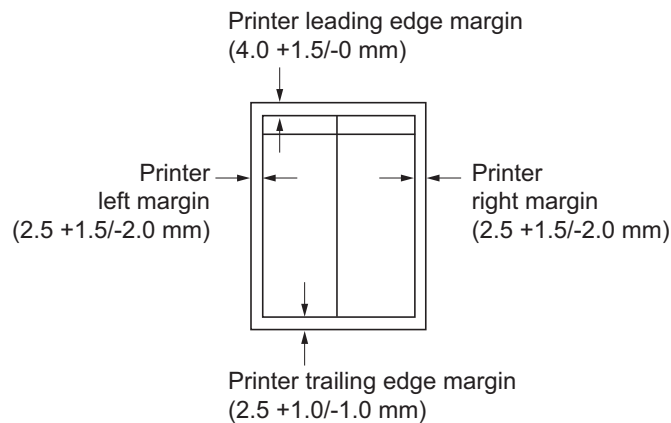
#### Adjustment

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3 Press the [Start] key to output a test pattern.
- 4 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 5 Select the item to set.

| Items    | Contents                                | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|----------|---|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Lead     | Adjusts the printer leading edge margin | 0.0 to 10.0   | 4.0             | 0.1 mm         |
| A Margin | Printer left margin                     | 0.0 to 10.0   | 3.0             | 0.1 mm         |
| C Margin | Printer right margin                    | 0.0 to 10.0   | 3.0             | 0.1 mm         |
| Trail    | Printer trailing edge margin            | 0.0 to 10.0   | 3.9             | 0.1 mm         |

- 6 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

When the setting value is increased, the margin widens, and it narrows when the setting value is decreased.



- 7 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Precautions

Appropriate margins are not obtained after this adjustment, execute the following maintenance mode.

U034(P.6-35) > U402

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U403 Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the contact glass

(Message: Adjust Scanning Margin(Table))

### Contents

Adjusts the margins for the table scanning.

### Purpose

Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect

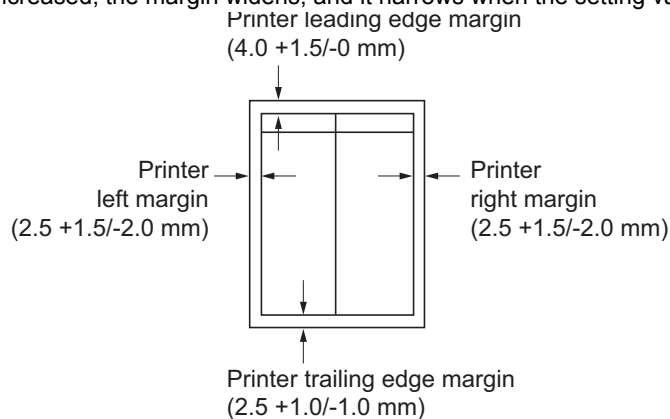
### Adjustment

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3 Place an original and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.
- 4 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 5 Select the item to adjust.

| Items    | Contents                                 | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|----------|--|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| A Margin | Adjusts the scanner left margin          | 0.0 to 10.0   | 2.0             | 0.5mm          |
| B Margin | Adjusts the scanner leading edge margin. | 0.0 to 10.0   | 2.0             | 0.5mm          |
| C Margin | Adjusts the scanner right margin         | 0.0 to 10.0   | 2.0             | 0.5mm          |
| D Margin | Adjusts the scanner trailing edge margin | 0.0 to 10.0   | 2.0             | 0.5mm          |

- 6 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

When the setting value is increased, the margin widens, and it narrows when the setting value is decreased.



- 7 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Precautions

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, adjust the following in the maintenance mode.

U034(P.6-35) > U402(P.6-131) > U403

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.



## U404 Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the document processor (Message: Adjust Scanning Margin(DP))

### Contents

Adjusts the margins for DP scanning.

### Purpose

Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect

### Adjustment

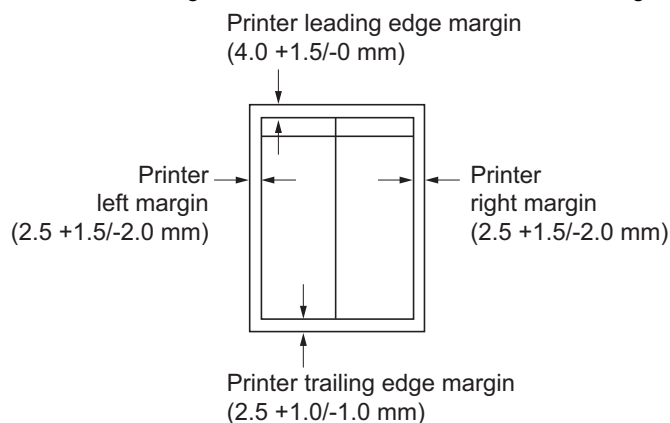
- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3 Place an original on the DP and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.
- 4 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 5 Select the item to adjust.

| Items             | Contents                                       | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------------------|--|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| A Margin          | Adjusts the DP left margin                     | 0.0 to 10.0   | 3.0             | 0.5mm          |
| B Margin          | Adjusts the DP leading edge margin             | 0.0 to 10.0   | 2.5             | 0.5mm          |
| C Margin          | Sets the DP right margin                       | 0.0 to 10.0   | 3.0             | 0.5mm          |
| D Margin          | Adjusts the DP trailing edge margin            | 0.0 to 10.0   | 4.0             | 0.5mm          |
| A Margin(Back) *1 | Adjusts the DP left margin (2nd side)          | 0.0 to 10.0   | 3.0             | 0.5mm          |
| B Margin(Back) *1 | Adjusts the DP leading edge margin (2nd side)  | 0.0 to 10.0   | 2.5             | 0.5mm          |
| C Margin(Back) *1 | Adjusts the DP right margin (2nd side)         | 0.0 to 10.0   | 3.0             | 0.5mm          |
| D Margin(Back) *1 | Adjusts the DP trailing edge margin (2nd side) | 0.0 to 10.0   | 4.0             | 0.5mm          |

\*1: Simultaneous duplex scan model only

- 6 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

When the setting value is increased, the margin widens, and it narrows when the setting value is decreased.



- 7 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Precautions**

Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, adjust the following in the maintenance mode.

U034(P.6-35) > U402(P.6-131) > U403(P.6-132) > U404

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U407 Adjusting the writing timing (Reversal)

### (Message: Adjust Scanning Margin(DP))

#### Contents

Adjusts the writing timing in rotated 180 degrees.

#### Purpose

Adjusted when the page image of copying is printed in rotated 180 degrees from the scanner reading image (image on the memory)

#### Precautions

Adjust this after finishing the following maintenance modes.

U034(P.6-35) > U402(P.6-131) > U66(P.6-48) >

U403(P.6-131) > U71(P.6-52) > U404(P.6-133) > U407

#### Adjustment

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3 Place an original on the DP and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.
- 4 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 5 Select [Adj Data].

| Items    | Contents   | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|----------|--|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Adj Data | Adjusts the leading edge timing when writing the image in the memory | -47 to 47     | 0               | 1dot           |

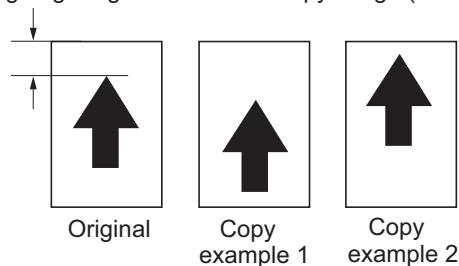
- 6 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

For the copy example 1, increase the value.

For the copy example 2, decrease the value.

When the setting value is increased, the image moves forward, and it moves backward when the setting value is decreased.

Leading edge registration of the copy image (+1.0/-1.5 mm or less)



- 7 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U410 Adjusting the halftone automatically (Message: Half Tone Auto Adjustment)

### Contents

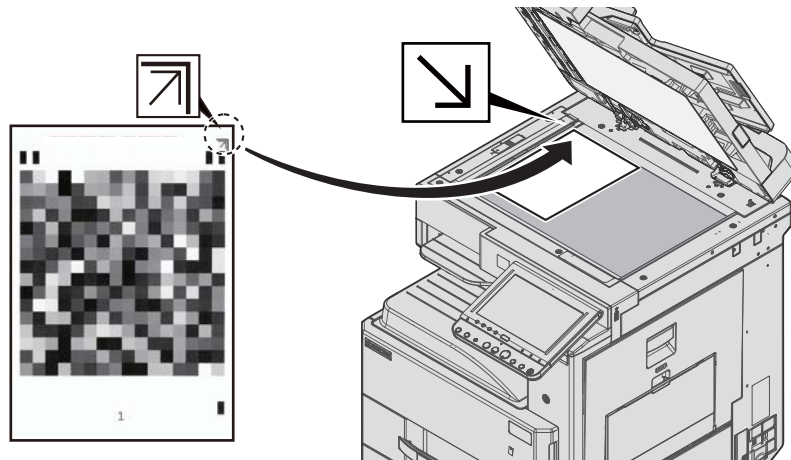
Acquires the data for the automatic halftone adjustment and ID correction.

### Purpose

Execute when the quality of reproduced halftones has dropped

### Adjustment

- 1 Press the [Start] key.  
Displays the execution information screen.  
Test pattern 1 and Test pattern 2 are output on the A4 paper.
- 2 Set the test pattern output on the original glass with the arrow facing the rear side and print side face-down.  
Load about 20 sheets of the blank paper on Test Pattern 1.



- 3 Press the [Start] key.  
The first auto adjustment is executed.
- 4 Set the output Test Pattern 2 as the original.  
Load about 20 sheets of the blank paper on Test Pattern 2.
- 5 Press the [Start] key.  
The second auto adjustment is executed.
- 6 [Finish] appears after normal completion.
- 7 An error code appears when an error occurs.

**Error codes**

| Codes | Occurrence position | Contents   | Re-adjustment |
|-------|---------------------|--|---------------|
| S001  | Scanner             | Original reference patch is not detected                       | Enable        |
| S002  |                     | Original deviation is in excess in the main scanning direction | Enable        |
| S003  |                     | Original deviation is in excess in the sub-scanning direction  | Enable        |
| S004  |                     | Original skew is in excess                                     | Enable        |
| S005  |                     | Original type error  | Enable        |
| SFFF  |                     | Other scanner error  | Disable       |
| E001  | Engine              | Engine status error  | Disable       |
| E002  |                     | Adjustment result error  | Disable       |
| EFFF  |                     | Other engine error   | Disable       |
| C001  | Controller          | Pause status   | Disable       |
| C002  |                     | Adjustment result error  | Disable       |
| C110  |                     | Adjustment value (increase amount) value error (black)         | Disable       |
| C210  |                     | Adjustment value (increase rate) error (black)                 | Disable       |
| CFFF  |                     | Other controller error   | Disable       |

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U411 Scanner auto adjustment

(Message: Scanner Auto Adjustment)

### Contents

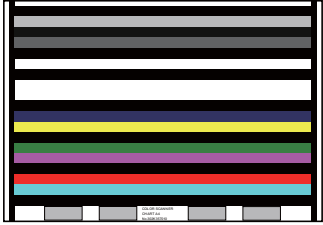
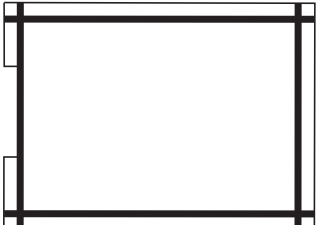
Uses the specified originals and automatically adjusts the following items in the scanner and the DP scanning sections.

Scanner section: Original size magnification, leading edge timing, center line, chromatic aberration in main/sub scanning direction, MTF correction, color/monochrome input gamma, color correction matrix automatic adjustment

DP scanning section: Original size magnification, leading edge timing and center line, MTF correction, Input gamma, automatic adjustment of color correction matrix

### Purpose

Automatically adjusts the scanner and the DP scanning sections.

| Items  | Use   | Contents  | Original for adjustment (P/N)   |
|--|---|---|---|
| Table (Chart A)                                | In case of losing adjustment data, differing from the color tone extremely (not improve in case of executing U410)<br>ISU(CCD unit),<br>Optical LED lamp,<br>Engine EEPROM,<br>when replacing DP CIS<br><br>Use when setting up DP or executing U021 initialization | Execute automatic adjusts the table scanning.<br><br>Magnification in the sub scanning direction / Leading edge timing<br>Center line / chromatic aberration<br>Sub scanning chromatic aberration / MTF correction<br>gamma in color mode / color correction matrix<br>Input gamma in monochrome mode | 7505000005<br><br>   |
| DP FU(ChartA)<br>*1                            |   | Execute the 1st side automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section.<br><br>Main scanning chromatic aberration / sub scanning chromatic aberration / MTF correction<br>gamma in color mode / color correction matrix   |   |
| DP FD(ChartA)<br>*2                            |   | Execute the 2nd side automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section.<br><br>Main scanning chromatic aberration / sub scanning chromatic aberration / MTF correction<br>gamma in color mode / color correction matrix   |   |
| DP FU(ChartB)<br>*1<br><br>DP FD(ChartB)<br>*2 | Use when setting up DP or executing U021 initialization   | Execute the 1st side automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section.<br>Execute the 2nd side automatic adjustment in the DP scanning section.<br><br>Magnification in the sub-scanning direction<br>Leading edge timing<br>Center line<br>Trailing edge timing                                       | 302AC68243<br><br> |
| Target   |   | Set-up for obtaining the target value   | 7505000005  |
| DP Auto Adj *1                                 |   | Adjusting the document processor scanning section with the chart output by the local machine<br><br>Magnification in the sub-scanning direction<br>Leading edge timing<br>Center line   | Without Chart B, executed in a simplified manner.   |

\*1: DP installed machine only, \*2: Simultaneous duplex scanning DP machine only

**Method: Table (Chart A)****Automatic input of the target value**

Usually, it adjusts here.

- 1 Set the specified original (P/N: 7505000005) on the table.
- 2 Enter maintenance item U411.
- 3 Select [Target].
- 4 Select [Auto].
- 5 Press the [Start] key.
- 6 Select [Table(ChartA)].
- 7 Press the [Start] key to read the barcode of the original chart and to start the automatic adjustment.
- 8 When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed.

When the error code "1e" or "1f" is displayed during the automatic adjustment in the table scanning and the barcode is not read, adjust the following after manually inputting the target value.

**Manual input of the target value**

- 1 Enter the target values which are shown on the lower part of the front page of the adjustment original (P/N: 7505000005) by executing the maintenance mode U425.
- 2 Set the specified original (P/N: 7505000005) on the table.
- 3 Enter maintenance item U411.
- 4 Select [Target].
- 5 Select [U425].
- 6 Press the [Start] key.
- 7 Select [Table(ChartA)].
- 8 Press the [Start] key to start Auto adjustment.
- 9 When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed.

If the image position is shifted largely at the DP adjustment below, an error might occur when adjusting it with ChartA. First, use ChartB (image position) to adjust it and then use ChartA (color).

**Method: DP FU (Chart A)****Automatic input of the target value**

- 1 Set the specified original (P/N: 7505000005) face-up on the DP.
- 2 Enter maintenance item U411.
- 3 Select [Target].
- 4 Select [Auto].
- 5 Press the [Start] key.
- 6 Select [DP FU(ChartA)].



- 7 Press the [Start] key to read the barcode of the original chart and to start the automatic adjustment.
- 8 When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed.

When the error code "1e" or "1f" is displayed during the automatic adjustment in the DP scanning and the barcode is not read, adjust the following after manually inputting the target value.

#### **Manual input of the target value**

- 1 Enter the target values which are shown on the lower part of the front page of the adjustment original (P/N: 7505000005) by executing the maintenance mode U425.
- 2 Set the specified original (P/N: 7505000005) face-up on the DP.
- 3 Enter maintenance item U411.
- 4 Select [Target].
- 5 Select [U425].
- 6 Press the [Start] key.
- 7 Select [DP FU(ChartA)].
- 8 Press the [Start] key to start Auto adjustment.
- 9 When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed.

#### **Method: DP FD (Chart A)**

##### **Automatic input of the target value**

- 1 Set the specified original (P/N: 7505000005) face-down on the DP.
- 2 Enter maintenance item U411.
- 3 Select [Target].
- 4 Select [Auto].
- 5 Press the [Start] key.
- 6 Select [DP FD(ChartA)].
- 7 Press the [Start] key to read the barcode of the original chart and to start the automatic adjustment.
- 8 When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed.

When the error code "1e" or "1f" is displayed during the automatic adjustment in the DP scanning and the barcode is not read, adjust the following after manually inputting the target value.

##### **Manual input of the target value**

- 1 Enter the target values which are shown on the lower part of the front page of the adjustment original (P/N: 7505000005) by executing the maintenance mode U425.
- 2 Set the specified original (P/N: 7505000005) face-down on the DP.
- 3 Enter maintenance item U411.
- 4 Select [Target].
- 5 Select [U425].

- 6 Press the [Start] key.
- 7 Select [DP FD(ChartA)].
- 8 Press the [Start] key to start Auto adjustment.
- 9 When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed.

**Method: DP FU (Chart B)**

Adjusting the first side of the DP duplex scanning

- 1 Set the specified original (P/N: 302AC68243) face-up on the DP.
- 2 Enter maintenance item U411.
- 3 Select [DP FU(ChartB)].
- 4 Press the [Start] key to start Auto adjustment.
- 5 When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed.

**Method: DP FD (Chart B)**

Adjusting the second side of the DP duplex scanning

- 1 Set the specified original (P/N: 302AC68243) face-down on the DP.
- 2 Enter maintenance item U411.
- 3 Select [DP FD(ChartB)].
- 4 Press the [Start] key to start Auto adjustment.
- 5 When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed.

**Method: DP Auto Adj**

- 1 Set A4/Letter paper.
- 2 Press the [Start] key to print the adjustment original.
- 3 Set the adjustment original output on the table and press the [Start] key.
- 4 Set the output adjustment original with face-up on the DP.
- 5 Press the [Start] key and scan the original.
- 6 Press the [Start] key to start the 1st side automatic adjustment.
- 7 Set the output adjustment original with face-down on the DP.
- 8 Press the [Start] key and scan the original.
- 9 Press the [Start] key to start the 2nd side automatic adjustment.

When automatic adjustment has normally completed, [OK] is displayed. If an error occurs during auto adjustment, error code "NGXX" is displayed and operation stops. In this case, check the error and execute the automatic adjustment again.

## Error codes

| Codes | Contents  | Corrective action   |
|-------|---|---|
| 00    | Automatic adjustment success  | -   |
| 01    | Black band detection error<br>(Table scanning leading edge skew in the sub-scanning direction)  | Set the original correctly and execute the adjustment again.<br>Check lighting of the lamp or replace it.                                 |
| 04    | Black band is not detected (Table leading edge in the sub-scanning direction)                   |   |
| 05    | Black band is not detected (Table far end in the main scanning direction)                       |   |
| 06    | Black band is not detected (Table near end in the main scanning direction)                      |   |
| 07    | Black band is not detected (Table trailing edge in the sub-scanning direction)                  |   |
| 08    | Black band is not detected (DP far end in the main scanning direction)                          |   |
| 09    | Black band is not detected (DP near end in the main scanning direction)                         |   |
| 0a    | Black band is not detected (DP leading edge in the sub-scanning direction)                      | Check the attachment position of DP.<br>Check lighting of the lamp or replace it.<br>Check the back and front of the adjustment original. |
| 0b    | Black band is not detected<br>(Original check of DP leading edge in the sub-scanning direction) |   |
| 0c    | Black band is not detected (DP trailing edge in the sub-scanning direction)                     |   |
| 0d    | White band is not detected (DP trailing edge in the sub-scanning direction)                     |   |
| 0e    | DMA time out  |   |
| 0f    | Magnification error in the sub-scanning direction   | Turn the power switch off then on, and execute again.<br>Adjust manually.<br>(U065 to U067, U070 to U072)                                 |
| 10    | Leading edge error in the sub-scanning direction  |   |
| 11    | Trailing edge error in the sub-scanning direction   |   |
| 12    | DP skew error in the sub-scanning direction   |   |
| 13    | Maintenance request error   | Turn the power switch off then on, and execute again.   |
| 14    | Center line error in the main scanning direction  | Turn the power off and on, and execute again.<br>Adjust manually.<br>(U065 to U067, U070 to U072)   |
| 15    | DP skew error in the main scanning direction  |   |
| 16    | Magnification error in the main scanning direction  |   |
| 17    | Service call error  | Turn the power off and on, and execute again.   |
| 18    | DP paper jam error  | Set the original correctly and execute again.   |
| 19    | PWB replacement error   | -   |
| 1a    | Original error  | Clean the contact glass and slit glass.<br>Exchange the adjustment original.  |
| 1b    | Input gamma adjustment original error   | Set the original correctly and execute again.   |
| 1c    | Matrix adjustment original error  |   |
| 1d    | Original for the white reference correction coefficient error                                   |   |

| Codes          | Contents  | Corrective action  |
|----------------|---|--|
| 1e             | Lab value detection error   | Check the following and execute again.<br>Is the bar code dirty?<br>Is the original position correct?<br>Is the bar code position correct?             |
| 1f             | Lab value comparison error  | Check the following and execute again.<br>Is the acquired bar code the same?<br>Is the original position correct?<br>Is the bar code position correct? |
| 20<br>21<br>30 | Input gamma correction coefficient error<br>Color correction matrix coefficient error<br>Chromatic aberration adjustment original error | Set the original correctly and execute again.  |
| 63             | Completed to obtain the test RAW  | -  |

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U415 Adjusting the print position automatically

### (Message: Print Position Auto Adjust)

#### Description

Execute the automatic adjustment of the timing at the print engine

Adjusting the leading edge timing, enter line and margins

#### Purpose

Used to make respective auto adjustments for the print engine.

\* Execute this mode in a simplified manner when the Chart B(302AC68243) is not available.

#### Method

- 1 Set A3/Ledger paper.  
Load A4/Letter when the large capacity feeder is used.
- 2 Press the [Start] key.
- 3 Select [Execute].
- 4 Press the [Start] key.  
A test pattern is outputted.
- 5 Set the output Test Pattern as the original.
- 6 Press the [Start] key.  
Automatically perform adjustment from the top to bottom cassettes.
- 7 When normally completed, [OK] is displayed.  
An error code appears when there is an error.

#### Error codes list

| Display | Contents  | Display | Contents  |
|---------|---|---------|---|
| S001    | Black band is not detected (main scanning direction far end)            | C101    | Adjustment value error (main scanning direction magnification)      |
| S002    | Black band is not detected (main scanning direction near end )          | C102    | Adjustment value error (auxiliary scanning direction magnification) |
| S003    | Black band is not detected (auxiliary scanning direction leading edge)  | C103    | Adjustment value error (leading edge timing)                        |
| S004    | Black band is not detected (auxiliary scanning direction trailing edge) | C104    | Adjustment value error (center line)                                |
| S005    | Auxiliary scanning direction skew error (1.5 mm or more)                | C105    | Adjustment value error (B margin)                                   |
| S006    | Main scanning direction skew error (1.5 mm or more)                     | C106    | Adjustment value error (A margin)                                   |
| S007    | Original error (detection of reverse original paper)                    | C107    | Adjustment value error (C margin)                                   |
| S008    | Original error (page mismatch)  | C108    | Adjustment value error (D margin)                                   |
| SFFF    | Other scanner error   | CFFF    | Other controller error  |

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U425 Set Target

### (Message: Set Target Adjustment Value)

#### Description

Enter the Lab values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original (P/N: 7505000005).

#### Purpose

Enter data in order to correct for differences in originals during the automatic adjustment

#### Execution

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.

| Items  | Contents   |
|--------|--|
| ChartA | Setting the adjustment value of the table scanning |
| ChartB | Sets the adjustment value of the DP scanning       |

#### Method: ChartA

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.

| Items           | Contents  |
|-----------------|---|
| White           | Setting the white patch for the adjustment original   |
| Black           | Setting the black patch for the adjustment original   |
| Gray1           | Setting the Gray1 patch for the adjustment original   |
| Gray2           | Setting the Gray2 patch for the adjustment original   |
| Gray3           | Setting the Gray3 patch for the adjustment original   |
| C               | Setting the cyan patch for the adjustment original    |
| M               | Setting the magenta patch for the adjustment original |
| Y               | Setting the yellow patch for the adjustment original  |
| R               | Setting the red patch for the adjustment original     |
| G               | Setting the green patch for the adjustment original   |
| B               | Setting the blue patch for the adjustment original    |
| Adjust Original | Setting the main scanning and sub-scanning directions |

#### Setting: White

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

| Items | Contents            | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| L     | L parameter setting | 0.0 to 100    | 93.6            | -              |
| a     | A value setting     | -200 to 200   | 0.9             | -              |
| b     | B value setting     | -200 to 200   | -0.4            | -              |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: Black**

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

| Items | Contents            | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| L     | L parameter setting | 0.0 to 100    | 10.6            | -              |
| a     | A value setting     | -200 to 200   | -0.2            | -              |
| b     | B value setting     | -200 to 200   | -0.7            | -              |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: Gray1**

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

| Items | Contents            | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| L     | L parameter setting | 0.0 to 100    | 76.2            | -              |
| a     | A value setting     | -200 to 200   | -0.2            | -              |
| b     | B value setting     | -200 to 200   | 1.2             | -              |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: Gray2**

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

| Items | Contents            | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| L     | L parameter setting | 0.0 to 100    | 25.2            | -              |
| a     | A value setting     | -200 to 200   | -0.2            | -              |
| b     | B value setting     | -200 to 200   | -0.2            | -              |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: Gray3**

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

| Items | Contents            | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| L     | L parameter setting | 0.0 to 100    | 51.3            | -              |
| a     | A value setting     | -200 to 200   | -0.3            | -              |
| b     | B value setting     | -200 to 200   | 0.3             | -              |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Setting: C

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

| Items | Contents            | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| L     | L parameter setting | 0.0 to 100    | 72.6            | -              |
| a     | A value setting     | -200 to 200   | -32.8           | -              |
| b     | B value setting     | -200 to 200   | -11.5           | -              |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Setting: M

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

| Items | Contents            | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| L     | L parameter setting | 0.0 to 100    | 48.1            | -              |
| a     | A value setting     | -200 to 200   | 69.9            | -              |
| b     | B value setting     | -200 to 200   | -6.1            | -              |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Setting: Y

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

| Items | Contents            | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| L     | L parameter setting | 0.0 to 100    | 86.2            | -              |
| a     | A value setting     | -200 to 200   | -18.6           | -              |
| b     | B value setting     | -200 to 200   | 81.7            | -              |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Setting: R

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

| Items | Contents            | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| L     | L parameter setting | 0.0 to 100    | 46.7            | -              |
| a     | A value setting     | -200 to 200   | 54.2            | -              |



| Items | Contents        | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| b     | B value setting | -200 to 200   | 38.6            | -              |

3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Setting: G

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

| Items | Contents            | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| L     | L parameter setting | 0.0 to 100    | 67.8            | -              |
| a     | A value setting     | -200 to 200   | -51.3           | -              |
| b     | B value setting     | -200 to 200   | 48.9            | -              |

3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Setting: B

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using [Left/Right cursor] keys or the numeric keys, enter the values which are shown on the back page of the adjustment original.

| Items | Contents            | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| L     | L parameter setting | 0.0 to 100    | 38.8            | -              |
| a     | A value setting     | -200 to 200   | 25.3            | -              |
| b     | B value setting     | -200 to 200   | -22.8           | -              |

3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Setting: Adjust Original

This setting is usually unnecessary.

| Items     | Contents                                       | Setting range     | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-----------|--|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Lead      | Set the adjustment value of the leading edge.  | 4.0 to 6.0 *1     | 5.0 *1          | 0.1 mm *1      |
|           |  | 0.16 to 0.24 *2   | 0.2 *2          | 0.01 inch *2   |
| Main Scan | Sets the adjustment value of the left edge.    | 9.0 to 11.0 *1    | 10.0 *1         | 0.1 mm *1      |
|           |  | 0.36 to 0.44 *2   | 0.4 *2          | 0.01 inch *2   |
| Sub Scan  | Set the adjustment value of the trailing edge. | 189.0 to 191.0 *1 | 190.0 *1        | 0.1 mm *1      |
|           |  | 7.44 to 7.52 *2   | 7.49 *2         | 0.01 inch *2   |

\*1: Centimeter model, \*2: Inch model

- 1 Measure the distances "A", "B" and "C" from the upper edge of black belt 1 to the lower edge of black belt 3 of the adjustment original.

**Measurement procedure**

1) Measure the distance "A", "B" and "C" between two points as follows. (A: 30mm from the left edge, B: 105mm from the left edge, C: 180mm from the left edge)

Measure the distance from the leading edge to the top edge of black belt 1.

2) Apply the following formula for the values obtained:  $((A+B+C)/3)$

- 2 Enter the value solved in "Lead" using the the [+] [-] keys keys.
- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
- 4 Measure the distance "F" from the left edge to the right edge of black belt 2 on the adjustment original.

**Measurement procedure**

Measure the distance "F" from the left edge at 21mm from the top edge of black belt 1 to the right edge of black belt 2.

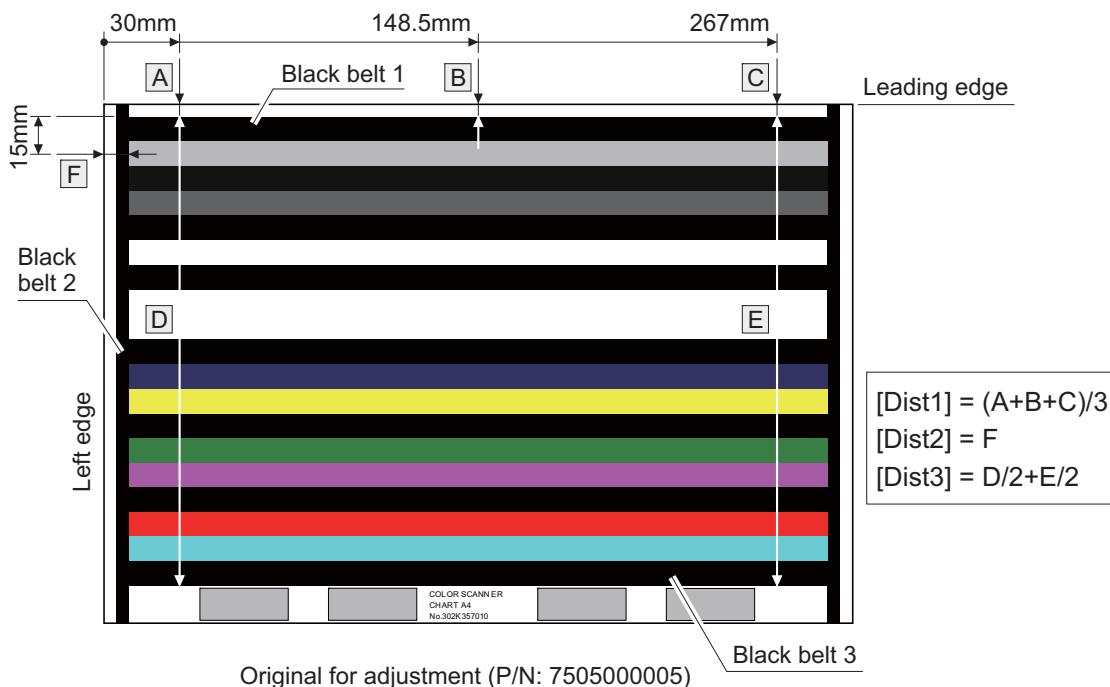
- 5 Enter the values measured in "Main Scan" using the the [+] [-] keys keys.
- 6 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
- 7 Measure the distance "D" and "E" from the top edge of black belt 1 to the bottom edge of black belt 3 on the adjustment original at two positions.

**Measurement procedure**

1) Measure the distance "D" and "E" between two points as follows. (D: Measure the distance from the leading edge to the trailing edge of black belt 3 on the adjustment original at 30mm of the left edge and deduct A. E: Measure the distance from the leading edge to the trailing edge of black belt 3 on the adjustment original at 180mm of the left edge and deduct C.)

2) Apply the following formula for the values obtained:  $(D/2+E/2)$

- 8 Enter the value solved in "Sub Scan" using the the [+] [-] keys keys.
- 9 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.



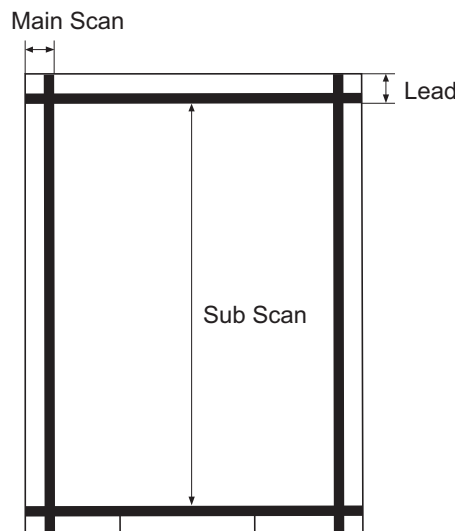
**Setting: DP(ChartB)**

This setting is usually unnecessary.

| Items     | Contents                                       | Setting range                         | Initial setting      | Data variation            |
|-----------|--|---------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| Lead      | Set the adjustment value of the leading edge.  | 14.0 to 16.0 *1<br>0.56 to 0.63 *2    | 15.0 *1<br>0.6 *2    | 0.1 mm *1<br>0.01 inch *2 |
| Main Scan | Sets the adjustment value of the left edge.    | 14.0 to 16.0 *1<br>0.56 to 0.63 *2    | 15.0 *1<br>0.6 *2    | 0.1 mm *1<br>0.01 inch *2 |
| Sub Scan  | Set the adjustment value of the trailing edge. | 388.0 to 392.0 *1<br>15.28 to 5.43 *2 | 390.0 *1<br>15.36 *2 | 0.1 mm *1<br>0.01 inch *2 |

\*1: Centimeter model, \*2: Inch model

- 1 Measure the distance "A" from the leading edge to the black belt (inside) on the adjustment original.
- 2 Enter the value measured in "Lead" using the the [+] [-] keys keys.
- 3 Measure the distance "B" from the left edge to the black belt (inside) on the adjustment original.
- 4 Enter the values measured in "Main Scan" using the the [+] [-] keys keys.
- 5 Measure the distance "C" from the leading black belt (inside) to the trailing black belt (inside) on the adjustment original.
- 6 Enter the values measured in "Sub Scan" using the the [+] [-] keys keys.
- 7 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.



Original for adjustment Chart 2-2 (P/N: 302AC68243)

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U470 Setting the JPEG compression rate

### (Message: Adjust JPEG Compression Rate)

#### Contents

Sets the JPEG compression rate by image mode.

#### Purpose

Change the setting depending on the image desired by the user. Lower the set value to reduce the image roughness by changing the compression rate in case of 200% or more of the enlarged copy . If the set value is reduced, compression is high and image quality is lowered. If the set value is increased, image quality is improved but processing speed is slower.

#### Method

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select the item to set.

The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items  | Contents   |
|--------|--|
| Copy   | Compression rate of the copy                           |
| Send   | Compression rate of the Send                           |
| System | Compression rate of the temporary saving in the system |
| Print  | Compression rate for printer                           |

#### Method: Copy

1 Select the item to set.

The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items | Contents                           |
|-------|------------------------------------|
| Photo | Compression rate of the photo mode |
| Text  | Compression rate of the text mode  |

#### Setting: Photo

1 Select the item to set.

2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items       | Contents                                 | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------------|--|---------------|-----------------|
| Luminance   | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 10       | 10              |
| Chrominance | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 10       | 10              |

3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Setting: Text

1 Select the item to set.

2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items       | Contents                                 | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------------|--|---------------|-----------------|
| Luminance   | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 10       | 10              |
| Chrominance | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 10       | 10              |

3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Method: Send**

- 1 Select the item to set.

The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items             | Contents  |
|-------------------|---|
| Photo             | Compression rate of the photo mode  |
| Text              | Compression rate of the text mode   |
| HC-PDF(BG)        | Sets the compression rate for high compression PDF                        |
| HC-PDF(Char)      | Set the compression rate for High compression PDF (text color).           |
| HC-PDF(File Size) | Set the compression rate for High compression PDF (compression priority). |

**Setting: Photo**

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items | Contents                                 | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------|--|---------------|-----------------|
| Y1    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 30(%)           |
| Y2    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 40(%)           |
| Y3    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 51(%)           |
| Y4    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 70(%)           |
| Y5    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 90(%)           |
| CbCr1 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 30(%)           |
| CbCr2 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 40(%)           |
| CbCr3 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 51(%)           |
| CbCr4 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 70(%)           |
| CbCr5 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 90(%)           |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: Text**

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items | Contents                                 | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------|--|---------------|-----------------|
| Y1    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 30(%)           |
| Y2    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 40(%)           |
| Y3    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 51(%)           |
| Y4    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 70(%)           |
| Y5    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 90(%)           |
| CbCr1 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 30(%)           |
| CbCr2 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 40(%)           |
| CbCr3 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 51(%)           |
| CbCr4 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 70(%)           |
| CbCr5 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 90(%)           |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Setting: HC-PDF(BG)

- 1 Select the item to set.  
2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items | Contents                                 | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------|--|---------------|-----------------|
| Y1    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 15(%)           |
| Y2    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 25(%)           |
| Y3    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 90(%)           |
| CbCr1 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 15(%)           |
| CbCr2 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 25(%)           |
| CbCr3 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 90(%)           |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Setting: HC-PDF(Char)

- 1 Select the item to set.  
2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items | Contents                                 | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------|--|---------------|-----------------|
| Y1    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 15(%)           |
| Y2    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 75(%)           |
| Y3    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 90(%)           |
| CbCr1 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 15(%)           |
| CbCr2 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 75(%)           |
| CbCr3 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 90(%)           |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Setting: HC-PDF(File Size)

- 1 Select the item to set.  
2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items | Contents                                 | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------|--|---------------|-----------------|
| Y1    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 15(%)           |
| Y2    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 25(%)           |
| Y3    | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 75(%)           |
| CbCr1 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 15(%)           |
| CbCr2 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 25(%)           |
| CbCr3 | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 75(%)           |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: System**

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items | Contents                                 | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------|--|---------------|-----------------|
| Y     | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 100      | 90(%)           |
| CbCr  | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 100      | 90(%)           |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: Print**

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items       | Contents                                 | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------------|--|---------------|-----------------|
| Luminance   | Compression rate of the brightness       | 1 to 10       | 7               |
| Chrominance | Compression rate of the color difference | 1 to 10       | 7               |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Supplement**

Test copy of the original is available by pressing the [System Menu] key as interruption copy mode when executing this maintenance mode.

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U485 Image process mode setting (Message: Set Image Process Mode)

### Contents

Sets the PDF image rotation.

### Purpose

Change the PDF image rotation setting.

### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.

| Items        | Contents             |
|--------------|----------------------|
| PDF Rotation | Rotate the PDF image |

- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| setting | Contents  |
|---------|---|
| 0       | The image rotation is designated to the internal parameter                |
| 1       | The image rotation is designated to the actual image                      |
| 2       | The image rotation is designated to the internal parameter (CTM rotation) |

Initial setting: 0

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.



## U520 TDRS setting

### (Message: Set TDRS)

#### Contents

Checks/sets the TDRS

#### Purpose

Execute to check/set the TDRS

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.

| Items         | Contents  |
|---------------|---|
| Registration  | Changes to the TDRS Manager registration dialog   |
| Information   | Transition to the Device Agent description dialog |
| On/Off Config | Changes to the TDRS features setting dialog       |

#### Setting: Registration

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items                   | Contents                                       |
|-------------------------|--|
| TDRS User               | Registering process for user and password      |
| Access Code             | Registers Access Code                          |
| TDRS User & Access Code | Registering the user, password and access code |

#### Setting: TDRS User / Access Code / TDRS User & Access Code

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items        | Contents                        |
|--------------|---------------------------------|
| Regist       | Registers in the TDRS Manager   |
| TDRS Server  | Sets the TDRS server URL        |
| TDRS User    | Sets the TDRS Username          |
| Access Code  | Sets the TDRS access code       |
| Proxy Server | Sets the TDRS proxy server URL  |
| Proxy Port   | Sets the TDRS proxy port number |
| Proxy User   | Sets the TDRS proxy username    |
| Text         | Sets the TDRS description       |

[Regist] is not executable if a USB memory is not installed.

When the USB memory is inserted, TDRS information is automatically retrieved and displayed.

After obtaining the TDRS information, select [Regist] and then register the TDRS information by pressing the [OK] or [Start] key.

After the normal completion, [Complete] is indicated in the status information of the item that was performed.

When an error occurs, the following numbers are indicated in the status information of the item that has been operated.

If [User/Processing Registration using a Password] is selected in the previous dialog, the "TDRS User" will be indicated.

If [Processing Registration using an Access Code] is selected, the "Access Code" will be indicated.

#### Error codes

| Items | Contents            | Items | Contents    |
|-------|---------------------|-------|-------------|
| e0001 | HDD is unavailable. | t0001 | Fatal error |

| Items | Contents   | Items | Contents                             |
|-------|--|-------|--------------------------------------|
| e0002 | The USB memory is unavailable.                       | t0002 | Error in processing the network      |
| e0003 | The file to import does not exist in the USB memory. | t0003 | An illegal parameter error           |
| e0004 | Reading from the USB memory has failed.              | t0004 | Insufficient resource                |
| e0005 | Unmounting the USB memory has failed.                | t0005 | Communication error                  |
| e0006 | Moving or renaming the file has failed.              | t0006 | Error in processing communication.   |
| e0007 | Opening the file has failed.                         | t0007 | Login error                          |
| e0008 | Closing the file has failed.                         | t0008 | External error                       |
| e0009 | Error in reading the file                            | t0009 | Authentication error                 |
| e000A | Copying the file has failed.                         | t000A | HTTP error: Request error            |
| e000B | Opening the directory has failed.                    | t000B | HTTP error: Error due to the server  |
| e000C | Creating the working directory has failed.           | t000C | HTTP error: Error due to the client. |
| e000D | Deleting the working file has failed.                |       |                                      |

### Setting: Information

- 1 Displays the set contents

| Items      | Contents                             |
|------------|--------------------------------------|
| Agent ID   | Agent ID                             |
| Agent Type | Agent Type                           |
| Model      | Display of the model name            |
| Serial No  | Display of the machine serial number |
| Offline    | Display of the TDRS connection state |

### Setting: On/Off Config

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents      |
|-------|---------------|
| On    | Enables TDRS  |
| Off   | Disables TDRS |

Initial setting: Off

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
- 3 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U600 Initialize: All Data

### (Message: Initialize: All Data)

#### Contents

Initializes software switches, and all data and image memory in the backup data on the FAX PWB according to the destination and OEM setting.

Initializes the file system and then initializes the communication record and the registered contents if the file system is checked and an error is detected there.

#### Purpose

Initialize the FAX PWB

#### Method

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select [Execute].

The screen for entering the country code and OEM code is displayed.

| Items   | Contents                      |
|---------|-------------------------------|
| Execute | Executing data initialization |

3 Select [Country Code] and enter a country code using the numeric keys.

Refer to the following country code list.

| Items        | Contents             |
|--------------|----------------------|
| Country Code | Setting Country code |
| OEM Code     | Sets the OEM code    |

No need to change the default value of [OEM Code].

4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Data initialization starts.

Press the [Stop] key to cancel the data initialization.

5 The firmware version is displayed after the data initialization.

The firmware version of 3 types of application, boot and IPL is displayed.

When initialization is successful, "Completed" is displayed for one second.

Where an irregular value is input, when it initializes, the following errors are displayed.

| Kind of error                                  |
|--|
| Unknown Country (When Country Code is unknown) |
| Unknown OEM (When OEM Code is unknown)         |
| Unknown Country (When both are unknown)        |

#### Country code list

| Country code | Destination      | Country code | Destination         |
|--------------|------------------|--------------|---------------------|
| 000          | Japan            | 181          | North America *2    |
| 156          | Asian nations *1 | 181          | South America *3    |
| 254          | Taiwan           | 253          | European nations *4 |
| 097          | Korea            | 009          | Australia           |
| 038          | China            | 126          | New Zealand *5      |

- \*1 Applied for Sales company competent Singapore, India, Thailand, Hong Kong.
- \*2 Applied for Sales company competent USA, Canada, Mexico.
- \*3 Applied for Sales company competent Bolivia, Chile, Peru, Argentina, Brazil.
- \*4 Applied for Sales company competent Italy, Germany, Spain, U.K., Netherlands, Sweden, France, Austria, Switzerland, Belgium, Denmark, Finland, Portugal, Ireland, Norway, Turkey, Russia, Saudi Arabia.
- \*5 Change the country code when selling in New Zealand. The country code to input is 126.

### **Completion**

- 1 Press the [Stop] key.  
The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U601 Initialize: Keep data

### (Message: Initialize: Keep Data)

#### Contents

Initializes software switches other than the machine data on the FAX PWB according to the destination and OEM setting.

#### Purpose

Initialize the FAX PWB without changing the user registration data and the factory defaults

#### Method

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select [Execute].

The screen for entering the country code and OEM code is displayed.

| Items   | Contents                      |
|---------|-------------------------------|
| Execute | Executing data initialization |

3 Select [Country Code].

4 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

Refer to the country code list. (See page P.6-159 )

| Items        | Contents             |
|--------------|----------------------|
| Country Code | Setting Country code |
| OEM Code     | Sets the OEM code    |

No need to change the default value of [OEM Code].

5 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

Data initialization starts.

Press the [Stop] key to cancel the data initialization.

6 The firmware version is displayed after the data initialization.

The firmware version of 3 types of application, boot and IPL is displayed.

When initialization is successful, "Completed" is displayed for one second.

## U603 User data 1

### (Message: User Data 1)

#### Contents

Sets the line type for FAX use

#### Purpose

Execute as required

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Line Type].

| Items     | Contents  |
|-----------|-----------|
| Line Type | Line Type |

- 3 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents |
|-------|----------|
| DTMF  | DTMF     |
| 10PPS | 10PPS    |
| 20PPS | 20PPS    |

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U604 User data 2

### (Message: User Data 2)

#### Contents

Sets the number of rings for the automatic FAX/telephone switching for FAX use

#### Purpose

Adjust the number of rings to longer or shorter at the automatic FAX/telephone switching

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Rings(F/T)].
- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items       | Contents                      | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-------------|-------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Rings (F/T) | Number of fax/telephone rings | 0 to 15       | -               |

If the default is set to "0", the main unit will start FAX reception without any ringing.

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U605 Data clear

### (Message: Clear Data)

#### Contents

Initializes data related to the fax transmission such as transmission history or various ID.

#### Purpose

Clear the communication history

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Clear Com.Rec.].

| Items          | Contents   |
|----------------|--|
| Clear Com.Rec. | Delete data of communication history and protocol list of displayed port |

- 3 Press the [Start] key.  
When initialization is successful, "Completed" is displayed for one second.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U610 System 1

## (Message: System Setting 1)

**Contents**

Set the number of lines to be ignored when receiving a fax at 100% magnification and in the auto reduction mode.

**Method**

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.

| Items          | Contents   |
|----------------|--|
| Cut Line: 100% | Set the number of lines to be ignored when receiving a fax at 100% magnification.                    |
| Cut Line: Auto | Number of lines to be ignored when receiving in the auto reduction mode.                             |
| Cut Line: A4   | Set the number of lines to be ignored when receiving a fax (A4R/LetterR) in the auto reduction mode. |

**Setting: Cut Line(100%)**

Sets the maximum number of lines to be ignored if the received data volume exceeds the recording capacity when recording the data at 100% magnification.

If the number of excess lines is below the setting, those lines are ignored. If it is over the setting, they are recorded on the next page.

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Contents  | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|---|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Set the number of lines to be ignored when receiving a fax at 100% magnification. | 0 to 22       | 3               | -              |

Increase the setting value if a blank second page is output in the full magnification reception. Decrease the value if there is dropout in received image.

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: Cut Line: Auto**

Set the maximum number of lines to be ignored if the received data volume exceeds the recording capacity when the data is recorded in the auto reduction mode.

If the number of excess lines is below the setting, those lines are ignored. If over the setting, the entire data on a page is further reduced so that it can be recorded on the same page.

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Contents   | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|--|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Number of lines to be ignored when receiving in the auto reduction mode. | 0 to 22       | 0               | -              |

Increase the setting value if a page received in the reduction mode is reduced too much with the trailing edge margin. Decrease the value if there is dropout in received image.

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.



**Setting: Cut Line: Auto**

Set the maximum number of lines to be ignored if the received data volume exceeds the recording capacity when the data is recorded in the auto reduction mode onto A4R or Letter R paper.

If the number of excess lines is below the setting, those lines are ignored. If over the setting, the entire data on a page is further reduced so that it can be recorded on the same page.

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Contents   | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|--|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Number of lines to be ignored when receiving in the A4R auto reduction mode. | 0 to 22       | 0               | -              |

Increase the setting value if a page received in the reduction mode is reduced too much with the trailing edge margin.  
Decrease the value if there is dropout in received image.

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U611 System 2

## (Message: System Setting 2)

**Contents**

Sets the number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction.

**Purpose**

Sets the number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction.

**Method**

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.

| Items         | Contents  |
|---------------|---|
| ADJ LINES     | Sets the number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction.                      |
| ADJ LINES(A4) | Number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction when A4 paper is set.          |
| ADJ LINES(LT) | Number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction when letter size paper is set. |

**Setting: ADJ LINES**

Sets the number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction.

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Contents  | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|---|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction. | 0 to 22       | 7               | -              |

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

**Setting: ADJ LINES(A4)**

Sets the number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction.

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Contents   | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|--|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction when A4 paper is set. | 0 to 22       | 22              | -              |

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

**Setting: ADJ LINES(LT)**

Sets the number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction when letter size paper is set.

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Contents  | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|---|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Number of adjustment lines for automatic reduction when letter size paper is set. | 0 to 22       | 26              | -              |

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

### **Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U612 System 3

### (Message: System Setting 3)

#### Contents

Sets the FAX operation and automatic printing of the protocol list.

#### Method

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select the item to set.

The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items         | Contents   |
|---------------|--|
| Auto reduct   | Selects auto reduction in the sub-scanning direction |
| Protocol List | Sets the automatic protocol list printing.           |

#### Setting: Auto Reduct

Sets whether to receive a long document by automatically reducing it in the sub-scanning direction or at 100% magnification.

1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents  |
|-------|---|
| On    | Auto reduction is executed if the received document is longer than the FAX paper. |
| Off   | Auto reduction is not performed.  |

Initial setting: On

2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

#### Setting: Protocol List

Sets the automatic protocol list printing.

1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents   |
|-------|--|
| Off   | The protocol list is not printed out automatically.    |
| Err   | Automatically printed if a communication error occurs. |
| On    | Automatically printed out after communication.         |

Initial setting: Off

2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U615 System 6

### (Message: System Setting 6)

#### Contents

Sets the record width capacity and process if 11 inch width paper is set for the inch specification machine

#### Method

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select the item to set.

The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items            | Contents |
|------------------|----------|
| RX WIDTH FOR 11" |          |

#### Setting: RX WIDTH FOR 11"

1 Select the item to set.

| Items  | Contents  |
|--------|---|
| LEDGER | Transmits the A3 width to the destination machine |
| B4     | Transmits the B4 width to the destination machine |

Initial setting: LEDGER

2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U620 FAX system

### (Message: FAX System)

#### Contents

Sets the signal detection method for remote switching.

Change the setting according to the type of telephone connected to the main unit.

#### Purpose

Sets the remote switching conditions according to the user's telephone type, preference, etc.

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Remote Mode] and press the [Start] key.

| Items       | Contents                          |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| Remote Mode | Setting the remote switching mode |

- 3 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                           |
|-------|------------------------------------|
| One   | Sets the one-shot type detection   |
| Cont  | Sets the continuous type detection |

Initial setting: One

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U625 Communication settings

### (Message: Set Communication)

#### Contents

Sets the auto redialing interval and the number of times of auto redialing.

#### Purpose

FAX transmission may not be available if redialing interval is short. If long, it takes much time to complete transmission. Changes the setting to prevent the following problems.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.

| Items    | Contents                                   |
|----------|--|
| Interval | Sets the auto redialing interval           |
| Times    | Sets the number of times of auto redialing |

#### Setting: Interval

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Contents                    | Setting range  | Initial setting | Data variation |
|-----------------------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Sets the redialing interval | 1 to 9 minutes | 3 minutes       | -              |

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

#### Setting: Times

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Contents                              | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Sets the number of times of redialing | 0 to 15 times | 3 times         | -              |

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U630 Communication control procedures 1

### (Message: Communication Control 1)

#### Contents

Sets the FAX communication.

#### Purpose

Sets the following to correspond to field claims

Reducing the transmission time to improve the accuracy of reception when using a low quality line

Improving the accuracy of communication during the international communication

#### Method

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select the item to set.

The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items    | Contents  |
|----------|---|
| TX Speed | Sets the communication starting speed.                          |
| RX Speed | Sets the reception speed.                                       |
| TX Echo  | Sets the waiting period to prevent echo problems at the sender. |
| RX Echo  | Sets the reception speed.                                       |

#### Setting: TX Speed

Sets the transmission speed of the sender. When the destination unit has the V.34 capability, V.34 is selected for transmission regardless of this setting.

1 Select the communication speed.

| Items          | Contents        |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 14400bps/V17   | V.17 14400bps   |
| 9600bps/V29    | V.29 9600bps    |
| 4800bps/V27ter | V.27ter 4800bps |
| 2400bps/V27ter | V.27ter 2400bps |

Initial setting: 14400bps/V17

2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

#### Setting: RX Speed

Sets the reception capacity to advise the transmitter by the DIS/NSF signal. When the destination unit has the V.34 capability, V.34 is selected for transmission regardless of this setting.

1 Select the reception speed.

| Items    | Contents                  |
|----------|---------------------------|
| 14400bps | V.17, V.33, V.29, V.27ter |
| 9600bps  | V.29, V.27ter             |
| 4800bps  | V.27ter                   |
| 2400bps  | V.27ter (fallback only)   |

Initial setting: 14400bps



- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

### Setting: TX Echo

Sets the time to send the DCS signal after the DIS signal is received. Execute when an error occurs with echo at the transmitter side.

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                                    |
|-------|---|
| 500   | Sends the DCS 500 ms after receiving a DIS. |
| 300   | Sends the DCS 300 ms after receiving a DIS. |

Initial setting: 300

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

### Setting: RX Echo

Sets the time to send the NSF, CSI or DIS signal after the CED signal is received. Execute when an error occurs with echo at the receiver side.

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents   |
|-------|--|
| 500   | Sends the NSF, CSI or DIS 500ms after receiving the CED. |
| 75    | Sends the NSF, CSI or DIS 75ms after receiving the CED.  |

Initial setting: 75

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U631 Communication control procedures 2

### (Message: Communication Control 2)

#### Contents

Sets the FAX communication.

#### Purpose

Sets the transmission and reception of ECM

Sets the CED frequency

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.  
The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items    | Contents                        |
|----------|---------------------------------|
| ECM TX   | Sets ECM transmission.          |
| ECM RX   | Sets ECM reception.             |
| CED Freq | The frequency of CED is set up. |

#### Setting: ECM TX

Set to OFF when the reduction of transmission costs is of higher priority than image quality.

Do not set it to Off when connecting to the IP telephone line.

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                      |
|-------|-------------------------------|
| On    | ECM transmission is enabled.  |
| Off   | ECM transmission is disabled. |

Initial setting: On

- 2 Press the [Start] key. Set the setting value.  
Completed is displayed.

#### Setting: ECM RX

Set to OFF when the reduction of transmission costs is of higher priority than image quality.

Do not set it to OFF when connecting to the IP (Internet Protocol) telephone line.

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                   |
|-------|----------------------------|
| On    | ECM reception is enabled.  |
| Off   | ECM reception is disabled. |

Initial setting: On

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

**Setting: CED Freq**

Sets the CED frequency. Execute it as one of the communication accuracy improvement measures for the international communication.

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents |
|-------|----------|
| 2100  | 2100Hz   |
| 1100  | 1100Hz   |

Initial setting: 2100

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U632 Communication control procedures 3

### (Message: Communication Control 3)

#### Contents

Sets the FAX communication.

#### Purpose

Reducing the error communication when using a low quality line

Corresponds to field claims when automatic FAX/telephone switching

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.  
The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items           | Contents  |
|-----------------|---|
| DIS 4Byte       | Sets the DIS signal to 4 bytes.   |
| Num OF CNG(F/T) | Sets the number of the CNG detection in the automatic FAX/telephone switching mode. |

#### Setting: DIS 4Byte

Sets whether to send bit 33 and later bits of the DIS/DTC signal.

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents  |
|-------|---|
| On    | Bit 33 and later bits of the DIS/DTC signal are not sent. |
| Off   | Bit 33 and later bits of the DIS/DTC signal are sent.     |

Initial setting: Off

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

#### Setting: Num OF CNG(F/T)

Sets the CNG detection times in the automatic FAX/telephone switching mode.

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents           |
|-------|--------------------|
| 1Time | Detects CNG once.  |
| 2Time | Detects CNG twice. |

Initial setting: 1Time (100V model)/2Time (Others)

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U633 Communication control procedures 4

### (Message: Communication Control 4)

#### Contents

Sets the FAX communication.

#### Purpose

Reducing the error communication when using a low quality line

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.  
The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items       | Contents  |
|-------------|---|
| V.34        | Enables or disables the V.34 communication.       |
| V.34-3429Hz | Sets the V.34 symbol speed (3429 Hz).             |
| DIS 2Res    | Sets the number of times of DIS signal reception. |
| RTN Check   | Sets the reference for the RTN signal output.     |

#### Setting: V.34

Sets whether to enable/disable the V.34 communication individually for transmission and reception.

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents  |
|-------|---|
| On    | V.34 communication is enabled for both transmission and reception.  |
| TX    | V.34 communication is enabled for transmission only.                |
| RX    | V.34 communication is enabled for reception only.                   |
| Off   | V.34 communication is disabled for both transmission and reception. |

Initial setting: On

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

#### Setting: V.34-3429Hz

Sets if the V.34 symbol speed 3429 Hz is used.

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                               |
|-------|--|
| On    | V.34 symbol speed 3429 Hz is used.     |
| Off   | V.34 symbol speed 3429 Hz is not used. |

Initial setting: On

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

**Setting: DIS 2Res**

Sets the number of times to receive the DIS signal to once or twice. Execute it as one of the corrective measures for transmission errors and other problems.

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                       |
|-------|--------------------------------|
| Once  | Responds to the first signal.  |
| Twice | Responds to the second signal. |

Initial setting: Once

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

**Setting: RTN Check**

Sets the error line rate to be a reference to the RTN signal transmission. If transmission errors occur frequently due to the line quality, lower this setting to reduce them.

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents               |
|-------|------------------------|
| 5%    | Error line rate of 5%  |
| 10%   | Error line rate of 10% |
| 15%   | Error line rate of 15% |
| 20%   | Error line rate of 20% |

Initial setting: 15%

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U634 Communication control procedures 5

### (Message: Communication Control 5)

#### Contents

Sets the maximum number of error bytes judged acceptable when receiving a TCF signal. Execute it as one of measures to ease transmission conditions if transmission errors occur.

#### Purpose

Relax the communication conditions

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [TCF Check].
- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items     | Contents   | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-----------|--|---------------|-----------------|
| TCF Check | Sets the allowed error bytes when detecting the TCF signal | 1 to 255      | 0               |

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U640 Communication time setting 1

### (Message: Communication Time 1)

#### Contents

Sets the detection time when one-shot detection is selected for remote switching.

Sets the detection time when continuous detection is selected for remote switching.

#### Purpose

Sets the remote switching conditions according to the user's telephone type, preference, etc.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.
- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items       | Contents   | Setting range | Initial setting      |
|-------------|--|---------------|----------------------|
| Time(One)   | Sets the one-shot detection time for remote switching.   | 0 to 255      | 7<br>1 (New Zealand) |
| Time (Cont) | Sets the continuous detection time for remote switching. | 0 to 255      | 80                   |

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.



## U641 Communication time setting 2

### (Message: Communication Time 2)

#### Contents

Sets the time-out time for the fax communication.

#### Purpose

Mainly, executed to improve the accuracy of communication for international communication

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.

| Items        | Contents                    |
|--------------|-----------------------------|
| T0 TIME OUT  | Sets the T0 time-out time.  |
| T1 TIME OUT  | Sets the T1 time-out time.  |
| T2 TIME OUT  | Sets the T2 time-out time.  |
| Ta TIME OUT  | Sets the Ta time-out time.  |
| Tb1 TIME OUT | Sets the Tb1 time-out time. |
| Tb2 TIME OUT | Sets the Tb2 time-out time. |
| Tc TIME OUT  | Sets the Tc time-out time.  |
| Td TIME OUT  | Sets the Td time-out time.  |

#### Setting: T0 Time Out

Sets the time before detecting a CED or DIS signal after a dialing signal is sent.

Sets to prevent disconnection of a line that occurs depending on the quality of the exchange, or when the destination unit sets the auto switching function.

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Contents                   | Setting range | Initial setting       |
|----------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| Sets the T0 time-out time. | 30 to 90 (s)  | 56<br>58 (100V model) |

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

#### Setting: T1 Time Out

Sets the time before receiving the correct signal after call reception.

\*This setting is usually unnecessary.

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Contents                   | Setting range | Initial setting       |
|----------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| Sets the T1 time-out time. | 30 to 90 (s)  | 36<br>38 (100V model) |

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

**Setting: T2 Time Out**

The T2 time-out time is specified as follows.

From CFR signal output to image data reception

From image data reception to the next signal reception

In ECM, from RNR signal detection to the next signal reception

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Contents                   | Setting range | Initial setting |
|----------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Sets the T2 time-out time. | 1 to 255      | 69              |

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

**Setting: Ta Time Out**

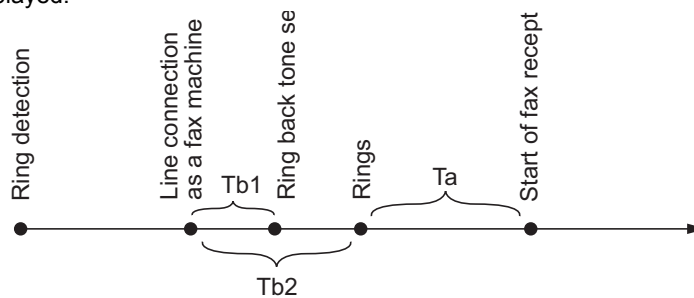
Sets the time to start ringing for an operator through the external telephone after receiving a call in the FAX/telephone automatic switching mode. (See figure 1-3-18). If either receiving a FAX signal within this time or passing this time, the mode automatically switches to the FAX reception mode. Execute when a reception error occurs when in the automatic FAX/telephone switching.

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Contents                   | Setting range | Initial setting |
|----------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Sets the Ta time-out time. | 1 to 255 s    | 30              |

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

**Setting: Tb1 Time Out**

Sets the time to start sending the ring back tone after receiving a call as a fax machine in the FAX/telephone automatic switching mode, (See figure 1-3-18). Execute when a reception error occurs when in the automatic FAX/telephone switching.

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Contents                    | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-----------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Sets the Tb1 time-out time. | 1 to 255      | 20              |

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

### Setting: Tb2 Time Out

Sets the time to start ringing for an operator through the external telephone after receiving a call in the FAX/telephone automatic switching mode. (See figure 1-3-27). Execute when a reception error occurs when in the automatic FAX/telephone switching.

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Contents                    | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-----------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Sets the Tb2 time-out time. | 1 to 255      | 80              |

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

### Setting: Tc Time Out

In the TAD mode, set the time to check if there are any triggers for shifting to FAX reception after a connected handset receives a call. Unless switched to FAX reception during this period, operated as a normal phone after this.

In the TAD mode, change the setting when fax reception is unsuccessful or a telephone fails to receive a call.

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Contents                   | Setting range | Initial setting |
|----------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Sets the Tc time-out time. | 1 to 255 s    | 60              |

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

### Setting: Td Time Out

Sets the length of time to determine silent status, one of the triggers for Tc time check.

In the TAD mode, change the setting when fax reception is unsuccessful or a telephone fails to receive a call. Be sure not to set too short, otherwise the mode may be switched to fax while the unit is being used as a telephone.

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Contents                   | Setting range | Initial setting                        |
|----------------------------|---------------|--|
| Sets the Td time-out time. | 1 to 255      | 6<br>30 (100V model)<br>9 (120V model) |

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U650 Modem 1

### (Message: Modem 1)

#### Contents

Sets the G3 cable equalizer. Sets the modem detection level.

#### Purpose

Adjusts the equalizer to be compatible with the line characteristics

Set to Improve the accuracy of communication when using a low quality line

#### Method

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select the item to set.

| Items         | Contents                                  |
|---------------|---|
| Reg G3 TX Eqr | Sets the G3 transmission cable equalizer. |
| Reg G3 RX Eqr | Sets the G3 reception cable equalizer.    |
| RX Mdm Level  | Sets the modem detection level.           |

#### Setting: Reg G3 TX Eqr

1 Select [0dB], [4dB], [8dB] or [12dB].

Initial setting: 0dB

2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

#### Setting: Reg G3 RX Eqr

1 Select [0dB], [4dB], [8dB] or [12dB].

Initial setting: 0dB

2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

#### Setting: RX Mdm Level

1 Select [-33dBm], [-38dBm], [-43dBm] or [-48dBm].

Initial setting: -43dBm

2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

[Completed] is displayed.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U651 Modem 2

### (Message: Modem 2)

#### Contents

Sets the modem output level.

#### Purpose

Adjust to make the equalizer compatible with the line characteristics when installing the main unit

#### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.
- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items           | Contents                                      | Setting range | Initial setting  |
|-----------------|---|---------------|--|
| Sgl LVL Modem   | Sets the modem output level                   | -15 to 0      | 11<br>10 (100V model)<br>12 (Australia)                    |
| DTMF LEV (Cent) | DTMF output level (center value)              | -15.0 to 0.0  | -8<br>-9 (100V model)<br>-7 (Australia)<br>-6 (120V model) |
| DTMF LEV (Diff) | Sets the DTMF output level (level difference) | 0 to 5.5      | 2<br>1.5 (Australia)<br>1 (New Zealand)                    |

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U660 Ring setting

### (Message: Set Calls)

#### Contents

Sets the NCU (network control unit).

#### Purpose

Execute as required

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to set.  
The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items       | Contents  |
|-------------|---|
| Exchange    | Setting the PBX/PSTN connection                 |
| Dial Tone   | Sets the PSTN dial tone detection.              |
| Busy Tone   | Sets the busy tone detection.                   |
| PBX Setting | Setting the PBX connection                      |
| DC Loop     | Sets the loop current detection before dialing. |

#### Setting: Exchange

Selects if the FAX is connected to either a PBX or public switched telephone network.

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents  |
|-------|---|
| PSTN  | Connected to the public switched telephone network. |
| PBX   | Connecting to the PBX                               |

Initial setting: PSTN

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

#### Setting: Dial Tone

Selects whether or not to check for a dial tone to check if the telephone is off the hook when a fax is connected to a public switched telephone network.

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                       |
|-------|--------------------------------|
| On    | The dial tone is detected.     |
| Off   | The dial tone is not detected. |

Initial setting: On

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

**Setting: Busy Tone**

Sets whether the line is disconnected immediately after a busy tone is detected, or the busy tone is not detected and the line remains connected until T0 time-out time, when a FAX signal is sent

FAX transmission may fail due to incorrect busy tone detection. When setting it to OFF, this problem may be improved. However, the line is not disconnected within the T0 time-out time even if the destination line is busy.

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                       |
|-------|--------------------------------|
| On    | Detects the busy tone.         |
| Off   | Does not detect the busy tone. |

Initial setting: On/Off (Australia)

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

**Setting: PBX Setting**

Selects the mode to connect an outside call when connected to a PBX.

\*According to the type of the PBX connected, select the mode to connect an outside call.

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents         |
|-------|------------------|
| Flash | Flashing mode    |
| Loop  | Code number mode |

Initial setting: Loop

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

**Setting: DC Loop**

Sets if the loop current is detected before dialing.

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                                 |
|-------|--|
| On    | Detects the loop current before dialing. |
| Off   | Detects the loop current before dialing. |

Initial setting: On

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U670 List output

### (Message: Output List)

#### Contents

Outputs the list of fax communication data.

Printing a list is disabled either when a job is remaining in the buffer or when [Pause All Print Jobs] is pressed to halt printing.

#### Purpose

Check conditions of use, settings and transmission procedures of the FAX.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to execute.
- 3 Press the [Start] key.
- 4 Output selected list.

| Items           | Contents   |
|-----------------|--|
| Sys Conf Report | Prints the list of software switches, local telephone number, confidential boxes, firmware versions and other information. |
| Action List     | Prints the list of the error logs and communication lines.   |
| Self Sts Report | Prints the list of FAX communication settings only in the maintenance mode (self-status report).                           |
| Protocol List   | Outputs a list of communication procedures.  |
| Error List      | Output the error list.   |
| Addr List(No.)  | Outputs address book in the IDs order  |
| Addr List(Idx)  | Outputs address book in the order of names.  |
| One-touch List  | Outputs a list of one-touch.   |
| Group List      | Outputs the group list.  |

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.



## U671 FAX backup data clear

### (Message: Clear FAX Back Up Data)

#### Contents

Clears the FAX/i-FAX communication history and scheduled FAX transmission backup data in the FAX PWB.

Execute the memory Storage initialization.

#### Purpose

Execute to prevent information disclosure of the backup data.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to execute.

| Items                | Contents   |
|----------------------|--|
| RECOVERY FAX Storage | Clears the scheduled FAX data in the FAX PWB.      |
| FAX Data CLEAR       | Clears all the data in the Storage.                |
| Change Fax Storage   | Enable to use the Storage used in another machine. |

#### Method: RECOVERY FAX Storage / FAX Data CLEAR

- 1 Press the [Start] key.  
Clears the backup data.
- 2 Turn the power switch off and on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

#### Setting: Change Fax Storage

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items | Contents                    |
|-------|-----------------------------|
| SSD   | To save the data to the SSD |
| HDD   | To save the data to the HDD |

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
- 3 Turn the power switch off and on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U695 FAX function customization

### (Message: Customize FAX Function)

#### Contents

FAX package transmission is set up. Changes print size priority when receiving small size.

#### Purpose

Execute as required

#### Method

- 1 Select the item to set.

| Items         | Contents   |
|---------------|--|
| FAX Bulk TX   | FAX batch transmission is set up.                                  |
| A5 Pt Pri Chg | Change of print size priority at the time of small size reception. |

#### Setting: FAX Bulk TX

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys, select [On] or [Off].

| Items | Contents                            |
|-------|-------------------------------------|
| On    | FAX batch transmission is enabled.  |
| Off   | FAX batch transmission is disabled. |

Initial setting: On

- 2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

#### Setting: A5 Pt Pri Chg

- 1 By using the [+] [-] keys, select [On] or [Off].

| Items | Contents   |
|-------|--|
| On    | At the time of A5 size reception: A5 >B5 >A4 >B4 >A3 |
| Off   | At the time of A5 size reception: A5 >A4 >B5 >A3 >B4 |

- 2 Initial setting: Off
- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U698 Setting the maintenance port (Message: Set Port for Maintenance)

### Contents

Sets the port applicable to the maintenance mode.

### Purpose

Sets the maintenance mode target port when installing multiple ports .

Setting is unnecessary if the same contents are set for both ports. Sets only when different items are set for each port.

This maintenance mode only appears when the multiple ports are installed.

### Setting

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Press [Port Select].  
Current setting display is inverted.
- 3 Select the item to set.

| Items  | Contents                        |
|--------|---------------------------------|
| ALL    | All ports                       |
| PORT 1 | Port 1 (FAX PWB port)           |
| PORT 2 | Port 2 (Optional multiple port) |

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

### Precautions

These contents to set are cleared when exiting the maintenance mode or turning the power off and the settings are necessary when entering the maintenance mode.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U699 Software switch: Set

### (Message: Set: Soft SW)

#### Contents

Sets the software switches on the FAX PWB individually.

#### Purpose

Change the setting when a problem such as split output of received originals occurs

Since the communication performance is largely affected, normally this setting need not be changed.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [SW No.].
- 3 Enter the desired software switch number (3 digits) using the numeric keys and press the [Start] key.

| Items  | Contents   |
|--------|--|
| SW No. | Specifies the software switch number (2 to 3 digits) |

- 4 Press the keys of bit 0 to 7 to switch each bit between 0 and 1.

| Items | Contents                            |
|-------|-------------------------------------|
| Bit   | Set the software switch bit (8bit). |

- 5 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.  
[Completed] is displayed.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

**List of software switches which can be configured****Communication control procedures**

| No. | Bit  | Contents  |
|-----|------|---|
| 36  | 7654 | Coding format in transmission                               |
|     | 3210 | Coding format in reception                                  |
| 37  | 5    | 33600bps/V34  |
|     | 4    | 31200bps/V34  |
|     | 3    | 28800bps/V34  |
|     | 2    | 26400bps/V34  |
|     | 1    | 24000bps/V34  |
|     | 0    | 21600bps/V34  |
| 38  | 7    | 19200bps/V34  |
|     | 6    | 16800bps/V34  |
|     | 5    | 14400bps/V34  |
|     | 4    | 12000bps/V34  |
|     | 3    | 9600bps/V34   |
|     | 2    | 7200bps/V34   |
|     | 1    | 4800bps/V34   |
|     | 0    | 2400bps/V34   |
| 41  | 3    | FSK detection in V.8  |
| 42  | 4    | 4800 bps transmission when low-speed setting is active      |
|     | 2    | FIF length when transmitting DIS/DTC signal 4 times or more |

**Communication time setting**

| No. | Bit      | Contents   |
|-----|----------|--|
| 53  | 76543210 | T3 timeout setting                               |
| 54  | 76543210 | T4 timeout setting (auto transmission)           |
| 55  | 76543210 | T5 timeout setting                               |
| 60  | 76543210 | Time before transmission of CNG (1100 Hz) signal |
| 63  | 76543210 | T0 timeout setting (manual transmission)         |
| 64  | 7        | Phase C timeout in ECM reception                 |
| 66  | 76543210 | Timeout 1 in countermeasures against echo        |
| 68  | 76543210 | Timeout for FSK detection start in V.8           |

**Modem setting**

| No. | Bit   | Contents       |
|-----|-------|----------------|
| 89  | 76543 | RX gain adjust |

**NCU setting**

| No. | Bit      | Contents   |
|-----|----------|--|
| 121 | 7654     | Dial tone/busy tone detection pattern                                |
| 122 | 7654     | Busy tone detection pattern  |
|     | 1        | Busy tone detection in FAX/TEL automatic switching                   |
| 125 | 76543210 | Registering the access code for connection to PSTN                   |
| 126 | 7654     | Ringback tone ON/OFF cycle for the automatic FAX/telephone switching |

**Calling time setting**

| No. | Bit      | Contents  |
|-----|----------|---|
| 133 | 76543210 | DTMF signal transmission time                                       |
| 134 | 76543210 | DTMF signal pause time  |
| 141 | 76543210 | Ringer detection cycle (minimum)                                    |
| 142 | 76543210 | Ringer detection cycle (maximum)                                    |
| 143 | 76543210 | Ringer ON time detection  |
| 144 | 76543210 | Ringer OFF time detection   |
| 145 | 76543210 | Ringer OFF time undetected  |
| 147 | 76543210 | Dial tone detection time (continuous tone)                          |
| 148 | 76543210 | Allowable dial tone interruption time                               |
| 149 | 76543210 | Time for transmitting selection signal after closing the DC circuit |
| 151 | 76543210 | Ringer frequency detection invalid time                             |

## U901 Clearing the counters by paper source (Message: Clear Paper Feeder Counter)

**Contents**

Displays and clears the counts by paper source.

**Purpose**

Check the maintenance parts replacement timing. Executes to clear counters when replacing the maintenance parts.

**Method**

- 1 Press the [Start] key.

Displays the counts by paper source.

| Items     | Contents                                 |
|-----------|--|
| MPT       | Displays/clears the MP tray feed counter |
| Cassette1 | Displays/clears Cassette 1 count         |
| Cassette2 | Displays/clears Cassette 2 count         |
| Cassette3 | Displays Cassette 3 count                |
| Cassette4 | Displays Cassette 5 count                |
| Duplex    | Displays/clears the duplex unit count    |

- 2 Select the counter to clear.  
[Cassette 3] and [Cassette 4] are unable to clear.
- 3 Press the [Start] key to clear the counter value.

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U903 Clearing the jam counter

### (Message: Clear Paper Misfeed Counter)

#### Contents

Displays/clears the jam counter by paper jam type.

#### Purpose

Execute to check the paper jam status. Executes to clear counters when replacing the maintenance parts.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to execute.

| Items     | Contents                             |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|
| Cnt       | Displaying/clearing the jam counts   |
| Total Cnt | Displaying the accumulate jam counts |

#### Method: Cnt

- 1 Select [Cnt].  
Number of occurrence is displayed by jam code.  
Code of no occurrence is not indicated.
- 2 Select [Clear] to clear the jam counts.  
Individual counters cannot be cleared.
- 3 Press the [Start] key to clear the counter value.

#### Method: Total Cnt

- 1 Select [Total Cnt].  
Accumulate number of occurrence is displayed by jam code.
- 2 Change the screen using the [▲] [▼] key.  
Unable to clear the accumulated jam counter values.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U904 Clearing the service call error counter

### (Message: Clear Service Call Counter)

#### Contents

Displays/clears the number of times of service call errors by service call error type.

#### Purpose

Executes to check the service call error. Executes to clear counters when replacing the maintenance parts.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to execute.

| Items     | Contents                                       |
|-----------|--|
| Cnt       | Displays/clears the service call counter.      |
| Total Cnt | Displays accumulate service call error counts. |

#### Method: Cnt

- 1 Select [Cnt].  
Number of occurrence is displayed by service call error.  
Code of no occurrence is not indicated.
- 2 Select [Clear] to clear the service call error counter.  
Individual counters cannot be cleared.
- 3 Press the [Start] key to clear the counter value.

#### Method: Total Cnt

- 1 Select [Total Cnt].  
Accumulate number of occurrence is displayed by service call error.  
Unable to clear the accumulated service call error counter values.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.



## U905 Optional counter

### (Message: Option Counter)

#### Contents

Displays the counter values of the document processor, 1000-sheet finisher, 3000-sheet finisher and inner finisher.

#### Purpose

Execute to check the usage status of the document processor, 1000-sheet finisher, 3000-sheet finisher and inner finisher.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the device to check.  
Switched to the counter screen.

| Items | Contents                               |
|-------|--|
| DP    | Displays the document processor count. |
| DF    | Displays the document finisher count.  |

#### Method: DP

Each counter is displayed.

| Items  | Contents   |
|--------|--|
| ADP    | Simplex original count is displayed.               |
| RADP   | Duplex original count is displayed.                |
| CIS *1 | Displays the count of simultaneous duplex scanning |

\*1: Simultaneous duplex scanning DP installed machine

#### Method: DF

Each counter is displayed.

| Items     | Contents                              |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|
| Carry in  | Displays the sorter counter.          |
| Staple    | Displays the staple counter.          |
| Punch     | Displays the punch counter.           |
| Tray A *1 | Displays the main tray eject counter. |

\*1: 3000-sheet finisher installed machine

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U906 Resetting the partial operation

### (Message: Reset Disable Function Mode)

#### Contents

Release the service call error with partial operation.

#### Purpose

If the partial operation is executed with a broken cassette, etc., make sure to execute it after repairing the parts.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Execute].

| Items   | Contents                     |
|---------|------------------------------|
| Execute | Reset the partial operation. |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to release the partial operation.
- 4 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U908 Total counter

### (Message: Total Counter)

#### Contents

Displays the total counter.

#### Purpose

Displays the total counter for check.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.  
Displays the total count.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U910 Black rate data

### (Message: Clear Coverage Data)

#### Contents

Clears the accumulated data for the print coverage per A4 size paper and its period of time (as shown on the service status page).

#### Purpose

Clears data as required at the time such as maintenance

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Execute].

| Items   | Contents                        |
|---------|---------------------------------|
| Execute | Clears the print coverage data. |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to clear the print coverage data.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U911 Counter by media type (Message: Paper Size Counter)

### Contents

Displays the paper feed counts by paper size.

### Purpose

Displays the counts to confirm when replacing the maintenance parts .

### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.

Displays the paper feed counts by paper size.

| Items        | Contents                          |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| A3 *1        | Displays A3 feed counts           |
| B4 *1        | Displays B4 feed counts           |
| A4 *1        | Displays A4 feed counts           |
| B5 *1        | Displays B5 feed counts           |
| A5 *1        | Displays A5 feed counts           |
| Folio *1     | Displays Folio feed counts        |
| Ledger *2    | Displays Ledger feed counts       |
| Legal *2     | Displays Legal feed counts        |
| Letter *2    | Displays Letter feed counts       |
| Statement *2 | Displays Statement feed counts    |
| ETC          | Displays Other paper feed counts. |

\*1: metric specification, \*2: inch specification

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U917 Read/Write Backup Data

### (Message: Read/Write Backup HDD Data(USB))

#### Contents

Retrieves the backup data to a USB memory from the main unit, or writes the data from the USB memory to the main unit.

#### Purpose

Makes a back up of the main unit information, and import or export to restore the main unit information

#### Method

- 1 Turn the power switch off.
- 2 Insert a USB memory into the USB memory slot.
- 3 Turn the power switch on.  
Wait for about 10 seconds until the main unit recognizes a USB memory.
- 4 Press the [Start] key.
- 5 Select the object item.

| Items         | Contents                    | Depending data*   |
|---------------|-----------------------------|---|
| Address Book  | Address book information    | -   |
| Job Account   | Job accounting information  | -   |
| One Touch     | One-touch key information   | Address book information  |
| User          | User management information | Job accounting information  |
| Document Box  | Document box information    | Job accounting, User information  |
| Shortcut      | Short-cut information       | Job accounting, User, Document Box information  |
| Fax Forward   | FAX forward information     | Job accounting, User, Document Box information  |
| System        | System setting information  | -   |
| Network       | Network setting information | -   |
| Job Setting   | Job setting information     | -   |
| Printer       | Printer setting information | -   |
| Fax Setting   | FAX setting information     | -   |
| Program       | Program information         | Information of Address book, Job accounting, User management, Document box, FAX transfer and FAX setting          |
| Panel Setting | Panel setting information   | Information of Address book, Job accounting, User management, Document box, FAX transfer, FAX setting and Program |

Since data are dependent with each other, data other than selected are also retrieved or written.

- 6 Select [Export] or [Import].

| Items  | Contents  |
|--------|---|
| Import | Imports data from the USB memory to the main unit.    |
| Export | Retrieving data from the main unit to the USB memory. |

- 7 Press the [Start] key. Starts reading or writing.  
The progress of selected item is displayed in %.  
When an error occurs, the operation is canceled and an error code appears.
- 8 [Finish] appears after normal completion.

- 9 When selecting [Import], turn the power switch off then on, after completing writing. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

### Error codes

| Codes           | Contents  |
|-----------------|---|
| e000            | Unspecified error   |
| e0001           | Parameter error   |
| e0002           | Generating a dummy file has failed.   |
| e0003           | The XML file to import does not exist   |
| e0004           | The exported file does not exist  |
| e0100 to e01ff  | Error in handling addressbook   |
| e0200 to e02ff  | Error in handling One-touch   |
| e0300 to e03ff  | Error in handling user management   |
| e0400 to e04ff  | Error in handling panel program data  |
| e0500 to e05ff  | Error in handling forwarding FAX data   |
| e0600 to e06ff  | Error in handling the system configuration  |
| e0700 to e07ff  | Error in handling network parameters  |
| e0800 to e08ff  | Error in handling job accounting  |
| e0900 to e09ff  | Error in handling short-cuts  |
| e0a00 to e0aff  | Error in handling job information   |
| e0b00 to e0bff  | Error in handling FAX data  |
| e0c00: to e0cff | Error in handling printer data  |
| e0d00 to e0dff  | Error in handling panel data  |
| e0e00 to e0eff  | Error in handling document boxes  |
| e1000 to e1fff  | Error in the device-related process   |
| e2000 to e2fff  | Error in handling SOAP IF   |
| e3000 to e3fff  | Error in handling KM-WSDL IF  |
| e4000 to e4fff  | Error in process for import<br>(e4002) A file mandatory for importing is missing<br>(e4008) Invalid file header |
| e5000 to e5fff  | Error in the SOAP data rewriting process  |

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U920 Billing counter

### (Message: Charge Counter)

#### Contents

Displays the billing count.

#### Purpose

Execute to check the current billing counts

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to display.  
Switched to each display screen.

| Items         | Contents             |
|---------------|----------------------|
| Main Function | Main function counts |
| Sub Function  | Sub functions count  |

#### Method: Main Function

The charge counts for the main functions are displayed.

| Items    | Contents                     |
|----------|------------------------------|
| B/W Copy | B/W copy count is displayed. |
| B/W Prn  | B/W print count is displayed |
| B/W FAX  | FAX count                    |

#### Method: Sub Function

The charge counts for the sub functions are displayed.

| Items         | Contents                                 |
|---------------|--|
| Simplex       | Simplex print count is displayed         |
| Duplex        | Duplex print count is displayed          |
| Combine(Off)  | Combine print counts (Off) is displayed  |
| Combine(2in1) | Combine print counts (2in1) is displayed |
| Combine(4in1) | Combine print counts (4in1) is displayed |

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U927 Clearing all the billing/life counters

(Message: Clear All Charge/Life Counter (one time only))

### Contents

Clears all charge counts and machine life counts.

### Supplement

The total charge counts and the machine life counts can be cleared only once if all count values are 1000 or less.

### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Execute].

| Items   | Contents  |
|---------|---|
| Execute | Initializes the billing count and machine life count. |

- 3 Press the [Start] key.  
Clears all charge counts and machine life counts.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U928 Machine life counter

(Message: Machine Life Counter)

### Contents

The current machine life counts is displayed.

### Purpose

Executed to check the machine life count

### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.  
The current machine life counts is displayed.

| Items | Contents                        |
|-------|---------------------------------|
| Cnt   | Displays the machine life count |

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.



## U930 Clear the main charger roller counts

(Message: Clear Charger Roller Counter)

### Contents

Displays and clears the current main charger roller counts.

### Purpose

To verify the main charger roller counts after replacing. Also, clear the counts after replacement

### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.

The main charge roller counter for each color is displayed.

| Items | Contents                                      |
|-------|---|
| K     | The main charger roller counts are displayed. |

### Method: Clear

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 Select [Clear].
- 3 Press the [Start] key to clear the counter value.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U933 Setting the maintenance mode log

### (Message: Set Maintenance Mode Execute Log)

#### Contents

Sets the function to record the in/out date of the maintenance mode or date executing each maintenance item individually and output the log file.

#### Purpose

Record the maintenance mode history to analyze the cause when a problem occurs.

#### Method

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select the item to set.

The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items   | Contents                       |
|---------|--------------------------------|
| Export  | Exports Maintenance Log.       |
| Setting | Maintenance log output setting |

#### Method: Export

1 Select [Execute].

| Items   | Contents                                    |
|---------|---|
| Execute | Export the maintenance log to a USB memory. |

2 Press the [Start] key.

Export the maintenance log to a USB memory.

If a USB memory is not inserted, [Execute] is grayed out .

Display OK/NG after execution.

#### Setting: Setting

1 Select the item to set.

Select the key including the number to set indicated by each block.

The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items     | Contents  |
|-----------|---|
| U000-U019 | Sets the maintenance log output for U000 to U019. |
| U020-U029 | Sets the maintenance log output for U020 to U029. |
| U030-U059 | Sets the maintenance log output for U030 to U059. |
| U060-U099 | Sets the maintenance log output for U060 to U099. |
| U100-U129 | Sets the maintenance log output for U100 to U129. |
| U130-U159 | Sets the maintenance log output for U130 to U159. |
| U160-U199 | Sets the maintenance log output for U160 to U199. |
| U200-U249 | Sets the maintenance log output for U200 to U249. |
| U250-U349 | Sets the maintenance log output for U250 to U349. |
| U400-U499 | Sets the maintenance log output for U400 to U499. |
| U500-U599 | Sets the maintenance log output for U500 to U599. |
| U600-U699 | Sets the maintenance log output for U600 to U699. |

| Items     | Contents  |
|-----------|---|
| U900-U999 | Sets the maintenance log output for U900 to U999. |

- Set on/off for the number desired to set.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U935 Maintenance Relay Board

(Message: Maintenance Relay Board)

### Contents

Set the disorder mode setting.

### Purpose

Set when the disorder of the relay PWB occurs.

### Execution

- Press the [Start] key.
- By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items  | Contents                         |
|--------|----------------------------------|
| Mode 0 | Disorder setting mode invalidity |
| Mode 1 | Disorder setting mode validity   |

- Press the [Start] key, determine the setting value.

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U942 DP loop amount setting

### (Message: Adjust DP Original Loop Amount)

#### Contents

Adjust the paper loop amount when using the document processor.

#### Purpose

Execute when original no-feed jam, skew or creases on the original appears.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 3 Place an original on the DP and press the [Start] key to make a test copy.
- 4 Press the [System Menu] key.
- 5 Select the item to adjust.
- 6 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items   | Contents                         | Setting range | Initial setting | Data variation |
|---------|----------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|----------------|
| Front   | Single-side original loop amount | -31 to 31     | 0               | 0.1758mm       |
| Back *1 | Double-side original loop amount | -31 to 31     | 0               | 0.1758mm       |
| Mix *2  | Mixed original loop amount       | -31 to 31     | 0               | 0.1758mm       |

\*1: Reversing duplex scanning machine only, \*2: except DP-7120

When the setting value is increased, the paper loop amount increase, and it decreases when the setting value is decreased.

Increase the set value if no feed jam or skew feed occurs and reduce the set value if creases appear on the original.

- 7 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U952 Maintenance mode workflow

### (Message: Maintenance Mode Work Flow)

#### Contents

Execute the maintenance items in the order of registration in the main unit or the USB memory.

#### Purpose

Execute to register regular maintenance items.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select the item to execute.  
The screen for executing is displayed.

| Items        | Contents   |
|--------------|--|
| Continue     | Resume interrupted workflow.                     |
| Execute(USB) | Executes the workflow in a USB memory.           |
| Execute      | Execute the workflow saved in the main unit.     |
| Entry(USB)   | Executes the workflow in a USB memory.           |
| Entry        | Register the workflow in the main unit manually. |
| Log          | Displays the latest workflow execution history.  |

#### Method: Continue

- 1 Select maintenance item number to execute.
- 2 Press the [Start] key.  
Selected maintenance mode is executed.

#### Method: Execute(USB)

- 1 Check the LED display is off and turn the power switch off.
- 2 Insert a USB memory into the USB memory slot.
- 3 Turn the power switch on.
- 4 Enter maintenance item U952.
- 5 Select [Execute(USB)].
- 6 Select [workflow].

| Items                | Contents                      |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| WorkFlowData 01 - 07 | Workflow data in a USB memory |

- 7 Press the [Start] key.  
Execute the maintenance items in the order of registration in the workflow.

**Method: Excute**

- 1 Select the place to save the data to execute.

| Items      | Contents                            |
|------------|-------------------------------------|
| Data 1 - 8 | Workflow save area in the main unit |

- 2 Select the item to execute.
- 3 Press the [Start] key to start the processing.

**Method: Entry(USB)**

- 1 Check the LED display is off and turn the power switch off.
- 2 Insert a USB memory into the USB memory slot.
- 3 Turn the power switch on.
- 4 Enter maintenance item U952.
- 5 Select [Entry(USB)].
- 6 Select [workflow].

| Items                | Contents                      |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| WorkFlowData 01 - 07 | Workflow data in a USB memory |

- 7 Select the workflow save area.

| Items      | Contents                            |
|------------|-------------------------------------|
| Data 1 - 8 | Workflow save area in the main unit |

- 8 Select [Execute].
  - \*: Registers the workflow in a USB memory to the main unit.

**Method: Entry**

- 1 Select [Entry].
- 2 Select the workflow save area.

| Items      | Contents                            |
|------------|-------------------------------------|
| Data 1 - 8 | Workflow save area in the main unit |

- 3 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, enter the maintenance number to register in the workflow.

| Items       | Contents                       |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| Flow 1 - 14 | Registered maintenance numbers |

- 4 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.
- 5 Press the [Start] key.
  - Execute the maintenance items in the order of registration in the workflow.

**e.g.**

When inserting a USB memory the following items can be registered: commands, texts and maintenance numbers (variable).

File format: xxx.mwf

- 1, SET UP, 327, 000, 927, 278
- 2, WARRANTY, 089, 000
- 3, MK-A, 127, 167, 130, 410, 251
- 4, EH SETUP, 411, 034, 246

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U964 Log check

### Contents

- Transfer the log files save in the HDD to a USB memory.
- Transfer screenshots at log and log acquisition.

### Purpose

Transfer the log file saved in the HDD to a USB memory for investigation when a failure occurs.

### Method

- 1 Check the LED display is off and turn the power switch off.
- 2 Insert a USB memory into the USB memory slot.
- 3 Turn the power switch on.
- 4 Enter maintenance item U964.
- 5 Select [Execute].

| Items   | Contents               |
|---------|------------------------|
| Execute | Transfer the log file. |

- 6 Press the [Start] key.  
Starts transferring the log files saved in the HDD to a USB memory.  
[Processing] is displayed. (About 3 to 5 minutes)
- 7 [Completed] appears after normal completion.
- 8 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.  
An error code appears when there is an error.

### Supplement

How to retrieve the log when the operation panel freezes

Log retrieving starts when pressing three keys on the operation panel (Status/Job Cancel + System Menu/Counter + Stop) for 3 to 6 seconds.

The memory lamp is blinking during retrieving and turns on when completed.

The log retrieved this way can be saved in a USB memory.

### Error codes

| Display           | Contents  |
|-------------------|---|
| No USB Storage    | The USB memory is not installed                   |
| No File           | No file   |
| Mount Error       | USB memory mount error                            |
| File Delete Error | Failed to delete existing files in the USB memory |
| Copy Error        | HDD to USB memory copy failure                    |
| Unmount Error     | USB memory unmount error                          |
| Other Error       | Other error                                       |

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.



## U969 Toner area code

### (Message: Toner Area Code)

#### Contents

Displays the toner area code.

#### Purpose

Execute to check the currently set toner area code and model code.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.

Displays the toner area code and model code

| Items      | Contents                  |
|------------|---------------------------|
| Area Code  | Toner container area code |
| Model Code | Model code                |

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U977 Setting the data capture mode

### (Message: Set Data Capture Mode)

#### Contents

Stores the data sent to the main unit into a USB memory.

#### Purpose

Store the data sent to the main unit into a USB memory to check it.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Execute].

| Items   | Contents                     |
|---------|------------------------------|
| Execute | Stores data in a USB memory. |

- 3 Press the [Start] key.

When the operation is completed abnormally, an error code is displayed.

#### Error codes

| Items | Contents  |
|-------|---|
| 1     | USB memory is broken. USB memory was disconnected during data processing or is write-protected. |
| 4     | USB memory is full.   |
| 50    | Other error occurs  |

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U981 Set/Check CBM Alert Data

### (Message: Set/Check CBM Alert Data)

#### Contents

Refers and changes the information on CBM (condition based maintenance) in KFS.

#### Purpose

Refers and changes setting current value of the counter and threshold / setting value, related on CBM (condition based maintenance).

#### Method

1 Press the [Start] key.

2 Select the item to set.

The screen for next selecting is displayed.

| Items                | Contents   |
|----------------------|--|
| CBM Alert            | CBM Alert  |
| Cassette Feed Timing | Paper feed timing  |
| DP Feed Retry        | DP paper feed retry  |
| Scan Image           | Setting / confirmation of DP black line detection (CBM alert data) |

#### Method: CBM Alert

1 Select the item to set.

The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items   | Contents |
|---------|----------|
| Engine  | Engine   |
| Scanner | Scanner  |

#### Setting: Engine

1 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items                | Contents          | Setting range | Initial setting |
|----------------------|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Cassette Feed Timing | Paper feed timing | 0 to 1        | 0(off)          |

2 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

#### Setting: Scanner

1 Select the item to set.

2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items         | Contents              | Setting range | Initial setting |
|---------------|-----------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| DP Feed Retry | DP paper feed retry   | 0 to 1        | 0(off)          |
| Scan Image    | Image vertical streak | 0 to 1        | 0(off)          |

3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Method: Cassette Feed Timing**

- 1 Select the item to set.

The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items                | Contents  |
|----------------------|---|
| Total Error Cnt      | Threshold for error total cumulative count (for market)     |
| Total Error Cnt(HQ)  | Threshold of error total cumulative count (for development) |
| Error Cnt Per Unit   | Threshold value of error unit number count (for market)     |
| Notice 1K Cnt        | 1 k counter notification count                              |
| Error Cnt Per 1K     | 1 k Counter data threshold (for market)                     |
| Error Cnt Per 1K(HQ) | 1 k Counter data threshold (for development)                |
| Condition Setting    | Condition setting   |

**Setting: Total Error Cnt /Total Error Cnt(HQ) /Error Cnt Per Unit /Notice 1K Cnt /Error Cnt Per 1K /Error Cnt Per 1K(HQ)**

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items     | Contents  | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-----------|-----------|---------------|-----------------|
| Cassette1 | Cassette1 |               |                 |
| Cassette2 | Cassette2 |               |                 |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: Condition Setting**

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items                 | Contents                        | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Threshold Feed Error1 | Threshold of paper feed error 1 |               |                 |
| Threshold Feed Error2 | Threshold of paper feed error 2 |               |                 |
| Rate Of Alert         | Rate at which alerts are raised |               |                 |
| Unit Per Sheet Number | Unit number                     |               |                 |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Method: DP Feed Retry**

- 1 Select the item to set.

The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items   | Contents              |
|---------|-----------------------|
| Cnt     | DP Feed Retry counter |
| Setting | DP Feed Retry setting |

**Setting: Cnt**

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items         | Contents   | Setting range | Initial setting |
|---------------|--|---------------|-----------------|
| Total Cnt     | Threshold value of total cumulative count of DP paper feed rollers (for market)      |               |                 |
| Total Cnt(HQ) | Threshold value of total cumulative count of DP paper feed rollers (for development) |               |                 |
| Cnt Per Unit  | Threshold value for counting the number of DP paper feed rollers (for market)        |               |                 |
| Error         | Error counting with the specified number of DP paper feed rollers                    |               |                 |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: Setting**

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items                 | Contents                           | Setting range | Initial setting |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| Feed Error            | Paper feed error (for market)      | 200 to 5000   |                 |
| Feed Error(HQ)        | Paper feed error (for development) | 200 to 5000   |                 |
| Rate Of Alert         | Rate at which alerts are raised    | 0 to 100      |                 |
| Unit Per Sheet Number | Unit number                        | 300/500/1000  |                 |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Method: Scan Image**

- 1 Select the item to set.  
The screen for setting is displayed.

| Items   | Contents              |
|---------|-----------------------|
| Cnt     | DP Feed Retry counter |
| Setting | DP Feed Retry setting |

**Setting: Cnt**

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items                  | Contents   | Setting range | Initial setting |
|------------------------|--|---------------|-----------------|
| Detect Black Line(CCD) | DP(CCD side) Cumulative number of black streak detection |               |                 |
| Detect Black Line(CIS) | DP(CIS side) Cumulative number of black streak detection |               |                 |
| Detect White Line(CIS) | DP(CIS side) Cumulative number of white streak detection |               |                 |
| Table Scan             | Number of sheets to read on the table                    |               |                 |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Setting: Setting**

- 1 Select the item to set.
- 2 By using the [+] [-] keys or the numeric keys, change the setting value.

| Items                    | Contents   | Setting range | Initial setting |
|--------------------------|--|---------------|-----------------|
| Removal Of Black Line(F) | DP(CCD side)Setting of reduction level when black streak reduction processing setting is "strong" [pixel]  | 5 to 15       |                 |
| Removal Of Black Line(B) | DP(CCD side)Setting of reduction level when black streak reduction processing setting is "strong" [pixel]  | 5 to 15       |                 |
| Rate Of Alert(F)         | (DP CCD side)[%] Percentage of black streak detection count per unit sheet number for detecting CBM alert  | 0 to 20       |                 |
| Rate Of Alert(B)         | (DP CIS side) [%] Percentage of black streak detection count per unit sheet number for detecting CBM alert | 0 to 20       |                 |
| Unit Per Sheet Num(F)    | (DP CCD side)[sheet] Setting of unit number of sheets to detect CBM alert                                  | 300/500/1000  |                 |
| Unit Per Sheet Num(B)    | (DP CIS side)[sheet] Setting of unit number of sheets to detect CBM alert                                  | 300/500/1000  |                 |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to set the setting value.

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

**U984 Developer unit number**

(Message: Developing Unit Number)

**Contents**

Displays the developer unit number.

**Purpose**

Execute to check the developer unit number.

**Method**

- 1 Press the [Start] key.  
Displays the developer unit number.

| Items | Contents                           |
|-------|------------------------------------|
| K     | Displays the developer unit number |

**Completion**

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U985 Developer unit history

### (Message: Developing Unit History)

#### Contents

Displays the machine serial number and developer counter history.

#### Purpose

Displays the machine serial number and developer count to check.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.  
Select color to refer to.

| Items | Contents                                   |
|-------|--|
| K     | Displays the developer unit number history |

Displays the machine serial number and 3 items of the developer counter history.

| Items                  | Contents                      |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Machine History 1 to 3 | Machine serial number history |
| Cnt History1 to 3      | Developer counter history     |

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U989 HDD scan disk

### (Message: HDD Scandisk)

#### Contents

Apply Scandisk to the HDD for data recovery.

#### Purpose

Execute recovery of HDD management data error by turning the power off while accessing to the HDD.

#### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.
- 2 Select [Execute].

| Items   | Contents              |
|---------|-----------------------|
| Execute | HDD scan disk request |

- 3 Press the [Start] key to execute scandisk.
- 4 Turn the power switch off then on. Wait more than 5 seconds between the power off and on.

#### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U990 Clearing the scanner lighting time

(Message: Clear Scanner Lamp ON Time)

### Contents

Displays the accumulated CIS lighting time

### Purpose

- 1 Execute to check the CIS usage.

### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.  
CIS accumulated lighting time is displayed in minutes.

| Items | Contents  |
|-------|---|
| CIS   | Displays the accumulated CIS lamp lighting time |

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.

## U991 Scanner counter

(Message: Scanner Counter)

### Contents

Displays the scanner operation counts.

### Purpose

Display the number of scanner operation to check the usage status.

### Method

- 1 Press the [Start] key.  
Current number of operation is displayed.

| Items      | Contents                                    |
|------------|---|
| Copy Scan  | Displays times of copy and scan operations. |
| Fax Scan   | Displays times of FAX scan operations.      |
| Other Scan | Displays times of other scan operations.    |

### Completion

Press the [Stop] key.

The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.



## 7 Troubleshooting

### 7 - 1 Image formation problems

#### (1) Isolate the place of image failure

##### How to isolate the cause

Execute U089 MIP-PG pattern output to check an image failure.

[System Menu] > [Adjustment/Maintenance] > [Service Setting]

Yes: Enginee factor

No: Scanner factor

Check if image failure is enlarged or reduced in the zoom mode.

Yes: Scanner factor

- 1 Scanner factor: Refer to [Image failure at Copy or Send](See page 7-2 or 7-14).  
(LED lamp for originals on the contact glass --> CCD) failure at scanning factor)

**Isolate with the original scanning position.**

- a. DP simplex (Scan by the main unit [CCD])
- b. On the contact glass (Scan by the main unit [CCD])

- 2 Refer to image failure with Enginee factor (See page 7-33 or 7-41).  
(Main charge --> Drum --> LSU --> Developer --> Tansfer image formation process failure)

##### Image data flow

When copying:



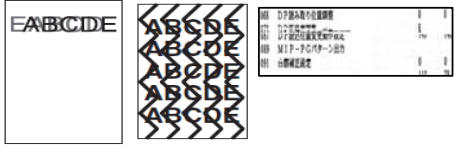


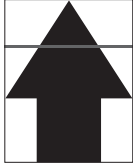
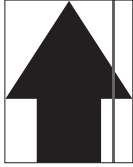




When sending:






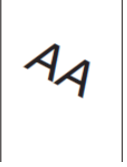

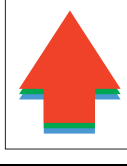




Data printing from PC:



(2) Scanner Factors (When scanning the front side through DP, or scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)

| No.   | Contents                                | Image sample  |
|-------|---|---|
| (2-1) | Abnormal image                          |     |
| (2-2) | Colored background                      |    |
| (2-3) | Black or color spots                    |    |
| (2-4) | Horizontal black streaks                |   |
| (2-5) | Vertical streaks, band (black or color) |  |
| (2-6) | Vertical streaks, band (white)          |  |
| (2-7) | Missing entire image (White / Black)    |   |
| (2-8) | Blurred image                           |  |
| (2-9) | Image is missing partly                 |  |

| No.    | Contents  | Image sample  |
|--------|---|---|
| (2-10) | Entire image is light   |    |
| (2-11) | Mismatch between the original center line and output image center line (1st side)     |    |
| (2-12) | Mismatch between the original center line and output image center line (2nd side)     |    |
| (2-13) | Regular mismatch of the leading edge between the original and output image (1st side) |    |
| (2-14) | Regular mismatch of the leading edge between the original and output image (2nd side) |  |
| (2-15) | Skewed image  |  |
| (2-16) | Blurred characters  |  |
| (2-17) | Color shift   |  |
| (2-18) | Moiré   |  |

| No.    | Contents                      | Image sample  |
|--------|-------------------------------|---|
| (2-19) | Image is dark partly or light |  |

### Content of Scanner Factors

#### (2-1)Abnormal image

(When scanning the front side through DP, or scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)

| Step | Check description         | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection   | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.                     | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB             |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection   | The connector is not properly connected or the HDD cable is faulty. | Clean the connector terminal of the HDD cable and re-insert the connector. If there is no continuity, replace the cable.<br>• HDD - Main PWB |           |
| 3    | Replacing the HDD         | The HDD is faulty.  | Replace the HDD.   |           |
| 4    | Reattaching the lens unit | The lens unit is not attached properly.                             | Reattach the lens unit.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the lens unit   | The CCD PWB is faulty.  | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB  | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the main PWB    | The main PWB is faulty.   | Replace the main PWB.  |           |

#### (2-2)Colored background

(When scanning the front side through DP, or scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting       | The Background Density Adjustment is not set.                                       | Set [Background Density] to [Auto] at [System Menu/Counter] > [Common Settings] > [Function Defaults].                         |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting       | The background density is dark.   | Set [Background Density] to [Manual] to adjust the density at [System Menu/Counter] > [Common Settings] > [Function Defaults]. |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting       | The Background Density Adjustment is not set.                                       | Set [Background Density Adj.] to [Auto] in [Color/Image Quality].  |           |
| 4    | Changing the setting       | The original background density is dark. The background density adjustment is dark. | Set [Background Density Adj.] to [Manual] in [Color/Image Quality], and adjust the background density.                         |           |
| 5    | Reloading the original     | The original is raised at scanning.   | Set the original during pressing.  |           |
| 6    | Cleaning the shading plate | The shading plate is dirty.   | Clean the shading plate at the backside of the contact glass.  |           |
| 7    | Executing U411             | The image is not adjusted.  | Check if the same image failure appears at the table scanning. If it appears, execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].                    |           |

| Step | Check description                    | Assumed cause                                       | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 8    | Reattaching the home position sensor | The home position sensor is not properly attached.  | Reattach the home position sensor.  |           |
| 9    | Checking the connection              | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.     | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• LED drive PWB - CCD PWB<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 10   | Replacing the lens unit              | The CCD PWB is faulty.                              | Replace the lens unit.  |           |
| 11   | Checking the slit glass              | The slit glass is dirty or not properly attached.   | Clean the slit glass. Also, reattach it if necessary.   |           |
| 12   | Adjusting the left DP hinge height   | The original is raised at scanning.                 | Adjust the left DP hinge height.  |           |
| 13   | Replacing the document processor     | The DP frame is deformed or the DP hinge is faulty. | Replace the document processor.   |           |
| 14   | Replacing the lens unit              | The CCD PWB is faulty.                              | Replace the lens unit.  |           |
| 15   | Replacing the LED unit               | The LED drive PWB is faulty.                        | Replace the LED unit.   |           |
| 16   | Replacing the engine PWB             | The engine PWB is faulty.                           | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

(2-3)Black or color spots

(When scanning the front side through DP, or scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                                   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing the original   | The original is dirty.                          | Replace the original.  |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the slit glass  | The slit glass is dirty.                        | Clean the slit glass.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection  | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty. | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 4    | Replacing the lens unit  | The CCD PWB is faulty.                          | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(2-4)Horizontal black streaks

(When scanning the front side through DP, or scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)

| Step | Check description       | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing the original  | The original is dirty.   | Replace the original.                                 |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the slit glass | The slit glass is dirty.   | Clean the slit glass.                                 |           |
| 3    | Executing U071          | The image backside of the side indication plate is scanned. (The adjustment value of U071[Front Head] or [Back Head] is not proper.) | Adjust the value at U071 [Front Head] or [Back Head]. |           |
| 4    | Executing U411          | Scanning the image on the back of the size indication plate. (U411 [Table(ChartA)] adjustment value is not proper.)                  | Execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].                         |           |

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                                      | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 5    | Checking the connection  | FFC is not connected properly.<br>Or it is faulty. | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 6    | Replacing the lens unit  | The CCD PWB is faulty.                             | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                          | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(2-5)Vertical streaks, band (black or color)

(When scanning the front side through DP, or scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)

| Step | Check description                                 | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Cleaning the contact glass and DP conveying guide | The slit glass is dirty.   | Clean the slit glass and DP conveying guide.   |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the contact glass                        | The contact glass or the shading plate is dirty.   | Clean the contact glass and shading plate at the backside.   |           |
| 3    | Cleaning the mirror                               | The mirror is dirty.   | Clean the mirror in the lamp unit.   |           |
| 4    | Eliminating the dust                              | The dust is adhered on the lamp unit.  | Remove dust inside the laser path of the lamp unit.  |           |
| 5    | Cleaning the CCD PWB                              | Dust is on the CCD PWB.  | Clean the CCD PWB using an air-blower.   |           |
| 6    | Executing U063                                    | The image scanning position is incorrect.  | Execute U063 to change the scanner shading position.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the original                            | The original is dirty.   | Replace the original.  |           |
| 8    | Changing the setting                              | Actual original size and detected original size are mismatched.                                  | Set the original paper size.   |           |
| 9    | Cleaning the platen cover                         | The original cover is dirty.   | Clean the original cover.  |           |
| 10   | Executing U067                                    | The center line settings are incorrect. (The streaks or bands appear out of the original image.) | Adjust the value at U067 [Front].  |           |
| 11   | Executing U411                                    | The leading edge timing is incorrect. (Streaks or bands appear out of the original.)             | Execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |
| 12   | Executing U068                                    | The starting position for scanning an original on the DP is incorrect.                           | Adjust the value at U068 [DP Read].  |           |
| 13   | Executing U072                                    | The center line settings are incorrect. (The streaks or bands appear out of the original image.) | Adjust the value at U072 [Front].  |           |
| 14   | Executing U411                                    | The leading edge timing is incorrect. (Streaks or bands appear out of the original.)             | Execute U411 [DP Auto Adj].  |           |
| 15   | Executing U411                                    | The leading edge timing is incorrect. (Streaks or bands appear out of the original.)             | Execute U411 [DP FU(ChartB)].  |           |
| 16   | Checking the connection                           | FFC is not connected properly.<br>Or it is faulty.   | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 17   | Replacing the lens unit                           | The CCD PWB is faulty.   | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 18   | Replacing the engine PWB                          | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(2-6)Vertical streaks, band (white)

(When scanning the front side through DP, or scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)

| Step | Check description                                 | Assumed cause                                   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing the original                            | The original is dirty.                          | Replace the original.  |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the mirror                               | The mirror is dirty.                            | Clean the mirror in the lamp unit.   |           |
| 3    | Eliminating the dust                              | The dust is adhered on the lamp unit.           | Remove dust inside the laser path of the lamp unit.  |           |
| 4    | Reattaching the lens cover                        | The lens cover is off.                          | Reattach the lens cover.   |           |
| 5    | Executing U063                                    | The image scanning position is incorrect.       | Execute U063 to change the scanner shading position.   |           |
| 6    | Checking the connection                           | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty. | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 7    | Replacing the lens unit                           | The CCD PWB is faulty.                          | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 8    | Replacing the engine PWB                          | The engine PWB is faulty.                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |
| 9    | Cleaning the contact glass and DP conveying guide | The slit glass is dirty.                        | Clean the slit glass and DP conveying guide.   |           |

(2-7)Missing entire image (White / Black)

(When scanning the front side through DP, or scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)

| Step | Check description                    | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reloading the original               | The originals were set upside down.                                    | Reset the original to correct the front and back direction.  |           |
| 2    | Reattaching the slit glass           | The slit glass is not properly attached.                               | Reattach the slit glass.   |           |
| 3    | Executing U068                       | The starting position for scanning an original on the DP is incorrect. | Adjust the value at U068 [DP Read].  |           |
| 4    | Reattaching the home position sensor | The home position sensor is not properly attached.                     | Reattach the home position sensor.   |           |
| 5    | Checking the connection              | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.                        | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 6    | Reattaching the scanner drive belt   | The scanner drive belt comes off.                                      | Reattach the scanner drive belt.   |           |
| 7    | Reattaching the scanner drive gear   | The scanner drive gear is not properly attached.                       | Reattach the scanner drive gear.   |           |
| 8    | Replacing the lens unit              | The CCD PWB is faulty.   | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 9    | Replacing the engine PWB             | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(2-8)Blurred image

(When scanning the front side through DP, or scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)

| Step | Check description      | Assumed cause         | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------|-----------------------|---|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing the original | The original is wavy. | Make the originals flat, or replace it if possible. |           |

| Step | Check description                  | Assumed cause                                     | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 2    | Removing condensation (Slit glass) | The slit glass has condensation.                  | Remove condensation on the slit glass.   |           |
| 3    | Removing condensation (Mirror)     | The mirror has condensation.                      | Remove the condensation on the mirror in the lamp unit.  |           |
| 4    | Removing condensation (Lens)       | The lens has condensation.                        | Remove the condensation on the lens in the lens unit.  |           |
| 5    | Removing condensation (CCD PWB)    | The glass of the CCD PWB has condensation.        | Remove the condensation on the CCD PWB glass using a blower brush.   |           |
| 6    | Executing U411                     | Each auto adjustment of the scanner is incorrect. | Execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |
| 7    | Checking the connection            | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.   | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 8    | Replacing the lens unit            | The CCD PWB is faulty.                            | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 9    | Replacing the engine PWB           | The engine PWB is faulty.                         | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(2-9)Image is missing partly

(When scanning the front side through DP, or scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)

| Step | Check description         | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reloading the original    | The original is not set properly.   | Reset the originals.   |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting      | The original size and the paper side do not match on the operation panel. (The setting is incorrect.) | Set the original size manually.  |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting      | The copy position is rotated automatically.   | Set [Auto Image Rotation] to [Off] from the System Menu.   |           |
| 4    | Checking the slit glass   | The slit glass is dirty or not properly attached.   | Clean the slit glass. Also, reattach it if necessary.  |           |
| 5    | Checking the connection   | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.   | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 6    | Reattaching the lens unit | The lens unit is not attached properly.   | Reattach the lens unit.  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the lens unit   | The CCD PWB is faulty.  | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 8    | Replacing the engine PWB  | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(2-10)Entire image is light

(When scanning the front side through DP, or scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)

| Step | Check description                                 | Assumed cause  | Measures                                     | Reference |
|------|---|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Executing U068                                    | The starting position for scanning an original on the DP is incorrect. | Adjust the value at U068 [DP Read].          |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the contact glass and DP conveying guide | The slit glass is dirty.   | Clean the slit glass and DP conveying guide. |           |
| 3    | Checking the slit glass                           | The slit glass is not properly attached.                               | Reattach the slit glass.                     |           |



| Step | Check description                        | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|--|--|-----------|
| 4    | Changing the setting                     | The density is not properly adjusted. (The original type and image quality differs.) | Set the image quality according to the originals.  |           |
| 5    | Changing the setting                     | The density is not properly adjusted. ([EcoPrint] is set to 'On'.)                   | Change to [Off] at [System Menu/Counter] > [Common Setting] > [Function Defaults] > [EcoPrint].                                  |           |
| 6    | Changing the setting                     | The density is not properly adjusted. (The density setting is too light.)            | Set the density setting to be dark.  |           |
| 7    | Changing the setting                     | The density is not properly adjusted. ([Background density] is set to 'Off'.)        | Set [Manual] in the Background Density Adjustment to make dark.  |           |
| 8    | Changing the setting                     | [Prevent Bleed-thru] setting is [On].  | Change to [Off] at [System Menu/Counter] > [Common Setting] > [Function Defaults] > [Prevent Bleed-thru].                        |           |
| 9    | Cleaning the shading plate               | The shading plate is dirty.  | Clean the shading plate at the backside of the contact glass.  |           |
| 10   | Executing U411                           | The scanner image is not adjusted.   | Execute U411 [DP FU(ChartA)].  |           |
| 11   | (For the dual scan DP)<br>Executing U411 | The scanner image is not adjusted.   | Execute U411 [DP FD(ChartA)].  |           |
| 12   | Checking the connection                  | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.                                      | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 13   | Replacing the lens unit                  | The CCD PWB is faulty.   | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 14   | Replacing the engine PWB                 | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(2-11) Mismatch between the original center line and output image center line (1st side)

(When scanning the front side through DP)

| Step | Check description                        | Assumed cause  | Measures                          | Reference |
|------|--|--|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| 1    | Reloading the original                   | The originals are not properly set on the original tray.   | Reset the originals.              |           |
| 2    | Executing U072                           | The center line when scanning the front page of the originals at the document processor is not adjusted. | Adjust the value at U072 [Front]. |           |
| 3    | (For the dual scan DP)<br>Executing U411 | The auto scanner adjustment when DP scanning is not executed.  | Execute U411 [DP Auto Adj].       |           |
| 4    | Executing U411                           | The auto scanner adjustment when DP scanning is not executed.  | Execute U411 [DP FU(ChartB)].     |           |

(2-12) Mismatch between the original center line and output image center line (2nd side)

(When scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)

| Step | Check description      | Assumed cause  | Measures             | Reference |
|------|------------------------|--|----------------------|-----------|
| 1    | Reloading the original | The originals are not properly set on the original tray. | Reset the originals. |           |

| Step | Check description | Assumed cause   | Measures                         | Reference |
|------|-------------------|---|----------------------------------|-----------|
| 2    | Executing U072    | The center line when scanning the back page of the originals at the document processor is not adjusted. | Adjust the value at U072 [Back]. |           |

(2-13)Regular mismatch of the leading edge between the original and output image (1st side)

(When scanning the front side through DP)

| Step | Check description                                 | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Executing U071                                    | The timing of scanning the original leading edge at the document processor is not properly set. | Adjust the value at U071 [Front Head].  |           |
| 2    | (For the dual scan DP)<br>Executing U411          | The starting position for scanning an original on the DP is incorrect.                          | Execute U411 [DP Auto Adj].   |           |
| 3    | Executing U411                                    | The starting position for scanning an original on the DP is incorrect.                          | Execute U411 [DP FU(CharB)].  |           |
| 4    | Cleaning the DP conveying roller and the bushings | The DP conveying roller or the bushing is dirty.  | Clean the DP conveying roller and the bushing.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the DP conveying roller                 | The DP conveying roller is worn down.   | Replace the DP conveying roller.  |           |
| 6    | Applying the grease                               | The DP drive motor rotates irregularly and the excessive load is applied to the DP drive gear.  | Apply the grease to the drive gear of the DP drive motor. (EM-50LP: Part number (7BG010009H)) |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DP drive motor                      | The DP drive motor rotates irregularly due to the fault.  | Reattach the DP drive motor and reconnect the connector. If not repaired, replace it.         |           |

(2-14)Regular mismatch of the leading edge between the original and output image (2nd side)

(When scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)

| Step | Check description | Assumed cause  | Measures                              | Reference |
|------|-------------------|--|---------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1    | Executing U071    | The timing of scanning the leading edge on the back page of the originals at the document processor is not properly set. | Adjust the value at U071 [Back Head]. |           |

(2-15)Skewed image

(When scanning the front side through DP, or scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)

| Step | Check description                     | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Correcting the original               | The originals are bent or creased.                            | Stretch the bending or the paper creases of the original. |           |
| 2    | Relocating the original width guides  | The original skews.   | Relocate the original width guides.                       |           |
| 3    | Adjusting the right DP hinge position | The right DP hinge position is not adjusted back and forth.   | Adjust the right DP hinge position back and forth.        |           |
| 4    | Cleaning the DP feed roller           | The DP feed roller is dirty. (It can be removed by cleaning.) | Clean the DP feed roller.                                 |           |

| Step | Check description                      | Assumed cause  | Measures                                 | Reference |
|------|--|--|--|-----------|
| 5    | Replacing the DP feed roller           | The DP feed roller is dirty. (It cannot be removed by cleaning.) | Replace the DP feed roller.              |           |
| 6    | Cleaning the DP registration roller    | The DP registration roller is dirty.                             | Clean the DP registration roller.        |           |
| 7    | Reattaching the DP registration pulley | The operation of the DP registration pulley is faulty.           | Reattach the DP registration pulley.     |           |
| 8    | Executing U942                         | The original loop amount before registration is improper.        | Adjust the original loop amount at U942. |           |

(2-16) Blurred characters

(When scanning the front side through DP, or scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)

| Step | Check description                                       | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the original                                   | The originals out of specification are used. (They are thick, thin, or smooth.)  | Ask a user to use the specified paper.  |           |
| 2    | Correcting the original                                 | The leading edge of the original is bent.  | Stretch the bending or the paper creases of the original.                     |           |
| 3    | Cleaning the DP conveying roller and the bushings       | The DP conveying roller or the bushing is dirty.   | Clean the DP conveying roller and the bushing.                                |           |
| 4    | Reattaching the DP conveying pulley and pressure spring | The original conveying pulley does not rotate smoothly.  | Reattach the DP conveying pulley and the pressure spring.                     |           |
| 5    | Reattaching the DP drive parts                          | The DP drive parts are not properly attached.  | Reattach the DP drive parts.  |           |
| 6    | Reattaching the original pickup guide                   | The original pick-up guide does not operate properly.  | Reattach the original pick-up guide.  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DP scanning guide                         | The DP scanning guide is deformed.   | Replace the DP scanning guide.  |           |
| 8    | Adjusting the left DP hinge height                      | The front and rear heights of the DP do not match.   | Adjust the left DP hinge height.  |           |
| 9    | Refixing the document processor                         | The document processor is not properly installed in the main unit.   | Check the positioning of the document processor and tighten the screws again. |           |
| 10   | Checking the DP hinges holding pressure                 | The holding pressure of the DP hinge is not properly adjusted. (The DP hinge does not operate smoothly in the up and down direction, and the right and left sides of the DP are distorted because the DP can not hold the opened condition.) | Adjust the DP hinges holding pressure.  |           |
| 11   | Replacing the DP hinges                                 | DP hinge is faulty. (The DP hinge does not operate smoothly in the up and down direction, and the right and left sides of the DP are distorted because the DP can not hold the opened condition.)  | Replace the DP hinges.  |           |

## (2-17)Color shift

(When scanning the front side through DP, or scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)

| Step | Check description                                       | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the original                                   | The originals out of specification are used. (They are thick, thin, or smooth.)  | Ask a user to use the specified paper.  |           |
| 2    | Correcting the original                                 | The leading edge of the original is bent.  | Stretch the bending or the paper creases of the original.                     |           |
| 3    | Cleaning the DP conveying roller and the bushings       | The DP conveying roller or the bushing is dirty.   | Clean the DP conveying roller and the bushing.                                |           |
| 4    | Reattaching the DP conveying pulley and pressure spring | The original conveying pulley does not rotate smoothly.  | Reattach the DP conveying pulley and the pressure spring.                     |           |
| 5    | Reattaching the DP drive parts                          | The DP drive parts are not properly attached.  | Reattach the DP drive parts.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DP scanning guide                         | The DP scanning guide is deformed.   | Replace the DP scanning guide.  |           |
| 7    | Reattaching the original pickup guide                   | The original pick-up guide does not operate properly.  | Reattach the original pick-up guide.  |           |
| 8    | Adjusting the left DP hinge height                      | The front and rear heights of the DP do not match.   | Adjust the left DP hinge height.  |           |
| 9    | Refixing the document processor                         | The document processor is not properly installed in the main unit.   | Check the positioning of the document processor and tighten the screws again. |           |
| 10   | Checking the DP hinges holding pressure                 | The holding pressure of the DP hinge is not properly adjusted. (The DP hinge does not operate smoothly in the up and down direction, and the right and left sides of the DP are distorted because the DP can not hold the opened condition.) | Adjust the DP hinges holding pressure.  |           |
| 11   | Replacing the DP hinges                                 | DP hinge is faulty. (The DP hinge does not operate smoothly in the up and down direction, and the right and left sides of the DP are distorted because the DP can not hold the opened condition.)  | Replace the DP hinges.  |           |

## (2-18)Moiré

(When scanning the front side through DP, or scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)




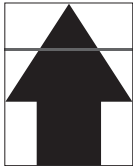


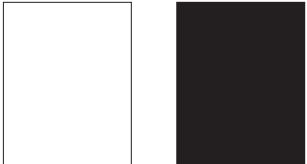


| Step | Check description      | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting   | The original image quality is not set properly. (moiré changes depending on the image quality.) | Set [Original Image] at [System Menu/Counter] > [Common Settings] > [Function Defaults]. |           |
| 2    | Reloading the original | The original is not set properly. (moiré appears in the original scanning direction.)           | Rotate the originals in 90 degrees and reset them.                                       |           |




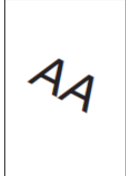
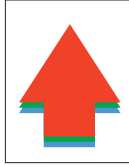


(2-19)Image is dark partly or light

(When scanning the front side through DP, or scanning the back side through the mechanically reversed DP)

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause                                | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the situation            | The main unit original scanning is faulty.   | Check if the same phenomenon occurs when scanning on the contact glass. If it occurs, perform the field measures for the same phenomenon that occurs when scanning on the contact glass. |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the slit glass           | The slit glass is dirty.                     | Clean the slit glass.  |           |
| 3    | Reattaching the slit glass        | The slit glass is bent.                      | Reattach the slit glass.   |           |
| 4    | Reattaching the DP scanning guide | DP scanning guide is not installed properly. | Reattach the DP scanning guide.  |           |

(3) Scanner Factors (When scanning the back side through DP)

| No.   | Contents                                | Image sample  |
|-------|---|---|
| (3-1) | Abnormal image                          |     |
| (3-2) | Colored background                      |    |
| (3-3) | Black or color spots                    |    |
| (3-4) | Horizontal black streaks                |   |
| (3-5) | Vertical streaks, band (black or color) |  |
| (3-6) | Vertical streaks, band (white)          |  |
| (3-7) | Missing entire image (White / Black)    |   |
| (3-8) | Blurred image                           |  |
| (3-9) | Image is missing partly                 |  |

| No.    | Contents   | Image sample  |
|--------|--|---|
| (3-10) | Entire image is light  |    |
| (3-11) | Mismatch between the original center line and output image center line     |    |
| (3-12) | Regular mismatch of the leading edge between the original and output image |    |
| (3-13) | Skewed image   |    |
| (3-14) | Color shift  |   |
| (3-15) | Moiré  |  |
| (3-16) | Image is dark partly or light  |  |

## Content of Scanner Factors

### (3-1)Abnormal image

#### Target: Dual scan DP

(When scanning the back side through DP)

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reattaching the DP relay PWB | The DP relay PWB is not properly attached.                         | Reattach the DP relay PWB.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection      | The connector is not connected properly. The SATA cable is faulty. | Clean the terminals of the SATA cable connector and reinsert the connector. If there is no continuity, replace the SATA cable.<br>• DPSHD PWB - DP relay PWB |           |
| 3    | Reconnecting the DPSHD PWB   | The DPSHD PWB is not properly connected.                           | Reconnect the DPSHD PWB to the DPCIS.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the DPSHD PWB      | The DPSHD PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DPSHD PWB.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the DPCIS          | The DPCIS is faulty.   | Replace the DPCIS then execute U091 and U411.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DP relay PWB   | The DP relay PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DP relay PWB.  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the main PWB       | The main PWB is faulty.  | Replace the main PWB.  |           |

### (3-2)Colored background

#### Target: Dual scan DP

(When scanning the back side through DP)

| Step | Check description                      | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Setting Background Density Adjustment  | The original background density is dark. The background density adjustment is set to Off. | Set [Background Density Adj.] to [Auto] in [Color/Image Quality].  |           |
| 2    | Setting Background Density Adjustment  | The original background density is dark. The background density adjustment is dark.       | Set [Background Density Adj.] to [Manual] in [Color/Image Quality], and adjust the background density.   |           |
| 3    | Executing U411                         | The CIS image adjustment (U411 [DP FD(ChartA)]) is not executed.                          | Execute U411 [DP FD(ChartA)].  |           |
| 4    | Cleaning the CIS roller                | The CIS roller is dirty.  | Clean the CIS roller.  |           |
| 5    | Reattaching the CIS roller drive parts | The CIS roller does not rotate properly.  | Reattach the CIS roller driving section.   |           |
| 6    | Reattaching the DP relay PWB           | The DP relay PWB is not properly attached.  | Reattach the DP relay PWB.   |           |
| 7    | Checking the connection                | The connector is not connected properly. The SATA cable is faulty.                        | Clean the terminals of the SATA cable connector and reinsert the connector. If there is no continuity, replace the SATA cable.<br>• DPSHD PWB - DP relay PWB |           |
| 8    | Reconnecting the DPSHD PWB             | The DPSHD PWB is not properly connected.  | Reconnect the DPSHD PWB to the DPCIS.  |           |
| 9    | Replacing the DPSHD PWB                | The DPSHD PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DPSHD PWB.   |           |
| 10   | Replacing the DPCIS                    | The DPCIS is faulty.  | Replace the DPCIS then execute U091 and U411.  |           |
| 11   | Replacing the DP relay PWB             | The DP relay PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DP relay PWB.  |           |
| 12   | Replacing the main PWB                 | The main PWB is faulty.   | Replace the main PWB.  |           |



(3-3)Black or color spots

Target: Dual scan DP

(When scanning the back side through DP)

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing the original       | The original is dirty.   | Replace the original.  |           |
| 2    | Reattaching the DP relay PWB | The DP relay PWB is not properly attached.                         | Reattach the DP relay PWB.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection      | The connector is not connected properly. The SATA cable is faulty. | Clean the terminals of the SATA cable connector and reinsert the connector. If there is no continuity, replace the SATA cable.<br>• DPSHD PWB - DP relay PWB |           |
| 4    | Reconnecting the DPSHD PWB   | The DPSHD PWB is not properly connected.                           | Reconnect the DPSHD PWB to the DPCIS.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the DPSHD PWB      | The DPSHD PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DPSHD PWB.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DPCIS          | The DPCIS is faulty.   | Replace the DPCIS then execute U091 and U411.  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DP relay PWB   | The DP relay PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DP relay PWB.  |           |
| 8    | Replacing the main PWB       | The main PWB is faulty.  | Replace the main PWB.  |           |

(3-4)Horizontal black streaks

Target: Dual scan DP

(When scanning the back side through DP)

| Step | Check description                                 | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing the original                            | The original is dirty.   | Replace the original.  |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the CIS glass and the DP conveying guide | The CIS glass is dirty.  | Clean the CIS glass and the DP conveying guide.  |           |
| 3    | Reattaching the DP relay PWB                      | The DP relay PWB is not properly attached.                         | Reattach the DP relay PWB.   |           |
| 4    | Checking the connection                           | The connector is not connected properly. The SATA cable is faulty. | Clean the terminals of the SATA cable connector and reinsert the connector. If there is no continuity, replace the SATA cable.<br>• DPSHD PWB - DP relay PWB |           |
| 5    | Reconnecting the DPSHD PWB                        | The DPSHD PWB is not properly connected.                           | Reconnect the DPSHD PWB to the DPCIS.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DPSHD PWB                           | The DPSHD PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DPSHD PWB.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DPCIS                               | The DPCIS is faulty.   | Replace the DPCIS then execute U091 and U411.  |           |
| 8    | Replacing the DP relay PWB                        | The DP relay PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DP relay PWB.  |           |
| 9    | Replacing the main PWB                            | The main PWB is faulty.  | Replace the main PWB.  |           |

(3-5)Vertical streaks, band (black or color)

Target: Dual scan DP

(When scanning the back side through DP)

| Step | Check description                                 | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Executing U071                                    | The leading edge timing is improperly adjusted. (Streaks or bands appear on the image outside the original.) | Adjust the value at U071 [CIS Head].   |           |
| 2    | Executing U411                                    | The leading edge timing is improperly adjusted. (Streaks or bands appear on the image outside the original.) | Execute U411 [DP Auto Adj].  |           |
| 3    | Executing U411                                    | The leading edge timing is improperly adjusted. (Streaks or bands appear on the image outside the original.) | Execute U411 [DP FD(ChartA)].  |           |
| 4    | Cleaning the CIS glass and the DP conveying guide | The CIS glass is dirty.  | Clean the CIS glass and the DP conveying guide.  |           |
| 5    | Cleaning the DP conveying guide.                  | The DP conveying guide is dirty.   | Clean the DP conveying guide.  |           |
| 6    | Cleaning the DP registration pulley               | The DP registration pulley is dirty.   | Clean the DP registration pulley.  |           |
| 7    | Cleaning the CIS roller                           | The CIS roller is dirty.   | Clean the CIS roller.  |           |
| 8    | Executing U091                                    | U091 (Set white line correction) is not executed.  | Execute U091.  |           |
| 9    | Reattaching the DP relay PWB                      | The DP relay PWB is not properly attached.   | Reattach the DP relay PWB.   |           |
| 10   | Checking the connection                           | The connector is not connected properly. The SATA cable is faulty.   | Clean the terminals of the SATA cable connector and reinsert the connector. If there is no continuity, replace the SATA cable.<br>• DPSHD PWB - DP relay PWB |           |
| 11   | Reconnecting the DPSHD PWB                        | The DPSHD PWB is not properly connected.   | Reconnect the DPSHD PWB to the DPCIS.  |           |
| 12   | Replacing the DPSHD PWB                           | The DPSHD PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DPSHD PWB.   |           |
| 13   | Replacing the DPCIS                               | The DPCIS is faulty.   | Replace the DPCIS then execute U091 and U411.  |           |
| 14   | Replacing the DP relay PWB                        | The DP relay PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DP relay PWB.  |           |
| 15   | Replacing the main PWB                            | The main PWB is faulty.  | Replace the main PWB.  |           |

(3-6)Vertical streaks, band (white)

Target: Dual scan DP

(When scanning the back side through DP)

| Step | Check description                                 | Assumed cause                                     | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Cleaning the CIS roller                           | The CIS roller is dirty.                          | Clean the CIS roller.                           |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the CIS glass and the DP conveying guide | The CIS glass is dirty.                           | Clean the CIS glass and the DP conveying guide. |           |
| 3    | Executing U091                                    | U091 (Set white line correction) is not executed. | Execute U091.                                   |           |
| 4    | Reattaching the DP relay PWB                      | The DP relay PWB is not properly attached.        | Reattach the DP relay PWB.                      |           |

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 5    | Checking the connection    | The connector is not connected properly. The SATA cable is faulty. | Clean the terminals of the SATA cable connector and reinsert the connector. If there is no continuity, replace the SATA cable.<br>• DPSHD PWB - DP relay PWB |           |
| 6    | Reconnecting the DPSHD PWB | The DPSHD PWB is not properly connected.                           | Reconnect the DPSHD PWB to the DPCIS.  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DPSHD PWB    | The DPSHD PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DPSHD PWB.   |           |
| 8    | Replacing the DPCIS        | The DPCIS is faulty.   | Replace the DPCIS then execute U091 and U411.  |           |
| 9    | Replacing the DP relay PWB | The DP relay PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DP relay PWB.  |           |
| 10   | Replacing the main PWB     | The main PWB is faulty.  | Replace the main PWB.  |           |

(3-7)Missing entire image (White / Black)

Target: Dual scan DP

(When scanning the back side through DP)

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reattaching the DP relay PWB | The DP relay PWB is not properly attached.                         | Reattach the DP relay PWB.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection      | The connector is not connected properly. The SATA cable is faulty. | Clean the terminals of the SATA cable connector and reinsert the connector. If there is no continuity, replace the SATA cable.<br>• DPSHD PWB - DP relay PWB |           |
| 3    | Reconnecting the DPSHD PWB   | The DPSHD PWB is not properly connected.                           | Reconnect the DPSHD PWB to the DPCIS.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the DPSHD PWB      | The DPSHD PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DPSHD PWB.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the DPCIS          | The DPCIS is faulty.   | Replace the DPCIS then execute U091 and U411.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DP relay PWB   | The DP relay PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DP relay PWB.  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the main PWB       | The main PWB is faulty.  | Replace the main PWB.  |           |

(3-8)Blurred image

Target: Dual scan DP

(When scanning the back side through DP)

| Step | Check description                                 | Assumed cause                                     | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Removing condensation                             | The CIS glass has condensation.                   | Remove condensation on the CIS glass.           |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the CIS glass and the DP conveying guide | The CIS glass is dirty.                           | Clean the CIS glass and the DP conveying guide. |           |
| 3    | Reattaching the CIS glass                         | The CIS glass is warped.                          | Reattach the CIS glass.                         |           |
| 4    | Replacing the CIS glass                           | The CIS glass has some scratches.                 | Replace the CIS glass.                          |           |
| 5    | Reattaching the CIS roller drive parts            | The CIS roller does not rotate properly.          | Reattach the CIS roller driving section.        |           |
| 6    | Executing U411                                    | The automatic scanner adjustment is not executed. | Execute U411 [DP FD(ChartA)].                   |           |
| 7    | Reattaching the DPCIS                             | The DPCIS is not properly attached.               | Reattach the DPCIS.                             |           |

| Step | Check description   | Assumed cause        | Measures                                      | Reference |
|------|---------------------|----------------------|---|-----------|
| 8    | Replacing the DPCIS | The DPCIS is faulty. | Replace the DPCIS then execute U091 and U411. |           |

(3-9)Image is missing partly

Target: Dual scan DP

(When scanning the back side through DP)

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reloading the original       | The originals are not properly set on the original tray.               | Reload the original properly.  |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting         | Actual original size and detected original size are mismatched.        | Set the original size manually.  |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting         | The Border Erase function is not properly set. (Setting is too large.) | Lower the setting of the Border Erase.   |           |
| 4    | Reattaching the DP relay PWB | The DP relay PWB is not properly attached.                             | Reattach the DP relay PWB.   |           |
| 5    | Checking the connection      | The connector is not connected properly. The SATA cable is faulty.     | Clean the terminals of the SATA cable connector and reinsert the connector. If there is no continuity, replace the SATA cable.<br>• DPSHD PWB - DP relay PWB |           |
| 6    | Reconnecting the DPSHD PWB   | The DPSHD PWB is not properly connected.                               | Reconnect the DPSHD PWB to the DPCIS.  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DPSHD PWB      | The DPSHD PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DPSHD PWB.   |           |
| 8    | Replacing the DPCIS          | The DPCIS is faulty.   | Replace the DPCIS then execute U091 and U411.  |           |
| 9    | Replacing the DP relay PWB   | The DP relay PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DP relay PWB.  |           |
| 10   | Replacing the main PWB       | The main PWB is faulty.  | Replace the main PWB.  |           |

(3-10)Entire image is light

Target: Dual scan DP

(When scanning the back side through DP)

| Step | Check description                      | Assumed cause                              | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the situation                 | The original scanning process is faulty.   | Check if the same phenomenon occurs when scanning on the contact glass. If it occurs, execute the measures for the entirely faint image that occurs when scanning on the contact glass. |           |
| 2    | Executing U411                         | U411 [DP FD(CharA)] is not executed.       | Execute U411 [DP FD(CharA)].  |           |
| 3    | Cleaning the CIS roller                | The CIS roller is dirty.                   | Clean the CIS roller.   |           |
| 4    | Reattaching the CIS roller drive parts | The CIS roller does not rotate properly.   | Reattach the CIS roller driving section.  |           |
| 5    | Reattaching the DPCIS                  | The DPCIS is not properly attached.        | Reattach the DPCIS.   |           |
| 6    | Reattaching the DP relay PWB           | The DP relay PWB is not properly attached. | Reattach the DP relay PWB.  |           |

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 7    | Checking the connection    | The connector is not connected properly. The SATA cable is faulty. | Clean the terminals of the SATA cable connector and reinsert the connector. If there is no continuity, replace the SATA cable.<br>• DPSHD PWB - DP relay PWB |           |
| 8    | Reconnecting the DPSHD PWB | The DPSHD PWB is not properly connected.                           | Reconnect the DPSHD PWB to the DPCIS.  |           |
| 9    | Replacing the DPSHD PWB    | The DPSHD PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DPSHD PWB.   |           |
| 10   | Replacing the DPCIS        | The DPCIS is faulty.   | Replace the DPCIS then execute U091 and U411.  |           |
| 11   | Replacing the DP relay PWB | The DP relay PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DP relay PWB.  |           |
| 12   | Replacing the main PWB     | The main PWB is faulty.  | Replace the main PWB.  |           |

(3-11)Mismatch between the original center line and output image center line

Target: Dual scan DP

(When scanning the back side through DP)

| Step | Check description      | Assumed cause  | Measures                                    | Reference |
|------|------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Reloading the original | The originals are not properly set on the original tray. | Reload the original properly.               |           |
| 2    | Executing U072         | The DP scanning position is not adjusted.                | Adjust the DPCIS center line at U072 [CIS]. |           |
| 3    | Executing U411         | The DP scanning position is not adjusted.                | Execute U411 [DP Auto Adj].                 |           |
| 4    | Executing U411         | The DP scanning position is not adjusted.                | Execute U411 [DP FD(ChartA)].               |           |

(3-12)Regular mismatch of the leading edge between the original and output image

Target: Dual scan DP

(When scanning the back side through DP)

| Step | Check description | Assumed cause                             | Measures                             | Reference |
|------|-------------------|---|--------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1    | Executing U071    | The DP scanning position is not adjusted. | Adjust the value at U071 [CIS Head]. |           |
| 2    | Executing U411    | The DP scanning position is not adjusted. | Execute U411 [DP Auto Adj].          |           |
| 3    | Executing U411    | The DP scanning position is not adjusted. | Execute U411 [DP FD(ChartA)].        |           |

(3-13)Skewed image

Target: Dual scan DP

(When scanning the back side through DP)

| Step | Check description      | Assumed cause                      | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------|------------------------------------|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the situation | The DP scanning process is faulty. | Check if the same phenomenon occurs when scanning 1st side (front side) on DP. If it occurs, execute the measures for the skew image when scanning 1st side (front side) on DP. |           |

| Step | Check description     | Assumed cause                       | Measures            | Reference |
|------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------|
| 2    | Reattaching the DPCIS | The DPCIS is not properly attached. | Reattach the DPCIS. |           |

(3-14)Color shift

Target: Dual scan DP

(When scanning the back side through DP)

| Step | Check description                                 | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the situation                            | The DP scanning process is faulty.                            | Check if the same phenomenon occurs when scanning 1st side (front side) on DP. If it occurs, execute the measures for the color shift when scanning 1st side (front side) on DP. |           |
| 2    | Reattaching the CIS roller                        | The originals are conveyed without contacting the CIS roller. | Reattach the CIS roller.   |           |
| 3    | Cleaning the DP conveying roller and the bushings | The DP conveying roller is dirty.                             | Clean the DP conveying roller and bushing.   |           |
| 4    | Reattaching the DPCIS                             | The originals are away from the CIS glass.                    | Reattach the DPCIS.  |           |

(3-15)Moiré

Target: Dual scan DP

(When scanning the back side through DP)

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the image quality mode | The image quality mode is not set properly. (Moiré changes depending on the image mode) | Change the image quality mode.                     |           |
| 2    | Reloading the original          | The original is not set properly. (moiré appears in the original scanning direction.)   | Rotate the originals in 90 degrees and reset them. |           |
| 3    | Executing U411                  | The automatic scanner adjustment is not executed.                                       | Execute U411 [DP FD(ChartA)].                      |           |

(3-16)Image is dark partly or light




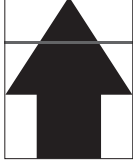
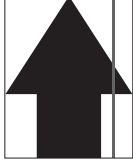

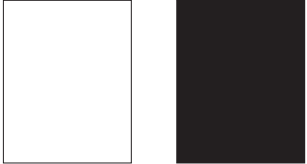


Target: Dual scan DP

(When scanning the back side through DP)




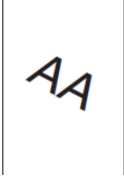
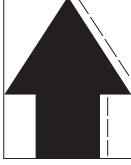
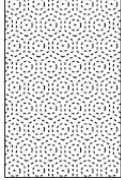

| Step | Check description                      | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the image quality mode        | Image quality is not properly adjusted. (Original type and image quality are mismatched.) | Select the image quality fitting the original type. |           |
| 2    | Replacing the original                 | The original is dirty.  | Replace the original.                               |           |
| 3    | Correcting the original                | The originals are bent or creased.  | Stretch the fold or creases of the original.        |           |
| 4    | Reattaching the CIS roller drive parts | The CIS roller does not rotate properly.  | Reattach the CIS roller driving section.            |           |

| Step | Check description                                 | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|--|--|-----------|
| 5    | Cleaning the CIS glass and the DP conveying guide | The CIS glass is dirty.  | Clean the CIS glass and the DP conveying guide.  |           |
| 6    | Reattaching the DP relay PWB                      | The DP relay PWB is not properly attached.                         | Reattach the DP relay PWB.   |           |
| 7    | Checking the connection                           | The connector is not connected properly. The SATA cable is faulty. | Clean the terminals of the SATA cable connector and reinsert the connector. If there is no continuity, replace the SATA cable.<br>• DPSHD PWB - DP relay PWB |           |
| 8    | Reconnecting the DPSHD PWB                        | The DPSHD PWB is not properly connected.                           | Reconnect the DPSHD PWB to the DPCIS.  |           |
| 9    | Replacing the DPSHD PWB                           | The DPSHD PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DPSHD PWB.   |           |
| 10   | Replacing the DPCIS                               | The DPCIS is faulty.   | Replace the DPCIS then execute U091 and U411.  |           |
| 11   | Replacing the DP relay PWB                        | The DP relay PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DP relay PWB.  |           |
| 12   | Replacing the main PWB                            | The main PWB is faulty.  | Replace the main PWB.  |           |

(4) Scanner Factors (when scanning on the contact glass)

| No.   | Contents                                | Image sample  |
|-------|---|---|
| (4-1) | Abnormal image                          |     |
| (4-2) | Colored background                      |    |
| (4-3) | Black dots                              |    |
| (4-4) | Horizontal black streaks                |   |
| (4-5) | Vertical streaks, band (black or color) |  |
| (4-6) | Vertical streaks, band (white)          |  |
| (4-7) | No image comes out (White or Black)     |   |
| (4-8) | Blurred image                           |  |
| (4-9) | Image is missing partly                 |  |



| No.    | Contents   | Image sample  |
|--------|--|---|
| (4-10) | Entire image is light  |    |
| (4-11) | Center of the original and output image is inconsistent                    |    |
| (4-12) | Regular mismatch of the leading edge between the original and output image |    |
| (4-13) | Skewed image   |    |
| (4-14) | Blurred characters   |  |
| (4-15) | Moiré  |  |
| (4-16) | Image is dark partly or light  |  |

Content of Scanner Factors (when scanning on the contact glass)

(4-1)Abnormal image

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                                      | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection  | FFC is not connected properly.<br>Or it is faulty. | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 2    | Replacing the lens unit  | The CCD PWB is faulty.                             | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                          | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(4-2)Colored background

| Step | Check description                    | Assumed cause                                      | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Reloading the original               | The original is raised at scanning.                | Set the original during pressing.   |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the shading plate           | The shading plate is dirty.                        | Clean the shading plate at the backside of the contact glass.   |           |
| 3    | Executing U411                       | The image is not adjusted.                         | Execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |
| 4    | Reattaching the home position sensor | The home position sensor is not properly attached. | Reattach the home position sensor.  |           |
| 5    | Checking the connection              | FFC is not connected properly.<br>Or it is faulty. | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• LED drive PWB - CCD PWB<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 6    | Reattaching the lamp unit            | The lamp unit is not attached properly.            | Reattach the lamp unit.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the lens unit              | The CCD PWB is faulty.                             | Replace the lens unit.  |           |
| 8    | Replacing the LED unit               | The LED drive PWB is faulty.                       | Replace the LED unit.   |           |
| 9    | Replacing the engine PWB             | The engine PWB is faulty.                          | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

(4-3)Black dots

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause                                      | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing the original     | The original is dirty.                             | Check the black dots or color dots on the original and replace it if necessary.  |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the contact glass | The contact glass is dirty.                        | Clean the contact glass.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection    | FFC is not connected properly.<br>Or it is faulty. | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 4    | Replacing the lens unit    | The CCD PWB is faulty.                             | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB   | The engine PWB is faulty.                          | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(4-4)Horizontal black streaks

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing the original     | The original is dirty.   | Replace the original.  |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the contact glass | The contact glass is dirty.  | Clean the contact glass.   |           |
| 3    | Executing U066             | The image at the backside of the size direction plate is scanned.<br>(The adjustment value of [Front] at U066 is incorrect.) | Adjust the value at U066 [Front].  |           |
| 4    | Executing U411             | Scanning the image on the back of the size indication plate. (U411 [Table(ChartA)] adjustment value is not proper.)          | Execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |
| 5    | Checking the connection    | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.  | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 6    | Replacing the lens unit    | The CCD PWB is faulty.   | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the engine PWB   | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(4-5)Vertical streaks, band (black or color)

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing the original     | The original is dirty.   | Replace the original.  |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting       | Actual original size and detected original size are mismatched.                                  | Set the original paper size.   |           |
| 3    | Cleaning the platen cover  | The original cover is dirty.   | Clean the original cover.  |           |
| 4    | Executing U067             | The center line settings are incorrect. (The streaks or bands appear out of the original image.) | Adjust the value at U067 [Front].  |           |
| 5    | Executing U411             | The leading edge timing is incorrect. (Streaks or bands appear out of the original.)             | Execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |
| 6    | Cleaning the contact glass | The contact glass or the shading plate at the backside of the contact glass is dirty.            | Clean the contact glass and the shading plate at the backside of the contact glass.  |           |
| 7    | Cleaning the mirror        | The mirror is dirty.   | Clean the optical mirror.  |           |
| 8    | Eliminating the dust       | The dust is adhered on the lamp unit.  | Remove dust inside the laser path of the lamp unit.  |           |
| 9    | Cleaning the CCD PWB       | Dust is on the CCD PWB.  | Clean the CCD PWB using an air-blower.   |           |
| 10   | Executing U063             | The image scanning position is incorrect.  | Execute U063 to change the scanner shading position.   |           |
| 11   | Checking the connection    | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.  | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 12   | Replacing the lens unit    | The CCD PWB is faulty.   | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 13   | Replacing the engine PWB   | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(4-6)Vertical streaks, band (white)

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause                                   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing the original     | The original is dirty.                          | Replace the original.  |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the mirror        | The mirror is dirty.                            | Clean the mirror in the lamp unit.   |           |
| 3    | Cleaning the shading plate | The shading plate is dirty.                     | Clean the shading plate at the backside of the contact glass.  |           |
| 4    | Eliminating the dust       | The dust is adhered on the lamp unit.           | Remove dust inside the laser path of the lamp unit.  |           |
| 5    | Executing U063             | The image scanning position is incorrect.       | Execute U063 to change the scanner shading position.   |           |
| 6    | Checking the connection    | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty. | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 7    | Replacing the lens unit    | The CCD PWB is faulty.                          | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 8    | Replacing the engine PWB   | The engine PWB is faulty.                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(4-7)No image comes out (White or Black)

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                                   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reloading the original   | The originals were set upside down.             | Reset the original to correct the front and back direction.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection  | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty. | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 3    | Replacing the lens unit  | The CCD PWB is faulty.                          | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(4-8)Blurred image

| Step | Check description                     | Assumed cause                                     | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the original                 | The original is wavy.                             | Make the originals flat, or replace it if possible.  |           |
| 2    | Removing condensation (contact glass) | The contact glass has condensation.               | Remove the condensation on the contact glass.  |           |
| 3    | Removing condensation (Lens unit)     | The lens unit has condensation.                   | Eliminate condensation at the lens unit.   |           |
| 4    | Executing U411                        | Each auto adjustment of the scanner is incorrect. | Execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |
| 5    | Checking the connection               | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.   | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 6    | Replacing the lens unit               | The CCD PWB is faulty.                            | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the engine PWB              | The engine PWB is faulty.                         | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(4-9)Image is missing partly

| Step | Check description                  | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting               | Marked part by highlighter pen on the original cannot be scanned.   | Set to [On] at [Copy] key > [Functions] > [Original Image] > [Others] > [Highlighter].   |           |
| 2    | Reloading the original             | The original is not set properly.   | Reset the originals.   |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting               | The original size and the paper side do not match on the operation panel. (The setting is incorrect.)               | Set the original size manually.  |           |
| 4    | Changing the setting               | The copy position is rotated automatically.   | Set [Auto Image Rotation] to [Off] from the System Menu.   |           |
| 5    | Changing the setting               | The Border Erase function is not properly set. (Setting is too large.)  | Lower the setting of the Border Erase.   |           |
| 6    | Cleaning the contact glass         | The original scanning side of the contact glass is dirty.   | Clean the original scanning side of the contact glass.   |           |
| 7    | Cleaning the shading plate         | The shading plate is dirty.   | Clean the shading plate at the backside of the contact glass.  |           |
| 8    | Reattaching the contact glass      | The contact glass is not properly attached.   | Reattach the contact glass.  |           |
| 9    | Checking the connection            | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.   | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 10   | Reattaching the lens unit          | The lens unit is not attached properly.   | Reattach the lens unit.  |           |
| 11   | Replacing the original size sensor | Original size and paper size are not matched on the operation panel display. (Original size sensor is misdetected.) | Replace the original size sensor.  |           |
| 12   | Replacing the lens unit            | The CCD PWB is faulty.  | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 13   | Replacing the engine PWB           | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(4-10)Entire image is light

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting       | The density is not properly adjusted. (The original type and image quality differs.) | Set the image quality according to the originals.   |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting       | The density is not properly adjusted. ([EcoPrint] is set to 'On'.)                   | Change to [Off] at [System Menu/Counter] > [Common Setting] > [Function Defaults] > [EcoPrint].           |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting       | The density is not properly adjusted. (The density setting is too light.)            | Set the density setting to be dark.   |           |
| 4    | Changing the setting       | [Prevent Bleed-thru] setting is [On].  | Change to [Off] at [System Menu/Counter] > [Common Setting] > [Function Defaults] > [Prevent Bleed-thru]. |           |
| 5    | Cleaning the shading plate | The shading plate is dirty.  | Clean the shading plate at the backside of the contact glass.   |           |
| 6    | Executing U411             | The image is not adjusted.   | Execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                                   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 7    | Checking the connection  | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty. | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 8    | Replacing the lens unit  | The CCD PWB is faulty.                          | Replace the lens unit.   |           |
| 9    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(4-11)Center of the original and output image is inconsistent

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause  | Measures                          | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| 1    | Reloading the original        | The original is not properly set on the contact glass.   | Reset the originals.              |           |
| 2    | Reattaching the contact glass | The contact glass is not properly attached.              | Reattach the contact glass.       |           |
| 3    | Executing U067                | The scanner center line is not adjusted.                 | Adjust the value at U067 [Front]. |           |
| 4    | Executing U411                | The automatic table scanning adjustment is not executed. | Execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].     |           |

(4-12)Regular mismatch of the leading edge between the original and output image

| Step | Check description                    | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reloading the original               | The original is not set properly. (The leading edge of the original is not set on the contact glass properly) | Reset the originals.   |           |
| 2    | Executing U066                       | The scanner leading edge timing is incorrect.   | Adjust the value at U066 [Front].  |           |
| 3    | Executing U411                       | The scanner leading edge timing is incorrect.   | Execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |
| 4    | Reattaching the home position sensor | The home position sensor is not properly attached.  | Reattach the home position sensor.   |           |
| 5    | Reattaching the scanner drive belt   | The scanner drive belt is loose.  | Reattach the scanner drive belt.   |           |
| 6    | Checking the scanner motor           | The scanner motor is faulty, and so the rotation is irregular.  | Reattach the scanner motor and reconnect the connector. If not repaired, replace it. |           |

(4-13)Skewed image

| Step | Check description      | Assumed cause   | Measures                | Reference |
|------|------------------------|---|-------------------------|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the original  | The original is not properly set. (The original is skewed.) | Reset the originals.    |           |
| 2    | Checking the lamp unit | The lamp unit is not attached properly.                     | Reattach the lamp unit. |           |

(4-14) Blurred characters

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Removing foreign material  | Foreign objects are adhering to the scanner rail and there is a load at the scanner movement. | Remove foreign objects adhering to the scanner rail.                 |           |
| 2    | Reattaching the lamp unit  | The lamp unit is not attached properly.   | Reattach the lamp unit.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the belt tension  | A load is applied to the scanner movement since the belt tension is improper.                 | Adjust the scanner motor belt tension properly.                      |           |
| 4    | Removing foreign material  | Foreign objects are adhering to the scanner wire drum and pulley.                             | Remove foreign objects adhering to the scanner wire drum and pulley. |           |
| 5    | Replacing the scanner wire | The scanner wire is scratched.  | Replace the scanner wires.   |           |

(4-15) Moiré

| Step | Check description      | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting   | The original image quality is not set properly. (moiré changes depending on the image quality.)               | Set [Original Image] in [System Menu/Counter] key > [Common Settings] > [Function Defaults].     |           |
| 2    | Reloading the original | The original is not set properly. (moiré appears in the original scanning direction.)                         | Rotate the originals in 90 degrees and reset them.   |           |
| 3    | Executing U065         | The ratio in the main scanning direction is large. (This problem occurs when the print ratio is set as 100%.) | Change the scanner magnification in the main scanning direction to reduction at U65 [Main Scan]. |           |
| 4    | Executing U411         | Each adjustment of the scanner section is incorrect.  | Execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |



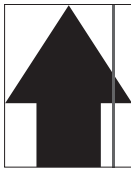
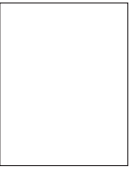





(4-16) Image is dark partly or light

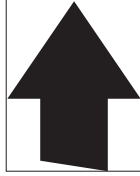
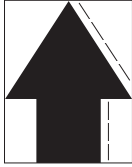
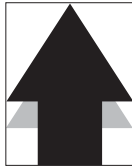




| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause                                   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing the original        | The original is dirty.                          | Replace the original.   |           |
| 2    | Correcting the original       | The originals are bent or creased.              | Stretch the bending or the paper creases of the original.   |           |
| 3    | Reattaching the original mat  | The original mat shifts.                        | Reattach the original mat.  |           |
| 4    | Cleaning the contact glass    | The contact glass is dirty.                     | Clean the contact glass.  |           |
| 5    | Reattaching the contact glass | The contact glass is not properly attached.     | Reattach the contact glass.   |           |
| 6    | Cleaning the mirror           | The mirror is dirty.                            | Clean the mirror in the lamp unit.  |           |
| 7    | Eliminating the dust          | The dust is adhered on the lamp unit.           | Remove dust inside the laser path of the lamp unit.   |           |
| 8    | Checking the connection       | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty. | Reconnect the following FFC. If FFC terminal is turned up or deformed, or FFC is damaged, replace FFC.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• LED drive PWB - CCD PWB</li> <li>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 9    | Replacing the LED unit        | The LED drive PWB is faulty.                    | Replace the LED unit.   |           |

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause             | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---------------------------|---|-----------|
| 10   | Replacing the lens unit  | The CCD PWB is faulty.    | Replace the lens unit.  |           |
| 11   | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty. | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)]. |           |



(5) Engine Factors (Paper conveying cause: Transfer, Fuser and Separation)

| No.   | Contents   | Image sample  |
|-------|--|---|
| (5-1) | Black dots (toner dirt)  |    |
| (5-2) | Horizontal streaks, band (White, black)  |     |
| (5-3) | Vertical streaks or bands  |    |
| (5-4) | Blank image  |   |
| (5-5) | Blurred image  |  |
| (5-6) | Image is missing partly (blank image, white spots)   |  |
| (5-7) | Entire image is light  |  |
| (5-8) | Center of the original and output image is inconsistent  |  |
| (5-9) | Irregular mismatch of the leading edge between the original and output image (paper leading edge timing variation) |  |

| No.    | Contents                        | Image sample  |
|--------|---------------------------------|---|
| (5-10) | Paper skew at the trailing edge |    |
| (5-11) | Blurred characters              |    |
| (5-12) | Offset                          |    |
| (5-13) | Uneven transfer                 |     |
| (5-14) | Dirty reverse side              |   |
| (5-15) | Fusing failure                  |  |
| (5-16) | Trailing image                  |  |

Content of Engine Factors (Paper conveying cause: Transfer, Fuser and Separation)

(5-1)Black dots (toner dirt)

| Step | Check description                   | Assumed cause                              | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the transfer roller unit   | The transfer roller is dirty or scratched. | If the image failure appears in the transfer roller circumference interval (49.5mm), clean it. If not repaired, replace the transfer roller unit. |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the fuser separation claws | The fuser separation nails are dirty.      | Clean the fuser separation nails.   |           |

| Step | Check description       | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 3    | Checking the fuser unit | The fuser heat roller or fuser press roller is dirty, there are foreign objects adhere or scratched.             | If the image failure appears in the fuser heat roller of fuser press roller circumference interval (78.5mm), clean it. If not repaired, replace the fuser unit. |           |
| 4    | Executing U034          | The paper separation performance is decreased and the line drawing image, etc. is rubbed by the separation nail. | Adjust the center line at u034 [LSU Out Left] s that the drum separation nail does not overlap the image position.  |           |

(5-2)Horizontal streaks, band (White, black)

| Step | Check description                     | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the fuser unit               | The fuser heat roller or fuser press roller is dirty, there are foreign objects adhere or scratched. | If the image failure appears in the fuser heat roller of fuser press roller circumference interval (78.5mm), clean it. If not repaired, replace the fuser unit. |           |
| 2    | Opening and reclosing the right cover | The right cover is not firmly closed.  | Open the left cover (conveying unit) and securely close it.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the transfer roller unit     | The pressure spring is not properly attached or deformed.  | Reattach the transfer roller pressure spring. If deformed, repair it. If not repaired, replace the transfer roller unit.  |           |

(5-3)Vertical streaks or bands

| Step | Check description                       | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the fuser unit                 | The fuser heat roller or fuser separation nail is dirty with paper dust or toner or parts inside the fuser is faulty. | Clean the fuser heat roller and fuser separation nail. If parts inside the fuser is broken, replace the fuser unit.                               |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting                    | The media type is not properly set.   | Set the proper media type via the System Menu.  |           |
| 3    | Cleaning the feed-shift guide           | There is toner dirt or welding on the feed-shift guide.   | Clean the feed-shift guide.   |           |
| 4    | Cleaning the transfer discharger needle | The transfer separation needle is dirty with paper dust or toner.   | Clean the transfer separation needle at the upper side of the transfer roller with a cleaning brush, etc.   |           |
| 5    | Checking the transfer roller unit       | The transfer roller is dirty, deformed or worn down.  | If the image failure appears in the transfer roller circumference interval (49.5mm), clean it. If not repaired, replace the transfer roller unit. |           |
| 6    | Checking the connection                 | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.   | Reconnect the FFC. If the FFC terminal is peeled off, deformed or FFC wire is broken, replace the FFC.<br>• High voltage PWB - Engine PWB         |           |
| 7    | Checking the high voltage PWB           | The transfer bias output from the high voltage PWB is faulty.   | Replace the high voltage PWB.   |           |
| 8    | Firmware upgrade                        | The firmware is faulty.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 9    | Replacing the engine PWB                | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

(5-4)Blank image

| Step | Check description                     | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Opening and reclosing the right cover | The right cover is not firmly closed.                         | Check the lock of the right cover Assy, and open and close the right cover (conveying unit).  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection               | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.               | Reconnect the FFC. If the FFC terminal is peeled off, deformed or FFC wire is broken, replace the FFC.<br>• High voltage PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 3    | Checking the high voltage PWB         | The transfer bias output from the high voltage PWB is faulty. | Replace the high voltage PWB.   |           |
| 4    | Firmware upgrade                      | The firmware is faulty.                                       | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB              | The engine PWB is faulty.                                     | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

(5-5)Blurred image

| Step | Check description           | Assumed cause                                     | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing paper             | The paper is damp.                                | Replace with dry paper. Ask users to store paper at low humidity.     |           |
| 2    | Setting the cassette heater | Paper is stored in the high humidity environment. | Turn the cassette heater switch on and set U327 to [On] if necessary. |           |

(5-6)Image is missing partly (blank image, white spots)

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause                                     | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing paper                   | The paper is damp.                                | Replace with the dry paper.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the paper storage place  | Paper is stored in the high humidity environment. | Turn the cassette heater switch on and set U327 to [On] if necessary. Ask users to store paper at low humidity.                                   |           |
| 3    | Checking the transfer roller unit | The transfer roller is dirty or scratched.        | If the image failure appears in the transfer roller circumference interval (49.5mm), clean it. If not repaired, replace the transfer roller unit. |           |
| 4    | Setting the media type            | The media type is not properly set.               | Set the proper media type via the System Menu.  |           |

(5-7)Entire image is light

| Step | Check description                  | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing paper                    | The paper is damp.   | Replace with dry paper. Ask users to store paper at low humidity.          |           |
| 2    | Setting the cassette heater        | Paper is stored in the high humidity environment.                                      | Turn the cassette heater switch on and set U327 to [On] if necessary.      |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting               | The secondary transfer voltage is improperly set.                                      | Reset the transfer voltage to default at U101.                             |           |
| 4    | Checking the transfer bias contact | The transfer bias contact is dirty or deformed and the transfer bias is not impressed. | Clean the transfer bias contact or correct it so that it grounds securely. |           |

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 5    | Checking the connection       | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.               | Reconnect the FFC. If the FFC terminal is peeled off, deformed or FFC wire is broken, replace the FFC.<br>• High voltage PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 6    | Checking the high voltage PWB | The transfer bias output from the high voltage PWB is faulty. | Replace the high voltage PWB.   |           |
| 7    | Firmware upgrade              | The firmware is faulty.                                       | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 8    | Replacing the engine PWB      | The engine PWB is faulty.                                     | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

(5-8)Center of the original and output image is inconsistent

| Step | Check description  | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the paper width guides or the MP paper width guides | The locations of the paper width guides or the MP paper width guides do not fit with the paper size. | Relocate the paper width guides or the MP paper width guides to fit them with the paper size. |           |
| 2    | Executing U034   | The center line when image writing the data is incorrect.  | Adjust the center line at u034 [LSU Out Left].  |           |

(5-9)Irregular mismatch of the leading edge between the original and output image (paper leading edge timing variation)

| Step | Check description   | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Executing U034      | The leading edge timing is not properly adjusted.             | Adjust the leading edge timing at U034 [LSU Out Top].  |           |
| 2    | Executing U051      | The paper loop amount before registration is improper.        | Execute U051 to adjust the paper loop amount before registration.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the clutch | The feed conveying related clutch does not operate correctly. | Execute U032 and U247 (in case of the high capacity feeder). If the feed/conveying clutch does not operate properly, reattach it and reconnect the connector. If not repaired, replace the drive unit including the faulty clutch. |           |

(5-10)Paper skew at the trailing edge

| Step | Check description  | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Cleaning the transfer roller unit                              | The neighboring parts of the secondary transfer roller are dirty with paper dust.                                   | Clean the transfer roller, transfer separation needle and paper conveying path.  |           |
| 2    | Removing foreign material                                      | Paper is caught by foreign material such as a piece of paper.   | Replace the toner sucking fan motor if it does not operate properly when executing U037 [Toner].   |           |
| 3    | Relocating the paper width guides or the MP paper width guides | The paper width guide or MP paper width guide position does not match the paper size and paper is conveyed in skew. | Relocate the paper width guides or the MP paper width guides to fit them with the paper size.  |           |
| 4    | Checking the registration rollers and the middle pulley        | The registration roller or middle pulley is not attached properly or is dirty.                                      | Check if the left registration roller, right registration roller or middle pulley is attached properly and reattach it if necessary. If it is dirty with toner, paper dust or other, clean it. |           |

| Step | Check description                     | Assumed cause                             | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 5    | Opening and reclosing the right cover | The right cover is not firmly closed.     | Open the left cover (conveying unit) and securely close it.                                      |           |
| 6    | Reinstalling the fuser unit           | The fuser unit is not properly installed. | Insert the fuser unit straight into the main unit, and lock both sides of the fuser unit firmly. |           |

(5-11) Blurred characters

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing paper               | Unspecified papers are used.                                       | Replace with the paper within the specification.   |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting          | The media type is not properly set.                                | Set the proper media type via the System Menu.   |           |
| 3    | Applying the grease           | The drives from the conveying motors are not smoothly transmitted. | Apply the grease to the drive gear of the conveying related motor. (EM-50LP: Part number (7BG010009H)) |           |
| 4    | Replacing the conveying guide | The conveying guide is deformed.                                   | Replace the conveying guide.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the fuser unit      | The fuser entry guide is deformed or the fuser pressure is uneven. | Replace the fuser unit.  |           |

(5-12) Offset

| Step | Check description                          | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the paper                         | Unspecified papers are used.   | Replace with the paper within the specification, or change to the media type setting closest to the specified paper.  |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting                       | The media type is not properly set.  | Change the settings according to the media type (paper weight).   |           |
| 3    | Checking the transfer roller unit          | The transfer roller is dirty or scratched.                                   | If the image failure appears the transfer roller circumference interval (49.5mm), clean the transfer roller. If not repaired, replace the transfer roller.  |           |
| 4    | Changing the setting                       | The secondary transfer voltage is improperly set.                            | Reset the transfer voltage to default at U101.  |           |
| 5    | Changing the setting                       | The fuser control temperature is set to high..                               | Reset the fuser control temperature to default at U161 [Warm Up].   |           |
| 6    | Checking the fuser unit                    | The fuser heat roller or fuser press roller is dirty or scratched.           | If the image failure appears in the fuser heat roller of fuser press roller circumference interval (78.5mm), clean it. If not repaired, replace the fuser unit.   |           |
| 7    | Leading edge smudge reduction mode setting | Toner offset on the fuser heat roller adheres at the next page leading edge. | If the paper weight is [Light] or [Normal1] to [Normal3], set to [Custom 6] (leading edge smudge reduction mode) at [System Menu/Counter] key \> [Common Settings] \> [Original/Paper Settings] \> [Media Type Settings]. |           |

(5-13)Uneven transfer

| Step | Check description                     | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Opening and reclosing the right cover | The right cover is not firmly closed.   | Open the left cover (conveying unit) and securely close it.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the transfer roller unit     | The transfer roller is dirty, scratched or the pressure spring is deformed.                                 | If the image failure appears the transfer roller circumference interval (49.5mm), clean the transfer roller. If the transfer roller pressure spring is deformed, repair it. If not repaired, replace the transfer roller. |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection               | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.   | Reconnect the FFC. If the FFC terminal is peeled off, deformed or FFC wire is broken, replace the FFC.<br>• High voltage PWB - Engine PWB   |           |
| 4    | Checking the high voltage PWB         | The transfer bias output from the high voltage PWB is faulty.   | Replace the high voltage PWB.   |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade                      | The firmware is faulty.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB              | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the fuser unit              | The roller, or the parts in the drive section or the fuser press-release section are deformed or worn down. | Replace the fuser unit.   |           |

(5-14)Dirty reverse side

| Step | Check description   | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the transfer roller unit                         | The transfer roller is dirty or scratched.                           | If the image failure appears in the transfer roller circumference interval (49.5mm), clean it. If not repaired, replace the transfer roller unit. |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting                                      | The secondary transfer voltage is improperly set.                    | Reset the transfer voltage to default at U101.  |           |
| 3    | Cleaning the fuser press roller and changing the settings | The fuser pressure roller is dirty caused by the paper type setting. | Clean the fuser press roller and set the proper media type at System Menu.  |           |
| 4    | Cleaning the conveying guide                              | The conveying guide is dirty.  | Clean the conveying guide.  |           |

(5-15)Fusing failure










| Step | Check description                                    | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing paper                                      | Unspecified papers are used.  | Replace with the proper paper.   |           |
| 2    | Setting the media type                               | The media type is not properly set.   | Set the proper media type via the System Menu.   |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting                                 | The fuser control temperature is set to low.  | Reset the fuser control temperature to default at U161 [Warm Up].  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the fuser unit                             | The nipping pressure (width) is small and fuser pressure setting is weak.   | Replace the fuser unit.  |           |
| 5    | (When feeding the OHP film)<br>Changing the settings | The transparency ejected to the tray is stuck, toner fused to peel off on the backside of the previously ejected transparency or paper. | Select [1200dpi] in the printer properties > [Imaging] > [Print Quality] > [Custom] and execute printing. (Printed in the low speed if setting to 1200dpi) |           |


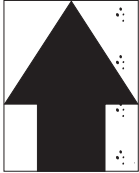






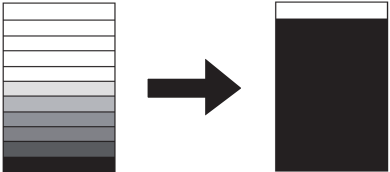
(5-16)Trailing image

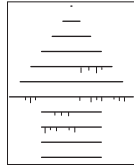
| Step | Check description                     | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing paper                       | Unspecified papers are used.  | Replace with the proper paper.  |           |
| 2    | Setting the media type                | The media type is not properly set.   | Set the proper media type via the System Menu.  |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting                  | The secondary transfer voltage is improperly set.   | Reset the transfer voltage to default at U101.  |           |
| 4    | Changing the setting                  | The fuser control temperature is set to high.   | Reset the fuser control temperature to default at U161 [Warm Up].   |           |
| 5    | Trailing image reduction mode setting | Toner not yet fused on paper scatters when paper heated by the fuser heat roller expose moisture to evaporated. | If the paper weight is [Normal1] to [Normal3], set to [Custom 8] (Trailing image reduction mode) at [System Menu/Counter] key \> [Common Settings] \> [Original/Paper Settings] \> [Media Type Settings]. |           |



(6) Engine Factors (Image forming cause)

| No.   | Contents                   | Image sample  |
|-------|----------------------------|---|
| (6-1) | Background image is foggy. |    |
| (6-2) | Background image is foggy. |    |
| (6-3) | Background image is foggy. |    |
| (6-4) | No image comes out (Black) |   |
| (6-5) | Blank image                |  |
| (6-6) | Image is missing partly    |  |
| (6-7) | Blurred image              |  |
| (6-8) | Entire image is light      |  |
| (6-9) | Entire image is light      |  |

| No.    | Contents                                | Image sample  |
|--------|---|---|
| (6-10) | Entire image is light                   |    |
| (6-11) | Periodic toner dirt                     |    |
| (6-12) | Horizontal streaks, band (White, black) |     |
| (6-13) | Vertical streaks and bands (black)      |    |
| (6-14) | Vertical streaks, band (white)          |   |
| (6-15) | Horizontal uneven density               |   |
| (6-16) | Vertical uneven density                 |   |
| (6-17) | Offset                                  |  |
| (6-18) | Gradation reproducibility is low        |   |

| No.    | Contents       | Image sample  |
|--------|----------------|---|
| (5-19) | Trailing image |  |

Content of Engine Factors (Image forming cause)

(6-1)Background image is foggy.

| Step | Check description                           | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the developer bias contact         | The developer bias contact is dirty or deformed.                                 | Clean the developer bias contact, or correct its shape so that it grounds securely.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the developer high voltage contact | The developer high voltage contact of the high voltage PWB is dirty or deformed. | Clean the developer high voltage contact and correct it so that it grounds securely. Or reattach the high voltage PWB.                                      |           |
| 3    | Executing U140                              | The setting value of the developer bias is improper.                             | Retrieve the U140 setting values to the default.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the developer unit                | The charge amount of the toner is low.   | Replace the developer unit.   |           |
| 5    | Checking the connection                     | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.                                  | Clean the terminals of the FFC and reconnect if. If the FFC terminal is deformed or FFC wire is broken, replace the FFC.<br>• High voltage PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 6    | Replacing the high voltage PWB              | The developer bias output from the high voltage PWB is high.                     | Replace the high voltage PWB.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the engine PWB                    | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

(6-2)Background image is foggy.

| Step | Check description                  | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Executing Drum refresh             | The charge amount of the toner is low.                   | Check the print coverage on the status page. If printed at high coverage, execute drum refresh. (If Print Coverage Report is not output, set U285 to [On] to output Print Coverage Report.) |           |
| 2    | Reinstalling the main charger unit | The main charger unit is not installed properly.         | Reinstall the main charger unit to the drum unit, and Reinstall the drum unit to the main body to ensure that the connector is connected.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the main charger unit     | The MC roller surface is dirty or scratched.             | Clean the MC roller surface. If not improved, replace the main charger unit.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the main charger unit    | The MC roller reaches its life.                          | If the main charger roller counter at U930 exceeds 600,000, replace the main charger unit since the drum surface potential at low temperature is low.                                       |           |
| 5    | Executing U100                     | The setting value of the main high voltage is incorrect. | Reset U100 setting value to default.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the drum unit            | The drum is faulty.                                      | Replace the drum unit.  |           |

| Step | Check description                              | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|---|--|-----------|
| 7    | Checking the main charger high voltage contact | The main charger high voltage contact of the high voltage PWB is dirty or deformed. | Clean the charger high voltage contact and correct it to ensure that it is grounded. Or, reinstall the high voltage PWB.   |           |
| 8    | Replacing the high voltage PWB                 | The main charger bias output from the high voltage PWB is high.                     | Replace the high voltage PWB.  |           |
| 9    | Replacing the engine PWB                       | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |
| 10   | Checking the temperature inside the main unit  | Temperature is low in the installation environment.                                 | If the machine inside temperature is below 10°C / 50°F at U139, instruct user to change the installation environment of the room temperature 16°C / 60.8°F or higher. (This phenomenon tends to occur immediately after being left in a low temperature environment for few days if turning on the power). |           |

(6-3)Background image is foggy.

| Step | Check description       | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• LSU (APC PWB) - Engine PWB |           |
| 2    | Replacing the LSU       | The LSU is faulty.  | Replace the LSU.   |           |

(6-4)No image comes out (Black)

| Step | Check description                  | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Reinstalling the main charger unit | The drum unit or the main charger unit is not properly installed.                 | Reattach the main charger unit to the drum unit and reinstall the drum unit into the main unit to ensure secure contact .                                   |           |
| 2    | Checking the MC roller contact     | The contact of the MC roller is dirty or deformed. (Charge bias can't be applied) | Clean the main charger roller contact and correct it so that it is grounded securely.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the high voltage contact  | The high voltage contact of the high voltage PWB is dirty or deformed.            | Clean the high voltage contact and correct it so that it grounds securely. Or reattach the high voltage PWB.  |           |
| 4    | Checking the connection            | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.                                   | Clean the terminals of the FFC and reconnect if. If the FFC terminal is deformed or FFC wire is broken, replace the FFC.<br>• High voltage PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 5    | Replacing the high voltage PWB     | The main charger bias voltage output is not even from the main high voltage PWB.  | Replace the high voltage PWB.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB           | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

(6-5)Blank image

| Step | Check description                   | Assumed cause                                    | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the developer bias contact | The developer bias contact is dirty or deformed. | Clean the developer bias contact, or correct its shape so that it grounds securely. |           |

| Step | Check description              | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 2    | Replacing the developer unit   | The developer drive gear is faulty.  | Replace the developer unit.  |           |
| 3    | Executing U140                 | The setting value of the developer bias is improper.                                   | Retrieve the U140 setting values to the default.   |           |
| 4    | Checking the connection        | The connector or FFC is not connected properly. Or, the wire or FFC is faulty.         | Reconnect the wire connector. Clean the FFC and reconnect it. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. If the FFC terminal is deformed or FFC wire is broken, replace the FFC.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Developer motor - Engine PWB</li> <li>• High voltage PWB - Engine PWB</li> <li>• LSU(APC PWB) - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 5    | Checking the developer motor   | The developing motor does not operate properly.  | Reattach the developer motor and execute U030[DLP]. If not operating normally, replace it.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the high voltage PWB | The developer, main charger and transfer bias output from the high voltage PWB is low. | Replace the high voltage PWB.  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the LSU              | APC PWB of LSU is faulty.  | Replace the LSU.   |           |
| 8    | Replacing the engine PWB       | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(6-6)Image is missing partly

| Step | Check description       | Assumed cause                                  | Measures               | Reference |
|------|-------------------------|--|------------------------|-----------|
| 1    | Executing Drum refresh  | The drum surface is dirty.                     | Execute Drum refresh.  |           |
| 2    | Replacing the drum unit | There are adhered objects on the drum surface. | Replace the drum unit. |           |

(6-7)Blurred image

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause                                 | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Executing Drum refresh        | The drum surface has condensation.            | Execute Drum refresh.   |           |
| 2    | Cleaning or replacing the LSU | The LSU dust-proof glass is dirty or altered. | Clean the LSU dust-proof glass. If the glass is altered, replace the LSU. |           |

(6-8)Entire image is light

| Step | Check description                   | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Reinstalling the toner container    | Toner is collected on one side.                      | Sufficiently shake the toner container and reinstall it to the main unit. |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the DS pulleys             | The DS pulleys are dirty.                            | Clean the DS pulleys at both ends of the developer unit.                  |           |
| 3    | Checking the developer bias contact | The developer bias contact is deformed.              | Correct the developer bias contact so that it grounds securely.           |           |
| 4    | Executing U140                      | The setting value of the developer bias is improper. | Retrieve the U140 setting values to the default.                          |           |

| Step | Check description              | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 5    | Checking the connection        | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.  | Clean the terminals of the FFC and reconnect if. If the FFC terminal is deformed or FFC wire is broken, replace the FFC.<br>• High voltage PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 6    | Replacing the high voltage PWB | The developer, main charger and transfer bias output from the high voltage PWB is low. | Replace the high voltage PWB.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the engine PWB       | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

(6-9)Entire image is light

| Step | Check description       | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Executing Drum refresh  | Condensation on the drum surface.  | Execute Drum refresh.   |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the eraser     | Eraser is dirty.   | Clean the eraser.   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the drum unit | The eraser is faulty or the drum surface potential after exposure is high since the drum surface is worn down. | Reinstall the drum by inserting it all the way. If not repaired, replace the drum unit. |           |

(6-10)Entire image is light

| Step | Check description       | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• LSU (APC PWB) - Engine PWB |           |
| 2    | Replacing the LSU       | The LSU is faulty.  | Replace the LSU.   |           |

(6-11)Periodic toner dirt

| Step | Check description  | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | (In case of 94mm interval)<br>Executing drum refresh           | The drum surface is dirty.   | Execute Drum refresh.   |           |
| 2    | (In case of 94mm interval)<br>Checking the drum unit           | The drum surface is scratched.                                     | Replace the drum unit.  |           |
| 3    | (In case of 37.5mm interval)<br>Checking the main charger unit | There is dirt or foreign object on the MC roller surface.          | If the image failure appears in the main charger roller circumference interval (37.5mm), clean the main charger roller surface. If not repaired, replace the main charger unit. |           |
| 4    | (In case of 39.3mm interval)<br>checking the developer unit    | There is dirt, foreign object or scratch on the developing roller. | Wipe the developer roller dry. If it does not improve, replace the developer unit.  |           |
| 5    | (In case of 63mm interval)<br>Checking the DS pulley           | There are foreign objects at the DS pulley.                        | Clean the DS pulley. If foreign objects cannot be removed, replace the developer unit.  |           |

(6-12)Horizontal streaks, band (White, black)

| Step | Check description              | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Cleaning the developer unit    | Both ends of the developer roller are dirty and it causes the developer bias leakage.                                       | Clean both ends of the developer roller and the developer bias contact.   |           |
| 2    | Replacing the developer unit   | Both ends of the developer roller and the developer bias contact are deteriorated and it causes the developer bias leakage. | Replace the developer unit.   |           |
| 3    | Executing Drum refresh         | The drum surface is dirty.  | Execute Drum refresh.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the drum unit        | The drum surface is scratched and there is leak.  | Replace the drum unit.  |           |
| 5    | Checking the main charger unit | The MC roller surface is dirty or scratched.  | If the image failure appears in the main charger roller circumference interval (37.5mm), clean the main charger roller surface. If not repaired, replace the main charger unit. |           |
| 6    | Checking the connection        | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.   | Clean the terminals of the FFC and reconnect if. If the FFC terminal is deformed or FFC wire is broken, replace the FFC.<br>• High voltage PWB - Engine PWB                     |           |
| 7    | Replacing the high voltage PWB | The main charger bias voltage output is not even from the main high voltage PWB.  | Replace the high voltage PWB.   |           |
| 8    | Replacing the engine PWB       | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

(6-13)Vertical streaks and bands (black)

| Step | Check description              | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Executing Drum refresh         | The drum surface is dirty.  | Execute Drum refresh.   |           |
| 2    | Replacing the drum unit        | The cleaning blade or drum surface is worn out.   | Replace the drum unit.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the main charger unit | Streaky dirt adheres to the surface of the MC roller and electric potential is not impressed or the main charger roller surface is altered streaky. | If the image failure appears in the main charger roller circumference interval (37.5mm), clean the main charger roller surface. If not repaired, replace the main charger unit. |           |
| 4    | Checking the developer unit    | There are foreign objects pinched between the developer blade and developer roller.   | Remove foreign objects in between the developer blade and developer roller. If not repaired, replace the developer unit.  |           |

(6-14)Vertical streaks, band (white)

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing the developer unit | Foreign objects or aggregated toner adhere on the developing roller. | Clean the developer roller. Or, replace the developer unit if not repaired after cleaning.            |           |
| 2    | Removing foreign material    | There are foreign objects on the laser path of the LSU.              | Remove foreign objects on the frame or sealing material between the developer unit and the drum unit. |           |

| Step | Check description              | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 3    | Executing Drum refresh         | The drum surface is dirty.   | Execute Drum refresh.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the drum unit        | The drum surface is scratched.   | Replace the drum unit.  |           |
| 5    | Checking the main charger unit | There is dirt, foreign object or scratch on the MC roller surface is dirty, scratched or foreign objects adhere. | If the image failure appears in the main charger roller circumference interval (37.5mm), clean the main charger roller surface. If not repaired, replace the main charger unit. |           |
| 6    | Cleaning the eraser            | Eraser is dirty.   | Clean the eraser.   |           |

(6-15)Horizontal uneven density

| Step | Check description                    | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reinstalling the main charger unit   | MC roller rotation is uneven.  | Reattach the main charger unit.                          |           |
| 2    | Replacing the main charger unit      | The MC cleaning roller is deformed.  | Replace the main charger unit.                           |           |
| 3    | Cleaning the DS pulleys              | The DS pulleys are dirty.  | Clean the DS pulleys at both ends of the developer unit. |           |
| 4    | Replacing the developer unit         | The DS pulleys are faulty.   | Replace the developer unit.                              |           |
| 5    | Cleaning the developing bias contact | The conduction is not stabilized due to the dirty developer bias contact.    | Clean the developer bias contact.                        |           |
| 6    | Executing Drum refresh               | Toner smudges in the shape of a streak are on both ends of the drum surface. | Execute Drum refresh.                                    |           |
| 7    | Replacing the drum unit              | The drum surface is worn down.   | Replace the drum unit.                                   |           |
| 8    | Replacing the LSU                    | The laser emission is uneven.  | Replace the LSU.   |           |

(6-16)Vertical uneven density

| Step | Check description              | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Executing Drum refresh         | The drum surface has condensation.                    | Execute Drum refresh.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the main charger unit | Streaky dirt adheres to the surface of the MC roller. | Clean the MC roller surface. If not improved, replace the main charger unit. |           |
| 3    | Replacing the drum unit        | The drum surface is worn down.                        | Replace the drum unit.   |           |

(6-17)Offset

| Step | Check description              | Assumed cause   | Measures                    | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------|---|-----------------------------|-----------|
| 1    | Executing Drum refresh         | The drum surface is dirty.                              | Execute Drum refresh.       |           |
| 3    | Replacing the drum unit        | The drum surface is worn down or scratched.             | Replace the drum unit.      |           |
| 3    | Cleaning the developing roller | The developer roller is dirty.                          | Clean the developer roller. |           |
| 4    | Replacing the developer unit   | The developer roller surface is worn down or scratched. | Replace the developer unit. |           |



(6-18) Gradation reproducibility is low

| Step | Check description   | Assumed cause                         | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------|---------------------------------------|---|-----------|
| 1    | Adjusting the image | Grayscale adjustment is not executed. | Execute System Menu [Adjustment/Maintenance] > [Grayscale]. |           |

(6-19) Trailing image

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The transfer current setting does not match the paper. | Change the media type setting of the cassette where the target paper is loaded. |           |

## 7 - 2 Feeding/Conveying Failures

### (1) Prior standard check items

| No.  | Contents   |
|------|--|
| (1)  | Paper jam due to the cover-open detection  |
| (2)  | Paper jam from paper factor  |
| (3)  | Paper jam due to the dog-ear, paper skew, paper creases, fusing failure or the paper curl      |
| (4)  | Paper jam due to the guide   |
| (5)  | Paper jam caused by improperly loaded paper in the cassette                                    |
| (6)  | Paper jam due to the inferior paper  |
| (7)  | Paper jam from the factor of conveying roller, motor or clutch                                 |
| (8)  | Paper jam due to the sensor  |
| (9)  | Paper jam due to the setting / detection failure   |
| (10) | Paper jam due to the static electricity  |
| (11) | Paper jam caused by the installation environment (Papers inside the cassette are always damp.) |

### Content of Feeding/Conveying Failures

#### (1-1) Paper jam due to the cover-open detection

| Step | Check description                                | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Opening / closing the front cover                | The front cover is not engaged.                                    | Open the right cover and close it securely.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the toner container and waste toner box | The toner container and waste toner box are not attached properly. | Check how the toner container and waste toner box are attached. Reattach them if necessary.                            |           |
| 3    | Opening and reclosing the right cover            | The right cover is not aligned to the other exterior covers.       | Open the right cover and close it again securely.  |           |
| 4    | Checking the conveying unit                      | Parts on the conveying unit are not attached properly.             | Check the attachment of the transfer roller unit and drum cover on the conveying unit, and reattach them if necessary. |           |

#### (1-2) Paper jam from paper factor

| Step | Check description  | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the paper | The paper curls.  | Reload paper upside down.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the paper | The paper is damp.  | Replace the paper.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the paper | The paper fanning is not enough or the cutting edge of loaded paper is damaged. | Fan the paper well and load it by reversing the paper direction. Correct or replace paper if a dog-ear is found.  |           |
| 4    | Checking the paper | The paper is wavy.  | Correct or replace paper. If you cannot get user agreement about the paper replacement, relocate the leading end of paper and the trailing end or reload paper upside down. |           |
| 5    | Checking the paper | Unspecified paper is used or foreign objects are on the paper.                  | Ask a user to use the specified paper type. Or, remove the paper with foreign objects.  |           |

(1-3)Paper jam due to the dog-ear, paper skew, paper creases, fusing failure or the paper curl

| Step | Check description                     | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the paper path and the paper | The paper is caught with a piece of paper, etc. Or the leading edge of the sheet is bent. | When the dog-ear occurs, check if a piece of torn paper, foreign objects or the burrs on the part do not exist on the paper path, and remove them.   |           |
| 2    | (In case of curl) executing U161      | Paper curls since the fuser control temperature is not proper.                            | Reset the fuser control temperature to default at U161 when paper curl occurs.   |           |
| 3    | Curl reduction mode setting           | The paper curls.  | If the paper weight is 74g/m <sup>2</sup> or less, set to [Custom 7] (Curl reduction mode) at [System Menu/Counter] key > [Common Settings] > [Original/Paper Settings] > [Media Type Settings]. |           |

(1-4)Paper jam due to the guide

| Step | Check description     | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-----------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the guide    | The guide is dirty or foreign objects adhere.                                   | The guide is dirty with toner, paper dust, etc. Or if foreign objects adhere, clean it with cloth, etc.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the guide    | The guide does not properly operate due to the incorrect attachment or a fault. | Check the guide, and remove any burrs. Also, if the guide does not operate smoothly manually, reattach the guide. Then, replace the guide if it is not fixed or if there is deformation or frictional wear. |           |
| 3    | Checking the solenoid | The solenoid does not operate properly.   | Execute U030 (main unit), U240 (finisher) to check the guide operation with the operation sound. If the guide does not move or it is not smooth, reattach the guide. If not repaired, replace the solenoid. |           |

(1-5)Paper jam caused by improperly loaded paper in the cassette

| Step | Check description   | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Relocating the paper width guides   | The locations of the paper width guides do not fit with the paper size. | Relocate the paper width guides or the MP paper width guides along the paper size when the paper skew or the paper creases occur.                       |           |
| 2    | Checking the paper  | The paper fanning is not enough.  | Fan paper and reload it in the paper source. If a part of the paper is bent, remove it.   |           |
| 3    | (When feeding the paper from the large capacity feeder)<br>Checking the paper | The paper is not properly loaded.                                       | Paper set in the high capacity feeder cassette runs over the guide reset the paper so that the paper corner does not run over the bump in the cassette. |           |

(1-6)Paper jam due to the inferior paper

| Step | Check description  | Assumed cause                | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------|------------------------------|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the paper | Unspecified papers are used. | Explain to the user to use the paper within the specifications. |           |

(1-7)Paper jam from the factor of conveying roller, motor or clutch

| Step | Check description                          | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the roller or the pulley          | The roller or surface of the pulley is dirty, or faulty.           | Check if the rollers or the pulleys have no paper dust, toner, foreign objects, diameter change or frictional wear, and clean their surface. If not repaired, replace the parts.   |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the roller shaft and the bearings | The roller shaft or the bearings are dirty.                        | If a load is given to the roller rotation caused by the dirt of the roller shaft or the bearings, clean.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the spring                        | The spring does not press the conveying roller or pulley properly. | Check if the spring is dropping off or the roller and the pulley are pressed properly, then reattach them if necessary.  |           |
| 4    | Checking the clutch                        | The clutch does not operate properly.                              | Execute U032 (main unit), U243 (dual scan DP) to check the clutch operation. If the clutch does not operate properly, reattach it and reconnect the connector. If not repaired, replace the individual clutch or the unit containing the clutch. |           |
| 5    | Checking the motor                         | The motor does not operate properly.                               | Execute U030 (main unit), U240 (finisher) or U243 (DP) to check the motor operation. If the motor does not operate normally, replace it.   |           |

(1-8)Paper jam due to the sensor

| Step | Check description                             | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the actuator and the recovery spring | The actuator or the return spring does not operate correctly. | If the actuator is caught or came off, reattach the actuator or recovery spring.  |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the sensor                           | The sensor is dirty.  | If the sensor surface is dirty with paper dust, etc., clean it.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the sensor                           | The sensor does not operate correctly.                        | Check the sensor operation by executing U031 (main unit), U241 (finishers) or U244 (document processor). If the sensor does not operate correctly, clean and reattach it, then reinsert the connector. If not resolved, replace the sensor. |           |

(1-9)Paper jam due to the setting / detection failure

| Step | Check description                      | Assumed cause                          | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the paper leading edge margin | The leading edge margin is not enough. | If there is no image margin at the paper leading edge, execute U034 to adjust the leading edge timing and then U403 to adjust the leading edge margin.  |           |
| 2    | Relocating the paper width guides      | The paper size is misdected.           | Relocate the paper width guides or the MP paper width guides along with the paper size to properly detect the paper size.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the settings                  | The media type is not properly set.    | If the media type setting does not match the actual paper thickness, set the paper weight at [System Menu/Counter] key > [Common Settings] > [Original/Paper Settings] > [Media Type Settings]. |           |

(1-10)Paper jam due to the static electricity

| Step | Check description   | Assumed cause                       | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------|-------------------------------------|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the ground | The static electricity accumulates. | When the main unit is installed in the low humidity environment where the static electricity easily accumulates on the conveying guide during the continuous printing,<br>check if the discharge sheet in the exit section and the metal guide in the transfer section are grounded securely. Reattach them if necessary. |           |

(1-11)Paper jam caused by the installation environment (Papers inside the cassette are always damp.)

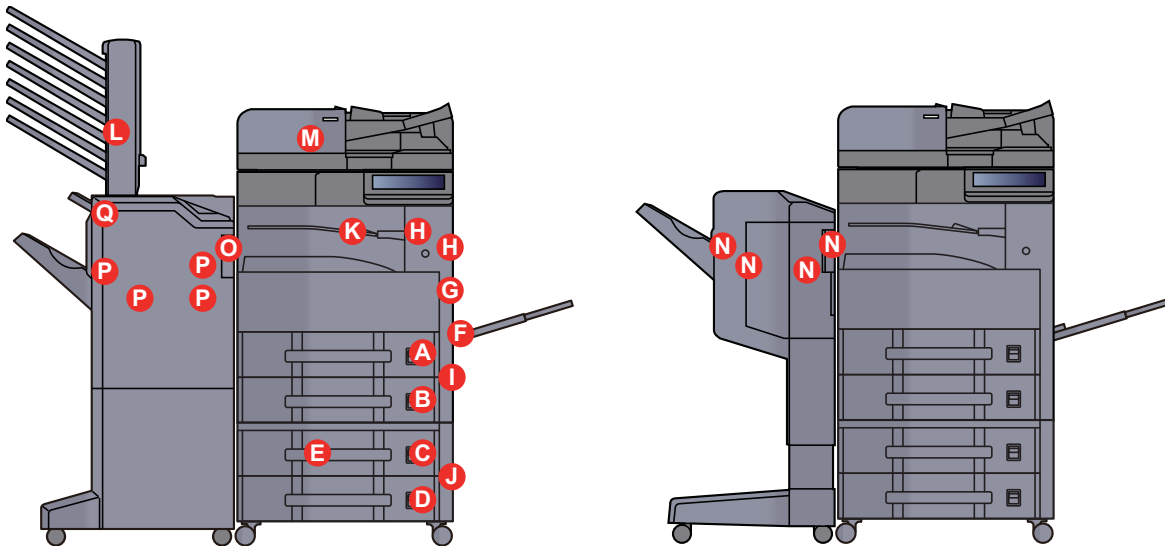
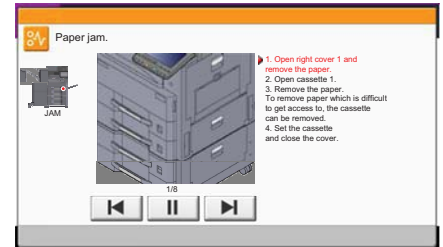
| Step | Check description                | Assumed cause                                  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the paper storage place | Papers have been stored in the improper place. | Ask users to store paper in a dry place.                 |           |
| 2    | Setting the cassette heater      | The paper is damp.                             | Turn the cassette heater switch on and set U327 to [On]. |           |

## (2) Paper misfeed detection

### (2-1) Paper misfeed indication

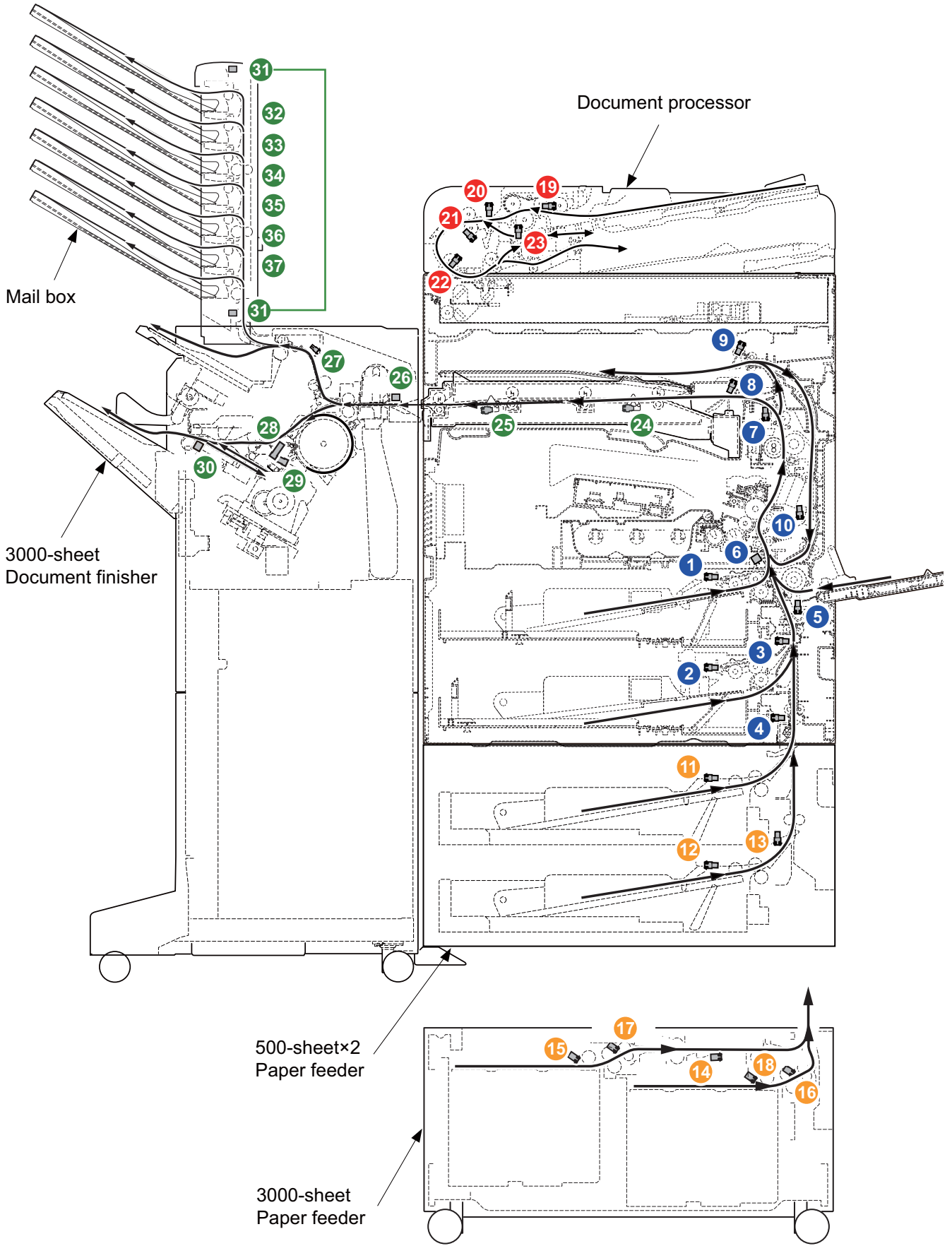
When a paper misfeed occurs, the machine immediately stops printing and displays the paper misfeed message on the operation panel. To remove paper misfed in the machine, pull out the cassette, open the paper conveying unit or paper conveying cover.

The positions and the corrective actions are displayed on the touch panel when a paper jam has occurred.



- (A) Misfeed in the cassette 1
- (B) Misfeed in the cassette 2
- (C) Misfeed in the cassette 3 (500 sheets × 2 / 1,500 sheets × 2) (option)
- (D) Misfeed in the cassette 4 (500 sheets × 2) (option)
- (E) Misfeed in the cassette 4 (1,500 sheets × 2) (option)
- (F) Misfeed in the MP tray
- (G) Misfeed in the duplex unit
- (H) Misfeed in the inner tray or fuser section
- (I) Misfeed in the right cover 2
- (J) Misfeed in the right cover 3 (option)
- (K) Misfeed in the BRidge (option)
- (L) Misfeed in the the mail box (option)
- (M) Misfeed in the document processor (option)
- (N) Misfeed in the 1,000 sheets finisher (option)
- (O) Misfeed in the 3,000 sheets finisher (Inner) (option)
- (P) Misfeed in the 3,000 sheets finisher (Tray A) (option)
- (Q) Misfeed in the 3,000 sheets finisher (Tray B) (option)

(3) Paper misfeed detection component



Sensor position

| Main unit            |                     |                         |
|----------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 Paper sensor 1     | 2 Paper sensor 2    | 3 Conveying sensor 1    |
| 4 Conveying sensor 2 | 5 MP Paper sensor   | 6 Registration sensor   |
| 7 Exit sensor        | 8 Paper full sensor | 9 JOB paper full sensor |
| 10 DU sensor         |                     |                         |

| 2x500-sheet Paper feeder |                      |                        |
|--------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 11 PF paper sensor 1     | 12 PF paper sensor 2 | 13 PF conveying sensor |

| 3000-sheet Paper feeder  |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 14 PF paper sensor 1     | 15 PF paper sensor 2     | 16 PF conveying sensor 1 |
| 17 PF conveying sensor 2 | 18 PF conveying sensor 3 |                          |

| Document processor    |                         |                           |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 19 DP original sensor | 20 DP feed sensor       | 21 DP registration sensor |
| 22 DP timing sensor   | 23 DP feed-shift sensor |                           |

| Bridge unit + Finisher + Mail box |                          |                          |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 24 BR conveying sensor 1          | 25 BR conveying sensor 2 | 26 DF paper entry sensor |
| 27 DF sub exit sensor             | 28 DF drum sensor        | 29 DF middle sensor      |
| 30 DF Main tray sensor            | 31 MB exit sensor        | 32 Tray full switch 1    |
| 33 Tray full switch 2             | 34 Tray full switch 3    | 35 Tray full switch 4    |
| 36 Tray full switch 5             | 37 Tray full switch 6    |                          |



JAM code contents

| Code | Contents   | Conditions  | Jam location* |
|------|--|---|---------------|
| 0000 | Initial jam  | The power is turned on when a sensor in the conveying system is on.                       | -             |
| 0100 | Secondary paper feed request time out              | Secondary paper feed request given by the controller is unreachable.                      | B             |
| 0101 | Waiting for process package to be ready            | Process package won't be ready.   | -             |
| 0104 | Waiting for conveying package to be ready          | Conveying package won't be ready.   | -             |
| 0105 | Drive prevention jam                               | A drive does not stop.  | -             |
| 0106 | Paper feeding request for duplex printing time out | Paper feeding request for duplex printing given by the controller is unreachable.         | E             |
| 0107 | Waiting for fuser package to be ready              | Fuser package won't be ready.   | -             |
| 0110 | Right cover 1 open                                 | The right cover 1 is opened during printing.  | -             |
| 0111 | Front cover open                                   | The front cover is opened during printing.  | -             |
| 0113 | Right cover 2 open                                 | The Right cover 2 is opened during printing.  | -             |
| 0114 | BR conveying unit open                             | BR conveying unit is opened during printing.  | -             |
| 0210 | Right cover 3 open                                 | The right cover 3 is opened during printing.  | -             |
| 0300 | Ejection uncompleted                               | An ejection-completed error has occurred.   | -             |
| 0501 | No paper feed from cassette 1                      | The registration sensor does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.               | A             |
| 0502 | No paper feed from cassette 2                      | Feed sensor 1 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2 (Retry 1 times).         | B             |
| 0503 | No paper feed from cassette 3                      | Feed sensor 2 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (Retry 1 times).         | C             |
| 0504 | No paper feed from cassette 4                      | PF feed sensor does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (Retry 1 times).        | D             |
| 0508 | No paper feed from duplex section                  | The registration sensor does not turn on during paper feed from the duplex section.       | G             |
| 0509 | No paper feed from MP tray                         | The registration sensor does not turn on during paper feed from the MP tray.              | F             |
| 0511 | Multiple sheets in cassette 1                      | The registration sensor does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.              | H             |
| 0512 | Multiple sheets in cassette 2                      | Feed sensor 1 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.                        | B             |
| 0513 | Multiple sheets in cassette 3                      | Feed sensor 2 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3.                        | B             |
| 0514 | Multiple sheets in cassette 4                      | PF feed sensor does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4.                       | D             |
| 0519 | Multiple sheets in MP tray                         | The registration sensor does not turn off during paper feed from the MP tray.             | H             |
| 0523 | No paper feed from cassette 3                      | PF feed sensor 1 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (Bulk paper feeder).  | E             |
| 0524 | No paper feed from cassette 4                      | PF feed sensor 2 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (Bulk paper feeder).  | D             |
| 0533 | Multiple sheets in cassette 3                      | PF feed sensor 1 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3 (Bulk paper feeder). | C             |
| 0534 | Multiple sheets in cassette 4                      | PF feed sensor 2 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (Bulk paper feeder). | E             |

\*: Refer to "(2)Paper misfeed detection componen" (see page 7-54).

| Code | Contents                            | Conditions   | Jam location* |
|------|-------------------------------------|--|---------------|
| 1503 | Feed sensor 1 non arrival jam       | Feed sensor 1 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3.                              | B             |
| 1504 |                                     | Feed sensor 1 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4.                              | B             |
| 1513 | Feed sensor 1 stay jam              | Feed sensor 1 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3.                             | B             |
| 1514 |                                     | Feed sensor 1 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4.                             | B             |
| 1704 | Feed sensor 2 non arrival jam       | Feed sensor 2 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4.                              | D             |
| 1714 | Feed sensor 2 stay jam              | Feed sensor 2 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4.                             | B             |
| 2603 | PF feed sensor 1 non arrival jam    | PF conveying sensor 1 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3 (Bulk paper feeder).  | C             |
| 2604 |                                     | PF conveying sensor 1 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (Bulk paper feeder).  | E             |
| 2613 | PF feed sensor 1 stay jam           | PF conveying sensor 1 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3 (Bulk paper feeder). | B             |
| 2614 |                                     | PF conveying sensor 1 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (Bulk paper feeder). | B             |
| 2704 | PF feed sensor 2 non arrival jam    | PF conveying sensor 2 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4 (Bulk paper feeder).  | E             |
| 2714 | PF feed sensor 2 stay jam           | PF conveying sensor 2 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4 (Bulk paper feeder). | E             |
| 4002 | Registration sensor non arrival jam | The registration sensor does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.                    | B             |
| 4003 |                                     | The registration sensor does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3.                    | B             |
| 4004 |                                     | The registration sensor does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4.                    | B             |
| 4012 | Registration sensor stay jam        | The registration sensor does not turn off when feeding paper from the cassette 2.              | A             |
| 4013 |                                     | The registration sensor does not turn off when feeding paper from the cassette 3.              | A             |
| 4014 |                                     | The registration sensor does not turn off when feeding paper from the cassette 4.              | A             |
| 4201 | Exit sensor non arrival jam         | The exit sensor does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.                            | H             |
| 4202 |                                     | The exit sensor does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.                            | H             |
| 4203 |                                     | The exit sensor does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3.                            | H             |
| 4204 |                                     | The exit sensor does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4.                            | H             |
| 4208 |                                     | The exit sensor does not turn on during paper feed from duplex section.                        | G             |
| 4209 |                                     | The exit sensor does not turn on during paper feed from MP tray.                               | H             |

\*: Refer to "(2)Paper misfeed detection componen" (see page 7-54).

| Code | Contents                              | Conditions   | Jam location* |
|------|---------------------------------------|--|---------------|
| 4211 | Exit sensor stay jam                  | The exit sensor does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.           | H             |
| 4212 |                                       | The exit sensor does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.           | H             |
| 4213 |                                       | The exit sensor does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3.           | H             |
| 4214 |                                       | The exit sensor does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4.           | H             |
| 4218 |                                       | The exit sensor does not turn off during paper feed from the duplex section.   | H             |
| 4219 |                                       | The exit sensor does not turn off during paper feed from the MP tray.          | H             |
| 4301 | DU sensor non arrival jam             | DU sensor does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.                  | G             |
| 4302 |                                       | DU sensor does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.                  | G             |
| 4303 |                                       | DU sensor does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3.                  | G             |
| 4304 |                                       | DU sensor does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4.                  | G             |
| 4309 |                                       | DU sensor does not turn on during paper feed from the MP tray.                 | G             |
| 4901 | BR conveying sensor 1 non arrival jam | BR conveying sensor 1 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.      | H             |
| 4902 |                                       | BR conveying sensor 1 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.      | H             |
| 4903 |                                       | BR conveying sensor 1 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3.      | H             |
| 4904 |                                       | BR conveying sensor 1 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4.      | H             |
| 4908 |                                       | BR conveying sensor 1 does not turn on during paper feed from duplex section.  | H             |
| 4909 |                                       | BR conveying sensor 1 does not turn on during paper feed from the MP tray.     | H             |
| 4911 | BR conveying sensor 1 stay jam        | BR conveying sensor 1 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.     | H             |
| 4912 |                                       | BR conveying sensor 1 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.     | H             |
| 4913 |                                       | BR conveying sensor 1 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3.     | H             |
| 4914 |                                       | BR conveying sensor 1 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4.     | H             |
| 4918 |                                       | BR conveying sensor 1 does not turn off during paper feed from duplex section. | H             |
| 4919 |                                       | BR conveying sensor 1 does not turn off during paper feed from the MP tray.    | H             |

\*: Refer to “(2)Paper misfeed detection componen” (see page 7-54).

| Code | Contents   | Conditions   | Jam location*  |
|------|--|--|--|
| 5001 | BR conveying sensor 2 non arrival jam  | BR conveying sensor 2 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 1.  | H  |
| 5002 |  | BR conveying sensor 2 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 2.  | H  |
| 5003 |  | BR conveying sensor 2 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 3.  | H  |
| 5004 |  | BR conveying sensor 2 does not turn on during paper feed from cassette 4.  | H  |
| 5008 |  | BR conveying sensor 2 does not turn on during paper feed from the duplex section.  | H  |
| 5009 |  | BR conveying sensor 2 does not turn on during paper feed from theMP tray.  | H  |
| 5011 |  | BR conveying sensor 2 stay jam   | BR conveying sensor 2 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 1.                               |
| 5012 | BR conveying sensor 2 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 2.     |  | K  |
| 5013 | BR conveying sensor 2 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 3.     |  | K  |
| 5014 | BR conveying sensor 2 does not turn off during paper feed from cassette 4.     |  | K  |
| 5018 | BR conveying sensor 2 does not turn off during paper feed from duplex section. |  | K  |
| 5019 | BR conveying sensor 2 does not turn off during paper feed from the MP tray.    |  | K  |
| 6000 | DF paper entry error   |  | DF paper entry sensor turns on before the eject signal is output from the machine (3000-sheet finisher). |
| 6001 |  | DF paper entry sensor turns on before the eject signal is output from the machine (1000-sheet finisher).   | -  |
| 6020 | DF front cover open  | DF front upper cover is opened during operation (3000-sheet finisher).   | -  |
| 6021 |  | DF front cover is opened during operation (1000-sheet finisher).   | -  |
| 6041 | DF top cover open  | DF top cover is opened during operation (1000-sheet finisher).   | -  |
| 6060 | MB cover open  | MB cover is opened during operation (3000-sheet finisher).   | -  |
| 6100 | DF paper entry sensor non arrival jam  | DF paper entry sensor does not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received (3000-sheet finisher). | K  |
| 6101 |  | DF paper entry sensor does not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received (1000-sheet finisher). | K  |
| 6110 | DF paper entry sensor stay jam   | DF paper entry sensor does not turned off within specified time of its turning on (3000-sheet finisher).   | N  |
| 6111 |  | DF paper entry sensor does not turned off within specified time of its turning on (1000-sheet finisher).   | N  |
| 6200 | DF sub Exit sensor non arrival jam   | DF sub Exit sensor does not turn on within specified time of DF paper entry sensor turning on (3000-sheet finisher).                             | N  |
| 6210 | DF sub Exit sensor stay jam  | DF sub Exit sensor does not turned off within specified time of its turning on (3000-sheet finisher).  | N  |
| 6300 | DF middle Exit sensor non arrival jam  | DF middle Exit sensor does not turn on within specified time of DF paper entry sensor turning on (3000-sheet finisher).                          | N  |
| 6301 |  | DF middle Exit sensor does not turn on within specified time of DF paper entry sensor turning on (1000-sheet finisher).                          | N  |

\*: Refer to "(2)Paper misfeed detection componen" (see page 7-54).

| Code | Contents  | Conditions  | Jam location* |
|------|---|---|---------------|
| 6310 | DF middle Exit sensor stay jam                                  | DF middle Exit sensor is not turned off within specified time of its turning on (3000-sheet finisher).  | N             |
| 6311 |   | DF middle Exit sensor is not turned off within specified time of its turning on (1000-sheet finisher).  | N             |
| 6400 | DF tray upper surface sensor non arrival jam                    | DF tray upper surface sensor does not turn on within specified time of DF eject paper sensor turning on (3000-sheet finisher).                              | N             |
| 6401 |   | DF tray upper surface sensor does not turn on within specified time of DF eject paper sensor turning on (1000-sheet finisher).                              | N             |
| 6410 | DF tray upper surface sensor stay jam                           | DF eject paper sensor is not turned off within specified time of DF tray upper surface sensor turning on (3000-sheet finisher).                             | N             |
| 6411 |   | DF eject paper sensor is not turned off within specified time of DF tray upper surface sensor turning on (1000-sheet finisher).                             | N             |
| 6500 | DF eject paper sensor non arrival jam                           | DF eject paper sensor does not turn on within specified time of DF middle Exit sensor turning on.   | N             |
| 6510 | DF eject paper sensor stay jam                                  | DF eject paper sensor is not turned off since the bundle discharge starts (3000-sheet finisher).  | N             |
| 6511 |   | DF eject paper sensor is not turned off since the bundle discharge starts (1000-sheet finisher).  | N             |
| 6600 | DF drum sensor non arrival jam                                  | DF drum sensor does not turn on within specified time of DF paper entry sensor turning on (3000-sheet finisher).  | N             |
| 6610 | DF drum sensor stay jam   | DF drum sensor is not turned off within specified time of its turning on (3000-sheet finisher).   | N             |
| 6710 | DF drum sensor stay jam during paper conveying into the BF unit | The DF drum sensor does not turn off after passing the specific time since it turned on when conveying the paper to the folding unit (3000-sheet finisher). | P             |
| 6810 | DF side registration sensor 1 stay jam                          | DF side registration sensor 1 is not turned off within specified time after driving the DF side registration motor 1 (3000-sheet finisher).                 | N             |
| 6811 |   | DF side registration sensor 1 is not turned off within specified time after driving the DF side registration motor 1 (1000-sheet finisher).                 | N             |
| 6910 | DF side registration sensor 2 stay jam                          | DF side registration sensor 2 is not turned off within specified time after driving the DF side registration motor 2 (3000-sheet finisher).                 | N             |
| 6911 |   | DF side registration sensor 2 is not turned off within specified time after driving the DF side registration motor 2 (1000-sheet finisher).                 | N             |
| 7000 | DF staple operation error                                       | DF staple sensor is not turned on within specified time after driving the DF staple motor (3000-sheet finisher).  | N             |
| 7001 |   | DF staple sensor is not turned on within specified time after driving the DF staple motor (1000-sheet finisher).  | N             |
| 7100 | BF paper entry sensor non-arrival jam                           | The BF paper entry sensor does not turn on after passing the specific time since the BF vertical conveying sensor turned on (3000-sheet finisher).          | P             |
| 7110 | BF paper entry sensor stay jam                                  | The BF paper entry sensor does not turn off after passing the specific time since the BF vertical conveying sensor turned on (3000-sheet finisher).         | P             |
| 7200 | BF eject sensor non-arrival jam                                 | The BF eject sensor does not turn on after passing the specific time since the center fold operation started (3000-sheet finisher).                         | P             |
| 7210 | BF eject sensor stay jam  | The BF eject sensor does not turn off after passing the specific time since it turned on during the center fold operation (3000-sheet finisher).            | P             |

\*: Refer to "(2)Paper misfeed detection componen" (see page 7-54).

| Code | Contents                                       | Conditions   | Jam location* |
|------|--|--|---------------|
| 7300 | BF eject sensor non-arrival jam at tri-folding | The BF eject sensor does not turn on after passing the specific time since starting the tri-fold operation (3000-sheet finisher).  | P             |
| 7310 | BF eject sensor stay jam at tri-folding        | The BF eject sensor does not turn off after passing the specific time since it turned on during the tri-fold operation (3000-sheet finisher).                                      | P             |
| 7400 | Upper BF side registration jam                 | BF side registration sensor 2 does not turn on after passing the specific time since the upper BF side registration guide shifted toward the sensor (3000-sheet finisher).         | P             |
| 7500 | Lower BF side registration jam                 | BF side registration sensor 1 does not turn on after passing the specific time since the lower BF side registration guide shifted toward the sensor (3000-sheet finisher).         | P             |
| 7600 | BF staple jam                                  | The BF staple home position cannot be detected after activating the BF staple motor. Or the motor lock-up was detected during the BF staple motor operation (3000-sheet finisher). | P             |
| 7700 | BF vertical conveying sensor non-arrival jam   | The BF vertical conveying sensor does not turn on after passing the specific time since the eject signal from the main unit was received (3000-sheet finisher).                    | P             |
| 7710 | BF vertical conveying sensor stay jam          | The BF vertical conveying sensor does not turn on after passing the specific time since it turned on (3000-sheet finisher).  | P             |
| 7800 | MB Exit sensor non arrival jam                 | MB Exit sensor is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received (3000-sheet finisher).  | L             |
| 7810 | MB Exit sensor stay jam                        | MB Exit sensor is not turned off within specified time of its turning on (3000-sheet finisher).  | L             |
| 7900 | Middle paddle error jam                        | DF paddle sensor is not turned on within specified time after driving the DF middle motor (3000-sheet finisher).   | N             |
| 7901 |  | DF paddle sensor is not turned on within specified time after driving the DF middle motor (1000-sheet finisher).   | N             |
| 7950 | Paper interval error jam                       | An illegal inter-page or inter-copy interval has occurred (3000-sheet finisher).   | N             |
| 7951 |  | An illegal inter-page or inter-copy interval has occurred (1000-sheet finisher).   | N             |
| 9000 | No paper feed from DP                          | DP feed sensor does not turn on during original feed from DP (Retry 5 times).  | M             |
| 9001 | DP original conveying jam                      | DP timing sensor turns off within the specified time since the sensor turns on.  | M             |
| 9002 | DP sensor stay jam                             | Sensor in the conveying system is on since original feeding starts.  | M             |
| 9004 | DP original switchback jam                     | During duplex switchback scanning, the DP registration sensor does not turn on within specified time of the DP timing sensor turning off.  | M             |
| 9005 | No original feed jam 2                         | DP lift sensor 1 does not turn on within specified time of the lift plate rising.  | M             |
| 9006 | DP switchback jam 3                            | DP Exit sensor is not turned on within specified time since original switchback operation starts.  | M             |
| 9007 | DP switchback jam 4                            | DP Exit sensor is not turned off within specified time since original switchback operation starts.   | M             |
| 9008 | No original feed jam 3                         | DP backside timing sensor does not turn on within specified time of the paper feed starting.   | M             |
| 9009 | DP original conveying jam 2                    | Next feed original became the stand-by states of paper feed while reading the image.   | M             |

\*: Refer to "(2)Paper misfeed detection componen" (see page 7-54).

| Code | Contents                                  | Conditions  | Jam location* |
|------|---|---|---------------|
| 9010 | DP open                                   | The DP is opened during original feeding.<br>Sensor in the conveying system is on when the power is turned on or the cover is closed. | M             |
| 9011 | DP top cover open                         | The DP top cover is opened during original feeding.   | M             |
| 9020 | Original skew feed jam                    | DP skew sensor does not turn on within specified time of DP registration sensor turning on.   | M             |
| 9110 | DP paper feed sensor stay jam             | The DP paper feed sensor or DP registration sensor does not turn off within the specified time of the DP timing sensor turning on.    | M             |
| 9200 | DP registration sensor non arrival jam    | The DP registration sensor does not turn on within the specified time of the DP paper feed sensor turning on.                         | M             |
| 9210 | DP registration sensor stay jam           | DP registration sensor does not turn off within specified time of DP timing sensor turning on.  | M             |
| 9300 | DP backside timing sensor non arrival jam | DP backside timing sensor does not turn on within specified time of DP registration sensor turning on.                                | M             |
| 9310 | DP backside timing sensor stay jam        | DP backside timing sensor does not turn off within specified time of DP registration sensor turning off.                              | M             |
| 9400 | DP timing sensor non arrival jam          | The DP timing sensor does not turn on within the specified time of the DP registration sensor turning on (Retry 5 times).             | M             |
| 9410 | DP timing sensor stay jam                 | The DP timing sensor does not turned off within the specified time its turning on.  | M             |
| 9500 | DP switchback sensor non arrival jam      | DP switchback sensor does not turn on within specified time of DP timing sensor turning on.   | M             |
| 9600 | DP Exit sensor non arrival jam            | DP Exit sensor does not turn on within specified time of DP timing sensor turning on.   | M             |
| 9610 | DP Exit sensor stay jam                   | DP Exit sensor does not turn off within specified time of DP timing sensor turning off.   | M             |

\*: Refer to “(2)Paper misfeed detection componen” (see page 7-54).

## 7 - 3 Self Diagnostic

If the part causing the problem was not supplied, use the unit including the part for replacement.



### Caution

Before attempting to check the fuser unit and the low voltage power supply PWB, be sure to turn the power switch off and unplug the machine from power.

Even if the power switch of the main unit is turned off and the power cord is unplugged, the electric charge may remain in the capacitors on the low voltage PWB, so that please be careful not to touch the mounted parts to protect you from electric shock.

### (1) Self diagnostic error codes

#### (1-1)Error codes list

| Error code | Contents  |
|------------|---|
| C0030      | FAX PWB system error  |
| C0060      | Engine PWB communication error  |
| C0070      | FAX PWB incompatible detection error  |
| C0100      | Backup memory device error  |
| C0120      | MAC address data error  |
| C0130      | Backup memory reading/writing error   |
| C0150      | Engine EEPROM reading / writing error   |
| C0160      | EEPROM data error   |
| C0170      | Charger count error   |
| C0180      | Machine serial number mismatch  |
| C0350      | Operation panel PWB communication error (Electronic volume I2C communication error) |
| C0500      | Engine firmware drive lock  |
| C0510      | high voltage remote control error   |
| C0520      | Developer control error   |
| C0530      | Backup task error   |
| C0540      | Engine firmware unanticipated control detection 1                                   |
| C0550      | Engine firmware unanticipated control detection 2                                   |
| C0560      | Engine firmware unanticipated control detection 3                                   |
| C0570      | Engine firmware unanticipated control detection 4                                   |
| C0640      | Hard Disk error   |
| C0650      | FAX image storage pair-check error  |
| C0660      | Hard Disk encryption key error  |
| C0670      | Hard Disk overwriting error   |
| C0680      | SSD error   |
| C0800      | Image processing error  |
| C0830      | FAX PWB flash program area checksum error   |
| C0840      | RTC error   |
| C0870      | Image data transmission error   |
| C0920      | FAX file system error   |
| C0950      | FAX job stay error  |
| C0980      | 24V power interruption detection  |
| C1010      | Lift motor 1 error  |
| C1020      | Lift motor 2 error  |
| C1030      | PF lift motor 1 error   |



| Error code | Contents   |
|------------|--|
| C1040      | PF lift motor 2 error                            |
| C1100      | PF lift motor 1 error                            |
| C1110      | PF lift motor 2 error                            |
| C1800      | Paper Feeder communication error                 |
| C1800      | Paper Feeder communication error                 |
| C1900      | Paper Feeder EEPROM error                        |
| C1900      | Paper Feeder EEPROM error                        |
| C2000      | Main motor steady state error                    |
| C2010      | Main motor startup error                         |
| C2101      | Developer motor steady state error               |
| C2111      | Developer motor start-up error                   |
| C2300      | Fuser motor steady state error                   |
| C2310      | Fuser motor start-up error                       |
| C2600      | PF drive motor error                             |
| C2610      | PF feed motor error                              |
| C3100      | Carriage error                                   |
| C3200      | LED error  |
| C3210      | CIS lamp error                                   |
| C3300      | CCD AGC error                                    |
| C3310      | CIS AGC error                                    |
| C3500      | Scanner AISC communication error                 |
| C3600      | Scanner sequence error                           |
| C3800      | AFE error  |
| C3900      | Backup memory reading/writing error (Engine PWB) |
| C4001      | Polygon motor synchronization error              |
| C4011      | Polygon motor steady-state error                 |
| C4101      | BD initialization error                          |
| C4201      | BD initialization error                          |
| C4701      | VIDEO ASIC device error 1                        |
| C5101      | Main high voltage error                          |
| C6000      | Broken fuser heater 1 error                      |
| C6020      | Fuser thermopile error                           |
| C6030      | Broken fuser thermopile error                    |
| C6050      | Fuser thermopile low temperature error           |
| C6200      | Broken fuser heater 2 error                      |
| C6220      | Fuser thermistor high temperature error          |
| C6230      | Broken fuser thermistor error                    |
| C6250      | Fuser thermistor low temperature error           |
| C6400      | Zero-cross signal error                          |
| C6410      | Uninstalled fuser unit                           |
| C6610      | Pressure release error                           |
| C6650      | Fuser thermopile EEPROM error                    |
| C7200      | Broken inner thermistor error                    |
| C7210      | Inner thermistor short-circuited                 |
| C7401      | Developer unit type mismatch error               |
| C7411      | Drum unit type mismatch error                    |
| C7800      | Broken outer thermistor error                    |

| Error code | Contents  |
|------------|---|
| C7810      | Outer thermistor short-circuited                                    |
| C7901      | Drum unit EEPROM error  |
| C7911      | Developer unit EEPROM error   |
| C8010      | PH motor error 1  |
| C8020      | PH motor error 2  |
| C8030      | PH motor error 3  |
| C8090      | DF paddle motor error   |
| C8100      | DF exit release motor error   |
| C8100      | DF exit release motor error   |
| C8110      | DF shift motor 1 error  |
| C8120      | DF shift motor 2 error  |
| C8130      | DF shift release motor error  |
| C8140      | DF tray motor error 1   |
| C8140      | DF tray motor error 1   |
| C8150      | DF tray motor error 2   |
| C8150      | DF tray motor error 2   |
| C8160      | DF tray motor error 3   |
| C8160      | DF tray motor error 3   |
| C8170      | DF side registration motor 1 error 1                                |
| C8170      | DF side registration motor 1 error 1                                |
| C8180      | DF side registration motor 1 error 2                                |
| C8180      | DF side registration motor 1 error 2                                |
| C8190      | DF side registration motor 2 error 1                                |
| C8190      | DF side registration motor 2 error 1                                |
| C8200      | DF side registration motor 2 error 2                                |
| C8200      | DF side registration motor 2 error 2                                |
| C8210      | DF slide motor error  |
| C8210      | DF slide motor error  |
| C8230      | DF staple motor error 1   |
| C8230      | DF staple motor error 1   |
| C8240      | DF staple motor error 2   |
| C8250      | DF main tray error 4  |
| C8260      | DF middle motor HP detection error                                  |
| C8260      | DF middle motor HP detection error                                  |
| C8410      | PH slide motor error 1  |
| C8410      | PH slide motor error 1  |
| C8420      | PH slide motor error 2  |
| C8420      | PH slide motor error 2  |
| C8430      | Main program error / Punch unit communication error                 |
| C8430      | Main program error / Punch unit communication error                 |
| C8500      | Main program error / Mail Box communication error                   |
| C8510      | MB conveying motor error 1  |
| C8520      | MB conveying motor error 2  |
| C8800      | Main program error / communication error between the engine and DF. |
| C8800      | Main program error / communication error between the engine and DF. |
| C8990      | Finisher setup error  |
| C9000      | DP communication error  |

| Error code | Contents                                 |
|------------|--|
| C9040      | DP lift motor ascend error               |
| C9050      | DP lift motor descend error              |
| C9060      | DP EEPROM error                          |
| C9070      | DP - SHD communication error             |
| C9080      | LED failure detection                    |
| C9180      | DP feed-shift motor error                |
| C9500      | Image processing circuit error (Scanner) |
| C9510      | Image processing circuit error (DP)      |

(1-2)Content of Self Diagnostic

**C0030: FAX PWB system error**

The FAX processing cannot be continued due to the FAX firmware error.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                          | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The FAX PWB does not operate properly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is faulty.                | Reinstall the FAX firmware.   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the FAX PWB    | The FAX PWB is faulty.                 | Replace the FAX PWB.  |           |

**C0060: Engine PWB communication error**

Error was detected at the initial communication of the engine PWB

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                             | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The engine PWB does not operate properly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not properly connected.  | Clean the engine PWB connector (YC17) and reconnect it.   |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                 | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

**C0070: FAX PWB incompatible detection error**

Abnormal detection of FAX control PWB incompatibility in the initial communication with the FAX control PWB, any normal communication command is not transmitted.

| Step | Check description      | Assumed cause                          | Measures                                      | Reference |
|------|------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the FAX PWB   | The incompatible FAX PWB is installed. | Install the FAX PWB for the applicable model. |           |
| 2    | Firmware upgrade       | The FAX firmware is faulty.            | Reinstall the FAX firmware.                   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the main PWB | The main PWB is faulty.                | Replace the main PWB.                         |           |

### C0100: Backup memory device error

An abnormal status is output from the flash memory.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The flash memory does not operate properly.   | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the main PWB    | The connector or the FFC is not connected properly. Or, the wire, FFC, the PWB is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the connectors on the main PWB, reconnect the connector of the wire, and reconnect the FFC terminal. If the wire or the FFC is faulty, repair or replace them. If not resolved, replace the main PWB. |           |

### C0120: MAC address data error

The MAC address data is incorrect.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                               | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The flash memory does not operate properly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Checking the MAC address | The MAC address is incorrect.               | Replace the main PWB when the MAC address is not indicated on the network status page.                                    |           |

### C0130: Backup memory reading/writing error

The reading or writing into the flash memory is unavailable.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The flash memory does not operate properly.   | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the main PWB    | The connector or the FFC is not connected properly. Or, the wire, FFC, the PWB is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the connectors on the main PWB, reconnect the connector of the wire, and reconnect the FFC terminal. If the wire or the FFC is faulty, repair or replace them. If not resolved, replace the main PWB. |           |

### C0150: Engine EEPROM reading / writing error

1. No response from the device is detected for 5ms or more 5 times continuously when reading / writing the data.
2. The reading data of 2 points mismatches 8 times continuously.
3. The reading data and the writing data mismatch 8 times continuously.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The EEPROM on the engine PWB does not operate properly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Reinstalling the EEPROM  | The EEPROM is not properly attached.                    | Reattach the EEPROM on the engine PWB.  |           |

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause             | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---------------------------|---|-----------|
| 3    | Replacing the EEPROM     | The EEPROM is faulty.     | 1. Print Maintenance Report at U000 beforehand.<br>2. Replace the EEPROM on the engine PWB. C0180 appears when turning the power on. Execute U004 at that state.<br>3. Then, print Maintenance Report at U000. Compare the setting values with Maintenance Report printed before and change the different values. (Target maintenance mode: U051, U065, U067, U100, U101, U161, etc.)<br>4. Check the output image and adjust the image at U410, etc. if necessary. |           |
| 4    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty. | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C0160: EEPROM data error

The data read from the EEPROM is judged as abnormal.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The EEPROM on the engine PWB does not operate properly.     | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.   |           |
| 2    | Executing U021           | The storage data in the EEPROM on the engine PWB is faulty. | Execute U021.   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the EEPROM     | The EEPROM is faulty.                                       | 1. Print Maintenance Report at U000 beforehand.<br>2. Replace the EEPROM on the engine PWB. C0180 appears when turning the power on. Execute U004 at that state.<br>3. Then, print Maintenance Report at U000. Compare the setting values with Maintenance Report printed before and change the different values. (Target maintenance mode: U051, U065, U067, U100, U101, U161, etc.)<br>4. Check the output image and adjust the image at U410, etc. if necessary. |           |
| 4    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                                   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C0170: Charger count error

1. Errors are detected in both backup memory of the engine PWB charge counter and main PWB charge counter.
2. Main PWB counter data and engine PWB counter data are faulty

| Step | Check description      | Assumed cause           | Measures                               | Reference |
|------|------------------------|-------------------------|--|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing the main PWB | The main PWB is faulty. | Replace the main PWB and execute U004. |           |

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause             | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---------------------------|---|-----------|
| 2    | Replacing the EEPROM     | The EEPROM is faulty.     | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Print Maintenance Report at U000 beforehand.</li> <li>2. Replace the EEPROM on the engine PWB. C0180 appears when turning the power on. Execute U004 at that state.</li> <li>3. Then, print Maintenance Report at U000. Compare the setting values with Maintenance Report printed before and change the different values. (Target maintenance mode: U051, U065, U067, U100, U101, U161, etc.)</li> <li>4. Check the output image and adjust the image at U410, etc. if necessary.</li> </ol> |           |
| 3    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty. | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C0180: Machine serial number mismatch

The machine serial Nos. in the main PWB and the EEPROM on the engine PWB mismatch when turning the power on.

| Step | Check description   | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the machine serial No. of the main PWB                 | The main PWB for the different main unit is installed. | Check the machine serial Nos of MAIN and ENGINE at U004, and install the correct main PWB if the MAIN No. differs.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the machine serial No. in the EEPROM on the engine PWB | The EEPROM for the different main unit is installed.   | Check the machine serial Nos of MAIN and ENGINE at U004, and install the correct EEPROM on the engine PWB if the ENGINE machine serial No. differs.   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the main PWB  | The main PWB is faulty.                                | When the MAIN machine serial No. differs at U004, replace the main PWB and execute U004.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the EEPROM  | The EEPROM is faulty.                                  | <p>If the machine serial number on the engine PWB is different at U004, reattach the EEPROM. If not repaired, replace the EEPROM on the engine PWB.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Print Maintenance Report at U000 beforehand.</li> <li>2. Replace the EEPROM on the engine PWB. C0180 appears when turning the power on. Execute U004 at that state.</li> <li>3. Then, print Maintenance Report at U000. Compare the setting values with Maintenance Report printed before and change the different values. (Target maintenance mode: U051, U065, U066, U067, U100, U101, U161, etc.)</li> <li>4. Check the output image and adjust the image at U410, etc. if necessary.</li> </ol> |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB  | The engine PWB is faulty.                              | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

**C0350: Operation panel PWB communication error (Electronic volume I2C communication error)**

Since NACK was received during the I2C communication, the retry was repeated 5 times and the initial command was transmitted, and then the retry was repeated 5 times again. After that, NACK was also received.

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power        | The firmware installed in the engine PWB does not operate correctly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection         | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.      | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Operation panel 1 - Main PWB |           |
| 3    | Replacing operation panel PWB 1 | Operation panel PWB 1 is faulty.                                     | Replace operation panel PWB 1.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the main PWB          | The main PWB is faulty.  | Replace the main PWB.  |           |

**C0500: Engine firmware drive lock**

Remarks: excluding the case of maintenance mode in process

The main motor drive continued 60 minutes or more during the engine steady control.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The firmware installed in the engine PWB does not operate correctly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

**C0510: high voltage remote control error**

Only the high voltage remote signal is on when the drum is stopped.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The firmware installed in the engine PWB does not operate correctly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

**C0520: Developer control error**

The developer bias on is detected when the main charger bias is off.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The firmware installed in the engine PWB does not operate correctly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C0530: Backup task error

No operation 30s or more when monitoring the backup task operation

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The firmware installed in the engine PWB does not operate correctly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C0540: Engine firmware unanticipated control detection 1

The feed-shift solenoid turns on for the specified time

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The firmware installed in the engine PWB does not operate correctly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C0550: Engine firmware unanticipated control detection 2

Detecting the main charge control failure when the drum is stopped

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The firmware installed in the engine PWB does not operate correctly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C0560: Engine firmware unanticipated control detection 3

Event watch process is come to time-out at start-up.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The firmware installed in the engine PWB does not operate correctly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C0570: Engine firmware unanticipated control detection 4

Time-out of each function control is detected during warm-up.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The firmware installed in the engine PWB does not operate correctly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |



### C0640: Hard Disk error

Hard disk (HDD) cannot be accessed normally.

| Step | Check description                                       | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Releasing the partial operation                         | The partial operation is executed.  | Reset the partial operation at U906.   |           |
| 2    | (In case of HDD non-standard machine) replacing the SSD | When installing the 8GB HDD mistakenly, it tries to access the HDD. At that time, the error appears if the HDD is not installed in the main units . | Replace with the correct 32GB SSD.   |           |
| 3    | (When abnormal sounds occur) Replacing the HDD          | The HDD is faulty.  | Replace the HDD when the abnormal sounds are from the HDD.   |           |
| 4    | Checking the connection                                 | The connector is not connected properly. The SATA cable or the wire is faulty.  | Reconnect the below SATA cable and connector of the wire. If there is no continuity, replace SATA cable or the wire.<br>• HDD - main PWB |           |
| 5    | Initializing the HDD                                    | The HDD storage data is faulty.   | Execute U024 [FULL] (HDD Format).  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the HDD                                       | The HDD is faulty.  | Replace the HDD.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the main PWB                                  | The main PWB is faulty.   | Replace the main PWB.  |           |

### C0650: FAX image storage pair-check error

The SSD (FAX image storage) used in other main unit is installed.

| Step | Check description      | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the SSD       | The SSD (FAX image storage) already used in other unit is installed.                     | When installing the SSD used once, replace with the correct SSD.  |           |
| 2    | Executing U671         | The SSD (FAX image storage) already used in other unit is reused without executing U671. | When installing the SSD used once, execute U671 [FAX Data CLEAR]. |           |
| 3    | Reinstalling the SSD   | The SSD (FAX image storage) is not properly installed.                                   | Be sure to install the SSD to the connector on the main PWB.      |           |
| 4    | Replacing the SSD      | The SSD (FAX image storage) is faulty.   | Replace with the new SSD.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the main PWB | The main PWB is faulty.  | Replace the main PWB.   |           |

### C0660: Hard Disk encryption key error

1. The encrypted password entered when replacing the main PWB is not correct.
2. Install SSD which is used in the other machine.

| Step | Check description   | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | (When the issue occurs after replacing the main PWB) Executing U004 | The encryption key after replacing the main PWB is faulty.                     | Execute U004 when this issue occurs after replacing the main PWB.  |           |
| 2    | Replacing the HDD (abnormal sounds)                                 | The HDD is faulty.   | Replace the HDD when the abnormal sounds are from the HDD.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection   | The connector is not connected properly. The SATA cable or the wire is faulty. | Reconnect the below SATA cable and connector of the wire. If there is no continuity, replace SATA cable or the wire.<br>• HDD - main PWB |           |

| Step | Check description      | Assumed cause                   | Measures                          | Reference |
|------|------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| 4    | Initializing the HDD   | The HDD storage data is faulty. | Execute U024 [FULL] (HDD Format). |           |
| 5    | Replacing the HDD      | The HDD is faulty.              | Replace the HDD.                  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the main PWB | The main PWB is faulty.         | Replace the main PWB.             |           |

### C0670: Hard Disk overwriting error

The SSD (FAX image storage) used in other main unit is installed.

| Step | Check description                   | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Replacing the HDD (abnormal sounds) | The HDD is faulty.   | Replace the HDD when the abnormal sounds are from the HDD.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection             | The connector is not connected properly. The SATA cable or the wire is faulty. | Reconnect the below SATA cable and connector of the wire. If there is no continuity, replace SATA cable or the wire.<br>• HDD - main PWB |           |
| 3    | Initializing the HDD                | The HDD storage data is faulty.  | Execute U024 [FULL] (HDD Format).  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the HDD                   | The HDD is faulty.   | Replace the HDD.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the main PWB              | The main PWB is faulty.  | Replace the main PWB.  |           |

### C0680: SSD error

SSD cannot be accessed or an error occurs when accessing SSD.

| Step | Check description                                 | Assumed cause                               | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the SSD (if lit after replacing the SSD) | An SSD out of specification is installed.   | Install the SSD matching the memory capacity specification.   |           |
| 2    | Resetting the main power                          | The SSD is faulty.                          | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 3    | Reinstalling the SSD                              | The connection with the main PWB is faulty. | Reinstall the SSD on the main PWB.  |           |
| 4    | Initializing the SSD                              | The data stored in the SSD is faulty.       | Retrieve data stored in the SSD at U026 and initialize the SSD at U024.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the SSD                                 | The SSD is faulty.                          | Retrieve data stored in the SSD at U026 and replace the SSD .   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the main PWB                            | The main PWB is faulty.                     | Replace the main PWB.   |           |

### C0800: Image processing error

The print sequence jam (J010x) is detected 2 times continuously.

| Step | Check description       | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the image data | The image data is faulty.                             | When this issue occurs only when handling the certain image data, check if the image data is faulty.         |           |
| 2    | Checking the situation  | The printing operation of the certain file is faulty. | Acquire the job's log if the phenomenon can be reproduced by specifying the job when the error was detected. |           |

| Step | Check description     | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-----------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 3    | Checking the main PWB | The connector or the FFC is not connected properly. Or, the wire, FFC, the PWB is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the connectors on the main PWB, reconnect the connector of the wire, and reconnect the FFC terminal. If the wire or the FFC is faulty, repair or replace them. If not resolved, replace the main PWB. |           |

### C0830: FAX PWB flash program area checksum error

The program stored in the flash memory on the FAX PWB is broken so it cannot perform.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                          | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The FAX PWB is not connected properly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5s passes, reinstall the FAX PWB, and then turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is faulty.                | Reinstall the FAX firmware.   |           |
| 3    | Initializing the fax     | The data in the FAX PWB is faulty.     | Execute U600 to initialize the FAX.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the FAX PWB    | The FAX PWB is faulty.                 | Replace the FAX PWB.  |           |

### C0840: RTC error

<Check at the start up>

- Setting value of RTC has returned to the past.
- The power has not turned on more than 5 years.
- Setting value of RTC is older than 00:01 January 1st, 2000.

<Check regularly (each 5 minutes) after start up>

- Setting value of RTC has returned to the past which is older than the time previously checked. After detecting C0840, reset the main power to go into disable function and [Time for Maintenance] is displayed.

| Step | Check description      | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Executing U906         | The backup battery on the main PWB is faulty, and so, the RTC settings are erased after unplugging the power cord. | Execute U906 and reset the display [Maintenance T]. After that, set the date and time (RTC) through System menu. (It is necessary to perform this process every time when unplug/plug the power cord.) |           |
| 2    | Replacing the main PWB | The main PWB is faulty, or the backup battery runs out.  | The user call regarding C0840 is frequent even if performing the previous treatment, replace the main PWB.   |           |

### C0870: Image data transmission error

Data was not properly transmitted even if the specified times of retry were made when the large volume data is transmitted between the FAX PWB and the main PWB.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                          | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The FAX PWB does not operate properly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5s passes, reinstall the FAX PWB, and then turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Initializing the fax     | The data in the FAX PWB is faulty.     | Execute U600 to initialize the FAX.   |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade         | The FAX firmware is faulty.            | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the FAX PWB    | The FAX PWB is faulty.                 | Replace the FAX PWB.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the main PWB   | The main PWB is faulty.                | Replace the main PWB.   |           |

| Step | Check description | Assumed cause                         | Measures                   | Reference |
|------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------|
| 6    | Executing U024    | The data stored in the SSD is faulty. | Execute U024 [SSD Format]. |           |

### C0920: FAX file system error

The backup data could not be stored since the file system of the flash memory is faulty.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                          | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The FAX PWB does not operate properly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5s passes, reinstall the FAX PWB, and then turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Initializing the fax     | FAX control values are incorrect.      | Execute U600 to initialize the FAX.   |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is faulty.                | Reinstall the FAX firmware.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the FAX PWB    | The FAX PWB is faulty.                 | Replace the FAX PWB.  |           |

### C0950: FAX job stay error

Print processing of the received FAX could not be executed and the job continues staying.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                                  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The printing process is not properly executed. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5s passes, reinstall the FAX PWB, and then turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware does not properly activate.       | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |

### C0980: 24V power interruption detection

24V power off signal is detected for 1s continuously.

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power      | The firmware installed in the engine PWB does not operate correctly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection       | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.      | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Low voltage PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 3    | Replacing the low voltage PWB | The low voltage PWB is faulty.                                       | When the +24V generation from the low voltage PWB is not stable, and it lowers, replace the low voltage PWB.   |           |
| 4    | Firmware upgrade              | The firmware is not the latest version.                              | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB      | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C1010: Lift motor 1 error

Cassette 1 lift motor 1 over-current is detected 5 times continuously.  
 The lift sensor not turning on 5 times continuously when passing 15s after loading cassette 1.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the lift plate  | The lift plate does not operate properly.                       | Repair or replace the lift plate when it does not move vertically.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Lift motor 1 - Engine PWB<br>• Lift sensor 1 - Engine PWB |           |
| 3    | Checking lift motor 1    | Lift motor 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.         | Reattach lift motor 1. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 4    | Checking lift sensor 1   | Lift sensor 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.        | Reattach lift sensor 1. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C1020: Lift motor 2 error

Cassette 2 lift motor 2 over-current is detected 5 times continuously.  
 The lift sensor not turning on 5 times continuously when passing 15s after loading cassette 2.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the lift plate  | The lift plate does not operate properly.                       | Repair or replace the lift plate when it does not move vertically.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Lift motor 2 - Engine PWB<br>• Lift sensor 2 - Engine PWB |           |
| 3    | Checking lift motor 2    | Lift motor 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.         | Reattach lift motor 2. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 4    | Checking lift sensor 2   | Lift sensor 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.        | Reattach lift sensor 2. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C1030: PF lift motor 1 error

#### Target: Paper feeder (500-sheet x 2)

The PF lift sensor 1 on is not detected 5 times continuously when passing 15s after loading cassette 3.

| Step | Check description       | Assumed cause                             | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the lift plate | The lift plate does not operate properly. | Repair or replace the lift plate when it does not move vertically. |           |

| Step | Check description         | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 2    | Checking the connection   | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• PF lift motor 1 - PF PWB<br>• PF lift sensor 1 - PF PWB |           |
| 3    | Checking PF lift motor 1  | PF lift motor 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.      | Reattach PF lift motor 1. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 4    | Checking PF lift sensor 1 | PF lift sensor 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.     | Reattach PF lift sensor 1. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | PF firmware upgrade       | The PF firmware is not the latest version.                      | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the PF PWB      | The PF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PF PWB.   |           |

**C1040: PF lift motor 2 error**

**Target: Paper feeder (500-sheet x 2)**

The PF lift sensor 1 on is not detected 5 times continuously when passing 15s after loading cassette 4.

| Step | Check description         | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the lift plate   | The lift plate does not operate properly.                       | Repair or replace the lift plate when it does not move vertically.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection   | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• PF lift motor 2 - PF PWB<br>• PF lift sensor 2 - PF PWB |           |
| 3    | Checking PF lift motor 2  | PF lift motor 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.      | Reattach PF lift motor 2. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 4    | Checking PF lift sensor 2 | PF lift sensor 2 is not properly attached, or it is faulty.     | Reattach PF lift sensor 2. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | PF firmware upgrade       | The PF firmware is not the latest version.                      | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the PF PWB      | The PF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PF PWB.   |           |

**C1100: PF lift motor 1 error**

**Target: Large capacity paper feeder (1,500-sheet x 2)**

- The PF lift sensor 1 not turning on is detected 5 times continuously when passing 23s after loading cassette 3. (detection time at the 2nd time and later: 2s)
- The lift over-current protection monitor signal is detected for 1s or more 5 times continuously during the motor operation. (however, this is not detected for 1s when starting up PF lift motor 1)

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the lift plate  | The lift plate does not operate properly.                       | Repair or replace the lift plate when it does not move vertically.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• PF lift motor 1 - PF PWB<br>• PF lift sensor 1 - PF PWB |           |
| 3    | Checking PF lift motor 1 | PF lift motor 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.      | Reattach PF lift motor 1. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |

| Step | Check description         | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 4    | Checking PF lift sensor 1 | PF lift sensor 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty. | Reattach PF lift sensor 1. If it does not operate correctly, replace it. |           |
| 5    | PF firmware upgrade       | The PF firmware is not the latest version.                  | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.                              |           |
| 6    | Replacing the PF PWB      | The PF PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the PF PWB.  |           |

C1110: PF lift motor 2 error

Target: Large capacity paper feeder (1,500-sheet x 2)

- The PF lift sensor 2 not turning on is detected 5 times continuously when passing 23s after loading cassette 3. (detection time at the 2nd time and later: 2s)
- The lift over-current protection monitor signal is detected for 1s or more 5 times continuously during the motor operation. (however, this is not detected for 1s when starting up PF lift motor 2)

| Step | Check description         | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the lift plate   | The lift plate does not operate properly.                       | Repair or replace the lift plate when it does not move vertically.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection   | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PF lift motor 2 - PF PWB</li> <li>• PF lift sensor 2 - PF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 3    | Checking PF lift motor 2  | PF lift motor 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.      | Reattach PF lift motor 2. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 4    | Checking PF lift sensor 2 | PF lift sensor 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.     | Reattach PF lift sensor 2. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | PF firmware upgrade       | The PF firmware is not the latest version.                      | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the PF PWB      | The PF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PF PWB.  |           |

C1800: Paper Feeder communication error

Target: Paper feeder (500-sheet x 2)

The communication error was detected 10 times continuously.

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Reinstalling the paper feeder | The paper feeder is not properly installed.   | Clean the drawer connector terminal of the paper feeder and main unit and reinstall the paper feeder.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection       | The connector is not connected properly or, the wire or drawer connector is faulty. | Check the connection. Repair and clean the terminal. Insert the connector all the way. If there is no continuity or the drawer connector is faulty, replace it. |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade              | The firmware is not the latest version.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the PF PWB          | The PF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PF PWB.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB      | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C1800: Paper Feeder communication error

Target: Large capacity paper feeder (1,500-sheet x 2)

The communication error was detected 10 times continuously.

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Reinstalling the paper feeder | The paper feeder is not properly installed.   | Clean the drawer connector terminal of the paper feeder and main unit and reinstall the paper feeder.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection       | The connector is not connected properly or, the wire or drawer connector is faulty. | Check the connection. Repair and clean the terminal. Insert the connector all the way. If there is no continuity or the drawer connector is faulty, replace it. |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade              | The firmware is not the latest version.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the PF PWB          | The PF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PF PWB.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB      | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C1900: Paper Feeder EEPROM error

Target: Paper feeder (500-sheet x 2)

For internal count

The writing data and the reading data mismatch 4 times continuously when writing.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly or, the wire or drawer connector is faulty. | Check the connection. Repair and clean the terminal. Insert the connector all the way. If there is no continuity or the drawer connector is faulty, replace it. |           |
| 2    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the PF PWB     | The PF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PF PWB.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C1900: Paper Feeder EEPROM error

Target: Large capacity paper feeder (1,500-sheet x 2)

For internal count

The writing data and the reading data mismatch 4 times continuously when writing.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly or, the wire or drawer connector is faulty. | Check the connection. Repair and clean the terminal. Insert the connector all the way. If there is no continuity or the drawer connector is faulty, replace it. |           |
| 2    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the PF PWB     | The PF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PF PWB.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |



### C2000: Main motor steady state error

The main motor steady state off is detected 1s continuously after becoming the steady state.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Main motor - Engine PWB                                    |           |
| 3    | Checking drive unit 1    | Drive unit 1 is faulty.   | Execute U030[Main] and check if the gear in drive unit 1 rotates normally. If there is a load in rotation, clean the gear and bushing and apply grease. If not repaired, replace drive unit 1. |           |
| 4    | Checking the main motor  | The main motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.       | Reattach the main motor and execute U030[Main]. If not operating normally, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C2010: Main motor startup error

The main motor is not in the steady state within 3s after start-up.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Main motor - Engine PWB                                    |           |
| 3    | Checking drive unit 1    | Drive unit 1 is faulty.   | Execute U030[Main] and check if the gear in drive unit 1 rotates normally. If there is a load in rotation, clean the gear and bushing and apply grease. If not repaired, replace drive unit 1. |           |
| 4    | Checking the main motor  | The main motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.       | Reattach the main motor and execute U030[Main]. If not operating normally, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C2101: Developer motor steady state error

Developer motor steady state off is detected 1s continuously after becoming the steady state.

| Step | Check description       | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Firmware upgrade        | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Developer motor - Engine PWB |           |

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 3    | Checking drive unit 1        | Drive unit 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.        | Execute U030[DLP] and check if the gear in drive unit 1 rotates normally. If there is a load in rotation, clean the gear and bushing and apply grease. If not repaired, replace drive unit 1. |           |
| 4    | Checking the developer motor | The developer motor is not properly attached, or it is faulty. | Reattach the developer motor and execute U030[DLP]. If not operating normally, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB     | The engine PWB is faulty.                                      | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C2111: Developer motor start-up error

The developer motor is not in the steady state within 3s after start-up

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Firmware upgrade             | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection      | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Developer motor - Engine PWB                              |           |
| 3    | Checking drive unit 1        | Drive unit 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.         | Execute U030[DLP] and check if the gear in drive unit 1 rotates normally. If there is a load in rotation, clean the gear and bushing and apply grease. If not repaired, replace drive unit 1. |           |
| 4    | Checking the developer motor | The developer motor is not properly attached, or it is faulty.  | Reattach the developer motor and execute U030[DLP]. If not operating normally, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB     | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C2300: Fuser motor steady state error

The fuser motor steady state off is detected 1s continuously after becoming steady state.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Fuser motor - Engine PWB  |           |
| 3    | Checking drive unit 1    | Drive unit 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.         | Execute U030[Fuser] and check if the gear in the drive unit 1 rotates normally. If there is a load in rotation, clean the gear and bushing and apply grease. If not repaired, replace drive unit 1. |           |
| 4    | Checking the fuser motor | The fuser motor is not properly attached, or it is faulty.      | Reattach the fuser motor and execute U030[Fuser]. If not operating properly, replace the fuser motor.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C2310: Fuser motor start-up error

The fuser motor is not in the steady state within 3s after start-up.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Fuser motor - Engine PWB  |           |
| 3    | Checking drive unit 1    | Drive unit 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.         | Execute U030[Fuser] and check if the gear in the drive unit 1 rotates normally. If there is a load in rotation, clean the gear and bushing and apply grease. If not repaired, replace drive unit 1. |           |
| 4    | Checking the fuser motor | The fuser motor is not properly attached, or it is faulty.      | Reattach the fuser motor and execute U030[Fuser]. If not operating properly, replace the fuser motor.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C2600: PF drive motor error

#### Target: Paper feeder (500-sheet x 2)

An error signal was received for 2s continuously when the PF drive motor is driven.

| Step | Check description           | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection     | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• PF drive motor - PF PWB |           |
| 2    | Firmware upgrade            | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the PF drive motor | The PF drive motor is faulty.                                   | Replace the PF drive motor.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the PF PWB        | The PF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PF PWB.   |           |

### C2610: PF feed motor error

#### Target: Large capacity paper feeder (1,500-sheet x 2)

An error signal was received for 2s continuously when the PF feed motor is driven.

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection    | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• PF feed motor - PF PWB |           |
| 2    | Firmware upgrade           | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the PF feed motor | The PF feed motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.    | Reattach the PF feed motor and execute U247 [LCF] > [Motor] > {On}. If not operating properly, replace the PF feed motor.                                  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the PF PWB       | The PF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PF PWB.  |           |

### C3100: Carriage error

The home position sensor is off and does not turn on when passing the specified time at initialization and it does not turn on at retry once.

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Unlocking the primary mirror unit | The primary mirror unit is not unlocked.   | Unlock the primary mirror unit.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the lamp unit operation  | There is a load at the lamp unit slide motion.   | Execute U073[Scanner Motor] and check the lamp unit operation. If there is an excess load applied, clean the scanner wire, scanner wire drum, scanner rail, etc.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the scanner wires        | The scanner wire is dirty or comes off.  | Clean the scanner wires. If the wires come off, reattach the scanner wires.  |           |
| 4    | Checking the connection           | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.                              | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Scanner motor - Engine PWB</li> <li>• Home position sensor - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 5    | Checking the scanner motor        | The scanner motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty. The belt tension is not enough. | Reattach the scanner motor and adjust the belt tension properly. Execute U073[Scanner Motor] and if it does not operate normally, replace the scanner motor.   |           |
| 6    | Checking the home position sensor | The home position sensor is not attached properly or faulty.                                 | Reattach the home position sensor. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 7    | Firmware upgrade                  | The firmware is not the latest version.  | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 8    | Replacing the engine PWB          | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C3200: LED error

The white reference data obtained by turning on the LED lamp is lower than the specified value.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                                   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the LED lamp    | The LED lamp does not light.                    | Execute U061 [CCD] and check if the LED lamp turns on. If it does not turn on, replace the LED unit and execute U411[Table(ChartA)].   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection  | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty. | Clean the FFC terminal and reconnect it. If the FFC terminal is deformed or FFC wire is broken, replace the FFC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• LED drive PWB - CCD PWB</li> <li>• CCD PWB - Main PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 3    | Replacing the LED unit   | The LED drive PWB is faulty.                    | Replace the LED unit.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the lens unit  | The CCD PWB is faulty.                          | Replace the lens unit and execute U411.  |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C3210: CIS lamp error

#### Target: Dual scan DP

The input data did not exceed threshold for 5s when lighting the CIS lamp.

| Step | Check description                         | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Releasing the partial operation           | The partial operation is executed.                              | Reset the partial operation at U906.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the DPCIS                        | The CIS lamp does not light.                                    | Execute U061 [CIS] and check if the CIS lamp turns on. If the CIS lamp does not turn on, replace the DPCIS and execute U091, U411.   |           |
| 3    | Cleaning the CIS glass and the CIS roller | The CIS glass or the CIS roller is dirty.                       | Clean the CIS glass and the CIS roller.  |           |
| 4    | Reconnecting the DPSHD PWB                | The DPSHD PWB is not properly connected.                        | Reconnect the DPSHD PWB to the DPCIS.  |           |
| 5    | Checking the connection                   | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DPSHD PWB - DP PWB</li> <li>• DP PWB - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 6    | Firmware upgrade                          | The firmware is faulty.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DPSHD PWB                   | The DPSHD PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DPSHD PWB.   |           |
| 8    | Replacing the DP PWB                      | The DP PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DP PWB.  |           |
| 9    | Replacing the engine PWB                  | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C3300: CCD AGC error

The white reference data after adjustment is not within the target range

| Step | Check description                          | Assumed cause                                   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Cleaning the backside of the contact glass | The white reference sheet is dirty.             | Clean the white reference sheet at the backside of the contact glass.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the LED lamp                      | The LED lamp is broken.                         | Execute U061 [CCD] and check if the LED lamp turns on. If it does not turn on, replace the LED unit and execute U411[Table(ChartA)].   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                    | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty. | Clean the FFC terminal and reconnect it. If the FFC terminal is deformed or FFC wire is broken, replace the FFC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• LED drive PWB - CCD PWB</li> <li>• CCD PWB - Main PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Replacing the LED unit                     | The LED drive PWB is faulty.                    | Replace the LED unit.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the lens unit                    | The CCD PWB is faulty.                          | Replace the lens unit and execute U411.  |           |
| 6    | Firmware upgrade                           | The firmware is not the latest version.         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the engine PWB                   | The engine PWB is faulty.                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C3310: CIS AGC error

#### Target: Dual scan DP

#### For internal count

The DPCIS could not acquire the correct white reference value while AGC process was executed.

| Step | Check description                         | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Releasing the partial operation           | The partial operation is executed.                              | Execute resetting the partial operation at U906.  |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the CIS glass and the CIS roller | The CIS glass or the CIS roller is dirty.                       | Clean the CIS glass and the CIS roller.   |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade                          | The firmware is faulty.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 4    | Reconnecting the DPSHD PWB                | The DPSHD PWB is not properly connected.                        | Reconnect the DPSHD PWB to the DPCIS.   |           |
| 5    | Checking the connection                   | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• DPSHD PWB - DP PWB<br>• DP PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DPSHD PWB                   | The DPSHD PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DPSHD PWB.  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DPCIS                       | The DPCIS is faulty.  | Replace the DPCIS then execute U091 and U411.   |           |
| 8    | Replacing the DP PWB                      | The DP PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DP PWB.   |           |
| 9    | Replacing the engine PWB                  | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C3500: Scanner AISC communication error

Readback values are different 4 times continuously during communication between the scanner and ASIC

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                                   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection  | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty. | Clean the terminals of the FFC and reconnect if. If the FFC terminal is deformed or FFC wire is broken, replace the FFC.<br>• Main PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 2    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the main PWB   | The main PWB is faulty.                         | Replace the main PWB.   |           |

### C3600: Scanner sequence error

- The mail box buffer overflow is detected.
- The software sequence error is detected.

| Step | Check description       | Assumed cause                                   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 2    | Checking the connection | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty. | Clean the terminals of the FFC and reconnect if. If the FFC terminal is deformed or FFC wire is broken, replace the FFC.<br>• Main PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade        | The firmware is not the latest version.         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause             | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---------------------------|---|-----------|
| 4    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty. | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)]. |           |
| 5    | Replacing the main PWB   | The main PWB is faulty.   | Replace the main PWB.   |           |

### C3800: AFE error

When writing, writing data and reading data does not match 3 times continuously. There is no response from AFE for 100ms.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                                   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection  | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty. | Clean the FFC terminals of the following FFC and reconnect them. If the FFC terminal is deformed or broken, replace the FFC.<br>• CCD PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 2    | Replacing the lens unit  | The CCD PWB is faulty.                          | Replace the lens unit and execute U411.  |           |
| 3    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C3900: Backup memory reading/writing error (Engine PWB)

Read value and write value are different

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                             | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The engine PWB does not operate properly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                 | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C4001: Polygon motor synchronization error

The polygon motor does not become steady state when passing 10s after starting the drive

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection    | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Polygon motor - Engine PWB |           |
| 2    | Checking the polygon motor | The polygon motor does not rotate properly.                     | Check the rotation sound of the polygon motor, and reattach or replace the LSU if it does not rotate properly.   |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade           | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the engine PWB   | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C4011: Polygon motor steady-state error

Steady state off is detected 1s continuously after the polygon motor is in the steady state

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection    | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Polygon motor - Engine PWB |           |
| 2    | Checking the polygon motor | The polygon motor does not rotate properly.                     | Check the rotation sound of the polygon motor, and reattach or replace the LSU if it does not rotate properly.   |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade           | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the engine PWB   | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C4101: BD initialization error

BD is not detected within 1s after the polygon motor is in the steady state

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• LSU (APC PWB) - Engine PWB |           |
| 2    | Checking the LSU         | The APC PWB does not operate normally.                          | Reattach or replace the LSU.   |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C4201: BD initialization error

The BD signal is not detected during the laser lighting.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• LSU (APC PWB) - Engine PWB |           |
| 2    | Checking the LSU         | The APC PWB does not operate normally.                          | Reattach or replace the LSU.   |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |



### C4701: VIDEO ASIC device error 1

Communication with VIDEO ASIC has fails 10 times continuously. (After writing to VIDEO ASIC, read from same address and the error occurred that the value does not match)

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                               | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The ASIC operation on the engine is faulty. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.     | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C5101: Main high voltage error

When measuring the rush-in current by changing the Vpp in 3 steps at the Vpp adjustment, the difference between zero current value and the third step current value is 5 or less.

| Step | Check description                             | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the drum unit and the developer unit | The drum does not rotate normally with a excess load.   | Check if the drum is rotated manually. If not, replace the drum unit.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the main charger unit                | Since foreign objects adhere to the main charger high voltage contact, it is deformed or damaged, proper current does not flow. | Check the high voltage contact of the main charger unit and clean it if foreign objects adhere. If deformed or damaged, replace the main charger unit and execute U930. |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                       | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty.   | Clean the terminals of the FFC and reconnect if. If the FFC terminal is deformed or FFC wire is broken, replace the FFC.<br>• High voltage PWB - Engine PWB             |           |
| 4    | Replacing the high voltage PWB                | The high voltage PWB is faulty.   | Replace the high voltage PWB.   |           |
| 5    | Checking the main motor                       | The main motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.   | Reattach the main motor and execute U030[Main]. If not operating normally, replace it.  |           |
| 6    | Firmware upgrade                              | The firmware is not the latest version.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the engine PWB                      | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C6000: Broken fuser heater 1 error

1. The fuser thermopile does not detect 100°C/212°F within 20s after starting warm-up
2. During warm-up, the temperature detected by the fuser thermopile does reach the edge ready temperature within 60s after detecting 100°C/212°F.

| Step | Check description           | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reinstalling the fuser unit | There are foreign objects in the drawer contact terminal of the fuser unit. | Clean the drawer connector terminal of the fuser unit. Check if the pin of the drawer connector is not bent, and replace the fuser unit if it is bent. If it is normal, reinstall the fuser unit so that the drawer connector is securely connected. |           |

| Step | Check description              | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 2    | Checking the connection        | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fuser heater 1 - Low voltage PWB</li> <li>• Fuser thermostat - Fuser unit (Drawer connector) - Engine PWB</li> <li>• Fuser thermopile - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 3    | Replacing the fuser thermopile | The fuser thermopile does not detect temperature correctly.     | Replace the fuser thermopile.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the fuser unit       | The fuser heater, fuser thermistor or other is faulty.          | Replace the fuser unit.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the low voltage PWB  | The low voltage PWB is faulty.                                  | Replace the low voltage PWB.   |           |
| 6    | Firmware upgrade               | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the engine PWB       | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C6020: Fuser thermopile error

The fuser thermopile detects high temperature 1s continuously

| Step | Check description              | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection        | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fuser thermopile - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 2    | Replacing the fuser thermopile | The fuser thermopile does not detect temperature correctly.     | Replace the fuser thermopile.   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the low voltage PWB  | The low voltage PWB is faulty.                                  | Replace the low voltage PWB.  |           |
| 4    | Firmware upgrade               | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB       | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C6030: Broken fuser thermopile error

1. During warm-up, the fuser thermopile detected the abnormal outer temperature output value for 1s.
2. During warm-up, the fuser thermopile detected the abnormal target output value for 1s.

| Step | Check description              | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection        | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fuser thermopile - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 2    | Replacing the fuser thermopile | The fuser thermopile is faulty.                                 | Replace the fuser thermopile.   |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade               | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the engine PWB       | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C6050: Fuser thermopile low temperature error

The fuser thermopile detected 100°C/212°F or less 1s continuously during printing

| Step | Check description              | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection        | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fuser heaters - Low voltage PWB</li> <li>• Fuser thermostat - Fuser unit (Drawer connector) - Engine PWB</li> <li>• Fuser thermopile - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 2    | Replacing the fuser thermopile | The fuser thermopile does not detect temperature correctly.     | Replace the fuser thermopile.  |           |
| 3    | Replacing the fuser unit       | The fuser heater, fuser thermistor or other is faulty.          | Replace the fuser unit.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the low voltage PWB  | The low voltage PWB is faulty.                                  | Replace the low voltage PWB.   |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade               | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB       | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C6200: Broken fuser heater 2 error

1. The fuser thermistor does not detect 35°C/95°F within 30s after starting warm-up
2. During warm-up, the temperature detected by the fuser thermistor does reach the edge ready temperature within 60s after detecting 100°C/212°F.

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Reinstalling the fuser unit   | There are foreign objects in the drawer contact terminal of the fuser unit. | Clean the drawer connector terminal of the fuser unit. Check if the pin of the drawer connector is not bent, and replace the fuser unit if it is bent. If it is normal, reinstall the fuser unit so that the drawer connector is securely connected.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection       | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.             | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fuser heater 2 - Low voltage PWB</li> <li>• Fuser thermostat - Fuser unit (Drawer connector) - Engine PWB</li> <li>• Fuser thermopile - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 3    | Replacing the fuser unit      | The fuser heater 2, fuser thermistor or other is faulty.                    | Replace the fuser unit.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the low voltage PWB | The low voltage PWB is faulty.  | Replace the low voltage PWB.  |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade              | The firmware is not the latest version.                                     | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB      | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C6220: Fuser thermistor high temperature error

The fuser thermistor detected high temperature 1s continuously

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reinstalling the fuser unit   | There are foreign objects in the drawer contact terminal of the fuser unit. | Clean the drawer connector terminal of the fuser unit. Check if the pin of the drawer connector is not bent, and replace the fuser unit if it is bent. If it is normal, reinstall the fuser unit so that the drawer connector is securely connected.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection       | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.             | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fuser heaters - Low voltage PWB</li> <li>• Fuser thermostat - Fuser unit (Drawer connector) - Engine PWB</li> <li>• Fuser thermopile - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 3    | Replacing the fuser unit      | The fuser thermistor does not detect normal temperature.                    | Replace the fuser unit.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the low voltage PWB | The low voltage PWB is faulty.  | Replace the low voltage PWB.   |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade              | The firmware is not the latest version.                                     | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB      | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C6230: Broken fuser thermistor error

The fuser thermistor detects 10°C/50°F or more while the fuser thermopile detects 100°C/212°F or more during war-up.

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reinstalling the fuser unit   | There are foreign objects in the drawer contact terminal of the fuser unit. | Clean the drawer connector terminal of the fuser unit. Check if the pin of the drawer connector is not bent, and replace the fuser unit if it is bent. If it is normal, reinstall the fuser unit so that the drawer connector is securely connected.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection       | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.             | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fuser heaters - Low voltage PWB</li> <li>• Fuser thermostat - Fuser unit (Drawer connector) - Engine PWB</li> <li>• Fuser thermopile - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 3    | Replacing the fuser unit      | The fuser thermistor is faulty.   | Replace the fuser unit.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the low voltage PWB | The low voltage PWB is faulty.  | Replace the low voltage PWB.   |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade              | The firmware is not the latest version.                                     | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB      | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C6250: Fuser thermistor low temperature error

The fuser thermistor detected 60 degree C or less 1s continuously during printing

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reinstalling the fuser unit   | There are foreign objects in the drawer contact terminal of the fuser unit. | Clean the drawer connector terminal of the fuser unit. Check if the pin of the drawer connector is not bent, and replace the fuser unit if it is bent. If it is normal, reinstall the fuser unit so that the drawer connector is securely connected.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection       | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.             | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fuser heaters - Low voltage PWB</li> <li>• Fuser thermostat - Fuser unit (Drawer connector) - Engine PWB</li> <li>• Fuser thermopile - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 3    | Replacing the fuser unit      | The fuser thermistor is faulty.   | Replace the fuser unit.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the low voltage PWB | The low voltage PWB is faulty.  | Replace the low voltage PWB.   |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade              | The firmware is not the latest version.                                     | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB      | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C6400: Zero-cross signal error

The zero-cross signal did not enter 3s continuously during the fuser heater control.

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection       | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Low voltage PWB - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 2    | Replacing the low voltage PWB | The low voltage PWB is faulty.                                  | Replace the low voltage PWB.  |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade              | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the engine PWB      | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C6410: Uninstalled fuser unit

The fuser pressure release sensor signal was not detected and the fuser thermistor AD value was 252 or more for 3s continuously.

| Step | Check description           | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reinstalling the fuser unit | There are foreign objects in the drawer contact terminal of the fuser unit. | Clean the drawer connector terminal of the fuser unit. Check if the pin of the drawer connector is not bent, and replace the fuser unit if it is bent. If it is normal, reinstall the fuser unit so that the drawer connector is securely connected. |           |

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 2    | Checking the connection       | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fuser heaters - Low voltage PWB</li> <li>• Fuser thermistor - Fuser unit (Drawer connector) - Engine PWB</li> <li>• Fuser press-release motor - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 3    | Replacing the fuser unit      | The fuser thermistor is faulty.                                 | Replace the fuser unit.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the low voltage PWB | The low voltage PWB is faulty.                                  | Replace the low voltage PWB.   |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade              | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB      | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C6610: Pressure release error

1. The fuser pressure release sensor changing from on to off is not detected when passing 10s after starting the fuser pressure decrease.
2. The fuser pressure release sensor changing from off to on is not detected when passing 10s after starting the fuser pressure increase.

| Step | Check description           | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reinstalling the fuser unit | There are foreign objects in the drawer contact terminal of the fuser unit.                             | Clean the drawer connector terminal of the fuser unit. Check if the pin of the drawer connector is not bent, and replace the fuser unit if it is bent. If it is normal, reinstall the fuser unit so that the drawer connector is securely connected.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection     | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.   | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fuser heaters - Low voltage PWB</li> <li>• Fuser press-release motor - Engine PWB</li> <li>• Fuser press-release sensor - Fuser unit (Drawer connector) - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 3    | Replacing the fuser unit    | The fuser unit is faulty at the fuser pressure release mechanism or the fuser pressure release sensor . | Replace the fuser unit.  |           |

### C6650: Fuser thermopile EEPROM error

1. Access to the thermopile EEPROM is not available.
2. Data in the thermopile EEPROM is abnormal.

| Step | Check description              | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection        | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fuser thermopile - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 2    | Replacing the fuser thermopile | The fuser thermopile does not detect normal temperature.        | Replace the fuser thermopile.   |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade               | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause             | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---------------------------|---|-----------|
| 4    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty. | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)]. |           |

### C7200: Broken inner thermistor error

The input sampling value of the sensor is at the reference value or more.

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reinstalling the developer unit   | The developer unit is not properly installed.                   | Reinstall developer unit so that the connector connects securely.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection           | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Developer relay PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 3    | Replacing the developer unit      | The sensor on the developer PWB is faulty.                      | Replace the developer unit.  |           |
| 4    | Firmware upgrade                  | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the developer relay PWB | The developer relay PWB is faulty.                              | Replace the developer relay PWB.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB          | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C7210: Inner thermistor short-circuited

The sensor input sampling value is at the reference value or less

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reinstalling the developer unit   | The developer unit is not properly installed.                   | Reinstall developer unit so that the connector connects securely.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection           | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Developer relay PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 3    | Replacing the developer unit      | The sensor on the developer PWB is faulty.                      | Replace the developer unit.  |           |
| 4    | Firmware upgrade                  | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the developer relay PWB | The developer relay PWB is faulty.                              | Replace the developer relay PWB.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB          | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C7401: Developer unit type mismatch error

There is mismatch between the main unit and developer unit.

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the developer unit     | The different type of the developer unit is installed. | Install the correct developer unit.                               |           |
| 2    | Reinstalling the developer unit | The developer unit is not properly installed.          | Reinstall developer unit so that the connector connects securely. |           |

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 3    | Checking the connection           | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Developer relay PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 4    | Firmware upgrade                  | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the developer relay PWB | The developer relay PWB is faulty.                              | Replace the developer relay PWB.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB          | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C7411: Drum unit type mismatch error

There is mismatch between the main unit and drum unit.

| Step | Check description                             | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the drum unit and the developer unit | The different drum unit is installed.                           | Install the proper drum unit.   |           |
| 2    | Reinstalling the drum unit                    | The drum unit is not properly installed.                        | Reinsert the drum unit connector for secure connection.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                       | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Drum relay PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 4    | Firmware upgrade                              | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the drum relay PWB                  | The drum relay PWB is faulty.                                   | Replace the drum relay PWB.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB                      | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C7800: Broken outer thermistor error

The input sampling value of the sensor is at the reference value or more.

| Step | Check description                         | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection                   | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Temperature/humidity sensor - Engine PWB |           |
| 2    | Replacing the temperature/humidity sensor | The temperature/humidity sensor is faulty.                      | Replace the temperature/humidity sensor.   |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade                          | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the engine PWB                  | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |



### C7810: Outer thermistor short-circuited

The sensor input sampling value is at the reference value or less

| Step | Check description                         | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection                   | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Temperature/humidity sensor - Engine PWB |           |
| 2    | Replacing the temperature/humidity sensor | The temperature/humidity sensor is faulty.                      | Replace the temperature/humidity sensor.   |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade                          | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the engine PWB                  | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C7901: Drum unit EEPROM error

1. Five times consecutive detection of no response from the device for more than 5ms on reading / writing.
2. Data read in 2 places does not match 8 consecutive times.
3. Writing data and reading data does not match 8 consecutive times.

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power     | The data stored in the EEPROM in the drum unit is faulty.       | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.                                       |           |
| 2    | Reinstalling the drum unit   | The drum unit is not properly installed.                        | Reinsert the drum unit connector for secure connection.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection      | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Drum relay PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 4    | Replacing the drum unit      | The EEPROM in the drum unit is faulty.                          | Replace the drum unit.  |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade             | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the drum relay PWB | The drum relay PWB is faulty.                                   | Replace the drum relay PWB.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the engine PWB     | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### C7911: Developer unit EEPROM error

1. Five times consecutive detection of no response from the device for more than 5ms on reading / writing.
2. Data read in 2 places does not match 8 consecutive times.
3. Writing data and reading data does not match 8 consecutive times.

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power        | The data stored in the EEPROM in the developer unit is faulty. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Reinstalling the developer unit | The developer unit is not properly installed.                  | Reinstall developer unit so that the connector connects securely.   |           |

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 3    | Checking the connection           | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Developer relay PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 4    | Replacing the developer unit      | The EEPROM in the developer unit is faulty.                     | Replace the developer unit.  |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade                  | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the developer relay PWB | The developer relay PWB is faulty.                              | Replace the developer relay PWB.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the engine PWB          | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

**C8010: PH motor error 1**

Target: 3,000-sheet finisher + Punch unit, 1,000-sheet finisher + Punch unit

1. The PH home position sensor does not turn on even 200ms passed when the PH motor drives.
2. The pulse plate does not count the specified pulse even if passing 300ms after the punch operation is started.

| Step | Check description                    | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the punch unit              | The punch unit is not assembled properly.                              | If the punch unit does not move manually, repair the position where restricts the operation.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the PH cam drive parts      | The PH cam drive parts are not attached properly, or faulty.           | Reattach the PH cam drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection              | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.        | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• PH motor - PH PWB<br>• PH home position sensor - PH PWB<br>• PH PWB - DF PWB |           |
| 4    | Checking the PH motor                | The PH motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                | Reattach the PH motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Punch]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | Checking the PH home position sensor | The PH home position sensor is not attached properly, or it is faulty. | Reattach the PH home position sensor and execute U241 [Punch] > [Punch HP]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 6    | Firmware upgrade                     | The firmware is not the latest version.                                | Upgrade the PH firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the PH PWB                 | The PH PWB is faulty.  | Replace the PH PWB.  |           |
| 8    | Replacing the DF PWB                 | The DF PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

**C8020: PH motor error 2**

Target: 3,000-sheet finisher + Punch unit, 1,000-sheet finisher + Punch unit

The positioning alignment of the home position is not completed within 3s when initializing or waiting the home position.

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the punch unit         | The punch unit is not assembled properly.                    | If the punch unit does not move manually, repair the position where restricts the operation. |           |
| 2    | Checking the PH cam drive parts | The PH cam drive parts are not attached properly, or faulty. | Reattach the PH cam drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.                              |           |

| Step | Check description       | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 3    | Checking the connection | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PH motor - PH PWB</li> <li>• PH PWB - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking the PH motor   | The PH motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.         | Reattach the PH motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Punch]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade        | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the PH firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the PH PWB    | The PH PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PH PWB.  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DF PWB    | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

### C8030: PH motor error 3

Target: 3,000-sheet finisher + Punch unit, 1,000-sheet finisher + Punch unit

The home position detection does not turn off within 50ms when initializing the home position.

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the punch unit         | The punch unit is not assembled properly.                       | If the punch unit does not move manually, repair the position where restricts the operation.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the PH cam drive parts | The PH cam drive parts are not attached properly, or faulty.    | Reattach the PH cam drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection         | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PH motor - PH PWB</li> <li>• PH PWB - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking the PH motor           | The PH motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.         | Reattach the PH motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Punch]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade                | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the PH firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the PH PWB            | The PH PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PH PWB.  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DF PWB            | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

### C8090: DF paddle motor error

Target: 3,000-sheet finisher, 1,000-sheet finisher

1. The DF paddle sensor does not turn on when passing 1s while the DF paddle motor drives.
2. The DF paddle sensor does not turn off when passing 1s from the on condition.

| Step | Check description                  | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the DF paddle drive parts | The DF paddle drive parts are not properly attached, or it is faulty. | Reattach the DF paddle drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection            | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.       | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF paddle motor - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF paddle sensor - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 3    | Checking the DF paddle motor  | The DF paddle motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.  | Reattach the DF paddle motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Beat]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.            |           |
| 4    | Checking the DF paddle sensor | The DF paddle sensor is not attached properly, or it is faulty. | Reattach the DF paddle sensor and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Lead Paddle]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it. |           |
| 5    | Replacing the DF PWB          | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

C8100: DF exit release motor error

Target: 1,000-sheet finisher

1. The DF paper bundle eject switch does not turn on after passing 1s when the DF eject release motor drives.
2. The DF paper bundle eject switch does not turn off when driving for 1s from the on condition.

| Step | Check description                            | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the DF bundle exit unit             | The exit guide in the DF bundle exit unit is deformed.                             | If the eject guide, etc., of the DF bundle eject unit is deformed, repair or replace it.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF bundle exit unit drive parts | The DF bundle exit unit drive parts are not properly attached, or they are faulty. | Reattach the DF bundle exit unit drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                      | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.                    | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF exit release motor - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF bundle exit switch - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking the DF exit release motor           | The DF exit release motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.               | Reattach the DF exit release motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Eject Unlock(HP)]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Checking the DF bundle exit switch           | The DF bundle exit switch is not attached properly, or it is faulty.               | Reattach the DF bundle exit switch and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Bundle Eject HP]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DF PWB                         | The DF PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |

C8100: DF exit release motor error

Target: 3,000-sheet finisher

1. The DF paper bundle eject sensor does not turn on after passing 1s when the DF eject release motor drives.
2. The DF paper bundle eject sensor does not turn off when driving for 1s from the on condition.

| Step | Check description                            | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the DF bundle exit unit             | The exit guide in the DF bundle exit unit is deformed.                             | If the eject guide, etc., of the DF bundle eject unit is deformed, repair or replace it.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF bundle exit unit drive parts | The DF bundle exit unit drive parts are not properly attached, or they are faulty. | Reattach the DF bundle exit unit drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                      | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.                    | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF exit release motor - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF bundle exit sensor - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking the DF exit release motor           | The DF exit release motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.               | Reattach the DF exit release motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Eject Unlock(HP)]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |

| Step | Check description                  | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 5    | Checking the DF bundle exit sensor | The DF bundle exit sensor is not attached properly, or it is faulty. | Reattach the DF bundle exit sensor and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Bundle Eject HP]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it. |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DF PWB               | The DF PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |

### C8110: DF shift motor 1 error

#### Target: 3,000-sheet finisher

1. DF shift sensor 1 does not turn on when passing 3s while DF shift motor 1 drives.
2. DF shift sensor 1 does not turn off when passing 3s while DF shift motor 1 drives.

| Step | Check description                          | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the front shift guide             | The front shift guide is not assembled properly.                                 | If the front shift guide does not move manually, repair the position where restricts the operation.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the front shift guide drive parts | The front shift guide drive parts are not properly attached, or they are faulty. | Reattach the front shift guide drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                    | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.                  | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF shift motor 1 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF shift sensor 1 - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking DF shift motor 1                  | DF shift motor 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                      | Reattach DF shift motor 1 and execute U240 [Motor] > [Sort Test]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | Checking DF shift sensor 1                 | DF shift sensor 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                     | Reattach DF shift sensor 1 and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Shift Front HP]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DF PWB                       | The DF PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

### C8120: DF shift motor 2 error

#### Target: 3,000-sheet finisher

1. DF shift sensor 2 does not turn on when passing 3s while DF shift motor 2 drives.
2. DF shift sensor 2 does not turn off when passing 3s while DF shift motor 2 drives.

| Step | Check description                         | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the rear shift guide             | The rear shift guide is not assembled properly.                                 | If the rear shift guide does not move manually, repair the position where restricts the operation.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the rear shift guide drive parts | The rear shift guide drive parts are not properly attached, or they are faulty. | Reattach the rear shift guide drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                   | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.                 | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF shift motor 2 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF shift sensor 2 - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking DF shift motor 2                 | DF shift motor 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                     | Reattach DF shift motor 2 and execute U240 [Motor] > [Sort Test]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 5    | Checking DF shift sensor 2 | DF shift sensor 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty. | Reattach DF shift sensor 2 and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Shift Tail HP]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it. |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DF PWB       | The DF PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |

### C8130: DF shift release motor error

#### Target: 3,000-sheet finisher

1. The DF shift release sensor does not turn on when driving the DF shift release motor for 3s in the direction of HP detection.
2. The DF shift release sensor does not turn off when driving the DF shift release motor for 3s in the direction of HP detection off.

| Step | Check description                         | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the rear shift guide             | The rear shift guide is not assembled properly.                                 | If the rear shift guide does not move manually, repair the position where restricts the operation.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the rear shift guide drive parts | The rear shift guide drive parts are not properly attached, or they are faulty. | Reattach the rear shift guide drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                   | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.                 | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF shift release motor - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF shift release sensor - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking the DF shift release motor       | The DF shift release motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.           | Reattach the DF shift release motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Sort Test]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | Checking the DF shift release sensor      | The DF shift release sensor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.          | Reattach the DF shift release sensor and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Shift Unlock HP]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DF PWB                      | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

### C8140: DF tray motor error 1

#### Target: 1,000-sheet finisher

The DF tray sensor or DF tray upper level sensor turning on is not detected when passing 30s while the DF tray is ascending.

| Step | Check description                | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the DF tray             | The DF tray is not assembled properly.                                 | If the DF tray does not move up and down manually, repair the position where restricts the operation.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF tray drive parts | The DF tray drive parts are not properly attached, or they are faulty. | Reattach the DF tray drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection          | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.        | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF tray motor - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF tray sensor 1 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF tray upper surface sensor 1 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF tray upper surface sensor 2 - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |

| Step | Check description                        | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|--|--|-----------|
| 4    | Checking the DF tray motor               | The DF tray motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                 | Reattach the DF tray motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Tray]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.                        |           |
| 5    | Checking DF tray sensor 1                | DF tray sensor 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                  | Reattach DF tray sensor 1 and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Tray U-Limit]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.              |           |
| 6    | Checking DF tray upper side sensors 1, 2 | DF tray upper surface sensor 1, 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty. | Reattach DF tray upper surface sensor 1, 2 and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Tray Top]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it. |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DF PWB                     | The DF PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

### C8140: DF tray motor error 1

#### Target: 3,000-sheet finisher

The DF tray sensor or DF tray upper level sensor turning on is not detected when passing 30s while the DF main tray is ascending.

| Step | Check description                        | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the DF main tray                | The DF main tray is not assembled properly.                                  | If the DF main tray does not move up and down manually, repair the position where restricts the operation.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF main tray drive parts    | The DF main tray drive parts are not properly attached, or they are faulty.  | Reattach the DF main tray drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.              | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF tray motor - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF tray sensor 1 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF tray sensor 2 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF tray upper surface sensor 1 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF tray upper surface sensor 2 - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking the DF tray motor               | The DF tray motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                 | Reattach the DF tray motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Tray]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Checking DF tray sensors 1, 2            | DF tray sensor 1, 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.               | Reattach DF tray sensor 1, 2 and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Tray U-Limit]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 6    | Checking DF tray upper side sensors 1, 2 | DF tray upper surface sensor 1, 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty. | Reattach DF tray upper surface sensor 1, 2 and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Tray Top]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DF PWB                     | The DF PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |

### C8150: DF tray motor error 2

#### Target: 1,000-sheet finisher

The DF tray sensor or DF tray upper level sensor turning on to off is not detected when passing 30s while the DF main tray is descending.

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause                          | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the DF tray | The DF tray is not assembled properly. | If the DF tray does not move up and down manually, repair the position where restricts the operation. |           |

| Step | Check description                        | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|--|--|-----------|
| 2    | Checking the DF tray drive parts         | The DF tray drive parts are not properly attached, or they are faulty.       | Reattach the DF tray drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.              | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF tray motor - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF tray sensor 1 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF tray upper surface sensor 1 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF tray upper surface sensor 2 - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking the DF tray motor               | The DF tray motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                 | Reattach the DF tray motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Tray]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | Checking DF tray sensor 1                | DF tray sensor 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                  | Reattach DF tray sensor 1 and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Tray U-Limit]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 6    | Checking DF tray upper side sensors 1, 2 | DF tray upper surface sensor 1, 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty. | Reattach DF tray upper surface sensor 1, 2 and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Tray Top]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DF PWB                     | The DF PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

### C8150: DF tray motor error 2

#### Target: 3,000-sheet finisher

The DF tray sensor or DF tray upper level sensor turning on to off is not detected when passing 30s while the DF tray is descending.

| Step | Check description                        | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the DF main tray                | The DF main tray is not assembled properly.                                  | If the DF main tray does not move up and down manually, repair the position where restricts the operation.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF main tray drive parts    | The DF main tray drive parts are not properly attached, or they are faulty.  | Reattach the DF main tray drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.              | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF tray motor - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF tray sensor 1 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF tray sensor 2 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF tray upper surface sensor 1 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF tray upper surface sensor 2 - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking the DF tray motor               | The DF tray motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                 | Reattach the DF tray motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Tray]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Checking DF tray sensors 1, 2            | DF tray sensor 1, 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.               | Reattach DF tray sensor 1, 2 and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Tray U-Limit]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 6    | Checking DF tray upper side sensors 1, 2 | DF tray upper surface sensor 1, 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty. | Reattach DF tray upper surface sensor 1, 2 and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Tray Top]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DF PWB                     | The DF PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |



C8160: DF tray motor error 3

Target: 1,000-sheet finisher

The DF tray sensor 3 on is not detected when passing 30s at the DF tray descending.

| Step | Check description                | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the DF tray             | The DF tray is not assembled properly.                                 | If the DF tray does not move up and down manually, repair the position where restricts the operation.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF tray drive parts | The DF tray drive parts are not properly attached, or they are faulty. | Reattach the DF tray drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection          | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.        | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF tray motor - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF tray sensor 3 -DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking the DF tray motor       | The DF tray motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.           | Reattach the DF tray motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Tray]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | Checking DF tray sensor 3        | DF tray sensor 3 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.            | Reattach DF tray sensor 3 and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Tray L-Limit]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DF PWB             | The DF PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

C8160: DF tray motor error 3

Target: 3,000-sheet finisher

The DF tray sensor 4 on is not detected when passing 60s at the DF main tray descending.

| Step | Check description                     | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the DF main tray             | The DF main tray is not assembled properly.                                 | If the DF main tray does not move up and down manually, repair the position where restricts the operation.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF main tray drive parts | The DF main tray drive parts are not properly attached, or they are faulty. | Reattach the DF main tray drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection               | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.             | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF tray motor - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF tray sensor 4 -DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking the DF tray motor            | The DF tray motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                | Reattach the DF tray motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Tray]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | Checking DF tray sensor 4             | DF tray sensor 4 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                 | Reattach DF tray sensor 4 and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Tray L-Limit]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DF PWB                  | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

### C8170: DF side registration motor 1 error 1

#### Target: 1,000-sheet finisher

The home position cannot be detected after passing 3s when relocating to the home position.

| Step | Check description                                 | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the front DF adjusting plate             | The DF front adjusting plate is not assembled correctly.                                | If the front DF adjusting plate does not move manually, repair the position where there is stuck.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF front adjusting plate drive units | The DF front adjusting plate drive parts are not attached properly, or they are faulty. | Reattach the DF front adjusting plate drive parts. If not resolved, replace the parts.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                           | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.                         | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF side registration motor 1 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF side registration sensor 1 - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking DF side registration motor 1             | DF side registration motor 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                 | Reattach DF side registration motor 1 and execute U240 [Motor] > [Width Test(A3)] or [Width Test(LD)]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Checking DF side registration sensor 1            | DF side registration sensor 1 is not properly attached, or it is faulty.                | Reattach DF side registration sensor 1, then execute U241 [Finisher] > [Width Front HP]. If DF side registration sensor 1 does not operate properly, replace it.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DF PWB                              | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

### C8170: DF side registration motor 1 error 1

#### Target: 3,000-sheet finisher

The home position cannot be detected after passing 3s when relocating to the home position.

| Step | Check description                                 | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the front DF adjusting plate             | The DF front adjusting plate is not assembled correctly.                                | If the front DF adjusting plate does not move manually, repair the position where there is stuck.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF front adjusting plate drive units | The DF front adjusting plate drive parts are not attached properly, or they are faulty. | Reattach the DF front adjusting plate drive parts. If not resolved, replace the parts.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                           | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.                         | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF side registration motor 1 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF side registration sensor 1 - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking DF side registration motor 1             | DF side registration motor 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                 | Reattach DF side registration motor 1 and execute U240 [Motor] > [Width Test(A3)] or [Width Test(LD)]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Checking DF side registration sensor 1            | DF side registration sensor 1 is not properly attached, or it is faulty.                | Reattach DF side registration sensor 1, then execute U241 [Finisher] > [Width Front HP]. If DF side registration sensor 1 does not operate properly, replace it.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DF PWB                              | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

### C8180: DF side registration motor 1 error 2

Target: 1,000-sheet finisher

J6810/J6811/J6812 (Front DF side registration jam) was detected 2 times continuously.

| Step | Check description  | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the front DF adjusting plate                      | The DF front adjusting plate is not assembled correctly.                                | If the front DF adjusting plate does not move manually, repair the position where there is stuck.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF front adjusting plate drive units          | The DF front adjusting plate drive parts are not attached properly, or they are faulty. | Reattach the DF front adjusting plate drive parts. If not resolved, replace the parts.   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the front DF side registration guide drive parts | The front DF side registration guide drive parts are faulty.                            | Replace the front DF side registration guide drive parts.  |           |
| 4    | Checking the connection                                    | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.                         | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF side registration motor 1 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF side registration sensor 1 - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 5    | Checking DF side registration motor 1                      | DF side registration motor 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                 | Reattach DF side registration motor 1 and execute U240 [Motor] > [Width Test(A3)] or [Width Test(LD)]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 6    | Checking DF side registration sensor 1                     | DF side registration sensor 1 is not properly attached, or it is faulty.                | Reattach DF side registration sensor 1, then execute U241 [Finisher] > [Width Front HP]. If DF side registration sensor 1 does not operate properly, replace it.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DF PWB                                       | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

### C8180: DF side registration motor 1 error 2

Target: 3,000-sheet finisher

J6810/J6811/J6812 (Front DF side registration jam) was detected 2 times continuously.

| Step | Check description  | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the front DF adjusting plate                      | The DF front adjusting plate is not assembled correctly.                                | If the front DF adjusting plate does not move manually, repair the position where there is stuck.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF front adjusting plate drive units          | The DF front adjusting plate drive parts are not attached properly, or they are faulty. | Reattach the DF front adjusting plate drive parts. If not resolved, replace the parts.   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the front DF side registration guide drive parts | The front DF side registration guide drive parts are faulty.                            | Replace the front DF side registration guide drive parts.  |           |
| 4    | Checking the connection                                    | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.                         | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF side registration motor 1 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF side registration sensor 1 - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 5    | Checking DF side registration motor 1                      | DF side registration motor 1 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                 | Reattach DF side registration motor 1 and execute U240 [Motor] > [Width Test(A3)] or [Width Test(LD)]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 6    | Checking DF side registration sensor 1                     | DF side registration sensor 1 is not properly attached, or it is faulty.                | Reattach DF side registration sensor 1, then execute U241 [Finisher] > [Width Front HP]. If DF side registration sensor 1 does not operate properly, replace it.   |           |

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause         | Measures            | Reference |
|------|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------|
| 7    | Replacing the DF PWB | The DF PWB is faulty. | Replace the DF PWB. |           |

### C8190: DF side registration motor 2 error 1

#### Target: 1,000-sheet finisher

The home position cannot be detected after passing 3s when relocating to the home position.

| Step | Check description                                | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the rear DF adjusting plate             | The DF rear adjusting plate is not assembled correctly.                                | If the rear DF adjusting plate does not move manually, repair the position where there is stuck.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF rear adjusting plate drive units | The DF rear adjusting plate drive parts are not attached properly, or they are faulty. | Reattach the DF rear adjusting plate drive parts. If not resolved, replace the parts.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                          | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.                        | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF side registration motor 2 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF side registration sensor 2 - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking DF side registration motor 2            | DF side registration motor 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                | Reattach DF side registration motor 2 and execute U240 [Motor] > [Width Test(A3)] or [Width Test(LD)]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Checking DF side registration sensor 2           | DF side registration sensor 2 is not properly attached, or it is faulty.               | Reattach DF side registration sensor 2, then execute U241 [Finisher] > [Width Tail HP]. If DF side registration sensor 2 does not operate properly, replace it.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DF PWB                             | The DF PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

### C8190: DF side registration motor 2 error 1

#### Target: 3,000-sheet finisher

The home position cannot be detected after passing 3s when relocating to the home position.

| Step | Check description                                | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the rear DF adjusting plate             | The DF rear adjusting plate is not assembled correctly.                                | If the rear DF adjusting plate does not move manually, repair the position where there is stuck.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF rear adjusting plate drive units | The DF rear adjusting plate drive parts are not attached properly, or they are faulty. | Reattach the DF rear adjusting plate drive parts. If not resolved, replace the parts.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                          | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.                        | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF side registration motor 2 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF side registration sensor 2 - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking DF side registration motor 2            | DF side registration motor 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                | Reattach DF side registration motor 2 and execute U240 [Motor] > [Width Test(A3)] or [Width Test(LD)]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Checking DF side registration sensor 2           | DF side registration sensor 2 is not properly attached, or it is faulty.               | Reattach DF side registration sensor 2, then execute U241 [Finisher] > [Width Tail HP]. If DF side registration sensor 2 does not operate properly, replace it.  |           |

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause         | Measures            | Reference |
|------|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------|
| 6    | Replacing the DF PWB | The DF PWB is faulty. | Replace the DF PWB. |           |

### C8200: DF side registration motor 2 error 2

#### Target: 1,000-sheet finisher

J6910/J6911/J6912 (Rear DF side registration jam) was detected 2 times continuously.

| Step | Check description                                | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the rear DF adjusting plate             | The DF rear adjusting plate is not assembled correctly.                                | If the rear DF adjusting plate does not move manually, repair the position where there is stuck.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF rear adjusting plate drive units | The DF rear adjusting plate drive parts are not attached properly, or they are faulty. | Reattach the DF rear adjusting plate drive parts. If not resolved, replace the parts.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                          | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.                        | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF side registration motor 2 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF side registration sensor 2 - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking DF side registration motor 2            | DF side registration motor 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                | Reattach DF side registration motor 2 and execute U240 [Motor] > [Width Test(A3)] or [Width Test(LD)]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Checking DF side registration sensor 2           | DF width adjustment sensor 2 is not installed properly. Or, it is faulty.              | Reattach DF side registration sensor 2, then execute U241 [Finisher] > [Width Tail HP]. If DF side registration sensor 2 does not operate properly, replace it.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DF PWB                             | The DF PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

### C8200: DF side registration motor 2 error 2

#### Target: 3,000-sheet finisher

J6910/J6911/J6912 (Rear DF side registration jam) was detected 2 times continuously.

| Step | Check description                                | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the rear DF adjusting plate             | The DF rear adjusting plate is not assembled correctly.                                | If the rear DF adjusting plate does not move manually, repair the position where there is stuck.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF rear adjusting plate drive units | The DF rear adjusting plate drive parts are not attached properly, or they are faulty. | Reattach the DF rear adjusting plate drive parts. If not resolved, replace the parts.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                          | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.                        | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF side registration motor 2 - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF side registration sensor 2 - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking DF side registration motor 2            | DF side registration motor 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                | Reattach DF side registration motor 2 and execute U240 [Motor] > [Width Test(A3)] or [Width Test(LD)]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Checking DF side registration sensor 2           | DF width adjustment sensor 2 is not installed properly. Or, it is faulty.              | Reattach DF side registration sensor 2, then execute U241 [Finisher] > [Width Tail HP]. If DF side registration sensor 2 does not operate properly, replace it.  |           |

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause         | Measures            | Reference |
|------|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-----------|
| 6    | Replacing the DF PWB | The DF PWB is faulty. | Replace the DF PWB. |           |

**C8210: DF slide motor error**

**Target: 1,000-sheet finisher**

The home position is not be detected after passing 3s when replacing to the home position at the initial operation.

| Step | Check description                       | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the DF staple unit             | The DF staple unit is not assembled properly.                                 | If the DF staple unit does not move front and back manually, repair the position where restricts the operation.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF staple unit drive parts | The DF staple unit drive parts are not properly attached, or they are faulty. | Reattach the DF staple unit drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                 | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.               | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF slide motor - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF slide sensor - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking the DF slide motor             | The DF slide motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                 | Reattach the DF slide motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Staple Move]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Checking the DF slide sensor            | The DF slide sensor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                | Reattach the DF slide sensor and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Staple HP]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DF PWB                    | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |

**C8210: DF slide motor error**

**Target: 3,000-sheet finisher**

The home position is not be detected after passing 3s when replacing to the home position at the initial operation.

| Step | Check description                       | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the DF staple unit             | The DF staple unit is not assembled properly.                                 | If the DF staple unit does not move front and back manually, repair the position where restricts the operation.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF staple unit drive parts | The DF staple unit drive parts are not properly attached, or they are faulty. | Reattach the DF staple unit drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                 | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.               | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF slide motor - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF slide sensor - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking the DF slide motor             | The DF slide motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                 | Reattach the DF slide motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Staple Move]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Checking the DF slide sensor            | The DF slide sensor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.                | Reattach the DF slide sensor and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Staple HP]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DF PWB                    | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |

### C8230: DF staple motor error 1

#### Target: 1,000-sheet finisher

DF staple jam is detected twice continuously.

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the DF staple unit  | The DF staple unit is not assembled properly.                   | If the DF staple can't be done without paper jam, repair the position where restricts the operation.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection      | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• DF staple unit - DF PWB |           |
| 3    | Replacing the DF staple unit | The DF staple motor is faulty.                                  | Execute U240 [Motor] > [Staple]. If the DF staple motor does not operate properly, replace the DF staple unit.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the DF PWB         | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |

### C8230: DF staple motor error 1

#### Target: 3,000-sheet finisher

DF staple jam is detected 2 times continuously. (The condition of jam detection for the second time: after the DF staple motor (staple unit) is started, home position can't be detected even 600ms passed.)

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the DF staple unit  | The DF staple unit is not assembled properly.                   | If the DF staple can't be done without paper jam, repair the position where restricts the operation.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection      | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• DF staple unit - DF PWB |           |
| 3    | Replacing the DF staple unit | The DF staple motor is faulty.                                  | Execute U240 [Motor] > [Staple]. If the DF staple motor does not operate properly, replace the DF staple unit.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the DF PWB         | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |

### C8240: DF staple motor error 2

#### Target: 3,000-sheet finisher

DF staple jam is detected 2 times continuously. (The condition of jam detection for the second time: during the DF staple motor (staple unit) operation, the lock detection signal level is 1V or more for 500ms continuously.)

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the DF staple unit  | The DF staple unit is not assembled properly.                   | If the DF staple can't be done without paper jam, repair the position where restricts the operation.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection      | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• DF staple unit - DF PWB |           |
| 3    | Replacing the DF staple unit | The DF staple motor is faulty.                                  | Execute U240 [Motor] > [Staple]. If the DF staple motor does not operate properly, replace the DF staple unit.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the DF PWB         | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |

### C8250: DF main tray error 4

#### Target: 1,000-sheet finisher

The lock detection signal level is 0.7V or less for 10s continuously during the DF tray motor motion.

| Step | Check description                | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the DF tray             | The DF tray is not assembled properly.                                 | If the DF tray does not move up and down manually, repair the position where restricts the operation.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the DF tray drive parts | The DF tray drive parts are not properly attached, or they are faulty. | Reattach the DF tray drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection          | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.        | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• DF tray motor - DF PWB |           |
| 4    | Checking the DF tray motor       | The DF tray motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.           | Reattach the DF tray motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Tray]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the DF PWB             | The DF PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

### C8260: DF middle motor HP detection error

#### Target: 1,000-sheet finisher

Home position is not detected when passing 1s or more after driving the DF middle motor.

| Step | Check description                  | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the DF paddle drive parts | The DF paddle drive parts are not properly attached, or it is faulty. | Reattach or replace the DF paddle drive parts.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection            | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.       | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• DF middle motor - DF PWB<br>• DF paddle sensor - DF PWB |           |
| 3    | Checking the DF middle motor       | The DF middle motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.        | Reattach the DF middle motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Middle(H)]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 4    | Checking the DF paddle sensor      | The DF paddle sensor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.       | Reattach the DF paddle sensor and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Lead Paddle]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the DF PWB               | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |

### C8260: DF middle motor HP detection error

#### Target: 3,000-sheet finisher

Home position is not detected when passing 1s or more after driving the DF middle motor.

| Step | Check description                  | Assumed cause   | Measures                                       | Reference |
|------|------------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the DF paddle drive parts | The DF paddle drive parts are not properly attached, or it is faulty. | Reattach or replace the DF paddle drive parts. |           |



| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 2    | Checking the connection       | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF middle motor - DF PWB</li> <li>• DF paddle sensor - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 3    | Checking the DF middle motor  | The DF middle motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.  | Reattach the DF middle motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Middle(H)]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 4    | Checking the DF paddle sensor | The DF paddle sensor is not attached properly, or it is faulty. | Reattach the DF paddle sensor and execute U241 [Finisher] > [Lead Paddle]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the DF PWB          | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |

### C8410: PH slide motor error 1

#### Target: 1,000-sheet finisher + Punch unit

The PH slide sensor does not turn on after shifting 30mm when relocating to the home position.

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the punch unit      | The punch unit is not assembled properly.                       | If the punch slide section does not move front and back manually, repair the position where restricts the operation.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the PH drive parts  | The PH drive parts are not attached properly, or faulty.        | Reattach the PH drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection      | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PH slide motor - PH PWB</li> <li>• PH slide sensor - PH PWB</li> <li>• PH PWB - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking the PH slide motor  | The PH slide motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.   | Reattach the PH slide motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Punch Move]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Checking the PH slide sensor | The PH slide sensor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.  | Reattach the PH slide sensor. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the PH PWB         | The PH PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PH PWB.  |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DF PWB         | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

### C8410: PH slide motor error 1

#### Target: 3,000-sheet finisher + Punch unit

The PH slide sensor does not turn on after shifting 30mm when relocating to the home position.

| Step | Check description           | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the punch unit     | The punch unit is not assembled properly.                | If the punch slide section does not move front and back manually, repair the position where restricts the operation. |           |
| 2    | Checking the PH drive parts | The PH drive parts are not attached properly, or faulty. | Reattach the PH drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.  |           |

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 3    | Checking the connection      | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PH slide motor - PH PWB</li> <li>• PH slide sensor - PH PWB</li> <li>• PH PWB - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking the PH slide motor  | The PH slide motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.   | Reattach the PH slide motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Punch Move]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | Checking the PH slide sensor | The PH slide sensor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.  | Reattach the PH slide sensor. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the PH PWB         | The PH PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PH PWB.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DF PWB         | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |

### C8420: PH slide motor error 2

#### Target: 1,000-sheet finisher + Punch unit

The paper edge cannot be detected even if shifting 30mm when detecting the paper edge.

| Step | Check description                       | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the punch unit                 | The punch unit is not assembled properly.                              | If the punch slide section does not move front and back manually, repair the position where restricts the operation.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the PH drive parts             | The PH drive parts are not attached properly, or faulty.               | Reattach the PH drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                 | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.        | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PH slide motor - PH PWB</li> <li>• PH paper edge sensor 1 - PH PWB</li> <li>• PH paper edge sensor 2 - PH PWB</li> <li>• PH PWB - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking the PH slide motor             | The PH slide motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.          | Reattach the PH slide motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Punch Move]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | Checking the PH paper edge sensors 1, 2 | PH paper edge sensor 1 or 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty. | Reattach the sensor and execute U241 [] > []. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the PH PWB                    | The PH PWB is faulty.  | Replace the PH PWB.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DF PWB                    | The DF PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |

### C8420: PH slide motor error 2

#### Target: 3,000-sheet finisher + Punch unit

The paper edge cannot be detected even if shifting 30mm when detecting the paper edge.

| Step | Check description           | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the punch unit     | The punch unit is not assembled properly.                | If the punch slide section does not move front and back manually, repair the position where restricts the operation. |           |
| 2    | Checking the PH drive parts | The PH drive parts are not attached properly, or faulty. | Reattach the PH drive parts. If not repaired, replace them.  |           |

| Step | Check description                       | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|--|---|-----------|
| 3    | Checking the connection                 | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.        | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PH slide motor - PH PWB</li> <li>• PH paper edge sensor 1 - PH PWB</li> <li>• PH paper edge sensor 2 - PH PWB</li> <li>• PH PWB - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Checking the PH slide motor             | The PH slide motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.          | Reattach the PH slide motor and execute U240 [Motor] > [Punch Move]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 5    | Checking the PH paper edge sensors 1, 2 | PH paper edge sensor 1 or 2 is not attached properly, or it is faulty. | Reattach the sensor and execute U241 [] > []. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the PH PWB                    | The PH PWB is faulty.  | Replace the PH PWB.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DF PWB                    | The DF PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |

**C8430: Main program error / Punch unit communication error**

**Target: 1,000-sheet finisher + Punch unit**

1. The punch unit main program is faulty at power-up.
2. Communication is unavailable after establishing the connection with the punch unit.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The PWB malfunctions.   | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PH PWB - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 3    | Replacing the PH PWB     | The PH PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PH PWB.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the DF PWB     | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

**C8430: Main program error / Punch unit communication error**

**Target: 3,000-sheet finisher + Punch unit**

1. The punch unit main program is faulty at power-up.
2. Communication is unavailable after establishing the connection with the punch unit.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The PWB malfunctions.   | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PH PWB - DF PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 3    | Replacing the PH PWB     | The PH PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PH PWB.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the DF PWB     | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.  |           |

### C8500: Main program error / Mail Box communication error

#### Target: 3,000-sheet finisher + Mail box

1. The mail box main program is faulty at power-up.
2. Communication is unavailable after establishing the connection with the mail box.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The PWB malfunctions.   | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.                           |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• MT PWB - DF PWB |           |
| 3    | Replacing the MT PWB     | The MT PWB is faulty.   | Replace the MT PWB.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the DF PWB     | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |

### C8510: MB conveying motor error 1

#### Target: 3,000-sheet finisher + Mail box

MT home position sensor on is not detected for 5s continuously at the initial operation.

| Step | Check description                    | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the MT conveying roller     | The MT conveying roller is not assembled properly.                     | If the MT conveying roller is not rotated manually, repair the part that restricts the operation.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection              | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.        | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• MT conveying motor - MT PWB<br>• MT home position sensor - MT PWB |           |
| 3    | Checking the MT conveying motor      | The MT conveying motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.      | Reattach the MT conveying motor and execute U240 [Mail Box] > [Conv]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 4    | Checking the MT home position sensor | The MT home position sensor is not attached properly, or it is faulty. | Reattach the sensor and execute U241 [] > []. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the MT PWB                 | The MT PWB is faulty.  | Replace the MT PWB.   |           |

### C8520: MB conveying motor error 2

#### Target: 3,000-sheet finisher + Mail box

MT home position sensor on is not detected for 1s continuously at the standby operation.

| Step | Check description                             | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the MT conveying roller              | The MT conveying roller is not assembled properly.                                 | If the MT conveying roller is not rotated manually, repair the part that restricts the operation. |           |
| 2    | Checking the MT conveying roller drive parts  | The MT conveying roller drive parts are not properly attached, or they are faulty. | Reattach the MT conveying roller drive parts.   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the MT conveying roller drive parts | The MT conveying roller drive parts are faulty.                                    | Replace the MT conveying roller drive parts.  |           |

| Step | Check description                    | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 4    | Checking the connection              | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.        | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MT conveying motor - MT PWB</li> <li>• MT home position sensor - MT PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 5    | Checking the MT conveying motor      | The MT conveying motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.      | Reattach the MT conveying motor and execute U240 [Mail Box] > [Conv]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 6    | Checking the MT home position sensor | The MT home position sensor is not attached properly, or it is faulty. | Reattach the sensor and execute U241 [] > []. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the MT PWB                 | The MT PWB is faulty.  | Replace the MT PWB.   |           |

**C8800: Main program error / communication error between the engine and DF.**

**Target: 1,000-sheet finisher**

1. The main program is faulty at power-up.
2. Communication is unavailable after establishing the connection with the finisher.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The program does not start up properly.                         | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.   |           |
| 2    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the DF firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF PWB - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Replacing the DF PWB     | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

**C8800: Main program error / communication error between the engine and DF.**

**Target: 3,000-sheet finisher**

1. The main program is faulty at power-up.
2. Communication is unavailable after establishing the connection with the finisher.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The program does not start up properly.                         | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.   |           |
| 2    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the DF firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DF PWB - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 4    | Replacing the DF PWB     | The DF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DF PWB.   |           |

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                           | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 5    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version. | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.                   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.               | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)]. |           |

**C8990: Finisher setup error**

**Target: 3,000-sheet finisher + Bridge unit, 1,000-sheet finisher + Bridge unit**

1. The relay conveying unit is not installed while the finisher is connected.
2. The relay conveying unit is installed while the finisher is not connected.

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Reinstalling the bridge unit | The bridge unit is not connected properly.                      | Clean the connecting terminal of the bridge unit and reconnect it to the main unit.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection      | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• BR PWB - Engine PWB</li> <li>• DF PWB - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 3    | Replacing the BR PWB         | The BR PWB is faulty.   | Replace the BR PWB.   |           |
| 4    | Firmware upgrade             | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB     | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

**C9000: DP communication error**

**Target: Document processor**

The communication error was detected 10 times continuously.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Firmware upgrade         | The main unit firmware and the document processor firmware mismatch. | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.      | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DP PWB - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 3    | Replacing the DP PWB     | The DP PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DP PWB.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

### C9040: DP lift motor ascend error

#### Target: Document processor

Unable to detect turning on the DP lift upper limit sensor continues specified times or more when passing 500 pulses while the DP lift motor is ascending.

| Step | Check description                       | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the original lift plate        | The original lift plate is not attached properly. Or, the fulcrum located at the back side of the machine for the original lift plate is broken. | If the original lift plate does not move up and down manually, repair the position where there is stuck. If damaged, replace it.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection                 | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.  | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DP lift motor - DP PWB</li> <li>• DP lift upper limit sensor - DP PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 3    | Checking the DP lift motor              | The DP lift motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.   | Reattach the DP lift motor and execute U243 [Lift Motor]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 4    | Checking the DP lift upper limit sensor | The DP lift upper limit sensor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.  | Reattach the DP lift upper limit sensor and execute U244 [Lift U-Limit]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the DP PWB                    | The DP PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DP PWB.  |           |

### C9050: DP lift motor descend error

#### Target: Document processor

Unable to detect turning on the DP lift lower limit sensor continues specified times or more when passing 500 pulses while the DP lift motor is descending.

| Step | Check description                       | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the original lift plate        | The DP original lift plate is not properly attached.                      | If the original lift plate does not move up and down manually, repair the position where restricts the operation.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection                 | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.           | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DP lift motor - DP PWB</li> <li>• DP lift lower limit sensor - DP PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 3    | Checking the DP lift motor              | The DP lift motor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.              | Reattach the DP lift motor and execute U243 [Lift Motor]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 4    | Checking the DP lift lower limit sensor | The DP lift lower limit sensor is not attached properly, or it is faulty. | Reattach the DP lift lower limit sensor and execute U244 [Lift L-Limit]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the DP PWB                    | The DP PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DP PWB.  |           |

### C9060: DP EEPROM error

#### Target: Document processor

The writing data and the reading data into the EEPROM mismatch.

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause                         | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|---------------------------------------|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the EEPROM  | The EEPROM is not properly installed. | Reattach the EEPROM on the DP PWB.                   |           |
| 2    | Replacing the DP PWB | The DP PWB is faulty.                 | Replace the DP PWB.                                  |           |
| 3    | Replacing the EEPROM | The EEPROM is faulty.                 | Replace the EEPROM on the DP PWB, then execute U411. |           |

### C9070: DP - SHD communication error

#### Target: Dual scan DP

The communication error between the DP PWB and the DP SHD PWB is detected during the communication.

| Step | Check description       | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• DPSHD PWB - DP PWB |           |
| 2    | Replacing the DPSHD PWB | The DPSHD PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DPSHD PWB.   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the DP PWB    | The DP PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DP PWB.  |           |

### C9080: LED failure detection

#### Target: Dual scan DP

##### For internal count

After 4 blocks of the LED lamps of the DPCIS are lit when turning on the power, the acquired peak value of some blocks is the reference value or less.

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the LED lamp      | The LED lamp of the DPCIS does not light.                       | Execute U061 [CIS] and confirm the LED lamp of the DPCIS does not turn on. Then, go to the next step.  |           |
| 2    | Reconnecting the DPSHD PWB | The DPSHD PWB is not properly connected.                        | Reconnect the DPSHD PWB to the DPCIS.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection    | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• DPSHD PWB - DP PWB |           |
| 4    | Executing U411             | DP scanning is not properly adjusted.                           | Execute U411 [DP FD(CharB)] and [DP FD(CharA)].  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the DPCIS        | The DPCIS is faulty.  | Replace the DPCIS then execute U091 and U411.  |           |
| 6    | Replacing the DPSHD PWB    | The DPSHD PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DPSHD PWB.   |           |



C9180: DP feed-shift motor error

Target: Mechanically reversed DP with the DP feed belt

Remarks: When detecting the DP feed-shift motor error (C9180) (up to 2 times), display J9002.

HP can't be detected even after the retrying process for the HP detection of the DP feed-shift guide for 3 times continuously.

\* HP detection of the DP feed-shift guide: When the DP feed-shift motor moves to HP, if HP can't be detected even driving the DP feed-shift motor for 1 round, the retry is done.

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Removing the original             | The original accordion jam in the guide between the DP reversing tray and the DP registration roller. (The position is not visible when the DP upper cover is opened.) | Remove the original which is stuck in the guide between the DP reversing tray and DP registration roller.   |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the DP conveying guide.  | Sticky foreign objects adhere to the DP conveying guide.   | Clean the DP conveying guide.   |           |
| 3    | Resetting the main power          | The DP feed-shift motor is not controlled correctly.   | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.   |           |
| 4    | Checking the DP feed-shift motor  | The DP feed-shift motor is not rotated correctly. Or, there is an excess load.   | After removing the DP feed-shift motor and repair it by rotating the drive section manually, reattach it.   |           |
| 5    | Checking the connection           | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.  | Clean the connector terminal of the wire and reconnect. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DP feed-shift motor - DP PWB</li> <li>• DP feed-shift sensor - DP PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 6    | Firmware upgrade                  | The firmware is not the latest version.  | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the DP feed-shift motor | The DP feed-shift motor is faulty.   | Replace the DP feed-shift motor.  |           |
| 8    | Checking the DP feed-shift sensor | The DP feed-shift sensor is not attached properly or faulty.   | Reattach the DP feed-shift sensor. If not repaired, replace it.   |           |
| 9    | Replacing the DP PWB              | The DP PWB is faulty.  | Replace the DP PWB.   |           |

C9500: Image processing circuit error (Scanner)

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                                   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection  | FFC is not connected properly. Or it is faulty. | Clean the terminals of the FFC and reconnect if. If the FFC terminal is deformed or FFC wire is broken, replace the FFC.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Main PWB (YC64, YC65)- Engine PWB (YC37, YC3)</li> </ul> |           |
| 2    | Replacing the main PWB   | The main PWB is faulty.                         | Replace the main PWB.   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

C9510: Image processing circuit error (DP)

Target: Dual scan DP

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reattaching the DP relay PWB | The DP relay PWB is not properly attached.                 | Reattach the DP relay PWB.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection      | The SATA cable is not properly connected, or it is faulty. | Reconnect the connector of the following SATA cable. If there is no continuity, replace the SATA cable.<br>• DP SHD PWB - DP relay PWB |           |
| 3    | Replacing the DPSHD PWB      | The DPSHD PWB is faulty.                                   | Replace the DPSHD PWB.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the DP relay PWB   | The DP relay PWB is faulty.                                | Replace the DP relay PWB.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the main PWB       | The main PWB is faulty.                                    | Replace the main PWB.  |           |

## (2) System Error (Fxxxx) Outline

### (2-1) System Error code list

| Error code | Contents  |
|------------|---|
| F000       | Main unit CPU communication error (Controller - Panel)  |
| F010       | Program read error (SSD)  |
| F020       | System memory error (RAM read/write error, CPU memory error)  |
| F021       | System memory error (RAM read/write error, ASIC memory error)   |
| F022       | System memory error (RAM read/write error, ASIC memory error)   |
| F040       | Communication error between the main unit CPU (Communication error between the controller and engine) |
| F041       | Communication error between the main PWB and the scanner engine                                       |
| F050       | Engine program error  |
| F051       | Scanner engine program error  |
| F052       | Panel engine program error  |

### (2-2) Content of System Error (Fxxxx) Outline

#### F000: Main unit CPU communication error (Controller - Panel)

The panel cannot be detected since the CPU communication between the main PWB and operation panel PWB 1 is unavailable.

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power        | The communication between the main PWB and the operation panel PWB 1 is faulty.    | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection         | The connector is not connected properly. Or, the wire or the SATA cable is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the wire and SATA cable connector and reconnect them. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Main PWB - Operation panel main PWB 1 |           |
| 3    | Executing U021                  | The backup RAM data is faulty.   | Execute U021 to initialize the backup RAM data.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the main PWB          | The main PWB is faulty.  | Replace the main PWB.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing operation panel PWB 1 | Operation panel PWB 1 is faulty.   | Replace operation panel PWB 1.  |           |

#### F010: Program read error (SSD)

Data corruption is detected at the program read

| Step | Check description                                 | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power                          | The communication between the main PWB and the operation panel PWB 1 is faulty. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Checking the SSD                                  | The SSD is not installed properly.  | Clean the SSD terminals and reinstall the SSD. If the SSD terminals are faulty, correct or replace it.                    |           |
| 3    | Checking the SSD (if lit after replacing the SSD) | An SSD out of specification is installed.                                       | Install the SSD matching the memory capacity specification.   |           |

| Step | Check description  | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--|---|---|-----------|
| 4    | (When the service call error appears after replacing the SSD) Replacing the SSD along the correct procedures | SSD was replaced without installing the USB memory storing the release firmware set in the main unit. | Install the USB memory storing the release firmware set in the main unit and turn the power off and on to upgrade the firmware. (For regular procedures, refer to Service Manual Chapter 4 [SSD replacement procedures when SSD replacement message appears]) |           |
| 5    | Checking the connection  | The connector is not connected properly. Or, the wire or the SATA cable is faulty.                    | Clean the terminal of the wire and SATA cable connector and reconnect them. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Main PWB - Operation panel main PWB 1   |           |
| 6    | Executing U021   | The backup RAM data is faulty.  | Execute U021 to initialize the backup RAM data.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the SSD  | The SSD is faulty.  | Replace the SSD. (For regular procedures, refer to Service Manual Chapter 4 [SSD replacement procedures when SSD replacement message appears])  |           |
| 8    | Replacing the main PWB   | The main PWB is faulty.   | Replace the main PWB.   |           |

**F020: System memory error (RAM read/write error, CPU memory error)**

The error appears during the reading/writing check of the RAM for the CPU when the main unit starts up.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The communication between the main PWB and the operation panel main PWB is faulty.        | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.   |           |
| 2    | Executing U021           | The backup RAM data is faulty.  | Execute U021 to initialize the backup RAM data.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the main PWB    | The connector or the FFC is not connected properly. Or, the wire, FFC, the PWB is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the connectors on the main PWB, reconnect the connector of the wire, and reconnect the FFC terminal. If the wire or the FFC is faulty, repair or replace them. If not resolved, replace the main PWB. |           |

**F021: System memory error (RAM read/write error, ASIC memory error)**

Error occurred when checking read/write of RAM for main PWB ASIC at start up.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The main PWB does not properly start up.  | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.   |           |
| 2    | Executing U021           | The backup RAM data is faulty.  | Execute U021 to initialize the backup RAM data.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the main PWB    | The connector or the FFC is not connected properly. Or, the wire, FFC, the PWB is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the connectors on the main PWB, reconnect the connector of the wire, and reconnect the FFC terminal. If the wire or the FFC is faulty, repair or replace them. If not resolved, replace the main PWB. |           |

### F022: System memory error (RAM read/write error, ASIC memory error)

Error occurred when checking read/write of RAM for DP relay PWB ASIC at start up.

| Step | Check description         | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power  | The main PWB does not properly start up.                                  | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Executing U021            | The backup RAM data is faulty.  | Execute U021 to initialize the backup RAM data.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the DP relay PWB | The DP relay PWB is not properly connected or attached. Or, it is faulty. | Reattach the DP relay PWB and tighten the screw. If not repaired, replace the DP relay PWB.                               |           |

### F040: Communication error between the main unit CPU (Communication error between the controller and engine)

There is an error in the communication between the main PWB and the engine PWB.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | There is an error in the communication between the main PWB and the engine PWB. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection  | The connector or FFC is not connected properly. Or, the wire or FFC is faulty.  | Reconnect the following wire connectors and reconnect the FFC. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. If the FFC terminal section is deformed or FFC is broken, replace the FFC.<br>• Main PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the main PWB   | The main PWB is faulty.   | Replace the main PWB.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### F041: Communication error between the main PWB and the scanner engine

There is an error in the communication between the main PWB and the engine PWB (Scanner).

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The communication between the controller and the scanner is faulty.            | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection  | The connector or FFC is not connected properly. Or, the wire or FFC is faulty. | Reconnect the following wire connectors and reconnect the FFC. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. If the FFC terminal section is deformed or FFC is broken, replace the FFC.<br>• Main PWB - Engine PWB |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.  | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the main PWB   | The main PWB is faulty.  | Replace the main PWB.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

### F050: Engine program error

The engine program cannot start up.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.   | Upgrade the engine firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 2    | Resetting the main power | The engine firmware checksum is faulty.   | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.  |           |
| 3    | Reinstalling the EEPROM  | The EEPROM is not properly attached.  | Reattach the EEPROM.   |           |
| 4    | Checking the engine PWB  | The connector or the FFC is not connected properly. Or, the wire, FFC, the PWB is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the connectors on the engine PWB, reconnect the connector of the wire, and reconnect the FFC terminal. If the wire or the FFC is faulty, repair or replace it. If not resolved, replace the engine PWB and execute U411 [Table(ChartA)]. |           |

### F051: Scanner engine program error

The scanner program cannot start up

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.   | Upgrade the engine firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 2    | Resetting the main power | The scanner engine RAM checksum is faulty.  | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.  |           |
| 3    | Reattaching the SSD      | The SSD is not installed properly.  | Reinstall SSD.   |           |
| 4    | Checking the engine PWB  | The connector or the FFC is not connected properly. Or, the wire, FFC, the PWB is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the connectors on the engine PWB, reconnect the connector of the wire, and reconnect the FFC terminal. If the wire or the FFC is faulty, repair or replace it. If not resolved, replace the engine PWB and execute U411 [Table(ChartA)]. |           |

### F052: Panel engine program error

The panel program cannot start up.

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Firmware upgrade                | The firmware is not the latest version.                         | Upgrade the panel firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 2    | Resetting the main power        | The panel RAM checksum is faulty.                               | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.                |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection         | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminals of the operation panel PWB 1 connector and reinsert the wire connector. If there is no continuity, replace the wire. |           |
| 4    | Replacing operation panel PWB 1 | Operation panel PWB 1 is faulty.                                | Replace operation panel PWB 1.   |           |

(2-3)System Error (Fxxxx) Outline

The document is described for the outline of the factors of the Fxxx errors that are not described in the self-diagnosis error code list.

Please utilize it as the measures when the system is not recovered after power off/on or it frequently occurs.

- Power is partially supplied to this machine when the power is turned off.  
Unplug the power plug and check if the F-code error is not released when passing one minute or more after turning the power off and then on.
- Please initially check the following when the error (Fxxx) is indicated.
  - Check the DIMM (DDR memory) and neighboring parts: Check the contact on the control PWB by releasing and reinserting the DIMM.
 If the error repeats after that, replace the DIMM.

| Code | Contents   | Verification procedure & check point  | Remarks  |
|------|--|---|--|
| -    | It locks on a Welcome screen.<br>(Even if time passes for a definite period of time in more than * notes, a screen does not change)                  | (1) Check the harness of the connection state of a connector between Panel<=>Main boards, and perform an operation check.<br>(2) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(3) U021 Controller backup initialization is carried out and an operation check is performed.<br>(4) Exchange a PanelMain board and perform an operation check.<br>(5) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(6) It will get, if USBLOG is obtainable, and contact service headquarters.<br>* : only HDD standard model  | * Execution of U024 will vanish user data and the software installed.<br>Reinstallation is required<br><br>[Main <=> Panel]<br>Main PWB: YC12<br>Panel PWB: YC5  |
| -    | It locks on a starting logo (Taskalfa) screen.<br>(Even if time passes for a definite period of time in more than * notes, a screen does not change) | (1) Check the mounting failure of optional equipment and perform an operation check.<br>(2) Check the harness of the connection state of a connector between Engine<=>Main boards, and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Check the harness of the connection state of a connector between Panel<=>Main boards, and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(5) U021 Controller backup initialization is carried out and an operation check is performed.<br>(6) Exchange a Engine board and perform an operation check.<br>(7) Exchange a PanelMain board and perform an operation check.<br>(8) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(9) It will get, if USBLOG is obtainable, and contact service headquarters.<br>* : only HDD standard model | * Execution of U024 will vanish user data and the software installed.<br>Reinstallation is required.<br><br>[Main <=> Engine]<br>Main PWB: YC63<br>Engine PWB: YC35<br><br>[Main <=> DP I/F PWB]<br><br>[Main <=> Panel]<br>Main PWB: YC12<br>Panel PWB: YC5 |

| Code | Contents  | Verification procedure & check point  | Remarks   |
|------|---|---|---|
| F000 | <p>CF000 will be displayed if * notes progress is carried out for a definite period of time with a Welcome screen.</p> <p>The communication fault between Panel-Main boards</p> <p>Communication fault between Panel Core-Main.</p> | <p>(1) Check the harness of * (between Main board &lt;=&gt;HDD), and the connection state of a connector between Panel&lt;=&gt;Main boards, and perform an operation check.</p> <p>(2) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *</p> <p>(3) U021 Controller backup initialization is carried out and an operation check is performed.</p> <p>(4) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.</p> <p>(5) Exchange a PanelMain board and perform an operation check.</p> <p>(6) It will get, if USBLOG is obtainable, and contact service headquarters.</p> <p>* : only HDD standard model</p>  | <p>[Main &lt;=&gt; Panel]<br/>Main PWB: YC12<br/>Panel PWB: YC5</p>   |
| F12X | <p>Abnormality detecting in a Scan control section</p>  | <p>(1) Check the harness between Engine/DP&lt;=&gt;Main boards, and the connection state of a connector, and perform an operation check.</p> <p>(2) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *</p> <p>(3) U021 Controller backup initialization is carried out and an operation check is performed.</p> <p>(4) Exchange a DP I/F, Engine and SHD board and perform an operation check.</p> <p>(5) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.</p> <p>(6) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.</p> <p>* Only HDD standard model</p>   | <p>[Main &lt;=&gt; Engine]<br/>Main PWB: YC64<br/>Engine PWB: YC37</p> <p>[Main &lt;=&gt; DP I/F PWB</p> <p>[DP I/F &lt;=&gt; SHD]<br/>DP I/F PWB: YC2<br/>SHD PWB: YC3</p> |
| F13X | <p>Abnormality detecting in a Panel control section</p>   | <p>(1) Turn the power OFF / ON and check whether the same system error occurs again</p> <p>(2) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.</p>   | <p>[Main &lt;=&gt; Panel]<br/>Main PWB: YC12<br/>Panel PWB: YC5</p>   |
| F14X | <p>Abnormality detecting in a FAX control part</p>  | <p>(1) Check the harness between FAX&lt;=&gt;Main boards, and the connection state of a connector, and perform an operation check.</p> <p>(2) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *</p> <p>(3) U021 Controller backup initialization is carried out and an operation check is performed.</p> <p>(4) Perform a deed operation check for DIMM Clear by U671.<br/>* Notes<br/>(Since it disappears when received data remain, cautions are required.)</p> <p>(5) Exchange FAX_DIMM and perform an operation check. * Notes</p> <p>(6) Exchange a FAX board and perform an operation check.</p> <p>(7) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.</p> <p>(8) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.</p> <p>* Only HDD standard model</p> <p>* Note Only model which has Flash for FAX data in a Main board</p> | <p>[Main &lt;=&gt; KUIO I/F]<br/>Main PWB: YC8, YC9<br/>KUIO PWB: YC3, YC4</p>  |



| Code                 | Contents  | Verification procedure & check point   | Remarks  |
|----------------------|---|--|--|
| F15X                 | Abnormality detecting in an authentication device control section | (1) Check the harness between authentication device <=>Main boards, and the connection situation of a connector, and perform an operation check.<br>(2) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(3) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(5) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(6) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model       | Authentication device: IC card reader etc.<br><br>[Main <=> USB I/F]<br>Main PWB: YC59, YC60<br>USB-HUB PWB: YC1, YC5<br><br>[Main <=> USB HUB]<br>Main PWB:YC59, YC60 |
| F17X                 | Abnormality detecting in a printer data control part              | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model   |  |
| F18X                 | Abnormality detecting in a Video control section                  | (1) Check the harness between Engine<=>Main boards, and the connection state of a connector, and perform an operation check.<br>(2) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(3) U021 Controller backup initialization is carried out and an operation check is performed.<br>(4) Exchange an Engine board and perform an operation check.<br>(5) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(6) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model | [Main <=> Engine]<br>Main PWB: YC65<br>Engine: YC3   |
| F1DX                 | Abnormality detecting of the image memory Management Department   | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model   | * F1D4: RAM placement error<br>1.Check U340<br>2.Initialize the setting value (U021)   |
| F21X<br>F22X<br>F23X | Abnormality detecting in an image-processing part                 | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model   |  |

| Code   | Contents  | Verification procedure & check point   | Remarks   |
|--|---|--|---|
| F24X   | Abnormality detecting in the system Management Department | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model   | * F248 is the abnormalities of a printer process.<br>In recurring by specific printer data, please give me cooperation at acquisition of capture data and USBLOG.<br><br>[Controller failure]<br>The solution method is only the power Off / On.<br>USBLOG is required for the investigation. |
| F25X   | Abnormality detecting in a network management departmen   | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Get USBLOG and packet capture and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model  | * It may occur according to a visitor's network environment.  |
| F26X   | Abnormality detecting in the system Management Department | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model   |   |
| F2BX<br>F2CX<br>F2DX<br>F2EX<br>F2FX<br>F30X<br>F31X<br>F32X | Abnormality detecting in a network control part           | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>(Depending on an analysis result, it is packet capture acquisition)<br>* Only HDD standard model  |   |
| F33X   | Abnormality detecting in the Scan Management Department   | (1) Check the harness between Engine/DP<=>Main boards, and the connection state of a connector, and perform an operation check.<br>(2) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(3) U021 Controller backup initialization is carried out and an operation check is performed.<br>(4) Exchange a Engine/DP Driver board and perform an operation check.<br>(5) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(6) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model | [Main <=> Engine]<br>Main PWB: YC11<br>Engine PWB: YC27<br><br>[Engine <=> DP Driver]<br>Engine PWB: YC33<br>DP Driver PWB: YC1   |

| Code   | Contents   | Verification procedure & check point  | Remarks  |
|--|--|---|--|
| F34X   | Abnormality detecting in the Panel Management Department                     | (1) Check the harness between Panel<=>Main boards, and the connection state of a connector, and perform an operation check.<br>(2) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(3) U021 Controller backup initialization is carried out and an operation check is performed.<br>(4) Exchange a Panel board and perform an operation check.<br>(5) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(6) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model | [Main <=> Panel]<br>Main PWB: YC12<br>Panel PWB: YC5           |
| F35X   | Abnormality detecting in the printing controlling Management Department      | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model  |  |
| F37X   | Abnormality detecting in the FAX Management Department                       | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model  | When OFF of the security kit that replaced the HDD to the SSD. |
| F38X   | Abnormality detecting in the authentication authorized Management Department | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model  |  |
| F3AX<br>F3BX<br>F3CX<br>F3DX<br>F3EX<br>F3FX<br>F40X<br>F41X<br>F42X<br>F43X<br>F44X<br>F45X | Abnormality detecting in the Entity Management Department                    | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model  |  |

| Code         | Contents  | Verification procedure & check point   | Remarks   |
|--------------|---|--|---|
| F46X         | Abnormality detecting of a printer rendering part         | (1) Exchange Main boards and perform an operation check.<br>(2) The acquisition wish of USBLOG -- carry out<br>(Depending on the case, it is print capture data acquisition)<br>* Only HDD standard model  | * F46F is the abnormalities of a printer process.<br>In recurring by specific printer data, please give me cooperation at acquisition of capture data and USBLOG.                       |
| F47X<br>F48X | Abnormality detecting of an image editing processing part | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model |   |
| F4AX<br>F4CX | Abnormality detecting of a printer rendering part         | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard mode  |   |
| F4DX         | Abnormality detecting in the Entity Management Department | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model |   |
| F4FX         | Abnormality detecting in the JOB Management Department    | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model | Since the USB log immediately after occurrence is needed for analysis, please give me cooperation of acquisition.   |
| F50X         | Abnormality detecting in the FAX Management Department    | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model | Since the USB log immediately after occurrence is needed for analysis, please give me cooperation of acquisition.<br><br>When OFF of the security kit that replaced the HDD to the SSD. |

| Code   | Contents  | Verification procedure & check point   | Remarks  |
|--|---|--|--|
| F51X<br>F52X<br>F53X<br>F55X<br>F56X<br>F57X         | Abnormality detecting in a JOB execution part                       | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model | Since the USB log immediately after occurrence is needed for analysis, please give me cooperation of acquisition.  |
| F58X<br>F59X<br>F5AX<br>F5BX<br>F5CX<br>F5DX<br>F5EX | Abnormality detecting in the various-services Management Department | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model | Since the USB log immediately after occurrence is needed for analysis, please give me cooperation of acquisition.<br><br>F5DX (especially if X is 9,A,B,C or D) occurs when processing FAX reception and URDS related matter.<br><br>When occurred, check data sent from PC. |
| F5FX   | Abnormality detecting in a service execution part                   | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model | Since the USB log immediately after occurrence is needed for analysis, please give me cooperation of acquisition.  |
| F62X   | Abnormality detecting in a service execution part                   | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model | Since the USB log immediately after occurrence is needed for analysis, please give me cooperation of acquisition.  |
| F63X   | Abnormality detecting in a device control section                   | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model |  |
| F68X   | Abnormality detecting in a storage device control section           | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model | * F684 is the overwrite error at the time of an HDD security kit.<br><br>Each of the SSD / HDD to check the operation after initializing. (U024 of SSD / FULL, U024 of HDD / FULL)   |

| Code                         | Contents                                | Verification procedure & check point   | Remarks |
|------------------------------|---|--|---------|
| F69X<br>F6AX<br>F6BX<br>F6CX | Abnormality detecting in a HyPAS-E part | (1) Initialize HDD and perform an operation check. (FULL of U024) *<br>(2) Carry out U021 Main backup initialization and perform an operation check.<br>(3) Exchange a Main board and perform an operation check.<br>(4) Exchange HDD and perform an operation check. *<br>(5) Get USBLOG and contact service headquarters.<br>* Only HDD standard model |         |

## 7 - 4 FAX Related Errors

### (1) FAX

| No.   | Contents  |
|-------|---|
| (1-1) | C0030: FAX PWB system error   |
| (1-2) | C0070: FAX PWB incompatible detection error   |
| (1-3) | C0830: FAX PWB flash program area checksum error  |
| (1-4) | C0870: PC FAX Image data transmission error   |
| (1-5) | C0920: FAX file system error  |
| (1-6) | The FAX cannot be sent  |
| (1-7) | The beep sounds when the copying or printing is finished  |
| (1-8) | When the data of the A3 or B4 size originals is transmitted, all of it is transmitted as the A4 size data |

### Content of FAX Related Errors

#### (1-1)C0030: FAX PWB system error

The FAX processing cannot be continued due to the FAX firmware error.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                          | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The FAX PWB does not operate properly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is faulty.                | Reinstall the FAX firmware.   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the FAX PWB    | The FAX PWB is faulty.                 | Replace the FAX PWB.  |           |

#### (1-2)C0070: FAX PWB incompatible detection error

Abnormal detection of FAX control PWB incompatibility in the initial communication with the FAX control PWB, any normal communication command is not transmitted.

| Step | Check description      | Assumed cause                          | Measures                                      | Reference |
|------|------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the FAX PWB   | The incompatible FAX PWB is installed. | Install the FAX PWB for the applicable model. |           |
| 2    | Firmware upgrade       | The firmware is faulty.                | Reinstall the FAX firmware.                   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the main PWB | The main PWB is faulty.                | Replace the main PWB.                         |           |

#### (1-3)C0830: FAX PWB flash program area checksum error

The program stored in the flash memory on the FAX PWB is broken so it cannot perform.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                          | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is faulty.                | Reinstall the FAX firmware.   |           |
| 2    | Resetting the main power | The FAX PWB is not connected properly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5s passes, reinstall the FAX PWB, and then turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 3    | Initializing the fax     | The data in the FAX PWB is faulty.     | Execute U600 to initialize the FAX.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the FAX PWB    | The FAX PWB is faulty.                 | Replace the FAX PWB.  |           |

(1-4)C0870: PC FAX Image data transmission error

Data was not properly transmitted even if the specified times of retry were made when the large volume data is transmitted between the FAX PWB and the main PWB.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                          | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The FAX PWB does not operate properly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5s passes, reinstall the FAX PWB, and then turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 2    | Initializing the fax     | The data in the FAX PWB is faulty.     | Execute U600 to initialize the FAX.   |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is faulty.                | Upgrade the fax firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the FAX PWB    | The FAX PWB is faulty.                 | Replace the FAX PWB.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the main PWB   | The main PWB is faulty.                | Replace the main PWB.   |           |
| 6    | Executing U024           | The data stored in the SSD is faulty.  | Execute U024 [SSD Format].  |           |

(1-5)C0920: FAX file system error

The backup data could not be stored since the file system of the flash memory is faulty.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause                          | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Initializing the fax     | FAX control values are incorrect.      | Execute U600 to initialize the FAX.   |           |
| 2    | Resetting the main power | The FAX PWB does not operate properly. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5s passes, reinstall the FAX PWB, and then turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is faulty.                | Reinstall the FAX firmware.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the FAX PWB    | The FAX PWB is faulty.                 | Replace the FAX PWB.  |           |

(1-6)The FAX cannot be sent

| Step | Check description                            | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection of the modular cable | The modular cable disconnects.  | Reconnect the modular cable.                                     |           |
| 2    | Changing the connection                      | If the adapter and the switching device or the like is connected to the telephone line, it is affected.         | Directly connect the main unit to the telephone line.            |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting                         | The line settings are incorrect.  | Correct the line settings. (Reduce the transmission speed, etc.) |           |
| 4    | Checking the status at the destination unit. | The destination unit is busy.   | Wait a while and then redial the number if busy tones are heard. |           |
| 5    | Checking the status at the destination unit. | The modular cable is disconnected in the destination unit if the destination unit does not receive the calling. | Request the destination unit to reconnect the modular cable.     |           |
| 6    | Checking the setting at the destination unit | The manual reception is set in the destination unit if the destination unit does not receive the calling.       | Ask the destination unit to change the reception settings.       |           |



| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 7    | Changing the sending content | When transmitting the data to the other country, the communication line is automatically cut. | Input a pause at the last of the destination FAX number. |           |

(1-7)The beep sounds when the copying or printing is finished

| Step | Check description | Assumed cause                           | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Firmware upgrade  | The firmware is not the latest version. | Upgrade the fax firmware to the latest version. |           |

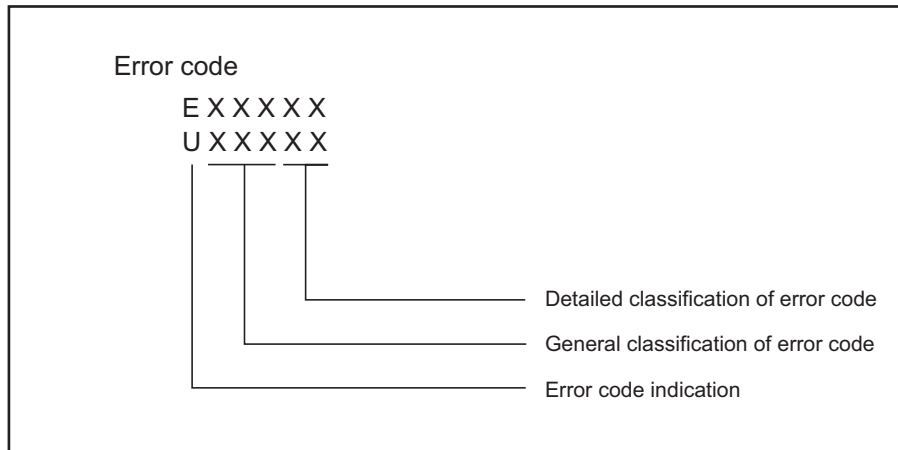
(1-8)When the data of the A3 or B4 size originals is transmitted, all of it is transmitted as the A4 size data

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The receivable size in the destination unit is A4 / Letter. | Select [B4] or [A3/Ledger] according to the receivable size at the Address book registration display > [i-FAX] > [Paper size].         |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting | The receivable size in the destination unit is A4 / Letter. | Select the condition of the destination unit when transmitting the data, choose [B4] or [A3/Ledger] according to the receivable sizes. |           |

## (2) FAX Error code

Error codes are listed on the communication reports, activity report, etc. The codes consist of an error code indication U followed by a 5-digit number. (The V.34 error is indicated with E of the error code and 5-digit number)

Regarding the 5-digit number, upper 3 digits indicate error and large classification of cause, lower 2 digits small classification of cause. The lower 2 digits are 00 for the item not requiring the category.



### Error code

| Error code    | Contents   |
|---------------|--|
| U00000/E00000 | No response or busy after the set number of redials.   |
| U00100/E00100 | Transmission was interrupted by a press of the stop/clear key.   |
| U00200/E00200 | Reception was interrupted by a press of the [Stop] key.  |
| U00300/E00300 | Recording paper on the destination unit has run out during transmission.   |
| U00430/E00430 | Polling request was received but interrupted because of a mismatch in permitted number. Or, sub address-based bulletin board transmission request was received but interrupted because of a mismatch in permitted ID in the transmitting unit. |
| U00431/E00431 | An sub address bulletin board transmission was interrupted because the specified sub address password was not registered.  |
| U00432/E00432 | A sub address bulletin board transmission was interrupted because the sub address password did not match.  |
| U00433/E00433 | A sub address bulletin board transmission request was received but data was not present in the sub address box.  |
| U00440/E00440 | Sub address confidential reception was interrupted because the specified sub address password was not registered.  |
| U00450/E00450 | The reception was interrupted because the permitted ID and FAX number did not match in the restricted transmission (password check transmission) in the destination unit.  |
| U00460/E00460 | The encryption reception was interrupted because the specified encryption box number was not registered.   |
| U00462/E00462 | Encrypted reception was interrupted because the encryption key for the specified encryption box was not registered.  |
| U00601/E00601 | Document jam or the document length exceeds the maximum.   |
| U00613/E00613 | The optical section is faulty  |
| U00656/E00656 | The data was not transmitted due to an error in the modem.   |
| U00690/E00690 | System error   |
| U00800/E00800 | A page transmission error occurred because of the reception of an RTN or PIN signal.   |
| U00811/E00811 | A page reception error remained after retry of transmission in the ECM mode.   |
| U00900/E00900 | An RTN or PIN signal was transmitted because of a page reception error.  |
| U00910/E00910 | Some pages cannot be received after retry of transmission in the ECM mode  |
| U01000/E01000 | An FTT signal was received for a set number of times after TCF signal transmission at 2400 bps. Or, an RTN signal was received in response to a Q signal (excluding EOP) after transmission at 2400 bps.                                       |
| U01001/E01001 | Function as indicated by DIS signal is not consistent with the one of own machine.   |

| Error code    | Contents  |
|---------------|---|
| U01016/E01016 | T1 timeout occurs since MBF signal is received but DIS signal is not after sending EOM signal.  |
| U01019/E01019 | Command send retrial times exceeds since significant signal is not received after sending CNC signal. (between own machines)                  |
| U01020/E01020 | Command send retrial times exceeds since significant signal is not received after sending CTC signal. (ECM)                                   |
| U01021/E01021 | Command send retrial times exceeds since significant signal is not received after sending EOR-Q signal. (ECM)                                 |
| U01022/E01022 | Command send retrial times exceeds since significant signal is not received after sending RR signal. (ECM)                                    |
| U01028/E01028 | T5 timeout is detected when sending in ECM (ECM)  |
| U01052/E01052 | DCN signal is received after sending RR signal (ECM)  |
| U01080/E01080 | PIP signal is received after sending PPS and NULL signals.  |
| U01092/E01092 | Communication is stopped since there are impossible combination of symbol speed and communication speed at V.34 sending.                      |
| U01093/E01093 | A DCN or other inappropriate signal was received during phase B of transmission.  |
| U01094/E01094 | DCS/NSS signal send retrial time is exceeded at phase B during transmission.  |
| U01095/E01095 | Command send retry time is exceeded since the significant signal is not received after sending (PPS) Q signal at phase D during transmission. |
| U01096/E01096 | DCN signal or invalid command is received at phase D during transmission.   |
| U01097/E01097 | The preset number of command retransfers was exceeded after transmission of an RR signal or no response.                                      |
| U01100/E01100 | Function indicated by DCS signal is not consistent with the one of own machine.   |
| U01101/E01101 | Function indicated by NSS signal except communication type is not consistent with the one of own machine.                                     |
| U01102/E01102 | DTC (NSC) signal is received while own machine has no transmission data.  |
| U01110/E01110 | No response is received after sending DIS signal.   |
| U01111/E01111 | No response is received after sending DTC (NSC) signal.   |
| U01113/E01113 | No response after transmitting an FTT signal.   |
| U01125/E01125 | No response after transmitting a CNS signal. (Between the units of our make)  |
| U01129/E01129 | No response after transmitting an SPA signal. (Short protocol)  |
| U01141/E01141 | DCN signal is received after sending DTC signal.  |
| U01143/E01143 | DCN signal is received after sending FTT signal.  |
| U01155/E01155 | DCN signal is received after sending SPA signal. (simplified protocol)  |
| U01160/E01160 | Maximum transmission time per line is exceeded while receiving message.   |
| U01162/E01162 | Reception was aborted due to a modem malfunction during message reception.  |
| U01191/E01191 | Communication is stopped with error during image data receipt sequence at V.34.   |
| U01193/E01193 | No response, DCN signal or invalid command is received at phase C/D during reception.   |
| U01194/E01194 | DCN signal is received at phase B during reception.   |
| U01195/E01195 | No message is received at phase C during reception.   |
| U01196/E01196 | Error line control overflow and decoding error occurred in messages during reception.   |
| U01400/E01400 | An invalid one-touch key was specified during communication.  |
| U01500/E01500 | A communication error occurred when calling in V.8 mode.  |
| U01600/E01600 | A communication error occurred when called in V.8 mode.   |
| U01700/E01700 | A communication error occurred in phase 2 (line probing).   |
| U01720/E01720 | The communication error appears at phase 4 (replacing the modem parameter).   |
| U01721/E01721 | The communication was interrupted because there is no communication speed commonly used with the destination unit.                            |
| U01800/E01800 | A communication error occurred in phase 2 (line probing).   |
| U01810/E01810 | A communication error occurred in phase 3 (primary channel equivalent device training).   |
| U01820/E01820 | The communication error appears at phase 4 (replacing the modem parameter).   |
| U01821/E01821 | The communication was interrupted because there is no communication speed commonly used with the destination unit.                            |
| U03000/E03000 | No document was present in the destination unit when polling reception started.   |

| Error code    | Contents  |
|---------------|---|
| U03200/E03200 | In interoffice sub address bulletin board reception, the data was not stored in the box specified by the destination unit.  |
| U03300/E03300 | In polling reception from a unit of our own model, operation was interrupted due to a mismatch in permitted ID or telephone number. Or, in interoffice sub address-based bulletin board reception, operation was interrupted due to a mismatch in permitted ID or telephone number. |
| U03400/E03400 | Polling reception was interrupted because of a mismatch in individual numbers (destination unit is either of our make or by another manufacturer).  |
| U03500/E03500 | In interoffice sub address bulletin board reception, the specified sub address password was not registered in the destination unit.   |
| U03600/E03600 | An interoffice sub address bulletin board reception was interrupted because of a mismatch in the specified sub address password.  |
| U03700/E03700 | Interoffice sub address bulletin board reception failed because the destination unit had no sub address bulletin board transmission capability, or data was not stored in any sub address box in the destination unit.  |
| U04000/E04000 | In interoffice sub address transmission mode, the specified sub address password was not registered in the destination unit.  |
| U04100/E04100 | The destination unit had no sub address reception capability while the sub address transmission was executed.   |
| U04200/E04200 | In encrypted transmission, the specified encryption box was not registered in the destination unit.   |
| U04300/E04300 | The encryption transmission was carried out, but there is no encryption function at the other machine.  |
| U04400/E04400 | Encrypted transmission was interrupted because encryption keys did not agree.   |
| U04500/E04500 | Encrypted reception was interrupted because of a mismatch in encryption keys.   |
| U05100/E05100 | The transmission was interrupted because the permitted ID and FAX number did not match in the restricted transmission (password check transmission).  |
| U05200/E05200 | Restricted reception (Password check reception) was interrupted because the permitted FAX number / ID did not match, the rejected FAX number matched, or the destination unit did not return its phone number.  |
| U05300/E05300 | The destination unit set the restricted reception (Password check reception). Consequently, the transmission was interrupted because the permitted FAX number / ID did not match, the rejected FAX number matched, or the own unit did not return its phone number.                 |
| U14000/E14000 | Memory overflowed during the sub address confidential reception.  |
| U14100/E14100 | In interoffice sub address transmission, memory overflowed in the destination unit.   |
| U19000/E19000 | Memory overflowed during memory reception.  |
| U19100/E19100 | Memory overflowed in the destination unit while transmitting the data.  |
| U19300/E19300 | Transmission failed because an error appeared during JBIG encoding.   |

## Content of Communication Errors

### U00000/E00000

| Step | Check description | Assumed cause       | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------|---------------------|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resending         | The status is Busy. | Check if the destination unit can receive the data and resend the data if there is no particular problem. |           |

### U00100/E00100

| Step | Check description | Assumed cause  | Measures | Reference |
|------|-------------------|--|----------|-----------|
| 1    | Resending         | Transmission was interrupted by a press of the stop/clear key. | Resend.  |           |

U00200/E00200

| Step | Check description     | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-----------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending | Reception was interrupted by a press of the [Stop] key. | Suspend resending from the destination unit or request the destination unit to resend the data. |           |

U00300/E00300

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Request to the destination unit | Recording paper on the destination unit has run out during transmission. | Request the destination unit to set the recording papers. |           |

U00430/E00430

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause  | Measures                           | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|--|------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the permitted number | Polling or sub address bulletin board transmission were requested, but the communication was interrupted because the permitted ID did not match. (It occurs in the transmitting unit.) | Register a valid permitted number. |           |

U00431/E00431

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request to the destination unit | An sub address bulletin board transmission was interrupted because the specified sub address password was not registered. | Register the sub address password in the destination unit. |           |

U00432/E00432

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the sub address password | A sub address bulletin board transmission was interrupted because the sub address password did not match. | Send by using correct the sub address password. |           |

U00433/E00433

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause   | Measures                         | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|---|----------------------------------|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the sub address box | A sub address bulletin board transmission request was received but data was not present in the sub address box. | Set data in the sub address box. |           |

U00440/E00440

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause   | Measures                           | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the sub address password | Sub address confidential reception was interrupted because the specified sub address password was not registered. | Register the sub address password. |           |

U00450/E00450

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the permitted number | The reception was interrupted because the permitted ID and FAX number did not match in the restricted transmission (password check transmission) in the destination unit. | Register the permitted number to be consistent at own machine side. |           |

U00460/E00460

| Step | Check description           | Assumed cause  | Measures                          | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------|--|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the encryption key | The encryption reception was interrupted because the specified encryption box number was not registered. | Register an encrypted box number. |           |

U00462/E00462

| Step | Check description           | Assumed cause   | Measures                    | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------|---|-----------------------------|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the encryption key | Encrypted reception was interrupted because the encryption key for the specified encryption box was not registered. | Register an encryption key. |           |

U00601/E00601

| Step | Check description     | Assumed cause                                    | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the original | Original jam                                     | Clear original feed jam and resend.                                |           |
| 2    | Checking the original | The original length exceeds the maximum allowed. | Check if the original length does not exceed 1.6 meter and resend. |           |

U00613/E00613

| Step | Check description                      | Assumed cause                 | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--|-------------------------------|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the service call error record | The optical section is faulty | Check the service call error record and perform the corrective actions. |           |

U00656/E00656

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                | Transmission was interrupted because there was an error in the modem. | Resend.   |           |
| 2    | Resetting the main power | Transmission was interrupted because there was an error in the modem. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5s passes, reinstall the FAX PWB, and then turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.                               | Upgrade the fax firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 4    | Initializing the fax     | The FAX initial value was changed.                                    | Execute U600 to initialize the FAX.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the FAX PWB    | The FAX PWB is faulty.  | Replace the FAX PWB.  |           |

U00690/E00690

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause                  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power      | System error                   | Turn the power switch and the main power switch off . After 5s passes, turn the main power switch and the power switch on. |           |
| 2    | Measures for the system error | System error in the main unit. | Perform the corrective actions for the system error in the main unit.  |           |

U00800/E00800

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the transmit start speed | A page transmission error occurred because of reception of a RTN or PIN signal. | In case pages are not properly sent and resending does not solve it, reduce transmit start speed and resend the data. |           |

U00811/E00811

| Step | Check description | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resending         | A page reception error remained after retry of transmission in the ECM mode. | In case pages are not properly sent and resending does not solve it, reduce transmit start speed and resend the data. |           |

U00900/E00900

| Step | Check description | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Re-reception      | An RTN or PIN signal was transmitted because of a page reception error. | Resend the page if there is a page not transmitted properly. |           |

U00910/E00910

| Step | Check description | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Re-reception      | Some pages cannot be received after retry of transmission in the ECM mode | Resend the page if there is a page not transmitted properly. |           |

U01000/E01000

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | An FTT signal was received for a set number of times after TCF signal transmission at 2400 bps. Or, an RTN signal was received in response to a Q signal (excluding EOP) after transmission at 2400 bps. | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)   | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)  | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01001/E01001

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | Function as indicated by DIS signal is not consistent with the one of own machine. | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)   | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)  | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01016/E01016

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | T1 timeout occurs since MBF signal is received but DIS signal is not after sending EOM signal. | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)   | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)  | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |



U01019/E01019

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | Command send retrial times exceeds since significant signal is not received after sending CNC signal. (between own machines) | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)   | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)  | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01020/E01020

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | Command send retrial times exceeds since significant signal is not received after sending CTC signal. (ECM) | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)  | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)   | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01021/E01021

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | Command send retrial times exceeds since significant signal is not received after sending EOR•Q signal. (ECM) | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)  | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)   | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01022/E01022

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | Command send retrial times exceeds since significant signal is not received after sending RR signal. (ECM) | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)   | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)  | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01028/E01028

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause                                    | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | T5 timeout is detected when sending in ECM (ECM) | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)       | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)            | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01052/E01052

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | DCN signal is received after sending RR signal (ECM) | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)           | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)                | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01080/E01080

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | PIP signal is received after sending PPS and NULL signals. | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)                 | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)                      | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01092/E01092

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | Communication is stopped since there are impossible combination of symbol speed and communication speed at V.34 sending. | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)   | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)  | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01093/E01093

| Step | Check description     | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the settings | The modem is not detected since the received signal is attenuated with its frequency response. | Set the modem detection level at U650 [RX Mm Level]. (Initial setting: -43dBm) |           |

| Step | Check description     | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-----------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 2    | Checking the settings | The modem is not detected since the received signal is attenuated with its frequency response. | Set the G3 reception cable equalizer in U650 [Rag G3 RX Ear]. (Initial setting: 0dBm) |           |

U01094/E01094

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | DCS/NSS signal send retrial time is exceeded at phase B during transmission. | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)                                   | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)  | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01095/E01095

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | Command send retry time is exceeded since the significant signal is not received after sending (PPS) Q signal at phase D during transmission. | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)  | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)   | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01096/E01096

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | DCN signal or invalid command is received at phase D during transmission. | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)                                | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)                                     | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01097/E01097

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | The preset number of command retransfers was exceeded after transmission of an RR signal or no response. | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)   | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)  | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01100/E01100

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending      | Function indicated by DCS signal is not consistent with the one of own machine. | Request the destination unit to resend the data.         |           |
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)   | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed]. |           |

U01101/E01101

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending      | Function indicated by NSS signal except communication type is not consistent with the one of own machine. | Request the destination unit to resend the data.         |           |
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)   | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed]. |           |

U01102/E01102

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending      | DTC (NSC) signal is received while own machine has no transmission data. | Request the destination unit to resend the data.         |           |
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)                                    | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed]. |           |

U01110/E01110

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause                                     | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending      | No response is received after sending DIS signal. | Request the destination unit to resend the data.         |           |
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)             | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed]. |           |

U01111/E01111

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending      | No response is received after sending DTC (NSC) signal. | Request the destination unit to resend the data.         |           |
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)                   | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed]. |           |

U01113/E01113

| Step | Check description     | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-----------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the settings | The modem is not detected since the received signal is attenuated with its frequency response. | Set the modem detection level at U650 [RX Mm Level]. (Initial setting: -43dBm)        |           |
| 2    | Checking the settings | The modem is not detected since the received signal is attenuated with its frequency response. | Set the G3 reception cable equalizer in U650 [Rag G3 RX Ear]. (Initial setting: 0dBm) |           |

U01125/E01125

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending      | No response after transmitting a CNS signal. (Between the units of our make) | Request the destination unit to resend the data.         |           |
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)  | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed]. |           |

U01129/E01129

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending      | No response after transmitting an SPA signal. (Short protocol) | Request the destination unit to resend the data.         |           |
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)                          | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed]. |           |

U01141/E01141

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause                                    | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending      | DCN signal is received after sending DTC signal. | Request the destination unit to resend the data.         |           |
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)            | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed]. |           |

U01143/E01143

| Step | Check description     | Assumed cause                                    | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-----------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the settings | DCN signal is received after sending FTT signal. | Set the G3 reception cable equalizer in U650 [Rag G3 RX Ear]. (Initial setting: 0dBm) |           |

U01155/E01155

| Step | Check description     | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending | DCN signal is received after sending SPA signal. (simplified protocol) | Request the destination unit to resend the data. |           |

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause                         | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|-----------|
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine) | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed]. |           |

U01160/E01160

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending      | Maximum transmission time per line is exceeded while receiving message. | Request the destination unit to resend the data.         |           |
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)                                   | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed]. |           |

U01162/E01162

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending      | Maximum transmission time per line is exceeded while receiving message. | Request the destination unit to resend the data.         |           |
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)                                   | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed]. |           |

U01191/E01191

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending      | Communication is stopped with error during image data receipt sequence at V.34. | Request the destination unit to resend the data.         |           |
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)   | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed]. |           |

U01193/E01193

| Step | Check description                  | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the settings              | No response, DCN signal or invalid command is received at phase C/D during reception. | Extend T2 time-out time in U641 [T2 TIME OUT]. (Change from the initial setting 69 to 150.)      |           |
| 2    | Checking the settings              | Line condition is poor.   | Set the corrective measures for echoes at the reception in U630 [RX Echo]. (Initial setting: 75) |           |
| 3    | Changing the transmit start timing | Line condition is poor.   | Change the reception starting speed to '9600bps' or less.  |           |

U01194/E01194

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause                                       | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending      | DCN signal is received at phase B during reception. | Request the destination unit to resend the data.         |           |
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)               | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed]. |           |

U01195/E01195

| Step | Check description                  | Assumed cause                                       | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the settings              | No message is received at phase C during reception. | Extend T2 time-out time in U641 [T2 TIME OUT]. (Change from the initial setting 69 to 150.)      |           |
| 2    | Checking the settings              | Line condition is poor.                             | Set the corrective measures for echoes at the reception in U630 [RX Echo]. (Initial setting: 75) |           |
| 3    | Changing the transmit start timing | Line condition is poor.                             | Change the reception starting speed to '9600bps' or less.  |           |

U01196/E01196

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                  | Error line control overflow and decoding error occurred in messages during reception. | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)   | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed]. |           |

U01400/E01400

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the telephone number | '#' exists in advance of 'x' on the phone numbers of the destination unit, so it is processed as the invalid dial line. | Delete '#' from the registered numbers if '#' exists in advance of 'x' on the phone numbers of the destination unit. |           |

U01500/E01500

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the transmit start speed | The communication line is the poor condition.                            | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | The communication line condition is poor and an error frequently occurs. | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01600/E01600

| Step | Check description                  | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Request to the destination unit    | The communication line is the poor condition.                            | Request the destination unit to resend the data after reducing the transmit start speed.  |           |
| 2    | Changing the transmit start timing | The communication line condition is poor and an error frequently occurs. | Request the destination unit to resend the data after lowering the reception start speed. |           |

U01700/E01700

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | A communication error occurred in phase 2 (line probing). | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)                | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)                     | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01720/E01720

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | The communication error appears at phase 4 (replacing the modem parameter). | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)                                  | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)                                       | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01721/E01721

| Step | Check description                 | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                         | The communication was interrupted because there is no communication speed commonly used with the destination unit. | Resend.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the transmit start speed | Line condition is poor. (Destination unit)   | Execute U630 [TX Speed] to reduce the transmit start speed. Then, resend the data. |           |
| 3    | Changing the initial value        | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)  | Change the default value of the transmit start speed by executing U630 [TX Speed]. |           |

U01800/E01800

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending      | A communication error occurred in phase 2 (line probing). | Request the destination unit to resend the data after reducing the transmit start speed. |           |
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)                     | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed].                                 |           |

U01810/E01810

| Step | Check description     | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending | A communication error occurred in phase 3 (primary channel equivalent device training). | Request the destination unit to resend the data after reducing the transmit start speed. |           |



| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause                         | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|--|-----------|
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine) | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed]. |           |

U01820/E01820

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending      | A communication error occurred in phase 3 (primary channel equivalent device training). | Request the destination unit to resend the data after reducing the transmit start speed. |           |
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)   | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed].                                 |           |

U01821/E01821

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request for resending      | The communication was interrupted because there is no communication speed commonly used with the destination unit. | Request the destination unit to resend the data after reducing the transmit start speed. |           |
| 2    | Changing the initial value | Line condition is poor. (Own machine)  | Change the reception speed by executing U630 [RX Speed].                                 |           |

U03000/E03000

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request to the destination unit | No document was present in the destination unit when polling reception started. | Request the destination unit to set the originals. |           |

U03200/E03200

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Request to the destination unit | There is no data in the sub address box in the main unit that are specified from the destination unit. | Request the destination unit to store the original data in the sub address box. |           |

U03300/E03300

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request to the destination unit | The permitted ID and FAX number registered in the destination unit are incorrect. | Request the destination unit to register the own ID and the own FAX number as the permitted ID and the permitted FAX number. |           |

U03400/E03400

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the destination unit | In polling reception, the operation was interrupted because the password input in the destination unit and the own FAX number in the receiver did not match. | Revise it so that the password input at the destination machine is consistent with the receiver's own FAX ID to receive again. |           |

U03500/E03500

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the destination unit | In polling reception, the operation was interrupted because the password input in the destination unit and the own FAX number in the receiver did not match. | Revise it so that the password input at the destination machine is consistent with the receiver's own FAX ID to receive again. |           |

U03600/E03600

| Step | Check description | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending         | Sub address bulletin board reception was interrupted because the specified sub address password did not match. | Resend the data after inputting the sub address password registered in the destination unit. |           |

U03700/E03700

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the destination unit | Destination machine has no sub address bulletin board communication function or no originals are stored in any original delivery box (sub address box). | Check if the destination unit has a sub address bulletin board communication function. If available, request the destination unit to save the original data in the sub address box. |           |

U04000/E04000

| Step | Check description  | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Request to the destination unit                            | The original was transmitted to the sub address box, but the specified box was not registered in the destination unit that is our own model.                        | Register the sub address password in the destination unit. |           |
| 2    | Checking the sub address of the FAX transmission condition | The original was transmitted to the sub address box in the destination unit that is our own model, but the sub address of the transmission condition did not match. | Match the sub address in the FAX forward condition.        |           |

U04100/E04100

| Step | Check description | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending         | The destination unit had no sub address reception capability while the sub address transmission was executed. | Transmit the data according to the reception function in the destination unit. |           |

U04200/E04200

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Request to the destination unit | In encrypted transmission, the specified encryption box was not registered in the destination unit. | Request the destination unit to register the encrypted box. |           |

U04300/E04300

| Step | Check description | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resending         | The encryption transmission was carried out, but there is no encryption function at the other machine. | Transmit the data according to the reception function in the destination unit. |           |

U04400/E04400

| Step | Check description           | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the encryption key | Encrypted transmission was interrupted because encryption keys did not agree. | Request resending after checking the encryption key registered in the receiving and sending machines. |           |

U04500/E04500

| Step | Check description           | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the encryption key | Encrypted transmission was interrupted because encryption keys did not agree. | Request resending after checking the encryption key registered in the receiving and sending machines. |           |

U05100/E05100

| Step | Check description             | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the permitted number | The transmission was interrupted because the permitted ID and FAX number did not match in the restricted transmission (password check transmission). | Resend after confirming the authorization number that has been registered. |           |

U05200/E05200

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the settings           | The number does not match a permitted FAX number / ID, or it matches a rejected FAX number. | Change the restricted reception settings.                          |           |
| 2    | Request to the destination unit | The own telephone number is not informed from the destination unit.                         | Request the destination unit to register the own telephone number. |           |

U05300/E05300

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Request to the destination unit | The number does not match a permitted FAX number / ID, or it matches a rejected FAX number. | Ask the destination unit to change the restricted reception settings. |           |
| 2    | Request to the destination unit | The main unit did not acknowledge its phone number in question .                            | Request the destination unit to register the own telephone number.    |           |

U14000/E14000

| Step | Check description   | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the memory | The reception to the FAX box was interrupted due to memory overflow in its unit. | Print documents stored in memory and make room in memory. Or stop receiving in the FAX box. |           |

U14100/E14100

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Request to the destination unit | Transmission was interrupted due to the memory overflow in the destination unit when transmitting into the sub address box. | Request the destination unit to release memory. |           |

U19000/E19000

| Step | Check description   | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the memory | The reception was interrupted due to the memory overflow in the main unit during memory reception. | Release memory by printing originals stored in memory. |           |

U19100/E19100

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                | The transmission was interrupted because there is an error in the data during transmission. | Resend.   |           |
| 2    | Resetting the main power | The transmission was interrupted because there is an error in the data during transmission. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5s passes, reinstall the FAX PWB, and then turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |

U19300/E19300

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resending                | The transmission was interrupted because there is an error in the data during transmission. | Resend.   |           |
| 2    | Resetting the main power | The transmission was interrupted because there is an error in the data during transmission. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5s passes, reinstall the FAX PWB, and then turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |
| 3    | Firmware upgrade         | The firmware is not the latest version.   | Upgrade the fax firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 4    | Initializing the fax     | The FAX initial value was changed.  | Execute U600 to initialize the FAX.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the FAX PWB    | The FAX PWB is faulty.  | Replace the FAX PWB.  |           |

## 7 - 5 Send Related Errors

### (1) Send

| No. | Contents   |
|-----|--|
| (1) | The sending error 2101 does not disappear even if changing the host name or the security software settings |
| (2) | Sending error 2203 does not disappear  |
| (3) | The scanning data from the contact glass is automatically sent   |

#### Content of Send Related Errors

(1-1)The sending error 2101 does not disappear even if changing the host name or the security software settings

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause                           | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The incorrect port number has been set. | Change the SMB port number from '139' to '445'. |           |

(1-2)Sending error 2203 does not disappear

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The Windows Fire Wall is not properly set. (Windows Vista / 7 / 8) | Open [Control panel] > [System and Security] > Windows firewall] and select [Permit the program or function through Windows firewall]. Check [Share files and printers] and the check box on the right as well. |           |

(1-3)The scanning data from the contact glass is automatically sent

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause                         | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------|---------------------------------------|---|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | [Continuous Scan] is not set to [On]. | Press [Send] key or [FAX] key, and select [On] in [Advanced setup] > [Continuous scan].   |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting | [Continuous Scan] is not set to [On]. | Select [On] at [System Menu/Counter] key > [Common Settings] > [Function Defaults] > [Continuous Scan (Send/Store) or [Continuous Scan (FAX)] . |           |

## (2) Sending Errors (Error Codes)

### (2-1) Scan to E-mail Error Codes

| Error code | Contents   |
|------------|--|
| 1101       | SMTP/POP3 server does not exist on the network.                        |
| 1102       | Login to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed.                              |
| 1104       | Destination address domain is restricted and transmission is denied.   |
| 1105       | SMTP protocol is invalid.  |
| 1106       | The sender address is not set.   |
| 2101       | Connection to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed.                         |
| 2102       | Connection to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed. (Connection timeout)    |
| 2103       | The server cannot establish communication.                             |
| 2201       | Communication to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed.                      |
| 2202       | Communication to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed. (Connection timeout) |
| 2204       | The size of scanning exceeded its limit.                               |
| 3101       | SMTP/POP3 server responded with an error.                              |
| 3201       | No SMTP authentication is found.                                       |
| 34803      | Failed to establish the SSL session.                                   |

### Content of Scan to E-mail Error Codes

#### Scan to E-mail error code : 1101

SMTP/POP3 server does not exist on the network.

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | SMTP / POP3 server name is incorrect.                                  | Correct the SMTP / POP3 server name at [Function Settings] > [E-mail] via the command center. |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting | The network settings are incorrect.                                    | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center.                          |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect. | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.                              |           |

#### Scan to E-mail error code : 1102

Login to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed.

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause                                | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The user name or the password is incorrect.  | Correct the SMTP / POP3 user name or password at [Function Settings] > [E-mail] via the command center. |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting | The SMTP/POP3 server settings are incorrect. | Correct the protocol in the Network Settings via the Command Center.                                    |           |

### Scan to E-mail error code : 1104

Destination address domain is restricted and transmission is denied.

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | Destination address domain is restricted and transmission is denied. | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |

### Scan to E-mail error code : 1105

SMTP protocol is invalid.

| Step | Check description     | Assumed cause             | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------|---------------------------|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the settings | SMTP protocol is invalid. | Correct the protocol in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |

### Scan to E-mail error code : 1106

The sender address is not set.

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause                  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|--------------------------------|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The sender address is not set. | Correct the protocol in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |

### Scan to E-mail error code : 2101

Connection to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting     | SMTP / POP3 server name is incorrect.                                  | Correct the SMTP / POP3 server name at [Function Settings] > [E-mail] via the command center. |           |
| 2    | Connecting the LAN cable | The LAN cable is not connected to the main unit.                       | Connect the LAN cable to the main unit.   |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting     | The port number is incorrect.  | Correct the SMTP/POP3 port number.  |           |
| 4    | Changing the setting     | The network settings are incorrect.                                    | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center.                          |           |
| 5    | Changing the setting     | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect. | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.                              |           |
| 6    | Changing the setting     | The SMTP/POP3 server settings are incorrect.                           | Correct the protocol in the Network Settings via the Command Center.                          |           |

### Scan to E-mail error code : 2102

Connection to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed. (Connection timeout)

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause                         | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------|---------------------------------------|---|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | SMTP / POP3 server name is incorrect. | Correct the SMTP / POP3 server name at [Function Settings] > [E-mail] via the command center. |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting | The port number is incorrect.         | Correct the SMTP/POP3 port number.  |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting | The network settings are incorrect.   | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center.                          |           |



| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 4    | Changing the setting | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect. | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.     |           |
| 5    | Changing the setting | The SMTP/POP3 server settings are incorrect.                           | Correct the protocol in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |

### Scan to E-mail error code : 2103

The server cannot establish communication.

| Step | Check description                  | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the SMTP/POP3 server name | SMTP / POP3 server name is incorrect.                                  | Correct the SMTP / POP3 server name at [Function Settings] > [E-mail] via the command center. |           |
| 2    | Checking the SMTP/POP3 port No.    | The port number is incorrect.  | Correct the SMTP/POP3 port number.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the settings              | The network settings are incorrect.                                    | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center.                          |           |
| 4    | Checking the settings              | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect. | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.                              |           |
| 5    | Checking the settings              | The SMTP/POP3 server settings are incorrect.                           | Correct the protocol in the Network Settings via the Command Center.                          |           |

### Scan to E-mail error code : 2201

Communication to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed.

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The network settings are incorrect.                                    | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect. | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.     |           |

### Scan to E-mail error code : 2202

Communication to the SMTP/POP3 server has failed. (Connection timeout)

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The network settings are incorrect.                                    | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect. | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.     |           |

### Scan to E-mail error code : 2204

The size of scanning exceeded its limit.

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause                       | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The network settings are incorrect. | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |

Scan to E-mail error code : 3101

SMTP/POP3 server responded with an error.

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The network settings are incorrect.                                    | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect. | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.     |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting | The SMTP/POP3 server settings are incorrect.                           | Correct the protocol in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |

Scan to E-mail error code : 3201

No SMTP authentication is found.

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause                           | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The SMTP server settings are incorrect. | Set the correct SMTP Authentication Protocol at [Function Settings] > [E-mail] via the command center. |           |

Scan to E-mail error code : 4803

Failed to establish the SSL session.

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The self-signed certificate of the device is incorrect. | Correct the certificates in the Security Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting | The service certificate settings are incorrect.         | Correct the certificates in the Security Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting | The SMTP/POP3 settings are incorrect.                   | Correct the protocol in the Network Settings via the Command Center.      |           |

(2-2)Scan to FTP Error Codes

| Error code | Contents   |
|------------|--|
| 1101       | FTP server does not exist on the network.                          |
| 1102       | Login to the FTP server has failed.                                |
| 1105       | FTP protocol is not enabled.                                       |
| 1131       | Initializing TLS has failed.                                       |
| 1132       | TLS negotiation has failed.  |
| 2101       | Connection to the FTP server has failed.                           |
| 2102       | Connection to the FTP server has failed. (Timeout)                 |
| 2103       | The server cannot establish communication.                         |
| 2201       | Communication with the FTP server has failed.                      |
| 2202       | Communication with the FTP server has failed. (Timeout)            |
| 2203       | No response from the server during a specific period of time.      |
| 2231       | Communication with the FTP server has failed. (FTPS communication) |
| 3101       | FTP server responded with an error.                                |

Content of Scan to FTP Error Codes

Scan to FTP error code : 1101

FTP server does not exist on the network.

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Correcting the FTP host name | The FTP host name is incorrect.  | Correct the FTP host name via the Command Center.                    |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting         | The network settings are incorrect.                                    | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting         | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect. | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.     |           |

Scan to FTP error code : 1102

Login to the FTP server has failed.

| Step | Check description                        | Assumed cause                               | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Correcting the user name or the password | The user name or the password is incorrect. | Correct the user name and the password.                              |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting                     | FTP server is improper.                     | Correct the protocol in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |

Scan to FTP error code : 1105

FTP protocol is not enabled.

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause                | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|------------------------------|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | FTP protocol is not enabled. | Correct the protocol in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |

Scan to FTP error code : 1131

Initializing TLS has failed.

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause                                      | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The security settings of the device are incorrect. | Correct the settings in the Security Settings via the Command Center. |           |

Scan to FTP error code : 1132

TLS negotiation has failed.

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause                                      | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The security settings of the device are incorrect. | Correct the settings in the Security Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting | The FTP server settings are incorrect.             | Correct the protocol in the Network Settings via the Command Center.  |           |

Scan to FTP error code : 2101

Connection to the FTP server has failed.

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause                                    | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Correcting the FTP host name | The FTP host name is incorrect.                  | Correct the FTP host name via the Command Center.                    |           |
| 2    | Checking the LAN cable       | The LAN cable is not connected to the main unit. | Connect the LAN cable to the main unit.                              |           |
| 3    | Correcting the FTP port no.  | The port number is incorrect.                    | Correct the FTP port number.   |           |
| 4    | Changing the setting         | The network settings are incorrect.              | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 5    | Changing the setting         | The FTP server settings are incorrect.           | Correct the protocol in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |

Scan to FTP error code : 2102

Connection to the FTP server has failed. (Timeout)

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Correcting the FTP host name | The FTP host name is incorrect.  | Correct the FTP host name via the Command Center.                    |           |
| 2    | Correcting the FTP port no.  | The port number is incorrect.  | Correct the FTP port number.   |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting         | The network settings are incorrect.                                    | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 4    | Changing the setting         | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect. | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.     |           |
| 5    | Changing the setting         | The FTP server settings are incorrect.                                 | Correct the protocol in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |

Scan to FTP error code : 2103

The server cannot establish communication.

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause                   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|---|-----------|
| 1    | Correcting the FTP host name | The FTP host name is incorrect. | Correct the FTP host name via the Command Center. |           |

| Step | Check description           | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 2    | Correcting the FTP port no. | The port number is incorrect.  | Correct the FTP port number.   |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting        | The network settings are incorrect.                                    | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 4    | Changing the setting        | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect. | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.     |           |
| 5    | Changing the setting        | The FTP server settings are incorrect.                                 | Correct the protocol in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |

### Scan to FTP error code : 2201

Communication with the FTP server has failed.

| Step | Check description                      | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting                   | The network settings are incorrect.                                    | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting                   | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect. | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.     |           |
| 3    | Correcting the destination folder name | The destination folder name is incorrect.                              | Set the correct destination folder.                                  |           |
| 4    | Changing the setting                   | The FTP server settings are incorrect.                                 | Correct the protocol in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |

### Scan to FTP error code : 2202

Communication with the FTP server has failed. (Timeout)

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The network settings are incorrect.                                    | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect. | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.     |           |

### Scan to FTP error code : 2203

No response from the server during a specific period of time.

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The network settings are incorrect.                                    | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect. | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.     |           |

### Scan to FTP error code : 2231

Communication with the FTP server has failed. (FTPS communication)

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause                       | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|-------------------------------------|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The network settings are incorrect. | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 2    | Changing the setting | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect. | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to. |           |

Scan to FTP error code : 3101

FTP server responded with an error.

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The network settings are incorrect.                                    | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect. | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.     |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting | The FTP server settings are incorrect.                                 | Correct the protocol in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |

(2-3)Scan to SMB Error Codes

| Error code | Contents  |
|------------|---|
| 1101       | Destination host does not exist on the network.             |
| 1102       | Login to the host has failed.                               |
| 1103       | Destination host, folder, and/or file names are invalid.    |
| 1105       | SMB protocol is not enabled.                                |
| 2101       | Login to the host has failed.                               |
| 2201       | Writing scanned data has failed.                            |
| 2203       | No response from the host during a specific period of time. |

Content of Scan to SMB Error Codes

Scan to SMB error code : 1101

Destination host does not exist on the network.

| Step | Check description                    | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Correcting the destination host name | The destination host name is incorrect.                                | Correct the destination host name.                                   |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting                 | The network settings are incorrect.                                    | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting                 | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect. | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.     |           |

Scan to SMB error code : 1102

Login to the host has failed.

| Step | Check description                         | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Correcting the user name and the password | The user name or the password is incorrect.                          | Correct the user name and the password.                              |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting                      | The network settings are incorrect.                                  | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting                      | The sharing settings of the destination host / folder are incorrect. | Correct the sharing settings of the destination host / folder.       |           |

Scan to SMB error code : 1103

Destination host, folder, and/or file names are invalid.

| Step | Check description   | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the destination host name, destination folder name and the file name | The invalid character is included.                                  | Correct the destination host name, folder name or the file name if the invalid characters are included. |           |
| 2    | Correcting the destination folder name and the file name                      | The destination folder name or the file name is incorrect.          | Revise the destination folder and file name according to the naming rules.                              |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting of the destination host and folder.                      | The destination host or the destination folder is not set properly. | Revise the destination host and destination folder properly.  |           |

### Scan to SMB error code : 1105

SMB protocol is not enabled.

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause                                   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | The settings of the SMP protocol are incorrect. | Correct the protocol in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |

### Scan to SMB error code : 2101

Login to the host has failed.

| Step | Check description                    | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|--------------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Correcting the destination host name | The destination host name is incorrect.  | Correct the destination host name.                                   |           |
| 2    | Checking the LAN cable               | The LAN cable is not connected to the main unit in the transmission (Scan to SMB). | Connect the LAN cable to the main unit.                              |           |
| 3    | Correcting the SMB port no.          | The port number is incorrect.  | Correct the SMB port number.   |           |
| 4    | Changing the setting                 | The network settings are incorrect.  | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 5    | Changing the setting                 | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect.             | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.     |           |

### Scan to SMB error code : 2201

Writing scanned data has failed.

| Step | Check description                | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Correcting the sending file name | The sending file name is incorrect.                                    | Correct the scanning file name.                                      |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting             | The network settings are incorrect.                                    | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 3    | Changing the setting             | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect. | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.     |           |

### Scan to SMB error code : 2203

No response from the host during a specific period of time.

| Step | Check description      | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting   | The network settings are incorrect.  | Correct the settings in the Network Settings via the Command Center. |           |
| 2    | Changing the setting   | The network settings that the main unit is connected to are incorrect.             | Correct the network settings that the main unit is connected to.     |           |
| 3    | Checking the LAN cable | The LAN cable is not connected to the main unit in the transmission (Scan to SMB). | Connect the LAN cable to the main unit.                              |           |



## 7 - 6 Error Messages

| No. | Contents  |
|-----|---|
| (1) | 'Check the document processor' is displayed   |
| (2) | 'Error occurred in cassette X' is displayed even after removing/inserting the cassette and checking/removing paper remaining in the main unit (Cassette 1, 2) |
| (3) | 'Error occurred in cassette X' is displayed even after removing/inserting the cassette and checking/removing paper remaining in the main unit (Cassette 3, 4) |
| (4) | 'Error occurred in cassette X' is displayed even after removing/inserting the cassette and checking/removing paper remaining in the main unit (Cassette 3, 4) |
| (5) | The cover open message appears after closing the front cover  |
| (6) | The cover open message remains after closing the front cover  |
| (7) | The add paper message appears while the paper is loaded on the MP tray  |
| (8) | When DP is used, [Remove the original from document processor] is wrongly displayed   |

### Content of Error Messages

#### (1) 'Check the document processor' is displayed

Closing of the document processor cannot be detected.

| Step | Check description                      | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection                | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DP opening/closing sensor - DP PWB</li> <li>• DP PWB - Engine PWB</li> </ul> |           |
| 2    | Checking the DP opening/closing switch | The DP opening/closing switch does not operate properly.        | Reattach the DP opening/closing switch and execute U244 [Open]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 3    | Replacing the DP PWB                   | The DP PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DP PWB.   |           |
| 4    | Firmware upgrade                       | The firmware is faulty.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB               | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

(2) 'Error occurred in cassette X' is displayed even after removing/inserting the cassette and checking/removing paper remaining in the main unit (Cassette 1, 2)

| Step | Check description                        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Reinstalling the primary paper feed unit | The primary paper feed unit is not inserted completely.         | Pull the primary paper feed unit out, then reinsert it completely.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the lift plate                  | The lift plate does not rise up.                                | Reattach the lift plate. If it is deformed, replace it.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                  | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Lift motor - Engine PWB |           |
| 4    | Replacing the lift motor                 | The lift motor is faulty.                                       | In case if it does not improve even U906 (Reset disable function) is executed, replace the lift motor 1 and 2.  |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade                         | The firmware is faulty.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB                 | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

(3) 'Error occurred in cassette X' is displayed even after removing/inserting the cassette and checking/removing paper remaining in the main unit (Cassette 3, 4)

Target: Paper feeder (500-sheet x 2)

| Step | Check description                           | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Reinstalling the PF primary paper feed unit | The PF primary paper feed unit is not inserted completely.                          | Pull out the PF primary feed unit and reinsert it completely.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the PF lift plate                  | The PF lift plate does not rise up.   | Reattach the PF lift plate. If it is deformed, replace it.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the connection                     | The connector is not connected properly or, the wire or drawer connector is faulty. | Check the connection, and correct and clean the terminal and reinsert the connector all the way.<br>If there is no continuity in the wire or drawer connector is faulty, replace it.<br>• PF lift motor 1, 2 - PF PWB<br>• PF PWB - Drawer connector - Engine PWB |           |
| 4    | Replacing the PF lift motor                 | The PF lift motor is faulty.  | In case if it does not improve even U906 (Reset disable function) is executed, replace the PF lift motor 1 and 2.   |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade                            | The firmware is faulty.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the PF PWB                        | The PF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PF PWB.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the engine PWB                    | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

(4) 'Error occurred in cassette X' is displayed even after removing/inserting the cassette and checking/removing paper remaining in the main unit (Cassette 3, 4)

Target: Large capacity paper feeder (1,500-sheet x 2)

| Step | Check description  | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | (Cassette 3) Reinstalling the PF primary paper feed unit | The PF primary paper feed unit is not inserted properly.                            | Reinstall the PF primary paper feed unit.   |           |
| 2    | (Cassette 4) Reinstalling the PF conveying unit          | The PF conveying unit is not inserted properly.                                     | Reinstall the PF conveying unit.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the PF lift plate                               | The PF lift plate does not rise up.   | Reattach the PF lift plate. If it is deformed, replace it.  |           |
| 4    | Checking the connection                                  | The connector is not connected properly or, the wire or drawer connector is faulty. | Check the connection, and correct and clean the terminal and reinsert the connector all the way.<br><br>If there is no continuity in the wire or drawer connector is faulty, replace it.<br>• PF lift motor 1, 2 - PF PWB<br>• PF PWB - Drawer connector - Engine PWB |           |
| 5    | Replacing the PF lift motor                              | The PF lift motor is faulty.  | In case if it does not improve even U906 (Reset disable function) is executed, replace the PF lift motor 1 and 2.   |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade   | The firmware is faulty.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the PF PWB                                     | The PF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PF PWB.   |           |
| 7    | Replacing the engine PWB                                 | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

(5) The cover open message appears after closing the front cover

| Step | Check description                | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Reattaching the front cover      | The front cover does not turn the front cover sensor on due to the fitting failure. | Reattach the front cover.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection          | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.                     | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Front cover switch - Engine PWB |           |
| 3    | Replacing the front cover switch | The front cover switch is faulty.   | Replace the front cover switch.   |           |
| 4    | Firmware upgrade                 | The firmware is faulty.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB         | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

(6) The cover open message remains after closing the front cover

| Step | Check description                       | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the right cover switch         | The right cover is not fitted and the right cover switch does not turn on. | Check the right cover if the right cover switch does not turn on when closing the right cover but turns on by pressing it manually. If the right cover is not fitted, reattach it.                        |           |
| 2    | (Right cover 1) Checking the connection | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.            | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Right cover switch 1 - Engine PWB                                     |           |
| 3    | (Right cover 2) Checking the connection | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.            | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Right cover switch 2 - Relay connector - Relay connector - Engine PWB |           |
| 4    | Replacing the right cover switch        | The right cover switch is faulty.  | Replace the right cover switch.   |           |
| 5    | Firmware upgrade                        | The firmware is faulty.  | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 6    | Replacing the engine PWB                | The engine PWB is faulty.  | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

(7) The add paper message appears while the paper is loaded on the MP tray

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection      | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• MP paper sensor - Relay connector - Engine PWB |           |
| 2    | Replacing the actuator       | The actuator is deformed.                                       | Replace the actuator for the MP paper sensor.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the MP paper sensor | The MP paper sensor is not attached properly, or it is faulty.  | Reattach the MP paper sensor. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.  |           |
| 4    | Firmware upgrade             | The firmware is faulty.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing the engine PWB     | The engine PWB is faulty.                                       | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].  |           |

(8) When DP is used, [Remove the original from document processor] is wrongly displayed

Target: [Document processor](#)

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the connection         | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.   | Clean the terminal of the following wire connectors and reconnect the connectors. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• DP original sensor - DP PWB |           |
| 2    | Checking the actuator           | The actuator is deformed.   | Replace the actuator for the DP original sensor.  |           |
| 3    | Checking the DP original sensor | The DP original sensor is not attached properly, or it is faulty. | Reattach the DP original sensor and execute U244 [Set]. If it does not operate correctly, replace it.   |           |
| 4    | Replacing the DP PWB            | The DP PWB is faulty.   | Replace the DP PWB.   |           |

## 7 - 7 Abnormal Noise

| No.  | Contents   | Condition  |
|------|--|--|
| (1)  | Abnormal noise (Basic support)                   |  |
| (2)  | Abnormal sounds from the paper conveying section | Frictional wear, smudges / foreign objects adhesion on the conveying rollers, pulleys and the gears  |
| (3)  | Abnormal sound from the developer section        | Caused by the developer unit.  |
| (4)  | Abnormal sound from the document processor       | The frictional wear, affixing the smudges or the foreign objects, improperly attaching of the part   |
| (5)  | Abnormal sound from the exit section             | Smudges / foreign objects adhesion in the exit section   |
| (6)  | Fan rotating sounds are noisy                    | Fan motor is dirty or faulty.  |
| (7)  | Abnormal sound from the paper feed section       | Wear, dirtiness, foreign material adhesion or attachment failure at the paper feed section           |
| (8)  | Abnormal sound from the MP feed section          | Wear, dirtiness, foreign objects adhesion or attachment failure at the MP feed section               |
| (9)  | Abnormal sound from the fuser exit section       | The fuser exit roller bushing and pulley are dirty and foreign objects adhere to them                |
| (10) | Abnormal sound from the fuser section            | Smudges / foreign objects adhesion or the interference between the parts in the fuser section        |
| (11) | Abnormal sound from inside the machine           | Toner container drive failure, toner supply shutter opening/closing failure or toner aggregation     |
| (12) | Abnormal sound from inside the machine           | Smudges / foreign objects adhesion or the toner condensation in the developer section                |
| (13) | Abnormal sound from inside the machine           | Frictional wear, smudges / foreign objects adhesion, or the waste toner clogging in the drum section |
| (14) | Abnormal sound from rear side of the main unit   |  |

### Content of Abnormal Noise

#### (1) Abnormal noise (Basic support)

| Step | Check description                     | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Applying the grease                   | The grease on each gear or bushing is not enough.                 | Check the rotation of the roller, the pulley or the gear, if they do not rotate smoothly, apply the grease on the gears or the bearings.<br>(EM-50LP, Part number: 7BG010009H) |           |
| 2    | Reattaching the gears or the bearings | The parts such as each gear or bushing are not properly attached. | Reattach the gear or the bearings.   |           |

## (2) Abnormal sounds from the paper conveying section

Frictional wear, smudges / foreign objects adhesion on the conveying rollers, pulleys and the gears

| Step | Check description                | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Cleaning and applying the grease | The bushing or the gear is dirty or foreign objects are on them.  | Clean the bearings and the gears of the conveying related rollers, and apply the grease (EM-50LP, Part number: 7BG010009H). |           |
| 2    | Cleaning and applying the grease | The inside of the pulley is worn down.  | Clean the drive shaft of the conveying related pulley and apply the Hanarl. (302LV94550)                                    |           |
| 3    | Cleaning and applying the grease | The gear tooth are dirty or foreign objects are on them.  | Clean the drive gears of the conveying related rollers, and apply the grease (EM-50LP, Part number: 7BG010009H).            |           |
| 4    | Checking the pressure spring     | Pressure of the conveying related roller and pulley are weak, and the bearing vibrates as the roller and pulley rotate. | Reattach the pressure springs of the conveying related rollers or the pulleys, or replace them.                             |           |
| 5    | Replacing the drive unit         | The parts in the drive unit are faulty.   | Replace the drive unit.   |           |

## (3) Abnormal sound from the developer section

Caused by the developer unit.

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Executing U030               | (Specify the source of abnormal noise is the developer unit.) | Confirm the abnormal noise arises from the developer unit by executing U030 [DLP]. Then, go to the next step.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the developer unit  | The developer unit drive is faulty.                           | Check if the developer is not leaking from the developer unit, there is no damaged location, and whether the roller rotates manually. Repair if necessary. |           |
| 3    | Replacing the developer unit | The developer unit is faulty.                                 | Replace the developer unit.  |           |

## (4) Abnormal sound from the document processor

The frictional wear, affixing the smudges or the foreign objects, improperly attaching of the part

| Step | Check description                | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Cleaning and applying the grease | The bushing or the gear is dirty or foreign objects are on them. | Clean the bushing and shaft of the DP conveying roller and apply grease (EM-50LP••• part no.: 7BG010009H)                     |           |
| 2    | Replacing the bushing            | The bushing is worn down.  | Replace the bearing of the DP conveying roller.   |           |
| 3    | Cleaning and applying the grease | The drive gear is dirty or foreign objects are on it.            | Clean the gears which transmit the drive to the DP conveying roller, and apply the grease (EM-50LP, Part number: 7BG010009H). |           |
| 4    | Reattaching the motor            | The motor does not engage with the drive gear.                   | Reattach the DP conveying related motors.   |           |

(5) Abnormal sound from the exit section

Smudges / foreign objects adhesion in the exit section

| Step | Check description                | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Cleaning and applying the grease | The bushing or the gear is dirty or foreign objects are on them. | Clean the bushings and gears of the conveying rollers and apply the Hanarl (EM-50LP, Part number: 7BG010009H). |           |
| 2    | Cleaning and applying the grease | The inside of the pulley is worn down.                           | Clean the drive shaft of the conveying pulleys and apply the Hanarl. (302LV94550)                              |           |
| 3    | Cleaning and applying the grease | The bearings are dirty or the foreign objects adhere.            | Clean the feed-shift guide shaft. If dirt or foreign objects cannot be removed, replace it.                    |           |
| 4    | Checking the exit motor          | The exit motor is faulty.  | Execute U030 [Exit]. If the abnormal noise arises, replace the exit motor.                                     |           |

(6) Fan rotating sounds are noisy

Fan motor is dirty or faulty.

| Step | Check description       | Assumed cause                      | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-------------------------|------------------------------------|--|-----------|
| 1    | Cleaning the fan motor  | The fan of the fan motor is dirty. | Execute U037 and specify the fan motor which has a high rotation sound, and clean the fan. |           |
| 2    | Replacing the fan motor | The fan motor is faulty.           | Reattach the fan motor and reconnect the connector. If not repaired, replace it.           |           |

(7) Abnormal sound from the paper feed section

Wear, dirtiness, foreign material adhesion or attachment failure at the paper feed section

| Step | Check description                | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the gear and the clutch | The parts such as the gear or the clutch are not properly attached. | Reattach the gear or the clutch at the paper feed drive section if they are not properly attached.                   |           |
| 2    | Cleaning and applying the grease | The gear or the bushing is dirty or foreign objects are on them.    | Clean the gears and the bearings of the feed drive section, and apply the grease. (EM-50LP, Part number: 7BG010009H) |           |
| 3    | Cleaning and applying the grease | The shaft or the bushing is dirty or foreign objects are on them.   | Clean the shaft and the bearings of the feed roller, and apply the grease. (EM-50LP, Part number: 7BG010009H)        |           |
| 4    | Checking the paper feed roller   | The paper feed roller surface is dirty or worn down.                | Clean the paper feed roller, or replace it if necessary.   |           |

(8) Abnormal sound from the MP feed section

Wear, dirtiness, foreign objects adhesion or attachment failure at the MP feed section

| Step | Check description                | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the gear and the clutch | The parts such as the gear or the clutch are not properly attached. | When the gears or the clutch in the MP paper feed drive section are not properly attached, reattach them.        |           |
| 2    | Cleaning and applying the grease | The shaft or the bushing is dirty or foreign objects are on them.   | Clean the shaft and the bearings of the MP feed roller, and apply the grease. (EM-50LP, Part number: 7BG010009H) |           |
| 3    | Checking the MP separation pad   | The surface of the MP separation pad is dirty or worn down.         | Clean the MP separation pad. Then, replace it if necessary.  |           |

| Step | Check description          | Assumed cause                               | Measures                    | Reference |
|------|----------------------------|---|-----------------------------|-----------|
| 4    | Checking the MP lift plate | The MP lift plate is not attached properly. | Reattach the MP lift plate. |           |

(9) Abnormal sound from the fuser exit section

The fuser exit roller bushing and pulley are dirty and foreign objects adhere to them

| Step | Check description                | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Cleaning and applying the grease | The fuser exit roller, bushing or stop ring is dirty, or foreign objects adhere to it. | Clean the fuser exit roller, the bushing, stop ring, etc., and apply heat-resistant grease. |           |

(10) Abnormal sound from the fuser section

Smudges / foreign objects adhesion or the interference between the parts in the fuser section

| Step | Check description                | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|----------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Cleaning and applying the grease | The fuser exit roller, bushing or stop ring is dirty, or foreign objects adhere to it. | Clean the fuser exit roller, bushing, stop ring, pulley, etc. and apply grease (EM-50LP, Part number: 7BG010009H) |           |
| 2    | Cleaning and applying the grease | The gear is dirty or foreign objects are on it.  | Clean the fuser drive gear and apply the grease. (EM-50LP, Part number: 7BG010009H)                               |           |
| 3    | Replacing the fuser unit         | The fuser unit is faulty.  | Replace the fuser unit.   |           |

(11) Abnormal sound from inside the machine

Toner container drive failure, toner supply shutter opening/closing failure or toner aggregation

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause  | Measures  | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|--|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the toner container | The torque increases due to the toner condensation.  | Shake the toner container enough and reinstall it. Or, replace it.                          |           |
| 2    | Cleaning the drive parts     | The shaft and bushing of the developer drive motor is dirty or foreign objects adhere there. | If the developer motor drive gears cannot rotate smoothly, clean the shaft and the bushing. |           |

(12) Abnormal sound from inside the machine

Smudges / foreign objects adhesion or the toner condensation in the developer section

| Step | Check description           | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|-----------------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the developer unit | The shaft or the bushing of the developer roller is dirty or foreign objects are on them. | Check if the developer roller rotates. If not rotating smoothly, clean the shaft or the bushing of the developer roller. |           |
| 2    | Checking the developer unit | The torque inside the developer unit increased due to the toner condensation, etc.        | Clean the developer unit. Then, replace it if the issue is not resolved.   |           |



(13) Abnormal sound from inside the machine

Frictional wear, smudges / foreign objects adhesion, or the waste toner clogging in the drum section

| Step | Check description                             | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Executing Drum refresh                        | Toner is not enough on the drum.  | Execute the drum refresh to supply the toner to the cleaning unit.   |           |
| 2    | Checking the drum unit and the developer unit | The drum does not rotate smoothly.  | Check if the drum can rotate. If it does not rotate smoothly, replace it. If it locks up, replace the drum unit. |           |
| 3    | Cleaning and applying the grease              | Foreign objects are on the tooth of the drum drive gear, or the grease is not enough. | Clean the tooth surface of the drum drive gear and apply the grease. (EM-50LP, Part number: 7BG010009H)          |           |
| 4    | Replacing the drum unit                       | The torque inside the drum unit increased due to the waste toner clogging, etc.       | Replace the drum unit.   |           |

(14) Abnormal sound from rear side of the main unit

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause  | Measures                                 | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Reattaching the motor    | The motor drive inside drive unit 1 is faulty.                   | Reattach the motors inside drive unit 1. |           |
| 2    | Reattaching drive unit 1 | Drive unit 1 gears and surrounding gears do not engage properly. | Reattach drive unit 1.                   |           |

## 7 - 8 Malfunction

| No. | Contents  | Condition  |
|-----|---|--|
| (1) | The size of paper set in the cassette is misdetected or not displayed |  |
| (2) | The main unit malfunctions even if turning on the power switch        |  |
| (3) | No display in the operation panel                                     | (Image on the operation panel is faulty or becomes pure white) |
| (4) | The operation panel remains displaying 'WELCOME' and does not change  | Main PWB cannot communicate with operation panel PWB 1.        |
| (5) | The login fails with other than the ID card                           |  |

### Content of Malfunction

(1) The size of paper set in the cassette is misdetected or not displayed

Target: Main unit, paper feeder (500-sheetx2), large capacity paper feeder (1,500-sheet x 2)

| Step | Check description                                    | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Checking the paper length switch and fan-shape arm   | The paper length switch or fan-shape arm does not operate properly.                 | Reattach the paper length switch or fan-shape arm.  |           |
| 2    | (Cassette 1, 2) Checking the connection              | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.                     | Clean the wire connector terminal and reconnect it. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Paper length switch - Engine PWB<br>• Paper width switch - Engine PWB   |           |
| 3    | (Cassette 3, 4) Checking the connection              | The connector is not connected properly or, the wire or drawer connector is faulty. | Check the connection, and correct and clean the terminal and reinsert the connector all the way.<br>If there is no continuity in the wire or drawer connector is faulty, replace it.<br>• PF paper length switch - PF PWB<br>• PF paper width switch - PF PWB<br>• PF PWB - Drawer connector - Engine PWB |           |
| 4    | (Cassette 1, 2) Replacing the paper length switch    | The paper length switch is faulty.  | Replace the paper length switch.  |           |
| 5    | (Cassette 1, 2) Replacing the paper width switch     | The paper width switch is faulty.   | Replace the paper width switch.   |           |
| 6    | (Cassette 3, 4) Replacing the PF paper length switch | The PF paper length switch is faulty.   | Replace the PF paper length switch.   |           |
| 7    | (Cassette 3, 4) Replacing the PF paper width switch  | The PF paper width switch is faulty.  | Replace the PF paper width switch.  |           |
| 8    | Firmware upgrade                                     | The firmware is not latest version.   | Upgrade the firmware to the latest version.   |           |
| 9    | (Cassette 3, 4) Replacing the PF PWB                 | The PF PWB is faulty.   | Replace the PF PWB.   |           |
| 10   | Replacing the engine PWB                             | The engine PWB is faulty.   | Replace the engine PWB and then execute U411 [Table(ChartA)].   |           |

(2) The main unit malfunctions even if turning on the power switch

| Step | Check description            | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Measuring the input voltage  | The power cord has no continuity.  | Plug the power cord into another wall outlet.  |           |
| 2    | Checking the power cord      | The power plug of the power cord is faulty.  | If the power plug is deformed or faulty, replace the power cord.   |           |
| 3    | Checking the power cord      | The power cord is faulty.  | If there is no continuity of the power cord, replace the power cord.   |           |
| 4    | Checking the power switch    | The power switch is faulty.  | Check the continuity between the contacts of the power switch. Replace the power switch if there is no continuity.   |           |
| 5    | Checking the low voltage PWB | The connector is not connected properly. The wire or the PWB is faulty.                    | Clean the terminal of the connectors on the low voltage PWB, then reconnect the wire connector. If the wire is faulty, repair or replace it. If not repaired, replace the low voltage PWB.   |           |
| 6    | Checking the main PWB        | The connector or FFC terminal is not connected properly. Or, the wire, FFC, PWB is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the connectors on the main PWB, reconnect the connector of the wire, and reconnect the FFC terminal. If the wire or the FFC is faulty, repair or replace them. If not resolved, replace the main PWB.                                    |           |
| 7    | Checking the engine PWB      | The connector or FFC terminal is not connected properly. Or, the wire, FFC, PWB is faulty. | Clean the terminal of the connectors on the engine PWB, reconnect the connector of the wire, and reconnect the FFC terminal. If the wire or the FFC is faulty, repair or replace it. If not resolved, replace the engine PWB and execute U411 [Table(ChartA)]. |           |

(3) No display in the operation panel

(Image on the operation panel is faulty or becomes pure white)

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power        | The main firmware does not start correctly.                                    | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch.                                      |           |
| 2    | Checking the connection         | The connector is not connected properly, or the wire is faulty.                | Clean the terminals of the wire and SATA cable connector and reinsert them. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Main PWB - Operation panel PWB 1 |           |
| 3    | Replacing the main PWB          | The main PWB is faulty.  | Replace the main PWB.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing operation panel PWB 1 | Operation panel PWB 1 is faulty.   | Replace operation panel PWB 1.   |           |
| 5    | Replacing the low voltage PWB   | Low voltage power PWB is faulty and the power is not supplied to the main PWB. | Replace the low voltage PWB.   |           |

(4) The operation panel remains displaying 'WELCOME' and does not change

Main PWB cannot communicate with operation panel PWB 1.

| Step | Check description        | Assumed cause   | Measures  | Reference |
|------|--------------------------|---|---|-----------|
| 1    | Resetting the main power | The communication between the main PWB and the operation panel PWB 1 is faulty. | Turn off the power switch and the main power switch. After 5 seconds, turn on the main power switch and the power switch. |           |

| Step | Check description               | Assumed cause  | Measures   | Reference |
|------|---------------------------------|--|--|-----------|
| 2    | Checking the connection         | The connector is not connected properly. Or, the wire or the SATA cable is faulty. | Clean the terminals of the wire and SATA cable connector and reinsert them. If there is no continuity, replace the wire.<br>• Main PWB - Operation panel PWB 1 |           |
| 3    | Executing U021                  | The backup RAM data is faulty.   | Execute U021 to initialize the backup RAM data.  |           |
| 4    | Replacing the main PWB          | The main PWB is faulty.  | Replace the main PWB.  |           |
| 5    | Replacing operation panel PWB 1 | Operation panel PWB 1 is faulty.   | Replace operation panel PWB 1.   |           |

(5) The login fails with other than the ID card

| Step | Check description    | Assumed cause   | Measures   | Reference |
|------|----------------------|---|--|-----------|
| 1    | Changing the setting | [User/Job Account] is valid while the card authentication kit is not installed. | Set [Permit] at [User/Job Account] > [ID Card Settings] > [Key Login] via the System Menu. |           |

## 8PWBs

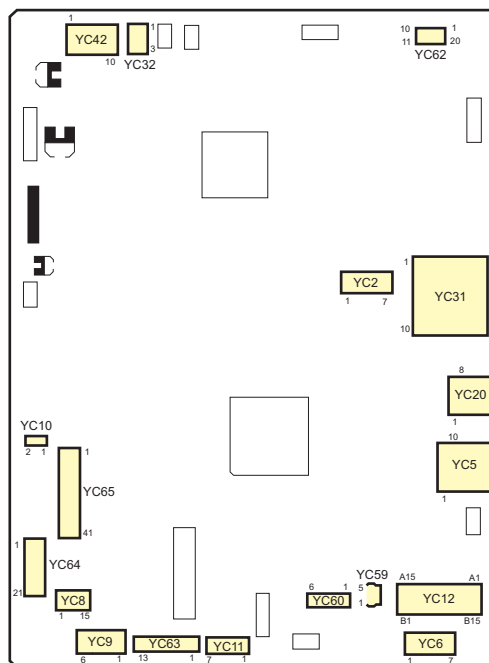
### 8 - 1 PWB description

#### (1) Main PWB

#### (1-1)PWB photograph



#### (1-2)Connector position



## (1-3)Connector lists

## Destination

YC2: HDD

YC5: Ethernet

YC6: Operation panel PWB 1

YC8: KUIOIF PWB

YC9: KUIOIF PWB

YC10: DP IF PWB

YC11: Engine PWB

YC12: Operation panel PWB 1

YC20: USB2.0 host, USB2.0 device

YC31: SD card slot

YC32: HDD

YC42: Low voltage power source PWB

YC59: USB PWB

YC60: USB PWB

YC62: WiFi module

YC63: Engine PWB

YC64: Engine PWB

YC65: Engine PWB

| Connector | Pin | Signal       | I/O | Voltage            | Description              |
|-----------|-----|--------------|-----|--------------------|--------------------------|
| YC2       | 1   | GND          | -   | -                  | Ground                   |
|           | 2   | SATATXDP_C2H | O   | -                  | HDD data signal          |
|           | 3   | SATATXDN_C2H | O   | -                  | HDD data signal          |
|           | 4   | GND          | -   | -                  | Ground                   |
|           | 5   | SATARXDN_H2C | I   | -                  | HDD data signal          |
|           | 6   | SATARXDP_H2C | I   | -                  | HDD data signal          |
|           | 7   | GND          | -   | -                  | Ground                   |
| YC5       | 1   | TD1+         | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Transmission data        |
|           | 2   | TD1-         | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Transmission data        |
|           | 3   | TD2+         | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Transmission data        |
|           | 4   | TD2-         | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Transmission data        |
|           | 5   | CT1          | O   | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output    |
|           | 6   | CT2          | O   | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output    |
|           | 7   | TD3+         | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Transmission data        |
|           | 8   | TD3-         | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Transmission data        |
|           | 9   | TD4+         | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Transmission data        |
|           | 10  | TD4-         | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Transmission data        |
|           | 11  | GRLED_A      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | LED emission signal      |
|           | 12  | GRLED_K      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | LED emission signal      |
|           | 13  | YWLED_A      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | LED emission signal      |
|           | 14  | YWLED_K      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | LED emission signal      |
| YC6       | 1   | GND          | -   | -                  | Ground                   |
|           | 2   | LCD_OFF      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Control signal           |
|           | 3   | LOCKN        | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Lock signal              |
|           | 4   | GND          | -   | -                  | Ground                   |
|           | 5   | TX0N         | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Transmission data signal |
|           | 6   | TX0P         | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Transmission data signal |

| Connector | Pin | Signal           | I/O | Voltage            | Description                    |
|-----------|-----|------------------|-----|--------------------|--------------------------------|
|           | 7   | GND              | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
| YC8       | 1   | VBUS1            | O   | 5 V DC             | 3.3 V DC power output to IFPWB |
|           | 2   | USB_DN1          | I/O | -                  | USB data signal                |
|           | 3   | USB_DP1          | I/O | -                  | USB data signal                |
|           | 4   | GND              | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 5   | AUDIO1           | I   | Analog             | AUDIO signal                   |
|           | 6   | WAKEUP1          | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Control signal                 |
|           | 7   | RESET1           | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Reset signal                   |
|           | 8   | GND              | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 9   | VBUS0            | O   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output to IFPWB   |
|           | 10  | USB_DN0          | I/O | -                  | USB data signal                |
|           | 11  | USB_DP0          | I/O | -                  | USB data signal                |
|           | 12  | GND              | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 13  | AUDIO0           | I   | Analog             | AUDIO signal                   |
|           | 14  | WAKEUP0          | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Control signal                 |
|           | 15  | RESET            | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Reset signal                   |
| YC9       | 1   | GND              | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 2   | 5.0V4_1          | I   | 0/5 V DC           | 5 V DC cut signal              |
|           | 3   | GND              | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 4   | 5.0V1            | O   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output to IFPWB   |
|           | 5   | GND              | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 6   | 5.0V4_2          | I   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC cut signal              |
| YC10      | 1   | GND              | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 2   | GND(DP_CONNECTN) | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Control signal                 |
|           | 3   | GND              | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 4   | PCIEEP_TXDP0     | O   | -                  | Image data signal              |
|           | 5   | 5.0V3            | -   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output            |
|           | 6   | PCIEEP_TXDN0     | O   | -                  | Image data signal              |
|           | 7   | 5.0V3            | -   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output            |
|           | 8   | GND              | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 9   | 5.0V3            | -   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output            |
|           | 10  | GND              | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 11  | 5.0V3            | -   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output            |
|           | 12  | PCIEEP_RXDP0     | I   | -                  | Image data signal              |
|           | 13  | GND              | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 14  | PCIEEP_RXDN0     | I   | -                  | Image data signal              |
|           | 15  | 5.0V3            | -   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output            |
|           | 16  | GND              | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 17  | 5.0V3            | -   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output            |
|           | 18  | GND              | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 19  | 5.0V3            | -   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output            |
|           | 20  | PCIEP_REFCLK_DP  | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Clock signal                   |
|           | 21  | GND              | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 22  | PCIEN_REFCLK_DP  | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Clock signal                   |

| Connector | Pin  | Signal               | I/O        | Voltage            | Description                          |                     |
|-----------|------|----------------------|------------|--------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------|
| YC10      | 23   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | 24   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | 25   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | 26   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | 27   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | 28   | PCIERC_SWRST_N_M2 DP | O          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Clock signal                         |                     |
|           | 29   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | 30   | DP_RST_N             | O          | 0/3.3 V DC         | Control signal                       |                     |
|           | 31   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | 32   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | 33   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | 34   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | 35   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | 36   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | 37   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | 38   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | 39   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | 40   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | YC11 | 1                    | GND        | -                  | -                                    | Ground              |
|           |      | 2                    | SCN_E2C_IR | O                  | 0/3.3 V DC                           | G6 interrupt signal |
| 3         |      | SCN_E2C_SDIR         | O          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | G6 communication direction signal    |                     |
| 4         |      | SCN_E2C_SBSY         | O          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | G6 communication busy signal         |                     |
| 5         |      | SCN_C2E_SDAT         | I          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | G6 data input signal                 |                     |
| 6         |      | SCN_E2C_SDAT         | O          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | G6 data output signal                |                     |
| 7         |      | SCN_C2E_SCK          | I          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Main communication clock signal      |                     |
| YC12      | A1   | I2C_SCL_NFC          | O          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | I2C clock signal                     |                     |
|           | A2   | 3.3V2_CPU            | I          | 0/3.3 V DC         | Energy Saver key interrupt signal    |                     |
|           | A3   | FPRST                | O          | 0/3.3 V DC         | Reset signal                         |                     |
|           | A4   | P2C_SDAT             | O          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Serial communication data signal     |                     |
|           | A5   | C2P_SDAT             | I          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Serial communication data signal     |                     |
|           | A6   | P2C_SDIR             | O          | 0/3.3 V DC         | Panel communication direction signal |                     |
|           | A7   | P2C_SBSY             | O          | 0/3.3 V DC         | Panel busy signal                    |                     |
|           | A8   | C2P_SCK              | O          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Panel clock signal                   |                     |
|           | A9   | DISPLAY_POWERON      | O          | 0/3.3 V DC         | LCD backlight lighting-off signal    |                     |
|           | A10  | INT_ANYKEY           | O          | 0/3.3 V DC         | Main recovery signal                 |                     |
|           | A11  | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | A12  | 5.0V6                | O          | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output                  |                     |
|           | A13  | 5.0V6                | O          | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output                  |                     |
|           | A14  | 5.0V6                | O          | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output                  |                     |
|           | A15  | 5.0V6                | O          | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output                  |                     |
|           | B1   | POWER_SW             | O          | 0/3.3 V DC         | Power key: On/Off                    |                     |
|           | B2   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |
|           | B3   | JOB_LED              | O          | 0/3.3 V DC         | JS LED control signal                |                     |
|           | B4   | GND                  | -          | -                  | Ground                               |                     |



| Connector | Pin | Signal            | I/O | Voltage            | Description                              |
|-----------|-----|-------------------|-----|--------------------|--|
| YC12      | B5  | GND               | -   | -                  | Ground                                   |
|           | B6  | GND               | -   | -                  | Ground                                   |
|           | B7  | BEEP_POWERON      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Sleep recovery signal                    |
|           | B8  | LED_MEMORY        | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Memory LED control signal                |
|           | B9  | LED_ATTENTION     | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Attention LED control signal             |
|           | B10 | LED_PROCESSING    | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Processing LED control signal            |
|           | B11 | AUDIO             | O   | Analog             | Audio output signal                      |
|           | B12 | PNL_WKUP_REQ      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Panel recovery signal                    |
|           | B13 | INT_ENERGYSAVEKEY | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Energy Saver key interrupt signal        |
|           | B14 | NIRQ              | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | NFC interrupt signal                     |
|           | B15 | I2C_SDA_NFC       | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | I2C clock signal                         |
| YC20      | A1  | VBUS_A            | O   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output                      |
|           | A2  | D-_A              | I/O | -                  | USB data signal                          |
|           | A3  | D+_A              | I/O | -                  | USB data signal                          |
|           | A4  | GND_A             | -   | -                  | Ground                                   |
|           | B1  | VBUS_B            | O   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output                      |
|           | B2  | D-_B              | I/O | -                  | USB data signal                          |
|           | B3  | D+_B              | I/O | -                  | USB data signal                          |
|           | B4  | GND_B             | -   | -                  | Ground                                   |
| YC31      | 1   | CD/DAT3           | I/O | 0/3.3 V DC         | Control signal                           |
|           | 2   | CMD               | I/O | 0/3.3 V DC         | Control signal                           |
|           | 3   | VSS               | -   | -                  | Ground                                   |
|           | 4   | VDD               | I/O | 0/3.3 V DC         | Control signal                           |
|           | 5   | CLK               | I/O | 0/3.3 V DC         | Control signal                           |
|           | 6   | VSS               | -   | -                  | Ground                                   |
|           | 7   | DAT0              | I/O | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Data bus signal                          |
|           | 8   | DAT1              | I/O | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Data bus signal                          |
|           | 9   | DAT2              | I/O | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Data bus signal                          |
|           | 10  | CD                | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Control signal                           |
|           | 11  | COMMON            | -   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Control signal                           |
|           | 12  | WP                | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Control signal                           |
| YC32      | 1   | GND               | -   | -                  |  |
|           | 2   | 5.0V5             | O   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output to HDD               |
|           | 3   | GND               | -   | -                  | Ground                                   |
| YC42      | 1   | 5.0V0             | I   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power input from Power supply PWB |
|           | 2   | GND               | -   | -                  | Ground                                   |
|           | 3   | 5.0V0             | I   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power input from Power supply PWB |
|           | 4   | GND               | -   | -                  | Ground                                   |
|           | 5   | 5.0V0             | I   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power input from Power supply PWB |
|           | 6   | GND               | -   | -                  | Ground                                   |
|           | 7   | 5.0V0             | I   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power input from Power supply PWB |
|           | 8   | GND               | -   | -                  | Ground                                   |
|           | 9   | 5.0V0             | I   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power input from Power supply PWB |

| Connector | Pin | Signal        | I/O | Voltage            | Description                         |
|-----------|-----|---------------|-----|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| YC42      | 10  | GND           | -   | -                  | Ground                              |
| YC59      | 1   | VBUS          | O   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output                 |
|           | 2   | DATA-         | I/O | LVDS               | USB data signal                     |
|           | 3   | DATA+         | I/O | LVDS               | USB data signal                     |
|           | 4   | ID            | -   | -                  | Not used                            |
|           | 5   | GND           | -   | -                  | Ground                              |
| YC60      | 1   | 5.0V7         | O   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output                 |
|           | 2   | 5.0V7         | O   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output                 |
|           | 3   | 5.0V7         | O   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output                 |
|           | 4   | GND           | -   | -                  | Ground                              |
|           | 5   | GND           | -   | -                  | Ground                              |
|           | 6   | GND           | -   | -                  | Ground                              |
| YC62      | 1   | SD_D3         | I/O | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Data signal                         |
|           | 2   | SD_D2         | I/O | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Data signal                         |
|           | 3   | SD_CMD        | I/O | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Data signal                         |
|           | 4   | GND           | -   | -                  | Ground                              |
|           | 5   | SD_CLK        | I   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Clock signal                        |
|           | 6   | GND           | -   | -                  | Ground                              |
|           | 7   | SD_D1         | I/O | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Data signal                         |
|           | 8   | SD_D0         | I/O | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Data signal                         |
|           | 9   | GND           | -   | -                  | Ground                              |
|           | 10  | VIO           | PI  | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output               |
|           | 11  | VBAT          | PI  | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output               |
|           | 12  | GND           | -   | -                  | Ground                              |
|           | 13  | PAVDD         | PI  | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output               |
|           | 14  | GND           | -   | -                  | Ground                              |
|           | 15  | HOSTWAKE      | I/O | 0/3.3 V DC         | Interrupt signal                    |
|           | 16  | GND           | -   | -                  | Ground                              |
|           | 17  | RESET         | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Reset signal                        |
|           | 18  | DETECT        | -   | -                  | Ground                              |
|           | 19  | USB_+         | I/O | LVDS               | USB data signal                     |
|           | 20  | USB_-         | I/O | LVDS               | USB data signal                     |
| YC63      | 1   | JS_LED_REM    | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | JS separator LED lighting signal    |
|           | 2   | ENG_WKUP_REQ  | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Engine sleep recovery signal        |
|           | 3   | HLD_ENG       | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Engine stop signal                  |
|           | 4   | E2C_SDAT      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | G6 communication data output signal |
|           | 5   | C2E_SDAT      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | G6 communication data input signal  |
|           | 6   | C2E_SCLK      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | G6 communication clock signal       |
|           | 7   | E2C_SBSY      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | G6 communication busy signal        |
|           | 8   | E2C_IR        | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | G6 communication interrupt signal   |
|           | 9   | E2C_SDIR      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | G6 communication direction signal   |
|           | 10  | ENG_POWOFF_N  | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Engine power off signal             |
|           | 11  | HLD_SCAN      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Scanner stop signal                 |
|           | 12  | DP_WAKEUP_REQ | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | DP sleep recovery signal            |

| Connector | Pin | Signal      | I/O | Voltage | Description              |
|-----------|-----|-------------|-----|---------|--------------------------|
| YC63      | 13  | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
| YC64      | 1   | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 2   | SRIF_SDR1N  | I   | LVDS    | Serializer output data   |
|           | 3   | SRIF_SDR1P  | I   | LVDS    | Serializer output data   |
|           | 4   | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 5   | SRIF_SDR2N  | I   | LVDS    | Serializer output data   |
|           | 6   | SRIF_SDR2P  | I   | LVDS    | Serializer output data   |
|           | 7   | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 8   | SRIF_SDR3N  | I   | LVDS    | Serializer output data   |
|           | 9   | SRIF_SDR3P  | I   | LVDS    | Serializer output data   |
|           | 10  | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 11  | SRIF_SCLKRN | I   | LVDS    | Serializer transfer data |
|           | 12  | SRIF_SCLKRP | I   | LVDS    | Serializer transfer data |
|           | 13  | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 14  | SRIF_SDR4N  | I   | LVDS    | Serializer output data   |
|           | 15  | SRIF_SDR4P  | I   | LVDS    | Serializer output data   |
|           | 16  | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 17  | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 18  | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 19  | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 20  | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 21  | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
| YC65      | 1   | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 2   | V1_DATA0_N  | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal        |
|           | 3   | V1_DATA0_P  | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal        |
|           | 4   | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 5   | V1_DATA1_N  | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal        |
|           | 6   | V1_DATA1_P  | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal        |
|           | 7   | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 8   | V1_DATA2_N  | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal        |
|           | 9   | V1_DATA2_P  | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal        |
|           | 10  | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 11  | V1_CLK_N    | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal        |
|           | 12  | V1_CLK_P    | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal        |
|           | 13  | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 14  | V0_DATA0_N  | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal        |
|           | 15  | V0_DATA0_P  | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal        |
|           | 16  | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 17  | V0_DATA1_N  | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal        |
|           | 18  | V0_DATA1_P  | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal        |
|           | 19  | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 20  | V0_DATA2_N  | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal        |
|           | 21  | V0_DATA2_P  | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal        |
|           | 22  | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |
|           | 23  | V0_CLK_N    | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal        |
|           | 24  | V0_CLK_P    | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal        |
|           | 25  | GND         | -   | -       | Ground                   |

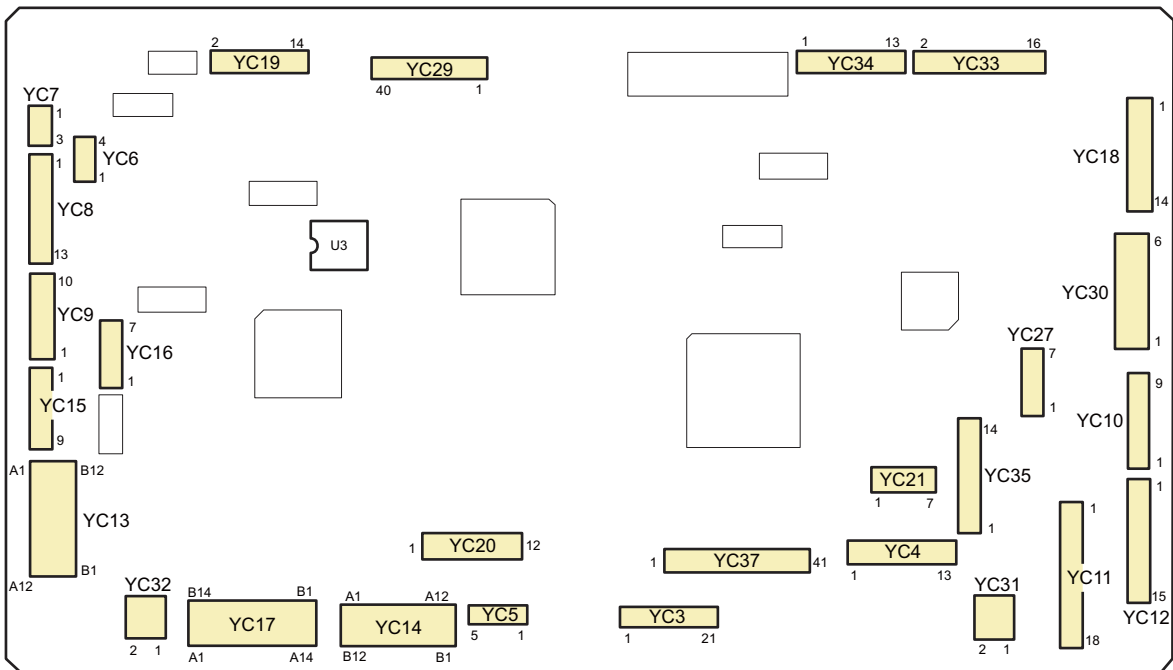
| Connector | Pin | Signal    | I/O | Voltage | Description       |
|-----------|-----|-----------|-----|---------|-------------------|
| YC65      | 26  | VSYNC_D_N | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 27  | VSYNC_D_P | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 28  | VSYNC_C_N | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 29  | VSYNC_C_P | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 30  | VSYNC_B_N | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 31  | VSYNC_B_P | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 32  | VSYNC_A_N | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 33  | VSYNC_A_P | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 34  | HSYNC_D_N | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 35  | HSYNC_D_P | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 36  | HSYNC_C_N | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 37  | HSYNC_C_P | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 38  | HSYNC_B_N | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 39  | HSYNC_B_P | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 40  | HSYNC_A_N | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 41  | HSYNC_A_P | I   | LVDS    | Image data signal |

(2) Engine PWB

(2-1)PWB photograph



(2-2)Connector position



## (2-3)Connector lists

## Destination

YC3: Main PWB

YC4: APC PWB

YC5: Polygon motor

YC6: Fuser pressure release motor

YC7: Feed-shift solenoid

YC8: Exit motor, JS paper full sensor, Paper full sensor, Exit sensor, JS paper sensor, Exit fan motor

YC9: Fuser thermistor, Fuser pressure release sensor, Thermopile

YC10: Low voltage power source PWB, Power source fan motor

YC11: RFID PWB, Toner container switch, Toner container lock switch, Toner sensor, Developer relay PWB

YC12: Temperature sensor, LSU fan motor, Drum relay PWB, Developer fan motor

YC13: Feed clutch 1, Registration clutch, DU clutch, MP solenoid, Lift motor 1

YC14: Paper sensor 1 to 4, Paper length switch 1,2, Paper width switch 1,2

YC15: DU sensor, MP paper sensor, Conveying sensor 1, Conveying fan motor

YC16: MP tray switch, MP paper Length switch, MP paper width switch

YC17: Lift sensor 2, Lift motor 2, Conveying sensor 2, Right cover switch 2, Middle switch, Feed clutch 2, Lift sensor 1, Registration sensor, Cassette 2 upper limit sensor

YC18: Bridge

YC19: High voltage PWB

YC20: PF

YC21: DF

YC27: Main PWB

YC29: CCD PWB

YC30: Low voltage power source PWB

YC31: Front cover switch

YC32: Right cover switch

YC33: DP

YC34: Original size sensor, Original size timing sensor, Home position sensor, Scanner motor

YC35: Main PWB

YC37: Main PWB

YC38: Main motor, Feed motor

| Connector | Pin | Signal          | I/O | Voltage | Description       |
|-----------|-----|-----------------|-----|---------|-------------------|
| YC3       | 1   | SAT_2_HSYNC_A_P | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 2   | SAT_2_HSYNC_A_N | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 3   | SAT_2_HSYNC_B_P | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 4   | SAT_2_HSYNC_B_N | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 5   | SAT_2_HSYNC_C_P | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 6   | SAT_2_HSYNC_C_N | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 7   | SAT_2_HSYNC_D_P | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 8   | SAT_2_HSYNC_D_N | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 9   | SAT_2_VSYNC_A_P | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 10  | SAT_2_VSYNC_A_N | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 11  | SAT_2_VSYNC_B_P | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 12  | SAT_2_VSYNC_B_N | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 13  | SAT_2_VSYNC_C_P | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 14  | SAT_2_VSYNC_C_N | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 15  | SAT_2_VSYNC_D_P | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 16  | SAT_2_VSYNC_D_N | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 17  | GND             | -   | -       | Ground            |
|           | 18  | SAR_2_VCLK1_P   | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |
|           | 19  | SAR_2_VCLK1_N   | O   | LVDS    | Image data signal |

| Connector | Pin | Signal       | I/O | Voltage            | Description                     |
|-----------|-----|--------------|-----|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| YC3       | 20  | GND          | -   | -                  | Ground                          |
|           | 21  | SAR_2_CH13_P | O   | LVDS               | Image data signal               |
|           | 22  | SAR_2_CH13_N | O   | LVDS               | Image data signal               |
|           | 23  | GND          | -   | -                  | Ground                          |
|           | 24  | SAR_2_CH12_P | O   | LVDS               | Image data signal               |
|           | 25  | SAR_2_CH12_N | O   | LVDS               | Image data signal               |
|           | 26  | GND          | -   | -                  | Ground                          |
|           | 27  | SAR_2_CH11_P | O   | LVDS               | Image data signal               |
|           | 28  | SAR_2_CH11_N | O   | LVDS               | Image data signal               |
|           | 29  | GND          | -   | -                  | Ground                          |
|           | 30  | TP           | O   | LVDS               | Image data signal               |
|           | 31  | TP           | O   | LVDS               | Image data signal               |
|           | 32  | GND          | -   | -                  | Ground                          |
|           | 33  | TP           | O   | LVDS               | Image data signal               |
|           | 34  | TP           | O   | LVDS               | Image data signal               |
|           | 35  | GND          | -   | -                  | Ground                          |
|           | 36  | TP           | O   | LVDS               | Image data signal               |
|           | 37  | TP           | O   | LVDS               | Image data signal               |
|           | 38  | GND          | -   | -                  | Ground                          |
|           | 39  | TP           | O   | LVDS               | Image data signal               |
|           | 40  | TP           | O   | LVDS               | Image data signal               |
| 41        | GND | -            | -   | Ground             |                                 |
| YC4       | 1   | 5VIL         | O   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output             |
|           | 2   | GND          | -   | -                  | Ground                          |
|           | 3   | VDATA2N      | O   | LVDS               | Video data LVDS(-)              |
|           | 4   | VDATA2P      | O   | LVDS               | Video data LVDS(+)              |
|           | 5   | VDATA1N      | O   | LVDS               | Video data LVDS(-)              |
|           | 6   | VDATA1P      | O   | LVDS               | Video data LVDS(+)              |
|           | 7   | SAMPLEN2     | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Laser output enabling signal    |
|           | 8   | SAMPLEN1     | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Laser output enabling signal    |
|           | 9   | OUTPEN       | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Laser output enabling signal    |
|           | 10  | VCONT        | O   | Analog             | Laser control signal            |
|           | 11  | PDN          | I   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Horizontal synchronizing signal |
|           | 12  | 3.3V2        | O   | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output           |
|           | 13  | NC           | -   | -                  | Not used                        |
| YC5       | 1   | 24V2         | O   | DC4V               | 24 V DC power output to PM      |
|           | 2   | GND          | -   | -                  | Ground                          |
|           | 3   | POL_REM      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Polygon motor control signal    |
|           | 4   | POL_READY    | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Polygon motor redy signal       |
|           | 5   | POL_CLK      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Polygon motor clock signal      |
| YC6       | 1   | GND          | -   | -                  | Ground                          |
|           | 2   | NC           | -   | -                  | Not used                        |
|           | 3   | FPMOTREM     | O   | DC0V/24V           | Exit fan motor drive signal     |

| Connector | Pin | Signal         | I/O | Voltage            | Description                                  |
|-----------|-----|----------------|-----|--------------------|--|
| YC7       | 1   | EJE_SOL_PULL   | O   | 0/24 V DC          | Feed-shift solenoid drive signal (Pressure)  |
|           | 2   | 24VF2          | O   | 24 V DC            | 24 V DC power output                         |
|           | 3   | EJE_SOL_RETURN | O   | 0/24 V DC          | Feed-shift solenoid drive signal (Release)   |
| YC8       | 1   | EMOTA          | O   | 0/24 V DC(pulse)   | Exit motor drive signal                      |
|           | 2   | EMOTB          | O   | 0/24 V DC(pulse)   | Exit motor drive signal                      |
|           | 3   | EMOTAN         | O   | 0/24 V DC(pulse)   | Exit motor drive signal                      |
|           | 4   | EMOTBN         | O   | 0/24 V DC(pulse)   | Exit motor drive signal                      |
|           | 5   | 3.3VLED        | O   | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power outputExit motor drive signal |
|           | 6   | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                       |
|           | 7   | JTRAYFULL      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | JP paper full sensor                         |
|           | 8   | 3.3VLED        | O   | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output                        |
|           | 9   | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                       |
|           | 10  | TRAYFULL       | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Conveying sensor                             |
|           | 11  | FUSER_JAM      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Exit sensor                                  |
|           | 12  | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                       |
|           | 13  | 3.3VLED        | O   | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output                        |
|           | 14  | 3.3VLED        | O   | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output                        |
|           | 15  | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                       |
|           | 16  | JJTRAYPAP      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | JS paper sensor                              |
|           | 17  | EXTFANREM      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Exit fan motor drive signal                  |
|           | 18  | 24VF2          | O   | 24 V DC            | 24 V DC power output                         |
| YC9       | 1   | FTOBJ          | I   | Analog             | Thermopile detection temperature data        |
|           | 2   | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                       |
|           | 3   | 3.3V2          | O   | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output                        |
|           | 4   | FTAMB          | I   | Analog             | Thermopile detection temperature data        |
|           | 5   | THSDA          | IO  | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Thermopile communication data                |
|           | 6   | THPSCL         | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Thermopile communication clock               |
|           | 7   | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                       |
|           | 8   | CTHERM         | I   | Analog             | Fuser thermistor (edge)                      |
|           | 9   | 3.3V0          | O   | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output                        |
|           | 10  | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                       |
|           | 11  | FSRPRSEN       | I   | Analog             | Fuser pressure release sensor                |
| YC10      | 1   | SHREM          | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Fuser heater 2 control signal                |
|           | 2   | MHREM          | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Fuser heater 1 control signal                |
|           | 3   | ZEROCROSS      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Zero cross signal                            |
|           | 4   | RELAYREM       | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Power relay drive signal                     |
|           | 5   | LVU_SLEEP      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Sleep signal                                 |
|           | 6   | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                       |
|           | 7   | 24VIL3         | I   | 24 V DC            | 24 V DC power input                          |
|           | 8   | LVU_FAN        | O   | 0/24 V DC          | Power source fan motor control signal        |
|           | 9   | 24V2           | O   | 24 V DC            | 24 V DC power output                         |
| YC11      | 1   | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                       |
|           | 2   | DLP_SDA        | I/O | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Developer PWB EEPROM data signal             |
|           | 3   | DLP_SCL        | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Developer PWB EEPROM clock signal            |



| Connector | Pin  | Signal     | I/O      | Voltage            | Description                               |                              |
|-----------|------|------------|----------|--------------------|---|------------------------------|
| YC11      | 4    | 3.3V2      | O        | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output                     |                              |
|           | 5    | DLP_TH     | I        | Analog             | Developer thermistor                      |                              |
|           | 6    | GND        | -        | -                  | Ground                                    |                              |
|           | 7    | TCON_EMP   | I        | 0/3.3 V DC         | Toner sensor                              |                              |
|           | 8    | 3.3V2      | O        | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output                     |                              |
|           | 9    | 3.3VLED    | O        | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output                     |                              |
|           | 10   | GND        | -        | -                  | Ground                                    |                              |
|           | 11   | TCON_LOCK  | I        | 0/3.3 V DC         | Toner container lock sensor               |                              |
|           | 12   | TCON_SET   | I        | 0/3.3 V DC         | Toner container switch                    |                              |
|           | 13   | GND        | -        | -                  | Ground                                    |                              |
|           | 14   | 5V2        | O        | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power input                        |                              |
|           | 15   | 3.3V2      | O        | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output                     |                              |
|           | 16   | RFID_SCL   | O        | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | RFID PWB EEPROM clock signal              |                              |
|           | 17   | GND        | -        | -                  | Ground                                    |                              |
|           | 18   | RFID_SDA   | I/O      | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | RFPWB EEPROM data signal                  |                              |
|           | YC12 | 1          | 3.3V2    | O                  | 3.3 V DC                                  | 3.3 V DC power output        |
|           |      | 2          | DRUM_SDA | I/O                | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)                        | Drum PWB EEPROM data signal  |
|           |      | 3          | DRUM_SCL | O                  | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)                        | Drum PWB EEPROM clock signal |
| 4         |      | GND        | -        | -                  | Ground                                    |                              |
| 5         |      | WTLED      | O        | 0/3.3 V DC         | Waste toner LED control signal            |                              |
| 6         |      | WTSN       | I        | Analog             | Waste toner sensor                        |                              |
| 7         |      | 3.3VLED    | O        | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output                     |                              |
| 8         |      | ERASE      | O        | 0/24 V DC          | Eraser control signal                     |                              |
| 9         |      | 24VF3      | O        | 24 V DC            | 24 V DC power output                      |                              |
| 10        |      | GND        | -        | -                  | Ground                                    |                              |
| 11        |      | LSU_FAN    | O        | 0/24 V DC          | LSU fan motor control signal              |                              |
| 12        |      | HUMCLK2    | I        | Analog             | Temperature/humidity sensor (humidity)    |                              |
| 13        |      | HUMCLK1    | O        | 0/3.3 V DC         | Temperature/humidity sensor clock signal  |                              |
| 14        |      | 3.3V2      | O        | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output                     |                              |
| 15        |      | TEMP       | I        | Analog             | Temperature/humidity sensor (temperature) |                              |
| 16        |      | DLP_FAN    | O        | 0 V/24 V DC        | Developer fan motor control signal        |                              |
| 17        |      | 24V2       | O        | 24 V DC            | 24 V DC power output                      |                              |
| YC13      | 1    | FEED1CLREM | O        | 0/24 V DC          | Feed clutch 1 drive signal                |                              |
|           | 2    | 24VF1      | O        | 24 V DC            | 24 V DC power output                      |                              |
|           | 3    | REGCLREM   | O        | 0/24 V DC          | Registration clutch drive signal          |                              |
|           | 4    | 24VF1      | O        | 24 V DC            | 24 V DC power output                      |                              |
|           | 5    | DUCLREM    | O        | 0/24 V DC          | DU clutch drive signal                    |                              |
|           | 6    | 24VF1      | O        | 24 V DC            | 24 V DC power output                      |                              |
|           | 7    | 24VF1      | O        | 24 V DC            | 24 V DC power output                      |                              |
|           | 8    | MPFSOLREM  | O        | 0/24 V DC          | MP solenoid drive signal                  |                              |
|           | 9    | GND        | -        | -                  | Ground                                    |                              |
|           | 10   | LMOT1REM1  | O        | 24 V DC            | Lift motor 1 drive signal                 |                              |
|           | 11   | DLPCCLREM  | -        | -                  | Not used                                  |                              |
|           | 12   | 24VF1      | -        | -                  | Not used                                  |                              |
| YC14      | 1    | 3.3VLED    | O        | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output                     |                              |
|           | 2    | GND        | -        | -                  | Ground                                    |                              |
|           | 3    | PAPEMP1    | I        | 0/3.3 V DC         | Paper sensor 1                            |                              |

| Connector | Pin  | Signal     | I/O     | Voltage    | Description            |                                    |
|-----------|------|------------|---------|------------|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| YC14      | 4    | 3.3VLED    | O       | 3.3 V DC   | 3.3 V DC power output  |                                    |
|           | 5    | GND        | -       | -          | Ground                 |                                    |
|           | 6    | PAPEMP2    | I       | 0/3.3 V DC | Paper sensor 2         |                                    |
|           | 7    | 3.3VLED    | O       | 3.3 V DC   | 3.3 V DC power output  |                                    |
|           | 8    | GND        | -       | -          | Ground                 |                                    |
|           | 9    | PAPEMP3    | I       | 0/3.3 V DC | Paper sensor 3         |                                    |
|           | 10   | 3.3VLED    | O       | 3.3 V DC   | 3.3 V DC power output  |                                    |
|           | 11   | GND        | -       | -          | Ground                 |                                    |
|           | 12   | PAPEMP4    | I       | 0/3.3 V DC | Paper sensor 4         |                                    |
|           | 13   | PAP1LSIZE1 | I       | 0/3.3 V DC | Paper length switch 1  |                                    |
|           | 14   | GND        | -       | -          | Ground                 |                                    |
|           | 15   | PAP1LSIZE2 | I       | 0/3.3 V DC | Paper length switch 1  |                                    |
|           | 16   | PAP1LSIZE3 | I       | 0/3.3 V DC | Paper length switch 1  |                                    |
|           | 17   | PAP1WSIZE  | I       | 0/3.3 V DC | Paper width switch 1   |                                    |
|           | 18   | GND        | -       | -          | Ground                 |                                    |
|           | 19   | PAP2LSIZE1 | I       | 0/3.3 V DC | Paper length switch 2  |                                    |
|           | 20   | GND        | -       | -          | Ground                 |                                    |
|           | 21   | PAP2LSIZE2 | I       | 0/3.3 V DC | Paper length switch 2  |                                    |
|           | 22   | PAP2LSIZE3 | I       | 0/3.3 V DC | Paper length switch 2  |                                    |
|           | 23   | PAP2WSIZE1 | I       | 0/3.3 V DC | Paper width switch 2   |                                    |
|           | 24   | GND        | -       | -          | Ground                 |                                    |
|           | YC15 | 1          | CONVFAN | O          | 0/24 V DC              | Conveying fan motor control signal |
|           |      | 2          | 24V     | O          | 24 V DC                | 24 V DC power output               |
|           |      | 3          | 3.3VLED | O          | 3.3 V DC               | 3.3 V DC power output              |
| 4         |      | GND        | -       | -          | Ground                 |                                    |
| 5         |      | DUSENS     | I       | 0/3.3 V DC | DUS: On/Off            |                                    |
| 6         |      | 3.3VLED    | O       | 3.3 V DC   | 3.3 V DC power output  |                                    |
| 7         |      | GND        | -       | -          | Ground                 |                                    |
| 8         |      | MPFPAPSET  | I       | 0/3.3 V DC | MPPS: On/Off           |                                    |
| 9         |      | 3.3VLED    | O       | 3.3 V DC   | 3.3 V DC power output  |                                    |
| 10        |      | GND        | -       | -          | Ground                 |                                    |
| 11        |      | FEED1SENS  | I       | 0/3.3 V DC | FS1: On/Off            |                                    |
| YC16      | 1    | 3.3V2      | O       | 3.3 V DC   | 3.3 V DC power output  |                                    |
|           | 2    | MPFWSIZE   | I       | Analog     | MP paper width switch  |                                    |
|           | 3    | MPFLSIZE   | I       | 0/3.3 V DC | MP paper length switch |                                    |
|           | 4    | GND        | -       | -          | Ground                 |                                    |
|           | 5    | 3.3VLED    | O       | 3.3 V DC   | 3.3 V DC power output  |                                    |
|           | 6    | MPFTRAY    | I       | 0/3.3 V DC | MP tray switch         |                                    |
|           | 7    | GND        | -       | -          | Ground                 |                                    |
| YC17      | A1   | 3.3V2      | -       | -          | Not used               |                                    |
|           | A2   | GND        | -       | -          | Not used               |                                    |
|           | A3   | CECDT      | -       | -          | Not used               |                                    |
|           | A4   | SECCK      | -       | -          | Not used               |                                    |
|           | A5   | LMOT2REM2  | O       | 24 V DC    | 24 V DC power output   |                                    |
|           | A6   | LMOT2REM1  | O       | 0/24 V DC  | Lift motor 2           |                                    |

| Connector | Pin         | Signal      | I/O | Voltage               | Description                                   |
|-----------|-------------|-------------|-----|-----------------------|---|
| YC17      | A7          | 3.3VLED     | O   | 3.3 V DC              | 3.3 V DC power output                         |
|           | A8          | GND         | -   | -                     | Ground  |
|           | A9          | FEED2JAM    | I   | 0/3.3 V DC            | Conveying sensor 2                            |
|           | A10         | LCOVERSW    | I   | 0/3.3 V DC            | Right cover switch 2                          |
|           | A11         | GND         | -   | -                     | Ground  |
|           | A12         | 24V2        | -   | -                     | Not used                                      |
|           | A13         | ANYREM      | -   | -                     | Not used                                      |
|           | B1          | 24VF1       | O   | 24 V DC               | 24 V DC power output                          |
|           | B2          | MIDCLREM    | O   | 0/24 V DC             | Middle clutch                                 |
|           | B3          | 24VF1       | O   | 24 V DC               | 24 V DC power output                          |
|           | B4          | FEED2CLREM  | O   | 0/24 V DC             | Conveying clutch 2                            |
|           | B5          | 3.3VLED     | O   | 3.3 V DC              | 3.3 V DC power output                         |
|           | B6          | GND         | -   | -                     | Ground  |
|           | B7          | CAS1LIFTLMT | I   | 0/3.3 V DC            | Lift sensor 1                                 |
|           | B8          | 5V2         | O   | 3.3 V DC              | 3.3 V DC power output                         |
|           | B9          | REG_SENS    | I   | 0/3.3 V DC            | Registration sensor                           |
|           | B10         | GND         | -   | -                     | Ground  |
| B11       | 3.3VLED     | -           | -   | 3.3 V DC power output |   |
| B12       | GND         | -           | -   | Ground                |   |
| B13       | CAS2LIFTLMT | -           | -   | Lift sensor 2         |   |
| YC18      | 1           | BRFAN       | -   | -                     | Not used                                      |
|           | 2           | BRVREF      | -   | -                     | Not used                                      |
|           | 3           | BRREM       | O   | 0/3.3 V DC            | BR Conveying motor remote signal              |
|           | 4           | BRCLK       | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)    | BR Conveying motor clock signal               |
|           | 5           | BRPH0       | O   | 0/3.3 V DC            | BR Conveying motor control signal             |
|           | 6           | BRPH1       | O   | 0/3.3 V DC            | BR Conveying motor control signal             |
|           | 7           | BRDET       | I   | 0/3.3 V DC            | Bridge set signal                             |
|           | 8           | BRSEN1      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC            | BR Conveying sensor 1                         |
|           | 9           | BRSEN2      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC            | BR Conveying sensor 2                         |
|           | 10          | BRCOVOP     | I   | 0/3.3 V DC            | BR cover switch                               |
|           | 11          | GND         | -   | -                     | Ground  |
|           | 12          | GND         | -   | -                     | Ground  |
|           | 13          | 3.3V2       | O   | 3.3 V DC              | 3.3 V DC power output                         |
|           | 14          | 24VF5       | O   | 24 V DC               | 24 V DC power output                          |
| YC19      | 1           | GND         | -   | -                     | Ground  |
|           | 2           | GND         | -   | -                     | Ground  |
|           | 3           | DBCNT       | O   | Analog                | Developer DC output switch signal             |
|           | 4           | DBCLK       | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)    | Developer AC clock signal                     |
|           | 5           | NC          | -   | -                     | Not used                                      |
|           | 6           | SEP_REM     | O   | 0/3.3 V DC            | Separation DC output remote signal            |
|           | 7           | TRA_CNT     | O   | Analog                | Transfer DC output control signal             |
|           | 8           | DC_REM      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC            | Transfer DC/ Transfer DC output remote signal |
|           | 9           | MISENS      | I   | Analog                | Charger output current detection signal       |
|           | 10          | MDCCNT      | O   | Analog                | Charger DC output control signal              |
|           | 11          | MACCNT      | O   | Analog                | Charger AC output control signal              |
|           | 12          | MC_CLK      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)    | Charger AC clock signal                       |

| Connector | Pin | Signal      | I/O | Voltage            | Description                            |
|-----------|-----|-------------|-----|--------------------|--|
| YC19      | 13  | 24VIL3      | O   | 24 V DC            | 24 V DC power output                   |
|           | 14  | 24VIL3      | O   | 24 V DC            | 24 V DC power output                   |
| YC20      | 1   | EH_CLK      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Paper feeder clock signal              |
|           | 2   | EH_SI       | I   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Serial communication data signal       |
|           | 3   | EH_SO       | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Serial communication data signal       |
|           | 4   | PF_SEL      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Paper feed select signal               |
|           | 5   | PF_RDY      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Paper feed ready signal                |
|           | 6   | PF_SET      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Paper feed set signal                  |
|           | 7   | PF_PAUSE    | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Paper feed control signal              |
|           | 8   | 24VF6       | O   | 24 V DC            | 24 V DC power output                   |
|           | 9   | 3.3V3_FUSE  | O   | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output                  |
|           | 10  | 3.3V2       | O   | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output                  |
|           | 11  | GND         | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
|           | 12  | GND         | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
| YC21      | 1   | DF_CLK      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | DF clock signal                        |
|           | 2   | DF_SDO      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | DF serial communication data signal    |
|           | 3   | DF_SEL      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | DF select signal                       |
|           | 4   | DF_SDI      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | DF serial communication data signal    |
|           | 5   | DF_RDY      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | DF ready signal                        |
|           | 6   | DF_DET      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | DF set signal                          |
|           | 7   | GND         | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
| YC27      | 1   | SC_CLK      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Scanner clock signal                   |
|           | 2   | SC_SO       | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Serial communication data signal       |
|           | 3   | SC_SI       | I   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Serial communication data signal       |
|           | 4   | SC_BSY      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Scanner busy signal                    |
|           | 5   | SC_DIR      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Scanner communication direction signal |
|           | 6   | SC_IRN      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Scanner interrupt signal               |
|           | 7   | GND         | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
| YC29      | 1   | 12V5        | O   | 12 V DC            | 12 V DC power output                   |
|           | 2   | 12V5        | O   | 12 V DC            | 12 V DC power output                   |
|           | 3   | 12V5        | O   | 12 V DC            | 12 V DC power output                   |
|           | 4   | 12V5        | O   | 12 V DC            | 12 V DC power output                   |
|           | 5   | NC          | -   | -                  | Not used                               |
|           | 6   | LED_PWM     | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | LED driver PWM signal                  |
|           | 7   | GND         | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
|           | 8   | DSI_CIS_5P  | I   | LVDS               | Serial input data                      |
|           | 9   | DSI_CIS_5N  | I   | LVDS               | Serial input data                      |
|           | 10  | GND         | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
|           | 11  | DSI_CIS_4P  | I   | LVDS               | Serial input data                      |
|           | 12  | DSI_CIS_4N  | I   | LVDS               | Serial input data                      |
|           | 13  | GND         | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
|           | 14  | DSI_CIS_3P  | I   | LVDS               | Serial input data                      |
|           | 15  | DSI_CIS_3N  | I   | LVDS               | Serial input data                      |
|           | 16  | GND         | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
|           | 17  | DSI_CIS_CKP | I   | LVDS               | Transfer clock                         |
|           | 18  | DSI_CIS_CKN | I   | LVDS               | Transfer clock                         |
|           | 19  | GND         | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |

| Connector | Pin | Signal     | I/O    | Voltage             | Description                             |
|-----------|-----|------------|--------|---------------------|---|
| YC29      | 20  | DSI_CIS_2P | I      | LVDS                | Serial input data                       |
|           | 21  | DSI_CIS_2N | I      | LVDS                | Serial input data                       |
|           | 22  | GND        | -      | -                   | Ground                                  |
|           | 23  | DSI_CIS_1P | I      | LVDS                | Serial input data                       |
|           | 24  | DSI_CIS_1N | I      | LVDS                | Serial input data                       |
|           | 25  | GND        | -      | -                   | Ground                                  |
|           | 26  | AFE_RD     | I      | 0/3.3 V DC          | AFE serial communication read signal    |
|           | 27  | GND        | -      | -                   | Ground                                  |
|           | 28  | AFE_WD     | O      | 0/3.3 V DC          | AFE serial communication write signal   |
|           | 29  | GND        | -      | -                   | Ground                                  |
|           | 30  | AFE_CLK    | O      | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)  | AFE serial communication clock signal   |
|           | 31  | GND        | -      | -                   | Ground                                  |
|           | 32  | AFE_CS     | O      | 0/3.3 V DC          | AFE serial communication select signal  |
|           | 33  | GND        | -      | -                   | Ground                                  |
|           | 34  | AFE_MCLK_P | O      | LVDS                | AFE clock signal                        |
|           | 35  | AFE_MCLK_N | O      | LVDS                | AFE clock signal                        |
|           | 36  | GND        | -      | -                   | Ground                                  |
|           | 37  | NC         | -      | -                   | Not used                                |
|           | 38  | 5V2        | O      | 5 V DC              | 5 V DC power output                     |
|           | 39  | 5V2        | O      | 5 V DC              | 5 V DC power output                     |
| 40        | 5V2 | O          | 5 V DC | 5 V DC power output |   |
| YC30      | 1   | 24V2       | I      | 24 V DC             | 24 V DC power input                     |
|           | 2   | 24V2       | I      | 24 V DC             | 24 V DC power input                     |
|           | 3   | GND        | -      | -                   | Ground                                  |
|           | 4   | GND        | -      | -                   | Ground                                  |
|           | 5   | GND        | -      | -                   | Ground                                  |
|           | 6   | 5V0        | I      | 5 V DC              | 5 V DC power input                      |
| YC31      | 1   | 24V2       | O      | 24 V DC             | 24 V DC power output                    |
|           | 2   | 24VIL1     | I      | 24 V DC             | 24 V DC power input                     |
| YC32      | 1   | 24VIL1     | I      | 24 V DC             | 24 V DC power input                     |
|           | 2   | 24VIL2     | O      | 24 V DC             | 24 V DC power output                    |
| YC33      | 1   | DPCLK      | O      | 0/3.3 V DC          | Serial communication clock signal       |
|           | 2   | DPSDO      | O      | 0/3.3 V DC          | Serial communication data output signal |
|           | 3   | DPTMG      | I      | 0/3.3 V DC          | DP scanning start signal                |
|           | 4   | DPCO       | I      | 0/3.3 V DC          | DP top cover switch                     |
|           | 5   | DPRDY      | I      | 0/3.3 V DC          | Serial communication ready signal       |
|           | 6   | DPPAGEEND  | I      | 0/3.3 V DC          | DP conveying sensor                     |
|           | 7   | DPORGEN    | I      | 0/3.3 V DC          | DP original sensor:                     |
|           | 8   | 3.3V3F     | O      | 3.3 V DC            | 3.3 V DC power output                   |
|           | 9   | GND        | -      | -                   | Ground                                  |
|           | 10  | GND        | -      | -                   | Ground                                  |
|           | 11  | GND        | -      | -                   | Ground                                  |
|           | 12  | 24VF8      | O      | 24 V DC             | 24 V DC power output                    |
|           | 13  | 24VF8      | O      | 24 V DC             | 24 V DC power output                    |
|           | 14  | 24VF8      | O      | 24 V DC             | 24 V DC power output                    |

| Connector | Pin | Signal         | I/O | Voltage            | Description                            |
|-----------|-----|----------------|-----|--------------------|--|
| YC33      | 15  | DPSEL          | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Serial communication select signal     |
|           | 16  | DPSDI          | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Serial communication data input signal |
| YC34      | 1   | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
|           | 2   | ORG_SENS       | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | DP original sensor                     |
|           | 3   | 5V2            | O   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output                    |
|           | 4   | 3.3VLED        | O   | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output                  |
|           | 5   | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
|           | 6   | PLT_OPEN       | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | DP original size timing sensor         |
|           | 7   | 3.3VLED        | O   | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output                  |
|           | 8   | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
|           | 9   | HP_SENS        | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Home position sensor                   |
|           | 10  | SMOT1B         | O   | 0/24 V DC(pulse)   | Scanner motor drive signal             |
|           | 11  | SMOT1A         | O   | 0/24 V DC(pulse)   | Scanner motor drive signal             |
|           | 12  | SMOT2A         | O   | 0/24 V DC(pulse)   | Scanner motor drive signal             |
|           | 13  | SMOT2B         | O   | 0/24 V DC(pulse)   | Scanner motor drive signal             |
| YC35      | 1   | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
|           | 2   | DP_WAKEUP_REQ  | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | DP sleep recovery signal               |
|           | 3   | HLD_SCN        | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Scanner stop signal                    |
|           | 4   | ENG_POWEROFF_N | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Engine power off signal                |
|           | 5   | ENG_DIR        | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | G6 communication direction signal      |
|           | 6   | ENG_IR         | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | G6 communication interrupt signal      |
|           | 7   | ENG_BSY        | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | G6 communication busy signal           |
|           | 8   | ENG_CLK        | I   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | G6 communication clock signal          |
|           | 9   | ENG_SDI        | I   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | G6 communication data input signal     |
|           | 10  | ENG_SDO        | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | G6 communication data output signal    |
|           | 11  | ENG_HOLD       | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Engine stop signal                     |
|           | 12  | ENG_WKUP_REQ   | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Engine sleep recovery signal           |
|           | 13  | JS_LED_REM     | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | JS separator LED lighting signal       |
|           | 14  | NC             | -   | -                  | Not used                               |
| YC36      | 1   | 24VILF3        | O   | 24 V DC            | 24 V DC power output                   |
|           | 2   | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
|           | 3   | DMOTREM        | O   | 0/24 V DC          | Developing motor remote signal         |
|           | 4   | DMOTCLK        | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Developing motor clock signal          |
|           | 5   | DMOTRDY        | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Developing motor ready signal          |
|           | 6   | DMOTDIR        | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Developing motor drive switch signal   |
| YC37      | 1   | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
|           | 2   | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
|           | 3   | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
|           | 4   | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
|           | 5   | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
|           | 6   | GND            | -   | -                  | Ground                                 |
|           | 7   | OS_SAD4P       | O   | LVDS               | Serializer output data                 |
|           | 8   | OS_SAD4N       | O   | LVDS               | Serializer output data                 |

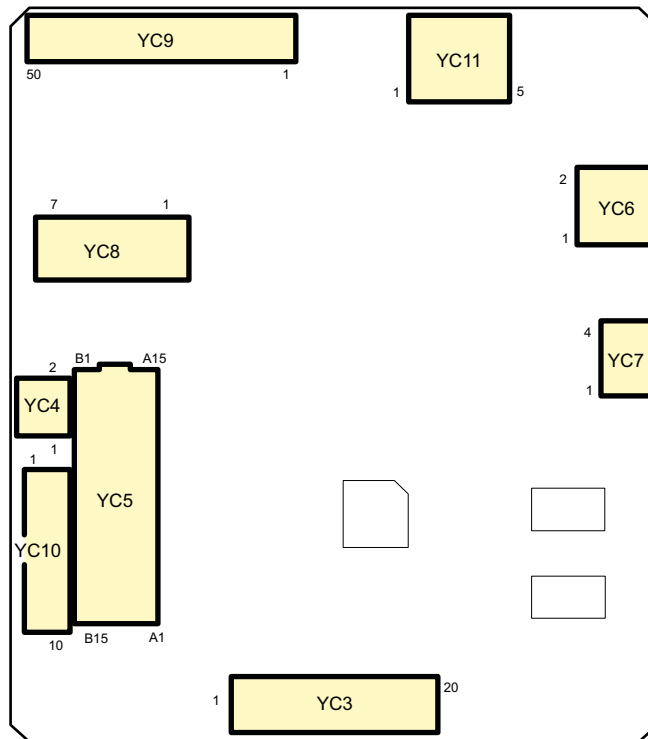
| Connector | Pin | Signal   | I/O | Voltage            | Description                    |
|-----------|-----|----------|-----|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| YC37      | 9   | GND      | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 10  | OS_SACKP | O   | LVDS               | Serializer transfer data       |
|           | 11  | OS_SACKN | O   | LVDS               | Serializer transfer data       |
|           | 12  | GND      | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 13  | OS_SAD3P | O   | LVDS               | Serializer output data         |
|           | 14  | OS_SAD3N | O   | LVDS               | Serializer output data         |
|           | 15  | GND      | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 16  | OS_SAD2P | O   | LVDS               | Serializer output data         |
|           | 17  | OS_SAD2N | O   | LVDS               | Serializer output data         |
|           | 18  | GND      | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 19  | OS_SAD1P | O   | LVDS               | Serializer output data         |
|           | 20  | OS_SAD1N | O   | LVDS               | Serializer output data         |
| 21        | GND | -        | -   | Ground             |                                |
| YC38      | 1   | 24VILF3  | O   | 24 V DC            | 24 V DC power output           |
|           | 2   | GND      | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 3   | MMOTREM  | O   | 0/24 V DC          | Main motor remote signal       |
|           | 4   | MMOTCLK  | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Main motor clock signal        |
|           | 5   | MMOTRDY  | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Main motor ready signal        |
|           | 6   | MMOTDIR  | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Main motor drive switch signal |
|           | 7   | 24VILF3  | O   | 24 V DC            | 24 V DC power output           |
|           | 8   | GND      | -   | -                  | Ground                         |
|           | 9   | FMOTREM  | O   | 0/24 V DC          | Feed motor remote signal       |
|           | 10  | FMOTCLK  | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Feed motor clock signal        |
|           | 11  | FMOTRDY  | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Feed motor ready signal        |
|           | 12  | FMOTDIR  | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Feed motor drive switch signal |

(3) Operation panel PWB 1

(3-1)PWB photograph



(3-2)Connector position





## (3-3)Connector lists

## Destination

YC3: Operation panel PWB 2

YC4: Speaker

YC5: Main PWB

YC6: LCD

YC7: Touch panel

YC8: Main PWB

YC9: LCD

YC10: 10 key PWB

YC11: NFC PWB

| Connector | Pin | Signal                   | I/O | Voltage            | Description                              |
|-----------|-----|--------------------------|-----|--------------------|--|
| YC3       | 1   | 5V6                      | O   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output                      |
|           | 2   | LED0                     | O   | 0/5 V DC           | LED control signal 0                     |
|           | 3   | NC                       | -   | -                  | Not used                                 |
|           | 4   | GND                      | -   | -                  | Ground                                   |
|           | 5   | ATTENTION                | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Attention LED control signal             |
|           | 6   | MEMORY                   | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Memory LED control signal                |
|           | 7   | PROCESSING               | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Processing LED control signal            |
|           | 8   | ENERGYSAVERLED           | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Energy Saver LED control signal          |
|           | 9   | INT_ENERGYSAVERLE<br>D_N | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Energy Saver key interrupt signal        |
|           | 10  | KEY0                     | I   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Operation panel key scan return signal 0 |
|           | 11  | KEY1                     | I   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Operation panel key scan return signal 1 |
|           | 12  | KEY2                     | I   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Operation panel key scan return signal 2 |
|           | 13  | KEY3                     | I   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Operation panel key scan return signal 3 |
|           | 14  | SCAN0                    | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Scan signal 0                            |
|           | 15  | SCAN1                    | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Scan signal 1                            |
|           | 16  | SCAN2                    | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Scan signal 2                            |
|           | 17  | SCAN3                    | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Scan signal 3                            |
|           | 18  | JOB_LED                  | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | JS separator LED control signal          |
|           | 19  | N.C.                     | -   | -                  | Not used                                 |
|           | 20  | LED2                     | O   | 0/5 V DC           | LED control signal 2                     |
| YC4       | 1   | SPEAKER_P                | O   | Analog             | Speaker sound signal (+)                 |
|           | 2   | SPEAKER_N                | O   | Analog             | Speaker sound signal (-)                 |
| YC5       | A1  | 5V6                      | I   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output                      |
|           | A2  | 5V6                      | I   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output                      |
|           | A3  | 5V6                      | I   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output                      |
|           | A4  | 5V6                      | I   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output                      |
|           | A5  | GND                      | -   | -                  | Ground                                   |
|           | A6  | ANYKEY                   | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Main recovery signal                     |
|           | A7  | DISPLAY_POWERON          | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | LCD backlight lighting-off signal        |
|           | A8  | C2P_SCK                  | I   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Panel clock signal                       |
|           | A9  | P2C_SBSY                 | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Panel busy signal                        |
|           | A10 | P2C_SDIR                 | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Panel communication direction signal     |
|           | A11 | C2P_SDAT                 | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Serial communication data signal         |

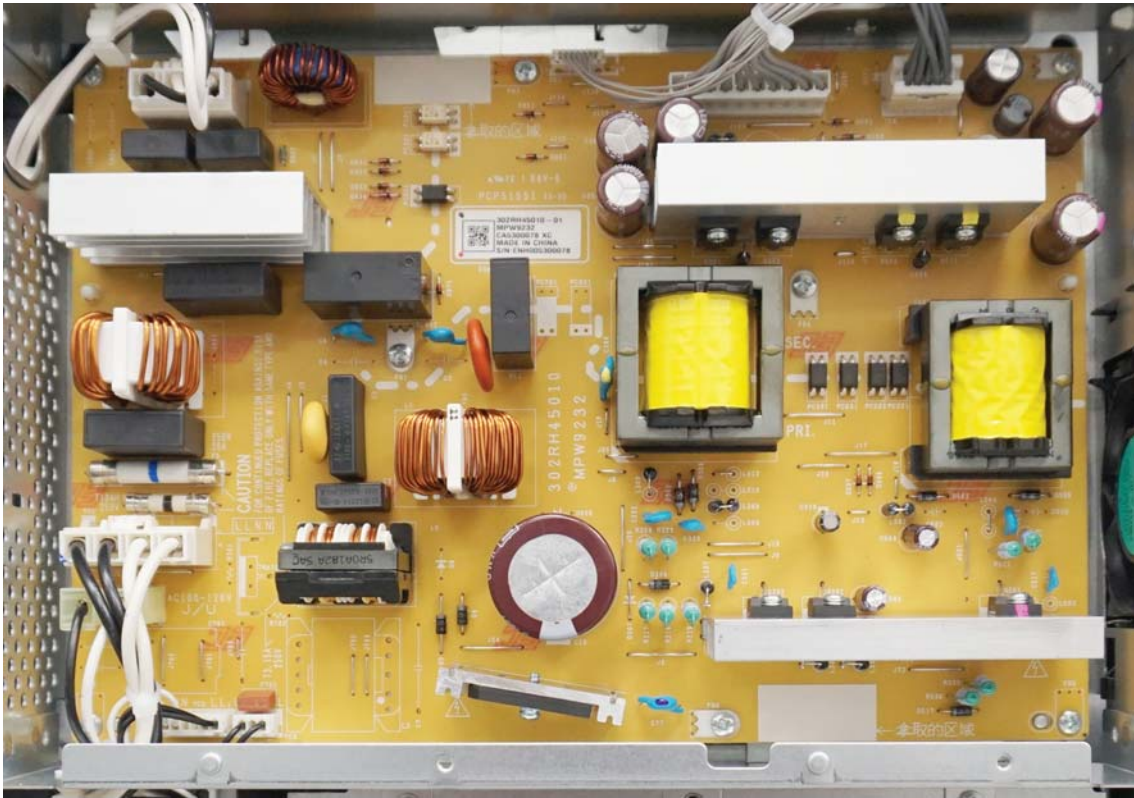
| Connector | Pin     | Signal              | I/O        | Voltage               | Description                       |
|-----------|---------|---------------------|------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|
| YC5       | A12     | P2C_SDAT            | I          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)    | Serial communication data signal  |
|           | A13     | FPRST               | I          | 0/3.3 V DC            | Operation panel reset signal      |
|           | A14     | 3.3V_MAIN           | I          | 3.3 V DC              | 3.3 V DC power output             |
|           | A15     | I2C_SCL_NFC         | I          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)    | I2C clock signal                  |
|           | B1      | I2C_SDA_NFC         | I/O        | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)    | 12C data signal                   |
|           | B2      | NIRQ                | I          | 0/3.3 V DC            | NFC interrupt signal              |
|           | B3      | INT_ENERGYSAVEKEY_N | O          | 0/3.3 V DC            | Energy Saver key interrupt signal |
|           | B4      | PNL_WKUP_REQ        | I          | 0/3.3 V DC            | Panel recovery signal             |
|           | B5      | AUDIO               | I          | Analog                | Audio output signal               |
|           | B6      | LED_PROCESSING_N    | I          | 0/3.3 V DC            | Processing LED control signal     |
|           | B7      | LED_ATTENTION       | I          | 0/3.3 V DC            | Attention LED control signal      |
|           | B8      | LED_MEMORY          | I          | 0/3.3 V DC            | Memory LED control signal         |
|           | B9      | BEEP_POWERON        | I          | 0/3.3 V DC            | Alert sound recovery signal       |
|           | B10     | GND                 | -          | -                     | Ground                            |
|           | B11     | GND                 | -          | -                     | Ground                            |
| B12       | GND     | -                   | -          | Ground                |                                   |
| B13       | JOB_LED | I                   | 0/3.3 V DC | JS LED control signal |                                   |
| B14       | GND     | -                   | -          | Not used              |                                   |
| B15       | N.C.    | -                   | -          | Not used              |                                   |
| YC6       | 1       | LED_A               | O          | 0/3.3 V DC            | LED control signal                |
|           | 2       | LED_C               | I          | 0/3.3 V DC            | LED control signal                |
| YC7       | 1       | YP-Bottom           | I          | Analog                | Touch panel Y- position signal    |
|           | 2       | XN-Left             | I          | Analog                | Touch panel Y- position signal    |
|           | 3       | YN-Top              | I          | Analog                | Touch panel Y- position signal    |
|           | 4       | XP-Right            | I          | Analog                | Touch panel Y- position signal    |
| YC8       | 1       | GND                 | -          | -                     | Ground                            |
|           | 2       | LCD_OFF             | O          | 0/3.3 V DC            | Control signal                    |
|           | 3       | LOCKN_GPIO0         | O          | 0/3.3 V DC            | Lock signal                       |
|           | 4       | GND                 | -          | -                     | Ground                            |
|           | 5       | RX0N                | O          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)    | Transmission data signal          |
|           | 6       | RX0P                | O          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)    | Transmission data signal          |
|           | 7       | GND                 | -          | -                     | Ground                            |
| YC9       | 1       | VGH                 | O          | 19.83 V DC            | LCD High power output             |
|           | 2       | VDD                 | O          | 3.3 V DC              | LCD Driver power output           |
|           | 3       | VGL                 | O          | 9.1 V DC              | LCD Low power output              |
|           | 4       | VCOM                | O          | 3.67 V DC             | LCD Common power output           |
|           | 5       | VCOM                | O          | 3.67 V DC             | LCD Common power output           |
|           | 6       | AGND                | -          | -                     | Ground                            |
|           | 7       | AVDD                | O          | 0.34 V DC             | LCD Analog power output           |
|           | 8       | GND                 | -          | -                     | Ground                            |
|           | 9       | GND                 | -          | -                     | Ground                            |
|           | 10      | V1                  | O          | 9.55 V DC             | LCD V1 power output               |
|           | 11      | V2                  | O          | 9.21 V DC             | LCD V2 power output               |

| Connector | Pin  | Signal   | I/O        | Voltage  | Description                              |
|-----------|------|----------|------------|--|--|
| YC9       | 12   | V3       | O          | 7.72 V DC                                      | LCD V8 power output                      |
|           | 13   | V4       | O          | 7.72 V DC                                      | LCD V4 power output                      |
|           | 14   | V5       | O          | 6.86 V DC                                      | LCD V5 power output                      |
|           | 15   | V6       | O          | 6.11 V DC                                      | LCD V6 power output                      |
|           | 16   | V7       | O          | 5.02 V DC                                      | LCD V7power output                       |
|           | 17   | HSD      | O          | 0/3.3 V DC                                     | Control bit select signal                |
|           | 18   | GND_LVDS | -          | -  | Ground                                   |
|           | 19   | RxIN3+   | O          | LVDS   | Display data signal                      |
|           | 20   | RxIN3-   | O          | LVDS   | Display data signal                      |
|           | 21   | GND      | -          | -  | Ground                                   |
|           | 22   | RxIN2+   | O          | LVDS   | Display data signal                      |
|           | 23   | RxIN2-   | O          | LVDS   | Display data signal                      |
|           | 24   | GND      | -          | -  | Ground                                   |
|           | 25   | RxIN1+   | O          | LVDS   | Display data signal                      |
|           | 26   | RxIN1-   | O          | LVDS   | Display data signal                      |
|           | 27   | GND      | -          | -  | Ground                                   |
|           | 28   | RxIN0+   | O          | LVDS   | Display data signal                      |
|           | 29   | RxIN0-   | O          | LVDS   | Display data signal                      |
|           | 30   | GND      | -          | -  | Ground                                   |
|           | 31   | RxINCK+  | O          | LVDS   | Display data signal                      |
|           | 32   | RxINCK-  | O          | LVDS   | Display data signal                      |
|           | 33   | GND      | -          | -  | Ground                                   |
|           | 34   | VDD_LVDS | O          | 3.3 V DC                                       | LVDS power output                        |
|           | 35   | V8       | O          | 5.02 V DC                                      | LCD V8 power output                      |
|           | 36   | V9       | O          | 3.83 V DC                                      | LCD V9 power output                      |
|           | 37   | V10      | O          | 3.18 V DC                                      | LCD V10 power output                     |
|           | 38   | V11      | O          | 2.78 V DC                                      | LCD V11 power output                     |
|           | 39   | V12      | O          | 2.32 V DC                                      | LCD V12 power output                     |
|           | 40   | V13      | O          | 0.83 V DC                                      | LCD V13 power output                     |
|           | 41   | V14      | O          | 0.5 V DC                                       | LCD V14 power output                     |
|           | 42   | AGND     | -          | -  | Ground                                   |
|           | 43   | AVDD     | O          | 10.34 V DC                                     | LCD Analog power output                  |
|           | 44   | VDD      | O          | 3.3 V DC                                       | LCD Driver power output                  |
|           | 45   | MODE     | O          | 0/3.3 V DC                                     | Mode select signal                       |
| 46        | GBR  | O        | 0/3.3 V DC | Reset signal                                   |  |
| 47        | SHLR | O        | 0/3.3 V DC | Left/Right writing start point setting signal  |  |
| 48        | UPDN | O        | 0/3.3 V DC | Upper/Lower writing start point setting signal |  |
| 49        | COM  | O        | DC3.67V    | LCD Common power output                        |  |
| 50        | COM  | O        | DC3.67V    | LCD Common power output                        |  |
| YC10      | 1    | KEY0     | I          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)                             | Operation panel key scan return signal 0 |
|           | 2    | KEY1     | I          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)                             | Operation panel key scan return signal 1 |
|           | 3    | KEY2     | I          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)                             | Operation panel key scan return signal 2 |
|           | 4    | KEY3     | I          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)                             | Operation panel key scan return signal 3 |
|           | 5    | SCAN4    | O          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)                             | Scan signal 4                            |
|           | 6    | SCAN5    | O          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)                             | Scan signal 5                            |
|           | 7    | SCAN6    | O          | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse)                             | Scan signal 6                            |

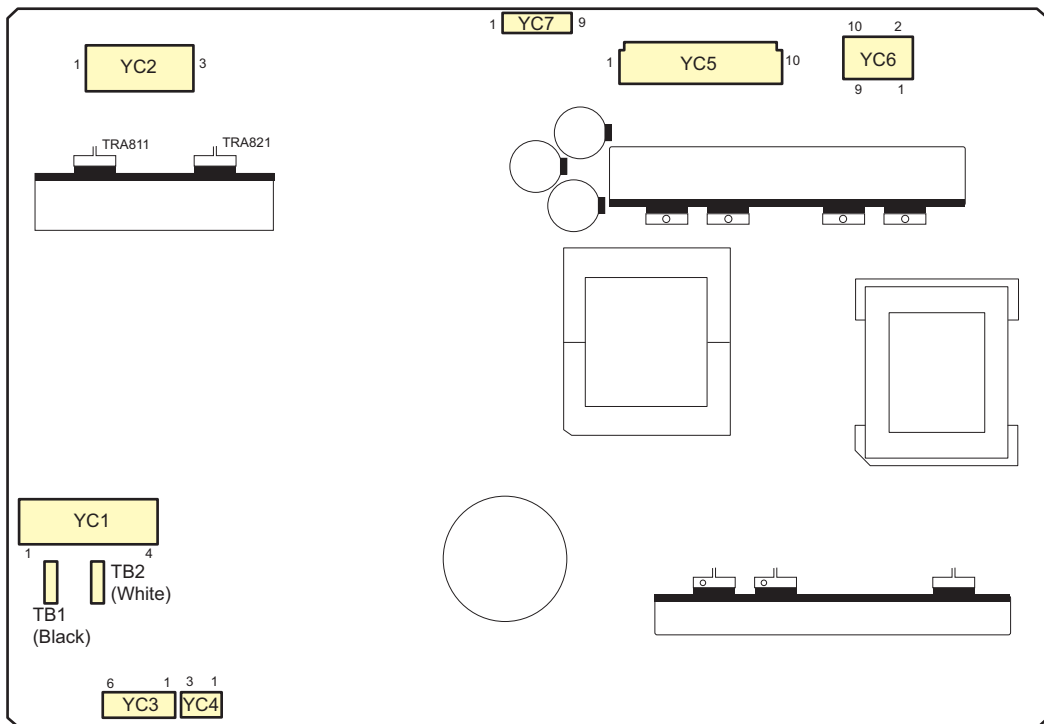
| Connector | Pin | Signal       | I/O | Voltage            | Description            |
|-----------|-----|--------------|-----|--------------------|------------------------|
| YC10      | 8   | SCAN7        | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Scan signal 7          |
|           | 9   | 10key_detect | I   | DC0V/3.3V          | Keyboard detect signal |
|           | 10  | GND          | -   | -                  | Ground                 |
| YC11      | 1   | 3.3V_main    | I   | 3.3 V DC           | 3.3 V DC power output  |
|           | 2   | GND          | -   | -                  | Ground                 |
|           | 3   | NFC_SWCLK    | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | 12C clock signal       |
|           | 4   | NFC_SWDA     | I/O | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | 12C data signal        |
|           | 5   | NIRQ         | O   | 0/1.8 V DC         | Interrupt signal       |

(4) Power supply PWB

(4-1)PWB photograph



(4-2)Connector position



## (4-3)Connector lists

## Destination

TB1, TB2: Inlet

YC1: Main power switch

YC2: Fuser heater 1,2, Fuser thermostat 1,2

YC3: Cassette heater

YC4: Cassette heater switch

YC5: Engine PWB, DF

YC6: Main PWB

YC7: Engine PWB

| Connector | Pin | Signal     | I/O | Voltage     | Description                   |
|-----------|-----|------------|-----|-------------|-------------------------------|
| TB1       | 1   | LIVE       | I   | 100 V AC    | AC power input                |
| TB2       | 1   | NEUTRAL    | I   | 100 V AC    | AC power input                |
| YC1       | 1   | LIVE       | O   | 100 V AC    | AC power output               |
|           | 2   | LIVE       | I   | 100 V AC    | AC power input                |
|           | 3   | NEUTRAL    | I   | 100 V AC    | AC power input                |
|           | 4   | NEUTRAL    | O   | 100 V AC    | AC power output               |
| YC2       | 1   | LIVE       | O   | 100 V AC    | AC power output               |
|           | 2   | MH         | O   | 100 V AC/0V | Fuser heater 1 control signal |
|           | 3   | SH         | O   | 100 V AC/0V | Fuser heater 2 control signal |
| YC3       | 1   | DH_LIVE    | O   | 100 V AC    | AC power output               |
|           | 2   | DH_LIVE    | -   | -           | Not used                      |
|           | 3   | NC         | -   | -           | Not used                      |
|           | 4   | NC         | -   | -           | Not used                      |
|           | 5   | DH_NEUTRAL | O   | 100 V AC    | AC power output               |
|           | 6   | DH_NEUTRAL | -   | -           | Not used                      |
| YC4       | 1   | DH_LIVE    | I   | 100 V AC    | AC power input                |
|           | 2   |            | -   | -           | Not used                      |
|           | 3   | DH_LIVE    | O   | 100 V AC    | AC power output               |
| YC5       | 1   | 24V1       | O   | 24 V DC     | 24 V DC power output          |
|           | 2   | 24V1       | O   | 24 V DC     | 24 V DC power output          |
|           | 3   | 24V2       | O   | 24 V DC     | 24 V DC power output          |
|           | 4   | 24V2       | O   | 24 V DC     | 24 V DC power output          |
|           | 5   | GNDDF      | -   | -           | Ground                        |
|           | 6   | GNDDF      | -   | -           | Ground                        |
|           | 7   | GND        | -   | -           | Ground                        |
|           | 8   | GND        | -   | -           | Ground                        |
|           | 9   | GND        | -   | -           | Ground                        |
|           | 10  | 5V0        | O   | 5 V DC      | 5 V DC power output           |
| YC6       | 1   | 5V0        | O   | 5 V DC      | 5 V DC power output           |
|           | 2   | GND        | -   | -           | Ground                        |
|           | 3   | 5V0        | O   | 5 V DC      | 5 V DC power output           |

| Connector | Pin | Signal      | I/O | Voltage            | Description                  |
|-----------|-----|-------------|-----|--------------------|------------------------------|
| YC6       | 4   | GND         | -   | -                  | Ground                       |
|           | 5   | 5V0         | O   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output to MPWB  |
|           | 6   | GND         | -   | -                  | Ground                       |
|           | 7   | 5V0         | O   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output to MPWB  |
|           | 8   | GND         | -   | -                  | Ground                       |
|           | 9   | 5V0         | O   | 5 V DC             | 5 V DC power output to MPWB  |
|           | 10  | GND         | -   | -                  | Ground                       |
| YC7       | 1   | 24V3IL      | O   | 24 V DC            | 24 V DC power output to EPWB |
|           | 2   | GND         | -   | -                  | Ground                       |
|           | 3   | POWER_OFF   | O   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Sleep signal                 |
|           | 4   | RELAY_REM   | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Power relay remote signal    |
|           | 5   | ZCROSS      | O   | 0/3.3 V DC (pulse) | Zero cross signal            |
|           | 6   | MH_REM      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Fuser heart 1 remote signal  |
|           | 7   | SH_REM      | I   | 0/3.3 V DC         | Fuser heart 2 remote signal  |
|           | 8   | DRREM       | -   | -                  | Not used                     |
|           | 9   | AC_DETECTOR | -   | -                  | Not used                     |

## 9Appendixes

### 9 - 1 Appendixes

#### (1) Repetitive defects gauge

\_\_\_\_\_ ← First occurrence of defect

===== ← 37.5 mm/1 1/2" Chager roller  
===== ← 39.3 mm/1 9/16" Developing roller  
\_\_\_\_\_ ← 46.5 mm/1 13/16" Right/Left registration roller  
===== ← 52.2 mm/1 15/16" Transfer roller

\_\_\_\_\_ ← 94 mm/3 11/16" Drum  
\_\_\_\_\_ ← 94.2 mm/3 11/16" Heat roller/Press roller

 **Note**

The repetitive marks interval may vary depending on operating conditions.



## 9 - 2 Firmware environment commands

The printer maintains a number of printing parameters in its memory. These parameters may be changed permanently with the FRPO (Firmware RePrOgram) commands.

This section provides information on how to use the FRPO command and its parameters using examples.

### Using FRPO commands for reprogramming firmware

The current settings of the FRPO parameters are listed as optional values on the service status page.

Note: Before changing any FRPO parameter, print out a service status page, so you will know the parameter values before the changes are made. To return FRPO parameters to their factory default values, send the FRPO INIT (FRPO-INITialize) command.(!R! FRPO INIT; EXIT;)

The FRPO command is sent to the printer in the following sequence:

!R! FRPO parameter, value; EXIT;

Example: Changing emulation mode to PC-PR201/65A

!R! FRPO P1, 11; EXIT;

### FRPO parameters

| Item                       | FRPO | Setting values  | Factory setting |
|----------------------------|------|---|-----------------|
| Top margin                 | A1   | Integer value in inches   | 0               |
|                            | A2   | Fraction value in 1/100 inches  | 0               |
| Left margin                | A3   | Integer value in inches   | 0               |
|                            | A4   | Fraction value in 1/100 inches  | 0               |
| Page length                | A5   | Integer value in inches   | 17              |
|                            | A6   | Fraction value in 1/100 inches  | 30              |
| Page width                 | A7   | Integer value in inches   | 17              |
|                            | A8   | Fraction value in 1/100 inches  | 30              |
| Default pattern resolution | B8   | 0: 300 dpi<br>1: 600 dpi  | 0               |
| Copy count                 | C0   | Number of copies to print:1-999   | 1               |
| Page orientation           | C1   | 0: Portrait<br>1: Landscape   | 0               |
| Default font No. *         | C2   | Middle two digits of power-up font  | 0               |
|                            | C3   | Last two digits of power-up font  | 0               |
|                            | C5   | First two digits of power-up font   | 0               |
| PCL font switch            | C8   | 0:HP compatibility mode (Characters higher than 127 are not printed.)<br>32:Conventional mode (Characters higher than 127 are printed. Supported symbol sets: ISO-60 Norway [00D], ISO-15 Italian [00I], ISO-11 Sweden [00S], ISO-6 ASCII [00U], ISO-4 U.K. [01E], ISO-69 France [01F], ISO-21 Germany [01G], ISO-17 Spain [02S], Symbol [19M]*1) | 0               |
| Printing concentration     | D4   | 1: Thin.<br>2: Slightly Thin.<br>3: Standard<br>4: Slightly Deep.<br>5: Deep.   | 3               |
| Total host buffer size     | H8   | 0 to 99 in units of the size defined by FRPO S5   | 5               |

| Item                                  | FRPO | Setting values  | Factory setting                      |
|---------------------------------------|------|---|--------------------------------------|
| Form feed time-out value              | H9   | Value in units of 5 seconds (1 to 99)   | 100V: 1<br>120V: 6<br>220-240V: 6    |
| Page reduction function               | J0   | 0: 100 %<br>5: 70 %<br>6: 81 %<br>7: 86 %<br>8: 94 %<br>9: 98 %   | 0                                    |
| KIR mode                              | N0   | 0: Off<br>2: On   | 2                                    |
| Duplex mode                           | N4   | 0: Off<br>1: Long edge binding<br>2: Short edge binding   | 0                                    |
| Sleep timer time-out time             | N5   | Value in units of 1 minute (1 to 240)   | 32 ppm: 30<br>40 ppm: 45             |
| Ecoprint level                        | N6   | 0: Off<br>2: On   | 0                                    |
| Default emulation mode                | P1   | 6: PCL 6<br>9: KPDL   | 100V: 6<br>120V: 9<br>220-240V: 6    |
| Carriage-return action                | P2   | 0: Ignores<br>1: Carriage-return<br>2: Carriage-return + linefeed   | 1                                    |
| Linefeed action                       | P3   | 0: Ignores<br>1: Linefeed<br>2: Linefeed + carriage-return  | 1                                    |
| Automatic emulation switching         | P4   | 0: AES disabled<br>1: AES enabled   | 100V: 0<br>120V: 1<br>220-240V: 0    |
| Alternative emulation                 | P5   | Sam6: PCL 6<br>9: KPDL  | 6                                    |
| Automatic emulation switching trigger | P7   | 0: Page eject commands<br>1: None<br>2: Page eject and prescribe EXIT commands<br>3: Prescribe EXIT commands<br>4: Formfeed (^L) commands<br>6: Prescribe EXIT and formfeed commands<br>10: Page eject commands; if AES fails, resolves to KPDL | 100V: 10<br>120V: 11<br>220-240V: 10 |
| Command recognition character         | P9   | ASCII code of 33 to 126   | 82 (R)                               |
| Default stacker                       | R0   | 1 (inner tray)<br>3 (1,000-sheet Finisher)<br>7 (3,000-sheet Finisher)  | 1                                    |

| Item               | FRPO | Setting values   | Factory setting                   |
|--------------------|------|--|-----------------------------------|
| Default paper size | R2   | 0: Size of the default paper cassette (See R4.)<br>1: Monarch (3-7/8 × 7-1/2 inches)<br>2: Business (4-1/8 × 9-1/2 inches)<br>3: International DL (11 × 22 cm)<br>4: International C5 (16.2 × 22.9 cm)<br>5: Executive (7-1/4 × 10-1/2 inches)<br>6: US Letter (8-1/2 × 11 inches)<br>7: US Legal (8-1/2 × 14 inches)<br>8: A4 (21.0 × 29.7 cm)<br>9: JIS B5 (18.2 × 25.7 cm)<br>10: A3 (29.7 × 42 cm)<br>11: B4 (25.7 × 36.4 cm)<br>12: US Ledger (11 × 17 inches)<br>13: ISO A5<br>14: A6 (10.5 × 14.8 cm)<br>15: JIS B6 (12.8 × 18.2 cm)<br>16: Commercial #9 (3-7/8 × 8-7/8 inches)<br>17: Commercial #6 (3-5/8 × 6-1/2 inches)<br>18: ISO B5 (17.6 × 25 cm)<br>19: Custom (11.7 × 17.7 inches)<br>20: B4toA4<br>21: A3toA4<br>22: A4toA4[98%]<br>23: STKtoA4<br>24: STKtoB4<br>30: C4 (22.9 × 32.4 cm)<br>31: Hagaki (10 × 14.8 cm)<br>32: Ofuku-hagaki (14.8 × 20 cm)<br>33: Officio II<br>38: 12 × 18<br>39: 8K<br>40: 16K<br>42: 8.5 × 13.5 inches<br>50: Statement<br>51: Folio<br>52: Youkei 2<br>53: Youkei 4 | 0                                 |
| Default cassette   | R4   | 0: MP tray<br>1: Cassette 1<br>2: Cassette 2<br>3: Cassette 3<br>4: Cassette 4<br>5: Cassette 5  | 1                                 |
| A4/letter equation | S4   | 0: Off<br>1: On  | 100V: 0<br>120V: 1<br>220-240V: 1 |
| Host buffer size   | S5   | 0: 10 KB<br>1: 100 KB<br>2: 1024 KB  | 1                                 |

| Item   | FRPO | Setting values  | Factory setting |
|--|------|---|-----------------|
| Wide A4                                      | T6   | 0: Off<br>1: On   | 0               |
| Line spacing *                               | U0   | Lines per inch (integer value)  | 6               |
|  | U1   | Lines per inch (decimal value)  | 0               |
| Character spacing *                          | U2   | Characters per inch (integer value)   | 10              |
|  | U3   | Characters per inch (decimal value)   | 0               |
| Country code                                 | U6   | 0: US-ASCII   | 100V: 0         |
|  |      | 1: France   | 120V: 53        |
|  |      | 2: Germany  | 220-240V: 53    |
|  |      | 3: UK   |                 |
|  |      | 4: Denmark  |                 |
|  |      | 5: Sweden   |                 |
|  |      | 6: Italy  |                 |
|  |      | 7: Spain  |                 |
|  |      | 8: Japan  |                 |
|  |      | 9: US Legal   |                 |
|  |      | 10: IBM PC-850 (Multilingual)   |                 |
|  |      | 11: IBM PC-860 (Portuguese)   |                 |
|  |      | 12: IBM PC-863 (Canadian French)  |                 |
|  |      | 13: IBM PC-865 (Norwegian)  |                 |
|  |      | 14: Norway  |                 |
|  |      | 15: Denmark 2   |                 |
|  |      | 16: Spain 2   |                 |
| 17: Latin America                            |      |   |                 |
| 50 - 99: HP PCL symbol set coding            |      |   |                 |
| Code set at power up in daisywheel emulation | U7   | 0: Same as the default emulation mode (P1)  | 53              |
|  |      | 1: IBM  |                 |
|  |      | 6: PCL  |                 |
| Font pitch for fixedpitch scalable font *    | U8   | Default font pitch (integer value)  | 10              |
|  | U9   | Default font pitch (decimal value)  | 0               |
| Font height for the default scalable font *  | V0   | Integer value in 100 points: 0 to 9   | 0               |
|  | V1   | Integer value in points: 0 to 99  | 12              |
|  | V2   | decimal value in 1/100 points: 0, 25, 50, 75  | 0               |
| Default scalable font *                      | V3   | Name of typeface of up to 32 characters, enclosed with single or double quotation marks | Courier         |

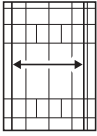
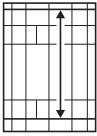
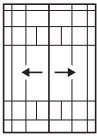
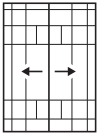
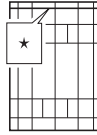
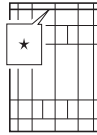
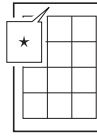
| Item  | FRPO     | Setting values   | Factory setting |
|---|----------|--|-----------------|
| Default weight<br>(courier and letter Gothic) | V9       | 0: Courier = darkness<br>Letter Gothic = darkness<br>1: Courier = regular<br>Letter Gothic = darkness<br>4: Courier = darkness<br>Letter Gothic = regular<br>5: Courier = regular<br>Letter Gothic = regular   | 5               |
| Paper type for the MP tray                    | X0       | 1: Plain<br>2: Transparency<br>3: Preprinted<br>4: Label<br>5: Bond<br>6: Recycle<br>7: Vellum<br>9: Letterhead<br>10: Color<br>11: Prepunched<br>12: Envelope<br>13: Cardstock<br>14: Coated<br>16: Thick<br>17: High quality<br>21 to 28: Custom1 to 8 | 1               |
| Paper type for cassettes 1 and 2              | X1<br>X2 | 1: Plain<br>3: Preprinted<br>5: Bond<br>6: Recycled<br>7: Vellum<br>9: Letterhead<br>10: Color<br>11: Prepunched<br>16: Thick<br>17: High quality<br>21 to 28: Custom1 to 8  | 1               |
| Paper type for optional cassettes 3 to 7      | X3<br>X4 | 1: Plain<br>3: Preprinted<br>5: Bond<br>6: Recycled<br>9: Letterhead<br>10: Color<br>11: Prepunched<br>17: High quality<br>21 to 28: Custom1 to 8  | 1               |
| PCL paper source                              | X9       | 0: Paper selection depending on an escape sequence compatible with HP-LJ5Si.<br>2: Paper selection depending on an escape sequence compatible with HP-LJ8000.  | 0               |
| Automatic continue for 'Press GO'             | Y0       | 0: Off<br>1: On  | 0               |

| Item  | FRPO | Setting values   | Factory setting |
|---|------|--|-----------------|
| Automatic continue timer  | Y1   | Value in units of 5 seconds (1 to 99)  | 6 (30 s)        |
| Error message for device error  | Y3   | 0: Not detect<br>127: Detect   | 127             |
| Duplex operation for specified paper type (Prepunched, Preprinted and Letterhead) | Y4   | 0: Off<br>1: On  | 0               |
| Default operation for PDF direct printing   | Y5   | 0: Enlarges or reduces the image to fit in the current paper size. Loads paper from the current paper cassette.<br>1: Through the image. Loads paper which is the same size as the image.<br>2: Enlarges or reduces the image to fit in the current paper size. Loads Letter, A4 size paper depending on the image size.<br>3: Through the image. Loads Letter, A4 size paper depending on the image size.<br>8: Through the image. Loads paper from the current paper cassette.<br>9: Through the image. Loads Letter, A4 size paper depending on the image size.<br>10: Enlarges or reduces the image to fit in the current paper size. Loads Letter, A4 size paper depending on the image size. | 0               |
| e-MPS error   | Y6   | 0: Does not print the error report and display the error message.<br>1: Prints the error report.<br>2: Displays the error message.<br>3: Prints the error report and displays the error message.   | 3               |

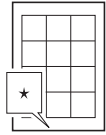
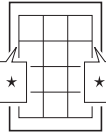
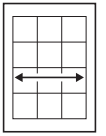
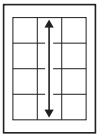
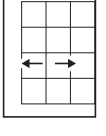
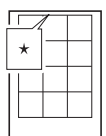
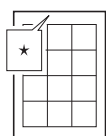
\*1 Characters higher than 127 are printed regardless of the C8 value. However, setting C8 to 0 does not print character code 160.

\*: Ignored in some emulation modes.

## 9 - 3 Chart of image adjustment procedures

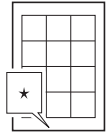
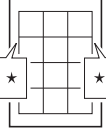
| Adjusting order | Item  | Image   | Description  | Maintenance mode |  | Original          | Page    | Remarks  |
|-----------------|---|---|--|------------------|--|-------------------|---------|--|
|                 |   |   |  | Item No.         | Mode   |                   |         |  |
| 1               | Adjusting the magnification in the main scanning direction (printing adjustment)      |    | Polygon motor speed adjustment   | U053             | POLYGON  | U053 test pattern | P.6-43  |  |
| 2               | Adjusting the magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (printing adjustment) |    | Drive motor speed adjustment   | U053             | MAIN   | U053 test pattern | P.6-43  |  |
| 3               | Adjusting the center line of the MP tray (printing adjustment)                        |    | Adjusting the LSU print start timing                                     | U034             | LSUOUT LEFT /MPT<br>LSUOUT LEFT /DUPLEX  | U034 test pattern | P.6-35  | To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select LSUOUT LEFT /DUPLEX.  |
| 4               | Adjusting the center line of the cassettes (printing adjustment)                      |   | Adjusting the LSU print start timing                                     | U034             | LSUOUT LEFT /<br>CASSETTE 1<br>LSUOUT LEFT /<br>CASSETTE 2<br>LSUOUT LEFT /<br>CASSETTE 3<br>LSUOUT LEFT /<br>CASSETTE 4 | U034 test pattern | P.6-35  | Cassette 1: select Center /CASSETTE 1<br>Cassette 2: select Center /CASSETTE 2<br>Cassette 3: select Center /CASSETTE 3<br>Cassette 4: select Center /CASSETTE 4 |
| 5               | Adjusting the leading edge registration of the MP tray (printing adjustment)          |  | Registration motor turning on timing (secondary paper feed start timing) | U034             | LSUOUT TOP /MPT(L)<br>LSUOUT TOP /<br>DUPLEX(L)  | U034 test pattern | P.6-35  | To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select LSUOUT TOP /DUPLEX(L).<br>PAPER WIDTH 218mm or more   |
| 6               | Adjusting the leading edge registration of the cassette (printing adjustment)         |  | Registration motor turning on timing (secondary paper feed start timing) | U034             | LSUOUT TOP<br>CASSETTE(L)  | U034 test pattern | P.6-35  | PAPER WIDTH 218mm or more  |
| 7               | Adjusting the leading edge margin (printing adjustment)                               |  | LSU illumination start timing  | U402             | LESD   | U402 test pattern | P.6-131 |  |

## &gt; Chart of image adjustment procedures

| Adjusting order | Item   | Image   | Description   | Maintenance mode |  | Original          | Page               | Remarks   |
|-----------------|--|---|---|------------------|--|-------------------|--------------------|---|
|                 |  |   |   | Item No.         | Mode   |                   |                    |   |
| 8               | Adjusting the trailing edge margin (printing adjustment)   |    | LSU illumination end timing                         | U402             | TRAIL  | U402 test pattern | P.6-131            |   |
| 9               | Adjusting the left and right margins (printing adjustment)                                       |    | LSU illumination start/end timing                   | U402             | A MARGIN<br>C MARGIN   | U402 test pattern | P.6-131            |   |
| 10              | Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the main scanning direction (scanning adjustment)      |    | Data processing                                     | U065<br>U070     | MAIN SCAN<br>MAIN SCAN(CIS)                                    | Test chart        | P.6-46<br>P.6-51   | U065: For copying an original placed on the platen.<br>U070: For copying originals from the DP.   |
| 11              | Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the auxiliary scanning direction (scanning adjustment) |   | Original scanning speed                             | U065<br>U070     | SUB SCAN<br>SUB SCAN (F)<br>SUB SCAN (B)<br><br>SUB SCAN (CIS) | Test chart        | P.6-46<br>P.6-51   | U065: For copying an original placed on the platen.<br>U070: For copying originals from the DP.<br>To make an adjustment for second side: select SUB SCAN(B) :Mechanism reversal model<br>To make an adjustment for second side: select SUB SCAN(B) :Double-sided simultaneous reading model    |
| 12              | Adjusting the center line (scanning adjustment)  |  | Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment) | U067<br>U072     | FRONT<br><br>FRONT<br>BACK<br><br>CIS                          | Test chart        | P.6-49<br>P.6-54   | U067: For copying an original placed on the platen.<br>U072: For copying originals from the DP.<br>To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select BACK. :Mechanism reversal model<br>To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select CIS. :Double-sided simultaneous reading model           |
| 13              | Adjusting the leading edge registration (scanning adjustment)                                    |  | Original scan start timing                          | U066<br>U071     | FRONT<br><br>FRONT HEAD<br>BACK HEAD<br><br>CIS HEAD           | Test chart        | P.6-48<br>P.6-52   | U066: For copying an original placed on the platen.<br>U071: For copying originals from the DP.<br>To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select BACK HEAD. :Mechanism reversal model<br>To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select CIS HEAD. :Double-sided simultaneous reading model |
| 14              | Adjusting the leading edge margin (scanning adjustment)  |  | Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment) | U403<br>U404     | B MARGIN<br><br>B MARGIN                                       | Test chart        | P.6-132<br>P.6-133 | U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass<br>U404: For copying originals from the DP.   |



> Chart of image adjustment procedures

| Adjusting order | Item   | Image   | Description   | Maintenance mode |                                  | Original   | Page    | Remarks   |
|-----------------|--|---|---|------------------|----------------------------------|------------|---------|---|
|                 |  |   |   | Item No.         | Mode                             |            |         |   |
| 15              | Adjusting the trailing edge margin (scanning adjustment)   |  | Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment) | U403             | D MARGIN                         | Test chart | P.6-132 | U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass<br>U404: For copying originals from the DP. |
|                 |  |   |   | U404             | D MARGIN                         |            | P.6-133 |   |
| 16              | Adjusting the left and right margins (scanning adjustment) |  | Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment) | U403             | A MARGIN                         | Test chart | P.6-132 | U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass<br>U404: For copying originals from the DP. |
|                 |  |   |   | U404             | C MARGIN<br>A MARGIN<br>C MARGIN |            | P.6-133 |   |

**Image quality**

| Item                                      | Specifications  |
|---|---|
| 100% magnification                        | Machine: ±0.8%<br>Using DP: ±1.5%   |
| Enlargement/reduction                     | Machine: ±1.0%<br>Using DP: ±1.5%   |
| Lateral squareness                        | Machine: ±1.5 mm/375 mm<br>Using DP: ±2.5 mm/375 mm                           |
| Leading edge registration                 | Cassette: +1.0/-1.5 mm<br>MP tray: +1.0/-1.5 mm<br>Duplex: +1.0/-1.5 mm       |
| Skewed paper feed (left-right difference) | Cassette: 1.5 mm or less<br>MP tray: 1.5 mm or less<br>Duplex: 2.0 mm or less |
| Lateral image shifting                    | Cassette: ±2.0 mm<br>MP tray: ±2.0 mm<br>Duplex: ±3.0 mm                      |

When maintenance item U411 (Automatic adjustment in the scanner) is run using the specified original (P/N 7505000005), the following adjustments are automatically made:

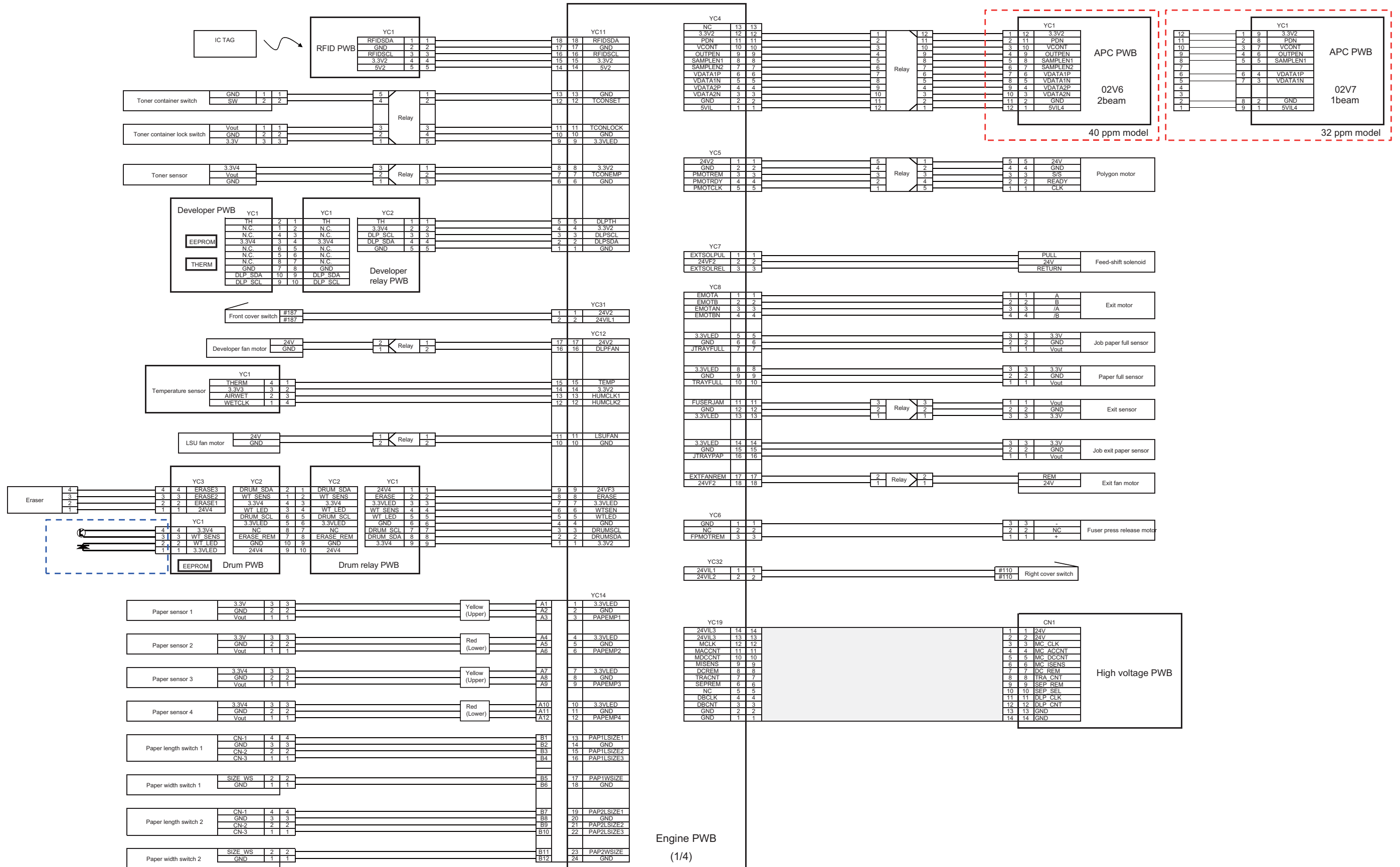
- Adjusting the scanner magnification (U065)
- Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration (U066)
- Adjusting the scanner center line (U067)

When maintenance item U411 (Automatic adjustment in the DP) is run using the specified original (P/N 302AC68243), the following adjustments are automatically made:

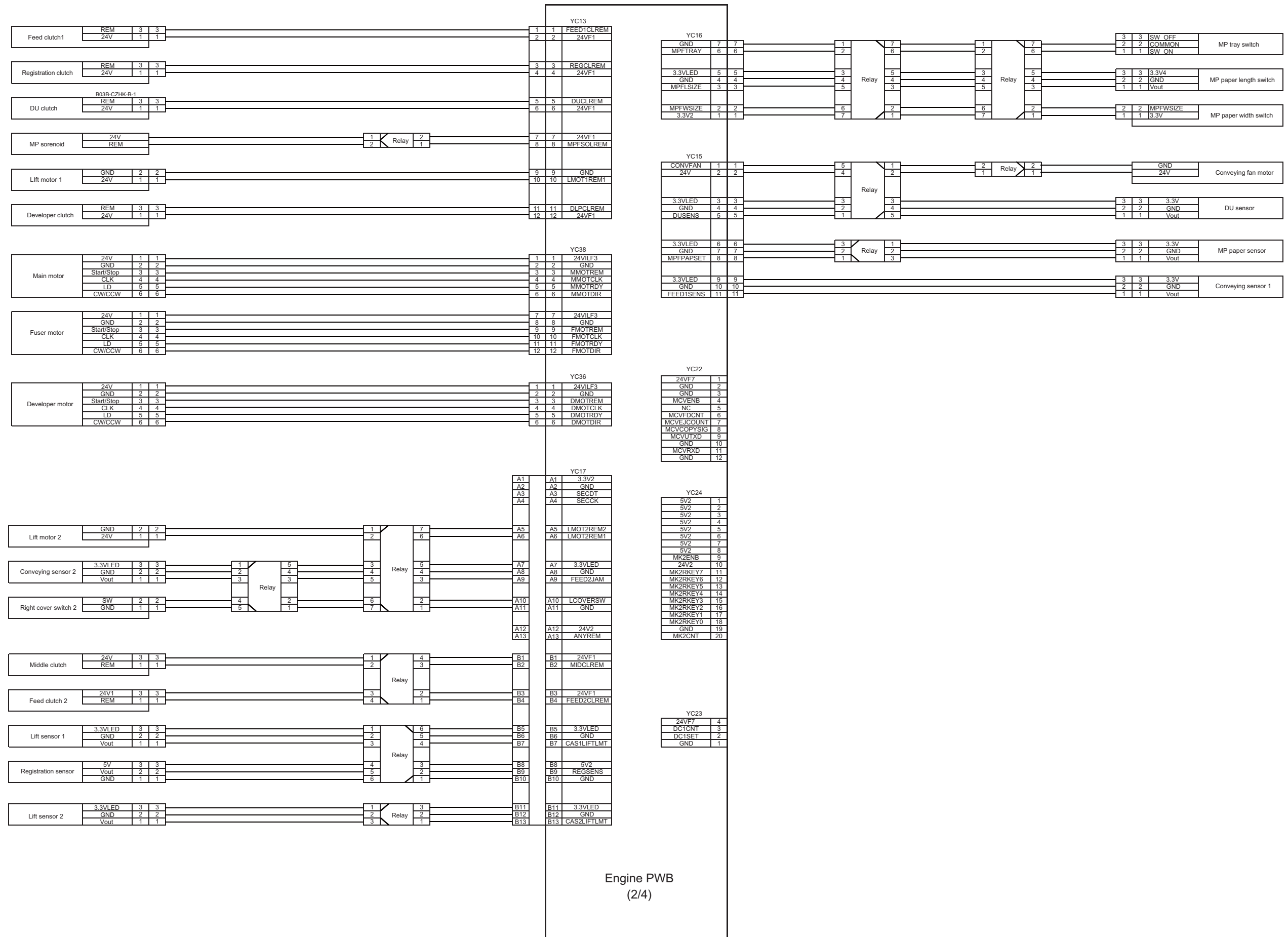
- When running this test chart, you first must clean the feed rollers with alcohol and ensure the DP width guides are correctly positioned against the original.

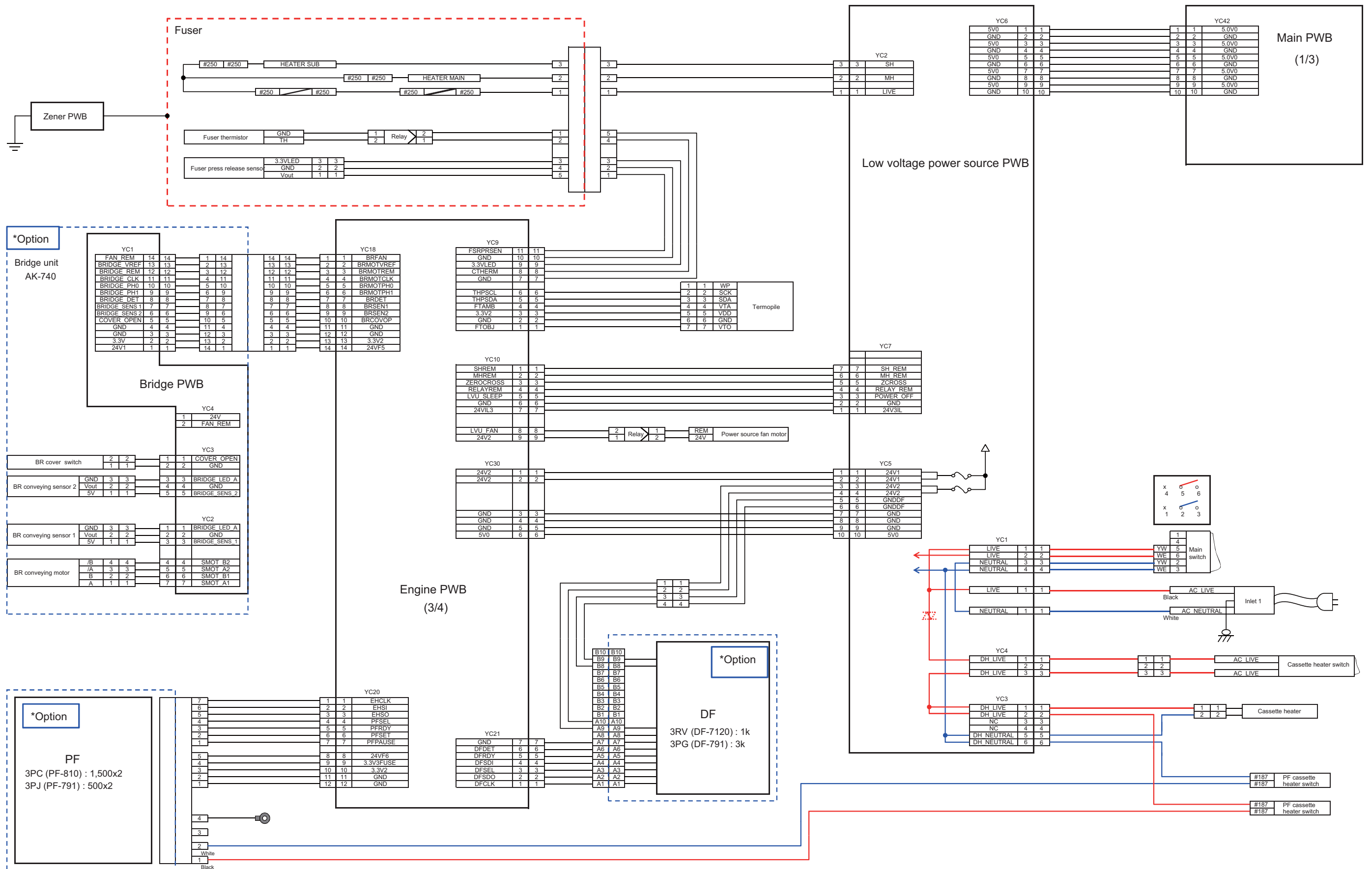
- Adjusting the DP magnification (U070)
- Adjusting the DP leading edge registration (U071)
- Adjusting the DP center line (U072)

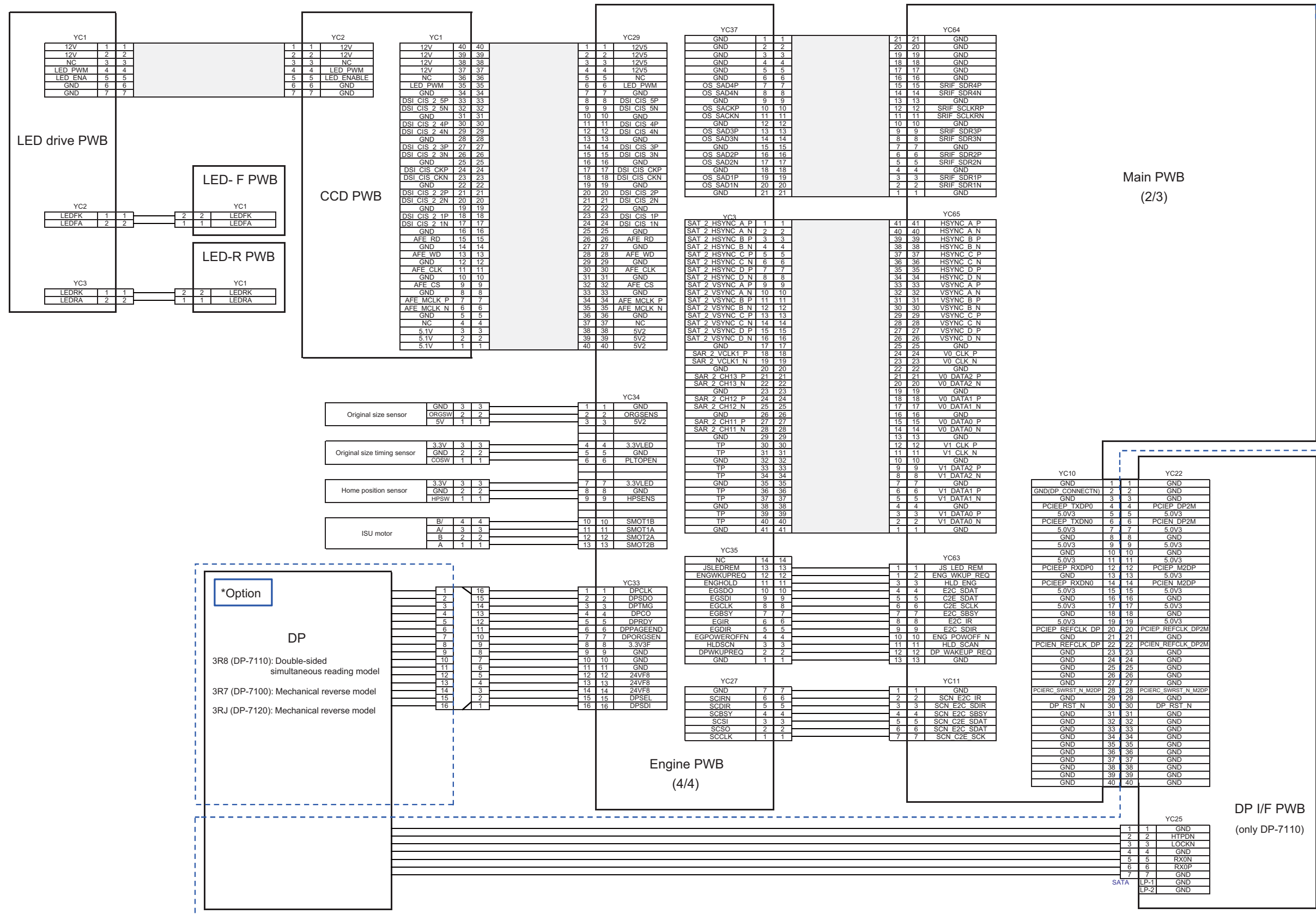
### 9 - 4 Wiring diagram

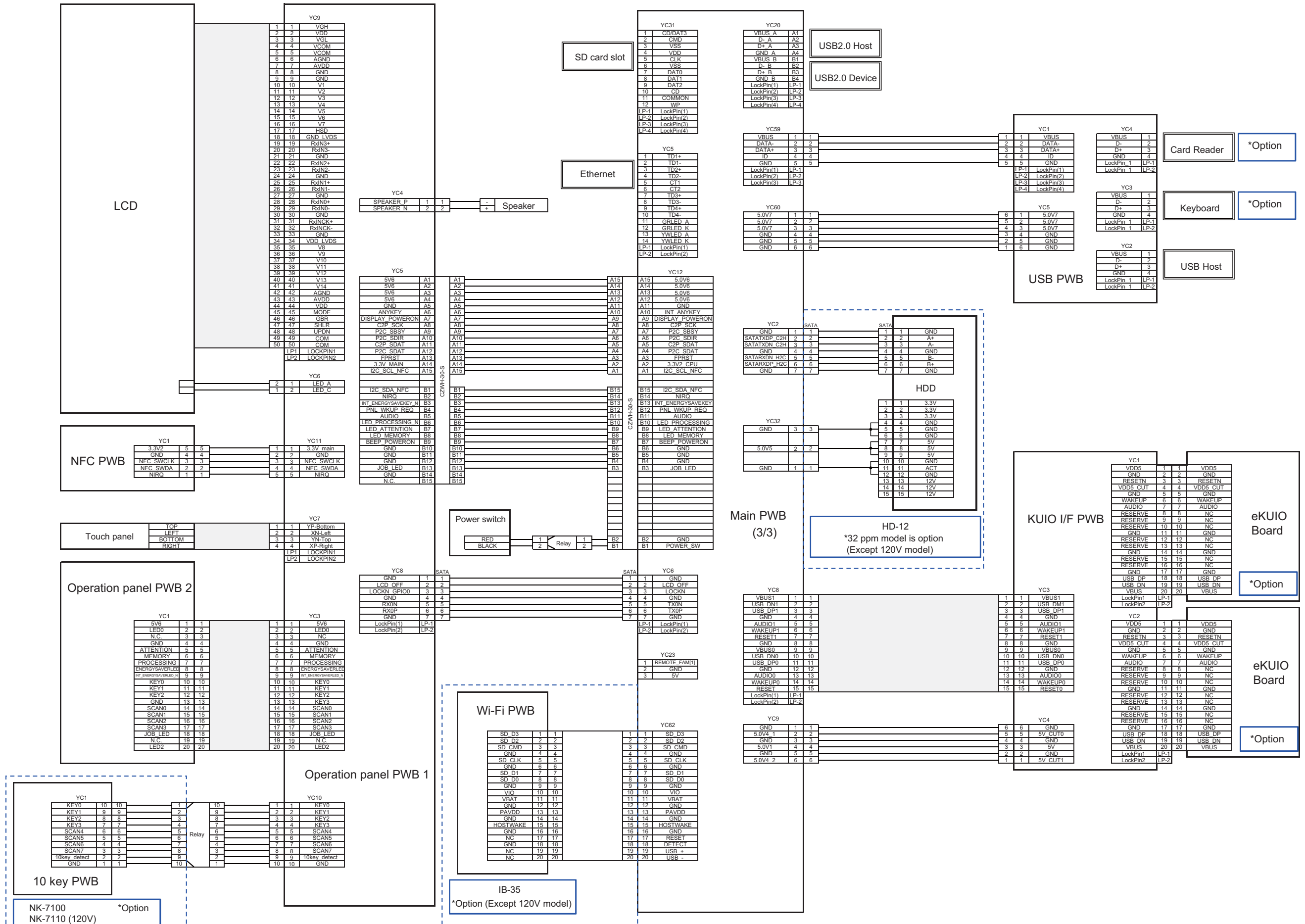


> Wiring diagram









## 9 - 5 Installation Guide

(1) DP-7100

# DP-7100 / (Document processor) Installation Guide

**INSTALLATION GUIDE**

**GUIDE D'INSTALLATION**

**GUÍA DE INSTALACION**

**INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG**

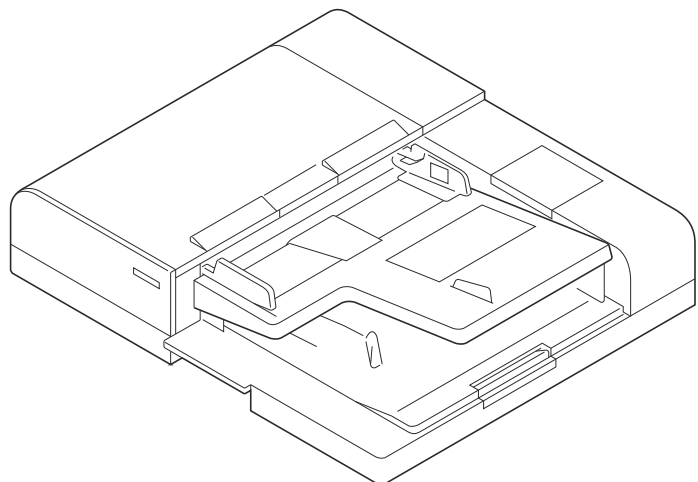
**GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE**

**安装手册**

**설치안내서**

**設置手順書**

**DP-7100**

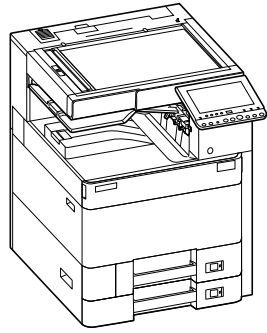




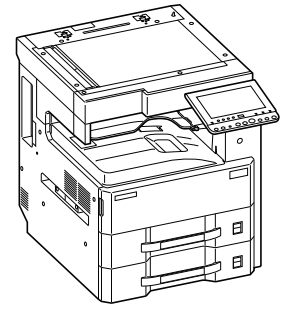
**A**

Color MFP  
25/25ppm,32/32ppm,  
35/35ppm,40/40ppm,  
50/50ppm,60/55ppm

Black & White MFP  
40ppm,50ppm,60ppm

**B**

Black & White MFP  
30ppm,32ppm,  
35ppm,40ppm

**English**

A different procedure is required depending on the product which is installed with this unit. Each procedure is described in the following pages. For installation with a MFP(A), see Page 1 to Page 5, Page 10 to Page 28. For installation with a MFP(B), see Page 6 to Page 28.

**Français**

Une procédure différente est requise selon le produit qui est installé avec cette unité. Chaque procédure est décrite dans les pages suivantes. Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(A), voir Page 1 à Page 5, Page 10 à Page 28. Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(B), voir Page 6 à Page 28.

**Español**

El procedimiento es diferente según el producto que se instale con esta unidad. En las siguientes páginas, se describe cada procedimiento. Para la instalación con un MFP(A), consulte las páginas de la 1 a la 5, páginas de la 10 a la 28. Para la instalación con un MFP(B), consulte las páginas de la 6 a la 28.

**Deutsch**

Je nach verwendetem Modell ist eine andere Vorgehensweise zur Installation dieses Teils erforderlich. Die unterschiedlichen Vorgehensweisen werden auf den folgenden Seiten erläutert. Bei Installation an einem MFP(A) siehe Seiten 1 bis 5, Seiten 10 bis 28. Bei Installation an einem MFP(B) siehe Seiten 6 bis 28.

**Italiano**

Si richiede una procedura diversa in funzione del prodotto su cui è installata l'unità. Le singole procedure sono descritte nelle pagine seguenti. Per l'installazione con un MFP(A), vedere le pagine da 1 a 5, pagine da 10 a 28. Per l'installazione con un MFP(B), vedere le pagine da 6 a 28.

**简体中文**

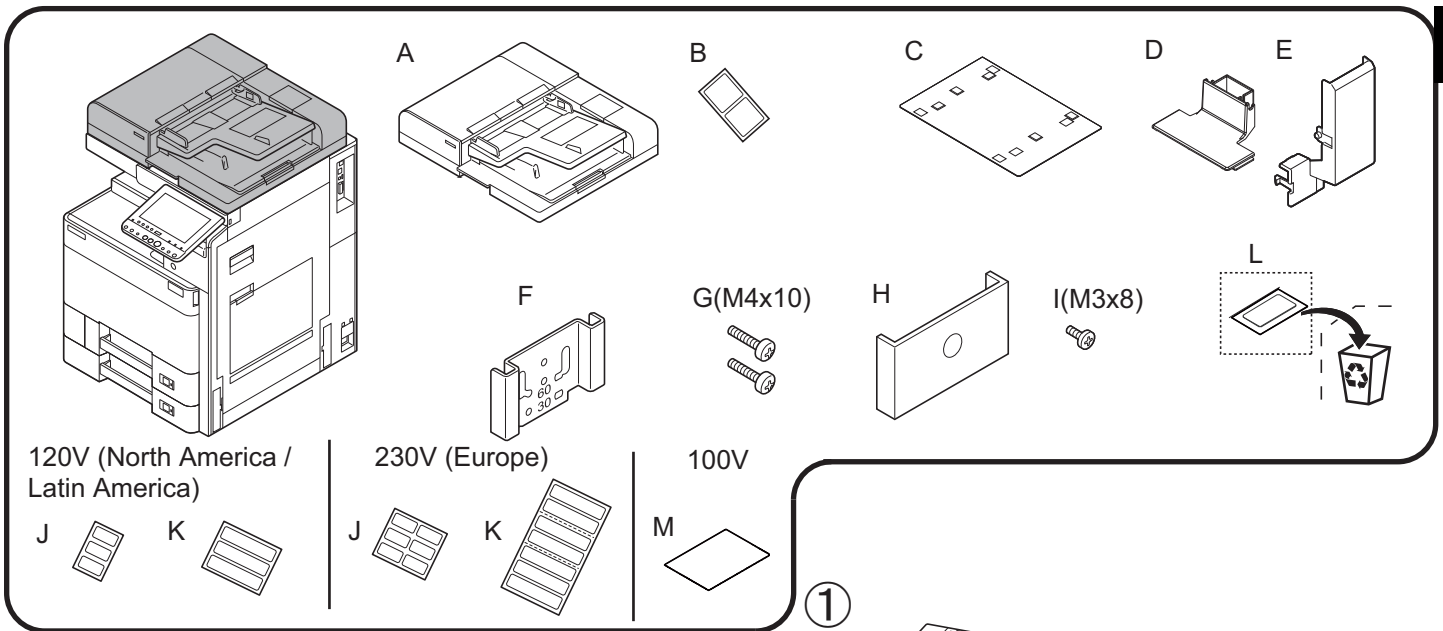
根据安装对象，安装步骤略有不同。各个步骤记载在下面的页面。  
安装到 MFP(A) 上时，请参见 P1-P5, P10-P28。  
安装到 MFP(B) 上时，请参见 P6-P28。

**한국어**

이 장치에 설치되는 제품에 따라 절차가 다릅니다. 다음 페이지에서 각 절차를 설명합니다.  
MFP(A) 에 설치하는 경우 1 페이지 ~5 페이지, 10 페이지 ~28 페이지를 참조하십시오.  
MFP(B) 에 설치하는 경우 6 페이지 ~28 페이지를 참조하십시오.

**日本語**

装着する対象によって、取付手順は異なります。それぞれ、以下のページに記載しています。  
MFP(A) に設置する場合; 1 ページ ~ 5 ページ, 10 ページ ~ 28 ページ  
MFP(B) に設置する場合; 6 ページ ~ 28 ページ

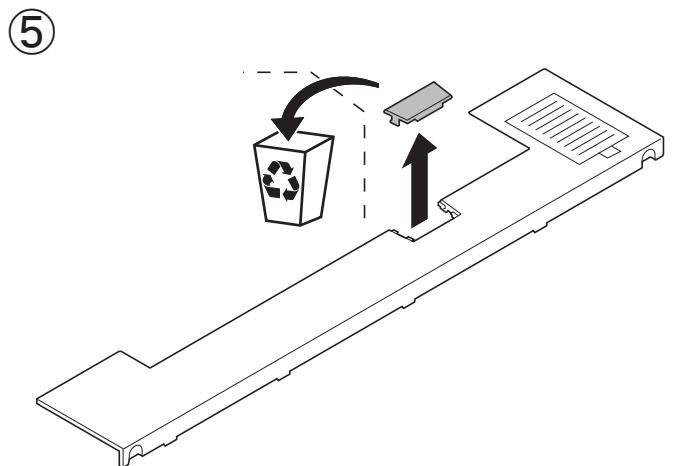
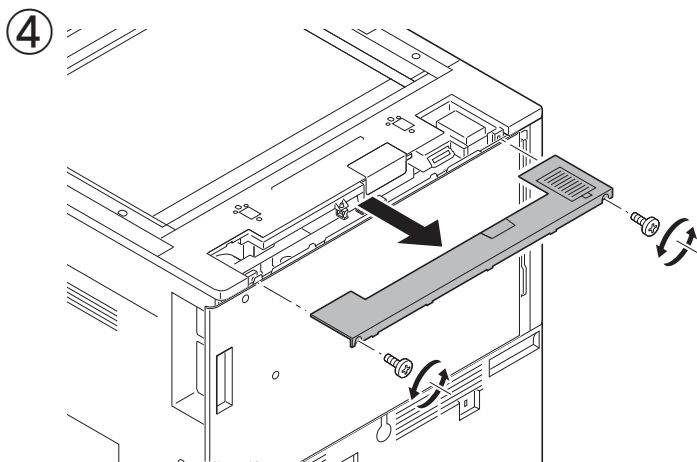
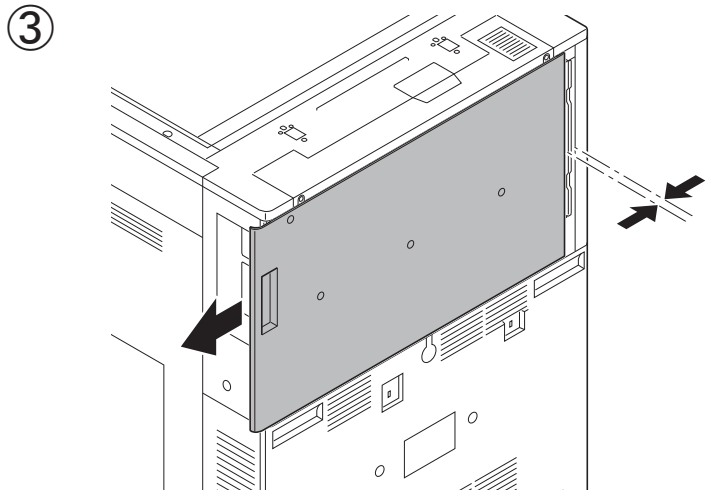
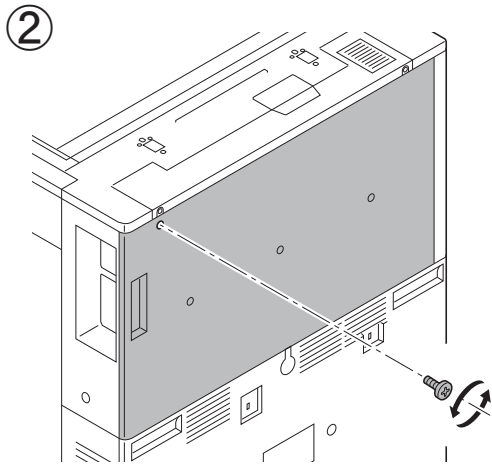
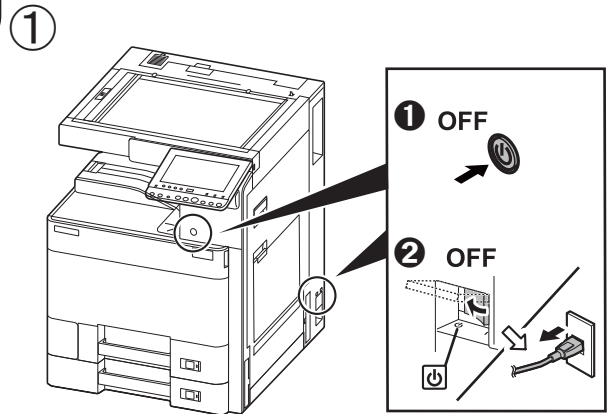


120V (North America / Latin America)

230V (Europe)

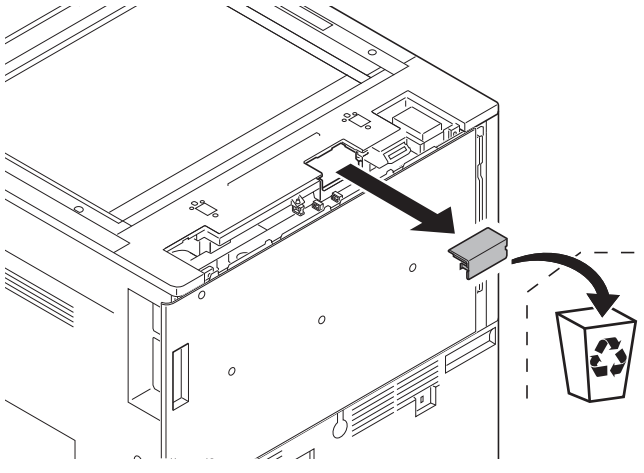
100V

- Ⓜ ENG Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
- Ⓜ FR Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- Ⓜ ES Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- Ⓜ DE Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.
- Ⓜ IT Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.
- Ⓜ CN 如果附属品上带有固定胶带, 缓冲材料时务必揭下。
- Ⓜ KO 동봉품에 고정 테이프, 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오.
- Ⓜ JP 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。

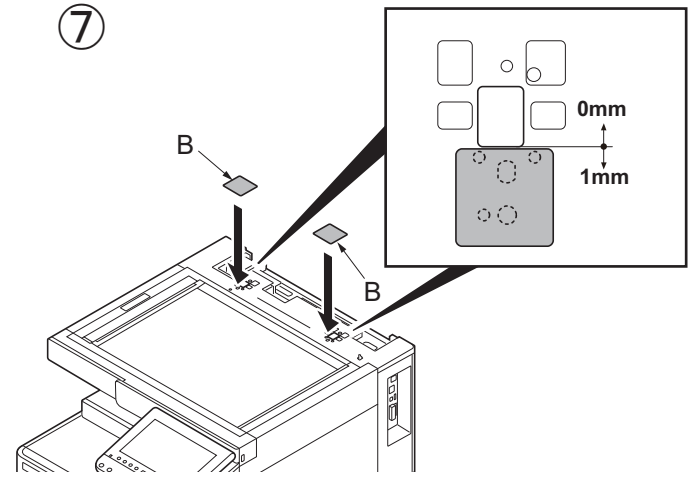


A

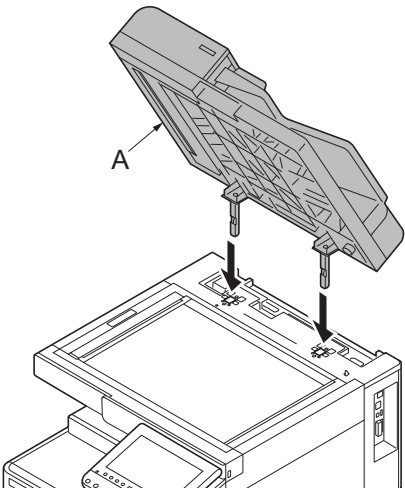
⑥



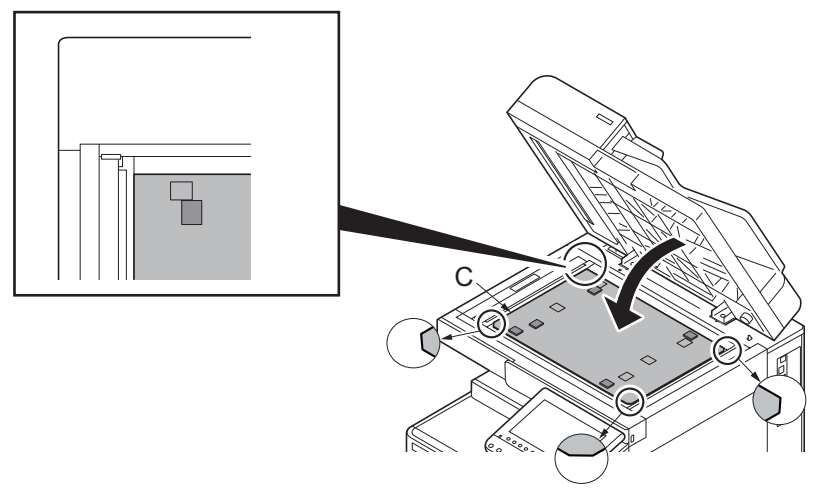
⑦



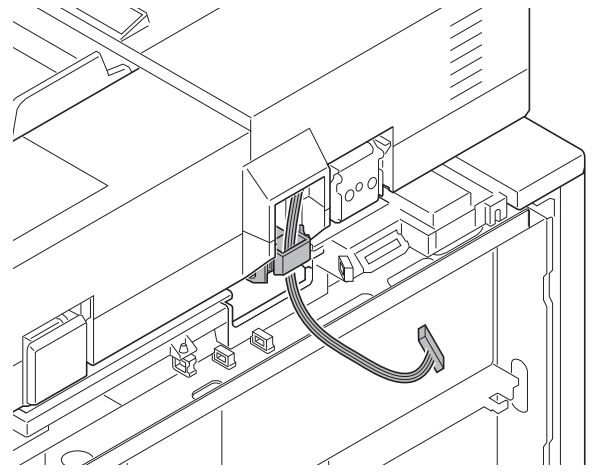
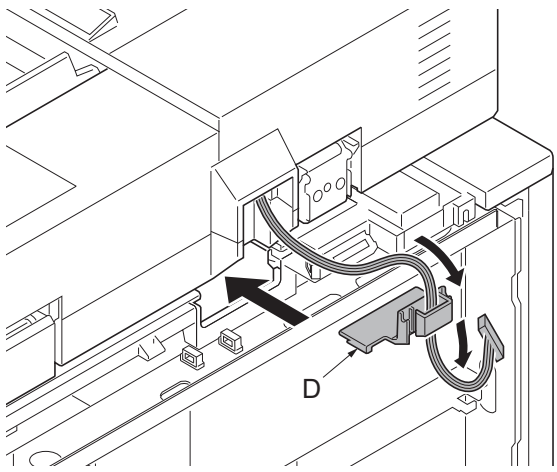
⑧



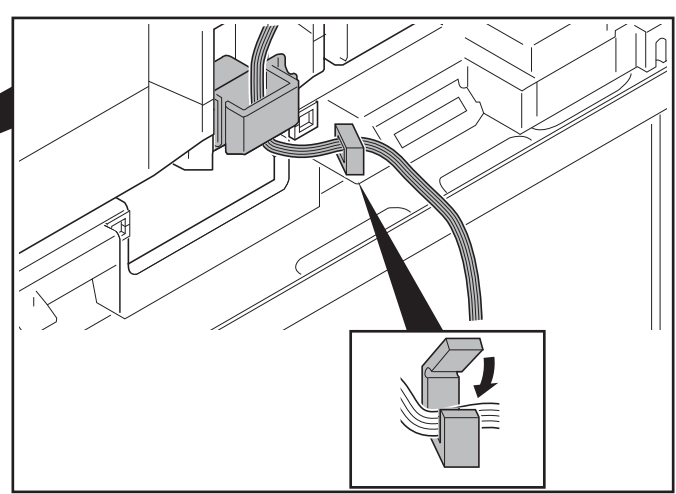
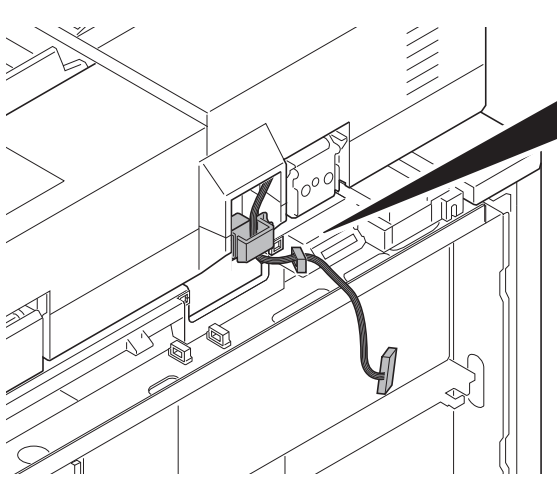
⑨

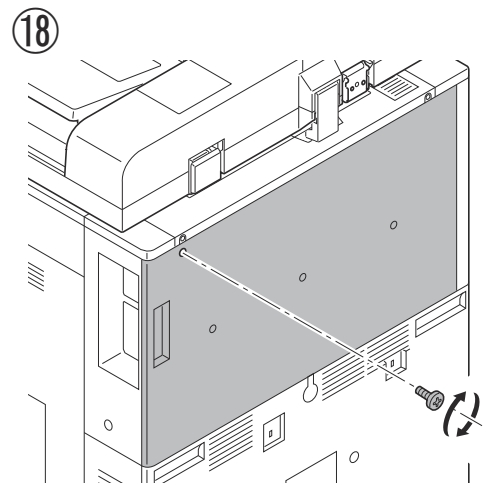
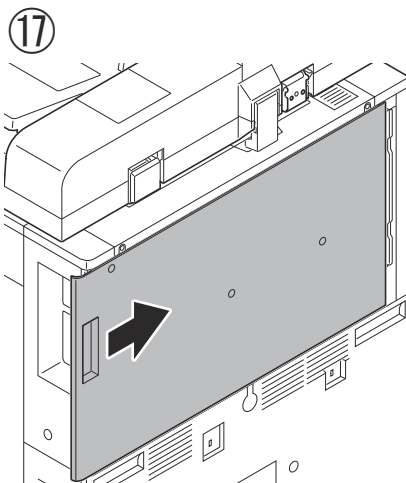
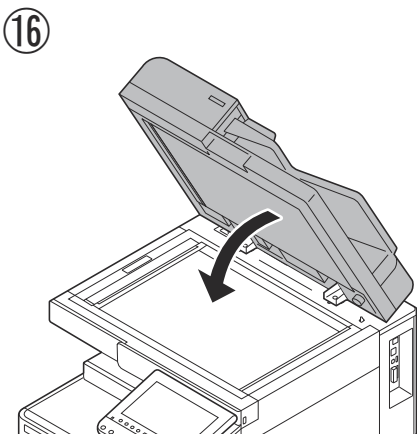
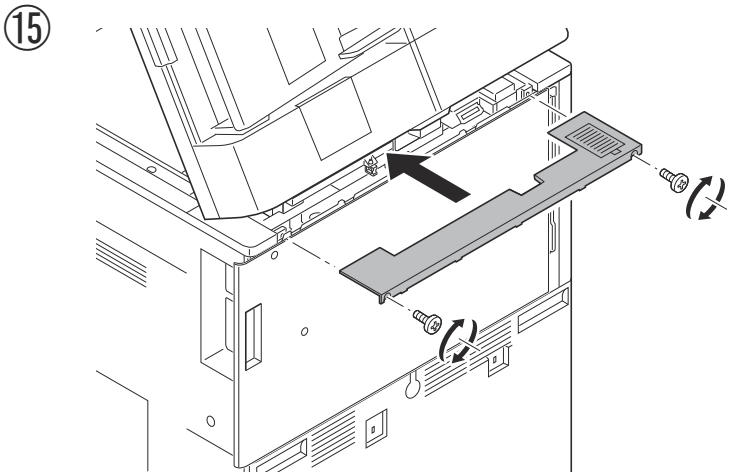
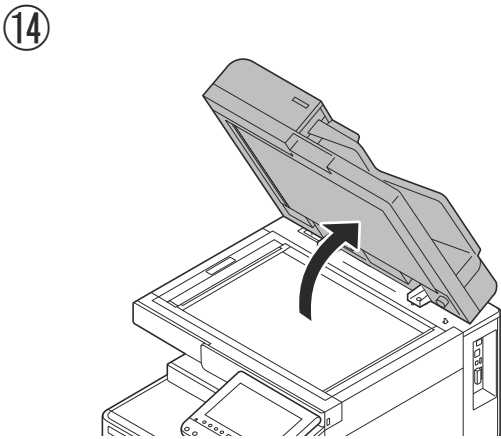
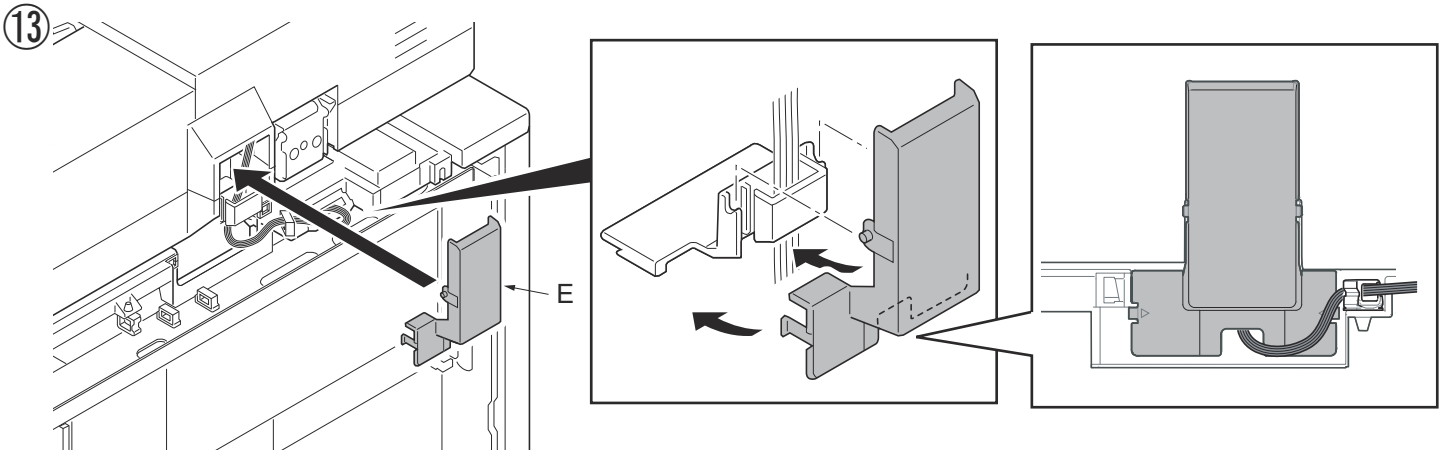
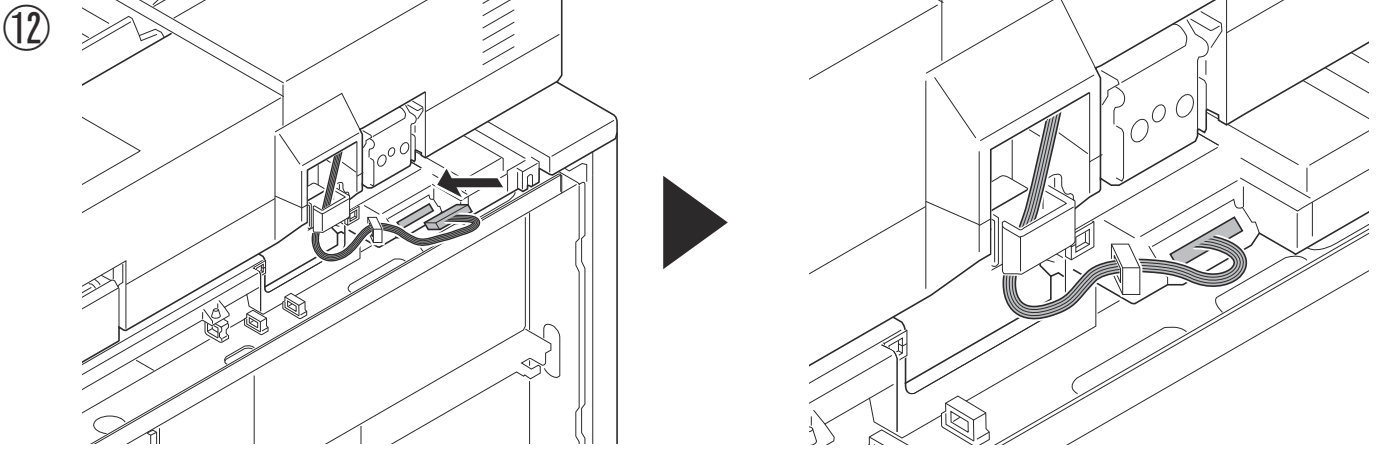


⑩



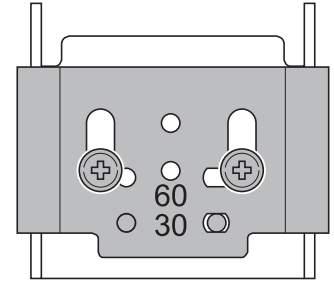
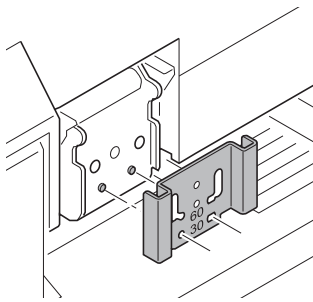
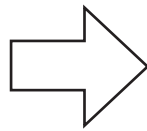
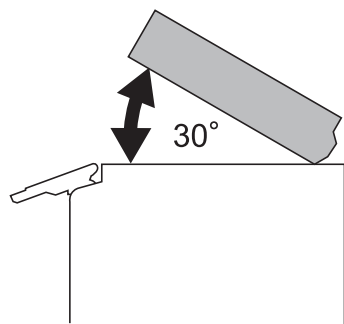
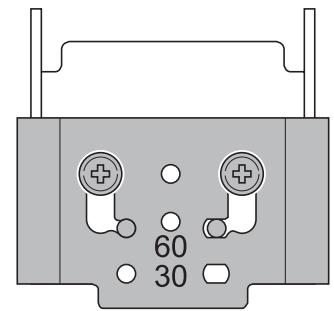
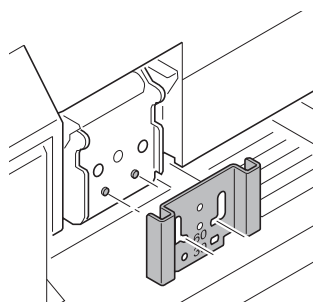
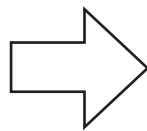
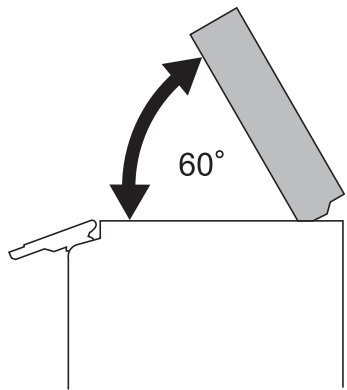
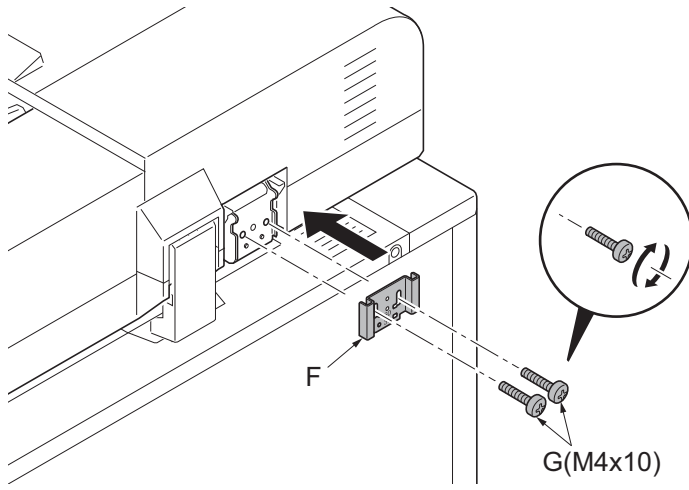
⑪



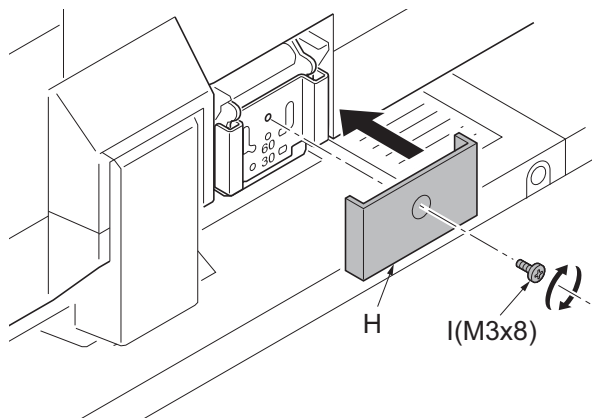


A

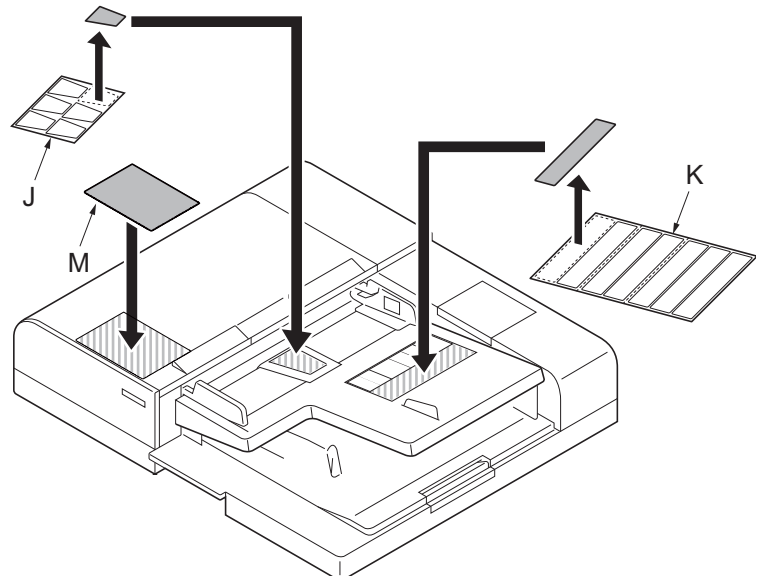
19



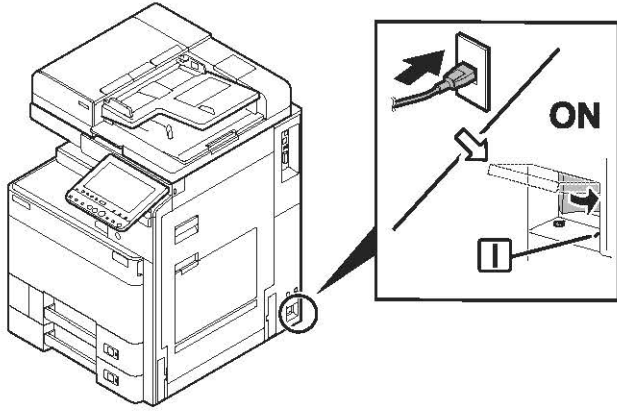
20



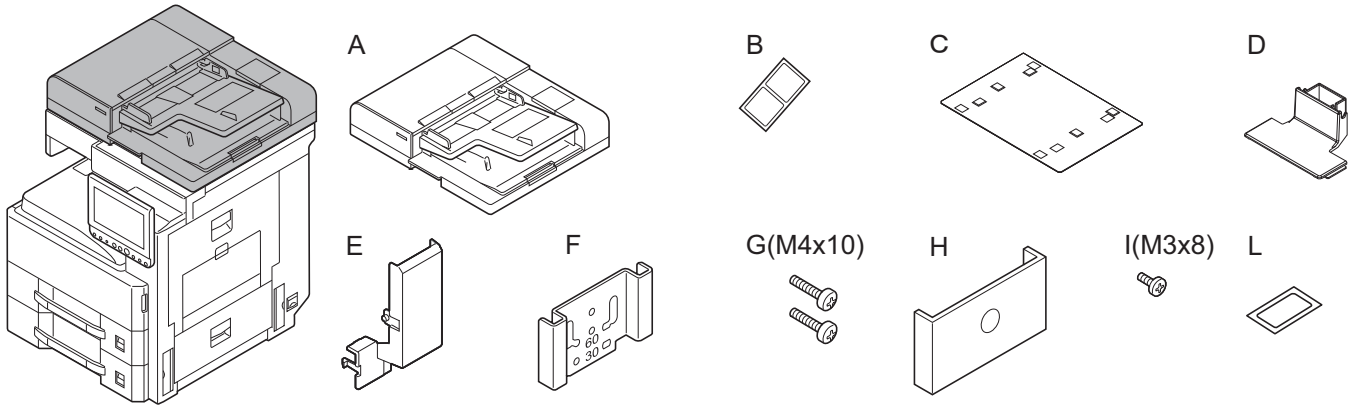
21



22



B

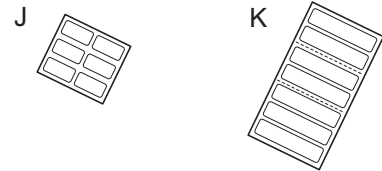


- ENG Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
- FR Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- ES Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- DE Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.
- IT Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.
- CN 如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。
- KO 동봉품에 고정 테이프, 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오.
- JP 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。

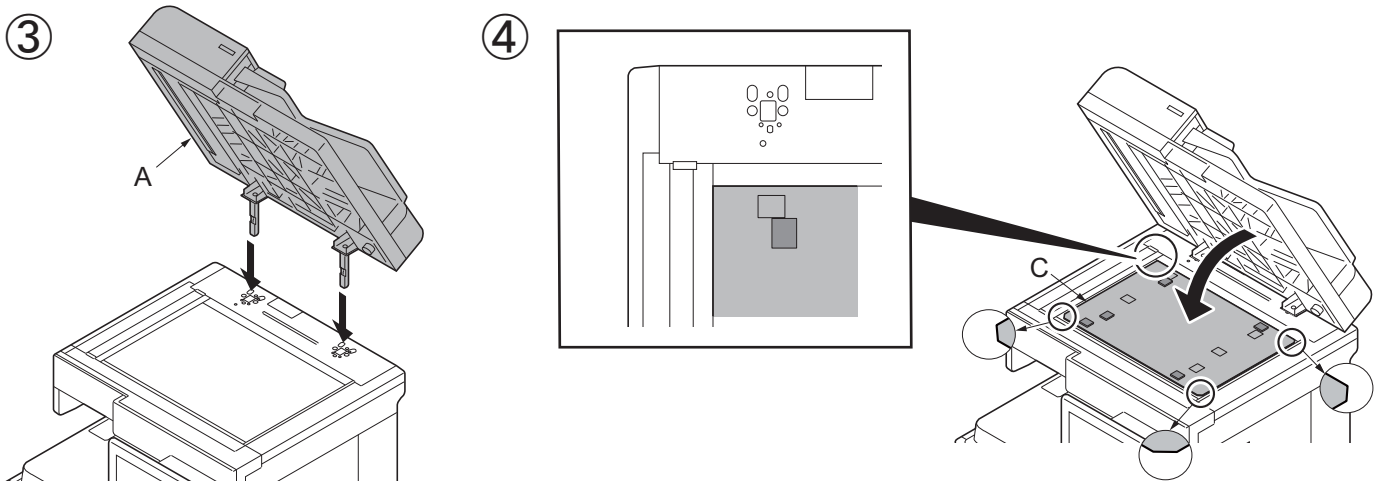
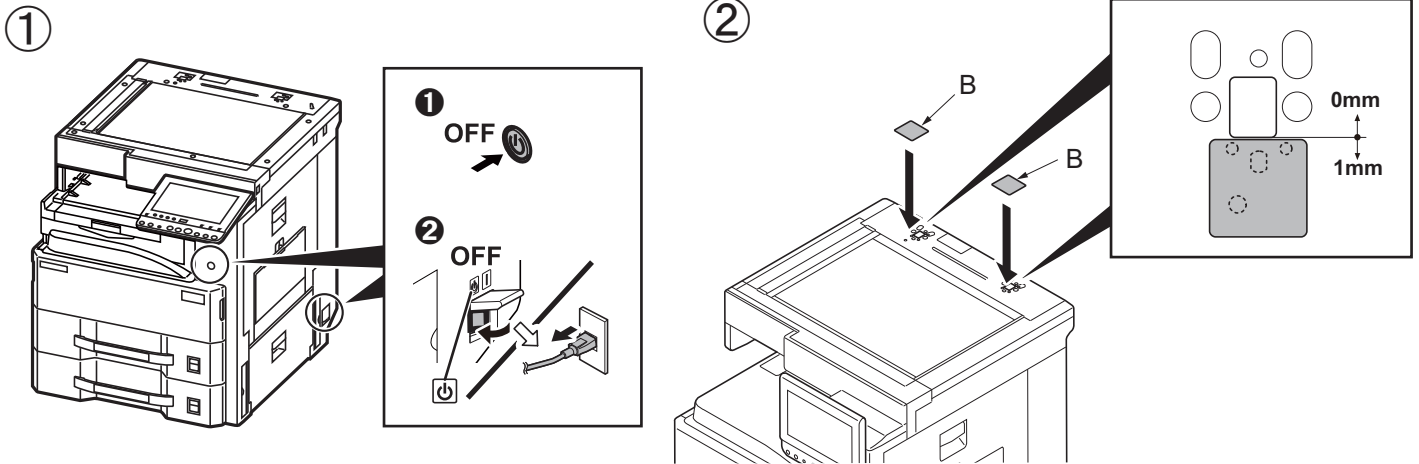
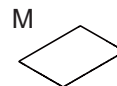
120V (North America / Latin America)

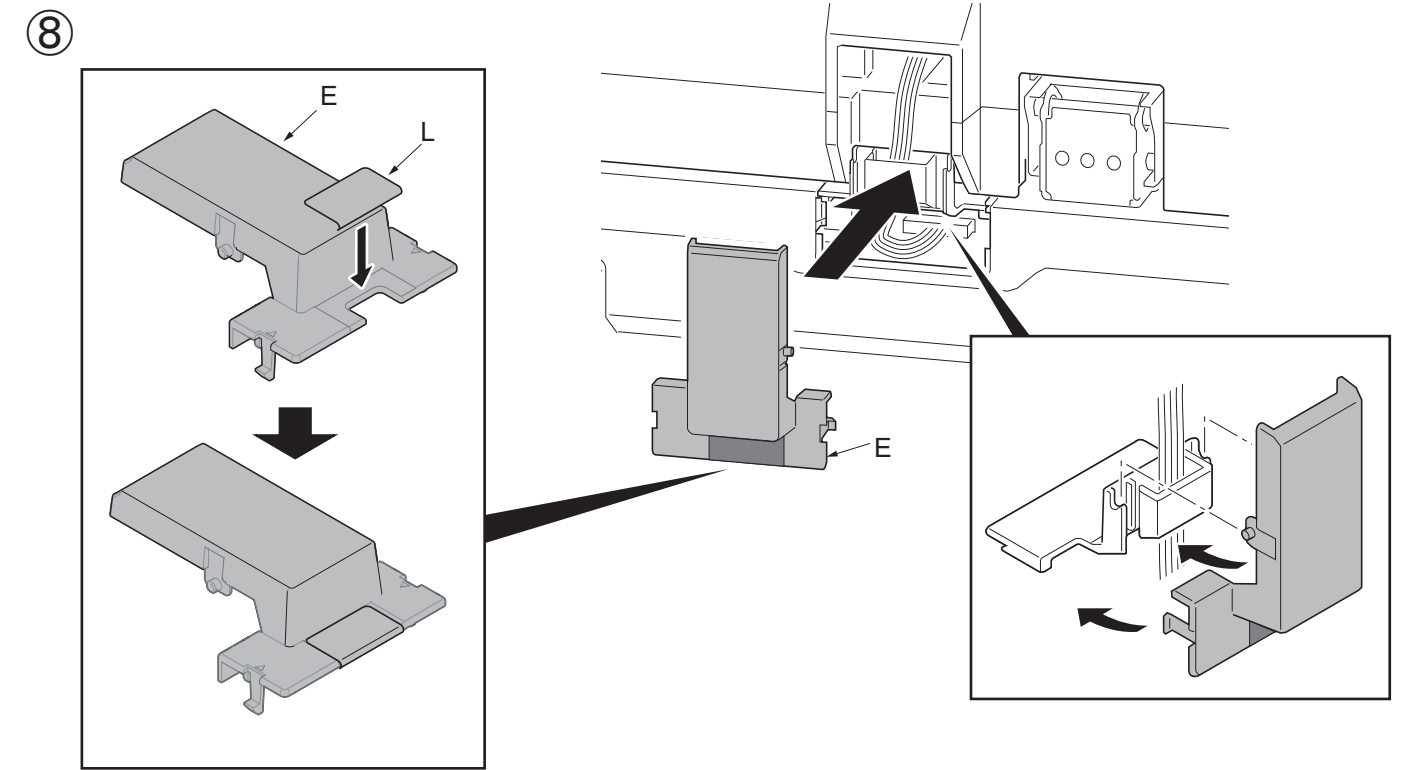
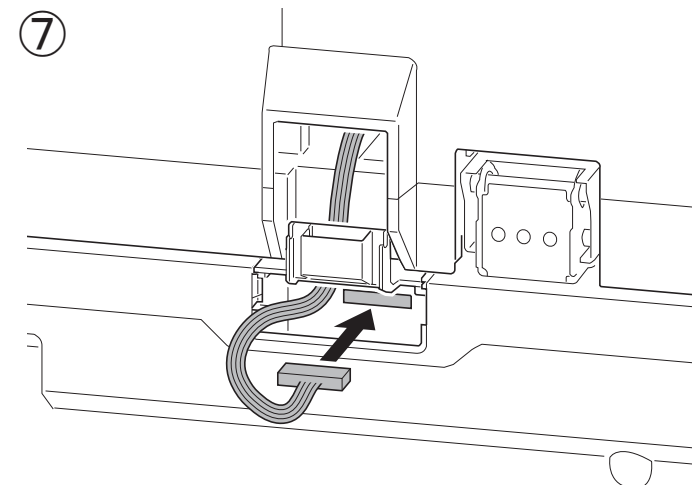
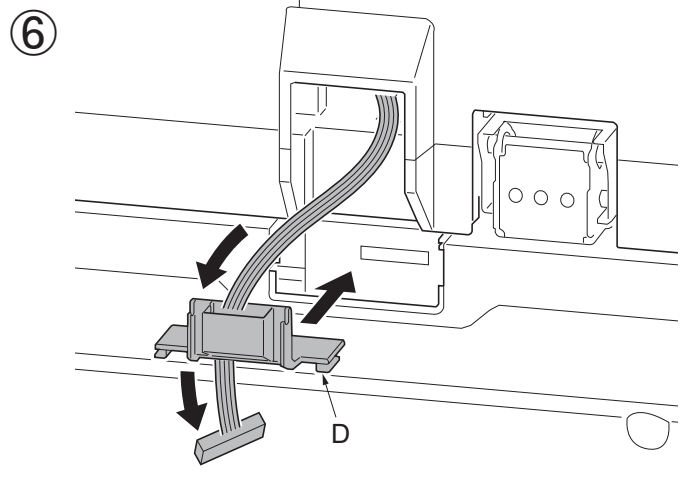
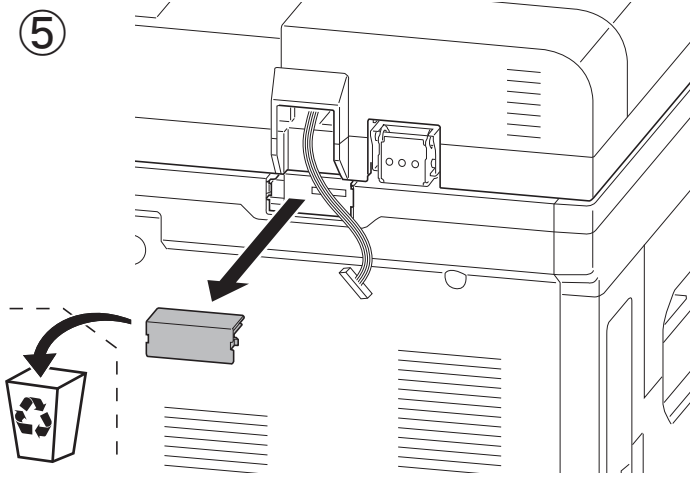


230V (Europe)



100V

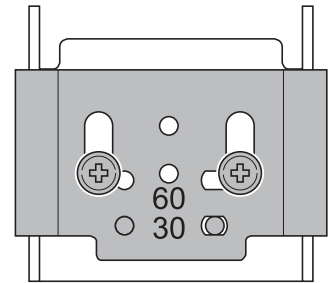
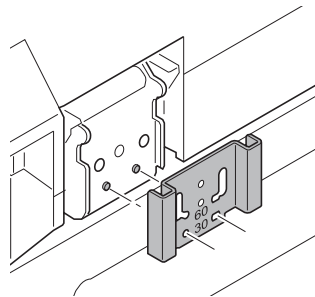
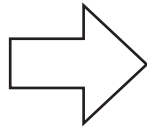
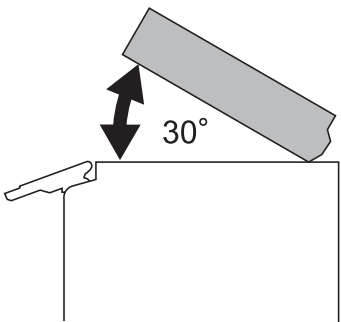
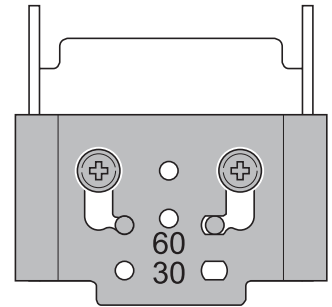
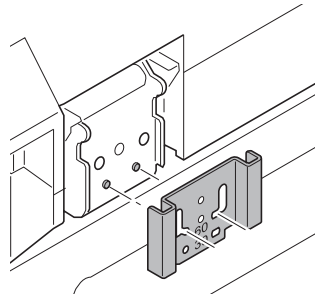
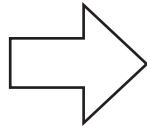
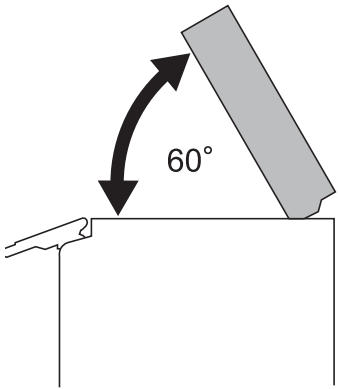
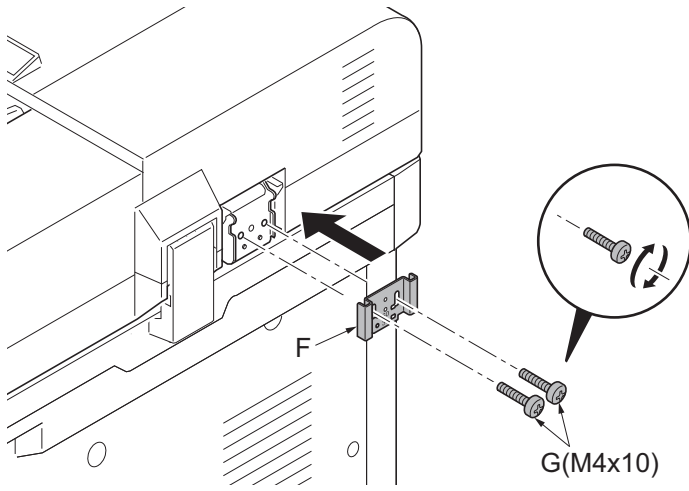




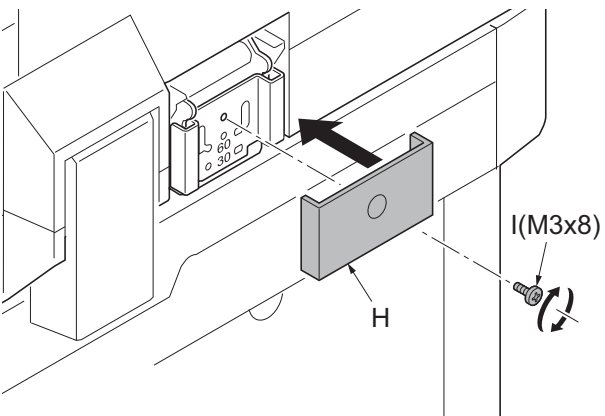


B

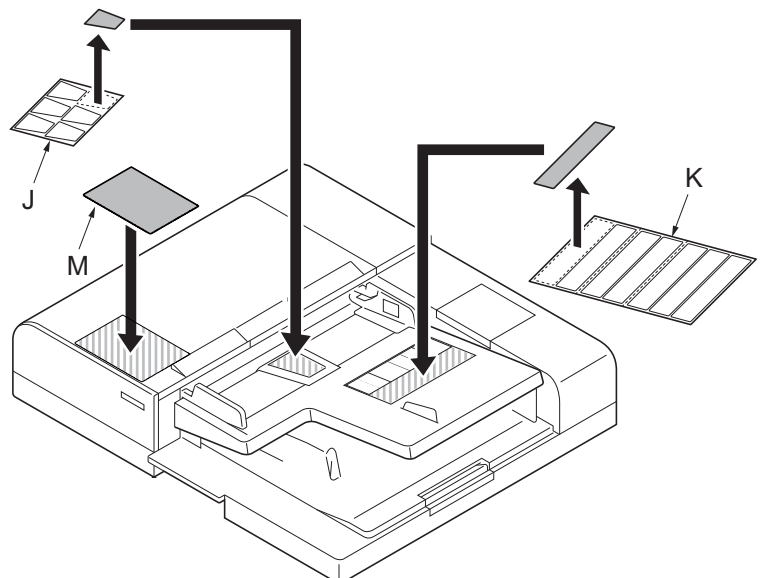
9



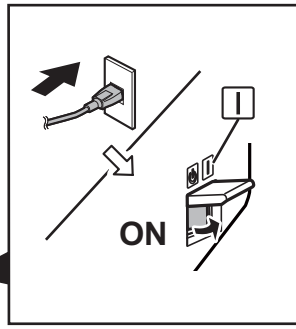
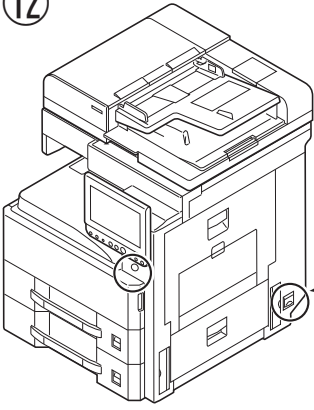
10



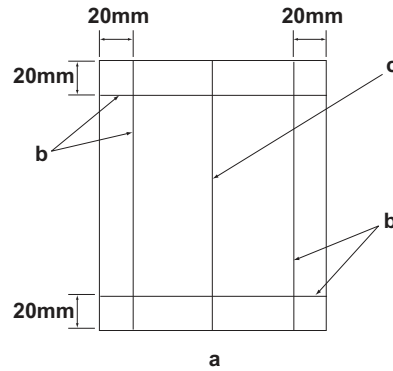
11



12



B

**[Operation check]**

1. To check the machine operation, prepare original (a) where 4 lines (b) are drawn 20 mm from the edges of the A3 sheet and 1 line (c) is drawn at its center.
2. Connect the power plug of the MFP into the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.
3. Set the original (a) on the DP and perform a test copy to check the operation and the copy example.

**[Vérification du fonctionnement]**

1. Pour vérifier le bon fonctionnement de l'appareil, préparer un original (a) sur lequel sont tracées 4 lignes (b) à 20 mm des bords de la feuille A3 et 1 ligne (c) en son axe.
2. Brancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP sur la prise murale et mettre l'appareil sous tension.
3. Placer l'original (a) sur le DP et effectuer une copie de test pour vérifier le fonctionnement et l'exemple de copie.

**[Verifique el funcionamiento]**

1. Para comprobar el funcionamiento del aparato, prepare un original (a) que contenga 4 líneas (b) dibujadas a 20 mm de los bordes de la hoja A3 y 1 línea (c) dibujada en el centro.
2. Conecte el enchufe eléctrico del MFP en el tomacorriente de la pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
3. Coloque el original (a) en el DP y haga una copia de prueba para verificar el funcionamiento y el ejemplo de copia.

**[Funktionsprüfung]**

1. Zum Prüfen der Gerätefunktion das Original (a) vorbereiten, auf das 4 Linien (b) 20 mm von den Kanten des A3-Blattes und 1 Linie (c) in der Mitte gezeichnet sind.
2. Den Netzstecker am MFP in die Steckdose stecken und den Strom einschalten.
3. Das Original (a) auf den DP legen und eine Testkopie erstellen, um die Funktion und das Kopierbeispiel zu prüfen.

**[Verifica del funzionamento]**

1. Per verificare il funzionamento della macchina, preparare l'originale (a) tirando 4 linee (b) a 20 mm dai bordi del foglio A3 e una linea (c) al centro.
2. Inserire la spina dell'alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa a muro, quindi posizionare l'interruttore principale su On.
3. Posizionare l'originale(a) sul DP ed eseguire una copia di prova per verificare il funzionamento e l'esempio di copia.

**[動作確認]**

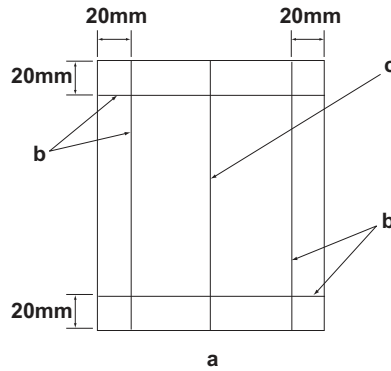
1. 若要检查机器动作, 准备一张 A3 原稿 (a), 距纸张边缘 20mm 画出 4 条线 (b) 并且在原稿中心画出 1 条线 (c)。
2. 将 MFP 的电源插头插入墙壁插座并打开主电源。
3. 在 DP 上设定原稿 (a) 并进行测试复印, 确认机器动作和复印样本。

**[동작확인]**

1. 기계 작동 확인을 위해서, A3 용지 선단에서 20mm 떨어진 곳에 4 개의 선 (b) 과 센터에 1 개의 선 (c) 이 그려진 원고 (a) 를 준비.
2. 콘센트에 MFP 전원플러그를 꽂고 메인 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 합니다.
3. DP 상에 원고 (a) 를 준비하고 테스트 카피를 확인하여 작동 상태와 카피 샘플을 확인합니다.

**[動作確認]**

1. A3 サイズ用紙の端から 20mm の位置に線 (b) 4 本と、用紙の中心に線 (c) 1 本を引いた、動作確認用の原稿 (a) を用意する。
2. MFP の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
3. 原稿 (a) を DP にセットし、テストコピーを行い、動作およびコピーサンプルを確認する。



4. Compare original (a) with the copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustments according to the type of the gap.

**Check images of the DP after checking and adjusting images of the MFP. For details, see the service manual.**

**NOTICE:** If there is any image fogging, adjust the U068 DP scanning position. If you change the scanning position with U068, adjust the U071 DP leading edge timing.

4. Comparer l'original (a) avec l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, effectuer les réglages suivants en fonction du type d'écart.

**Vérifier les images du DP après avoir contrôlé et réglé les images du MFP. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.**

**REMARQUE:** Si l'image est floue, régler la position de balayage de U068 du DP. Si la position de balayage de U068 est modifiée, régler la synchronisation du bord d'attaque de U071.

4. Compare el original (a) con el ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, realice los siguientes ajustes según el tipo de separación.

**Compruebe las imágenes del DP después de comprobar y ajustar las imágenes del MFP. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.**

**AVISO:** Si la imagen estuviera borrosa, ajuste la posición de escaneo U068 del DP. Si cambia la posición de escaneo con U068, ajuste la sincronización de borde superior U071 del DP

4. Das Original (a) mit dem Kopierbeispiel vergleichen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, die folgenden Einstellungen gemäß dem Abstandstyp durchführen.

**Die Bilder des DP nach dem Prüfen und Einstellen der Bilder des MFP prüfen. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.**

**ANMERKUNG:** Falls das Bild verschwommen wirkt, ist die U068 DP Scan-Position zu verstellen. Wenn Sie die Scan-Position mit U068 verstellen, müssen Sie das U071 DP-Vorderkanten-Timing entsprechend verstellen.

4. Confrontare l'originale (a) con l'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, eseguire le seguenti regolazioni in funzione del tipo di scostamento.

**Controllare le immagini del DP dopo avere effettuato i controlli e le regolazioni delle immagini sull'MFP. Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.**

**AVVISO:** Se è presente una qualsiasi sfocatura dell'immagine, regolare la posizione di scansione DP U068. Se si cambia la posizione di scansione con U068, regolare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale DP U071.

4. 对比复印样本和原稿(a), 如果偏移值在标准值以上时, 对偏移原稿进行调整。

对 MFP 的图像确认和调整后再对 DP 的图像进行确认。详细内容请参见维修手册。

(注意) 如果图像出现底灰, 用 U068 来调整 DP 的扫描位置。如果用 U068 更改了扫描位置, 则再用 U071 对 DP 的前端定时进行调整。

4. 원고 (a) 와 카피 샘플을 비교하여 차이가 기준치를 벗어나는 경우, 차이 (틈) 의 형태에 따라 다음을 조정합니다 .

**MFP 의 화상확인 및 조정을 하고나서 DP 의 화상확인을 할 것 . 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조할 것 .**

(주의) 화상 카브리가 발생하는 경우 , U068DP 스캔위치 조정을 합니다 . U068 에서 스캔위치를 변경한 경우 U071DP 선단 타이밍 조정을 합니다 .

4. 原稿 (a) とコピーサンプルを比較し、基準値以上のずれがある場合、ずれ方に応じて調整を行う。

MFP の画像確認及び調整を行ってから DP の画像確認を行うこと。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

(注意) 画像カブリが発生する場合、U068 DP 読み取り位置の調整を行う。U068 で読み取り位置を変更した場合、U071 DP 先端タイミング調整を行う。

Be sure to adjust in the following order. If not, the adjustment cannot be performed correctly.

For checking the angle of leading edge, see page 14. <Reference value> Simplex copying: within  $\pm 3.0$  mm; Duplex copying: within  $\pm 4.0$  mm

For checking the angle of trailing edge, see page 17. <Reference value> Simplex copying: within  $\pm 3.0$  mm; Duplex copying: within  $\pm 4.0$  mm

For checking the magnification, see page 21. <Reference value> Within  $\pm 1.5\%$

Veillez à effectuer le réglage en procédant dans l'ordre suivant. Sinon, il sera impossible d'obtenir un réglage correct.

Pour vérifier l'angle du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 14. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.; copie recto verso:  $\pm 4,0$  mm max.

Pour vérifier l'angle du bord arrière, reportez-vous à la page 17. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.; copie recto verso:  $\pm 4,0$  mm max.

Pour vérifier l'agrandissement, reportez-vous à la page 21 <Valeur de référence>  $\pm 1,5\%$  max.

Asegúrese de ajustar en el siguiente orden. De lo contrario, el ajuste no puede hacerse correctamente.

Para verificar el ángulo del borde superior, vea la página 14. <Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Copia duplex: dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Para verificar el ángulo del borde inferior, vea la página 17. <Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Copia duplex: dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Para verificar el cambio de tamaño, vea la página 21. <Valor de referencia> Dentro de  $\pm 1,5\%$

Die Einstellung in der folgenden Reihenfolge durchführen. Anderenfalls kann die Einstellung nicht korrekt durchgeführt werden.

Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Vorderkante auf Seite 14. <Bezugswert> Simplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Hinterkante auf Seite 17. <Bezugswert> Simplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Angaben zur Prüfung der Vergrößerung auf Seite 21. <Bezugswert> Innerhalb  $\pm 1,5\%$

Accertarsi di eseguire le regolazioni in questa sequenza: in caso contrario, la regolazione non può essere effettuata correttamente.

Per controllare l'angolo del bordo principale, vedere pagina 14. <Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Copia duplex: entro  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Per controllare l'angolo del bordo di uscita, vedere pagina 17. <Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Copia duplex: entro  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Per controllare l'ingrandimento, vedere pagina 21. <Valore di riferimento> Entro  $\pm 1,5\%$

必须按照以下步骤进行调整, 否则不能达到准确调整的要求。

• 确认前端倾斜度 第 14 页 <标准值> 单面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内, 双面:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

• 确认后端倾斜度 第 17 页 <标准值> 单面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内, 双面:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

• 确认等比值 第 21 页 <标准值>  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

반드시 하기의 순서로 조정을 할 것. 순서대로 조정을 하지 않는 경우 바른 조정을 할 수 없습니다.

• 선단경사확인 14 페이지 <기준치> 단면:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내, 양면:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

• 후단경사확인 17 페이지 <기준치> 단면:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내, 양면:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

• 등배도 확인 21 페이지 <기준치>  $\pm 1.5\%$  이내

必ず下記の順序で調整を行うこと。順序通りに調整を行わない場合、正しい調整ができない。

• 先端斜め確認 14 ページ <基準値> 片面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内、両面:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

• 後端斜め確認 17 ページ <基準値> 片面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内、両面:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

• 等倍度確認 21 ページ <基準値>  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

For checking the leading edge timing, see page 23. <Reference value> Within  $\pm 2.5$  mm  
 For checking the center line, see page 25. <Reference value> Simplex copying: within  $\pm 2.0$  mm;  
 Duplex copying: within  $\pm 3.0$  mm

**When using the original for adjustment, automatic adjustment of magnification, leading edge timing and center line can be performed at a time.**

For the automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment, see page 27.

Pour vérifier la synchronisation du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 23. <Valeur de référence>  $\pm 2,5$  mm max.  
 Pour vérifier la ligne médiane, reportez-vous à la page 25. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 2,0$  mm max.;  
 Copie recto verso:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.

**Lorsque vous utilisez l'original pour effectuer le réglage, vous pouvez effectuer automatiquement le réglage de l'agrandissement, de la synchronisation du bord avant et de la ligne médiane en une seule fois.**

Pour le réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage, reportez-vous à la page 27.

Para verificar la sincronización del borde inferior, vea la página 23. <Valor de referencia> Dentro de  $\pm 2,5$  mm  
 Para verificar la línea central, vea la página 25. <Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de  $\pm 2,0$  mm;  
 Copia duplex: dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**Cuando utilice el original para el ajuste, puede hacerse un ajuste automático del cambio de tamaño, sincronización del borde superior y línea central al mismo tiempo.**

Para el ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste, vea la página 27.

Angaben zur Prüfung des Vorderkanten-Timings auf Seite 23. <Bezugswert> Innerhalb  $\pm 2,5$  mm  
 Angaben zur Prüfung der Mittellinie auf Seite 25. <Bezugswert> Simplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 2,0$  mm;  
 Duplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**Bei Verwendung des Originals für die Einstellung können die automatischen Einstellungen für Vergrößerung, Vorderkanten-Timing und Mittellinie gleichzeitig durchgeführt werden.**

Angaben zur automatischen Einstellung mithilfe des Originals auf Seite 27.

Per controllare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale, vedere pagina 23. <Valore di riferimento> Entro  $\pm 2,5$  mm  
 Per controllare la linea centrale, vedere pagina 25. <Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro  $\pm 2,0$  mm;  
 Copia duplex: entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm

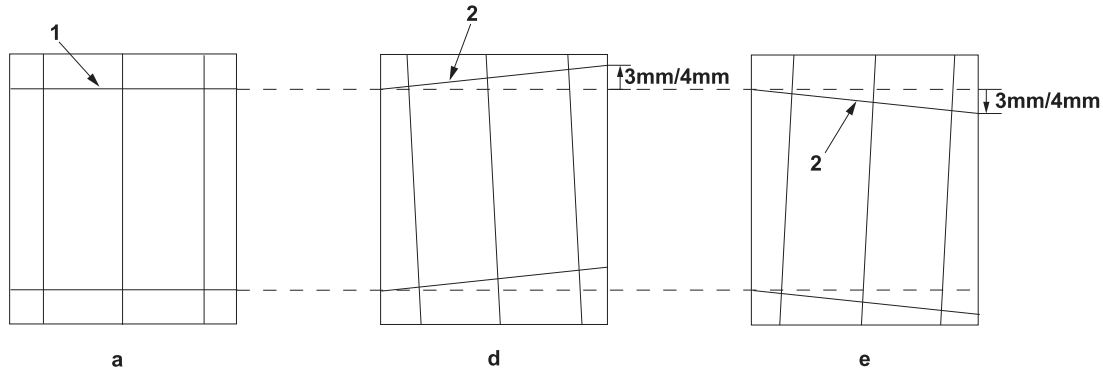
**Quando si utilizza l'originale per la regolazione, la regolazione automatica dell'ingrandimento, della sincronizzazione del bordo principale e della linea centrale possono essere eseguiti contemporaneamente.**

Per la regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale, vedere pagina 27.

• 确认前端定时调整 第 23 页 <标准值>  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内  
 • 确认中心线 第 25 页 <标准值> 单面:  $\pm 2.0$ mm 以内,  
 双面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内  
 使用调整用的原稿时,可以同时自动进行等倍值,前端定时以及中心线的调整。  
 • 通过调整用原稿进行自动调整 第 27 页

• 선단 타이밍 확인 23 페이지 <기준치>  $\pm 2.5$ mm 이내  
 • 센터 라인 확인 25 페이지 <기준치> 단면:  $\pm 2.0$ mm 이내,  
 양면:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내  
**조정용 원고를 사용하면 등배도 조정, 선단타이밍 조정, 센터 라인조정의 자동조정이 한번에 수행됩니다.**  
 • 조정용 원고에 의한 자동조정 27 페이지

• 先端タイミング確認 23 ページ <基準値>  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内  
 • センターライン確認 25 ページ <基準値> 片面:  $\pm 2.0$ mm 以内,  
 両面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内  
**調整用原稿を使用すると、等倍度調整、先端タイミング調整、センターライン調整の自動調整が一度におこなえる。**  
 • 調整用原稿による自動調整 27 ページ



#### [Checking the angle of leading edge]

1. Check the horizontal gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example positions. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

<Reference value> For single copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 3.0$  mm.

For duplex copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 4.0$  mm.

#### [Vérification de l'angle du bord avant]

1. Vérifier l'écart horizontal entre la position de la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et celle de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

<Valeur de référence> Pour la copie recto : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Pour la copie recto-verso : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

#### [Verificación del ángulo del borde superior]

1. Compruebe la separación horizontal entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de las posiciones del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

<Valor de referencia> Para el copiado por una cara: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Para el copiado dúplex: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

#### [Überprüfen des Winkels der Vorderkante]

1. Den horizontalen Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) der Kopierbeispielspositionen prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

<Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 3,0$  mm liegen.

Duplexkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 4,0$  mm liegen.

#### [Controllo dell'angolo del bordo principale]

1. Verificare lo scostamento orizzontale fra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) delle posizioni dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

<Valore di riferimento> Per la copia singola: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Per la copia duplex: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

#### [ 确认前端倾斜度 ]

1. 确认原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2) 的左右偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值, 则按照下列步骤进行调整

<标准值> 单面复印时, 线 (2) 的左右偏移值:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内。

双面复印时, 线 (2) 的左右偏移值:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内。

#### [ 선단 경사확인 ]

1. 원고 (a) 의 선 (1) 과 벨크로의 선 (2) 의 좌우 차이를 확인합니다. 차이가 기준치 외의 경우 다음의 순서대로 조정을 합니다.

<기준치> 단면의 경우 선 (2) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내

양면의 경우 선 (2) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

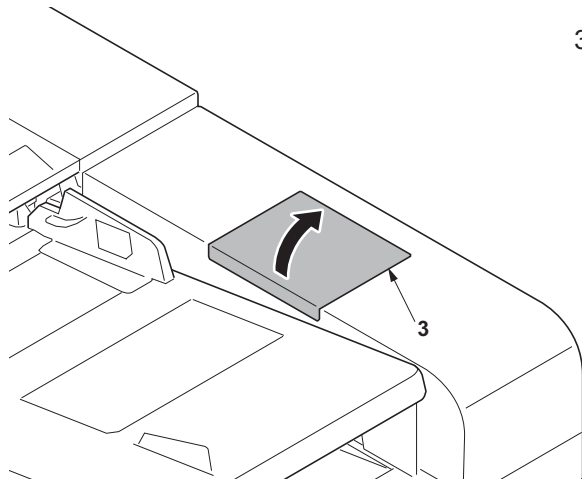
#### [ 先端斜め確認 ]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) の左右のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

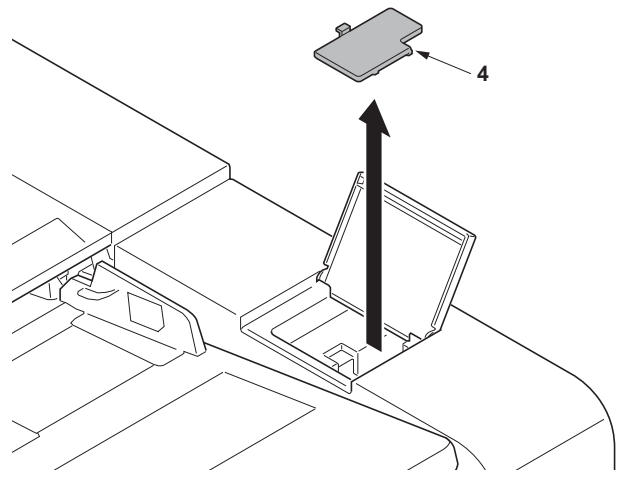
<基準値> 片面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

両面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

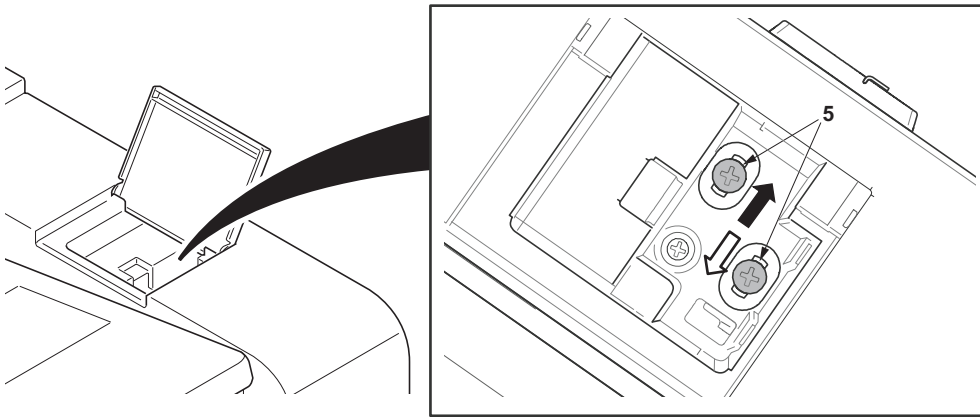
2.



3.



4.



(ENG)

Adjust the position of the DP unit (A).  
Loosen the adjusting screw (5).  
For copy example (d): Slide the DP unit (A) to the machine rear (➡).  
For copy example (e): Slide the DP unit (A) to the machine front (⇨).  
Tighten the adjusting screw (5).  
Perform a test copy.

(IT)

Regolare la posizione dell'unità DP (A).  
Allentare la vite di regolazione (5).  
Per un esempio di copia (d):  
Far scivolare l'unità DP (A) verso il retro della macchina (➡).  
Per un esempio di copia (e):  
Far scivolare l'unità DP (A) verso la parte anteriore della macchina (⇨).  
Stringere la vite di regolazione (5).  
Eseguire una copia di prova.

(FR)

Régler la position de l'unité CD (A).  
Desserrez la vis de réglage (5).  
Pour l'exemple de copie (d):  
Faire glisser l'unité CD (A) à l'arrière de la machine (➡).  
Pour l'exemple de copie (e):  
Faire glisser l'unité CD (A) à l'avant de la machine (⇨).  
Serrez la vis de réglage (5).  
Effectuer une copie de test.

(CN)

调节DP单元(A)的位置。  
拧松调整螺丝(5)。  
复印样张(d)时: DP单元(A)向机器后侧(➡)移动。  
复印样张(e)时: DP单元(A)向机器前侧(⇨)移动。  
紧固调整螺丝(5)。  
进行测试复印。

(ES)

Ajuste la posición de la unidad DP (A).  
Afloje el tornillo de ajuste (5).  
Para la copia de muestra (d):  
Deslice la unidad DP (A) hacia la parte posterior de la máquina (➡).  
Para la copia de muestra (e):  
Deslice la unidad DP (A) hacia el frente de la máquina (⇨).  
Apriete el tornillo de ajuste (5).  
Haga una copia de prueba.

(KO)

DP유닛(A)의 위치를 조정하세요.  
조정나사(5)를 느슨하게 합니다.  
샘플 카피(d)의 경우:  
DP유닛(A)를 기기의 뒤쪽(➡)으로 밀어주세요.  
샘플 카피(e)의 경우:  
DP유닛(A)를 기기의 앞쪽(⇨)으로 당겨주세요.  
조정나사(5)를 조입니다.  
테스트 카피를 합니다.

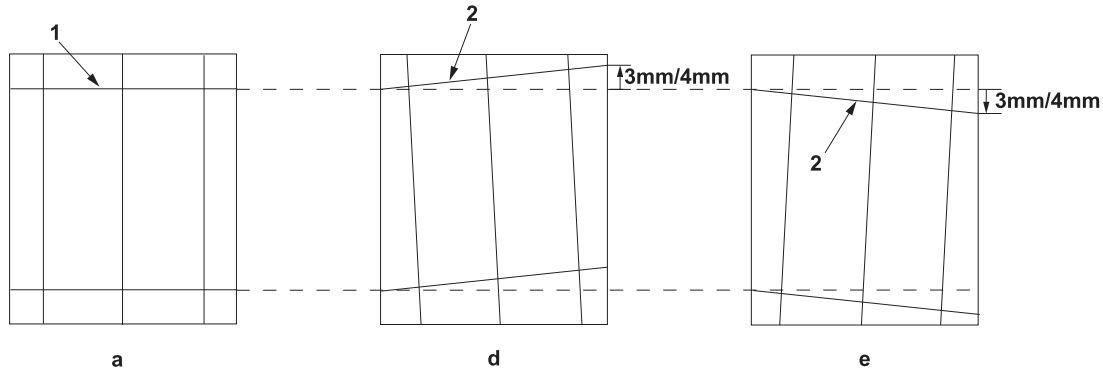
(DE)

Stellen Sie die Position der DP-Einheit (A) ein.  
Lösen Sie die Einstellschraube (5).  
Für Kopienmuster (d):  
Schieben Sie die DP-Einheit (A) zur Geräterückseite (➡).  
Für Kopienmuster (e):  
Schieben Sie die DP-Einheit (A) zur Gerätevorderseite (⇨).  
Die Einstellschraube (5) festziehen.  
Eine Testkopie erstellen.

(JP)

DPユニット(A)の位置調整を行う。  
調整ビス(5)をゆるめる。  
コピーサンプル(d)の場合: DPユニット(A)を機械後側(➡)にずらす。  
コピーサンプル(e)の場合: DPユニット(A)を機械前側(⇨)にずらす。  
調整ビス(5)を締める。  
テストコピーを行う。





5. Repeat the steps above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the following reference values.

<Reference value> For single copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 3.0$  mm.

For duplex copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 4.0$  mm.

6. After the adjustment, install the inner cover (4) which is removed in step 3. Close the DP cover (3).

7. **A** Remove the original mat (C) and refit it (see steps 9 on page 2).

**B** Remove the original mat (C) and refit it (see steps 4 on page 6).

5. Répéter les étapes ci-dessus jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique les valeurs de référence suivantes.

<Valeur de référence> Pour la copie recto : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Pour la copie recto-verso : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

6. Après l'ajustement, installez le capot interne (4) qui a été retiré à l'étape 3. Refermez le capot du DP (3).

7. **A** Retirez le tapis d'original (C) et remettez-le en place. (Reportez-vous aux étapes 9 à la page 2.)

**B** Retirez le tapis d'original (C) et remettez-le en place. (Reportez-vous aux étapes 4 à la page 6.)

5. Repita los pasos anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente los siguientes valores de referencia.

<Valor de referencia> Para el copiado por una cara: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Para el copiado dúplex: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

6. Después del ajuste, instale la cubierta interna (4) que se quitó en el paso 3. Cierre la cubierta del DP (3).

7. **A** Desmonte la plancha de original (C) y vuelva a colocar (vea los pasos 9 en la página 2).

**B** Desmonte la plancha de original (C) y vuelva a colocar (vea los pasos 4 en la página 6).

5. Die obigen Schritte wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.

<Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 3,0$  mm liegen.

Duplexkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 4,0$  mm liegen.

6. Nach der Einstellung installieren Sie die innere Abdeckung (4), die in Schritt 3 entfernt wurde. Schließen Sie die Abdeckung des DP (3).

7. **A** Die Originalmatte (C) abnehmen und wieder anbringen (siehe Schritte 9 auf Seite 2).

**B** Die Originalmatte (C) abnehmen und wieder anbringen (siehe Schritte 4 auf Seite 6).

5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento seguenti.

<Valore di riferimento> Per la copia singola: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Per la copia duplex: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

6. Al termine della regolazione, installare il coperchio interno (4), rimosso al punto 3. Chiudere il coperchio del DP (3).

7. **A** Rimuovere il coprioriginale (C) e reinserirlo (vedere i passi 9 a pagina 2).

**B** Rimuovere il coprioriginale (C) e reinserirlo (vedere i passi 4 a pagina 6).

5. 重复上述步骤直至复印样本上的线(2)的偏移值达到标准值范围内。

<标准值> 单面时, 线(2)的左右偏移值:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

双面时, 线(2)的左右偏移值:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

6. 调整结束后, 重新安装在步骤3中取下的内部盖板(4)。关闭DP盖板(3)。

7. **A** 拆下原稿垫(C), 参照第2页的步骤9再次装上。

**B** 拆下原稿垫(C), 参照第6页的步骤4再次装上。

5. 벨크로 선(2) 차이가 기준치내가 될 때까지 조정을 반복합니다.

<기준치> 단면의 경우 선(2)의 좌우차이:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내

양면의 경우 선(2)의 좌우차이:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

6. 조정 후에 순서 3에서 분리한 내부 커버(4)를 설치합니다. DP 커버(3)를 닫습니다.

7. **A** 원고매트(C)를 제거하고 2페이지 순서 9을 참고로 다시 부착합니다.

**B** 원고매트(C)를 제거하고 6페이지 순서 4을 참고로 다시 부착합니다.

5. コピーサンプルの線(2)のずれが基準値内になるまで、調整を繰り返す。

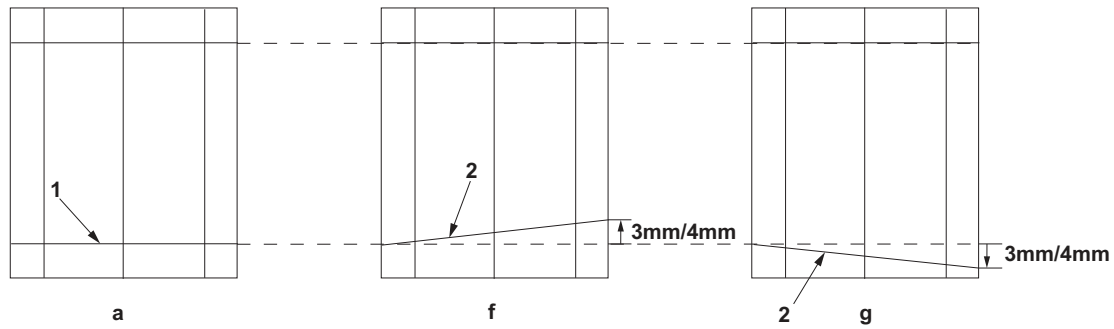
<基準値>片面の場合、線(2)の左右ずれ:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

両面の場合、線(2)の左右ずれ:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

6. 調整終了後、手順3で外したインナーカバー(4)を取り付ける。DPカバー(3)を閉める。

7. **A** 原稿マット(C)を取り外し、2ページの手順9を参考に再度取り付ける。

**B** 原稿マット(C)を取り外し、6ページの手順4を参考に再度取り付ける。



#### [Checking the angle of trailing edge]

1. Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.  
 <Reference value> For simplex copying: Within  $\pm 3.0$  mm  
 For duplex copying: Within  $\pm 4.0$  mm

#### [Vérification de l'angle du bord arrière]

1. Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.  
 <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.  
 Copie recto verso:  $\pm 4,0$  mm max.

#### [Verificación del ángulo del borde inferior]

1. Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la superación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.  
 <Valor de referencia> Para copia simple: Dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
 Para copia duplex: Dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm

#### [Überprüfen des Winkels der Hinterkante]

1. Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters prüfen. Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.  
 <Bezugswert> Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
 Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 4,0$  mm

#### [Controllo dell'angolo del bordo di uscita]

1. Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.  
 <Valore di riferimento> Per copia simplex: Entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
 Per copia duplex: Entro  $\pm 4,0$  mm

#### [ 确认后端倾斜度 ]

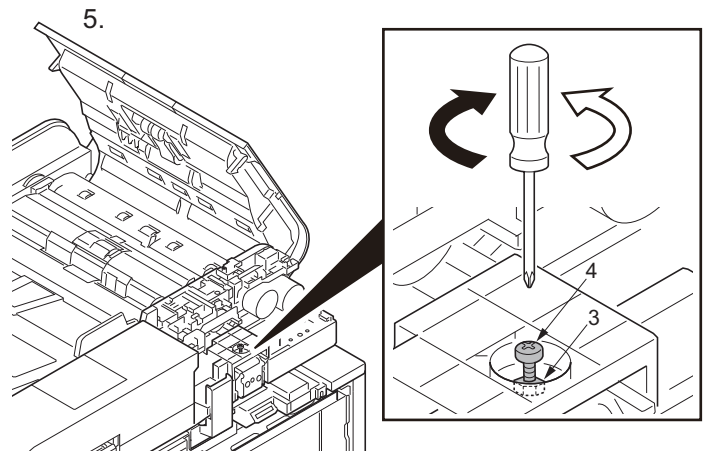
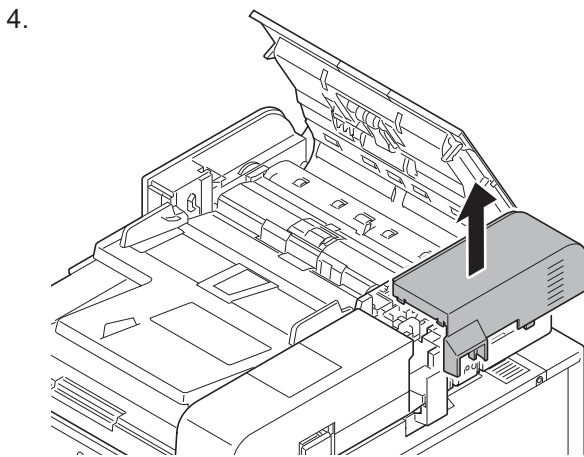
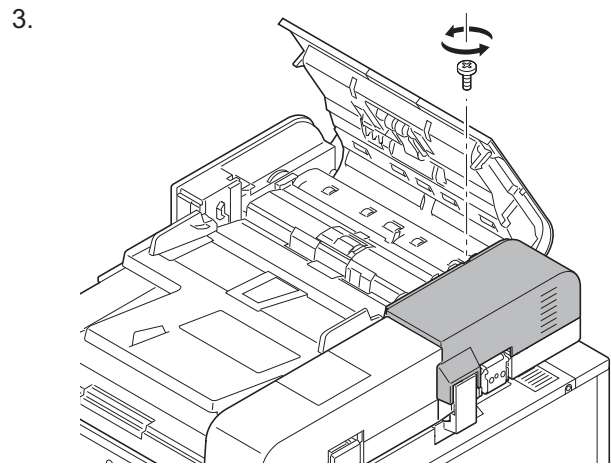
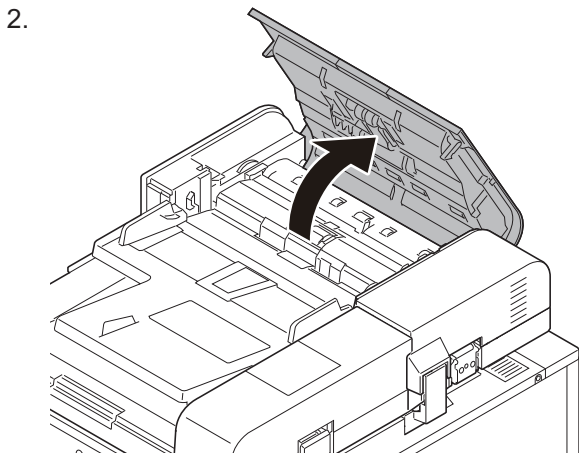
1. 确认原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2) 的偏移值。如果超过标准值时, 必须进行调整。  
 <标准值> 单面时:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内  
 双面时:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

#### [ 후단 경사확인 ]

1. 원고 (a) 의 선 (1) 과 벨크로 선 (2) 의 차이를 확인합니다. 차이가 기준치 외의 경우에는 조정을 합니다.  
 <기준치> 단면의 경우:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내  
 양면의 경우:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

#### [ 後端斜め確認 ]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。  
 <基準値> 片面の場合:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内  
 両面の場合:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

**ENG**

Adjust the height of DP.  
Loosen the nut (3).  
For copy example (f): Loosen the adjusting screw (4).  
For copy example (g): Tighten the adjusting screw (4).  
Retighten the nut (3).

**FR**

Réglez la hauteur du DP.  
Desserrez l'écrou (3).  
Pour l'exemple de copie (f): Desserrez la vis de réglage (4).  
Pour l'exemple de copie (g): Serrez la vis de réglage (4).  
Resserrez l'écrou (3).

**ES**

Ajuste la altura del DP.  
Afloje la tuerca (3).  
Para la copia de muestra (f): Afloje el tornillo de ajuste (4).  
Para la copia de muestra (g): Apriete el tornillo de ajuste (4).  
Vuelva a apretar la tuerca (3).

**DE**

Die Höhe des DP einstellen.  
Lösen Sie die Mutter (3).  
Für Kopienmuster (f): Lösen Sie die Einstellschraube (4).  
Für Kopienmuster (g): Die Einstellschraube (4) festziehen.  
Ziehen Sie die Mutter (3) wieder fest.

**IT**

Regolazione dell'altezza del DP  
Allentare il dado (3).  
Per un esempio di copia (f): Allentare la vite di regolazione (4).  
Per un esempio di copia (g): Stringere la vite di regolazione (4).  
Stringere di nuovo il dado (3).

**CN**

调整DP的高度。  
松弛螺母(3)。  
复印样张(f)时: 松弛调整螺丝(4)。  
复印样张(g)时: 紧固调整螺丝(4)。  
将螺母(3)按原样紧固好。

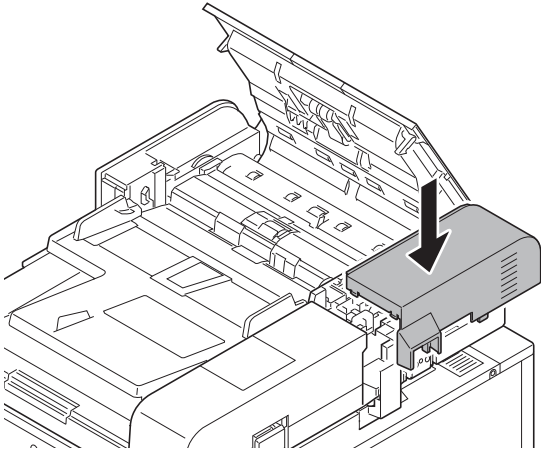
**KO**

DP의 높이를 조정합니다.  
너트(3)를 느슨하게 합니다.  
벨크로(f)의 경우: 조정나사(4)를 느슨하게 합니다.  
벨크로(g)의 경우: 조정나사(4)를 조입니다.  
너트(3)를 원래대로 조입니다.

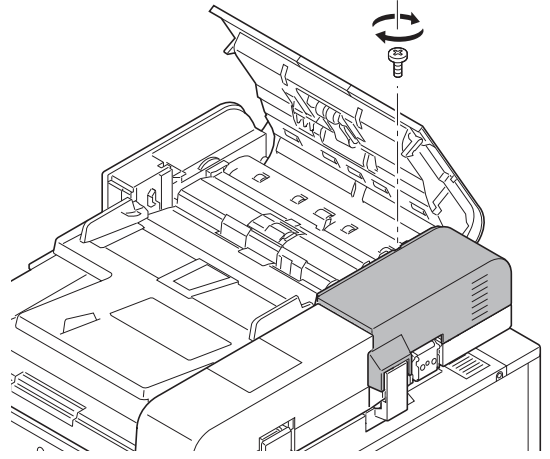
**JP**

DPの高さを調整する。  
ナット(3)をゆるめる。  
コピーサンプル(f)の場合: 調整ビス(4)をゆるめる。  
コピーサンプル(g)の場合: 調整ビス(4)を締める。  
ナット(3)を元通り締める。

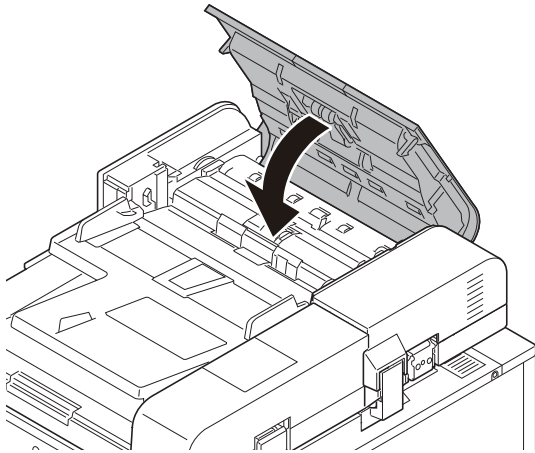
6.



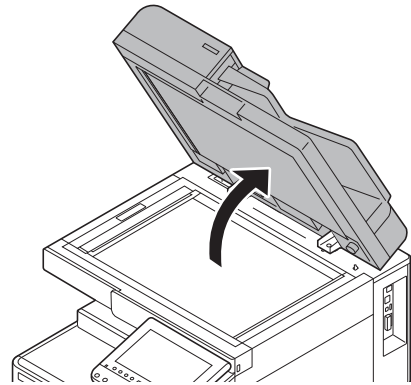
7.



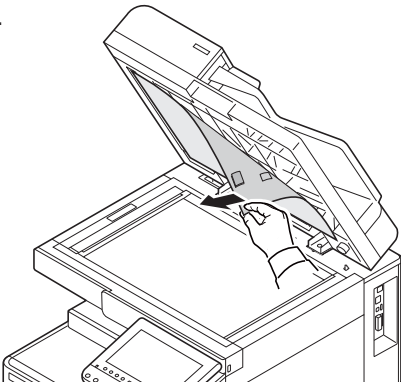
8.



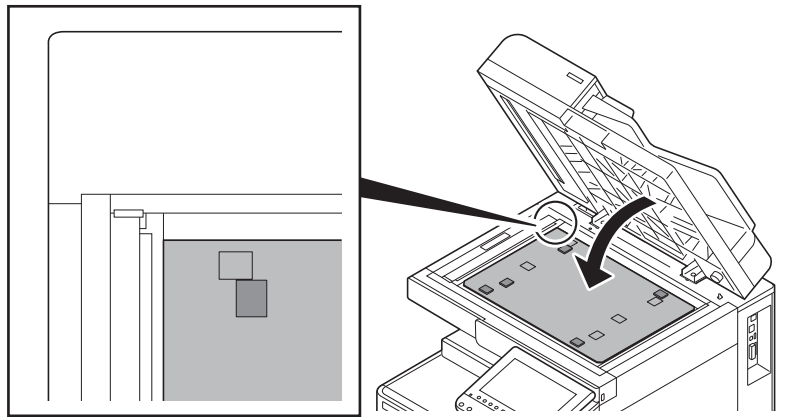
9.

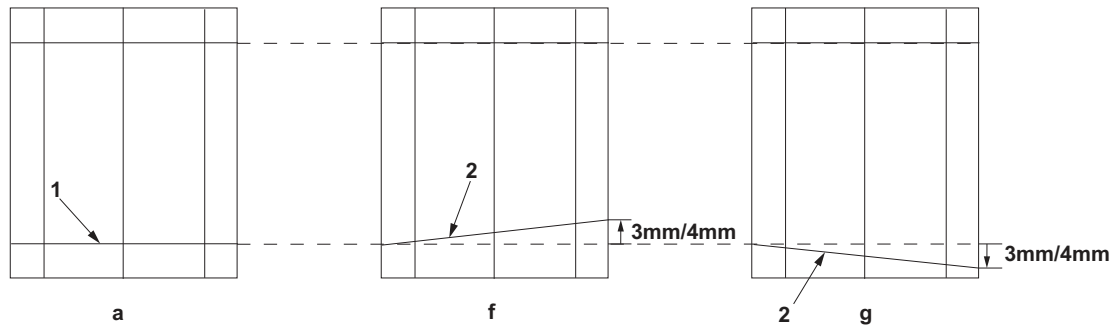


10.



11.





12. Make a proof copy again.
13. Repeat steps 1 to 12 until line (2) of copy example shows the following the reference values.
- <Reference value> For simplex copying: Within  $\pm 3.0$  mm  
For duplex copying: Within  $\pm 4.0$  mm

12. Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.
13. Répétez les étapes 1 à 12 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie corresponde aux valeurs de référence suivantes.
- <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.  
Copie recto verso:  $\pm 4,0$  mm max.

12. Haga otra copia de prueba.
13. Repita los pasos 1 a 12 hasta que la línea (2) de la copia de muestra tenga los siguientes valores de referencia.
- <Valor de referencia> Para copia simple: Dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
Para copia duplex: Dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm

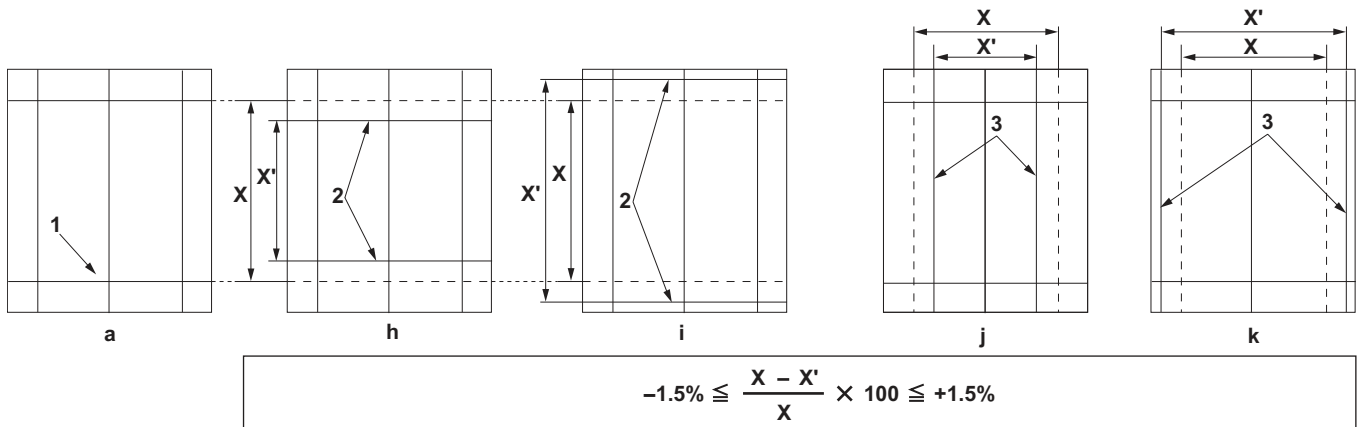
12. Eine erneute Probekopie anfertigen.
13. Die Schritte 1 bis 12 wiederholen, bis die Linie (2) des Kopienmusters die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.
- <Bezugswert> Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 4,0$  mm

12. Eseguire di nuovo una prova di copia.
13. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 12 fino a che la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia non mostra i seguenti valori di riferimento.
- <Valore di riferimento> Per copia simplex: Entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
Per copia duplex: Entro  $\pm 4,0$  mm

12. 再次进行测试复印。
13. 反复操作步骤 1~12, 直至复印样张的线 (2) 为标准值内。
- <标准值> 单面时:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内  
双面时:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

12. 다시 벨크로를 합니다.
13. 벨크로 선 (2) 이 기준치내로 될 때까지 순서 1 ~ 12 을 반복합니다.
- <기준치> 단면의 경우:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내  
양면의 경우:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

12. 再度テストコピーをおこなう。
13. コピーサンプルの線 (2) が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 12 を繰り返す。
- <基準値> 片面の場合:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内  
両面の場合:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

**[Checking the magnification]**

1. Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) (3) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

<Reference value>

For the sub-scan direction, vertical gap of line (2): within  $\pm 1.5\%$

For the main-scan direction, horizontal gap of line (3): within  $\pm 1.5\%$

2. Use the maintenance mode U070 to adjust the magnification.

Sub Scan(F): Adjusts the scanner sub-scan magnification (surface)

Sub Scan(B): Adjusts the scanner sub-scan magnification (rear side)

**[Vérification de l'agrandissement]**

1. Vérifier l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) (3) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

<Valeur de référence>

Pour la direction du balayage secondaire, l'écart vertical de la ligne (2) est de  $\pm 1,5\%$

de  $\pm 1,5\%$

Pour la direction du balayage principal, l'écart horizontal de la ligne (3) est de  $\pm 1,5\%$

2. Pour régler l'agrandissement, utilisez le mode entretien U070.

Sub Scan(F): Permet de régler l'agrandissement du balayage secondaire du scanner (surface)

Sub Scan(B): Permet de régler l'agrandissement du balayage secondaire du scanner (arrière)

**[Verificación del cambio de tamaño]**

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) (3) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

<Valor de referencia>

Para la dirección de exploración secundaria, separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de  $\pm 1,5\%$

Para la dirección de exploración principal, separación horizontal de la línea (3): dentro de  $\pm 1,5\%$

2. Para ajustar la ampliación utilice el modo de mantenimiento U070.

Sub Scan(F): ajusta el cambio de tamaño de la dirección de exploración secundaria del escáner (anverso).

Sub Scan(B): ajusta el cambio de tamaño de la dirección de exploración secundaria del escáner (reverso).

**[Überprüfen der Vergrößerung]**

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) (3) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

<Bezugswert>

Subscanrichtung: Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb  $\pm 1,5\%$

Hauptscanrichtung: Horizontaler Abstand der Linie (3): Innerhalb  $\pm 1,5\%$

2. Zum Einstellen der Vergrößerung den Wartungsmodus U070 verwenden.

Sub Scan(F): Zur Einstellung der Subscan-Vergrößerung (Oberfläche)

Sub Scan(B): Zur Einstellung der Subscan-Vergrößerung (Rückseite)

**[Controllo dell'ingrandimento]**

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) (3) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

<Valore di riferimento>

Per l'orientamento della scansione ausiliare, lo scostamento verticale della linea (2) deve essere compreso fra  $\pm 1,5\%$

Per l'orientamento della scansione principale, lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (3) deve essere compreso fra  $\pm 1,5\%$

2. Usare la modalità di manutenzione U070 per regolare l'ingrandimento.

Sub Scan(F): Regola l'ingrandimento della scansione ausiliare dello scanner (superficie)

Sub Scan(B): Regola l'ingrandimento della scansione ausiliare dello scanner (lato posteriore)

**[ 确认等倍値 ]**

1. 确认原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2)、(3) 之间的偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值, 则按照下列步骤进行调整。

<标准值>

对于副扫描方向, 线 (2) 的上下偏移值:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

对于主扫描方向, 线 (3) 的左右偏移值:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

2. 使用维修模式 U070 调整等倍值。

Sub Scan(F): 读取副扫描等倍度的调整 (正面)

Sub Scan(B): 读取副扫描等倍度的调整 (反面)

**[ 등배도확인 ]**

1. 원고 (a) 선 (1) 과 벨크로의 선 (2)(3) 의 차이를 확인합니다 .

차이가 기준이외의 경우, 다음 순서로 조정을 합니다 .

< 기준치 >

부주사 방향의 경우 선 (2) 의 상하차이:  $\pm 1.5\%$  이내

주주사 방향의 경우 선 (3) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 1.5\%$  이내

2. 메인テナンス 모드 U070 을 세트하고 조정을 합니다 .

Sub Scan(F): 스캔 부주사등배도의 조정 (표면)

Sub Scan(B): 스캔 부주사등배도의 조정 (뒷면)

**[ 等倍度確認 ]**

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) (3) のずれを確認する。

ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

<基準値>

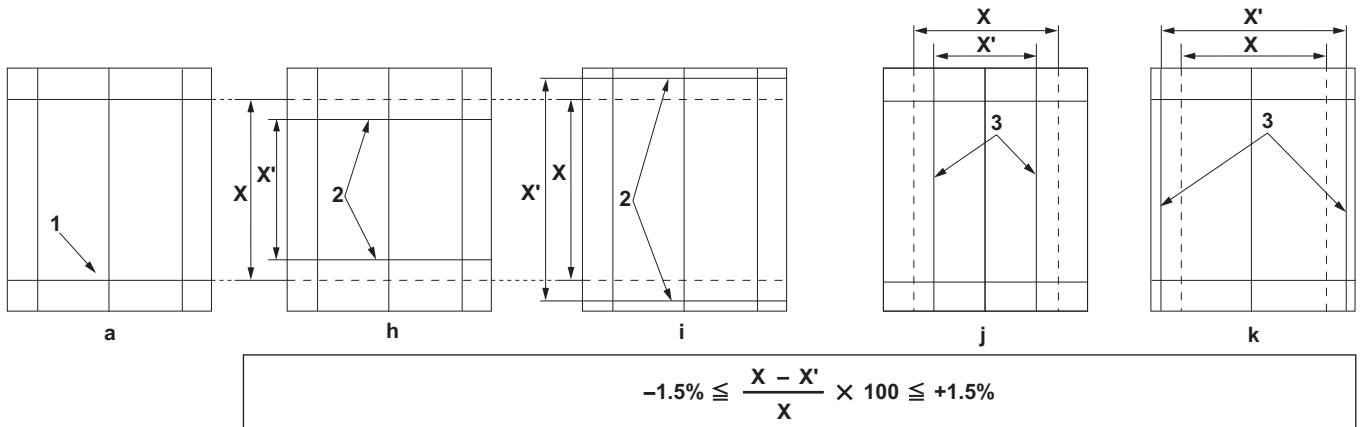
副走査方向の場合、線 (2) の上下ずれ:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

主走査方向の場合、線 (3) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

2. メンテナンスモード U070 をセッとし、調整を行う。

Sub Scan(F): 読み取り副走査等倍度の調整 (表面)

Sub Scan(B): 読み取り副走査等倍度の調整 (裏面)



## 3. Adjust the values.

For the shorter length copy example (h)(j): Increases the value.  
For the longer length copy example (i)(k): Decreases the value.  
Amount of change per step: 0.02 %

## 4. Perform a test copy.

## 5. Repeat the steps 2 to 4 above until the gap of line (2) (3) of copy example shows the reference value.

<Reference value>

For the sub-scan direction, vertical gap of line (2): within ±1.5%

For the main-scan direction, horizontal gap of line (3): within ±1.5%

## 3. Régler les valeurs.

Pour l'exemple de copie dont la longueur est plus courte (h)(j) : augmenter la valeur.

Pour l'exemple de copie dont la longueur est plus longue (i)(k) : diminuer la valeur.

Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,02 %

## 4. Effectuer une copie de test.

## 5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) (3) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.

<Valeur de référence>

Pour la direction du balayage secondaire, l'écart vertical de la ligne (2) est de ±1,5%

Pour la direction du balayage principal, l'écart horizontal de la ligne (3) est de ±1,5%

## 3. Ajuste los valores.

Para el ejemplo de copia más corto (h)(j): aumenta el valor.

Para el ejemplo de copia más largo (i)(k): disminuye el valor.

Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,02 %

## 4. Haga una copia de prueba.

## 5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) (3) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.

<Valor de referencia>

Para la dirección de exploración secundaria, separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de ±1,5%

Para la dirección de exploración principal, separación horizontal de la línea (3): dentro de ±1,5%

## 3. Die Werte einstellen.

Für die kürzere Länge des Kopierbeispiels (h)(j): Den Wert erhöhen.

Für die längere Länge des Kopierbeispiels (i)(k): Den Wert verringern.

Änderung pro Schritt: 0,02 %

## 4. Eine Testkopie erstellen.

## 5. Die Schritte 2 bis 4 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) (3) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.

<Bezugswert>

Subscanrichtung: Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb ±1,5%

Hauptscanrichtung: Horizontaler Abstand der Linie (3): Innerhalb ±1,5%

## 3. Regolare i valori.

Per l'esempio di copia di lunghezza inferiore (h)(j): aumenta il valore.

Per l'esempio di copia di lunghezza superiore (i)(k): riduce il valore.

Entità modifica per passo: 0,02 %

## 4. Eseguire una copia di prova

## 5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 2 a 4 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) (3) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.

<Valore di riferimento>

Per l'orientamento della scansione ausiliare, lo scostamento verticale della linea (2) deve essere compreso fra ±1,5%

Per l'orientamento della scansione principale, lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (3) deve essere compreso fra ±1,5%

## 3. 調整設定値。

在长度偏短时 复印样本 (h) (j) : 调高设定值

在长度偏长时 复印样本 (i) (k) : 调低设定值

设定值的一个调整单位变化量 : 0.02%

## 4. 进行测试复印。

## 5. 重复上述步骤 2 到 4, 直至复印样本上的线 (2)、(3) 之间的偏移值达到标准值范围内。

<标准值>

对于副扫描方向, 线 (2) 的上下偏移值 : ±1.5% 以内

对于主扫描方向, 线 (3) 的左右偏移值 : ±1.5% 以内

## 3. 설정치를 조정합니다.

길이가 짧은 경우 벨크로 (h)(j): 설정치를 높입니다.

길이가 긴 경우 벨크로 (i)(k): 설정치를 내립니다.

1 스텝당 변화량: 0.02%

## 4. 벨크로를 합니다.

## 5. 벨크로 선 (2)(3) 의 차이가 기준치내가 될 때까지 2 ~ 4 를 반복합니다.

<기준치>

부주사 방향의 경우 선 (2) 의 상하차이: ±1.5% 이내

주주사 방향의 경우 선 (3) 의 좌우차이: ±1.5% 이내

## 3. 設定値を調整する。

長さが短い場合コピーサンプル (h) (j) : 設定値を上げる

長さが長い場合コピーサンプル (i) (k) : 設定値を下げる

1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.02%

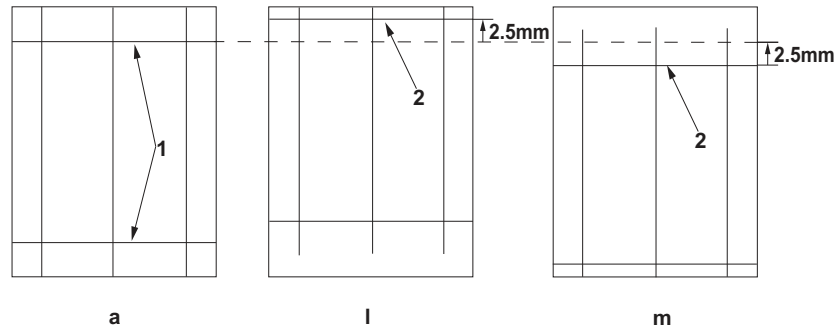
## 4. テストコピーを行う。

## 5. コピーサンプルの線 (2) (3) のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 2 ~ 4 を繰り返す。

<基準値>

副走査方向の場合、線 (2) の上下ずれ: ±1.5% 以内

主走査方向の場合、線 (3) の左右ずれ: ±1.5% 以内

**[Checking the leading edge timing]**

1. Check the gap between line (1) on original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

<Reference value>

Vertical gap of line (2): within  $\pm 2.5$  mm

2. Use the maintenance mode U071 to adjust the timing.

Front Head: Adjusts the leading edge timing (surface)

Front Tail: Adjusts the trailing edge timing (surface)

Back Head: Adjusts the leading edge timing (rear side)

Back Tail: Adjusts the trailing edge timing (rear side)

**[Vérification de la synchronisation du bord avant]**

1. Vérifier l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

<Valeur de référence>

Écart vertical de la ligne (2) :  $\pm 2,5$  mm

2. Pour régler la synchronisation, utilisez le mode entretien U071.

Front Head: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord de tête (surface)

Front Tail: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord arrière (surface)

Back Head: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord de tête (arrière)

Back Tail: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord arrière (arrière)

**[Cambio de la sincronización de borde superior]**

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

<Valor de referencia>

Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de  $\pm 2,5$  mm

2. Para ajustar la sincronización utilice el modo de mantenimiento U071.

Front Head: Ajusta la sincronización del borde superior (anverso).

Front Tail: Ajusta la sincronización del borde inferior (anverso).

Back Head: Ajusta la sincronización del borde superior (reverso).

Back Tail: Ajusta la sincronización del borde inferior (reverso).

**[Überprüfen des Vorderkanten-Timings]**

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

<Bezugswert>

Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb  $\pm 2,5$  mm

2. Zum Einstellen des Timing den Wartungsmodus U071 verwenden.

Front Head: Zur Einstellung des Vorderkanten-Timing (Oberfläche)

Front Tail: Zur Einstellung des Hinterkanten-Timing (Oberfläche)

Back Head: Zur Einstellung des Vorderkanten-Timing (Rückseite)

Back Tail: Zur Einstellung des Hinterkanten-Timing (Rückseite)

**[Controllo della sincronizzazione del bordo principale]**

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea (1) sull'originale (a) e la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

<Valore di riferimento>

Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra  $\pm 2,5$  mm

2. Usare la modalità di manutenzione U071 per regolare la sincronizzazione.

Front Head: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo principale (superficie)

Front Tail: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo di uscita (superficie)

Back Head: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo principale (lato posteriore)

Back Tail: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo di uscita (lato posteriore)

**[ 确认前端定时调整 ]**

1. 确认原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2) 之间的偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值, 则按照下列步骤进行调整。

<标准值>

线 (2) 的上下偏移值:  $\pm 2.5$  mm 以内

2. 使用维修模式 U071 调整定时。

Front Head: 调整前端对位 (正面)

Front Tail: 调整后端对位 (正面)

Back Head: 调整前端对位 (反面)

Back Tail: 调整后端对位 (反面)

**[ 선단 타이밍 확인 ]**

1. 원고 (a) 선 (1) 과 벨크로 선 (2) 의 차이를 확인합니다. 차이가 기준치 외의 경우 다음 순서로 조정을 합니다.

<기준치>

선 (2) 의 상하차이:  $\pm 2.5$ mm 이내

2. 메인터너스 모드 U071 을 세트하고 조정을 합니다.

Front Head: 선단 타이밍 (표면) 을 조정합니다.

Front Tail: 후단 타이밍 (표면) 을 조정합니다.

Back Head: 선단 타이밍 (뒷면) 을 조정합니다.

Back Tail: 후단 타이밍 (뒷면) 을 조정합니다.

**[ 先端タイミング確認 ]**

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

<基準値>

線 (2) の上下ずれ:  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内

2. メンテナンスモード U071 をセットし、調整を行う。

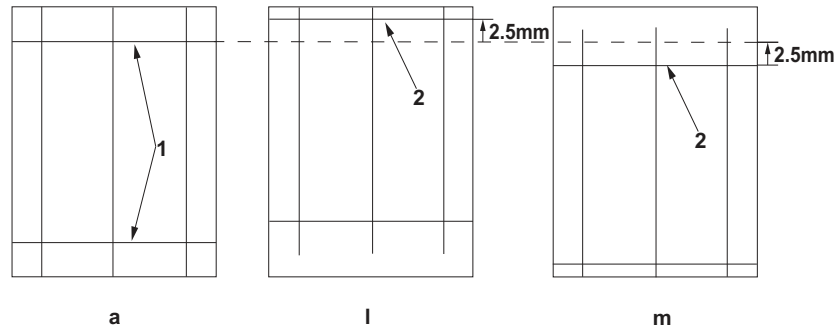
Front Head: 先端タイミング (表面) を調整する

Front Tail: 後端タイミング (表面) を調整する

Back Head: 先端タイミング (裏面) を調整する

Back Tail: 後端タイミング (裏面) を調整する



**3. Adjust the values.**

For the shorter leading edge timing, copy examples (l): Decreases the value.

For the longer leading edge timing, copy examples (m): Increases the value.

Amount of change per step: 0.21 mm

**4. Perform a test copy.****5. Repeat the steps 2 to 4 above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the reference value.**

<Reference value>

Vertical gap of line (2): within  $\pm 2.5$  mm

**3. Régler les valeurs.**

Pour les exemples de copie dont la synchronisation du bord avant est plus rapide (l) : diminuer la valeur.

Pour les exemples de copie dont la synchronisation du bord avant est plus lente (m) : augmenter la valeur.

Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,21 mm

**4. Effectuer une copie de test.****5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.**

<Valeur de référence>

Écart vertical de la ligne (2) :  $\pm 2,5$  mm

**3. Ajuste los valores.**

Para una sincronización más rápida de extremo guía, ejemplos de copia (l): disminuye el valor.

Para una sincronización más lenta de extremo guía, ejemplos de copia (m): aumenta el valor.

Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,21 mm

**4. Haga una copia de prueba.****5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.**

<Valor de referencia>

Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de  $\pm 2,5$  mm

**3. Die Werte einstellen.**

Für den schnelleren Vorderkantentakt, Kopierbeispiel (l): Den Wert verringern.

Für den langsameren Vorderkantentakt, Kopierbeispiel (m): Den Wert erhöhen.

Änderung pro Schritt: 0,21 mm

**4. Eine Testkopie erstellen.****5. Die Schritte 2 bis 4 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.**

<Bezugswert>

Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb  $\pm 2,5$  mm

**3. Regolare i valori.**

Per accelerare la fasatura del bordo di entrata, esempi di copia (l): riduce il valore.

Per rallentare la fasatura del bordo di entrata, esempi di copia (m): aumenta il valore.

Entità modifica per passo: 0,21 mm

**4. Eseguire una copia di prova****5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 2 a 4 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.**

<Valore di riferimento>

Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra  $\pm 2,5$  mm

**3. 調整設定値。**

在前端定时偏快时 复印样本(1): 调低设定值

在前端定时偏慢时 复印样本(m): 调高设定值

设定值的一个调整单位变化量: 0.21mm

**4. 进行测试复印。****5. 重复上述步骤 2 到 4, 直至复印样本上的线(2)的偏移值达到标准值范围内。**

<标准值>

线(2)的上下偏移值:  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内

**3. 설정치를 조정합니다.**

선단 타이밍이 빠른 경우 벨크로 (l): 설정치를 내립니다.

선단 타이밍이 늦은 경우 벨크로 (m): 설정치를 올립니다.

1 스텝당 변화량: 0.21mm

**4. 벨크로를 합니다.****5. 벨크로 선 (2) 의 차이가 기준치내가 될 때까지 2 ~ 4 를 반복합니다.**

<기준치>

선 (2) 의 상하차이:  $\pm 2.5$ mm 이내

**3. 設定値を調整する。**

先端タイミングが短い場合コピーサンプル (1): 設定値を下げる。

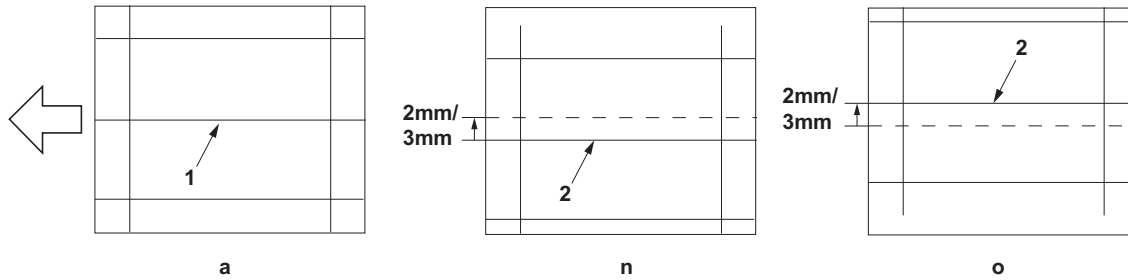
先端タイミングが長い場合コピーサンプル (m): 設定値を上げる。

1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.21mm

**4. テストコピーを行う。****5. コピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 2 ~ 4 を繰り返す。**

<基準値>

線 (2) の上下ずれ:  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内

**[Checking the center line]**

1. Check the gap between center line (1) on original (a) and center line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

<Reference value>

Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the single copying:  $\pm 2.0$  mm

Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the duplex copying:  $\pm 3.0$  mm

2. Use the maintenance mode U072 to adjust the timing.

Front: Adjusts the center line (surface)

Back: Adjusts the center line (rear side)

**[Vérification de la ligne médiane]**

1. Vérifier l'écart entre l'axe (1) de l'original (a) et l'axe (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

<Valeur de référence>

Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto :  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto-verso :  $\pm 3,0$  mm

2. Pour régler la ligne médiane, utiliser le mode entretien U072.

Front: Permet de régler l'axe (surface)

Back: Permet de régler l'axe (arrière)

**[Verificación de la línea central]**

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea de centro (1) del original (a) y la línea de centro (2) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

<Valor de referencia>

Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado por una cara:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado dúplex:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

2. Para ajustar la línea central utilice el modo de mantenimiento U072.

Front: ajusta la línea central (anverso).

Back: ajusta la línea central (reverso).

**[Überprüfen der Mittellinie]**

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Mittellinie (1) des Originals (a) und der Mittellinie (2) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

<Bezugswert>

Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Einzelkopie:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Duplexkopie:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

2. Zum Einstellen der Mittellinie den Wartungsmodus U072 verwenden.

Front: Zur Einstellung der Mittellinie (Oberfläche)

Back: Zur Einstellung der Mittellinie (Rückseite)

**[Controllo della linea centrale]**

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea centrale (1) sull'originale (a) e la linea centrale (2) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

<Valore di riferimento>

Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia singola:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia duplex:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

2. Usare la modalità di manutenzione U072 per regolare la linea centrale.

Front: Regola la linea centrale (superficie)

Back: Regola la linea centrale (lato posteriore)

**[ 确认中心线 ]**

1. 确认原稿 (a) 中心线 (1) 和复印样本中心线 (2) 之间的偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值, 则按照下列步骤进行调整。

<标准值> 单面复印时, 中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值:  $\pm 2.0$  mm 以内

双面复印时, 中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值:  $\pm 3.0$  mm 以内

2. 使用维修模式 U072 调整中心线。

Front: 中心位置 (正面) 的调整

Back: 中心位置 (反面) 的调整

**[ 센터 라인 확인 ]**

1. 원고 (a) 센터라인 (1) 과 벨크로 센터라인 (2) 의 차이를 확인합니다. 차이가 기준치 외의 경우 다음 순서로 조정합니다.

<기준치> 단면의 경우 센터라인 (2) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 2.0$ mm 이내

양면의 경우 센터라인 (2) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내

2. 메인テナンス 모드 U072 을 세트하고 조정을 합니다.

Front: 센터 위치 (표면) 의 조정

Back: 센터 위치 (뒷면) 의 조정

**[ センターライン確認 ]**

1. 原稿 (a) の中心線 (1) とコピーサンプルの中心線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

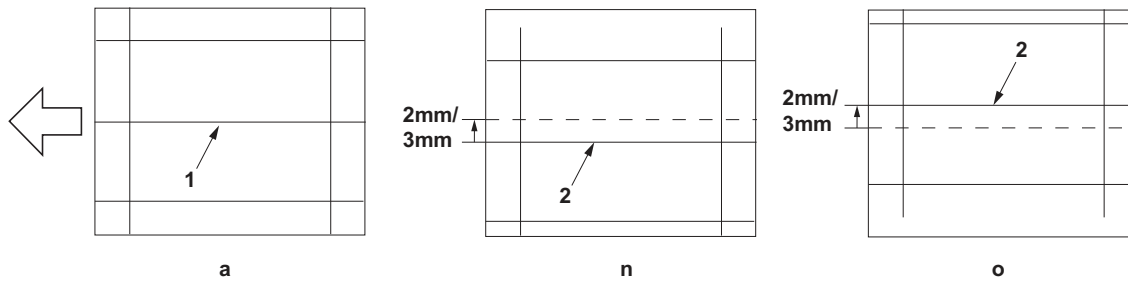
<基準値> 片面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 2.0$  mm 以内

両面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 3.0$  mm 以内

2. メンテナンスモード U072 をセットし、調整を行う。

Front: センター位置 (表面) の調整

Back: センター位置 (裏面) の調整



**3. Adjust the values.**

If the center moves more front, copy example (n): Decreases the value.  
If the center moves inner, copy sample (o): Increases the value.

Amount of change per step: 0.085 mm

**4. Perform a test copy.**

**5. Repeat the steps 2 to 4 above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the reference value.**

<Reference value>

Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the single copying:  $\pm 2.0$  mm

Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the duplex copying:  $\pm 3.0$  mm

**3. Régler les valeurs.**

Pour l'exemple de copie (n) dont l'axe se déplace davantage vers l'avant : diminuer la valeur.

Pour l'exemple de copie (o) dont l'axe se déplace vers l'intérieur : augmenter la valeur.

Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,085 mm

**4. Effectuer une copie de test.**

**5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.**

<Valeur de référence>

Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto :  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto-verso :  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**3. Ajuste los valores.**

Si el centro se desplaza más hacia el frente, ejemplo de copia (n): disminuye el valor.

Si el centro se desplaza hacia dentro, ejemplo de copia (o): aumenta el valor.

Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,085 mm

**4. Haga una copia de prueba.**

**5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.**

<Valor de referencia>

Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado por una cara:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado dúplex:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**3. Die Werte einstellen.**

Wenn die Mitte nach vorne verlagert ist, Kopierbeispiel (n): Den Wert verringern.

Wenn die Mitte nach innen verlagert ist, Kopierbeispiel (o): Den Wert erhöhen.

Änderung pro Schritt: 0,085 mm

**4. Eine Testkopie erstellen.**

**5. Die Schritte 2 bis 4 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.**

<Bezugswert>

Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Einzelkopie:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Duplexkopie:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**3. Regolare i valori.**

Se il centro si sposta più avanti, esempio di copia (n): riduce il valore.

Se il centro si sposta verso l'interno, esempio di copia (o): aumenta il valore.

Entità modifica per passo: 0,085 mm

**4. Eseguire una copia di prova**

**5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 2 a 4 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.**

<Valore di riferimento>

Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia singola:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia duplex:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**3. 調整設定値。**

当中心向前偏移时 复印样本 (n) : 调低设定值

当中心向内偏移时 复印样本 (o) : 调高设定值

设定值的一个调整单位变化量 : 0.085mm

**4. 进行测试复印。**

**5. 重复上述步骤 2 到 4, 直至复印样本上的线 (2) 的偏移值达到标准值范围内。**

<标准值>

单面复印时, 中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值 :  $\pm 2.0$ mm 以内

双面复印时, 中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值 :  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

**3. 설정치를 조정합니다 .**

센터가 바로 앞으로 틀려 있는 경우 샘플 카피 (n) : 설정치를 내립니다 .

센터가 안으로 틀려 있는 경우 샘플 카피 (o) : 설정치를 높입니다 .

1 스텝당 변화량 : 0.085mm

**4. 벨크로를 합니다 .**

**5. 벨크로 센터라인 (2) 차이가 기준치 내가 될 때까지 순서 2 ~ 4 를 반복 합니다 .**

< 기준치 >

단면의 경우 센터라인 (2) 의 좌우차이 :  $\pm 2.0$ mm 이내

양면의 경우 센터라인 (2) 의 좌우차이 :  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내

**3. 設定値を調整する。**

センターが手前にずれている場合コピーサンプル (n) : 設定値を下げる。

センターが奥にずれている場合コピーサンプル (o) 設定値を上げる。

1 ステップ当たりの変化量 : 0.085mm

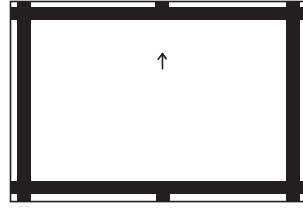
**4. テストコピーを行う。**

**5. コピーサンプルの中心線 (2) ずれが基準値内になるまで手順 2 ~ 4 を繰り返す。**

<基準値>

片面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ :  $\pm 2.0$ mm 以内

両面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ :  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内



#### [Automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment] If there is no DP auto adjustment original

1. Set the maintenance mode U411 and press [DP Auto Adj] to output the adjustment original.
2. Set the printed original on the contact glass and press the Start key.

3. Set the original on the DP face up and press the Start key to carry out surface adjustment.
4. If "OK" appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment failed. Check the original set position and repeat steps 2 and 3 until "OK" appears. For details, see the service manual.

#### [Réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage] Si la machine n'est pas pourvue de la fonction réglage automatique d'original du DP

1. Passez en mode maintenance U411 et appuyez sur [DP Auto Adj] pour imprimer l'original de réglage.
2. Placer l'original qui vient d'être imprimé sur la vitre d'exposition et appuyer sur la touche Start.

3. Placer l'original sur le DP côté imprimé en haut et appuyer sur la touche Start pour procéder au réglage de la surface.
4. Si le message "OK" apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé. Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérifier la position de l'original et recommencer les opérations 2 et 3 jusqu'à ce que le message "OK" apparaisse. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

#### [Ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste] Si no existe el original de ajuste automático del DP

1. Configure el modo de mantenimiento U411 y pulse [DP Auto Adj] para imprimir el original de ajuste.
2. Coloque el original impreso sobre el cristal de contacto y pulse la tecla de Start.

3. Coloque el original en el DP cara arriba y pulse la tecla de Start para realizar un ajuste de anverso.
4. Si aparece "OK" en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición ajustada del original y repita los pasos 2 y 3 hasta que aparezca "OK" en la pantalla. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

#### [Automatische Einstellung mithilfe des Originals] Falls keine automatische Einstellung des Originals des DP vorhanden ist

1. Aktivieren Sie den Wartungsmodus U411 und wählen Sie [DP Auto Adj], um das Original für die Anpassung auszudrucken.
2. Das ausgedruckte Original auf das Kontaktglas legen und die Start-Taste betätigen.

3. Das Original mit der Druckseite nach oben einlegen und die Start-Taste betätigen, um die Oberflächeneinstellung ausführen zu lassen.
4. Wenn am Display "OK" angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlossen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 2 und 3, bis "OK" angezeigt wird. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

#### [Regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale] Se non è presente l'autoregolazione originale DP

1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U411, quindi premere [DP Auto Adj] per stampare l'originale da utilizzare per la regolazione.
2. Posizionare l'originale stampato sul vetro di appoggio e premere il tasto di Start.

3. Posizionare l'originale sul DP rivolto verso l'alto e premere il tasto di Start per eseguire la regolazione della superficie.
4. Se "OK" appare sul display, la regolazione è completata. Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 2 e 3 fino a quando appare "OK". Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

#### [通过调整用原稿进行自动调整] 没有 DP 调整用原稿时

1. 进入维修保养模式 U411, 选择 [DP Auto Adj], 输出测试原稿。
2. 将输出的原稿放在稿台上, 按 Start 键。

3. 将原稿面朝上放在 DP 主机上, 按 Start 键以进行正面的调整。
4. 如果屏幕上出现 "OK" (完成), 则表示调整完成。如果出现 ERROR XX (错误 XX), 则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并重复步骤 2 和 3, 直到 "OK" (完成) 出现。详细内容请参照维修手册。

#### [조정용 원고를 이용한 자동조정] DP 조정용 원고가 없는 경우

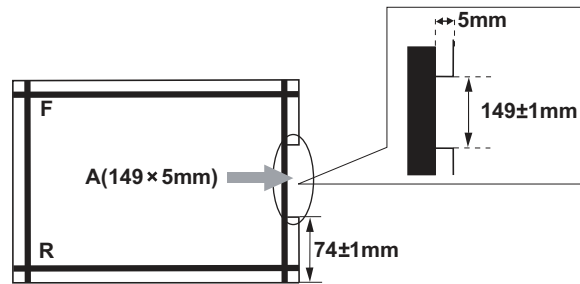
1. 메인テナンス 모드 U411 을 설정하고 [DP Auto Adj] 를 눌러 조정된 원고를 출력합니다 .
2. 출력한 원고를 원고 유리에 장착하고 시작 키를 누릅니다 .

3. 원고를 FaceUp 으로 DP 본체로 세트하고 시작 키를 눌러 표면조정을 합니다 .
4. 디스플레이에 "OK" 가 표시되면 조정완료가 됩니다 . ERROR XX 가 표시된 경우에는 조정실패입니다 . 원고 장착위치를 확인하고 "OK" 가 표시될 때까지 순서 2 ~ 3 를 반복합니다 . 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조

#### [調整用原稿による自動調整] DP 調整用原稿が無い場合

1. メンテナンスモード U411 をセットし、[DP Auto Adj] を押し原稿を出力する。
2. 出力した原稿をコンタクトガラス上にセットし、Start キーを押す。

3. 原稿を FaceUp で DP ヘットし、Start キーを押し、表面の調整を行う。
4. ディスプレイに「OK」が表示されれば調整完了となる。ERROR XX が表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確認し、「OK」が表示されるまで手順 2 ~ 3 を繰り返す。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。



### Using a DP auto adjustment original

1. Direct F and R of the DP auto adjustment original upward, and set the original from the place where F and R are marked.
2. Set the maintenance mode U411. Press the [DP FU(ChartB)] and the Start key in that order to carry out surface adjustment.

3. If "OK" appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment failed. Check the original set position and repeat steps 1 and 2 until "OK" appears. For details, see the service manual.

### Avec la fonction réglage automatique d'original du DP

1. Diriger F (avant) et R (arrière) de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP vers le haut, puis placer l'original à partir de l'emplacement des repères F et R.
2. Passer au mode maintenance U411. Appuyer sur les touches [DP FU(ChartB)] et Start dans cet ordre pour procéder au réglage de la surface.

3. Si le message "OK" apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé. Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérifier la position de l'original et recommencer les opérations 1 et 2 jusqu'à ce que le message "OK" apparaisse. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

### Uso del original de ajuste automático del DP

1. Dirija F y R del original de ajuste automático del DP hacia arriba, y coloque el original a partir del sitio en que están marcados F y R.
2. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U411. Pulse las teclas [DP FU(ChartB)] y la tecla de Start, en ese orden, para realizar el ajuste de anverso.

3. Si aparece "OK" en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición ajustada del original y repita los pasos 1 y 2 hasta que aparezca "OK" en la pantalla. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

### Gebrauch der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP

1. F und R der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP nach oben zeigen und das Original an die mit F und R markierte Stelle setzen.
2. Den Wartungsmodus U411 einschalten. [DP FU(ChartB)] und die Start-Taste in dieser Reihenfolge betätigen, um die Oberflächeneinstellung ausführen zu lassen.

3. Wenn am Display "OK" angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlossen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 1 und 2, bis "OK" angezeigt wird. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

### Uso di un'autoregolazione originale DP

1. Orientare F e R dell'autoregolazione originale DP verso l'alto e disporre l'originale rispetto ai punti in cui sono contrassegnati F e R.
2. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U411. Premere nell'ordine [DP FU(ChartB)] e il tasto di Start, per eseguire la regolazione della superficie.

3. Se "OK" appare sul display, la regolazione è completata. Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 1 e 2 fino a quando appare "OK". Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

### 使用 DP 自动调整原稿时

1. 将 DP 自动调整原稿的 F 和 R 向上, 并把标有 F 和 R 的一侧插入 DP 来设定原稿。
2. 设置维护模式 U411, 按顺序按 [DP FU(ChartB)]、Start 键以进行正面的调整。

3. 如果屏幕上出现 "OK" (完成), 则表示调整完成。如果出现 ERROR XX (错误 XX), 则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并重复步骤 1 和 2, 直到 "OK" (完成) 出现。详细内容请参照维修手册。

### DP 자동조정용 원고를 사용하는 경우

1. DP 자동조정원고 F, R 을 위로 향하게 하고 F, R 이 쓰여져 있는 쪽에서 DP 본체로 세트합니다.
2. 메인テナンス 모드 U411 을 세트하고 [DP FU(ChartB)], 시작키의 순서로 눌러 표면 조정을 합니다.

3. 디스플레이에 "OK" 가 표시되면 조정완료가 됩니다. ERROR XX 가 표시된 경우에는 조정실패입니다. 원고 장착위치를 확인하고 "OK" 가 표시될 때까지 순서 1 ~ 2 를 반복합니다. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조.

### DP 自動調整原稿を使用する場合

1. DP 自動調整原稿の F、R を上に向け、F、R が書かれている方から DP へセットする。
2. メンテナンスモード U411 をセットし、[DP FU(ChartB)]、Start キーの順に押し、表面の調整を行う。

3. ディスプレイに「OK」が表示されれば調整完了となる。ERROR XX が表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確認し、「OK」が表示されるまで手順 1 ~ 2 を繰り返す。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

(2) DP-7110

# DP-7110 / (Document processor) Installation Guide

**INSTALLATION GUIDE**

**GUIDE D'INSTALLATION**

**GUÍA DE INSTALACION**

**INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG**

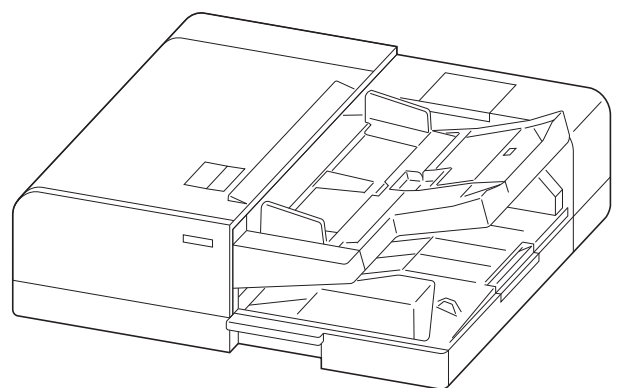
**GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE**

**安装手册**

**설치안내서**

**設置手順書**

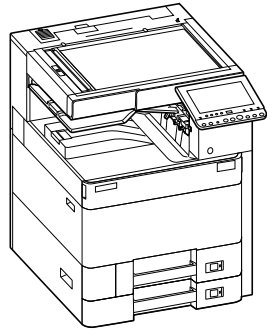
**DP-7110**



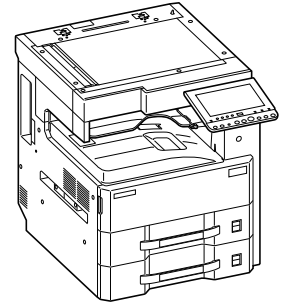
**A**

Color MFP  
25/25ppm,32/32ppm,  
35/35ppm,40/40ppm,  
50/50ppm,60/55ppm

Black & White MFP  
40ppm,50ppm,60ppm

**B**

Black & White MFP  
30ppm,32ppm,  
35ppm,40ppm

**English**

A different procedure is required depending on the product which is installed with this unit. Each procedure is described in the following pages. For installation with a MFP(A), see Page 1 to Page 7, Page 14 to Page 32. For installation with a MFP(B), see Page 8 to Page 32.

**Français**

Une procédure différente est requise selon le produit qui est installé avec cette unité. Chaque procédure est décrite dans les pages suivantes. Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(A), voir Page 1 à Page 7, Page 14 à Page 32. Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(B), voir Page 8 à Page 32.

**Español**

El procedimiento es diferente según el producto que se instale con esta unidad. En las siguientes páginas, se describe cada procedimiento. Para la instalación con un MFP(A), consulte las páginas de la 1 a la 7, páginas de la 14 a la 32. Para la instalación con un MFP(B), consulte las páginas de la 8 a la 32.

**Deutsch**

Je nach verwendetem Modell ist eine andere Vorgehensweise zur Installation dieses Teils erforderlich. Die unterschiedlichen Vorgehensweisen werden auf den folgenden Seiten erläutert. Bei Installation an einem MFP(A) siehe Seiten 1 bis 7, Seiten 14 bis 32. Bei Installation an einem MFP(B) siehe Seiten 8 bis 32.

**Italiano**

Si richiede una procedura diversa in funzione del prodotto su cui è installata l'unità. Le singole procedure sono descritte nelle pagine seguenti. Per l'installazione con un MFP(A), vedere le pagine da 1 a 7, pagine da 14 a 32. Per l'installazione con un MFP(B), vedere le pagine da 8 a 32.

**简体中文**

根据安装对象，安装步骤略有不同。各个步骤记载在下面的页面。  
安装到 MFP(A) 上时，请参见 P1-P7, P14-P32。  
安装到 MFP(B) 上时，请参见 P8-P32。

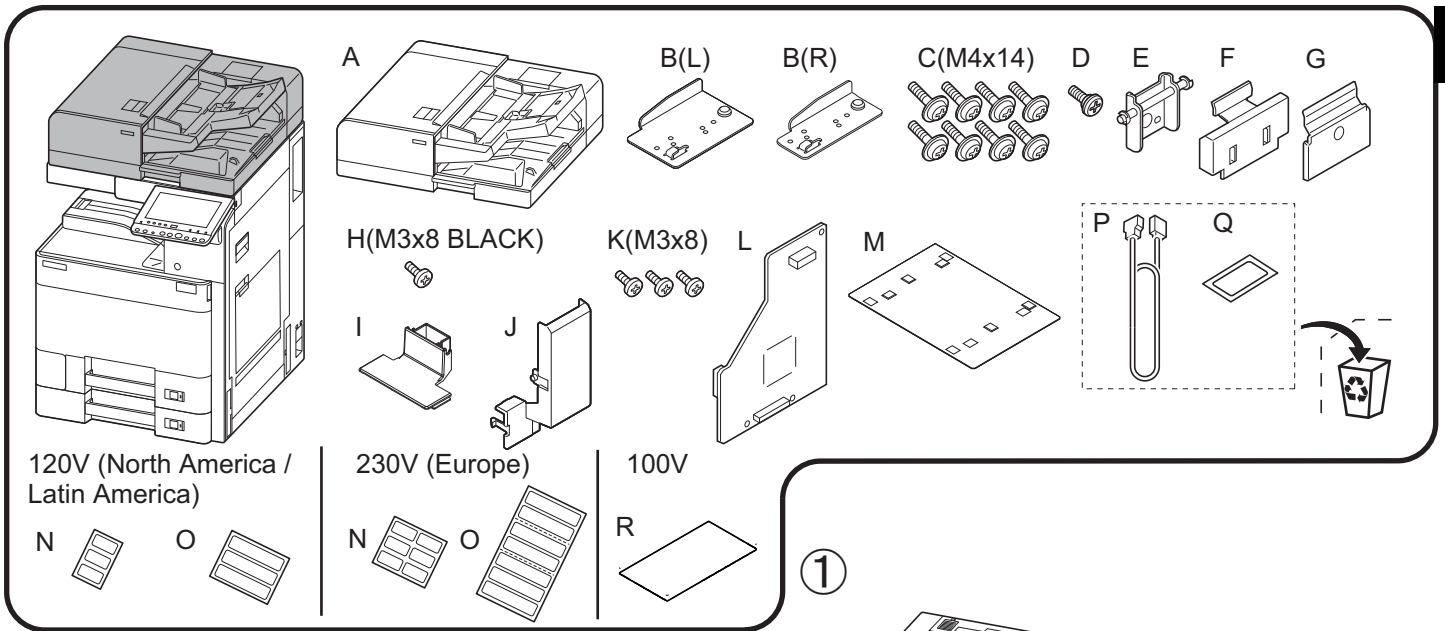
**한국어**

이 장치에 설치되는 제품에 따라 절차가 다릅니다. 다음 페이지에서 각 절차를 설명합니다.  
MFP(A) 에 설치하는 경우 1 페이지 ~7 페이지, 14 페이지 ~32 페이지를 참조하십시오.  
MFP(B) 에 설치하는 경우 8 페이지 ~32 페이지를 참조하십시오.

**日本語**

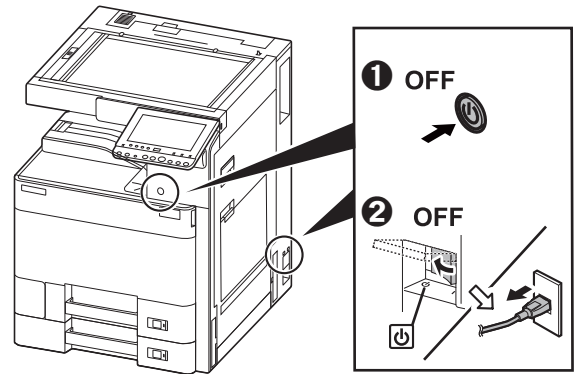
装着する対象によって、取付手順は異なります。それぞれ、以下のページに記載しています。  
MFP(A) に設置する場合; 1 ページ ~ 7 ページ, 14 ページ ~ 32 ページ  
MFP(B) に設置する場合; 8 ページ ~ 32 ページ



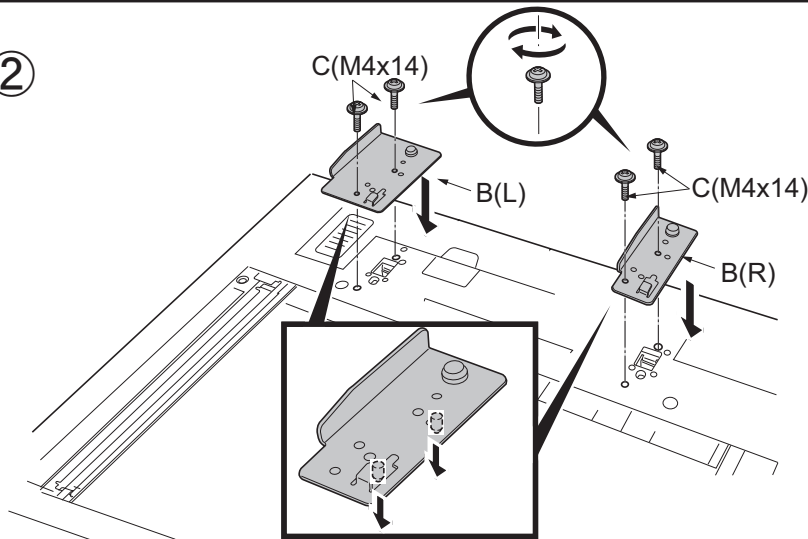


- (ENG) Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
- (FR) Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- (ES) Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- (DE) Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.
- (IT) Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.
- (CN) 如果附属品上带有固定胶带, 缓冲材料时务必揭下。
- (KO) 동봉품에 고정 테이프, 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오.
- (JP) 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。

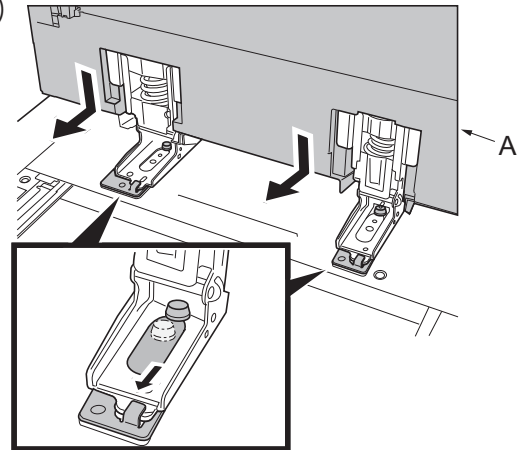
①



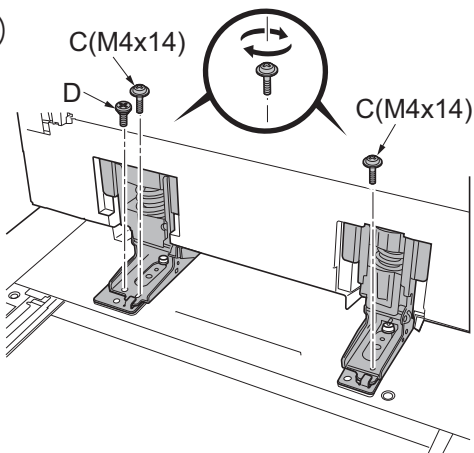
②



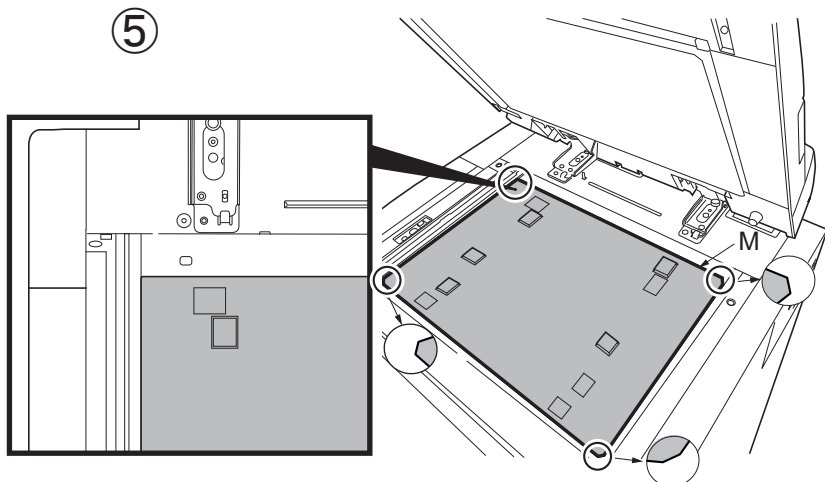
③



④

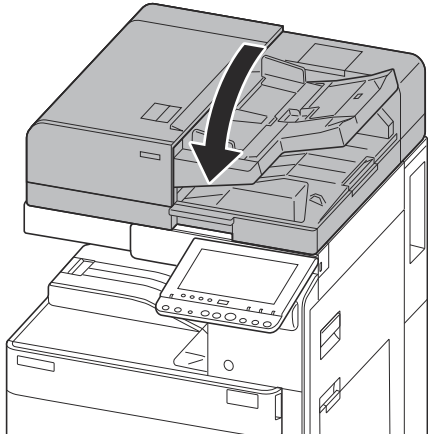


⑤

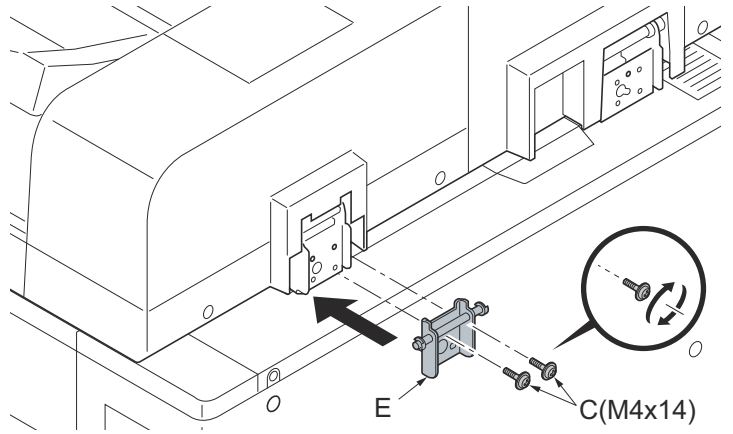


A

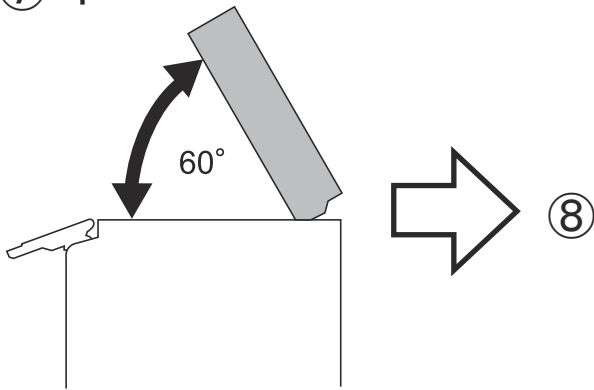
⑥



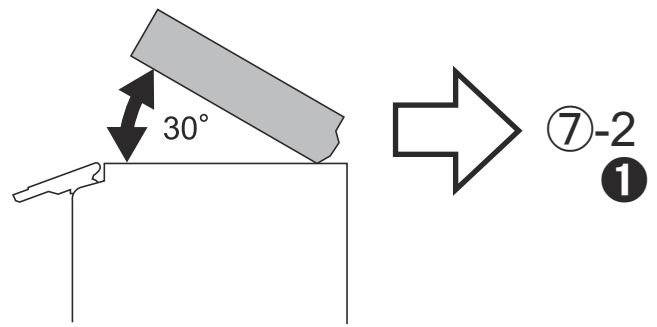
⑦



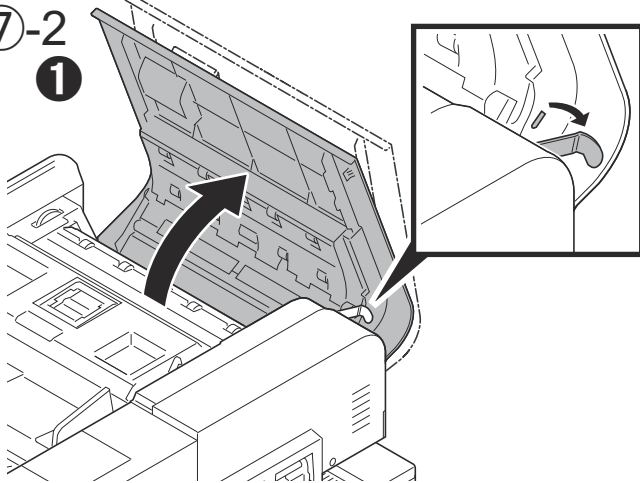
⑦-1



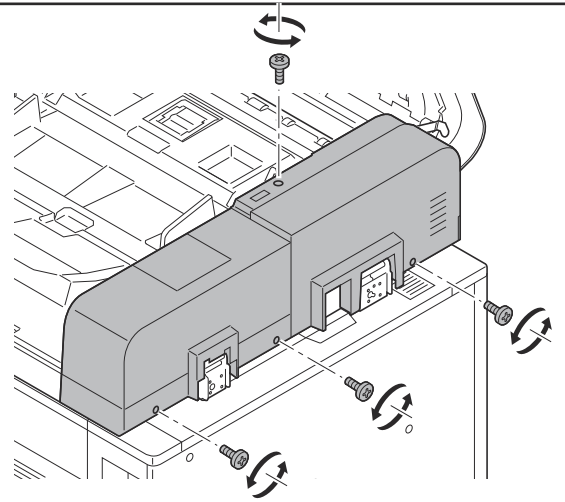
⑦-2



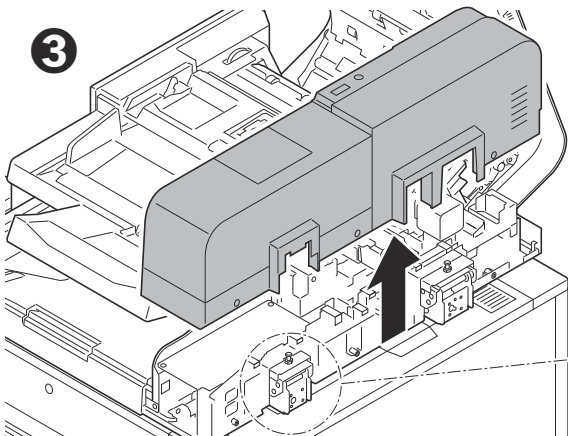
⑦-2 1



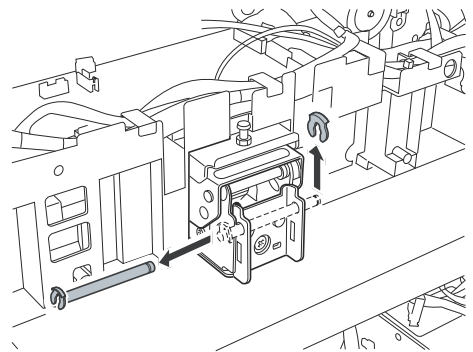
2



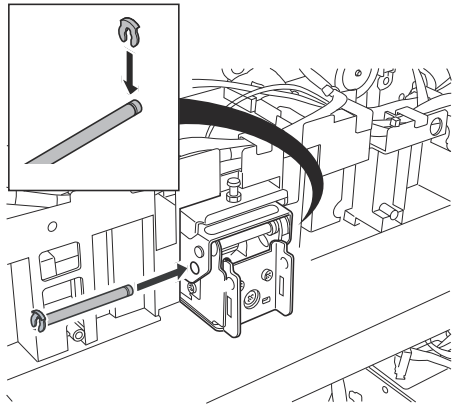
3



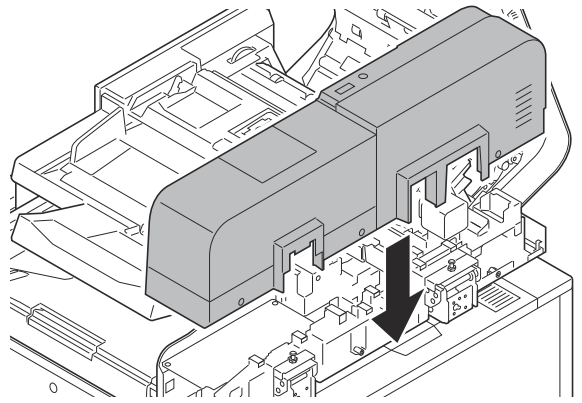
4



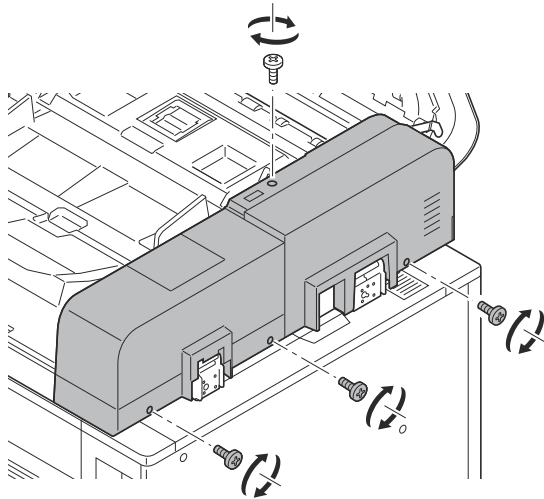
5



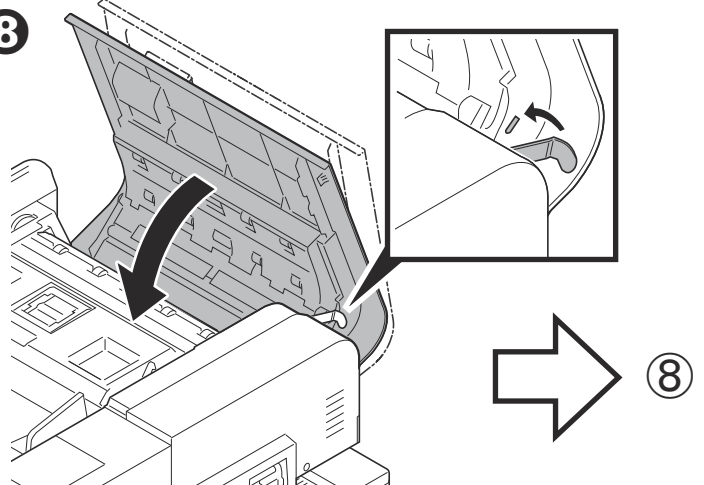
6



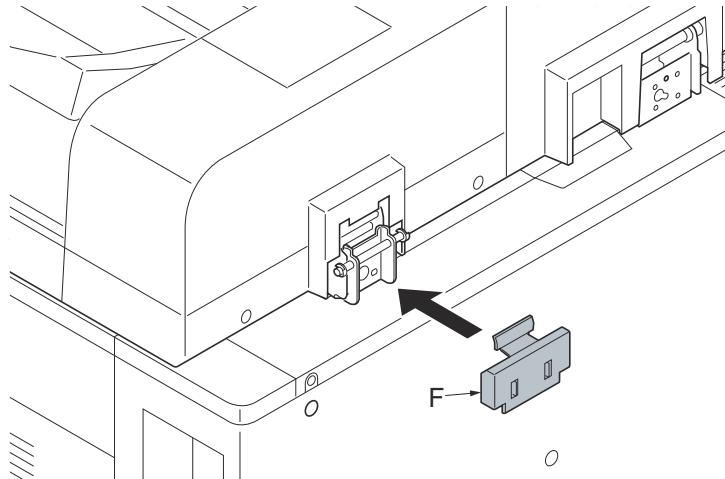
7



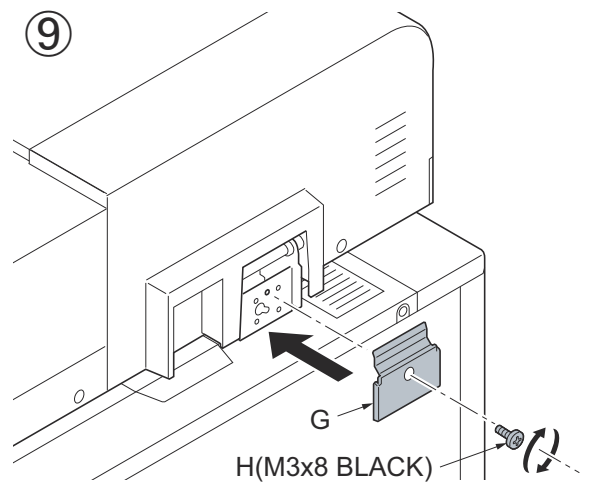
8



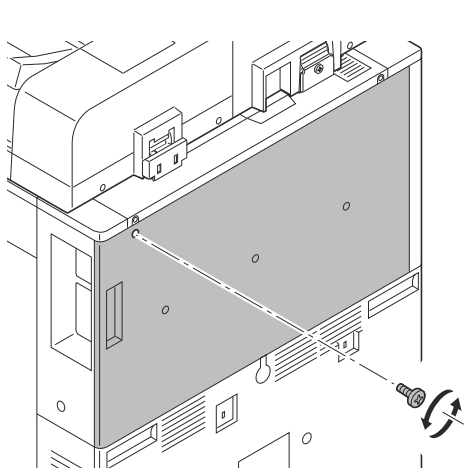
8



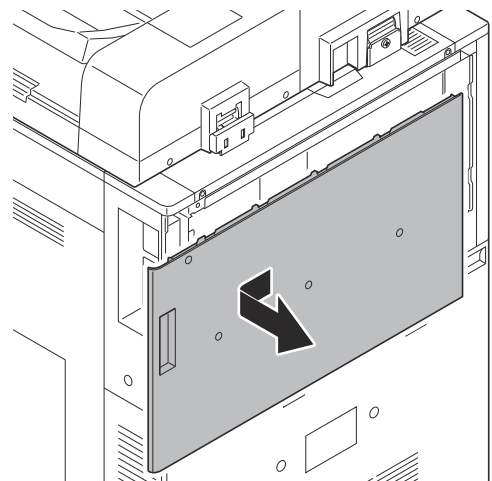
9



10

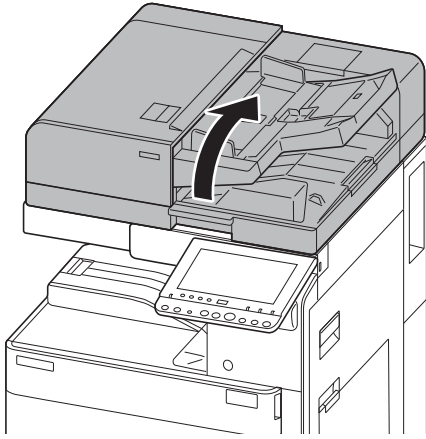


11

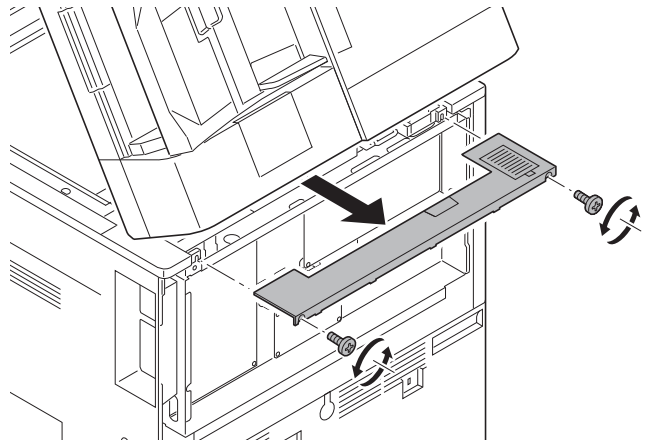


A

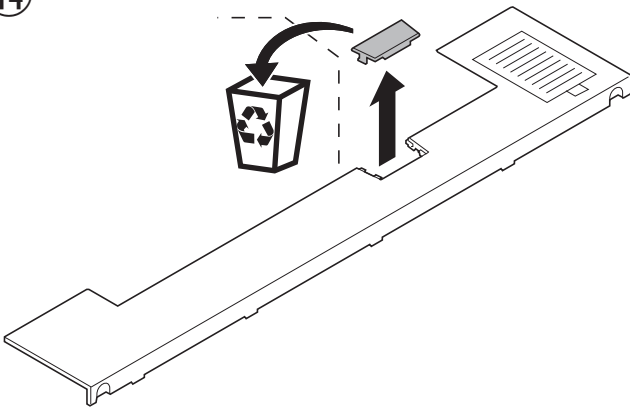
12



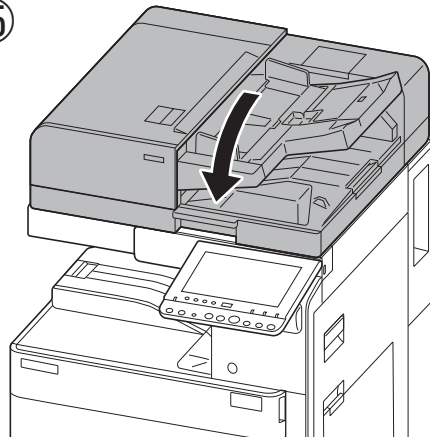
13



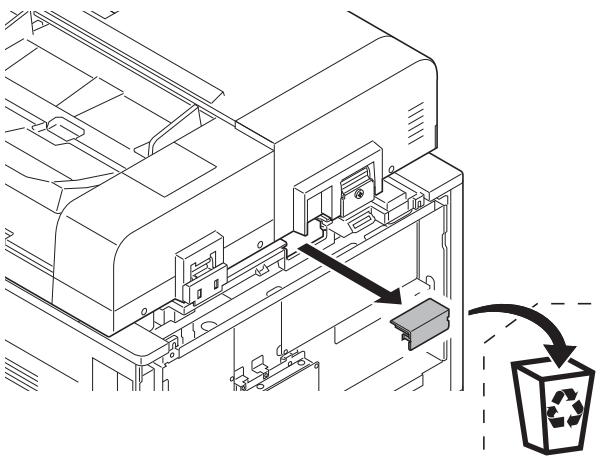
14



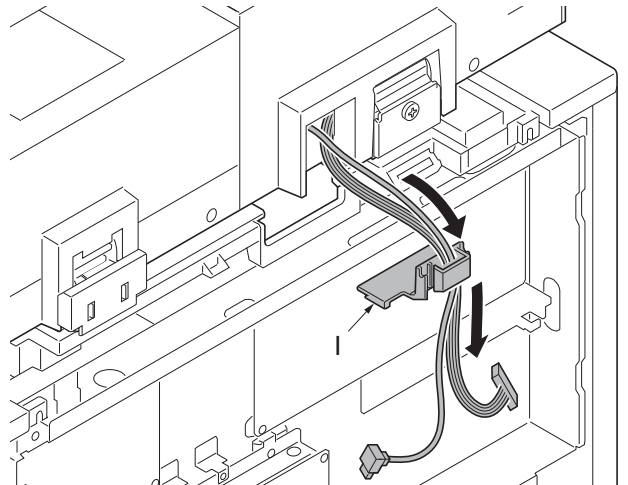
15



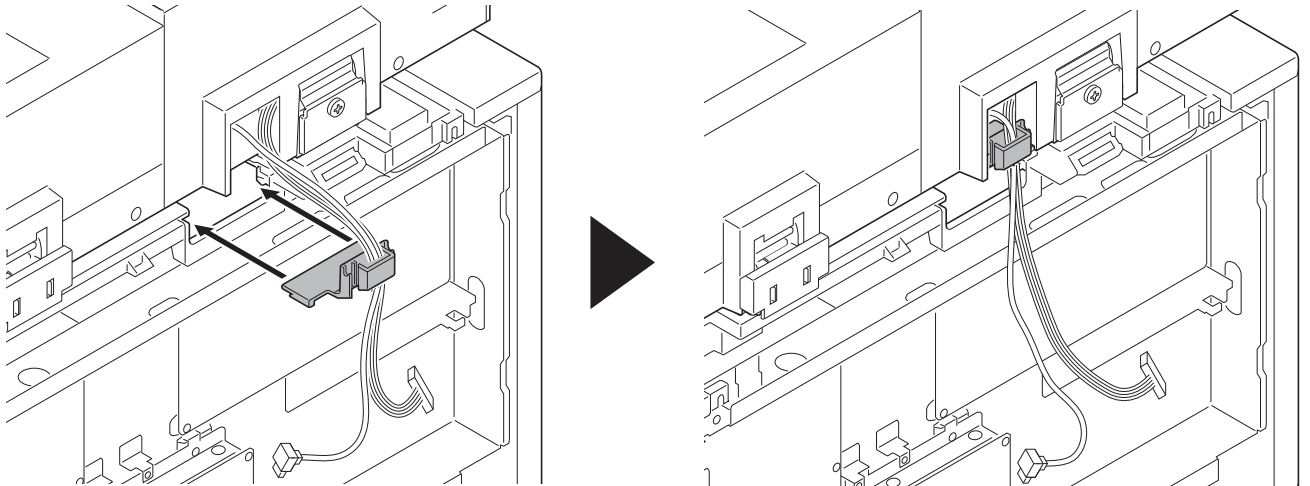
16



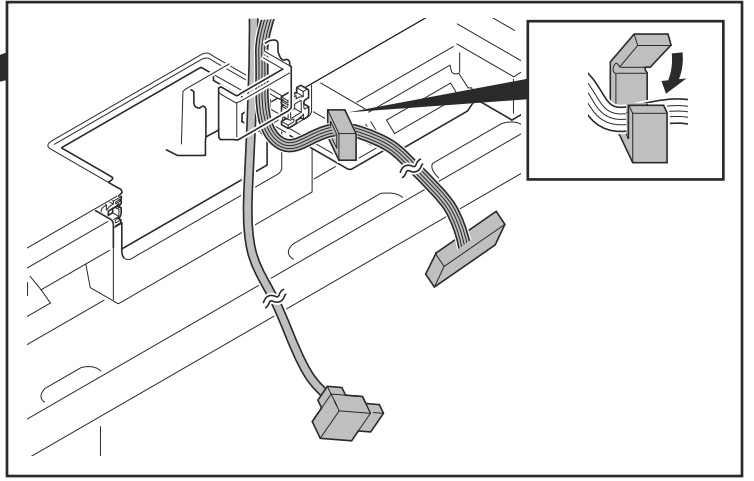
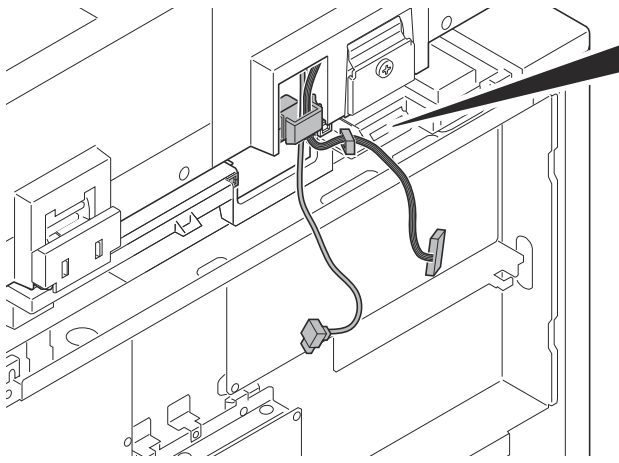
17



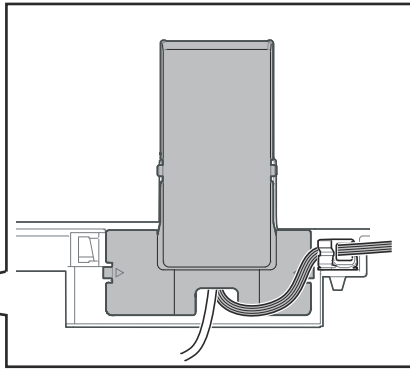
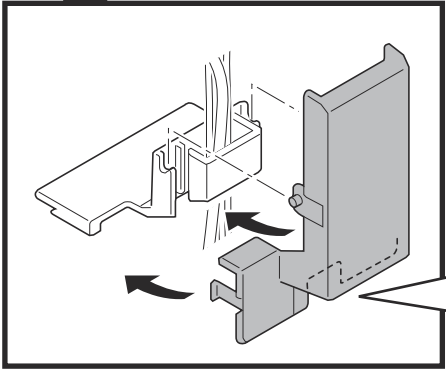
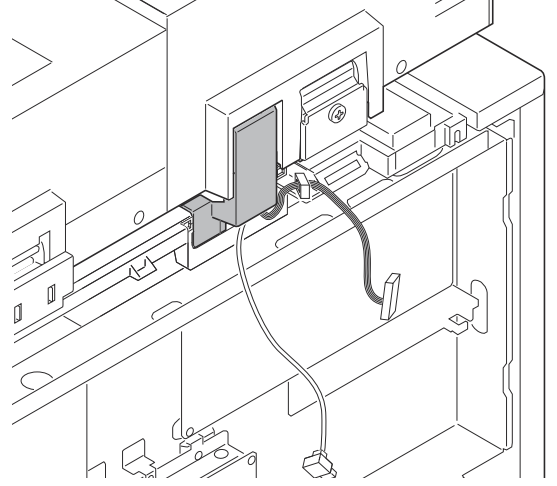
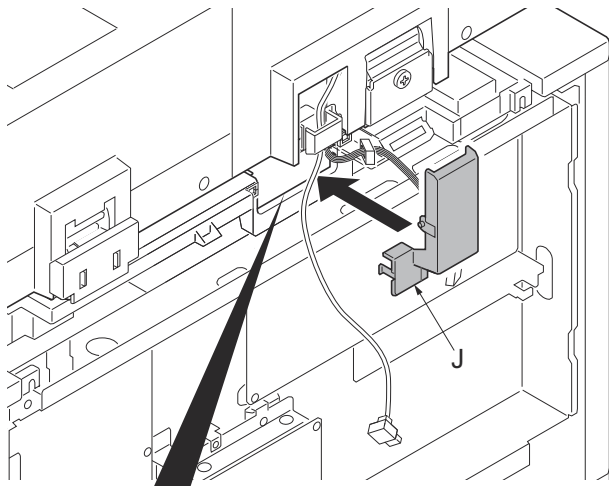
18



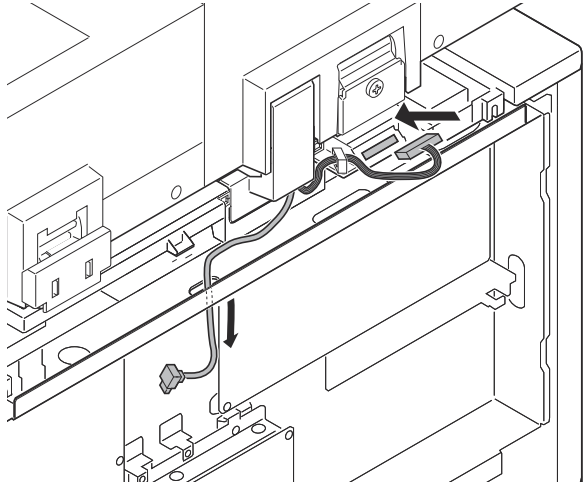
19



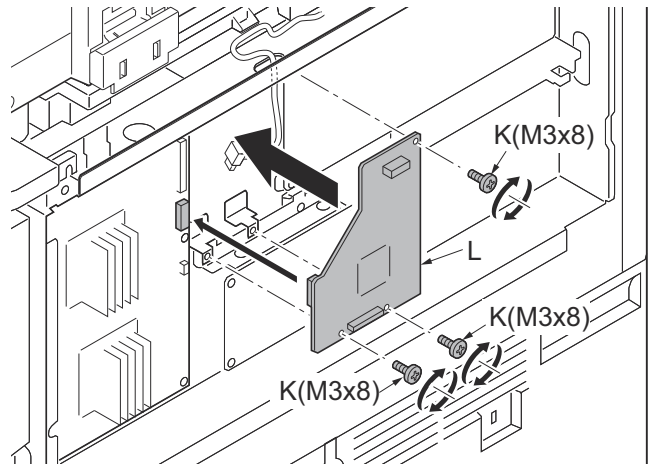
20



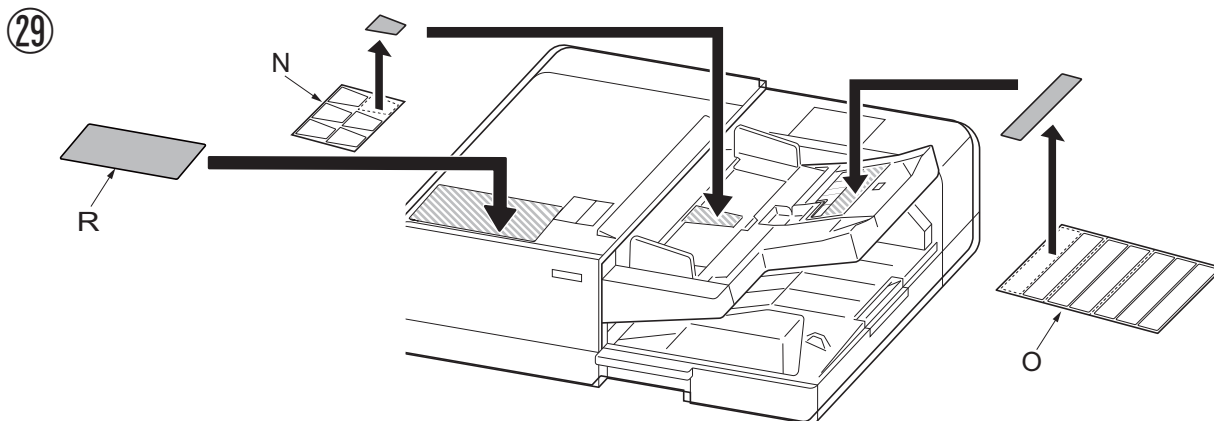
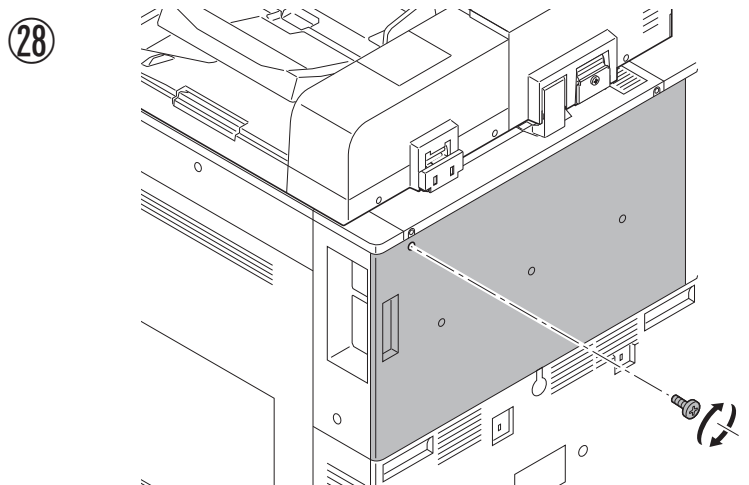
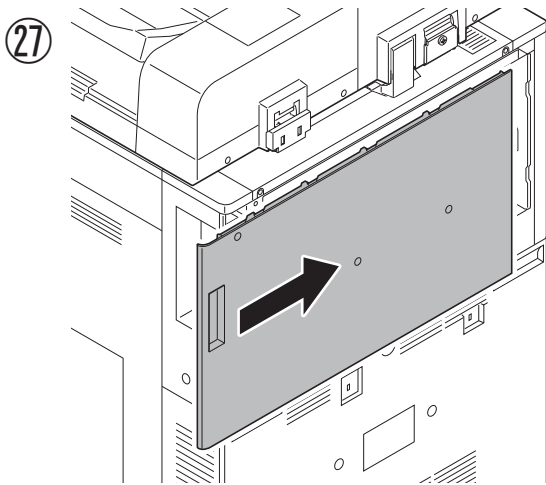
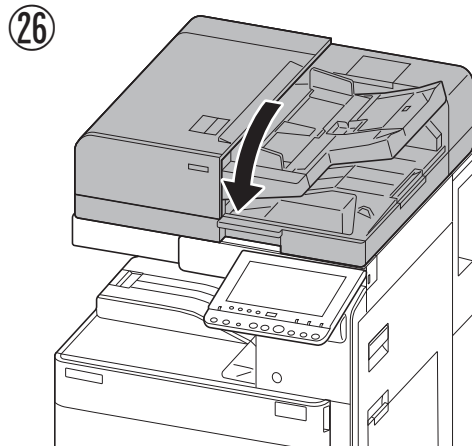
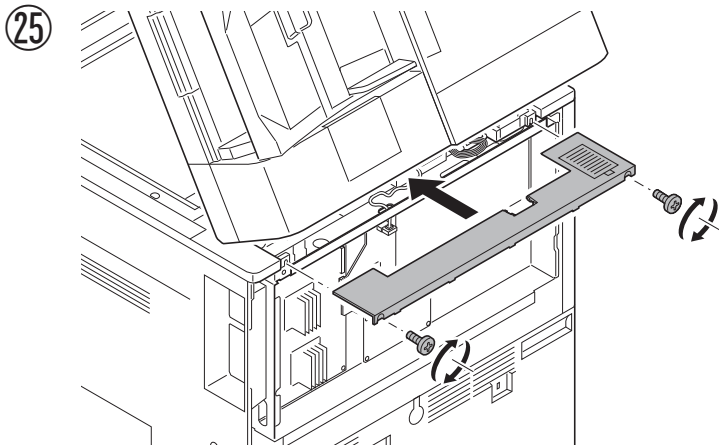
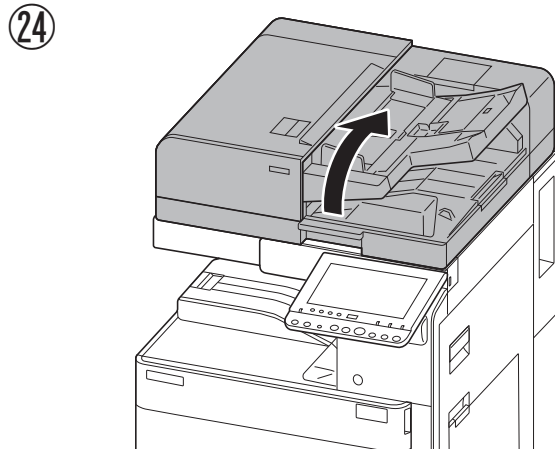
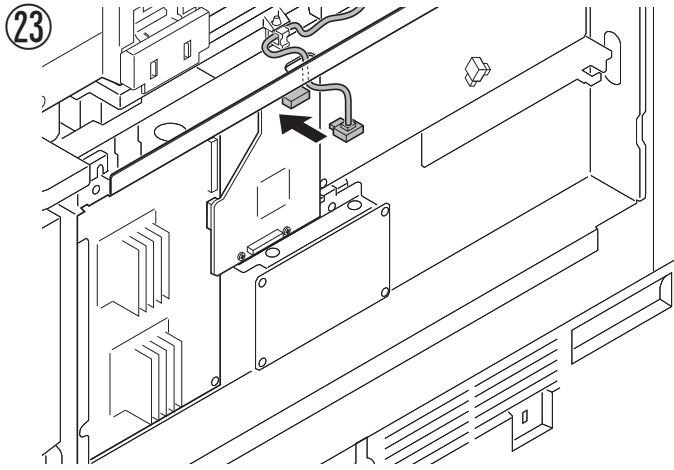
21



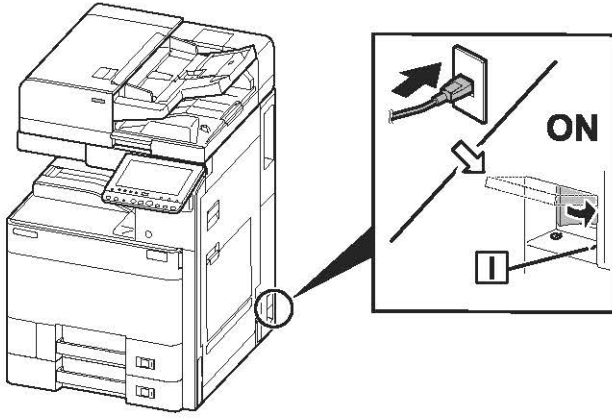
22



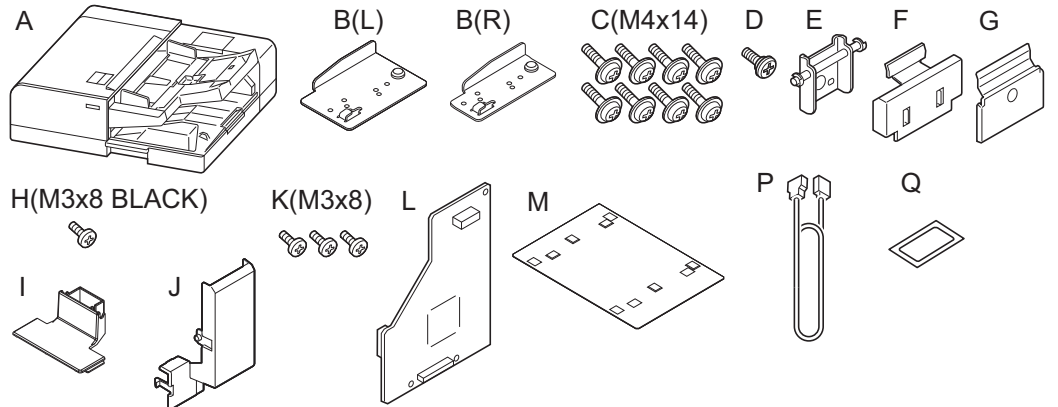
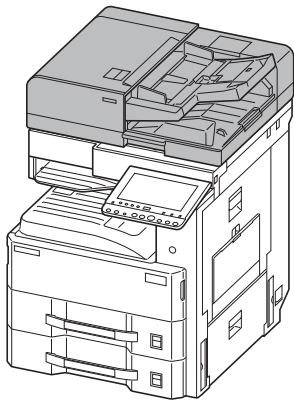
A



30



B



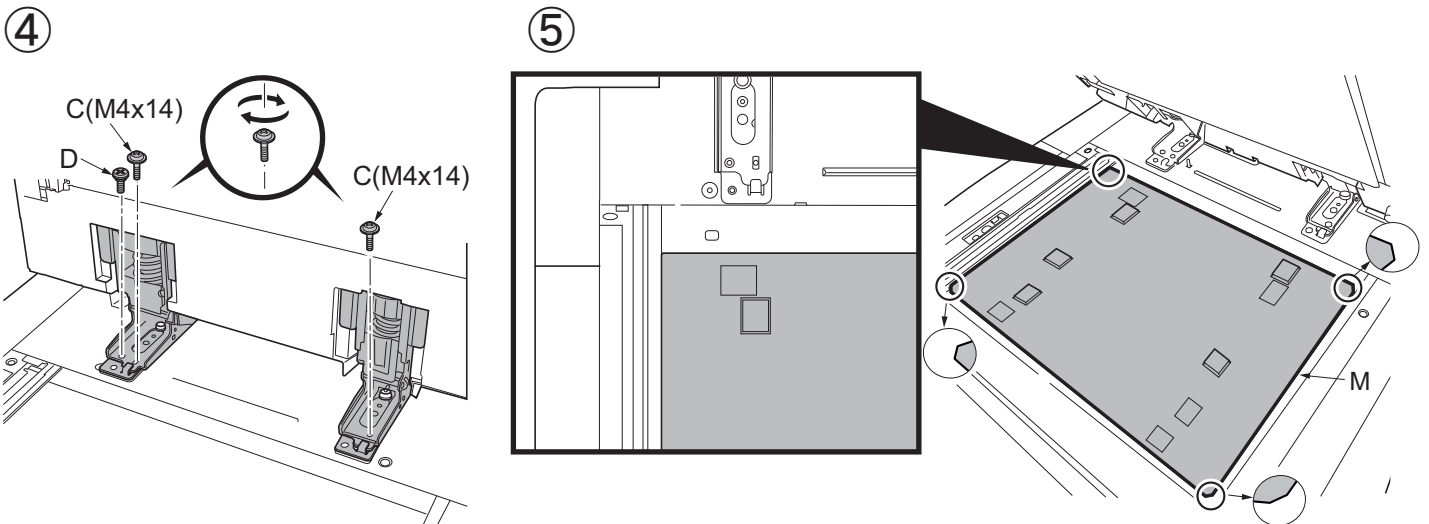
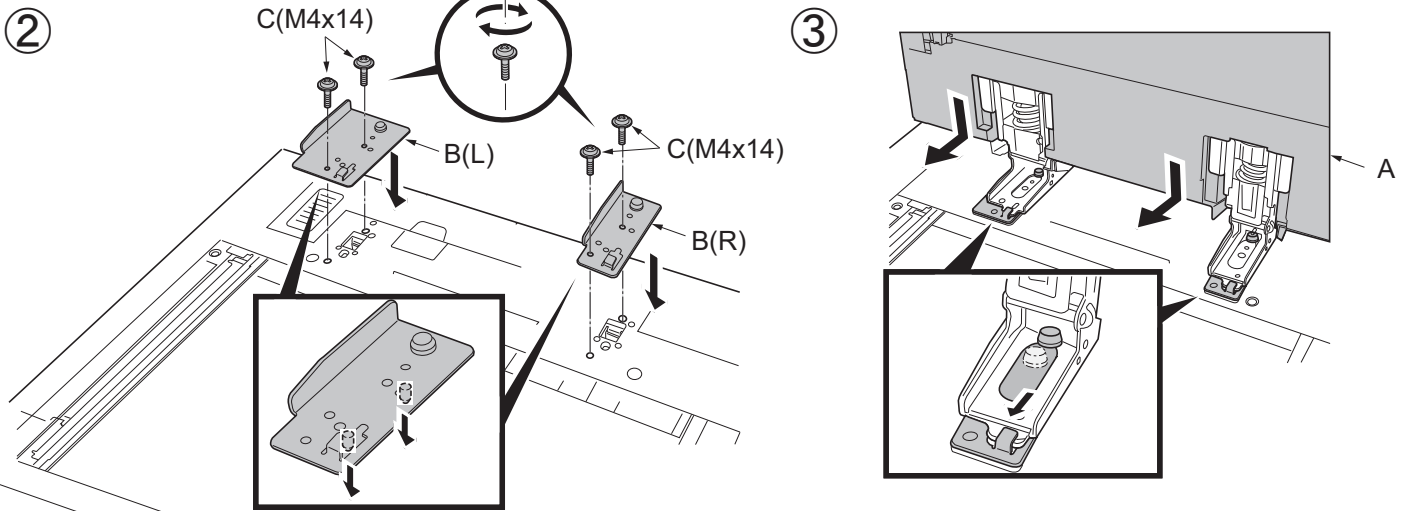
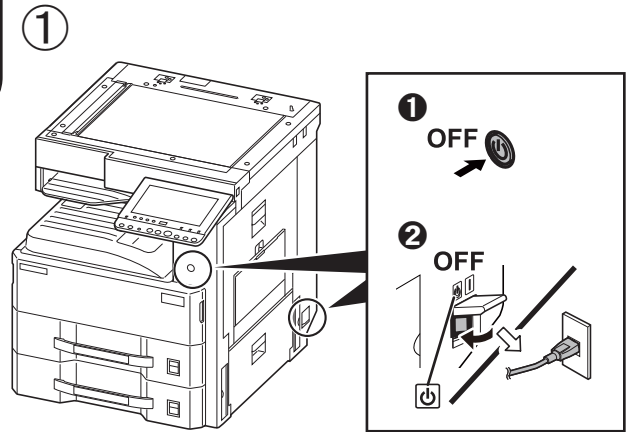
120V (North America / Latin America)

230V (Europe)

100V

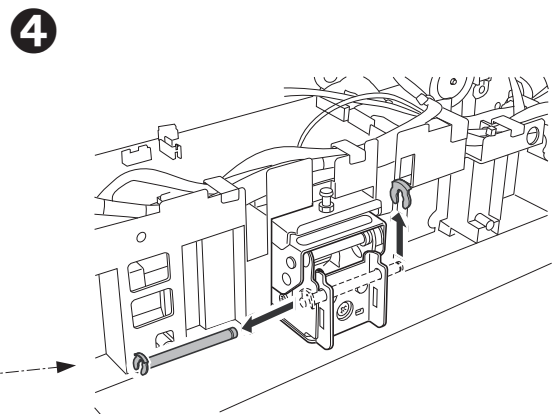
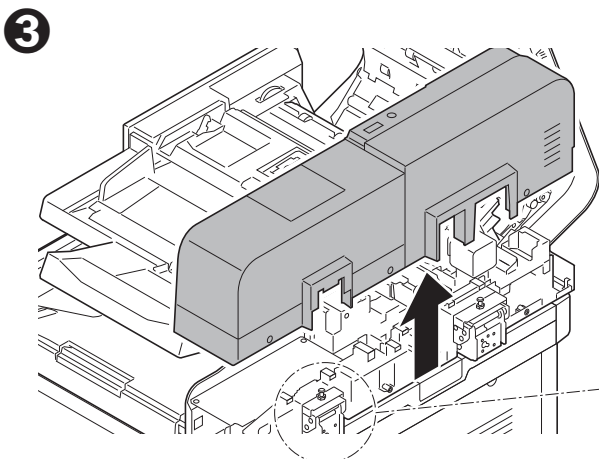
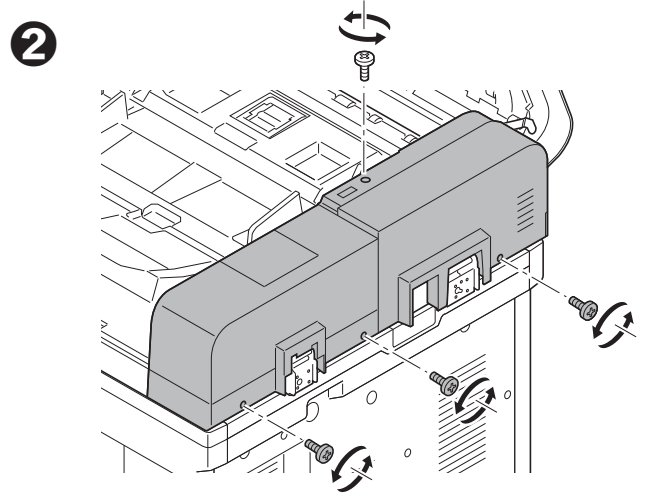
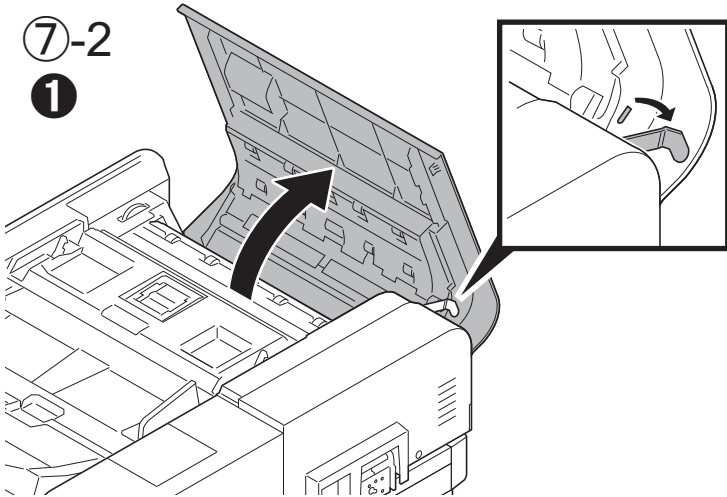
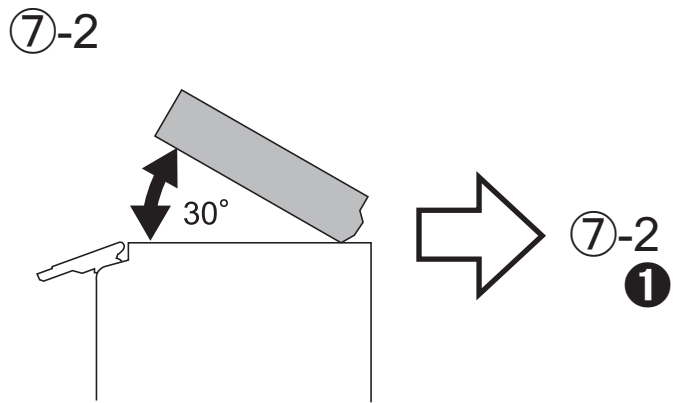
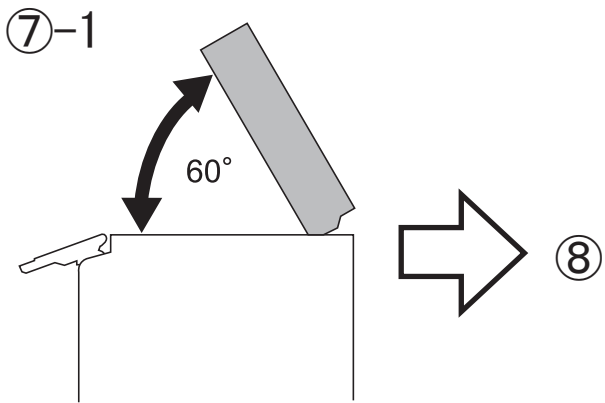
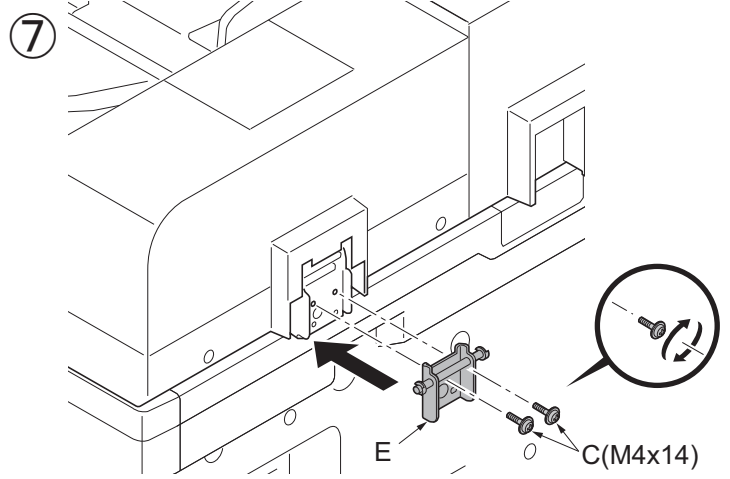
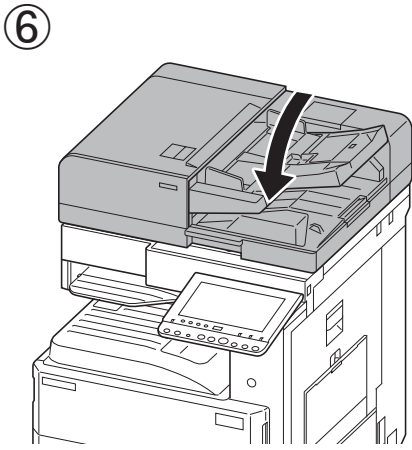


- (ENG) Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
- (FR) Veuillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- (ES) Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- (DE) Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.
- (IT) Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.
- (CN) 如果附属品上带有固定胶带, 缓冲材料时务必揭下。
- (KO) 동봉품에 고정 테이프, 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오.
- (JP) 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。



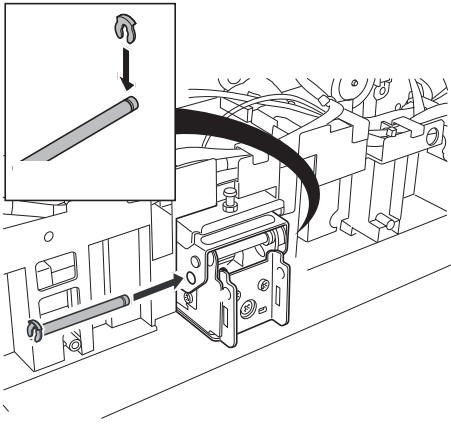


B

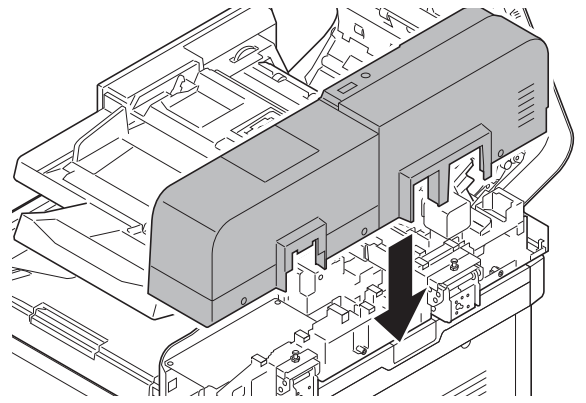


B

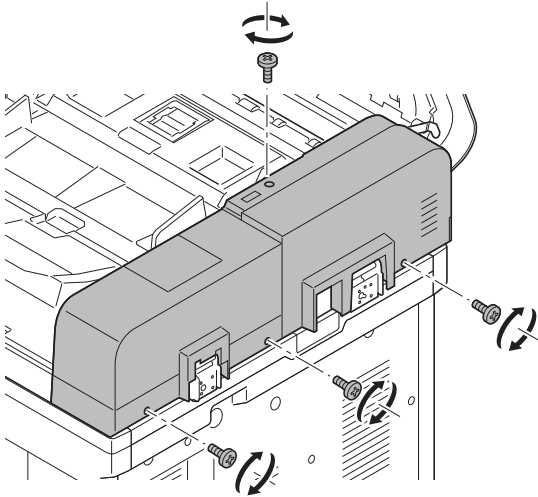
5



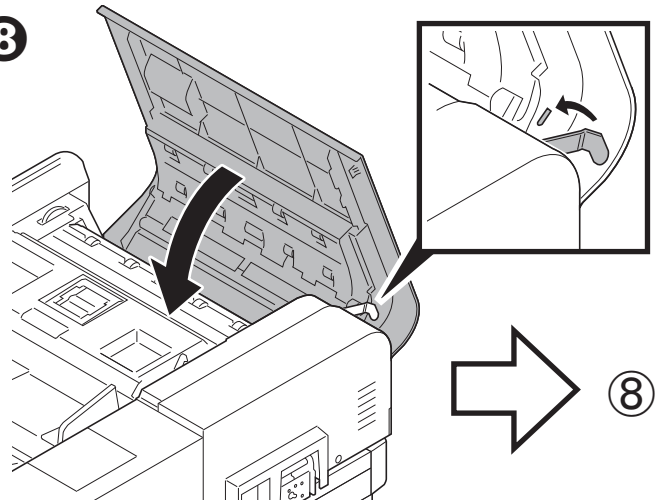
6



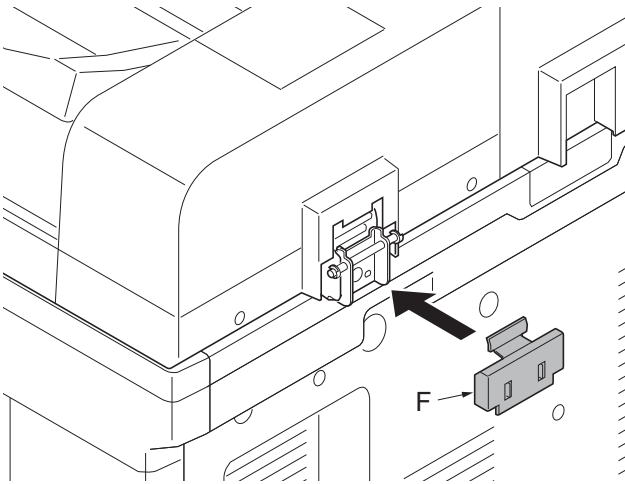
7



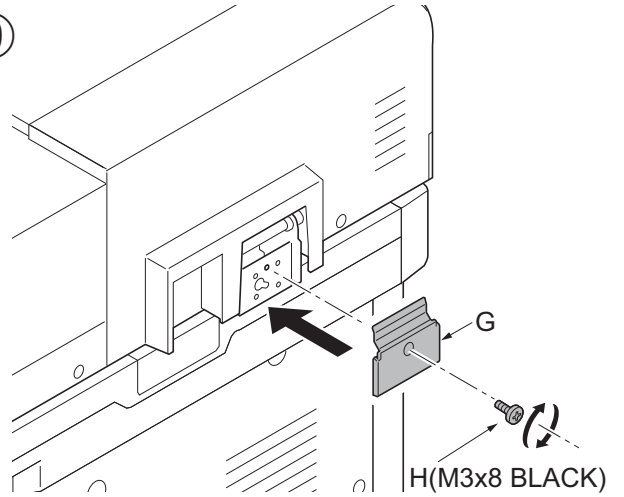
8



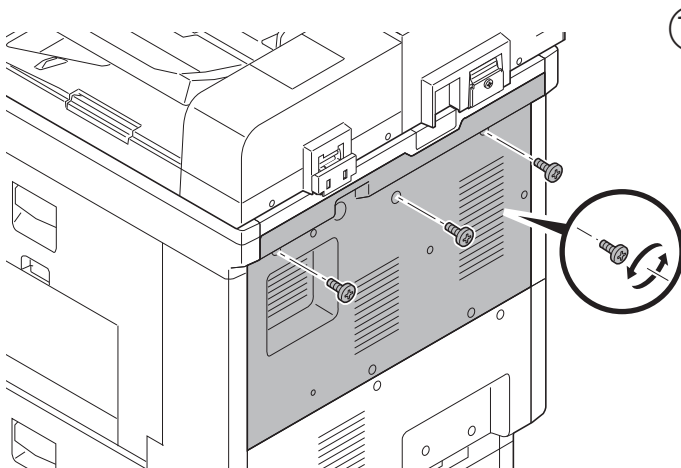
8



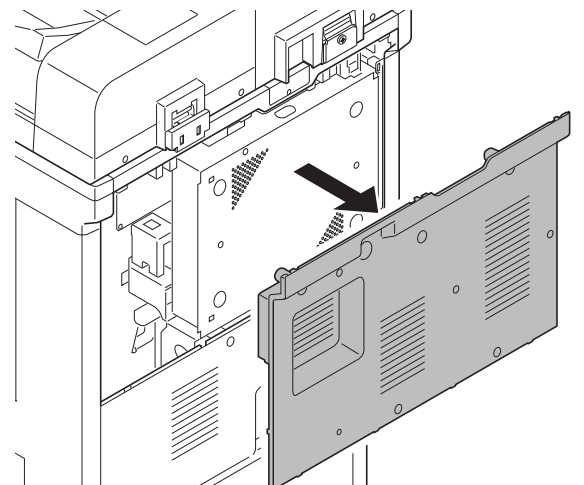
9

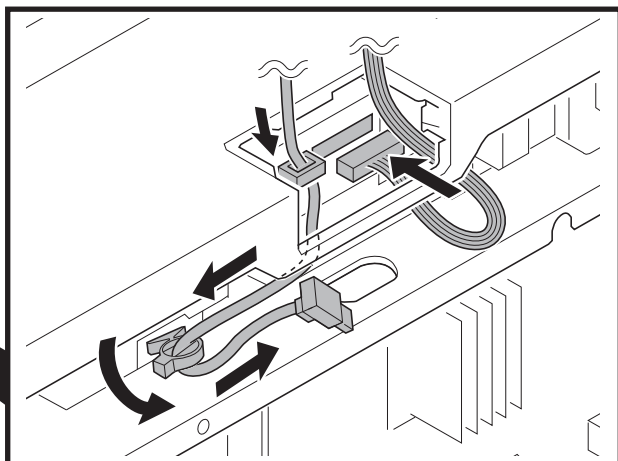
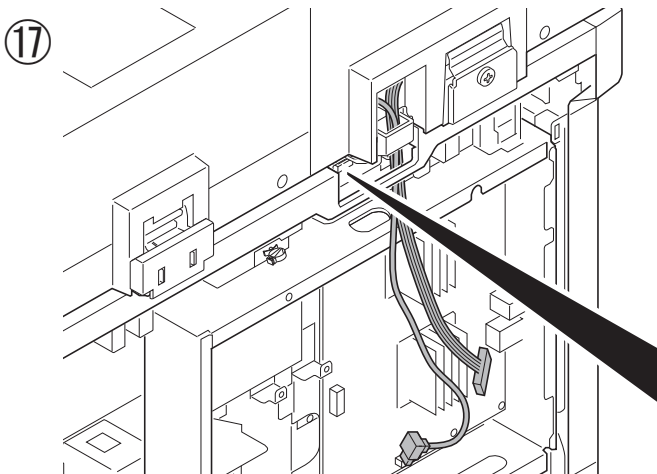
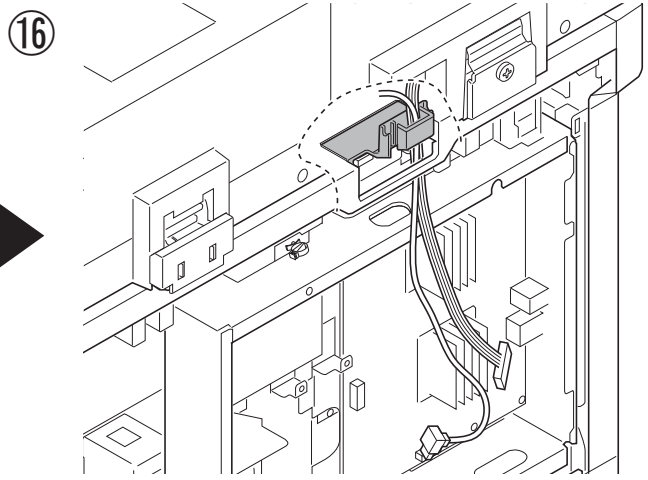
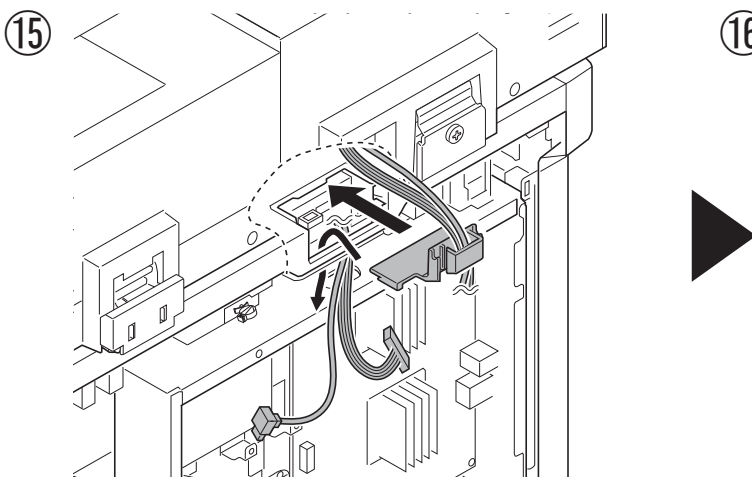
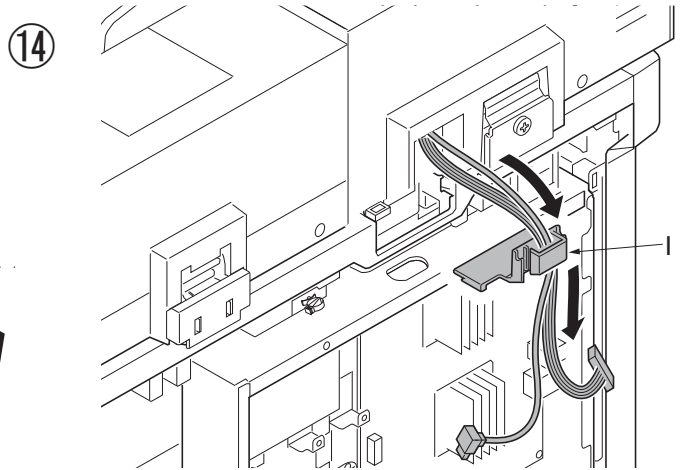
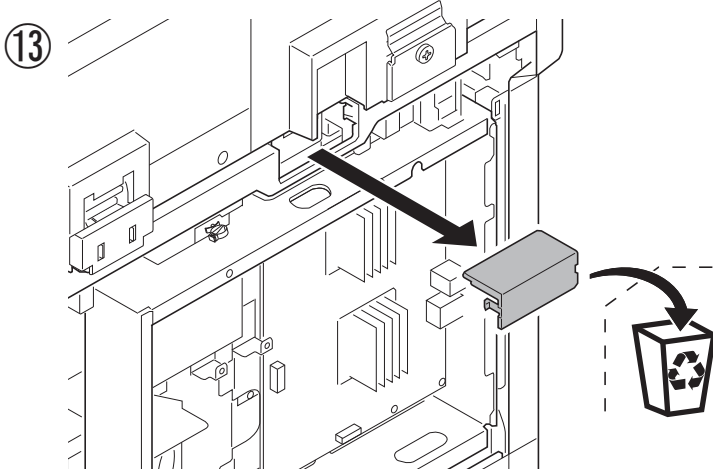
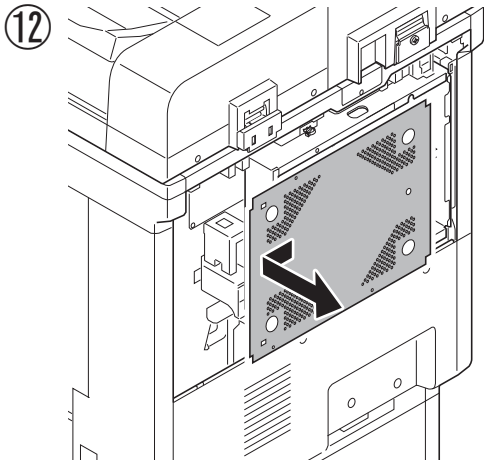


10



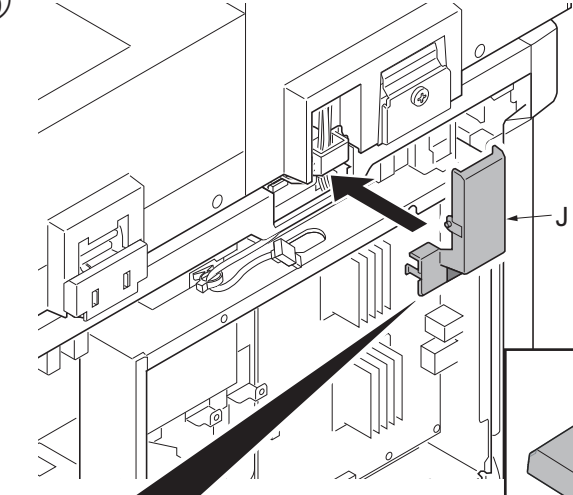
11



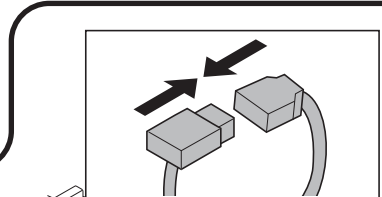
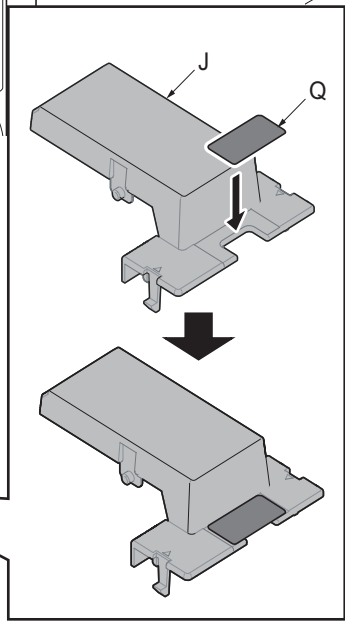
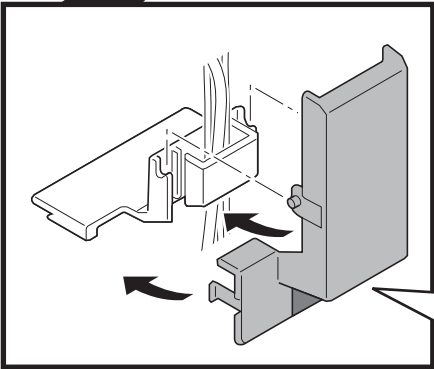
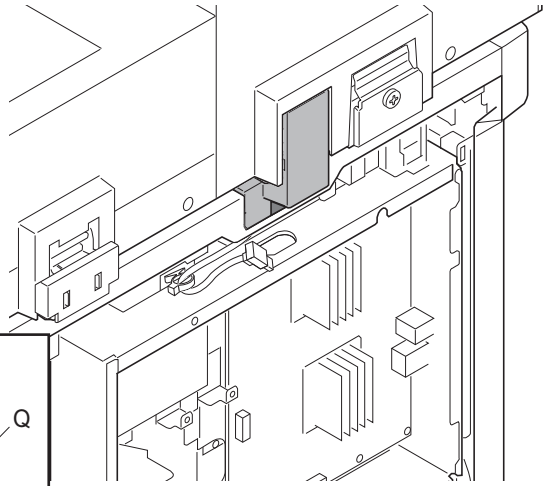


B

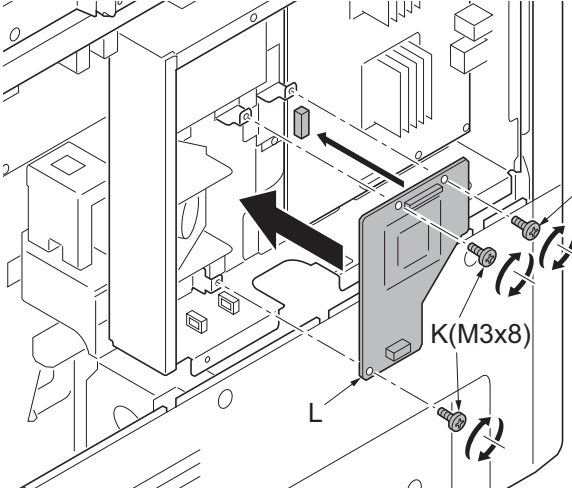
18



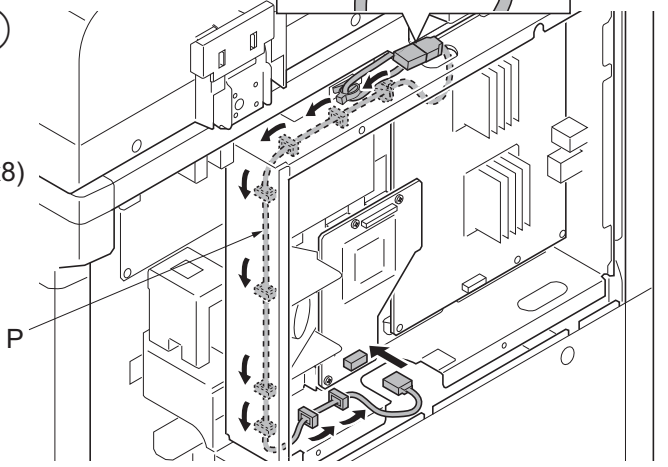
19



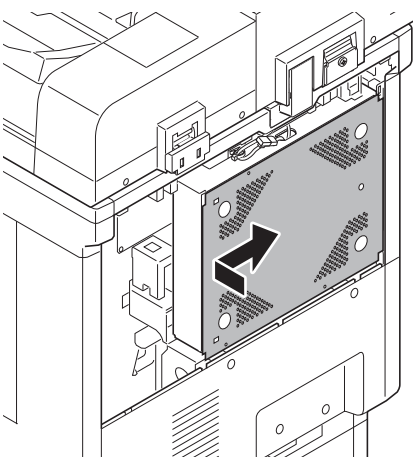
20



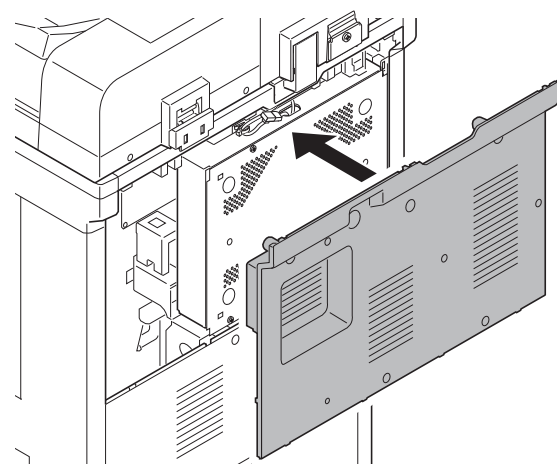
21

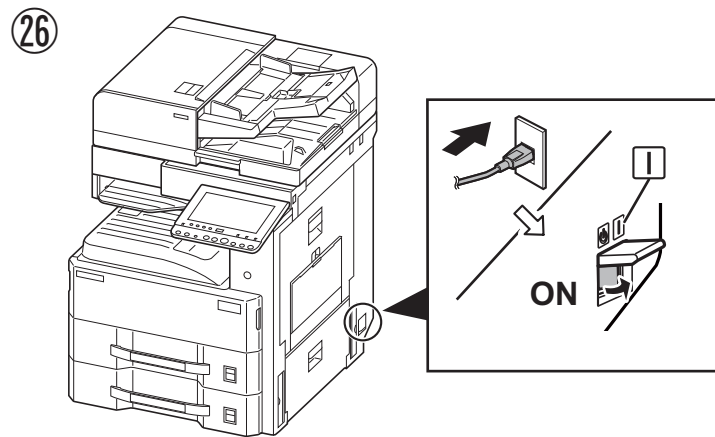
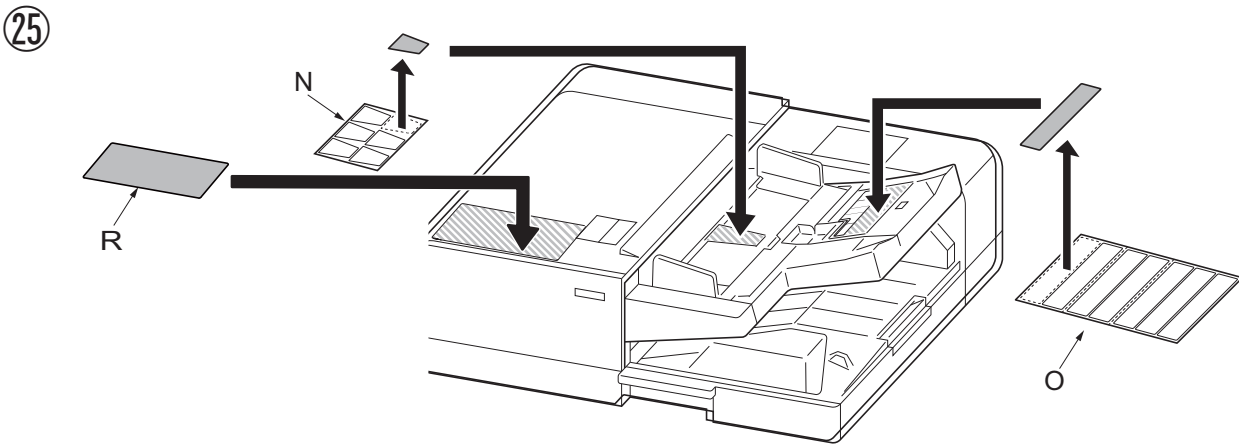
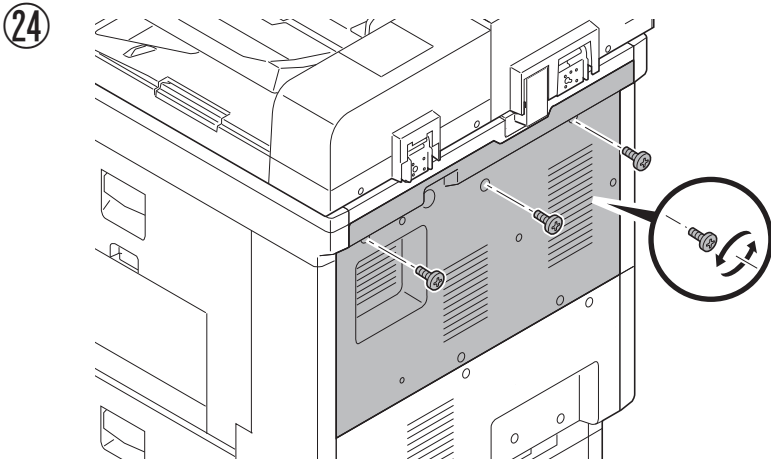


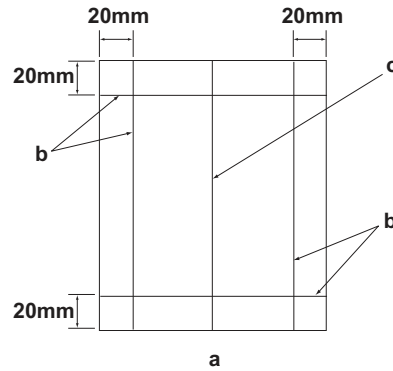
22



23





**[Operation check]**

1. To check the machine operation, prepare original (a) where 4 lines (b) are drawn 20 mm from the edges of the A3 sheet and 1 line (c) is drawn at its center.
2. Connect the power plug of the MFP into the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.
3. Set the original (a) on the DP and perform a test copy to check the operation and the copy example.

**[Vérification du fonctionnement]**

1. Pour vérifier le bon fonctionnement de l'appareil, préparer un original (a) sur lequel sont tracées 4 lignes (b) à 20 mm des bords de la feuille A3 et 1 ligne (c) en son axe.
2. Brancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP sur la prise murale et mettre l'appareil sous tension.
3. Placer l'original (a) sur le DP et effectuer une copie de test pour vérifier le fonctionnement et l'exemple de copie.

**[Verifique el funcionamiento]**

1. Para comprobar el funcionamiento del aparato, prepare un original (a) que contenga 4 líneas (b) dibujadas a 20 mm de los bordes de la hoja A3 y 1 línea (c) dibujada en el centro.
2. Conecte el enchufe eléctrico del MFP en el tomacorriente de la pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
3. Coloque el original (a) en el DP y haga una copia de prueba para verificar el funcionamiento y el ejemplo de copia.

**[Funktionsprüfung]**

1. Zum Prüfen der Gerätefunktion das Original (a) vorbereiten, auf das 4 Linien (b) 20 mm von den Kanten des A3-Blattes und 1 Linie (c) in der Mitte gezeichnet sind.
2. Den Netzstecker am MFP in die Steckdose stecken und den Strom einschalten.
3. Das Original (a) auf den DP legen und eine Testkopie erstellen, um die Funktion und das Kopierbeispiel zu prüfen.

**[Verifica del funzionamento]**

1. Per verificare il funzionamento della macchina, preparare l'originale (a) tirando 4 linee (b) a 20 mm dai bordi del foglio A3 e una linea (c) al centro.
2. Inserire la spina dell'alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa a muro, quindi posizionare l'interruttore principale su On.
3. Posizionare l'originale(a) sul DP ed eseguire una copia di prova per verificare il funzionamento e l'esempio di copia.

**[ 動作確認 ]**

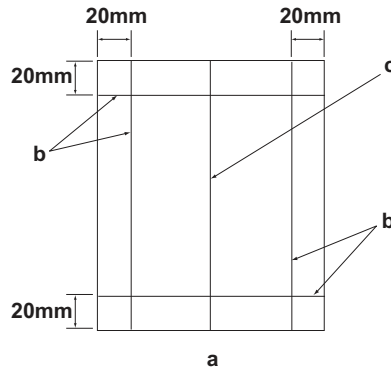
1. 若要检查机器动作, 准备一张 A3 原稿 (a), 距纸张边缘 20mm 画出 4 条线 (b) 并且在原稿中心画出 1 条线 (c)。
2. 将 MFP 的电源插头插入墙壁插座并打开主电源。
3. 在 DP 上设定原稿 (a) 并进行测试复印, 确认机器动作和复印样本。

**[ 동작확인 ]**

1. 기계 작동 확인을 위해서, A3 용지 선단에서 20mm 떨어진 곳에 4 개의 선 (b) 과 센터에 1 개의 선 (c) 이 그려진 원고 (a) 를 준비.
2. 콘센트에 MFP 전원플러그를 꽂고 메인 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 합니다.
3. DP 상에 원고 (a) 를 준비하고 테스트 카피를 확인하여 작동 상태와 카피 샘플을 확인합니다.

**[ 動作確認 ]**

1. A3 サイズ用紙の端から 20mm の位置に線 (b) 4 本と、用紙の中心に線 (c) 1 本を引いた、動作確認用の原稿 (a) を用意する。
2. MFP の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
3. 原稿 (a) を DP にセットし、テストコピーを行い、動作およびコピーサンプルを確認する。



4. Compare original (a) with the copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustments according to the type of the gap.

**Check images of the DP after checking and adjusting images of the MFP. For details, see the service manual.**

**NOTICE:** If there is any image fogging, adjust the U068 DP scanning position. If you change the scanning position with U068, adjust the U071 DP leading edge timing.

4. Comparer l'original (a) avec l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, effectuer les réglages suivants en fonction du type d'écart.

**Vérifier les images du DP après avoir contrôlé et réglé les images du MFP. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.**

**REMARQUE:** Si l'image est floue, régler la position de balayage de U068 du DP. Si la position de balayage de U068 est modifiée, régler la synchronisation du bord d'attaque de U071.

4. Compare el original (a) con el ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, realice los siguientes ajustes según el tipo de separación.

**Compruebe las imágenes del DP después de comprobar y ajustar las imágenes del MFP. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.**

**AVISO:** Si la imagen estuviera borrosa, ajuste la posición de escaneo U068 del DP. Si cambia la posición de escaneo con U068, ajuste la sincronización de borde superior U071 del DP

4. Das Original (a) mit dem Kopierbeispiel vergleichen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, die folgenden Einstellungen gemäß dem Abstandstyp durchführen.

**Die Bilder des DP nach dem Prüfen und Einstellen der Bilder des MFP prüfen. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.**

**ANMERKUNG:** Falls das Bild verschwommen wirkt, ist die U068 DP Scan-Position zu verstellen. Wenn Sie die Scan-Position mit U068 verstellen, müssen Sie das U071 DP-Vorderkanten-Timing entsprechend verstellen.

4. Confrontare l'originale (a) con l'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, eseguire le seguenti regolazioni in funzione del tipo di scostamento.

**Controllare le immagini del DP dopo avere effettuato i controlli e le regolazioni delle immagini sull'MFP. Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.**

**AVVISO:** Se è presente una qualsiasi sfocatura dell'immagine, regolare la posizione di scansione DP U068. Se si cambia la posizione di scansione con U068, regolare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale DP U071.

4. 对比复印样本和原稿(a), 如果偏移值在标准值以上时, 对偏移原稿进行调整。

对 MFP 的图像确认和调整后再对 DP 的图像进行确认。详细内容请参见维修手册。

(注意) 如果图像出现底灰, 用 U068 来调整 DP 的扫描位置。如果用 U068 更改了扫描位置, 则再用 U071 对 DP 的前端定时进行调整

4. 원고 (a) 와 카피 샘플을 비교하여 차이가 기준치를 벗어나는 경우, 차이 (틈) 의 형태에 따라 다음을 조정합니다 .

**MFP 의 화상확인 및 조정을 하고나서 DP 의 화상확인을 할 것 . 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조할 것 .**

(주의) 화상 카브리가 발생하는 경우 , U068DP 스캔위치 조정을 합니다 . U068 에서 스캔위치를 변경한 경우 U071DP 선단 타이밍 조정을 합니다 .

4. 原稿 (a) とコピーサンプルを比較し、基準値以上のずれがある場合、ずれ方に応じて調整を行う。

MFP の画像確認及び調整を行ってから DP の画像確認を行うこと。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

(注意) 画像カブリが発生する場合、U068 DP 読み取り位置の調整を行う。U068 で読み取り位置を変更した場合、U071 DP 先端タイミング調整を行う。

Be sure to adjust in the following order. If not, the adjustment cannot be performed correctly.

For checking the angle of leading edge, see page 18. <Reference value> Simplex copying: within  $\pm 3.0$  mm; Duplex copying: within  $\pm 4.0$  mm

For checking the angle of trailing edge, see page 21. <Reference value> Simplex copying: within  $\pm 3.0$  mm; Duplex copying: within  $\pm 4.0$  mm

For checking the magnification, see page 24. <Reference value> Within  $\pm 1.5\%$

Veillez à effectuer le réglage en procédant dans l'ordre suivant. Sinon, il sera impossible d'obtenir un réglage correct.

Pour vérifier l'angle du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 18. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.; copie recto verso:  $\pm 4,0$  mm max.

Pour vérifier l'angle du bord arrière, reportez-vous à la page 21. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.; copie recto verso:  $\pm 4,0$  mm max.

Pour vérifier l'agrandissement, reportez-vous à la page 24. <Valeur de référence>  $\pm 1,5\%$  max.

Asegúrese de ajustar en el siguiente orden. De lo contrario, el ajuste no puede hacerse correctamente.

Para verificar el ángulo del borde superior, vea la página 18. <Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Copia duplex: dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Para verificar el ángulo del borde inferior, vea la página 21. <Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Copia duplex: dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Para verificar el cambio de tamaño, vea la página 24. <Valor de referencia> Dentro de  $\pm 1,5\%$

Die Einstellung in der folgenden Reihenfolge durchführen. Anderenfalls kann die Einstellung nicht korrekt durchgeführt werden.

Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Vorderkante auf Seite 18. <Bezugswert> Simplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Hinterkante auf Seite 21. <Bezugswert> Simplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Angaben zur Prüfung der Vergrößerung auf Seite 24. <Bezugswert> Innerhalb  $\pm 1,5\%$

Accertarsi di eseguire le regolazioni in questa sequenza: in caso contrario, la regolazione non può essere effettuata correttamente.

Per controllare l'angolo del bordo principale, vedere pagina 18. <Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Copia duplex: entro  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Per controllare l'angolo del bordo di uscita, vedere pagina 21. <Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Copia duplex: entro  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Per controllare l'ingrandimento, vedere pagina 24. <Valore di riferimento> Entro  $\pm 1,5\%$

必须按照以下步骤进行调整, 否则不能达到准确调整的要求。

• 确认前端倾斜度 第 18 页 <标准值> 单面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内, 双面:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

• 确认后端倾斜度 第 21 页 <标准值> 单面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内, 双面:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

• 确认等倍值 第 24 页 <标准值>  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

반드시 하기의 순서로 조정을 할 것. 순서대로 조정을 하지 않는 경우 바른 조정을 할 수 없습니다.

• 선단경사확인 18 페이지 <기준치> 단면:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내, 양면:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

• 후단경사확인 21 페이지 <기준치> 단면:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내, 양면:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

• 등배도 확인 24 페이지 <기준치>  $\pm 1.5\%$  이내

必ず下記の順序で調整を行うこと。順序通りに調整を行わない場合、正しい調整ができない。

• 先端斜め確認 18 ページ <基準値> 片面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内、両面:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

• 後端斜め確認 21 ページ <基準値> 片面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内、両面:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

• 等倍度確認 24 ページ <基準値>  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内



For checking the leading edge timing, see page 26. <Reference value> Within  $\pm 2.5$  mm  
 For checking the center line, see page 28. <Reference value> Simplex copying: within  $\pm 2.0$  mm;  
 Duplex copying: within  $\pm 3.0$  mm

**When using the original for adjustment, automatic adjustment of magnification, leading edge timing and center line can be performed at a time.**

For the automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment, see page 30.

Pour vérifier la synchronisation du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 26. <Valeur de référence>  $\pm 2,5$  mm max.  
 Pour vérifier la ligne médiane, reportez-vous à la page 28. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 2,0$  mm max.;  
 Copie recto verso:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.

**Lorsque vous utilisez l'original pour effectuer le réglage, vous pouvez effectuer automatiquement le réglage de l'agrandissement, de la synchronisation du bord avant et de la ligne médiane en une seule fois.**

Pour le réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage, reportez-vous à la page 30.

Para verificar la sincronización del borde inferior, vea la página 26. <Valor de referencia> Dentro de  $\pm 2,5$  mm  
 Para verificar la línea central, vea la página 28. <Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de  $\pm 2,0$  mm;  
 Copia duplex: dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**Cuando utilice el original para el ajuste, puede hacerse un ajuste automático del cambio de tamaño, sincronización del borde superior y línea central al mismo tiempo.**

Para el ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste, vea la página 30.

Angaben zur Prüfung des Vorderkanten-Timings auf Seite 26. <Bezugswert> Innerhalb  $\pm 2,5$  mm  
 Angaben zur Prüfung der Mittellinie auf Seite 28. <Bezugswert> Simplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 2,0$  mm;  
 Duplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**Bei Verwendung des Originals für die Einstellung können die automatischen Einstellungen für Vergrößerung, Vorderkanten-Timing und Mittellinie gleichzeitig durchgeführt werden.**

Angaben zur automatischen Einstellung mithilfe des Originals auf Seite 30.

Per controllare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale, vedere pagina 26. <Valore di riferimento> Entro  $\pm 2,5$  mm  
 Per controllare la linea centrale, vedere pagina 28. <Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro  $\pm 2,0$  mm;  
 Copia duplex: entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm

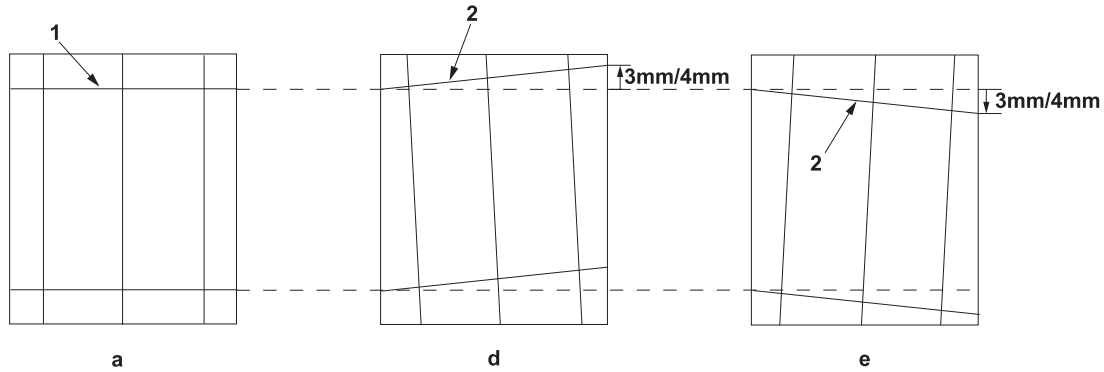
**Quando si utilizza l'originale per la regolazione, la regolazione automatica dell'ingrandimento, della sincronizzazione del bordo principale e della linea centrale possono essere eseguiti contemporaneamente.**

Per la regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale, vedere pagina 30.

• 确认前端定时调整 第 26 页 <标准值>  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内  
 • 确认中心线 第 28 页 <标准值> 单面:  $\pm 2.0$ mm 以内,  
 双面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内  
 使用调整用的原稿时,可以同时自动进行等倍值,前端定时以及中心线的调整。  
 • 通过调整用原稿进行自动调整 第 30 页

• 선단 타이밍 확인 26 페이지 <기준치>  $\pm 2.5$ mm 이내  
 • 센터 라인 확인 28 페이지 <기준치> 단면:  $\pm 2.0$ mm 이내,  
 양면:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내  
 조정용 원고를 사용하는 경우, 등배도, 선단타이밍, 센터 라인의 자동조정이 한번에 수행됩니다.  
 • 조정용 원고를 사용한 자동조정은 30 페이지 참조

• 先端タイミング確認 26 ページ <基準値>  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内  
 • センターライン確認 28 ページ <基準値> 片面:  $\pm 2.0$ mm 以内,  
 両面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内  
 調整用原稿を使用すると,等倍度調整,先端タイミング調整,センターライン調整の自動調整が一度におこなえる。  
 • 調整用原稿による自動調整 30 ページ



#### [Checking the angle of leading edge]

1. Check the horizontal gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example positions. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

<Reference value> For single copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 3.0$  mm.

For duplex copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 4.0$  mm.

#### [Vérification de l'angle du bord avant]

1. Vérifier l'écart horizontal entre la position de la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et celle de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

<Valeur de référence> Pour la copie recto : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Pour la copie recto-verso : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

#### [Verificación del ángulo del borde superior]

1. Compruebe la separación horizontal entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de las posiciones del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

<Valor de referencia> Para el copiado por una cara: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Para el copiado dúplex: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

#### [Überprüfen des Winkels der Vorderkante]

1. Den horizontalen Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) der Kopierbeispielspositionen prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

<Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 3,0$  mm liegen.

Duplexkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 4,0$  mm liegen.

#### [Controllo dell'angolo del bordo principale]

1. Verificare lo scostamento orizzontale fra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) delle posizioni dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

<Valore di riferimento> Per la copia singola: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Per la copia duplex: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

#### [ 确认前端倾斜度 ]

1. 确认原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2) 的左右偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值，则按照下列步骤进行调整。

<标准值> 单面复印时，线 (2) 的左右偏移值： $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内。

双面复印时，线 (2) 的左右偏移值： $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内。

#### [ 선단 경사확인 ]

1. 원고 (a) 의 선 (1) 과 샘플 카피의 선 (2) 의 좌우 차이를 확인합니다. 차이가 기준치 외의 경우 다음의 순서대로 조정을 합니다.

<기준치> 단면의 경우 선 (2) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내

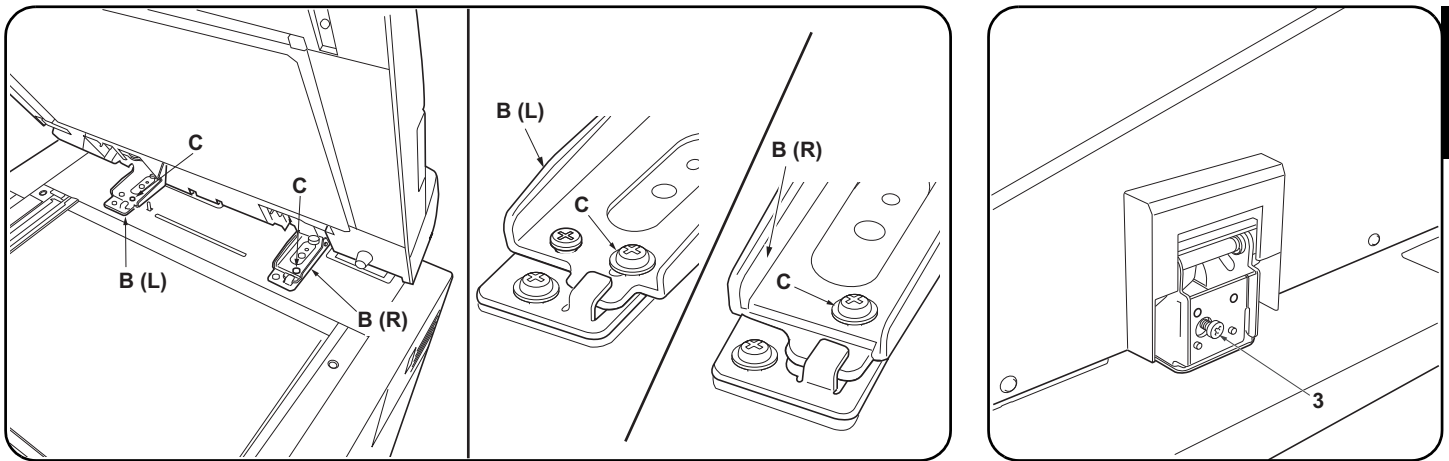
양면의 경우 선 (2) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

#### [ 先端斜め確認 ]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) の左右のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

<基準値> 片面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

両面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内



2. Remove the left hinge cover (F) and the angle control fitting (E). Loosen the 2 M4 × 14 screws (C) on the left and right fixing fittings (B(L))(B(R)).
3. Turn adjusting screw (3) at the rear side of the right hinge to adjust the DP position.  
For copy example (d): Turn the adjusting screw counterclockwise and move the DP to the inner side.  
For copy example (e): Turn the adjusting screw clockwise and move the DP to the front side.  
Amount of change per scale: Approx. 1.0 mm
4. Perform a test copy.

2. Déposer le couvercle de la charnière gauche (F) et la fixation d'angle (assurant le contrôle de l'ouverture) (E). Desserrer les 2 vis M4 × 14 (C) sur les fixations gauche et droite (B(L))(B(R)).
3. Tourner la vis de réglage (3) à l'arrière de la charnière droite pour régler la position du DP.  
Pour l'exemple de copie (d) : tourner la vis de réglage dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre et déplacer le DP vers l'intérieur.  
Pour l'exemple de copie (e) : tourner la vis de réglage dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre et déplacer le DP vers l'avant.  
Changement par graduation d'échelle : environ 1,0 mm
4. Effectuer une copie de test.

2. Quite la cubierta de la bisagra izquierda (F) y el herraje de control de ángulo (E). Afloje los 2 tornillos M4 × 14 (C) de los herrajes de fijación izquierdo y derecho (B(L))(B(R)).
3. Gire el tornillo de ajuste (3) en el lado trasero de la bisagra derecha para ajustar la posición del DP.  
Para el ejemplo de copia (d): gire el tornillo de ajuste en sentido antihorario y mueva el DP al lado interno.  
Para el ejemplo de copia (e): gire el tornillo de ajuste en sentido horario y mueva el DP al lado frontal.  
Magnitud del cambio por escala: aprox. 1,0 mm
4. Haga una copia de prueba.

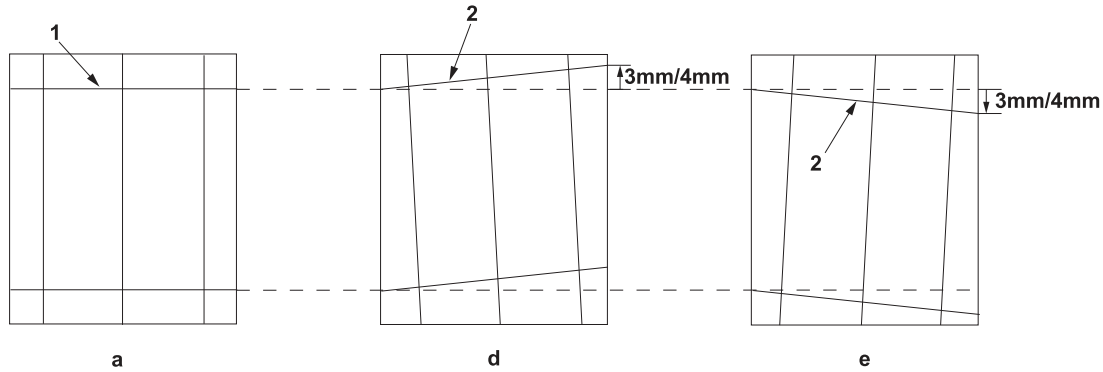
2. Die linke Scharnierabdeckung (F) und die Winkeleinstellbefestigung (E) entfernen. Die 2 M4 × 14 Schrauben (C) an den linken und rechten Befestigungshalterungen (B(L))(B(R)) lösen.
3. Die Einstellschraube (3) an der Rückseite des rechten Scharniers einstellen, um die DP-Position einzustellen.  
Kopierbeispiel (d): Die Einstellschraube nach links drehen und den DP nach innen schieben.  
Kopierbeispiel (e): Die Einstellschraube nach rechts drehen und den DP nach vorne schieben.  
Änderung pro Maßstab: Ungefähr 1,0 mm
4. Eine Testkopie erstellen.

2. Rimuovere il coperchio cerniera sinistra (F) e l'accessorio di regolazione angolare (E). Allentare le 2 viti M4 × 14 (C) sui lati destro e sinistro degli accessori di fissaggio (B(L))(B(R)) destro e sinistro.
3. Ruotare la vite di regolazione (3) sul lato posteriore della cerniera destra per regolare la posizione del DP.  
Per l'esempio di copia (d): ruotare la vite di regolazione in senso antiorario e spostare il DP verso l'interno.  
Per l'esempio di copia (e): ruotare la vite di regolazione in senso orario e spostare il DP in avanti.  
Entità modifica per scala: circa 1,0 mm
4. Eseguire una copia di prova.

2. 拆下左部铰链盖板 (F) 以及角度限制工具 (E)。拧松左右固定工具 (B(L)) (B(R)) 的 2 颗 M4x14 (C) 螺丝。
3. 旋转右部铰链的后部的调整螺钉 (3) 以调整 DP 位置。  
对于复印样本 (d) : 逆时针旋转调整螺钉并将 DP 移动到内侧。  
对于复印样本 (e) : 顺时针旋转调整螺钉并将 DP 移动到正面。  
按比例尺的更改量 : 约 1.0mm
4. 进行测试复印。

2. 좌 힌지커버 (F) 및 각도 고정쇠 (E) 를 제거합니다 . 좌우의 고정쇠 (B(L))(B(R)) 의 나사 M4x14(C) 2 개를 느슨하게 합니다 .
3. 우 힌지 뒷측 조정나사 (3) 를 돌려 DP 의 위치를 조정합니다 .  
샘플 카피 (d) 의 경우 : 조정나사를 좌로 돌려 DP 를 안으로 넣습니다 .  
샘플 카피 (e) 의 경우 : 조정나사를 오른쪽으로 돌려 DP 를 앞으로 뺍니다 .  
1 개 변화량 : 약 1.0mm
4. 테스트 카피를 합니다 .

2. 左ヒンジカバー (F) および角度規制金具 (E) を取り外す。左右の固定金具 (B(L)) (B(R)) のビス M4x14 (C) 2 本を緩める。
3. 右ヒンジ後側の調整ビス (3) を回し、DP の位置を調整する。  
コピーサンプル (d) の場合 : 調整ビスを左に回し、DP を奥へ動かす。  
コピーサンプル (e) の場合 : 調整ビスを右に回し、DP を手前へ動かす。  
1 目盛り当たりの変化量 : 約 1.0mm
4. テストコピーを行う。



5. Repeat the steps above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the following reference values.

<Reference value> For single copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 3.0$  mm.

For duplex copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 4.0$  mm.

6. After adjustment is completed, retighten two M4  $\times$  14 screws (C) that have been loosened in step 2.

7. **A** Remove the original mat (M) and refit it (see steps 5 on page 1).

**B** Remove the original mat (M) and refit it (see steps 5 on page 8).

5. Répéter les étapes ci-dessus jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique les valeurs de référence suivantes.

<Valeur de référence> Pour la copie recto : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Pour la copie recto-verso : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

6. Une fois le réglage effectué, resserrer les deux vis M4  $\times$  14 (C) desserrées à l'étape 2.

7. **A** Retirez le tapis d'original (M) et remettez-le en place (Reportez-vous aux étapes 5 à la page 1).

**B** Retirez le tapis d'original (M) et remettez-le en place (Reportez-vous aux étapes 5 à la page 8).

5. Repita los pasos anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente los siguientes valores de referencia.

<Valor de referencia> Para el copiado por una cara: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Para el copiado dúplex: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

6. Una vez hecho el ajuste, vuelva a apretar los dos tornillos M4  $\times$  14 (C) que ha aflojado en el paso 2.

7. **A** Desmonte la plancha de original (M) y vuelva a colocar (vea los pasos 5 en la página 1).

**B** Desmonte la plancha de original (M) y vuelva a colocar (vea los pasos 5 en la página 8).

5. Die obigen Schritte wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.

<Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 3,0$  mm liegen.

Duplexkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 4,0$  mm liegen.

6. Nach der Einstellung die zwei M4  $\times$  14 Schrauben (C), die in Schritt 2 gelöst wurden, wieder festziehen.

7. **A** Die Originalmatte (M) abnehmen und wieder anbringen (siehe Schritte 5 auf Seite 1).

**B** Die Originalmatte (M) abnehmen und wieder anbringen (siehe Schritte 5 auf Seite 8).

5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento seguenti.

<Valore di riferimento> Per la copia singola: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Per la copia duplex: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

6. Una volta conclusa la regolazione, serrare nuovamente le viti M4  $\times$  14 (C) che erano state allentate al Punto 2.

7. **A** Rimuovere il coprioriginale (M) e reinserirlo (vedere i passi 5 a pagina 1).

**B** Rimuovere il coprioriginale (M) e reinserirlo (vedere i passi 5 a pagina 8).

5. 重复上述步骤直至复印样本上的线(2)的偏移值达到标准值范围内。

<标准值> 单面时, 线(2)的左右偏移值:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

双面时, 线(2)的左右偏移值:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

6. 调整完成后, 重新拧紧在步骤2中松开的两颗M4 $\times$ 14螺丝(C)。

7. **A** 拆下原稿垫(M), 参照第1页的步骤5再次装上。

**B** 拆下原稿垫(M), 参照第8页的步骤5再次装上。

5. 샘플 카피 선 (2) 차이가 기준치내가 될 때까지 조정을 반복합니다 .

<기준치> 단면의 경우 선 (2) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내

양면의 경우 선 (2) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

6. 조정종료 후 순서 2 에서 느슨하게 한 나사 M4 $\times$ 14(C) 2 개를 조입니다 .

7. **A** 원고매트 (M) 를 제거하고 1 페이지 순서 5 을 참고로 다시 부착합니다 .

**B** 원고매트 (M) 를 제거하고 8 페이지 순서 5 을 참고로 다시 부착합니다 .

5. コピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれが基準値内になるまで、調整を繰り返す。

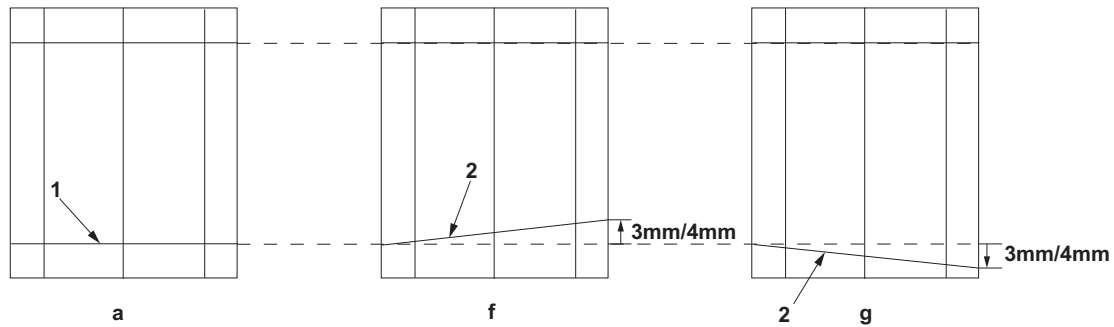
<基準値> 片面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

両面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

6. 調整終了後、手順2で緩めたビスM4 $\times$ 14(C)2本を締め付ける。

7. **A** 原稿マット (M) を取り外し、1 ページの手順5を参考に再度取り付ける。

**B** 原稿マット (M) を取り外し、8 ページの手順5を参考に再度取り付ける。



#### [Checking the angle of trailing edge]

1. Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.  
 <Reference value> For simplex copying: Within  $\pm 3.0$  mm  
 For duplex copying: Within  $\pm 4.0$  mm

#### [Vérification de l'angle du bord arrière]

1. Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.  
 <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.  
 Copie recto verso:  $\pm 4,0$  mm max.

#### [Verificación del ángulo del borde inferior]

1. Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la superación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.  
 <Valor de referencia> Para copia simple: Dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
 Para copia duplex: Dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm

#### [Überprüfen des Winkels der Hinterkante]

1. Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters prüfen. Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.  
 <Bezugswert> Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
 Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 4,0$  mm

#### [Controllo dell'angolo del bordo di uscita]

1. Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.  
 <Valore di riferimento> Per copia simplex: Entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
 Per copia duplex: Entro  $\pm 4,0$  mm

#### [ 确认后端倾斜度 ]

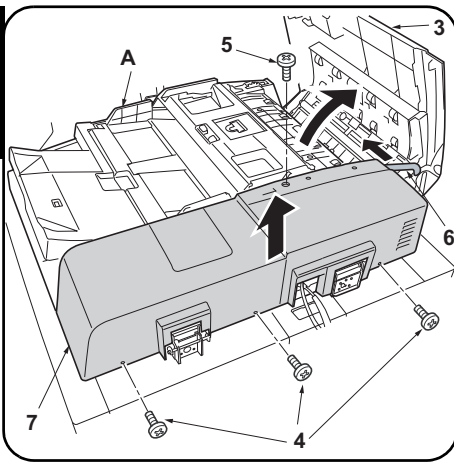
1. 确认原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2) 的偏移值。如果超过标准值时, 必须进行调整。  
 <标准值> 单面时:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内  
 双面时:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

#### [ 후단 경사확인 ]

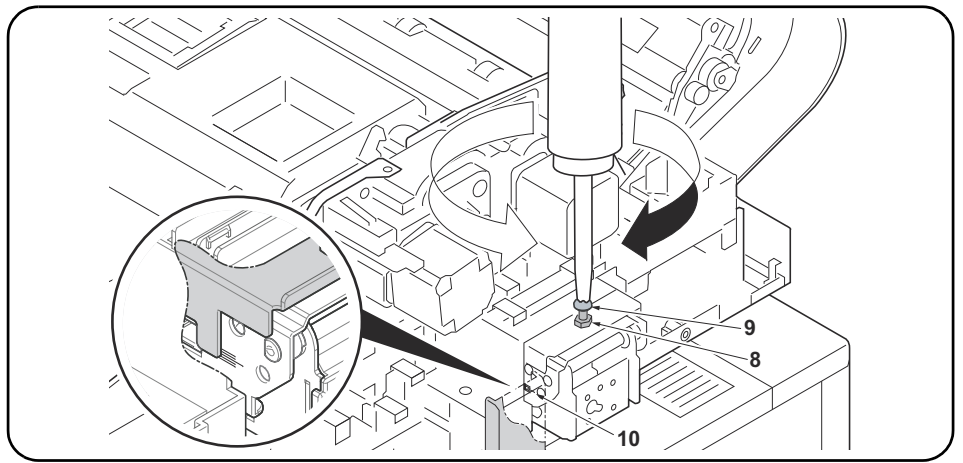
1. 원고 (a) 의 선 (1) 과 샘플 카피 선 (2) 의 차이를 확인합니다. 차이가 기준치 외의 경우에는 조정을 합니다.  
 <기준치> 단면의 경우:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내  
 양면의 경우:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

#### [ 後端斜め確認 ]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。  
 <基準値> 片面の場合:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内  
 両面の場合:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

A  
B

2. Open the upper cover (3) of the DP (A).
3. Remove the 3 TP screws (4) and the screw (5), and remove the strap (6) from the rear cover (7). Then remove the DP (A) rear cover (7).



4. Adjust the height of DP.  
Loosen the nut (8).  
For copy example (f): Loosen the adjusting screw (9).  
For copy example (g): Tighten the adjusting screw (9).

Amount of change per scale: Approx. 0.5 mm (10)  
Retighten the nut (8).

5. Refit the rear cover (7) removed in step 3.

2. Ouvrir le couvercle supérieur (3) du DP (A).
3. Déposer les 3 vis TP (4) et la vis (5) puis déposer la courroie (6) du couvercle arrière (7). Déposer ensuite le couvercle arrière (7) du DP (A).

4. Réglez la hauteur du DP.  
Desserrez l'écrou (8).  
Pour l'exemple de copie (f): Desserrez la vis de réglage (9).  
Pour l'exemple de copie (g): Serrez la vis de réglage (9).

Quantité de changement par pas: Environ 0,5 mm (10)  
Resserrez l'écrou (8).

5. Reposer le couvercle arrière (7) déposé à l'étape 3.

2. Abra la cubierta superior (3) del DP (A).
3. Quite los 3 tornillos TP (4) y el tornillo (5) y quite la correa (6) de la cubierta trasera (7). Después, quite la cubierta trasera (7) del DP (A).

4. Ajuste la altura del DP.  
Afloje la tuerca (8).  
Para la copia de muestra (f): Afloje el tornillo de ajuste (9).  
Para la copia de muestra (g): Apriete el tornillo de ajuste (9).

Cantidad de cambio de escala: Aprox. 0,5 mm (10)  
Vuelva a apretar la tuerca (8).

5. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta (7) desmontada en el paso 3.

2. Die obere Abdeckung (3) des DP (A) öffnen.
3. Die 3 TP-Schrauben (4) und die Schraube (5) entfernen und den Riemen (6) von der hinteren Abdeckung (7) abnehmen. Dann die hintere Abdeckung (7) des DP (A) abnehmen.

4. Die Höhe des DP einstellen.  
Lösen Sie die Mutter (8).  
Für Kopienmuster (f): Lösen Sie die Einstellschraube (9).  
Für Kopienmuster (g): Die Einstellschraube (9) festziehen.

Anderungsbetrag pro Skalenstrich: Ca. 0,5 mm (10)  
Ziehen Sie die Mutter (8) wieder fest.

5. Die in Schritt 3 entfernte hintere Abdeckung (7) wieder anbringen.

2. Aprire il pannello superiore (3) del DP (A).
3. Rimuovere le 3 viti TP (4) e la vite (5), e quindi rimuovere la cinghietta (6) dal coperchio posteriore (7). Quindi rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (7) del DP (A).

4. Regolazione dell'altezza del DP  
Allentare il dado (8).  
Per un esempio di copia (f): Allentare la vite di regolazione (9).  
Per un esempio di copia (g): Stringere la vite di regolazione (9).

Variatione graduale: Circa 0,5 mm (10)  
Stringere di nuovo il dado (8).

5. Reinserrire il coperchio posteriore (7) rimosso nel passo 3.

2. 打开 DP (A) 的上盖板 (3)。
3. 拆除 3 颗 TP 螺丝 (4) 和 1 颗螺丝 (5)，将塑料片 (6) 从后盖板 (7) 上拆除，拆下 DP 主机 (A) 的后盖板 (7)。

4. 调整 DP 的高度。  
松弛螺母 (8)。  
复印样张 (f) 时：松弛调整螺丝 (9)。  
复印样张 (g) 时：紧固调整螺丝 (9)。

每 1 格的移动量：约 0.5mm (10)  
将螺母 (8) 按原样紧固好。

5. 重新安装在步骤 3 中拆下的后盖板 (7)。

2. DP(A) 의 DP 윗 커버 (3) 를 엽니다 .
3. TP 나사 (4) 3 개와 나사 (5) 1 개를 제거하고 스트랩 (6) 을 뒷면 커버 (7) 에서 제거해 DP(A) 의 후면 커버 (7) 를 제거합니다 .

4. DP 의 높이를 조정합니다 .  
너트 (8) 를 느슨하게 합니다 .  
샘플 카피 (f) 의 경우 : 조정나사 (9) 를 느슨하게 합니다 .  
샘플 카피 (g) 의 경우 : 조정나사 (9) 를 조입니다 .

1 개 변화량 : 약 0.5mm (10)  
너트 (8) 를 원래대로 조입니다 .

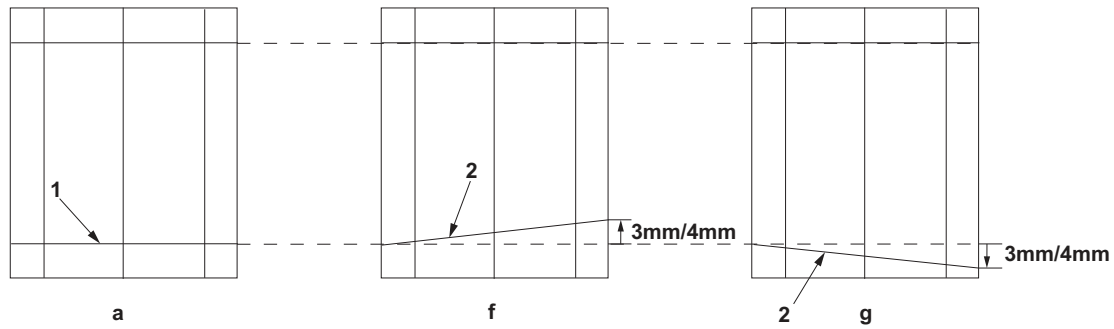
5. 순서 3 에서 제거한 뒷 커버 (7) 를 원래대로 장착합니다 .

2. DP (A) 의 DP 上カバー (3) を開く。
3. TP ビス (4) 3 本とビス (5) 1 本を外し、ストラップ (6) を後カバー (7) から外して、DP (A) の後カバー (7) を取り外す。

4. DP の高さを調整する。  
ナット (8) をゆるめる。  
コピーサンプル (f) の場合 : 調整ビス (9) をゆるめる。  
コピーサンプル (g) の場合 : 調整ビス (9) を締める。

1 目盛り当たりの変化量 : 約 0.5mm (10)  
ナット (8) を元通り締める。

5. 手順 3 で取り外した後カバー (7) を元通り取り付けます。



6. **A** Remove the original mat (M) and refit it (see steps 5 on page 1).  
**B** Remove the original mat (M) and refit it (see steps 5 on page 8).  
 7. Make a proof copy again.  
 8. Repeat steps 1 to 6 until line (2) of copy example shows the following the reference values.  
 <Reference value> For simplex copying: Within  $\pm 3.0$  mm  
 For duplex copying: Within  $\pm 4.0$  mm

6. **A** Retirez le tapis d'original (M) et remettez-le en place (Reportez-vous aux étapes 5 à la page 1).  
**B** Retirez le tapis d'original (M) et remettez-le en place (Reportez-vous aux étapes 5 à la page 8).  
 7. Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.  
 8. Répétez les étapes 1 à 6 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie corresponde aux valeurs de référence suivantes.  
 <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.  
 Copie recto verso:  $\pm 4,0$  mm max.

6. **A** Desmante la plancha de original (M) y vuelva a colocar (vea los pasos 5 en la página 1).  
**B** Desmante la plancha de original (M) y vuelva a colocar (vea los pasos 5 en la página 8).  
 7. Haga otra copia de prueba.  
 8. Repita los pasos 1 a 6 hasta que la línea (2) de la copia de muestra tenga los siguientes valores de referencia.  
 <Valor de referencia> Para copia simple: Dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
 Para copia duplex: Dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm

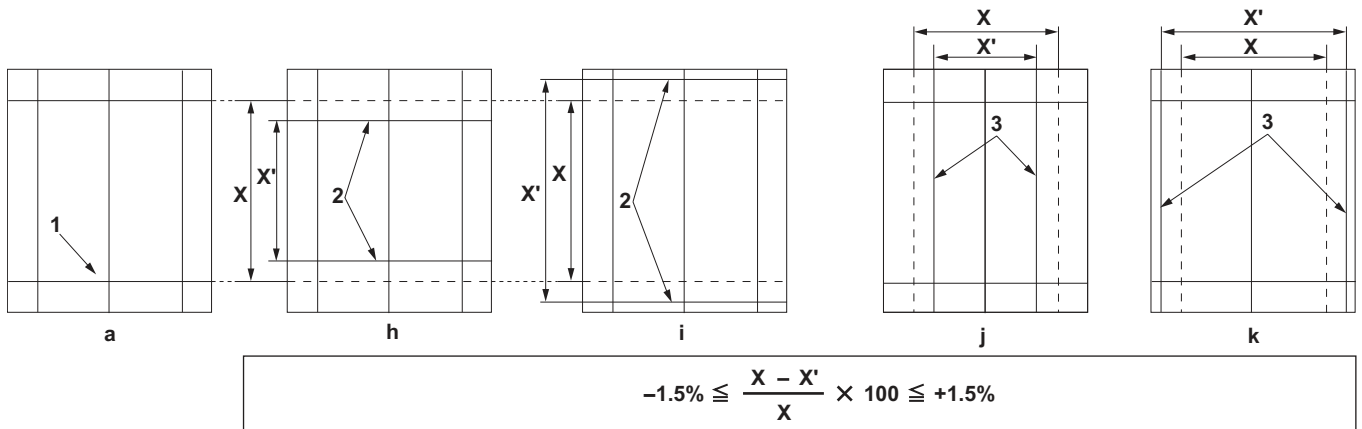
6. **A** Die Originalmatte (M) abnehmen und wieder anbringen (siehe Schritte 5 auf Seite 1).  
**B** Die Originalmatte (M) abnehmen und wieder anbringen (siehe Schritte 5 auf Seite 8).  
 7. Eine erneute Probekopie anfertigen.  
 8. Die Schritte 1 bis 6 wiederholen, bis die Linie (2) des Kopienmusters die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.  
 <Bezugswert> Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
 Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 4,0$  mm

6. **A** Rimuovere il coprioriginale (M) e reinserirlo (vedere i passi 5 a pagina 1).  
**B** Rimuovere il coprioriginale (M) e reinserirlo (vedere i passi 5 a pagina 8).  
 7. Eseguire di nuovo una prova di copia.  
 8. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 6 fino a che la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia non mostra i seguenti valori di riferimento.  
 <Valore di riferimento> Per copia simplex: Entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
 Per copia duplex: Entro  $\pm 4,0$  mm

6. **A** 拆下原稿垫 (M), 参照第 1 页的步骤 5 再次装上。  
**B** 拆下原稿垫 (M), 参照第 8 页的步骤 5 再次装上。  
 7. 再次进行测试复印。  
 8. 反复操作步骤 1~6, 直至复印样张的线 (2) 为标准值内。  
 <标准值> 单面时:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内  
 双面时:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

6. **A** 원고매트 (M) 를 제거하고 1 페이지 순서 5 을 참고로 다시 부착합니다 .  
**B** 원고매트 (M) 를 제거하고 8 페이지 순서 5 을 참고로 다시 부착합니다 .  
 7. 다시 테스트 카피를 합니다 .  
 8. 샘플 카피 선 (2) 이 기준치내로 될 때까지 순서 1 ~ 6 을 반복합니다 .  
 <기준치> 단면의 경우:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내  
 양면의 경우:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

6. **A** 原稿マット (M) を取り外し、1 ページの手順 5 を参考に再度取り付ける。  
**B** 原稿マット (M) を取り外し、8 ページの手順 5 を参考に再度取り付ける。  
 7. 再度テストコピーをおこなう。  
 8. コピーサンプルの線 (2) が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 6 を繰り返す。  
 <基準値> 片面の場合:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内  
 両面の場合:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

**[Checking the magnification]**

1. Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) (3) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

<Reference value>

For the sub-scan direction, vertical gap of line (2): within  $\pm 1.5\%$

For the main-scan direction, horizontal gap of line (3): within  $\pm 1.5\%$

2. Use the maintenance mode U070 to adjust the magnification.

Sub Scan(F): Adjusts the scanner sub-scan magnification (surface)

Main Scan(CIS): Adjusts the scanner CIS main-scan magnification

Sub Scan (CIS): Adjusts the scanner CIS sub-scan magnification

**[Vérification de l'agrandissement]**

1. Vérifier l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) (3) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

<Valeur de référence>

Pour la direction du balayage secondaire, l'écart vertical de la ligne (2) est de  $\pm 1,5\%$

Pour la direction du balayage principal, l'écart horizontal de la ligne (3) est de  $\pm 1,5\%$

2. Pour régler l'agrandissement, utilisez le mode entretien U070.

Sub Scan(F): Permet de régler l'agrandissement du balayage secondaire du scanner(surface)

Main Scan(CIS): Permet de régler l'agrandissement du balayage principal du CIS du scanner

Sub Scan (CIS): Permet de régler l'agrandissement du balayage secondaire du CIS du scanner

**[Verificación del cambio de tamaño]**

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) (3) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

<Valor de referencia>

Para la dirección de exploración secundaria, separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de  $\pm 1,5\%$

Para la dirección de exploración principal, separación horizontal de la línea (3): dentro de  $\pm 1,5\%$

2. Para ajustar la ampliación utilice el modo de mantenimiento U070.

Sub Scan(F): Ajusta el cambio de tamaño de la dirección de exploración secundaria del escáner.(anverso)

Main Scan(CIS): Ajusta el cambio de tamaño de la dirección de exploración principal CIS del escáner

Sub Scan (CIS): Ajusta el cambio de tamaño de la dirección de exploración secundaria CIS del escáner

**[Überprüfen der Vergrößerung]**

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) (3) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

<Bezugswert>

Subscanrichtung: Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb  $\pm 1,5\%$

Hauptscanrichtung: Horizontaler Abstand der Linie (3): Innerhalb  $\pm 1,5\%$

2. Zum Einstellen der Vergrößerung den Wartungsmodus U070 verwenden.

Sub Scan(F): Zur Einstellung der Subscan-Vergrößerung(Oberfläche)

Main Scan(CIS): Zur Einstellung der Scanner-CIS-Mainscan-Vergrößerung

Sub Scan (CIS): Zur Einstellung der Scanner-CIS-Subscan-Vergrößerung

**[Controllo dell'ingrandimento]**

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) (3) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

<Valore di riferimento>

Per l'orientamento della scansione ausiliare, lo scostamento verticale della linea (2) deve essere compreso fra  $\pm 1,5\%$

Per l'orientamento della scansione principale, lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (3) deve essere compreso fra  $\pm 1,5\%$

2. Usare la modalità di manutenzione U070 per regolare l'ingrandimento.

Sub Scan(F): Regola l'ingrandimento della scansione ausiliare dello scanner(superficie)

Main Scan(CIS): Regola l'ingrandimento di CIS main-scan dello scanner.

Sub Scan (CIS): Regola l'ingrandimento della scansione ausiliare CIS dello scanner

**[ 确认等倍値 ]**

1. 确认原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2)、(3) 之间的偏移值。

如果偏移值超过标准值, 则按照下列步骤进行调整。

<标准值>

对于副扫描方向, 线 (2) 的上下偏移值:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

对于主扫描方向, 线 (3) 的左右偏移值:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

2. 使用维修模式 U070 调整等倍值。

Sub Scan(F): 读取副扫描等倍度的调整 (正面)

Main Scan(CIS): CIS 的读取主扫描等倍度的调整

Sub Scan (CIS): CIS 的读取副扫描等倍度的调整

**[ 등배도확인 ]**

1. 원고 (a) 선 (1) 과 샘플 카피의 선 (2)(3) 의 차이를 확인합니다.

차이가 기준이외의 경우, 다음 순서로 조절을 합니다.

<기준치>

부주사 방향의 경우 선 (2) 의 상하차이:  $\pm 1.5\%$  이내

주주사 방향의 경우 선 (3) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 1.5\%$  이내

2. 메인テナンス 모드 U070 을 세트하고 조절을 합니다.

Sub Scan(F): 스캔 부주사등배도의 조정 (표면)

Main Scan(CIS): CIS 의 스캔 주주사 등배도의 조정

Sub Scan(CIS): CIS 의 스캔 부주사 등배도의 조정

**[ 等倍度確認 ]**

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) (3) のずれを確認する。

ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

<基準値>

副走査方向の場合、線 (2) の上下ずれ:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

主走査方向の場合、線 (3) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

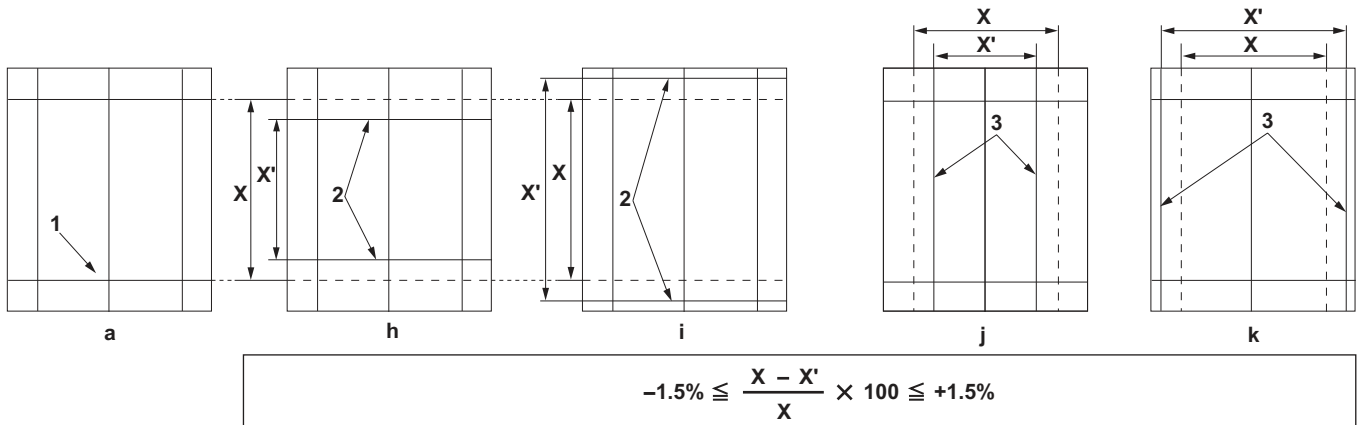
2. メンテナンスモード U070 をセッとし、調整を行う。

Sub Scan(F): 読み取り副走査等倍度の調整 (表面)

Main Scan(CIS): CIS の読み取り主走査等倍度の調整

Sub Scan (CIS): CIS の読み取り副走査等倍度の調整





## 3. Adjust the values.

For the shorter length copy example (h)(j): Increases the value.  
For the longer length copy example (i)(k): Decreases the value.  
Amount of change per step: 0.02 %

## 4. Perform a test copy.

## 5. Repeat the steps 2 to 4 above until the gap of line (2) (3) of copy example shows the reference value.

<Reference value>

For the sub-scan direction, vertical gap of line (2): within  $\pm 1.5\%$

For the main-scan direction, horizontal gap of line (3): within  $\pm 1.5\%$

## 3. Régler les valeurs.

Pour l'exemple de copie dont la longueur est plus courte (h)(j) : augmenter la valeur.

Pour l'exemple de copie dont la longueur est plus longue (i)(k) : diminuer la valeur.

Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,02 %

## 4. Effectuer une copie de test.

## 5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) (3) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.

<Valeur de référence>

Pour la direction du balayage secondaire, l'écart vertical de la ligne (2) est de  $\pm 1,5\%$

Pour la direction du balayage principal, l'écart horizontal de la ligne (3) est de  $\pm 1,5\%$

## 3. Ajuste los valores.

Para el ejemplo de copia más corto (h)(j): aumenta el valor.

Para el ejemplo de copia más largo (i)(k): disminuye el valor.

Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,02 %

## 4. Haga una copia de prueba.

## 5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) (3) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.

<Valor de referencia>

Para la dirección de exploración secundaria, separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de  $\pm 1,5\%$

Para la dirección de exploración principal, separación horizontal de la línea (3): dentro de  $\pm 1,5\%$

## 3. Die Werte einstellen.

Für die kürzere Länge des Kopierbeispiels (h)(j): Den Wert erhöhen.

Für die längere Länge des Kopierbeispiels (i)(k): Den Wert verringern.

Änderung pro Schritt: 0,02 %

## 4. Eine Testkopie erstellen.

## 5. Die Schritte 2 bis 4 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) (3) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.

<Bezugswert>

Subscanrichtung: Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb  $\pm 1,5\%$

Hauptscanrichtung: Horizontaler Abstand der Linie (3): Innerhalb  $\pm 1,5\%$

## 3. Regolare i valori.

Per l'esempio di copia di lunghezza inferiore (h)(j): aumenta il valore.

Per l'esempio di copia di lunghezza superiore (i)(k): riduce il valore.

Entità modifica per passo: 0,02 %

## 4. Eseguire una copia di prova

## 5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 2 a 4 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) (3) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.

<Valore di riferimento>

Per l'orientamento della scansione ausiliare, lo scostamento verticale della linea (2) deve essere compreso fra  $\pm 1,5\%$

Per l'orientamento della scansione principale, lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (3) deve essere compreso fra  $\pm 1,5\%$

## 3. 調整設定値。

在长度偏短时 复印样本 (h) (j) : 调高设定值

在长度偏长时 复印样本 (i) (k) : 调低设定值

设定值的一个调整单位变化量 : 0.02%

## 4. 进行测试复印。

## 5. 重复上述步骤 2 到 4, 直至复印样本上的线 (2)、(3) 之间的偏移值达到标准值范围内。

<标准值>

对于副扫描方向, 线 (2) 的上下偏移值 :  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

对于主扫描方向, 线 (3) 的左右偏移值 :  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

## 3. 설정치를 조정합니다.

길이가 짧은 경우 샘플 카피 (h)(j): 설정치를 높입니다.

길이가 긴 경우 샘플 카피 (i)(k): 설정치를 내립니다.

1 스텝당 변화량: 0.02%

## 4. 테스트 카피를 합니다.

## 5. 샘플 카피 선 (2)(3) 의 차이가 기준치내가 될 때까지 2 ~ 4 를 반복합니다.

<기준치>

부주사 방향의 경우 선 (2) 의 상하차이:  $\pm 1.5\%$  이내

주주사 방향의 경우 선 (3) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 1.5\%$  이내

## 3. 設定値を調整する。

長さが短い場合コピーサンプル (h) (j) : 設定値を上げる

長さが長い場合コピーサンプル (i) (k) : 設定値を下げる

1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.02%

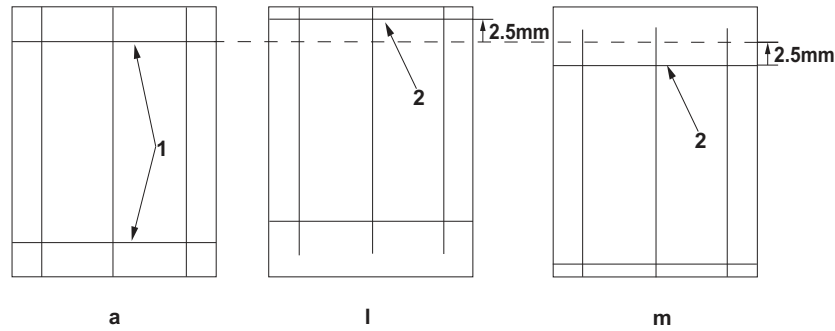
## 4. テストコピーを行う。

## 5. コピーサンプルの線 (2) (3) のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 2 ~ 4 を繰り返す。

<基準値>

副走査方向の場合、線 (2) の上下ずれ:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

主走査方向の場合、線 (3) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

**[Checking the leading edge timing]**

1. Check the gap between line (1) on original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

<Reference value>

Vertical gap of line (2): within  $\pm 2.5$  mm

2. Use the maintenance mode U071 to adjust the timing.

Front Head: Adjusts the leading edge timing (surface)

Front Tail: Adjusts the trailing edge timing (surface)

CIS Head: Adjusts the leading edge timing for CIS scanning.

CIS Tail: Adjusts the trailing edge timing for CIS scanning.

**[Vérification de la synchronisation du bord avant]**

1. Vérifier l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

<Valeur de référence>

Écart vertical de la ligne (2) :  $\pm 2,5$  mm

2. Pour régler la synchronisation, utilisez le mode entretien U071.

Front Head: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord de tête (surface)

Front Tail: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord arrière (surface)

CIS Head: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord de tête pour le balayage par le CIS.

CIS Tail: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord arrière pour le balayage par le CIS.

**[Cambio de la sincronización de borde superior]**

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

<Valor de referencia>

Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de  $\pm 2,5$  mm

2. Para ajustar la sincronización utilice el modo de mantenimiento U071.

Front Head: Ajusta la sincronización del borde superior (anverso).

Front Tail: Ajusta la sincronización del borde inferior (anverso).

CIS Head: Ajusta la sincronización del borde superior para exploración CIS.

CIS Tail: Ajusta la sincronización del borde inferior para exploración CIS.

**[Überprüfen des Vorderkanten-Timings]**

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

<Bezugswert>

Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb  $\pm 2,5$  mm

2. Zum Einstellen des Timing den Wartungsmodus U071 verwenden.

Front Head: Zur Einstellung des Vorderkanten-Timing (Oberfläche)

Front Tail: Zur Einstellung des Hinterkanten-Timing (Oberfläche)

CIS Head: Zur Einstellung des Vorderkanten-Timing für CIS-Scannen.

CIS Tail: Zur Einstellung des Hinterkanten-Timing für CIS-Scannen.

**[Controllo della sincronizzazione del bordo principale]**

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea (1) sull'originale (a) e la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

<Valore di riferimento>

Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra  $\pm 2,5$  mm

2. Usare la modalità di manutenzione U071 per regolare la sincronizzazione.

Front Head: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo principale (superficie)

Front Tail: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo di uscita (superficie)

CIS Head: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo principale per scansione CIS.

CIS Tail: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo di uscita per scansione CIS.

**[ 确认前端定时调整 ]**

1. 确认原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2) 之间的偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值, 则按照下列步骤进行调整。

<标准值>

线 (2) 的上下偏移值:  $\pm 2.5$  mm 以内

2. 使用维修模式 U071 调整定时。

Front Head: 调整前端定时 (正面)

Front Tail: 调整后端定时 (正面)

CIS Head: 调整 CIS 读取时的前段对位

CIS Tail: 调整 CIS 读取时的后端定时

**[ 선단 타이밍확인 ]**

1. 원고 (a) 선 (1) 과 샘플 카피 선 (2) 의 차이를 확인합니다. 차이가 기준치 외의 경우 다음 순서로 조정을 합니다.

<기준치>

선 (2) 의 상하차이:  $\pm 2.5$ mm 이내

2. 메인テナンス 모드 U071 을 세트하고 조정을 합니다.

Front Head: 선단 타이밍 (표면) 을 조정합니다.

Front Tail: 후단 타이밍 (표면) 을 조정합니다.

CIS Head: CIS 스캔 시의 선단 타이밍을 조정합니다.

CIS Tail: CIS 스캔 시의 후단 타이밍을 조정합니다.

**[ 先端タイミング確認 ]**

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

<基準値>

線 (2) の上下ずれ:  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内

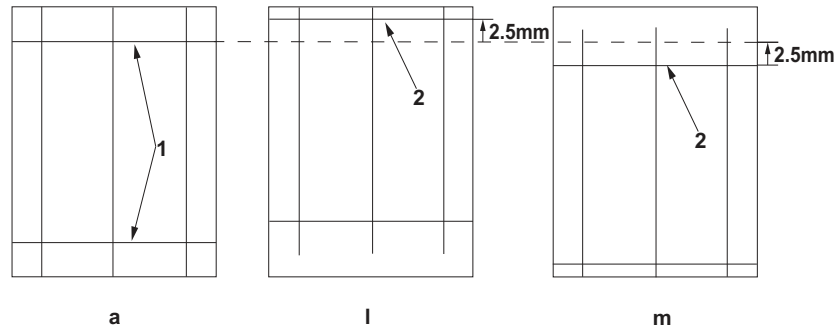
2. メンテナンスモード U071 をセットし、調整を行う。

Front Head: 先端タイミング (表面) を調整する

Front Tail: 後端タイミング (表面) を調整する

CIS Head: CIS 読み込み時の先端タイミングを調整する

CIS Tail: CIS 読み込み時の後端タイミングを調整する

**3. Adjust the values.**

For the shorter leading edge timing, copy examples (l): Decreases the value.

For the longer leading edge timing, copy examples (m): Increases the value.

Amount of change per step: 0.3 mm

**4. Perform a test copy.****5. Repeat the steps 2 to 4 above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the reference value.**

<Reference value>

Vertical gap of line (2): within  $\pm 2.5$  mm

**3. Régler les valeurs.**

Pour les exemples de copie dont la synchronisation du bord avant est plus rapide (l) : diminuer la valeur.

Pour les exemples de copie dont la synchronisation du bord avant est plus lente (m) : augmenter la valeur.

Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,3 mm

**4. Effectuer une copie de test.****5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.**

<Valeur de référence>

Écart vertical de la ligne (2) :  $\pm 2,5$  mm

**3. Ajuste los valores.**

Para una sincronización más rápida de extremo guía, ejemplos de copia (l): disminuye el valor.

Para una sincronización más lenta de extremo guía, ejemplos de copia (m): aumenta el valor.

Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,3 mm

**4. Haga una copia de prueba.****5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.**

<Valor de referencia>

Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de  $\pm 2,5$  mm

**3. Die Werte einstellen.**

Für den schnelleren Vorderkantentakt, Kopierbeispiel (l): Den Wert verringern.

Für den langsameren Vorderkantentakt, Kopierbeispiel (m): Den Wert erhöhen.

Änderung pro Schritt: 0,3 mm

**4. Eine Testkopie erstellen.****5. Die Schritte 2 bis 4 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.**

<Bezugswert>

Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb  $\pm 2,5$  mm

**3. Regolare i valori.**

Per accelerare la fasatura del bordo di entrata, esempi di copia (l): riduce il valore.

Per rallentare la fasatura del bordo di entrata, esempi di copia (m): aumenta il valore.

Entità modifica per passo: 0,3 mm

**4. Eseguire una copia di prova****5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 2 a 4 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.**

<Valore di riferimento>

Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra  $\pm 2,5$  mm

**3. 調整設定値。**

在前端定时偏快时 复印样本 (1) : 调低设定值

在前端定时偏慢时 复印样本 (m) : 调高设定值

设定值的一个调整单位变化量 : 0.3mm

**4. 进行测试复印。****5. 重复上述步骤 2 到 4, 直至复印样本上的线 (2) 的偏移值达到标准值范围内。**

<标准值>

线 (2) 的上下偏移值 :  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内

**3. 설정치를 조정합니다.**

선단 타이밍이 빠른 경우 샘플 카피 (l): 설정치를 내립니다.

선단 타이밍이 늦은 경우 샘플 카피 (m): 설정치를 올립니다.

1 스텝당 변화량: 0.3mm

**4. 테스트 카피를 합니다.****5. 샘플 카피 선 (2) 의 차이가 기준치내가 될 때까지 2 ~ 4 를 반복합니다.**

<기준치>

선 (2) 의 상하차이:  $\pm 2.5$ mm 이내

**3. 設定値を調整する。**

先端タイミングが短い場合コピーサンプル (1): 設定値を下げる。

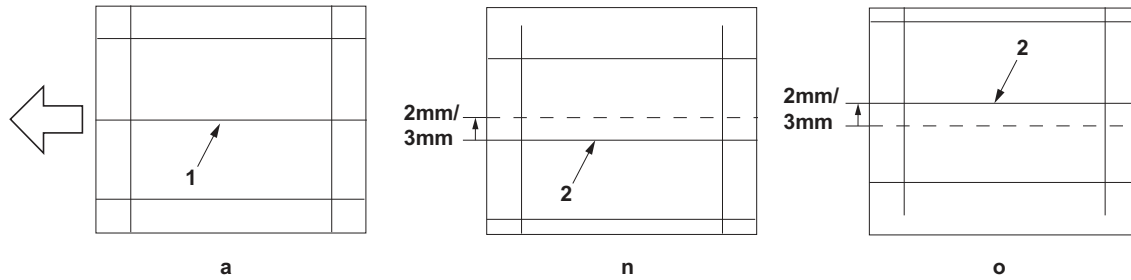
先端タイミングが長い場合コピーサンプル (m): 設定値を上げる。

1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.3mm

**4. テストコピーを行う。****5. コピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 2 ~ 4 を繰り返す。**

<基準値>

線 (2) の上下ずれ:  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内

**[Checking the center line]**

1. Check the gap between center line (1) on original (a) and center line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

<Reference value>

Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the single copying:  $\pm 2.0$  mm

Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the duplex copying:  $\pm 3.0$  mm

2. Use the maintenance mode U072 to adjust the timing.

Front: Adjusts the center line (surface)

CIS: Adjusts the CIS center line

**[Vérification de la ligne médiane]**

1. Vérifier l'écart entre l'axe (1) de l'original (a) et l'axe (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

<Valeur de référence>

Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto :  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto-verso :  $\pm 3,0$  mm

2. Pour régler la ligne médiane, utiliser le mode entretien U072.

Front: Permet de régler l'axe (surface)

CIS: Permet de régler l'axe du CIS

**[Verificación de la línea central]**

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea de centro (1) del original (a) y la línea de centro (2) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

<Valor de referencia>

Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado por una cara:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado dúplex:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

2. Para ajustar la línea central utilice el modo de mantenimiento U072.

Front: ajusta la línea central (anverso).

CIS: ajusta la línea central CIS

**[Überprüfen der Mittellinie]**

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Mittellinie (1) des Originals (a) und der Mittellinie (2) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

<Bezugswert>

Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Einzelkopie:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Duplexkopie:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

2. Zum Einstellen der Mittellinie den Wartungsmodus U072 verwenden.

Front: Zur Einstellung der Mittellinie (Oberfläche)

CIS: Zur Einstellung der CIS-Mittellinie

**[Controllo della linea centrale]**

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea centrale (1) sull'originale (a) e la linea centrale (2) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

<Valore di riferimento>

Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia singola:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia duplex:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

2. Usare la modalità di manutenzione U072 per regolare la linea centrale.

Front: Regola la linea centrale (superficie)

CIS: Regola la linea centrale CIS

**[ 确认中心线 ]**

1. 确认原稿 (a) 中心线 (1) 和复印样本中心线 (2) 之间的偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值, 则按照下列步骤进行调整。

<标准值> 单面复印时, 中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值:  $\pm 2.0$ mm 以内

双面复印时, 中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

2. 使用维修模式 U072 调整中心线。

Front: 中心位置 (正面) 的调整

CIS: CIS 的中心位置的调整

**[ 센터 라인 확인 ]**

1. 원고 (a) 센터라인 (1) 과 샘플 카피 센터라인 (2) 의 차이를 확인합니다. 차이가 기준치 외의 경우 다음 순서로 조정합니다.

<기준치> 단면의 경우 센터라인 (2) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 2.0$ mm 이내

양면의 경우 센터라인 (2) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내

2. 메인テナンス 모드 U072 을 세트하고 조정을 합니다.

Front: 센터 위치 (표면) 의 조정

CIS: CIS 의 센터 위치조정

**[ センターライン確認 ]**

1. 原稿 (a) の中心線 (1) とコピーサンプルの中心線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

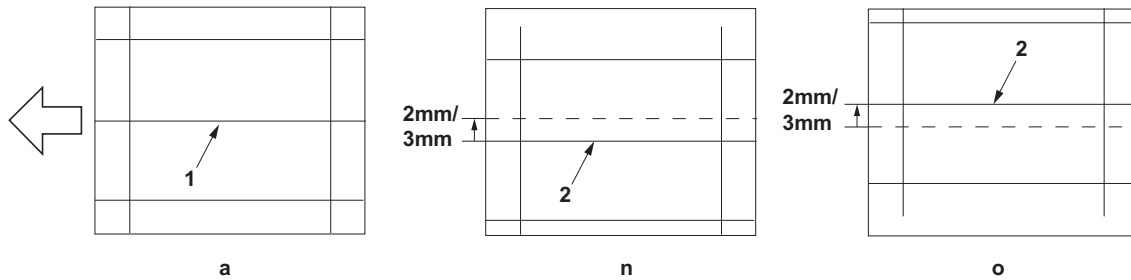
<基準値> 片面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 2.0$ mm 以内

両面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

2. メンテナンスモード U072 をセットし、調整を行う。

Front: センター位置 (表面) の調整

CIS: CIS のセンター位置の調整

**3. Adjust the values.**

If the center moves more front, copy example (n): Decreases the value.  
If the center moves inner, copy sample (o): Increases the value.

Amount of change per step: 0.085 mm

**4. Perform a test copy.****5. Repeat the steps 2 to 4 above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the reference value.**

<Reference value>

Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the single copying:  $\pm 2.0$  mm

Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the duplex copying:  $\pm 3.0$  mm

**3. Régler les valeurs.**

Pour l'exemple de copie (n) dont l'axe se déplace davantage vers l'avant : diminuer la valeur.

Pour l'exemple de copie (o) dont l'axe se déplace vers l'intérieur : augmenter la valeur.

Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,085 mm

**4. Effectuer une copie de test.****5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.**

<Valeur de référence>

Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto :  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto-verso :  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**3. Ajuste los valores.**

Si el centro se desplaza más hacia el frente, ejemplo de copia (n): disminuye el valor.

Si el centro se desplaza hacia dentro, ejemplo de copia (o): aumenta el valor.

Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,085 mm

**4. Haga una copia de prueba.****5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.**

<Valor de referencia>

Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado por una cara:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado dúplex:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**3. Die Werte einstellen.**

Wenn die Mitte nach vorne verlagert ist, Kopierbeispiel (n): Den Wert verringern.

Wenn die Mitte nach innen verlagert ist, Kopierbeispiel (o): Den Wert erhöhen.

Änderung pro Schritt: 0,085 mm

**4. Eine Testkopie erstellen.****5. Die Schritte 2 bis 4 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.**

<Bezugswert>

Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Einzelkopie:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Duplexkopie:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**3. Regolare i valori.**

Se il centro si sposta più avanti, esempio di copia (n): riduce il valore.

Se il centro si sposta verso l'interno, esempio di copia (o): aumenta il valore.

Entità modifica per passo: 0,085 mm

**4. Eseguire una copia di prova****5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 2 a 4 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.**

<Valore di riferimento>

Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia singola:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia duplex:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**3. 調整設定値。**

当中心向前偏移时 复印样本 (n) : 调低设定值

当中心向内偏移时 复印样本 (o) : 调高设定值

设定值的一个调整单位变化量 : 0.085mm

**4. 进行测试复印。****5. 重复上述步骤 2 到 4, 直至复印样本上的线 (2) 的偏移值达到标准值范围内。**

<标准值>

单面复印时, 中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值 :  $\pm 2.0$ mm 以内

双面复印时, 中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值 :  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

**3. 설정치를 조정합니다.**

센터가 바로 앞으로 틀려 있는 경우 샘플 카피 (n) : 설정치를 내립니다.

센터가 안으로 틀려 있는 경우 샘플 카피 (o) : 설정치를 높입니다.

1 스텝당 변화량 : 0.085mm

**4. 테스트 카피를 합니다.****5. 샘플 카피 센터라인 (2) 차이가 기준치 내가 될 때까지 순서 2 ~ 4 를 반복합니다.**

<기준치>

단면의 경우 센터라인 (2) 의 좌우차이 :  $\pm 2.0$ mm 이내

양면의 경우 센터라인 (2) 의 좌우차이 :  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내

**3. 設定値を調整する。**

センターが手前にずれている場合コピーサンプル (n) : 設定値を下げる。

センターが奥にずれている場合コピーサンプル (o) 設定値を上げる。

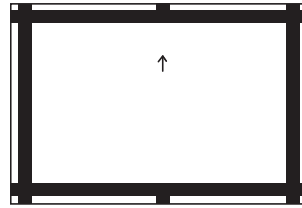
1 ステップ当たりの変化量 : 0.085mm

**4. テストコピーを行う。****5. コピーサンプルの中心線 (2) ずれが基準値内になるまで手順 2 ~ 4 を繰り返す。**

<基準値>

片面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ :  $\pm 2.0$ mm 以内

両面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ :  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内



#### [Automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment] If there is no DP auto adjustment original.

1. Set the maintenance mode U411 and press [DP Auto Adj] to output the adjustment original.
2. Set the printed original on the contact glass and press the Start key.
3. Set the original on the DP face up and press the Start key to carry out surface adjustment.

#### [Réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage] Si la machine n'est pas pourvue de la fonction réglage automatique d'original du DP

1. Passez en mode maintenance U411 et appuyez sur [DP Auto Adj] pour imprimer l'original de réglage.
2. Placer l'original qui vient d'être imprimé sur la vitre d'exposition et appuyer sur la touche Start.
3. Placer l'original sur le DP côté imprimé en haut et appuyer sur la touche Start pour procéder au réglage de la surface.

#### [Ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste]

##### Si no existe el original de ajuste automático del DP

1. Configure el modo de mantenimiento U411 y pulse [DP Auto Adj] para imprimir el original de ajuste.
2. Coloque el original impreso sobre el cristal de contacto y pulse la tecla de Start.
3. Coloque el original en el DP cara arriba y pulse la tecla de Start para realizar un ajuste de anverso.

#### [Automatische Einstellung mithilfe des Originals]

##### Falls keine automatische Einstellung des Originals des DP vorhanden ist

1. Aktivieren Sie den Wartungsmodus U411 und wählen Sie [DP Auto Adj], um das Original für die Anpassung auszudrucken.
2. Das ausgedruckte Original auf das Kontaktglas legen und die Start-Taste betätigen.
3. Das Original mit der Druckseite nach oben einlegen und die Start-Taste betätigen, um die Oberflächeneinstellung ausführen zu lassen.

#### [Regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale]

##### Se non è presente l'autoregolazione originale DP

1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U411, quindi premere [DP Auto Adj] per stampare l'originale da utilizzare per la regolazione.
2. Posizionare l'originale stampato sul vetro di appoggio e premere il tasto di Start.
3. Posizionare l'originale sul DP rivolto verso l'alto e premere il tasto di Start per eseguire la regolazione della superficie.

#### [通过调整用原稿进行自动调整]

##### 没有 DP 调整用原稿时

1. 进入维修保养模式 U411, 选择 [DP Auto Adj], 输出测试原稿。
2. 将输出的原稿放在稿台上, 按 Start 键。
3. 将原稿面朝上放在 DP 主机上, 按 Start 键以进行正面的调整。

#### [조정용 원고를 이용한 자동조정]

##### DP 조정용 원고가 없는 경우

1. 메인テナンス 모드 U411 을 설정하고 [DP Auto Adj] 를 눌러 조정된 원고를 출력합니다 .
2. 출력한 원고를 원고 유리에 장착하고 시작키를 누릅니다 .
3. 원고를 FaceUp 으로 DP 로 세트하고 시작키를 눌러 표면조정을 합니다 .

#### [調整用原稿による自動調整]

##### DP 調整用原稿が無い場合

1. メンテナンスモード U411 をセットし、[DP Auto Adj] を押し原稿を出力する。
2. 出力した原稿をコンタクトガラス上にセットし、スタートキーを押す。
3. 原稿を FaceUp で DP へセットし、スタートキーを押し、表面の調整を行う。

4. Set the original on the DP face down and press the Start key to carry out rear-side adjustment.
5. If "OK" appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment failed. Check the original set position and repeat steps 2 and 4 until "OK" appears. For details, see the service manual.

4. Placer l'original sur le DP côté imprimé en bas et appuyer sur la touche Start pour procéder au réglage du côté arrière.
5. Si le message "OK" apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé. Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérifier la position de l'original et recommencer les opérations 2 et 4 jusqu'à ce que le message "OK" apparaisse. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

4. Coloque el original en el DP cara abajo y pulse la tecla de Start para realizar un ajuste de reverso.
5. Si aparece "OK" en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición ajustada del original y repita los pasos 2 y 4 hasta que aparezca "OK" en la pantalla. Para mas detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

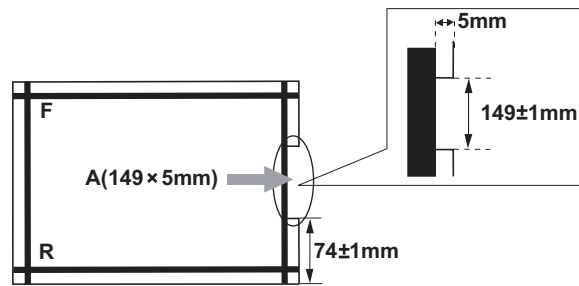
4. Das Original mit der Druckseite nach unten einlegen und die Start-Taste betätigen, um die Rückseiteneinstellung ausführen zu lassen.
5. Wenn am Display "OK" angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlossen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 2 und 4, bis "OK" angezeigt wird. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

4. Posizionare l'originale sul DP rivolto verso il basso e premere il tasto di Start per eseguire la regolazione del lato posteriore.
5. Se "OK" appare sul display, la regolazione è completata. Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 2 e 4 fino a quando appare "OK". Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

4. 将原稿面朝下放在 DP 主机上, 按 Start 键以进行反面的调整。
5. 如果屏幕上出现 "OK" (完成), 则表示调整完成。如果出现 ERROR XX (错误 XX), 则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并重复步骤 2 和 4, 直到 "OK" (完成) 出现。详细内容请参照维修手册。

4. 원고를 FaceDown 으로 DP 에 장착하고 시작키를 눌러 뒷면조정을 합니다 .
5. 디스플레이에 "OK" 가 표시되면 조정완료가 됩니다 . ERROR XX 가 표시된 경우에는 조정실패입니다 . 원고 장착위치를 확인하고 "OK" 가 표시될 때까지 순서 2 ~ 4 를 반복합니다 . 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조 .

4. 原稿を FaceDown で DP へセットし、スタートキーを押し、裏面の調整を行う。
5. ディスプレイに「OK」が表示されれば調整完了となる。ERROR XX が表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確認し、「OK」が表示されるまで手順 2 ~ 4 を繰り返す。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。



### Using a DP auto adjustment original

1. Direct F and R of the DP auto adjustment original upward, and set the original from the place where F and R are marked.
2. Set the maintenance mode U411. Press the [DP FU(ChartB)] and the Start key in that order to carry out surface adjustment.

3. If "OK" appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment failed. Check the original set position and repeat steps 1 and 2 until "OK" appears. For details, see the service manual.

### Avec la fonction réglage automatique d'original du DP

1. Diriger F (avant) et R (arrière) de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP vers le haut, puis placer l'original à partir de l'emplacement des repères F et R.
2. Passer au mode maintenance U411. Appuyer sur les touches [DP FU(ChartB)] et Start dans cet ordre pour procéder au réglage de la surface.

3. Si le message "OK" apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé. Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérifier la position de l'original et recommencer les opérations 1 et 2 jusqu'à ce que le message "OK" apparaisse. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

### Uso del original de ajuste automático del DP

1. Dirija F y R del original de ajuste automático del DP hacia arriba, y coloque el original a partir del sitio en que están marcados F y R.
2. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U411. Pulse las teclas [DP FU(ChartB)] y la tecla de Start, en ese orden, para realizar el ajuste de anverso.

3. Si aparece "OK" en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición ajustada del original y repita los pasos 1 y 2 hasta que aparezca "OK" en la pantalla. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

### Gebrauch der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP

1. F und R der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP nach oben zeigen und das Original an die mit F und R markierte Stelle setzen.
2. Den Wartungsmodus U411 einschalten. [DP FU(ChartB)] und die Start-Taste in dieser Reihenfolge betätigen, um die Oberflächeneinstellung ausführen zu lassen.

3. Wenn am Display "OK" angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlossen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 1 und 2, bis "OK" angezeigt wird. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

### Uso di un'autoregolazione originale DP

1. Orientare F e R dell'autoregolazione originale DP verso l'alto e disporre l'originale rispetto ai punti in cui sono contrassegnati F e R.
2. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U411. Premere nell'ordine [DP FU(ChartB)] e il tasto di Start, per eseguire la regolazione della superficie.

3. Se "OK" appare sul display, la regolazione è completata. Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 1 e 2 fino a quando appare "OK". Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

### 使用 DP 自动调整原稿时

1. 将 DP 自动调整原稿的 F 和 R 向上, 并把标有 F 和 R 的一侧插入 DP 来设定原稿。
2. 设置维护模式 U411, 按顺序按 [DP FU(ChartB)]、Start 键以进行正面的调整。

3. 如果屏幕上出现 "OK" (完成), 则表示调整完成。如果出现 ERROR XX (错误 XX), 则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并重复步骤 1 和 2, 直到 "OK" (完成) 出现。详细内容请参照维修手册。

### DP 자동조정용 원고를 사용하는 경우

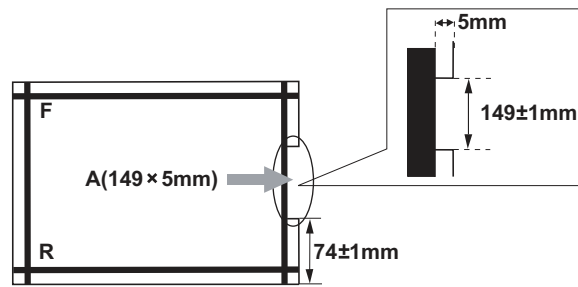
1. DP 자동 조정 원고를 F, R 을 위로 향하게 하고 F, R 이라고 표시된 곳에서 부터 원고를 셋팅합니다.
2. 메인テナンス 모드 U411 을 세트하고 [DP FU(ChartB)], 시작키의 순서로 눌러 표면 조정을 합니다.

3. 디스플레이에 "OK" 가 표시되면 조정완료가 됩니다. ERROR XX 가 표시된 경우에는 조정실패입니다. 원고 장착위치를 확인하고 "OK" 가 표시될 때까지 순서 1 ~ 2 를 반복합니다. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조.

### DP 自動調整原稿を使用する場合

1. DP 自動調整原稿の F、R を上に向け、F、R が書かれている方から DP へセットする。
2. メンテナンスモード U411 をセットし、[DP FU(ChartB)]、スタートキーの順に押し、表面の調整を行う。

3. ディスプレイに「OK」が表示されれば調整完了となる。ERROR XX が表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確認し、「OK」が表示されるまで手順 1 ~ 2 を繰り返す。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>4. After completing the surface adjustment, direct F and R of the DP auto adjustment original downward and set the original by inserting the side where the F and R are marked into the DP first.</p> <p>5. Set the maintenance mode U411. Press the [DP FD(ChartB)] and the Start key in that order to carry out rear-side adjustment.</p>   | <p>6. If "OK" appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment failed. Check the original set position and repeat steps 4 and 5 until "OK" appears. For details, see the service manual.</p>  |
| <p>4. Une fois le réglage de la surface effectué, diriger F (avant) et R (arrière) de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP vers le bas et placer l'original en introduisant en premier dans le DP le côté sur lequel F et R sont indiqués.</p> <p>5. Passer au mode maintenance U411. Appuyer sur les touches [DP FD(ChartB)] et Start dans cet ordre pour procéder au réglage du côté arrière.</p> | <p>6. Si le message "OK" apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé. Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérifier la position de l'original et recommencer les opérations 4 et 5 jusqu'à ce que le message "OK" apparaisse. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.</p> |
| <p>4. Una vez hecho el ajuste del anverso, dirija F y R del original de ajuste automático del DP hacia abajo y coloque el original insertando en el DP, en primer lugar, el lado en el que están marcados F y R.</p> <p>5. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U411. Pulse las teclas [DP FD(ChartB)] y la tecla de Start, en ese orden, para realizar el ajuste de reverso.</p>                                     | <p>6. Si aparece "OK" en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición ajustada del original y repita los pasos 4 y 5 hasta que aparezca "OK" en la pantalla. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.</p>                                     |
| <p>4. Nach dem Abschluss der Oberflächeneinstellung F und R der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP nach unten zeigen und das Original einstellen, indem die mit F und R markierte Seite zuerst in den DP eingeführt wird.</p> <p>5. Den Wartungsmodus U411 einschalten. [DP FD(ChartB)] und die Start-Taste in dieser Reihenfolge betätigen, um die Rückseiteneinstellung ausführen zu lassen.</p>     | <p>6. Wenn am Display "OK" angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlossen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 4 und 5, bis "OK" angezeigt wird. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.</p>        |
| <p>4. Una volta conclusa la regolazione della superficie, orientare F e R dell'autoregolazione originale DP verso il basso e disporre l'originale inserendo nel DP prima il lato su cui sono contrassegnati F e R.</p> <p>5. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U411. Premere nell'ordine [DP FD(ChartB)] e il tasto di Start, per eseguire la regolazione del lato posteriore.</p>                                | <p>6. Se "OK" appare sul display, la regolazione è completata. Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 4 e 5 fino a quando appare "OK". Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.</p>                   |
| <p>4. 完成正面调整后,将DP自动调整原稿的F和R向下,并首先将标有F和R的一侧插入DP来设定原稿。</p> <p>5. 设置维护模式U411,按顺序按[DP FD(ChartB)]、Start键以进行反面的调整。</p>  | <p>6. 如果屏幕上出现"OK"(完成),则表示调整完成。如果出现ERROR XX(错误XX),则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并重复步骤4和5,直到"OK"(完成)出现。详细内容请参照维修手册。</p>   |
| <p>4. 표면의 조정완료 후 DP 자동조정원고의 F, R을 아래로 향하게 해 F, R이 쓰여져 있는 쪽에서 DP로 세트합니다.</p> <p>5. 메인テナンス 모드 U411을 세트하고 [DP FD(ChartB)], 시작키 순서로 뒷면조정을 합니다.</p>   | <p>6. 디스플레이에 "OK"가 표시되면 조정완료가 됩니다. ERROR XX가 표시된 경우에는 조정실패입니다. 원고 장착위치를 확인하고 "OK"가 표시될 때까지 순서 4 ~ 5를 반복합니다. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조</p>   |
| <p>4. 表面の調整完了後、DP自動調整原稿のF、Rを下に向け、F、Rが書かれている方からDPへセットする。</p> <p>5. メンテナンスモードU411をセットし、[DP FD(ChartB)]、スタートキーの順に押し、裏面の調整を行う。</p>   | <p>6. ディスプレイに「OK」が表示されれば調整完了となる。ERROR XXが表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確認し、「OK」が表示されるまで手順4～5を繰り返す。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。</p>  |



(3) DP-7120

# DP-7120 / (Document processor) Installation Guide

**INSTALLATION GUIDE**

**GUIDE D'INSTALLATION**

**GUÍA DE INSTALACION**

**INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG**

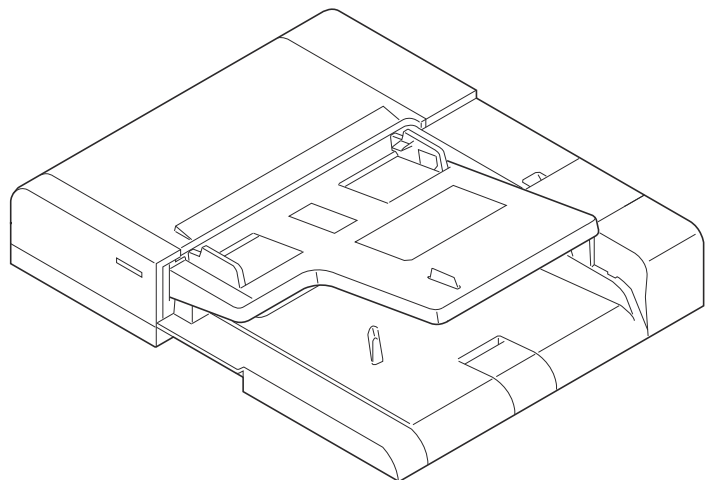
**GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE**

**安装手册**

**설치안내서**

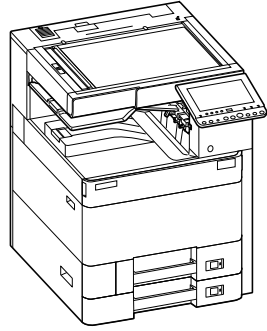
**設置手順書**

**DP-7120**

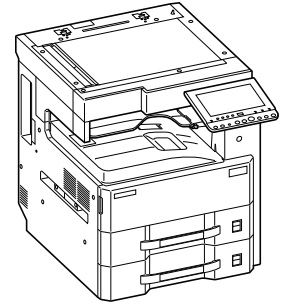


**A**

Color MFP  
25/25ppm,32/32ppm,

**B**

Black & White MFP  
30ppm,32ppm,  
35ppm,40ppm

**English**

A different procedure is required depending on the product which is installed with this unit. Each procedure is described in the following pages.  
For installation with a MFP(A), see Page 1 to Page 4, Page 9 to Page 28.  
For installation with a MFP(B), see Page 5 to Page 28.

**Français**

Une procédure différente est requise selon le produit qui est installé avec cette unité. Chaque procédure est décrite dans les pages suivantes.  
Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(A), voir Page 1 à Page 4, Page 9 à Page 28.  
Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(B), voir Page 5 à Page 28.

**Español**

El procedimiento es diferente según el producto que se instale con esta unidad. En las siguientes páginas, se describe cada procedimiento.  
Para la instalación con un MFP(A), consulte las páginas de la 1 a la 4, páginas de la 9 a la 28.  
Para la instalación con un MFP(B), consulte las páginas de la 5 a la 28.

**Deutsch**

Je nach verwendetem Modell ist eine andere Vorgehensweise zur Installation dieses Teils erforderlich. Die unterschiedlichen Vorgehensweisen werden auf den folgenden Seiten erläutert.  
Bei Installation an einem MFP(A) siehe Seiten 1 bis 4, Seiten 9 bis 28.  
Bei Installation an einem MFP(B) siehe Seiten 5 bis 28.

**Italiano**

Si richiede una procedura diversa in funzione del prodotto su cui è installata l'unità. Le singole procedure sono descritte nelle pagine seguenti.  
Per l'installazione con un MFP(A), vedere le pagine da 1 a 4, pagine da 9 a 28.  
Per l'installazione con un MFP(B), vedere le pagine da 5 a 28.

**简体中文**

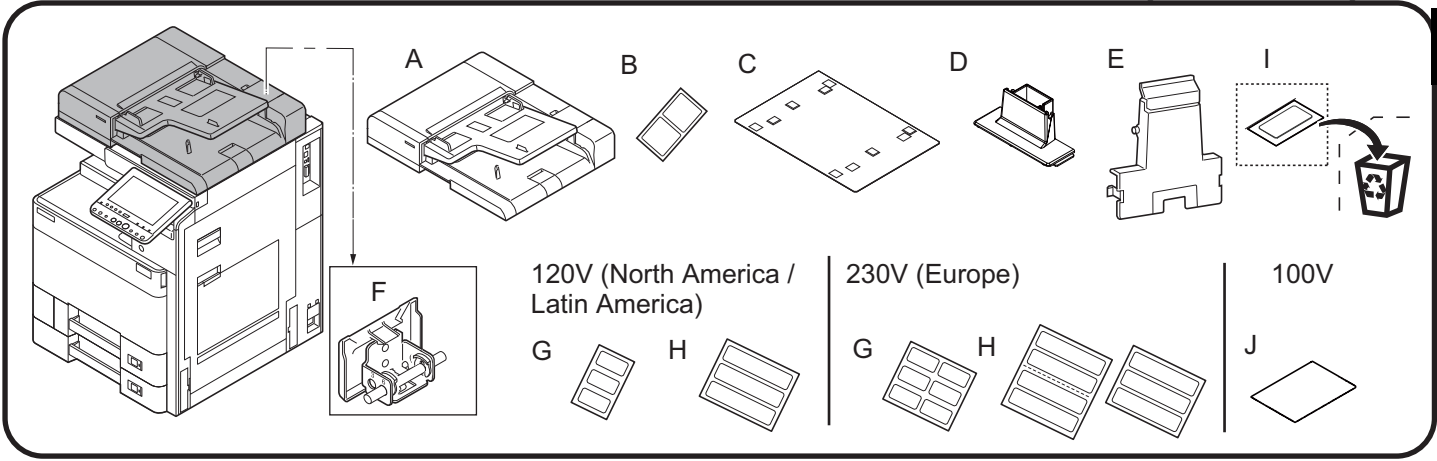
根据安装对象，安装步骤略有不同。各个步骤记载在下面的页面。  
安装到 MFP(A) 上时，请参见 P1-P4, P9-P28。  
安装到 MFP(B) 上时，请参见 P5-P28。

**한국어**

이 장치에 설치되는 제품에 따라 절차가 다릅니다. 다음 페이지에서 각 절차를 설명합니다.  
MFP(A) 에 설치하는 경우 1 페이지 ~4 페이지, 9 페이지 ~28 페이지를 참조하십시오.  
MFP(B) 에 설치하는 경우 5 페이지 ~28 페이지를 참조하십시오.

**日本語**

装着する対象によって、取付手順は異なります。それぞれ、以下のページに記載しています。  
MFP(A) に設置する場合; 1 ページ ~ 4 ページ, 9 ページ ~ 28 ページ  
MFP(B) に設置する場合; 5 ページ ~ 28 ページ

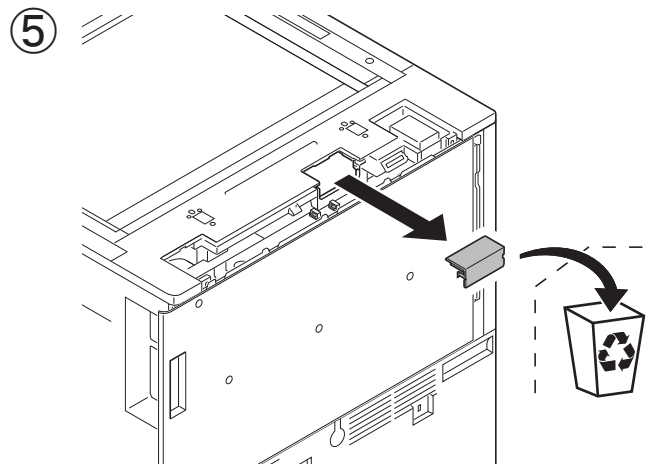
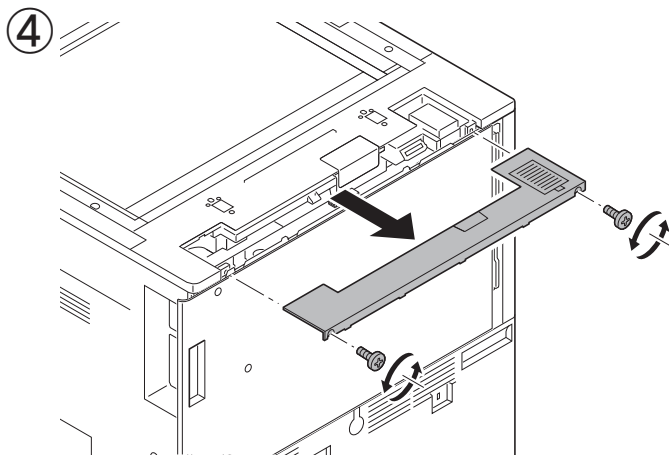
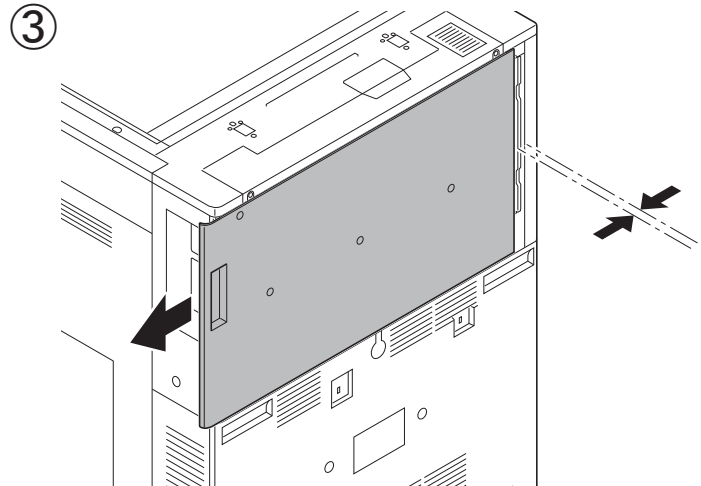
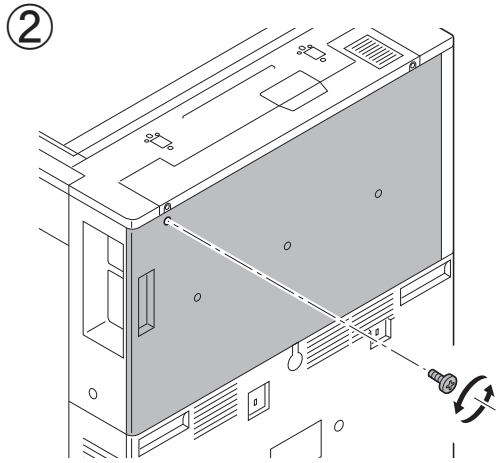
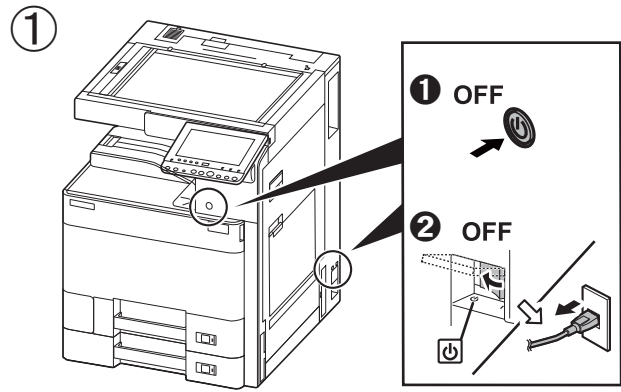


120V (North America / Latin America)

230V (Europe)

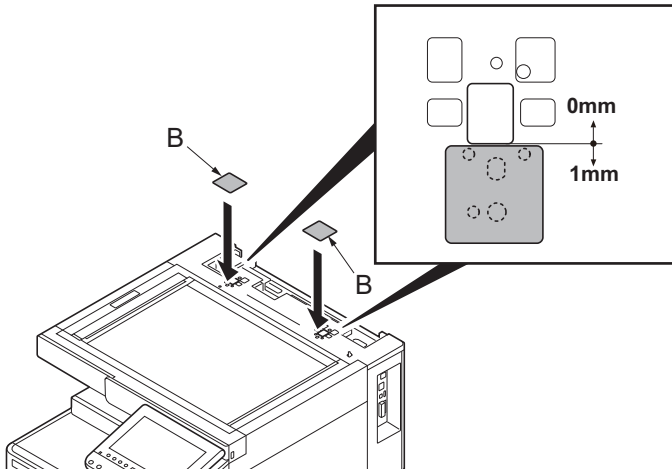
100V

- ENG Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
- FR Veuillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- ES Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- DE Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.
- IT Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.
- CN 如果附属品上带有固定胶带，缓冲材料时务必揭下。
- KO 동봉품에 고정 테이프, 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오.
- JP 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。

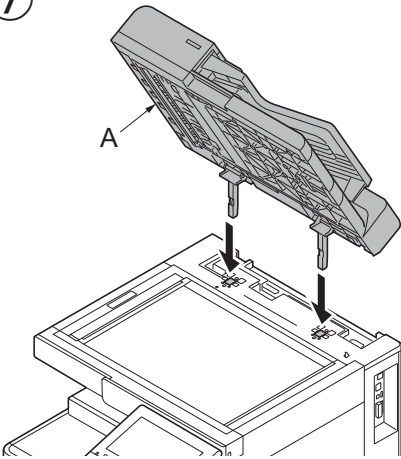


A

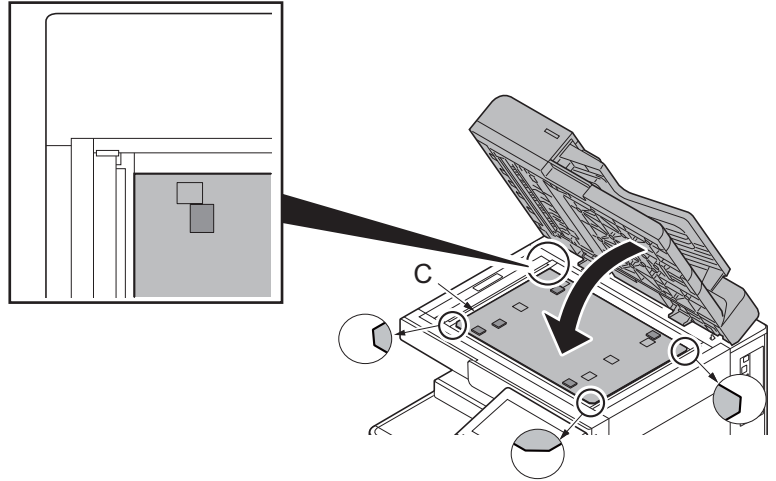
⑥



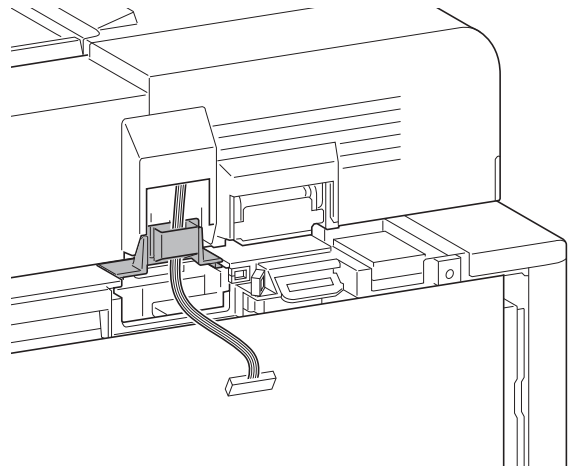
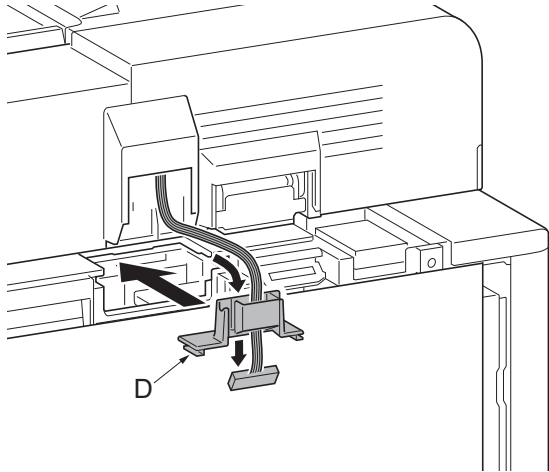
⑦



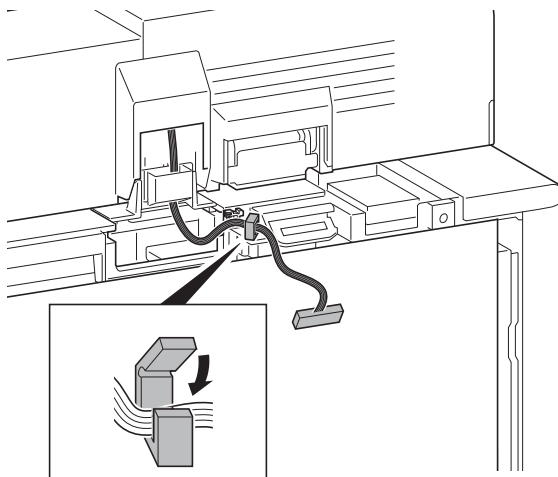
⑧



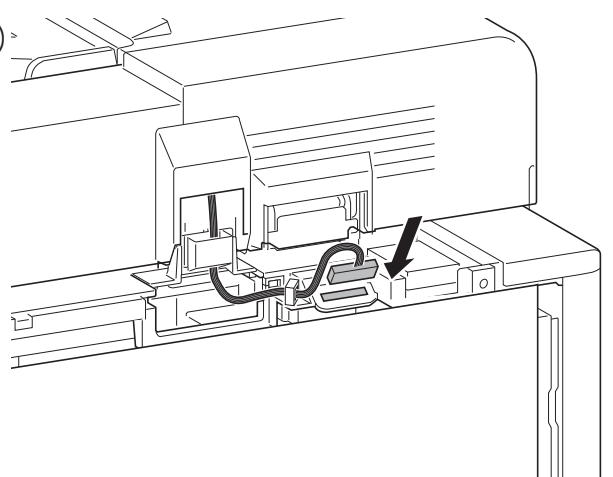
⑨

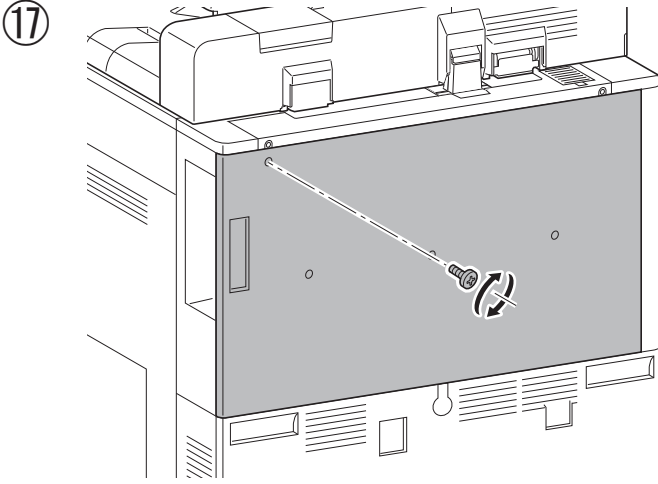
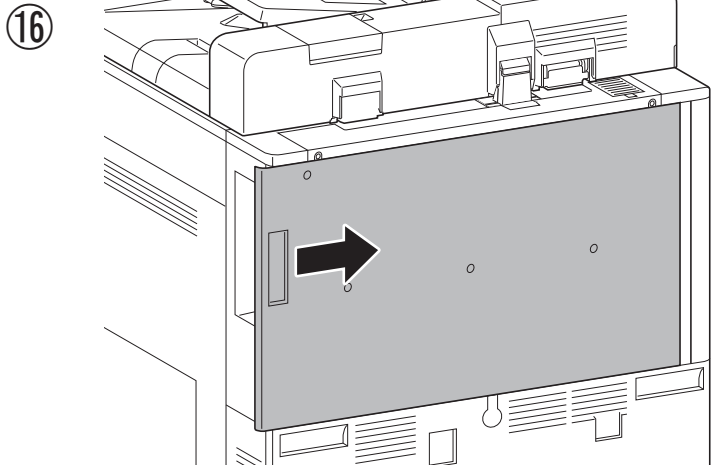
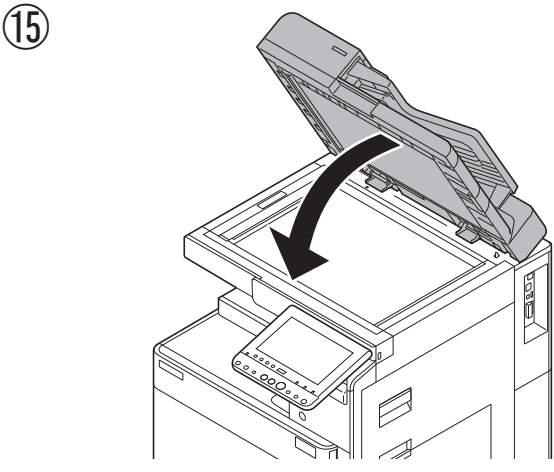
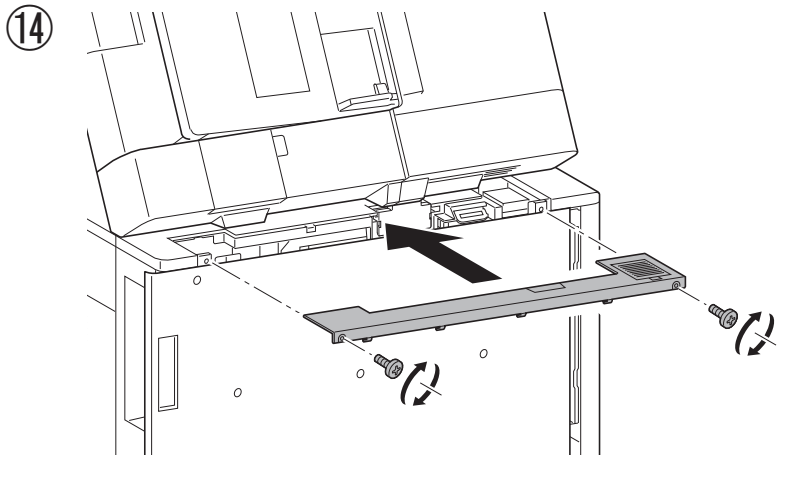
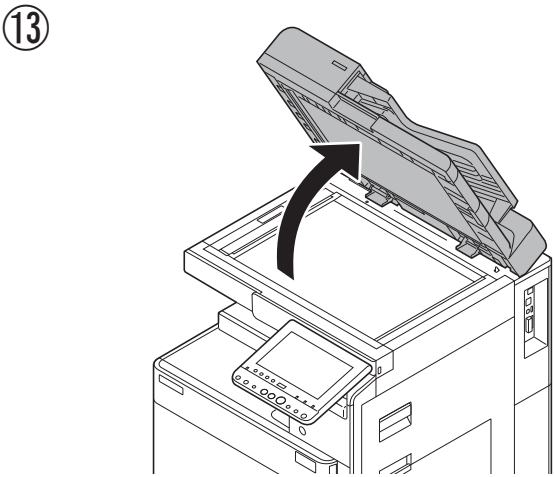
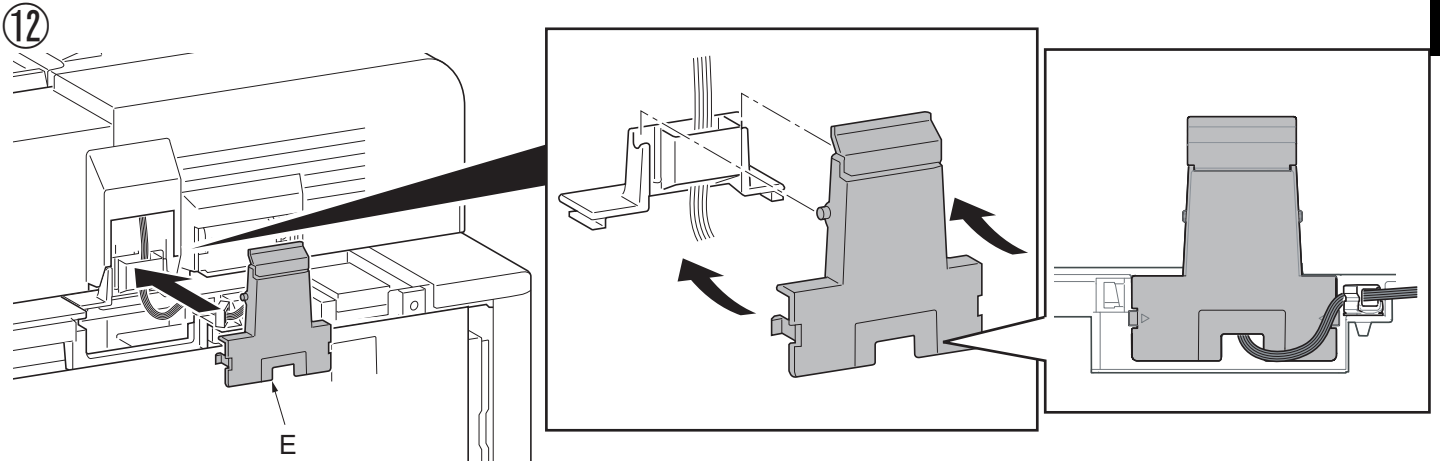


⑩



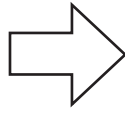
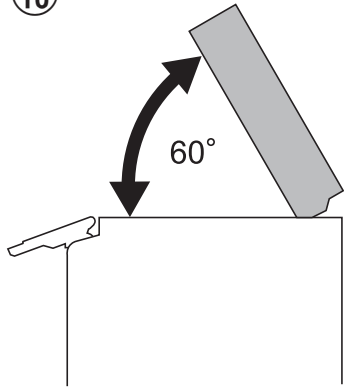
⑪



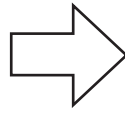
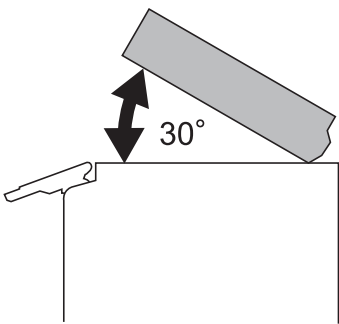
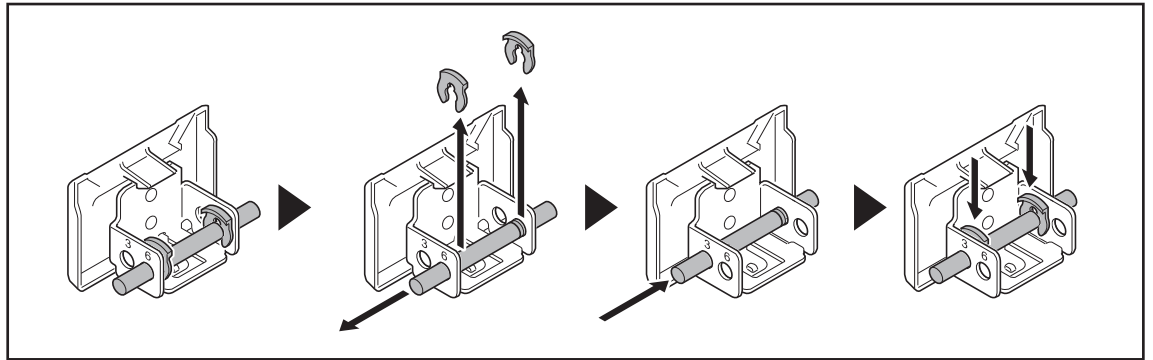
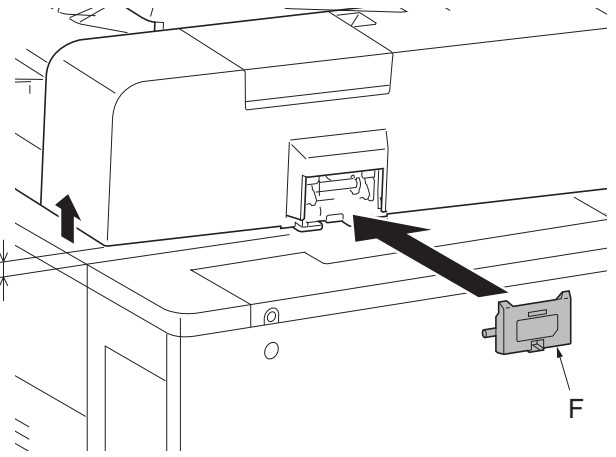


A

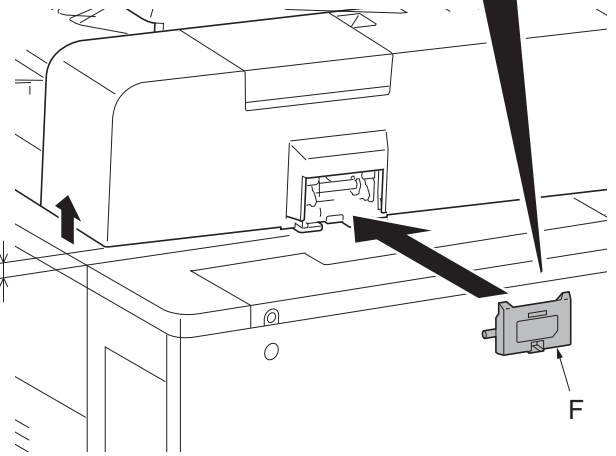
18



10 mm

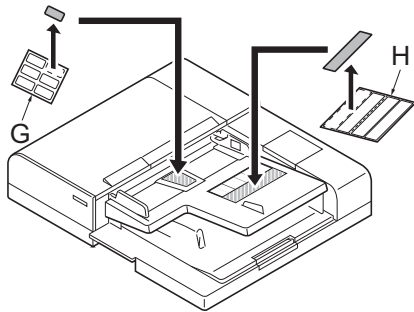


10 mm

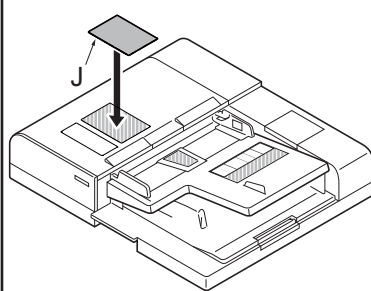


19

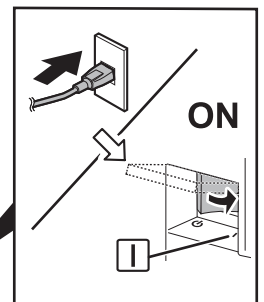
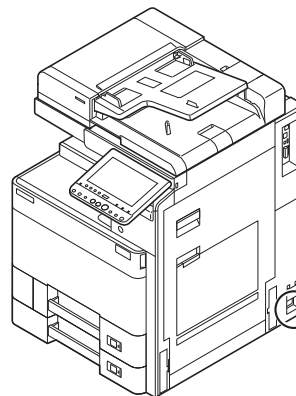
(120V/230V model)

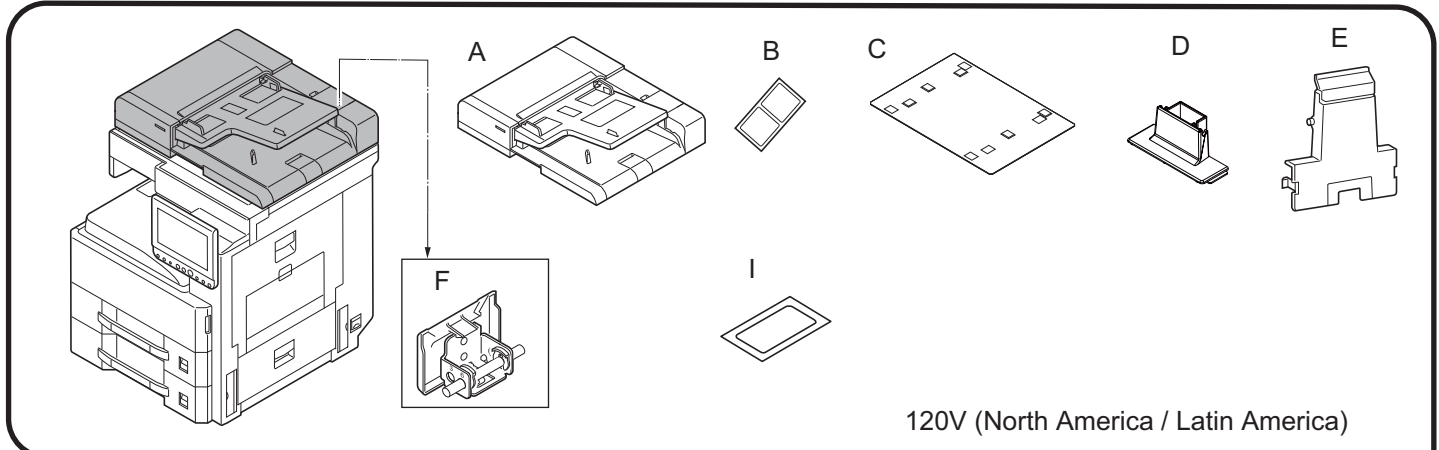


(100V model)



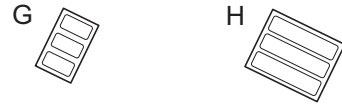
20



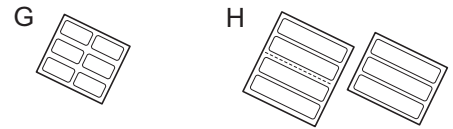


- ENG Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
- FR Veuillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- ES Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- DE Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.
- IT Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.
- CN 如果附属品上带有固定胶带, 缓冲材料时务必揭下。
- KO 동봉품에 고정 테이프, 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오.
- JP 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。

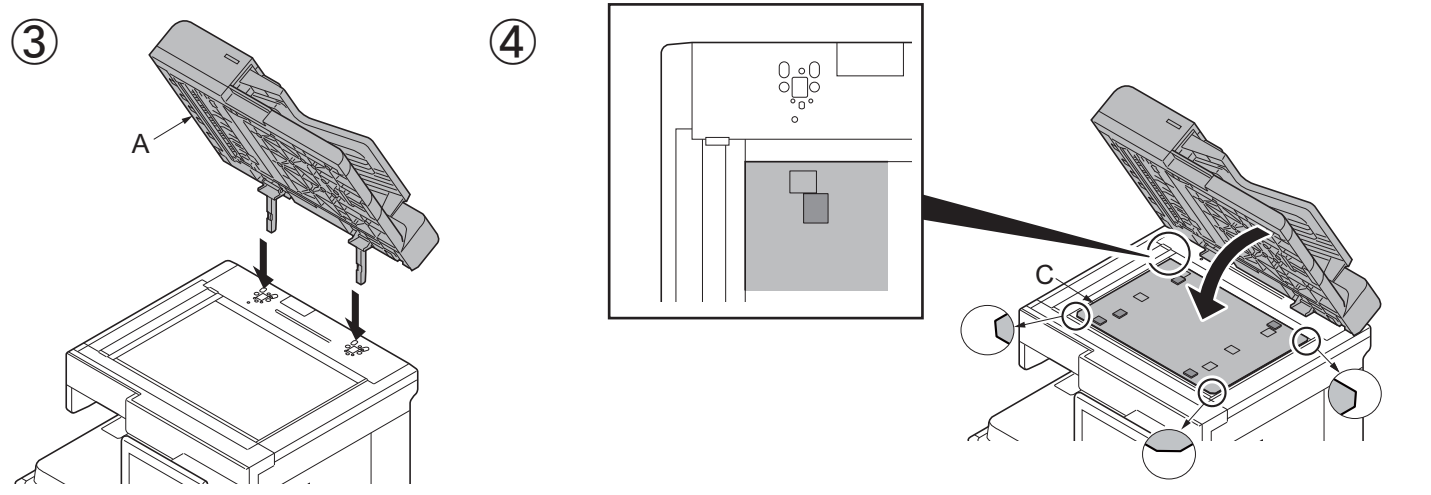
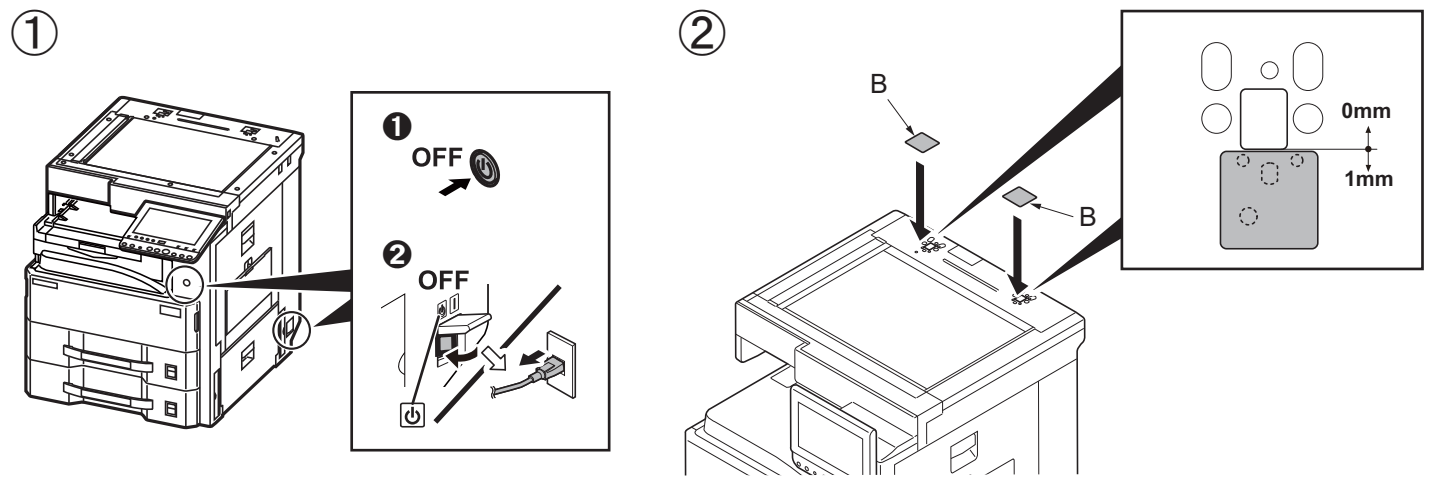
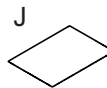
120V (North America / Latin America)



230V (Europe)



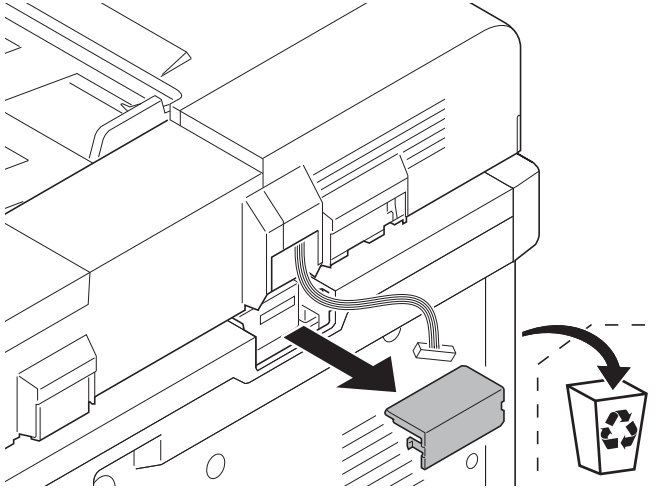
100V



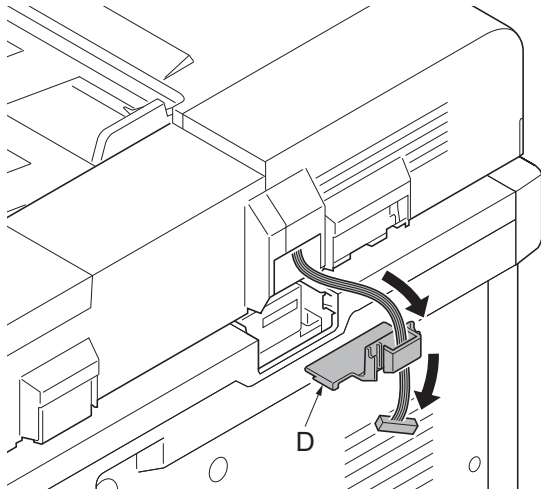


B

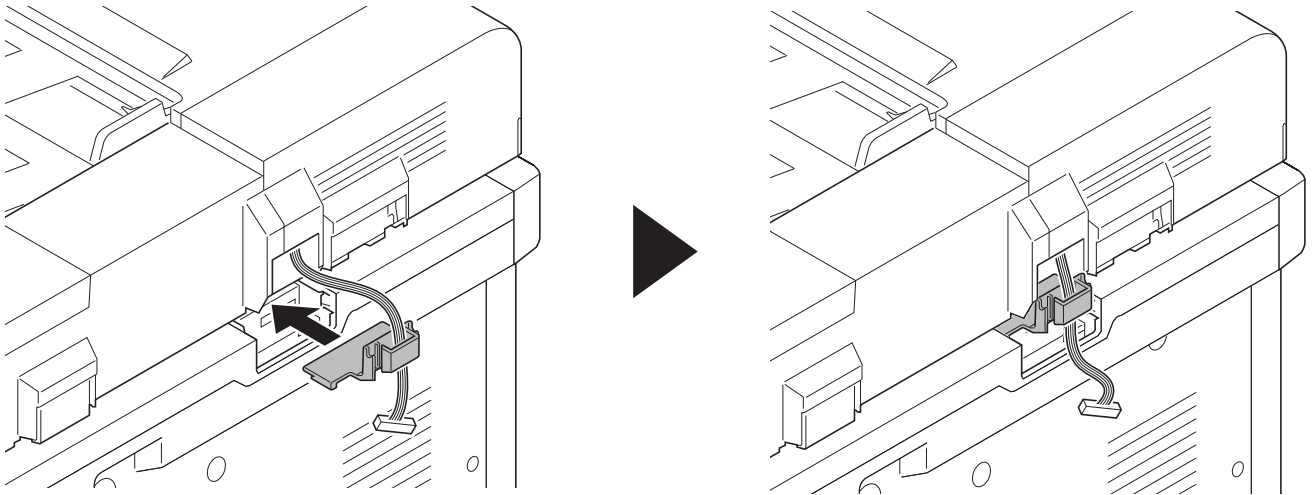
⑤



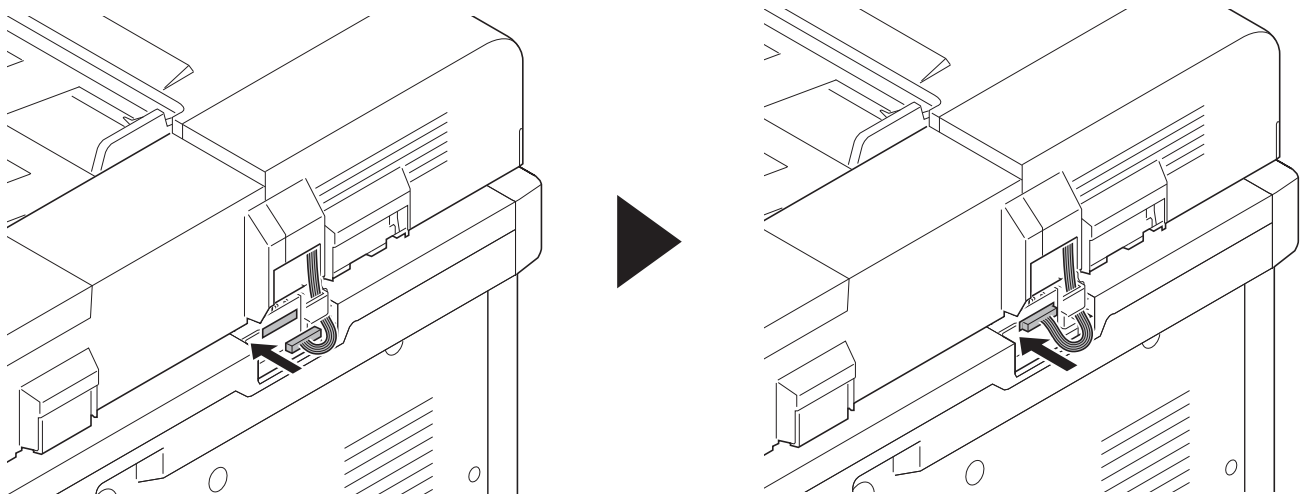
⑥



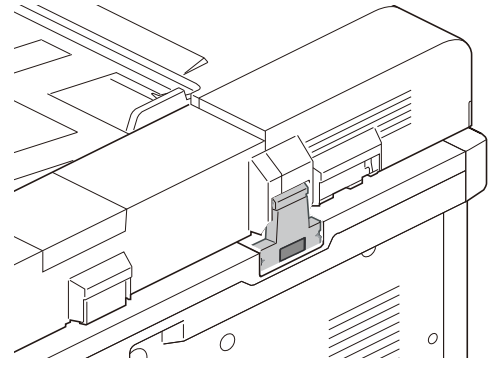
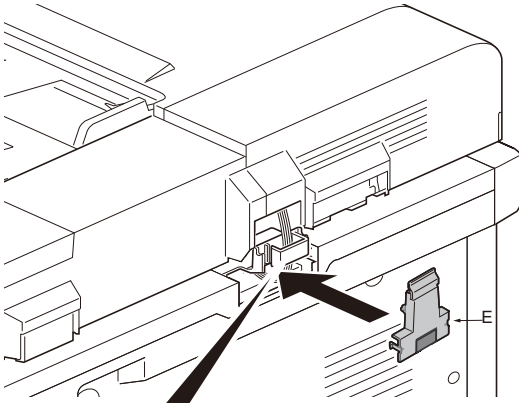
⑦



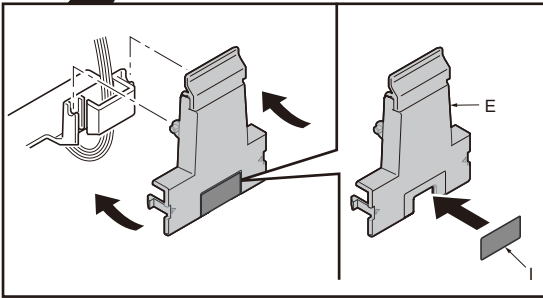
⑧



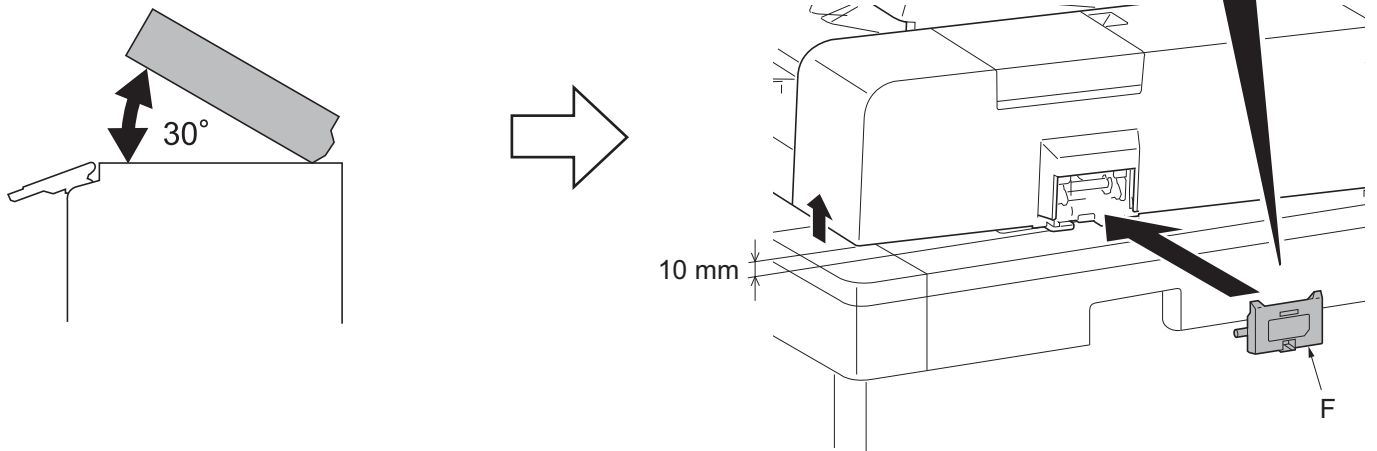
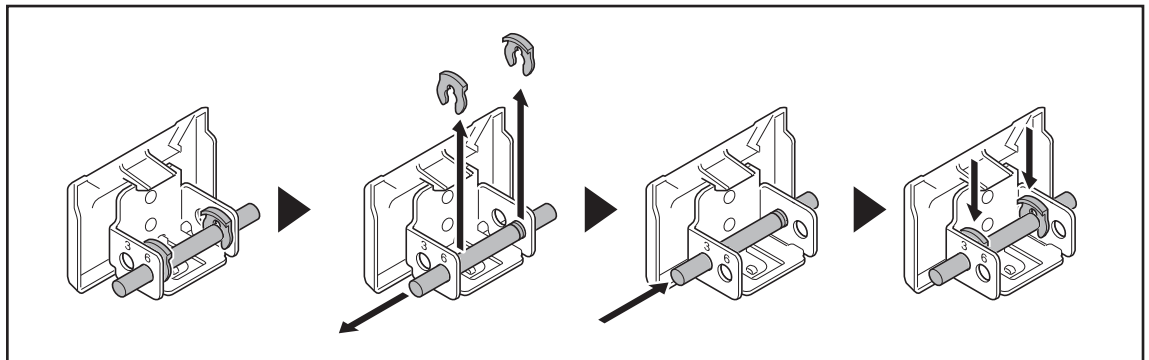
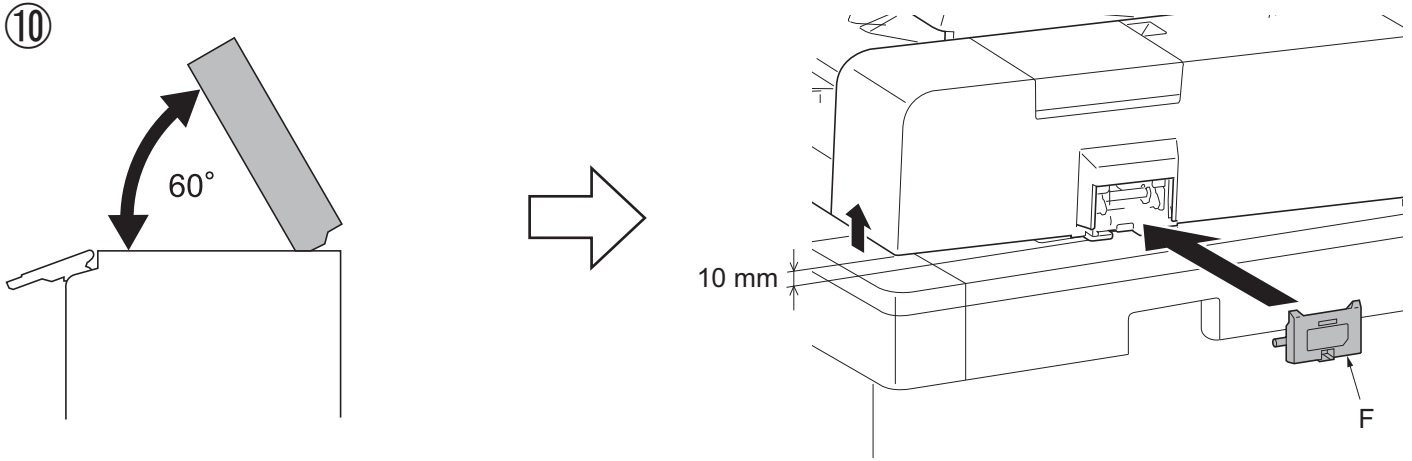
9



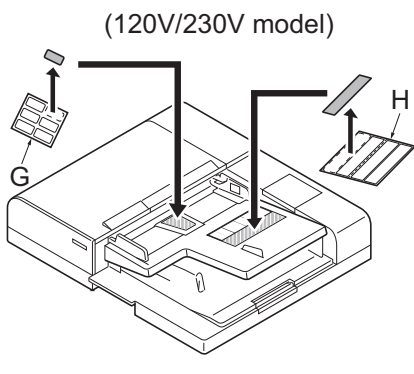
B



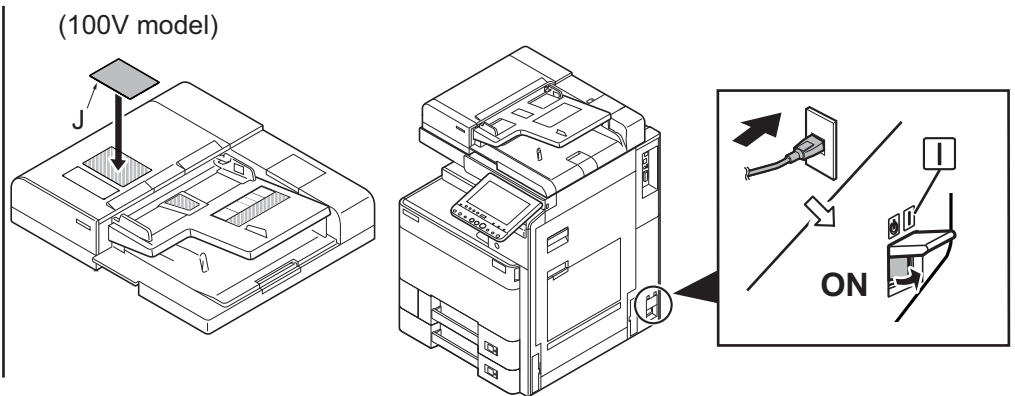
B

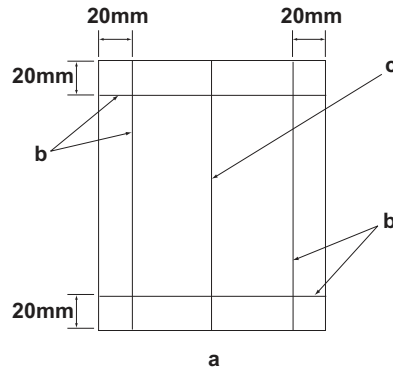


⑪



⑫



**[Operation check]**

1. To check the machine operation, prepare original (a) where 4 lines (b) are drawn 20 mm from the edges of the A3 sheet and 1 line (c) is drawn at its center.
2. Connect the power plug of the MFP into the wall outlet and turn the main power switch on.
3. Set the original (a) on the DP and perform a test copy to check the operation and the copy example.

**[Vérification du fonctionnement]**

1. Pour vérifier le bon fonctionnement de l'appareil, préparer un original (a) sur lequel sont tracées 4 lignes (b) à 20 mm des bords de la feuille A3 et 1 ligne (c) en son axe.
2. Brancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP sur la prise murale et mettre l'appareil sous tension.
3. Placer l'original (a) sur le DP et effectuer une copie de test pour vérifier le fonctionnement et l'exemple de copie.

**[Verifique el funcionamiento]**

1. Para comprobar el funcionamiento del aparato, prepare un original (a) que contenga 4 líneas (b) dibujadas a 20 mm de los bordes de la hoja A3 y 1 línea (c) dibujada en el centro.
2. Conecte el enchufe eléctrico del MFP en el tomacorriente de la pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
3. Coloque el original (a) en el DP y haga una copia de prueba para verificar el funcionamiento y el ejemplo de copia.

**[Funktionsprüfung]**

1. Zum Prüfen der Gerätefunktion das Original (a) vorbereiten, auf das 4 Linien (b) 20 mm von den Kanten des A3-Blattes und 1 Linie (c) in der Mitte gezeichnet sind.
2. Den Netzstecker am MFP in die Steckdose stecken und den Strom einschalten.
3. Das Original (a) auf den DP legen und eine Testkopie erstellen, um die Funktion und das Kopierbeispiel zu prüfen.

**[Verifica del funzionamento]**

1. Per verificare il funzionamento della macchina, preparare l'originale (a) tirando 4 linee (b) a 20 mm dai bordi del foglio A3 e una linea (c) al centro.
2. Inserire la spina dell'alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa a muro, quindi posizionare l'interruttore principale su On.
3. Posizionare l'originale(a) sul DP ed eseguire una copia di prova per verificare il funzionamento e l'esempio di copia.

**[動作確認]**

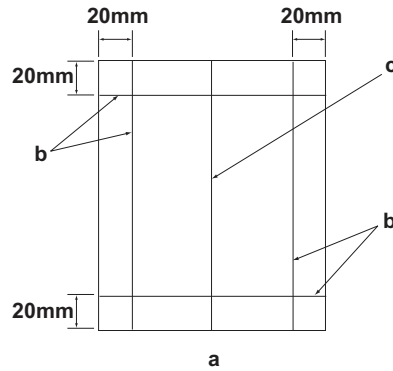
1. 若要检查机器动作, 准备一张 A3 原稿 (a), 距纸张边缘 20mm 画出 4 条线 (b) 并且在原稿中心画出 1 条线 (c)。
2. 将 MFP 的电源插头插入墙壁插座并打开主电源。
3. 在 DP 上设定原稿 (a) 并进行测试复印, 确认机器动作和复印样本。

**[ 동작확인 ]**

1. 기계 작동 확인을 위해서, A3 용지 선단에서 20mm 떨어진 곳에 4 개의 선 (b) 과 센터에 1 개의 선 (c) 이 그려진 원고 (a) 를 준비.
2. 콘센트에 MFP 전원플러그를 꽂고 메인 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 합니다.
3. DP 상에 원고 (a) 를 준비하고 테스트 카피를 확인하여 작동 상태와 카피 샘플을 확인합니다.

**[動作確認]**

1. A3 サイズ用紙の端から 20mm の位置に線 (b) 4 本と、用紙の中心に線 (c) 1 本を引いた、動作確認用の原稿 (a) を用意する。
2. MFP の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
3. 原稿 (a) を DP にセットし、テストコピーを行い、動作およびコピーサンプルを確認する。



4. Compare original (a) with the copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustments according to the type of the gap.

**Check images of the DP after checking and adjusting images of the MFP. For details, see the service manual.**

**NOTICE:** If there is any image fogging, adjust the U068 DP scanning position. If you change the scanning position with U068, adjust the U071 DP leading edge timing.

4. Comparer l'original (a) avec l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, effectuer les réglages suivants en fonction du type d'écart.

**Vérifier les images du DP après avoir contrôlé et réglé les images du MFP. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.**

**REMARQUE:** Si l'image est floue, régler la position de balayage de U068 du DP. Si la position de balayage de U068 est modifiée, régler la synchronisation du bord d'attaque de U071.

4. Compare el original (a) con el ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, realice los siguientes ajustes según el tipo de separación.

**Compruebe las imágenes del DP después de comprobar y ajustar las imágenes del MFP. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.**

**AVISO:** Si la imagen estuviera borrosa, ajuste la posición de escaneo U068 del DP. Si cambia la posición de escaneo con U068, ajuste la sincronización de borde superior U071 del DP.

4. Das Original (a) mit dem Kopierbeispiel vergleichen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, die folgenden Einstellungen gemäß dem Abstandstyp durchführen.

**Die Bilder des DP nach dem Prüfen und Einstellen der Bilder des MFP prüfen. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.**

**ANMERKUNG:** Falls das Bild verschwommen wirkt, ist die U068 DP Scan-Position zu verstellen. Wenn Sie die Scan-Position mit U068 verstellen, müssen Sie das U071 DP-Vorderkanten-Timing entsprechend verstellen.

4. Confrontare l'originale (a) con l'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, eseguire le seguenti regolazioni in funzione del tipo di scostamento.

**Controllare le immagini del DP dopo avere effettuato i controlli e le regolazioni delle immagini sull'MFP. Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.**

**AVVISO:** Se è presente una qualsiasi sfocatura dell'immagine, regolare la posizione di scansione DP U068. Se si cambia la posizione di scansione con U068, regolare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale DP U071.

4. 对比复印样本和原稿(a), 如果偏移值在标准值以上时, 对偏移原稿进行调整。

对 MFP 的图像确认和调整后再对 DP 的图像进行确认。详细内容请参见维修手册。

(注意) 如果图像出现底灰, 用 U068 来调整 DP 的扫描位置。如果用 U068 更改了扫描位置, 则再用 U071 对 DP 的前端定时进行调整。

4. 원고 (a) 와 카피 샘플을 비교하여 차이가 기준치를 벗어나는 경우, 차이 (틈) 의 형태에 따라 다음을 조정합니다.

**MFP 의 화상확인 및 조정을 하고나서 DP 의 화상확인을 할 것. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조할 것.**

(주의) 화상 카브리가 발생하는 경우, U068DP 스캔위치 조정을 합니다. U068 에서 스캔위치를 변경한 경우 U071DP 선단 타이밍 조정을 합니다.

4. 原稿 (a) とコピーサンプルを比較し、基準値以上のずれがある場合、ずれ方に応じて調整を行う。

MFP の画像確認及び調整を行ってから DP の画像確認を行うこと。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

(注意) 画像カブリが発生する場合、U068 DP 読み取り位置の調整を行う。U068 で読み取り位置を変更した場合、U071 DP 先端タイミング調整を行う。

Be sure to adjust in the following order. If not, the adjustment cannot be performed correctly.

For checking the angle of leading edge, see page 13. <Reference value> Simplex copying: within  $\pm 3.0$  mm; Duplex copying: within  $\pm 4.0$  mm

For checking the angle of trailing edge, see page 16. <Reference value> Simplex copying: within  $\pm 3.0$  mm; Duplex copying: within  $\pm 4.0$  mm

For checking the magnification, see page 21. <Reference value> Within  $\pm 1.5\%$

Veillez à effectuer le réglage en procédant dans l'ordre suivant. Sinon, il sera impossible d'obtenir un réglage correct.

Pour vérifier l'angle du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 13. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.; copie recto verso:  $\pm 4,0$  mm max.

Pour vérifier l'angle du bord arrière, reportez-vous à la page 16. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.; copie recto verso:  $\pm 4,0$  mm max.

Pour vérifier l'agrandissement, reportez-vous à la page 21. <Valeur de référence>  $\pm 1,5\%$  max.

Asegúrese de ajustar en el siguiente orden. De lo contrario, el ajuste no puede hacerse correctamente.

Para verificar el ángulo del borde superior, vea la página 13. <Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Copia duplex: dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Para verificar el ángulo del borde inferior, vea la página 16. <Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Copia duplex: dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Para verificar el cambio de tamaño, vea la página 21. <Valor de referencia> Dentro de  $\pm 1,5\%$

Die Einstellung in der folgenden Reihenfolge durchführen. Anderenfalls kann die Einstellung nicht korrekt durchgeführt werden.

Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Vorderkante auf Seite 13. <Bezugswert> Simplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Angaben zur Prüfung des Winkels der Hinterkante auf Seite 16. <Bezugswert> Simplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Angaben zur Prüfung der Vergrößerung auf Seite 21. <Bezugswert> Innerhalb  $\pm 1,5\%$

Accertarsi di eseguire le regolazioni in questa sequenza: in caso contrario, la regolazione non può essere effettuata correttamente.

Per controllare l'angolo del bordo principale, vedere pagina 13. <Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Copia duplex: entro  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Per controllare l'angolo del bordo di uscita, vedere pagina 16. <Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm; Copia duplex: entro  $\pm 4,0$  mm

Per controllare l'ingrandimento, vedere pagina 21. <Valore di riferimento> Entro  $\pm 1,5\%$

必须按照以下步骤进行调整, 否则不能达到准确调整的要求。

• 确认前端倾斜度 第 13 页 <标准值> 单面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内, 双面:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

• 确认后端倾斜度 第 16 页 <标准值> 单面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内, 双面:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

• 确认等倍值 第 21 页 <标准值>  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

반드시 하기의 순서로 조정을 할 것. 순서대로 조정을 하지 않는 경우 바른 조정을 할 수 없습니다.

• 선단경사확인 13 페이지 <기준치> 단면:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내, 양면:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

• 후단경사확인 16 페이지 <기준치> 단면:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내, 양면:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

• 등배도 확인 21 페이지 <기준치>  $\pm 1.5\%$  이내

必ず下記の順序で調整を行うこと。順序通りに調整を行わない場合、正しい調整ができない。

• 先端斜め確認 13 ページ <基準値> 片面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内、両面:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

• 後端斜め確認 16 ページ <基準値> 片面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内、両面:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

• 等倍度確認 21 ページ <基準値>  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

For checking the leading edge timing, see page 23. <Reference value> Within  $\pm 2.5$  mm  
 For checking the center line, see page 25. <Reference value> Simplex copying: within  $\pm 2.0$  mm;  
 Duplex copying: within  $\pm 3.0$  mm

**When using the original for adjustment, automatic adjustment of magnification, leading edge timing and center line can be performed at a time.**

For the automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment, see page 27.

Pour vérifier la synchronisation du bord avant, reportez-vous à la page 23. <Valeur de référence>  $\pm 2,5$  mm max.  
 Pour vérifier la ligne médiane, reportez-vous à la page 25. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 2,0$  mm max.;  
 Copie recto verso:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.

**Lorsque vous utilisez l'original pour effectuer le réglage, vous pouvez effectuer automatiquement le réglage de l'agrandissement, de la synchronisation du bord avant et de la ligne médiane en une seule fois.**

Pour le réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage, reportez-vous à la page 27.

Para verificar la sincronización del borde inferior, vea la página 23. <Valor de referencia> Dentro de  $\pm 2,5$  mm  
 Para verificar la línea central, vea la página 25. <Valor de referencia> Copia simple: dentro de  $\pm 2,0$  mm;  
 Copia duplex: dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**Cuando utilice el original para el ajuste, puede hacerse un ajuste automático del cambio de tamaño, sincronización del borde superior y línea central al mismo tiempo.**

Para el ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste, vea la página 27.

Angaben zur Prüfung des Vorderkanten-Timings auf Seite 23. <Bezugswert> Innerhalb  $\pm 2,5$  mm  
 Angaben zur Prüfung der Mittellinie auf Seite 25. <Bezugswert> Simplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 2,0$  mm;  
 Duplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**Bei Verwendung des Originals für die Einstellung können die automatischen Einstellungen für Vergrößerung, Vorderkanten-Timing und Mittellinie gleichzeitig durchgeführt werden.**

Angaben zur automatischen Einstellung mithilfe des Originals auf Seite 27.

Per controllare la sincronizzazione del bordo principale, vedere pagina 23. <Valore di riferimento> Entro  $\pm 2,5$  mm  
 Per controllare la linea centrale, vedere pagina 25. <Valore di riferimento> Copia simplex: entro  $\pm 2,0$  mm;  
 Copia duplex: entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm

**Quando si utilizza l'originale per la regolazione, la regolazione automatica dell'ingrandimento, della sincronizzazione del bordo principale e della linea centrale possono essere eseguiti contemporaneamente.**

Per la regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale, vedere pagina 27.

• 确认前端定时调整 第 23 页 <标准值>  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内  
 • 确认中心线 第 25 页 <标准值> 单面:  $\pm 2.0$ mm 以内,  
 双面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

使用调整用的原稿时,可以同时自动进行等倍值,前端定时以及中心线的调整。

• 通过调整用原稿进行自动调整 第 27 页

• 선단 타이밍 확인 23 페이지 <기준치>  $\pm 2.5$ mm 이내  
 • 센터 라인 확인 25 페이지 <기준치> 단면:  $\pm 2.0$ mm 이내,  
 양면:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내

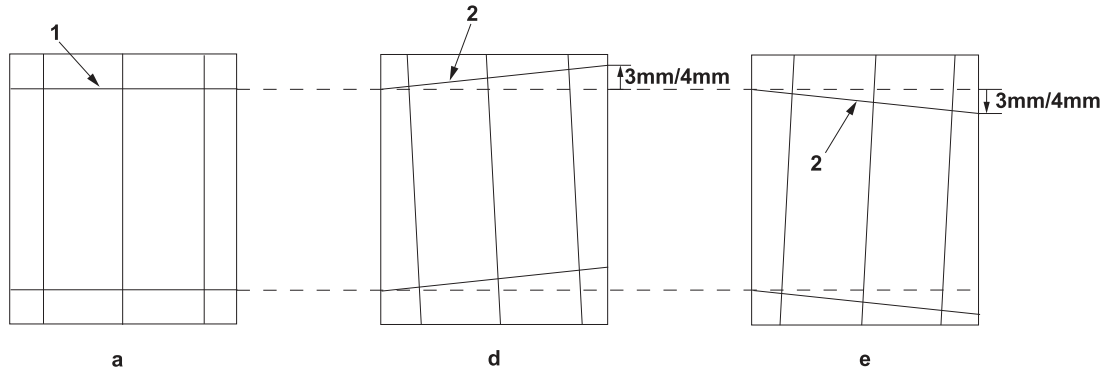
**조정용 원고를 사용하면 등배도 조정, 선단타이밍 조정, 센터 라인 조정의 자동조정이 한번에 수행됩니다.**

• 조정용 원고에 의한 자동조정 27 페이지

• 先端タイミング確認 23 ページ <基準値>  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内  
 • センターライン確認 25 ページ <基準値> 片面:  $\pm 2.0$ mm 以内,  
 両面:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

調整用原稿を使用すると、等倍度調整、先端タイミング調整、センターライン調整の自動調整が一度におこなえる。

• 調整用原稿による自動調整 27 ページ



#### [Checking the angle of leading edge]

1. Check the horizontal gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example positions. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

<Reference value> For single copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 3.0$  mm.

For duplex copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 4.0$  mm.

#### [Vérification de l'angle du bord avant]

1. Vérifier l'écart horizontal entre la position de la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et celle de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

<Valeur de référence> Pour la copie recto : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Pour la copie recto-verso : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

#### [Verificación del ángulo del borde superior]

1. Compruebe la separación horizontal entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de las posiciones del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

<Valor de referencia> Para el copiado por una cara: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Para el copiado dúplex: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

#### [Überprüfen des Winkels der Vorderkante]

1. Den horizontalen Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) der Kopierbeispielspositionen prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

<Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 3,0$  mm liegen.

Duplexkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 4,0$  mm liegen.

#### [Controllo dell'angolo del bordo principale]

1. Verificare lo scostamento orizzontale fra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) delle posizioni dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

<Valore di riferimento> Per la copia singola: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Per la copia duplex: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

#### [ 确认前端倾斜度 ]

1. 确认原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2) 的左右偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值, 则按照下列步骤进行调整

<标准值> 单面复印时, 线 (2) 的左右偏移值:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内。

双面复印时, 线 (2) 的左右偏移值:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内。

#### [ 선단 경사확인 ]

1. 원고 (a) 의 선 (1) 과 벨크로의 선 (2) 의 좌우 차이를 확인합니다. 차이가 기준치 외의 경우 다음의 순서대로 조정을 합니다.

<기준치> 단면의 경우 선 (2) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내

양면의 경우 선 (2) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

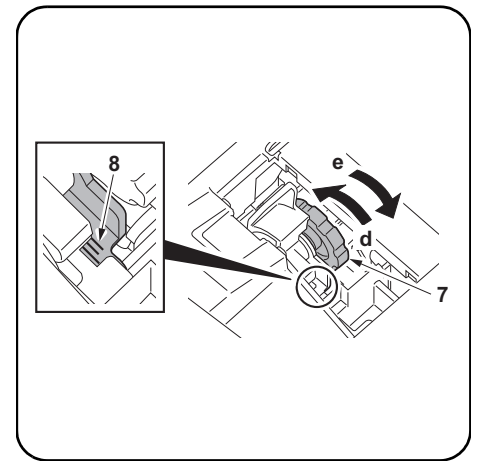
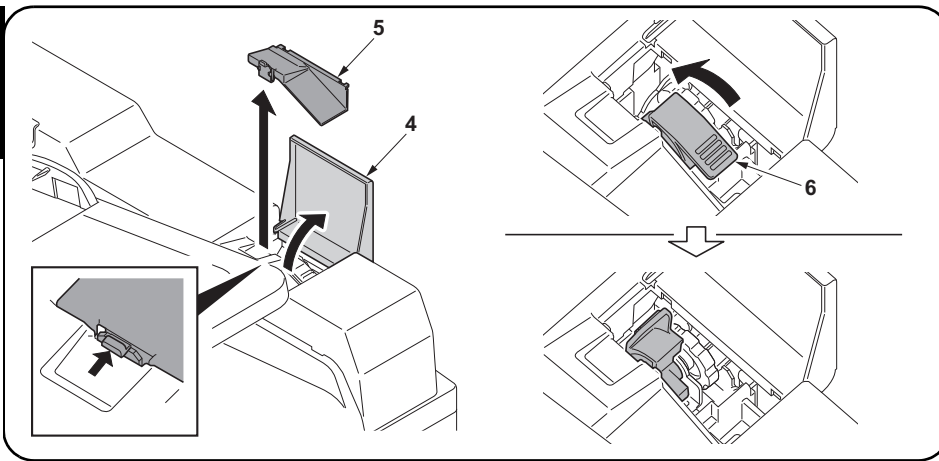
#### [ 先端斜め確認 ]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) の左右のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

<基準値> 片面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

両面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内



A  
B

2. Open the DP cover (4).
3. Remove the inner cover (5).
4. Lift up the lever (6).  
In case of copy sample (d): Turn the dial (7) towards the direction of the arrow d.  
In case of copy sample (e): Turn the dial (7) towards the direction of the arrow e.  
Amount of change per scale: Approx. 1.0 mm (8)
5. Perform a test copy.

2. Ouvrez le capot du DP (4).
3. Retirez le capot interne (5).
4. Soulevez le levier (6).  
Dans le cas de l'exemple de copie (d): Tournez le cadran (7) dans la direction de la flèche d.  
Dans le cas de l'exemple de copie (e): Tournez le cadran (7) dans la direction de la flèche e.  
Quantité de changement par pas: Environ 1,0 mm (8)
5. Effectuer une copie de test.

2. Abra la cubierta del DP (4).
3. Quite la cubierta interna (5).
4. Levante la palanca (6).  
En caso de muestra de copia (d): Gire el selector (7) en la dirección de la flecha d.  
En caso de muestra de copia (e): Gire el selector (7) en la dirección de la flecha e.  
Cantidad de cambio de escala: Aprox. 1,0 mm (8)
5. Haga una copia de prueba.

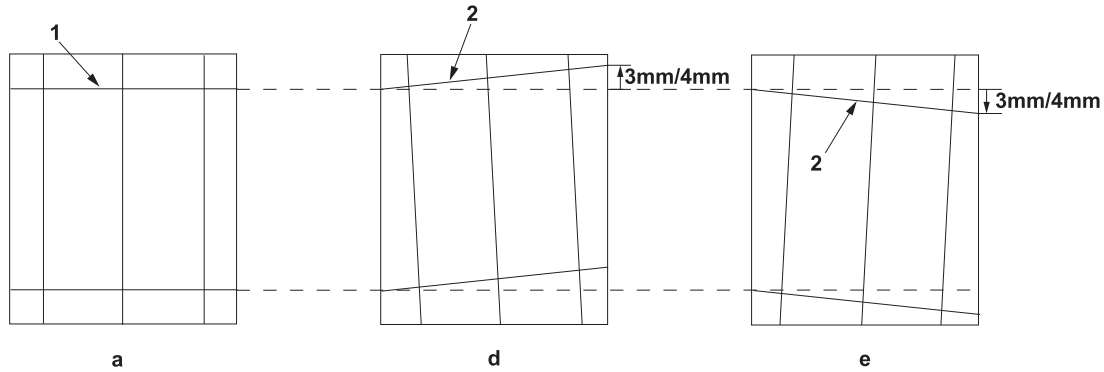
2. Öffnen Sie die Abdeckung des DP (4).
3. Entfernen Sie die innere Abdeckung (5).
4. Heben Sie den Hebel (6) an.  
Bei Verwendung der Kopiervorlage (d): Drehen Sie das Rad (7) in Pfeilrichtung d.  
Bei Verwendung der Kopiervorlage (e): Drehen Sie das Rad (7) in Pfeilrichtung e.  
Änderungsbetrag pro Skalenstrich: Ca. 1,0 mm (8)
5. Eine Testkopie erstellen.

2. Aprire il coperchio del DP (4).
3. Rimuovere il coperchio interno (5).
4. Sollevare la leva (6).  
Nel caso dell'esempio copia (d): Ruotare il selettore (7) in direzione della freccia d.  
Nel caso dell'esempio copia (e): Ruotare il selettore (7) in direzione della freccia e.  
Variazione graduale: Circa 1,0 mm (8)
5. Eseguire una copia di prova.

2. 打开 DP 盖板 (4)。
3. 取下内部盖板 (5)。
4. 提起杆 (6)。  
当处于样张 (d) 时: 把拨盘 (7) 向 d 方向旋转。  
当处于样张 (e) 时: 把拨盘 (7) 向 e 方向旋转。  
每 1 格的移动量: 约 1.0mm (8)
5. 进行测试复印。

2. DP 커버 (4) 를 엽니다 .
3. 내부 커버 (5) 를 제거합니다 .
4. 레버 (6) 를 위로 올립니다 .  
복사 샘플 (d) 의 경우 : 다이얼 (7) 을 화살표 d 방향으로 돌립니다 .  
복사 샘플 (e) 의 경우 : 다이얼 (7) 을 화살표 e 방향으로 돌립니다 .  
1 개 변화량 : 약 1.0mm (8)
5. 벨크로를 합니다 .

2. DP カバー (4) を開ける。
3. インナーカバー (5) を外す。
4. レバー (6) を上げる。  
コピーサンプル (d) の場合: ダイヤル (7) を d 方向に回す。  
コピーサンプル (e) の場合: ダイヤル (7) を e 方向に回す。  
1 目盛り当たりの変化量: 約 1.0mm (8)
5. テストコピーを行う。



6. Repeat the steps above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the following reference values.

<Reference value> For single copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 3.0$  mm.

For duplex copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 4.0$  mm.

7. After the adjustment, install the inner cover (5) which is removed in step 3. Close the DP cover (4).

8. **A** Remove the original mat (C) and refit it (see steps 8 on page 2).

**B** Remove the original mat (C) and refit it (see steps 4 on page 5).

6. Répéter les étapes ci-dessus jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique les valeurs de référence suivantes.

<Valeur de référence> Pour la copie recto : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Pour la copie recto-verso : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

7. Après l'ajustement, installez le capot interne (5) qui a été retiré à l'étape 3. Refermez le capot du DP (4).

8. **A** Retirez le tapis d'original (C) et remettez-le en place. (Reportez-vous aux étapes 8 à la page 2.)

**B** Retirez le tapis d'original (C) et remettez-le en place. (Reportez-vous aux étapes 4 à la page 5.)

6. Repita los pasos anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente los siguientes valores de referencia.

<Valor de referencia> Para el copiado por una cara: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Para el copiado dúplex: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

7. Después del ajuste, instale la cubierta interna (5) que se quitó en el paso 3. Cierre la cubierta del DP (4).

8. **A** Desmonte la plancha de original (C) y vuelva a colocar (vea los pasos 8 en la página 2).

**B** Desmonte la plancha de original (C) y vuelva a colocar (vea los pasos 4 en la página 5).

6. Die obigen Schritte wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.

<Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 3,0$  mm liegen.

Duplexkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 4,0$  mm liegen.

7. Nach der Einstellung installieren Sie die innere Abdeckung (5), die in Schritt 3 entfernt wurde. Schließen Sie die Abdeckung des DP (4).

8. **A** Die Originalmatte (C) abnehmen und wieder anbringen (siehe Schritte 8 auf Seite 2).

**B** Die Originalmatte (C) abnehmen und wieder anbringen (siehe Schritte 4 auf Seite 5).

6. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento seguenti.

<Valore di riferimento> Per la copia singola: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 3,0$  mm.

Per la copia duplex: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 4,0$  mm.

7. Al termine della regolazione, installare il coperchio interno (5), rimosso al punto 3. Chiudere il coperchio del DP (4).

8. **A** Rimuovere il coprioriginale (C) e reinserirlo (vedere i passi 8 a pagina 2).

**B** Rimuovere il coprioriginale (C) e reinserirlo (vedere i passi 4 a pagina 5).

6. 重复上述步骤直至复印样本上的线(2)的偏移值达到标准值范围内。

<标准值> 单面时, 线(2)的左右偏移值:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

双面时, 线(2)的左右偏移值:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

7. 调整结束后, 重新安装在步骤3中取下的内部盖板(5)。关闭DP盖板(4)。

8. **A** 拆下原稿垫(C), 参照第2页的步骤8再次装上。

**B** 拆下原稿垫(C), 参照第5页的步骤4再次装上。

6. 벨크로 선(2) 차이가 기준치내가 될 때까지 조정을 반복합니다.

<기준치> 단면의 경우 선(2)의 좌우차이:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내

양면의 경우 선(2)의 좌우차이:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

7. 조정 후에 순서 3에서 분리한 내부 커버(5)를 설치합니다. DP 커버(4)를 닫습니다.

8. **A** 원고매트(C)를 제거하고 2페이지 순서 8을 참고로 다시 부착합니다.

**B** 원고매트(C)를 제거하고 5페이지 순서 4을 참고로 다시 부착합니다.

6. コピーサンプルの線(2)のずれが基準値内になるまで、調整を繰り返す。

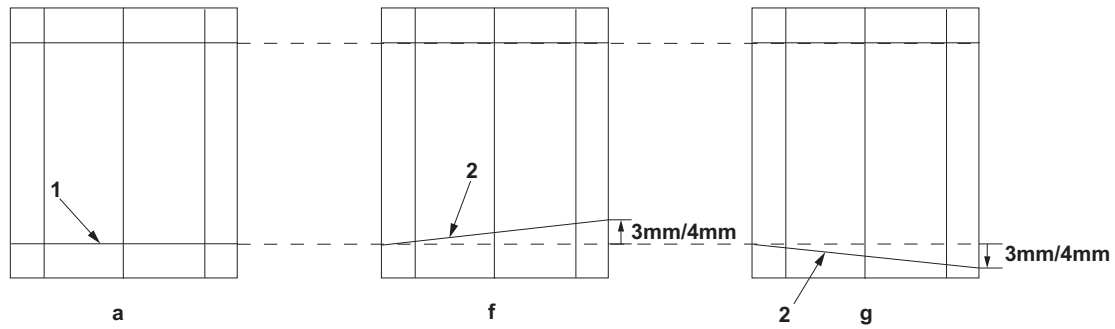
<基準値>片面の場合、線(2)の左右ずれ:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

両面の場合、線(2)の左右ずれ:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

7. 調整終了後、手順3で外したインナーカバー(5)を取り付ける。DPカバー(4)を閉める。

8. **A** 原稿マット(C)を取り外し、2ページの手順8を参考に再度取り付ける。

**B** 原稿マット(C)を取り外し、5ページの手順4を参考に再度取り付ける。



#### [Checking the angle of trailing edge]

1. Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustment.  
 <Reference value> For simplex copying: Within  $\pm 3.0$  mm  
 For duplex copying: Within  $\pm 4.0$  mm

#### [Vérification de l'angle du bord arrière]

1. Vérifiez l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart est supérieur à la valeur de référence, effectuez le réglage suivant.  
 <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.  
 Copie recto verso:  $\pm 4,0$  mm max.

#### [Verificación del ángulo del borde inferior]

1. Verifique la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de la copia de muestra. Si la superación supera el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.  
 <Valor de referencia> Para copia simple: Dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
 Para copia duplex: Dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm

#### [Überprüfen des Winkels der Hinterkante]

1. Die Abweichung der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopienmusters prüfen. Überschreitet die Abweichung den Bezugswert, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.  
 <Bezugswert> Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
 Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 4,0$  mm

#### [Controllo dell'angolo del bordo di uscita]

1. Controllare la differenza tra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) della copia di esempio. Se la differenza supera il valore di riferimento, effettuare la seguente regolazione.  
 <Valore di riferimento> Per copia simplex: Entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
 Per copia duplex: Entro  $\pm 4,0$  mm

#### [ 确认后端倾斜度 ]

1. 确认原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2) 的偏移值。如果超过标准值时, 必须进行调整。  
 <标准值> 单面时:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内  
 双面时:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

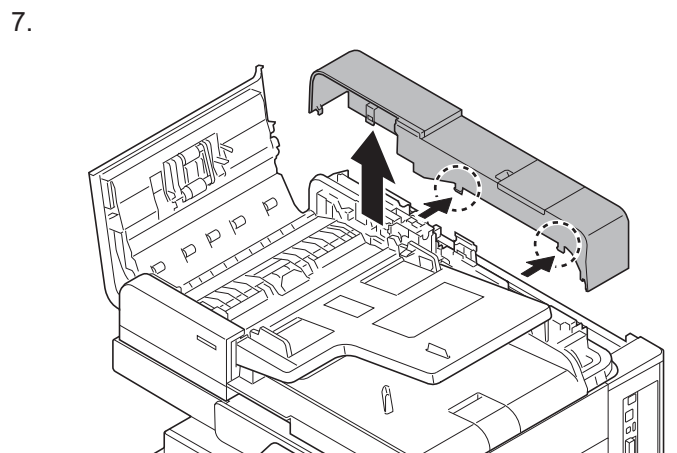
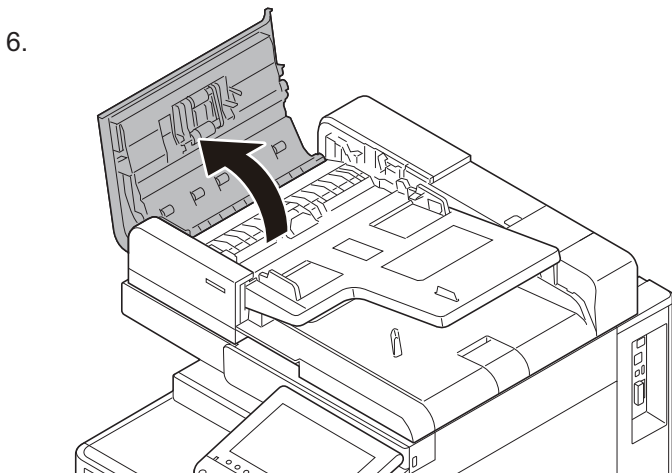
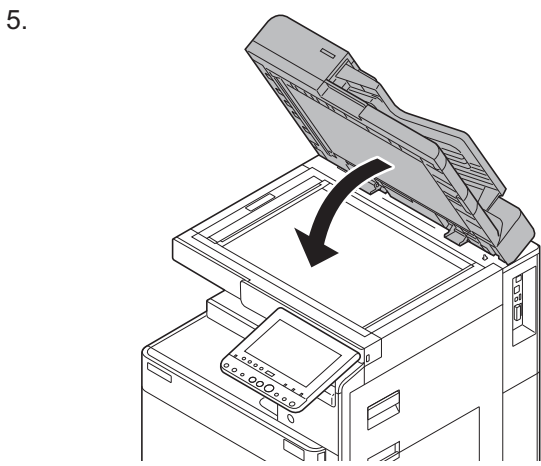
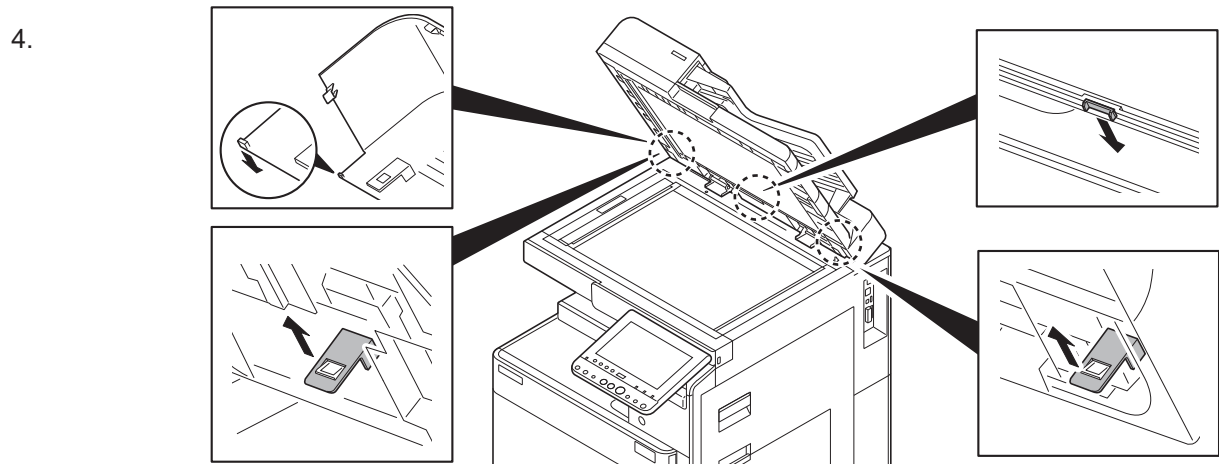
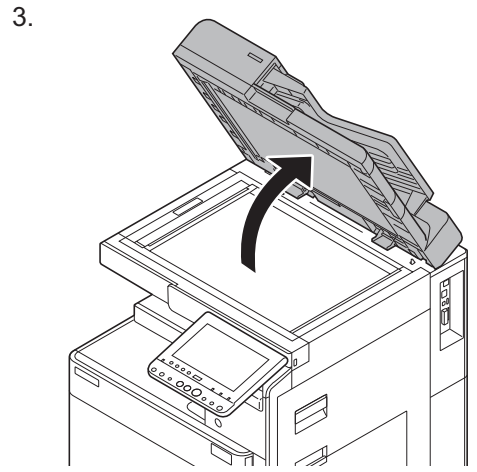
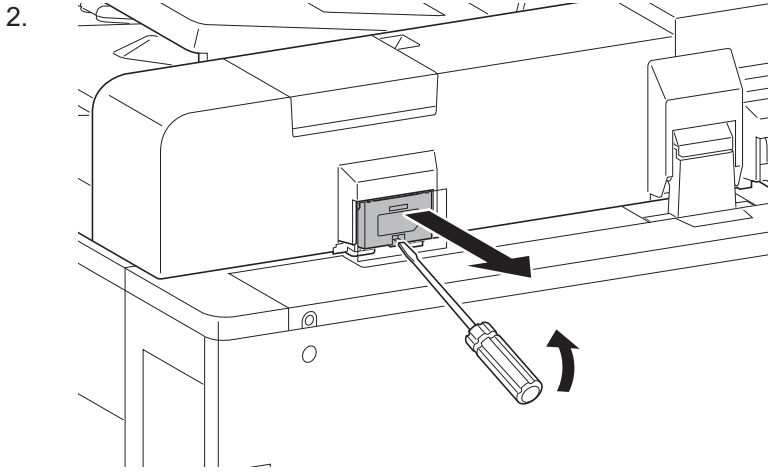
#### [ 후단 경사확인 ]

1. 원고 (a) 의 선 (1) 과 벨크로 선 (2) 의 차이를 확인합니다. 차이가 기준치 외의 경우에는 조정을 합니다.  
 <기준치> 단면의 경우:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내  
 양면의 경우:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

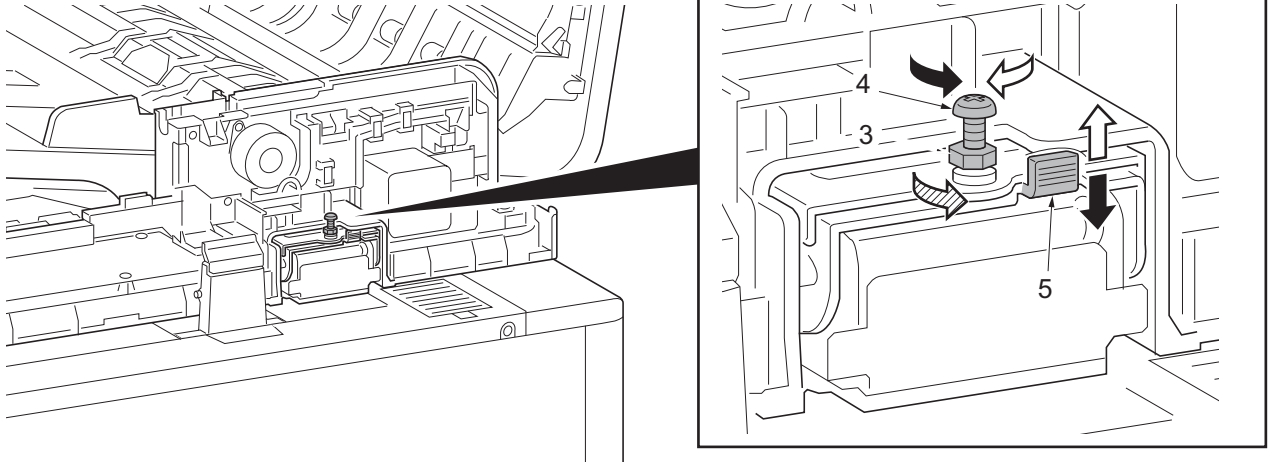
#### [ 後端斜め確認 ]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合は調整をおこなう。  
 <基準値> 片面の場合:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内  
 両面の場合:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

A  
B



8.

**(ENG)**

Adjust the height of DP.

Loosen the nut (3).

For copy example (f): Loosen the adjusting screw (4).

For copy example (g): Tighten the adjusting screw (4).

Amount of change per scale: Approx. 0.5 mm (5)

Retighten the nut (3).

**(IT)**

Regolazione dell'altezza del DP

Allentare il dado (3).

Per un esempio di copia (f): Allentare la vite di regolazione (4).

Per un esempio di copia (g): Stringere la vite di regolazione (4).

Variazione graduale: Circa 0,5 mm (5)

Stringere di nuovo il dado (3).

**(FR)**

Régalez la hauteur du DP.

Desserrez l'écrou (3).

Pour l'exemple de copie (f): Desserrez la vis de réglage (4).

Pour l'exemple de copie (g): Serrez la vis de réglage (4).

Quantité de changement par pas: Environ 0,5 mm (5)

Resserrez l'écrou (3).

**(CN)**

调整DP的高度。

松弛螺母(3)。

复印样张(f)时: 松弛调整螺丝(4)。

复印样张(g)时: 紧固调整螺丝(4)。

每1格的移动量: 约0.5mm(5)

将螺母(3)按原样紧固好。

**(ES)**

Ajuste la altura del DP.

Afloje la tuerca (3).

Para la copia de muestra (f): Afloje el tornillo de ajuste (4).

Para la copia de muestra (g): Apriete el tornillo de ajuste (4).

Cantidad de cambio de escala: Aprox. 0,5 mm (5)

Vuelva a apretar la tuerca (3).

**(KO)**

DP의 높이를 조정합니다.

너트(3)를 느슨하게 합니다.

벨크로(f)의 경우: 조정나사(4)를 느슨하게 합니다.

벨크로(g)의 경우: 조정나사(4)를 조입니다.

1개 변화량: 약0.5mm(5)

너트(3)를 원래대로 조입니다.

**(DE)**

Die Höhe des DP einstellen.

Lösen Sie die Mutter (3).

Für Kopienmuster (f): Lösen Sie die Einstellschraube (4).

Für Kopienmuster (g): Die Einstellschraube (4) festziehen.

Änderungsbetrag pro Skalenstrich: Ca. 0,5 mm (5)

Ziehen Sie die Mutter (3) wieder fest.

**(JP)**

DPの高さを調整する。

ナット(3)をゆるめる。

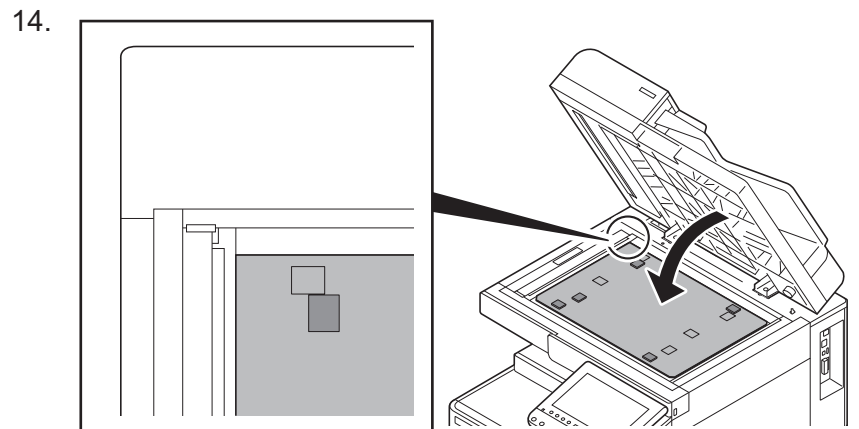
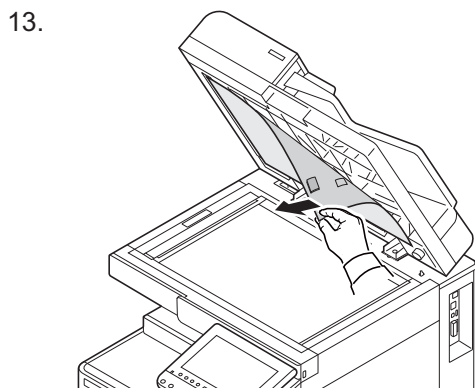
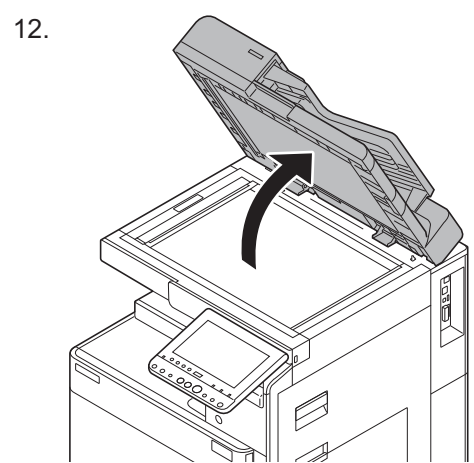
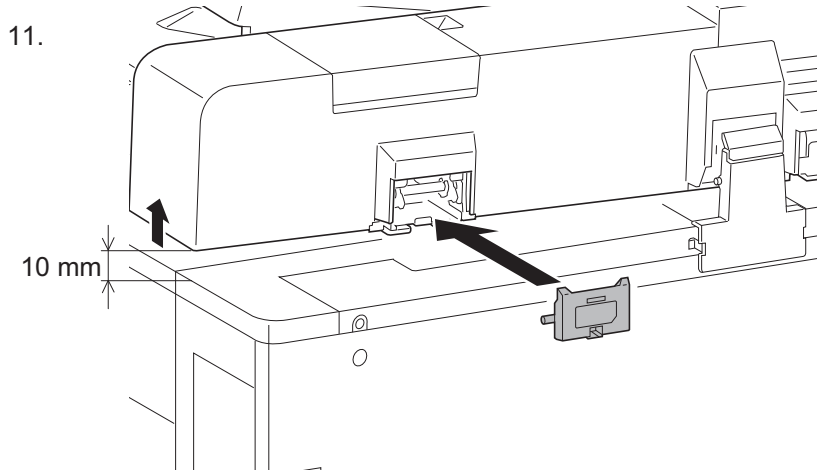
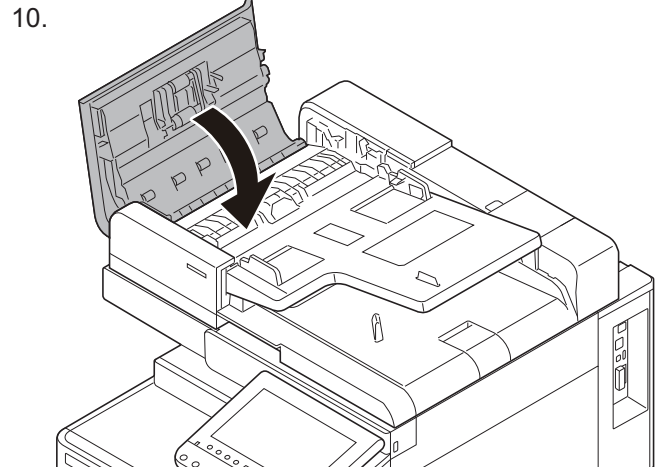
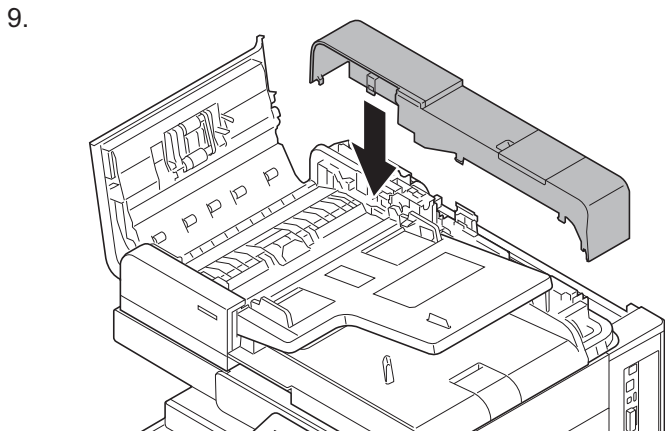
コピーサンプル(f)の場合: 調整ビス(4)をゆるめる。

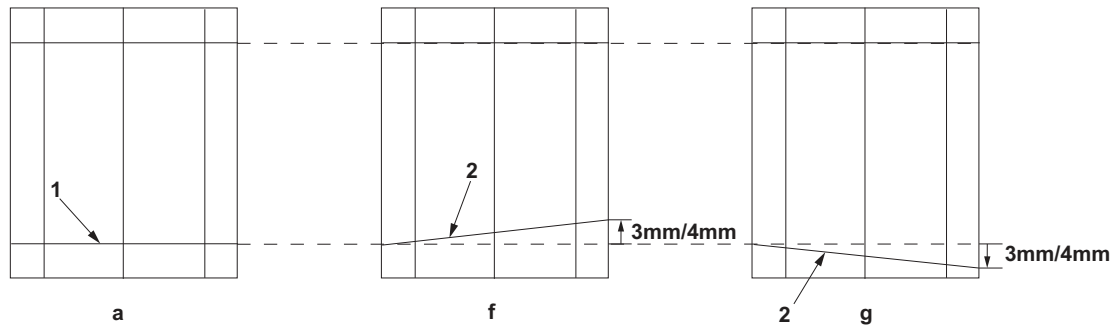
コピーサンプル(g)の場合: 調整ビス(4)を締める。

1目盛り当たりの変化量: 約0.5mm(5)

ナット(3)を元通り締める。

A  
B





15. Make a proof copy again.  
 16. Repeat steps 1 to 15 until line (2) of copy example shows the following the reference values.  
 <Reference value> For simplex copying: Within  $\pm 3.0$  mm  
 For duplex copying: Within  $\pm 4.0$  mm

15. Effectuez à nouveau une copie de test.  
 16. Répétez les étapes 1 à 15 jusqu'à ce que la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie corresponde aux valeurs de référence suivantes.  
 <Valeur de référence> Copie recto seul:  $\pm 3,0$  mm max.  
 Copie recto verso:  $\pm 4,0$  mm max.

15. Haga otra copia de prueba.  
 16. Repita los pasos 1 a 15 hasta que la línea (2) de la copia de muestra tenga los siguientes valores de referencia.  
 <Valor de referencia> Para copia simple: Dentro de  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
 Para copia duplex: Dentro de  $\pm 4,0$  mm

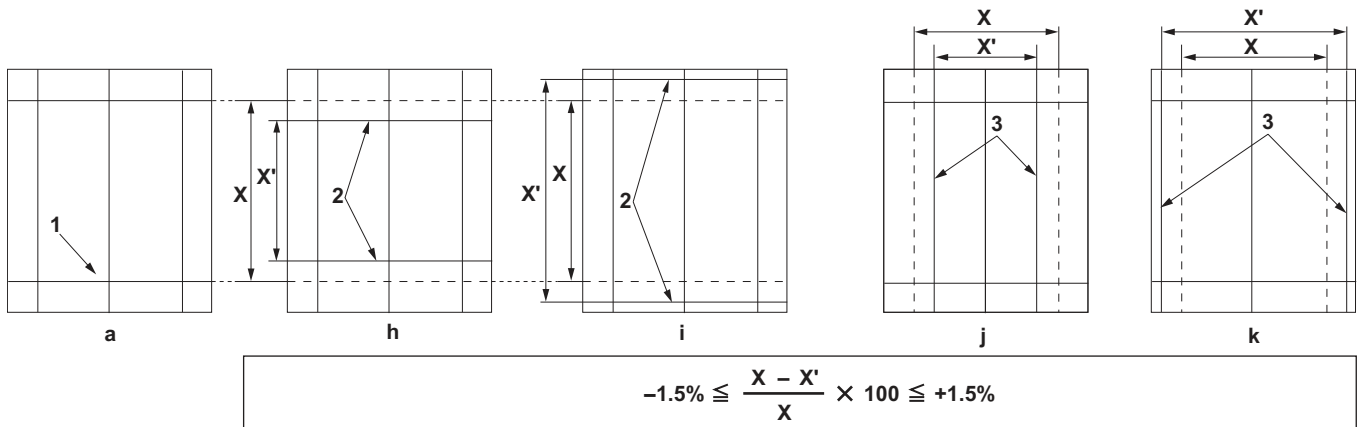
15. Eine erneute Probekopie anfertigen.  
 16. Die Schritte 1 bis 15 wiederholen, bis die Linie (2) des Kopienmusters die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.  
 <Bezugswert> Für Simplexkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
 Für Duplexkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 4,0$  mm

15. Eseguire di nuovo una prova di copia.  
 16. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 15 fino a che la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia non mostra i seguenti valori di riferimento.  
 <Valore di riferimento> Per copia simplex: Entro  $\pm 3,0$  mm  
 Per copia duplex: Entro  $\pm 4,0$  mm

15. 再次进行测试复印。  
 16. 反复操作步骤 1~15, 直至复印样张的线 (2) 为标准值内。  
 <标准值> 单面时:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内  
 双面时:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

15. 다시 벨크로를 합니다.  
 16. 벨크로 선 (2) 이 기준치내로 될 때까지 순서 1 ~ 15 을 반복합니다.  
 <기준치> 단면의 경우:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내  
 양면의 경우:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 이내

15. 再度テストコピーをおこなう。  
 16. コピーサンプルの線 (2) が基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 15 を繰り返す。  
 <基準値> 片面の場合:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内  
 両面の場合:  $\pm 4.0$ mm 以内

**[Checking the magnification]**

1. Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) (3) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

<Reference value>

For the sub-scan direction, vertical gap of line (2): within  $\pm 1.5\%$

For the main-scan direction, horizontal gap of line (3): within  $\pm 1.5\%$

2. Use the maintenance mode U070 to adjust the magnification.

Sub Scan(F): Adjusts the scanner sub-scan magnification (surface)

Sub Scan(B): Adjusts the scanner sub-scan magnification (rear side)

**[Vérification de l'agrandissement]**

1. Vérifier l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) (3) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

<Valeur de référence>

Pour la direction du balayage secondaire, l'écart vertical de la ligne (2) est de  $\pm 1,5\%$

de  $\pm 1,5\%$

Pour la direction du balayage principal, l'écart horizontal de la ligne (3) est de  $\pm 1,5\%$

2. Pour régler l'agrandissement, utilisez le mode entretien U070.

Sub Scan(F): Permet de régler l'agrandissement du balayage secondaire du scanner (surface)

Sub Scan(B): Permet de régler l'agrandissement du balayage secondaire du scanner (arrière)

**[Verificación del cambio de tamaño]**

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) (3) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

<Valor de referencia>

Para la dirección de exploración secundaria, separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de  $\pm 1,5\%$

Para la dirección de exploración principal, separación horizontal de la línea (3): dentro de  $\pm 1,5\%$

2. Para ajustar la ampliación utilice el modo de mantenimiento U070.

Sub Scan(F): ajusta el cambio de tamaño de la dirección de exploración secundaria del escáner (anverso).

Sub Scan(B): ajusta el cambio de tamaño de la dirección de exploración secundaria del escáner (reverso).

**[Überprüfen der Vergrößerung]**

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) (3) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

<Bezugswert>

Subscanrichtung: Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb  $\pm 1,5\%$

Hauptscanrichtung: Horizontaler Abstand der Linie (3): Innerhalb  $\pm 1,5\%$

2. Zum Einstellen der Vergrößerung den Wartungsmodus U070 verwenden.

Sub Scan(F): Zur Einstellung der Subscan-Vergrößerung (Oberfläche)

Sub Scan(B): Zur Einstellung der Subscan-Vergrößerung (Rückseite)

**[Controllo dell'ingrandimento]**

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) (3) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

<Valore di riferimento>

Per l'orientamento della scansione ausiliare, lo scostamento verticale della linea (2) deve essere compreso fra  $\pm 1,5\%$

Per l'orientamento della scansione principale, lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (3) deve essere compreso fra  $\pm 1,5\%$

2. Usare la modalità di manutenzione U070 per regolare l'ingrandimento.

Sub Scan(F): Regola l'ingrandimento della scansione ausiliare dello scanner (superficie)

Sub Scan(B): Regola l'ingrandimento della scansione ausiliare dello scanner (lato posteriore)

**[ 确认等倍値 ]**

1. 确认原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2)、(3) 之间的偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值, 则按照下列步骤进行调整。

<标准值>

对于副扫描方向, 线 (2) 的上下偏移值:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

对于主扫描方向, 线 (3) 的左右偏移值:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

2. 使用维修模式 U070 调整等倍值。

Sub Scan(F): 读取副扫描等倍度的调整 (正面)

Sub Scan(B): 读取副扫描等倍度的调整 (反面)

**[ 등배도확인 ]**

1. 원고 (a) 선 (1) 과 벨크로의 선 (2)(3) 의 차이를 확인합니다 .

차이가 기준이외의 경우, 다음 순서로 조정을 합니다 .

<기준치>

부주사 방향의 경우 선 (2) 의 상하차이:  $\pm 1.5\%$  이내

주주사 방향의 경우 선 (3) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 1.5\%$  이내

2. 메인テナンス 모드 U070 을 세트하고 조정을 합니다 .

Sub Scan(F): 스캔 부주사등배도의 조정 (표면)

Sub Scan(B): 스캔 부주사등배도의 조정 (뒷면)

**[ 等倍度確認 ]**

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) (3) のずれを確認する。

ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

<基準値>

副走査方向の場合、線 (2) の上下ずれ:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

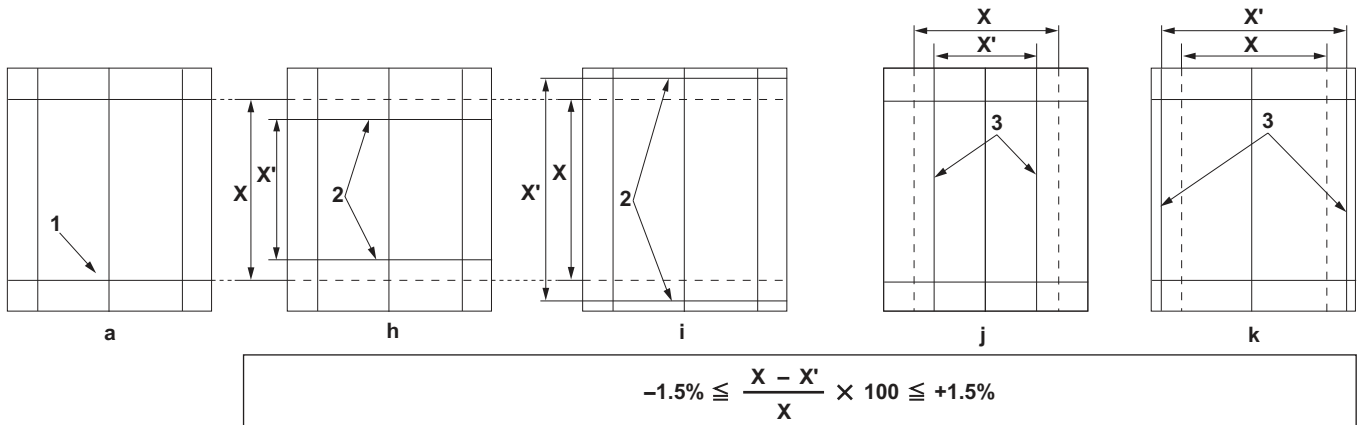
主走査方向の場合、線 (3) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

2. メンテナンスモード U070 をセットし、調整を行う。

Sub Scan(F): 読み取り副走査等倍度の調整 (表面)

Sub Scan(B): 読み取り副走査等倍度の調整 (裏面)





## 3. Adjust the values.

For the shorter length copy example (h)(j): Increases the value.

For the longer length copy example (i)(k): Decreases the value.

Amount of change per step: 0.02 %

## 4. Perform a test copy.

## 5. Repeat the steps 2 to 4 above until the gap of line (2) (3) of copy example shows the reference value.

<Reference value>

For the sub-scan direction, vertical gap of line (2): within ±1.5%

For the main-scan direction, horizontal gap of line (3): within ±1.5%

## 3. Régler les valeurs.

Pour l'exemple de copie dont la longueur est plus courte (h)(j) : augmenter la valeur.

Pour l'exemple de copie dont la longueur est plus longue (i)(k) : diminuer la valeur.

Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,02 %

## 4. Effectuer une copie de test.

## 5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) (3) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.

<Valeur de référence>

Pour la direction du balayage secondaire, l'écart vertical de la ligne (2) est de ±1,5%

Pour la direction du balayage principal, l'écart horizontal de la ligne (3) est de ±1,5%

## 3. Ajuste los valores.

Para el ejemplo de copia más corto (h)(j): aumenta el valor.

Para el ejemplo de copia más largo (i)(k): disminuye el valor.

Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,02 %

## 4. Haga una copia de prueba.

## 5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) (3) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.

<Valor de referencia>

Para la dirección de exploración secundaria, separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de ±1,5%

Para la dirección de exploración principal, separación horizontal de la línea (3): dentro de ±1,5%

## 3. Die Werte einstellen.

Für die kürzere Länge des Kopierbeispiels (h)(j): Den Wert erhöhen.

Für die längere Länge des Kopierbeispiels (i)(k): Den Wert verringern.

Änderung pro Schritt: 0,02 %

## 4. Eine Testkopie erstellen.

## 5. Die Schritte 2 bis 4 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) (3) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.

<Bezugswert>

Subscanrichtung: Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb ±1,5%

Hauptscanrichtung: Horizontaler Abstand der Linie (3): Innerhalb ±1,5%

## 3. Regolare i valori.

Per l'esempio di copia di lunghezza inferiore (h)(j): aumenta il valore.

Per l'esempio di copia di lunghezza superiore (i)(k): riduce il valore.

Entità modifica per passo: 0,02 %

## 4. Eseguire una copia di prova

## 5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 2 a 4 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) (3) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.

<Valore di riferimento>

Per l'orientamento della scansione ausiliare, lo scostamento verticale della linea (2) deve essere compreso fra ±1,5%

Per l'orientamento della scansione principale, lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (3) deve essere compreso fra ±1,5%

## 3. 調整設定値。

在长度偏短时 复印样本 (h) (j) : 调高设定值

在长度偏长时 复印样本 (i) (k) : 调低设定值

设定值的一个调整单位变化量 : 0.02%

## 4. 进行测试复印。

## 5. 重复上述步骤 2 到 4, 直至复印样本上的线 (2)、(3) 之间的偏移值达到标准值范围内。

<标准值>

对于副扫描方向, 线 (2) 的上下偏移值 : ±1.5% 以内

对于主扫描方向, 线 (3) 的左右偏移值 : ±1.5% 以内

## 3. 설정치를 조정합니다.

길이가 짧은 경우 벨크로 (h)(j): 설정치를 높입니다.

길이가 긴 경우 벨크로 (i)(k): 설정치를 내립니다.

1 스텝당 변화량: 0.02%

## 4. 벨크로를 합니다.

## 5. 벨크로 선 (2)(3) 의 차이가 기준치내가 될 때까지 2 ~ 4 를 반복합니다.

<기준치>

부주사 방향의 경우 선 (2) 의 상하차이: ±1.5% 이내

주주사 방향의 경우 선 (3) 의 좌우차이: ±1.5% 이내

## 3. 設定値を調整する。

長さが短い場合コピーサンプル (h) (j) : 設定値を上げる

長さが長い場合コピーサンプル (i) (k) : 設定値を下げる

1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.02%

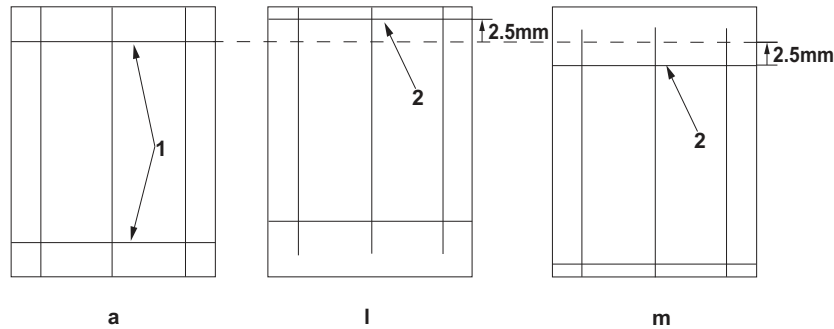
## 4. テストコピーを行う。

## 5. コピーサンプルの線 (2) (3) のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 2 ~ 4 を繰り返す。

<基準値>

副走査方向の場合、線 (2) の上下ずれ: ±1.5% 以内

主走査方向の場合、線 (3) の左右ずれ: ±1.5% 以内

**[Checking the leading edge timing]**

1. Check the gap between line (1) on original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

<Reference value>

Vertical gap of line (2): within  $\pm 2.5$  mm

2. Use the maintenance mode U071 to adjust the timing.

Front Head: Adjusts the leading edge timing (surface)

Front Tail: Adjusts the trailing edge timing (surface)

Back Head: Adjusts the leading edge timing (rear side)

Back Tail: Adjusts the trailing edge timing (rear side)

**[Vérification de la synchronisation du bord avant]**

1. Vérifier l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

<Valeur de référence>

Écart vertical de la ligne (2) :  $\pm 2,5$  mm

2. Pour régler la synchronisation, utilisez le mode entretien U071.

Front Head: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord de tête (surface)

Front Tail: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord arrière (surface)

Back Head: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord de tête (arrière)

Back Tail: Permet de régler la synchronisation du bord arrière (arrière)

**[Cambio de la sincronización de borde superior]**

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

<Valor de referencia>

Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de  $\pm 2,5$  mm

2. Para ajustar la sincronización utilice el modo de mantenimiento U071.

Front Head: Ajusta la sincronización del borde superior (anverso).

Front Tail: Ajusta la sincronización del borde inferior (anverso).

Back Head: Ajusta la sincronización del borde superior (reverso).

Back Tail: Ajusta la sincronización del borde inferior (reverso).

**[Überprüfen des Vorderkanten-Timings]**

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

<Bezugswert>

Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb  $\pm 2,5$  mm

2. Zum Einstellen des Timing den Wartungsmodus U071 verwenden.

Front Head: Zur Einstellung des Vorderkanten-Timing (Oberfläche)

Front Tail: Zur Einstellung des Hinterkanten-Timing (Oberfläche)

Back Head: Zur Einstellung des Vorderkanten-Timing (Rückseite)

Back Tail: Zur Einstellung des Hinterkanten-Timing (Rückseite)

**[Controllo della sincronizzazione del bordo principale]**

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea (1) sull'originale (a) e la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

<Valore di riferimento>

Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra  $\pm 2,5$  mm

2. Usare la modalità di manutenzione U071 per regolare la sincronizzazione.

Front Head: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo principale (superficie)

Front Tail: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo di uscita (superficie)

Back Head: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo principale (lato posteriore)

Back Tail: Regola la sincronizzazione del bordo di uscita (lato posteriore)

**[ 确认前端定时调整 ]**

1. 确认原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2) 之间的偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值, 则按照下列步骤进行调整。

<标准值>

线 (2) 的上下偏移值:  $\pm 2.5$  mm 以内

2. 使用维修模式 U071 调整定时。

Front Head: 调整前端对位 (正面)

Front Tail: 调整后端对位 (正面)

Back Head: 调整前端对位 (反面)

Back Tail: 调整后端对位 (反面)

**[ 선단 타이밍 확인 ]**

1. 원고 (a) 선 (1) 과 벨크로 선 (2) 의 차이를 확인합니다. 차이가 기준치 외의 경우 다음 순서로 조정을 합니다.

<기준치>

선 (2) 의 상하차이:  $\pm 2.5$ mm 이내

2. 메인터너스 모드 U071 을 세트하고 조정을 합니다.

Front Head: 선단 타이밍 (표면) 을 조정합니다.

Front Tail: 후단 타이밍 (표면) 을 조정합니다.

Back Head: 선단 타이밍 (뒷면) 을 조정합니다.

Back Tail: 후단 타이밍 (뒷면) 을 조정합니다.

**[ 先端タイミング確認 ]**

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

<基準値>

線 (2) の上下ずれ:  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内

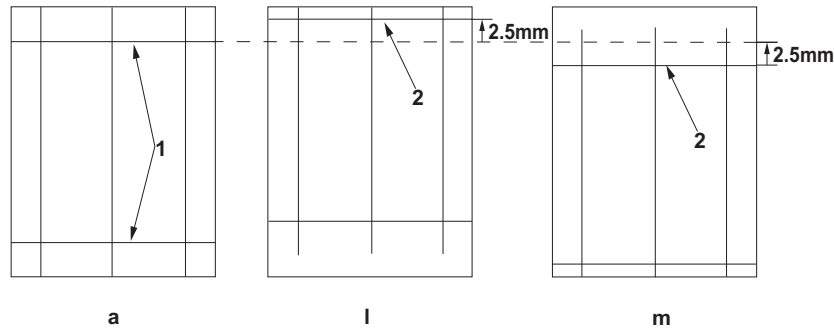
2. メンテナンスモード U071 をセットし、調整を行う。

Front Head: 先端タイミング (表面) を調整する

Front Tail: 後端タイミング (表面) を調整する

Back Head: 先端タイミング (裏面) を調整する

Back Tail: 後端タイミング (裏面) を調整する

**3. Adjust the values.**

For the shorter leading edge timing, copy examples (l): Decreases the value.

For the longer leading edge timing, copy examples (m): Increases the value.

Amount of change per step: 0.23 mm

**4. Perform a test copy.****5. Repeat the steps 2 to 4 above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the reference value.**

<Reference value>

Vertical gap of line (2): within  $\pm 2.5$  mm

**3. Régler les valeurs.**

Pour les exemples de copie dont la synchronisation du bord avant est plus rapide (l) : diminuer la valeur.

Pour les exemples de copie dont la synchronisation du bord avant est plus lente (m) : augmenter la valeur.

Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,23 mm

**4. Effectuer une copie de test.****5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.**

<Valeur de référence>

Écart vertical de la ligne (2) :  $\pm 2,5$  mm

**3. Ajuste los valores.**

Para una sincronización más rápida de extremo guía, ejemplos de copia (l): disminuye el valor.

Para una sincronización más lenta de extremo guía, ejemplos de copia (m): aumenta el valor.

Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,23 mm

**4. Haga una copia de prueba.****5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.**

<Valor de referencia>

Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de  $\pm 2,5$  mm

**3. Die Werte einstellen.**

Für den schnelleren Vorderkantentakt, Kopierbeispiel (l): Den Wert verringern.

Für den langsameren Vorderkantentakt, Kopierbeispiel (m): Den Wert erhöhen.

Änderung pro Schritt: 0,23 mm

**4. Eine Testkopie erstellen.****5. Die Schritte 2 bis 4 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.**

<Bezugswert>

Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb  $\pm 2,5$  mm

**3. Regolare i valori.**

Per accelerare la fasatura del bordo di entrata, esempi di copia (l): riduce il valore.

Per rallentare la fasatura del bordo di entrata, esempi di copia (m): aumenta il valore.

Entità modifica per passo: 0,23 mm

**4. Eseguire una copia di prova****5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 2 a 4 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.**

<Valore di riferimento>

Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra  $\pm 2,5$  mm

**3. 調整設定値。**

在前端定时偏快时 复印样本 (1) : 调低设定值

在前端定时偏慢时 复印样本 (m) : 调高设定值

设定值的一个调整单位变化量 : 0.23mm

**4. 进行测试复印。****5. 重复上述步骤 2 到 4, 直至复印样本上的线 (2) 的偏移值达到标准值范围内。**

<标准值>

线 (2) 的上下偏移值 :  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内

**3. 설정치를 조정합니다.**

선단 타이밍이 빠른 경우 벨크로 (l): 설정치를 내립니다.

선단 타이밍이 늦은 경우 벨크로 (m): 설정치를 올립니다.

1 스텝당 변화량: 0.23mm

**4. 벨크로를 합니다.****5. 벨크로 선 (2) 의 차이가 기준치내가 될 때까지 2 ~ 4 를 반복합니다.**

<기준치>

선 (2) 의 상하차이:  $\pm 2.5$ mm 이내

**3. 設定値を調整する。**

先端タイミングが短い場合コピーサンプル (1): 設定値を下げる。

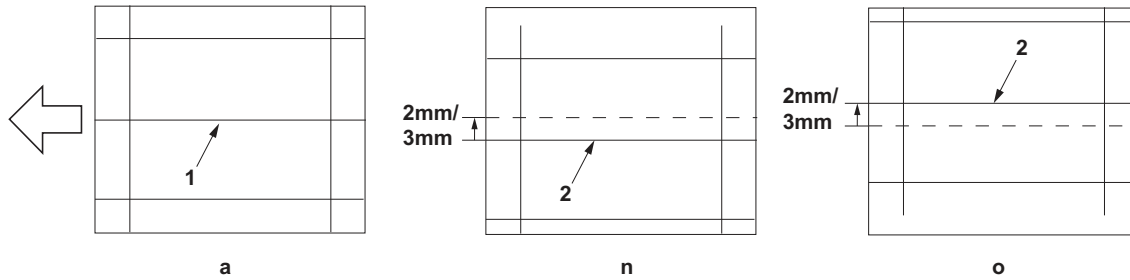
先端タイミングが長い場合コピーサンプル (m): 設定値を上げる。

1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.23mm

**4. テストコピーを行う。****5. コピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 2 ~ 4 を繰り返す。**

<基準値>

線 (2) の上下ずれ:  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内

**[Checking the center line]**

1. Check the gap between center line (1) on original (a) and center line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

<Reference value>

Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the single copying:  $\pm 2.0$  mm

Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the duplex copying:  $\pm 3.0$  mm

2. Use the maintenance mode U072 to adjust the timing.

Front: Adjusts the center line (surface)

Back: Adjusts the center line (rear side)

**[Vérification de la ligne médiane]**

1. Vérifier l'écart entre l'axe (1) de l'original (a) et l'axe (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

<Valeur de référence>

Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto :  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto-verso :  $\pm 3,0$  mm

2. Pour régler la ligne médiane, utiliser le mode entretien U072.

Front: Permet de régler l'axe (surface)

Back: Permet de régler l'axe (arrière)

**[Verificación de la línea central]**

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea de centro (1) del original (a) y la línea de centro (2) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

<Valor de referencia>

Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado por una cara:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado dúplex:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

2. Para ajustar la línea central utilice el modo de mantenimiento U072.

Front: ajusta la línea central (anverso).

Back: ajusta la línea central (reverso).

**[Überprüfen der Mittellinie]**

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Mittellinie (1) des Originals (a) und der Mittellinie (2) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

<Bezugswert>

Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Einzelkopie:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Duplexkopie:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

2. Zum Einstellen der Mittellinie den Wartungsmodus U072 verwenden.

Front: Zur Einstellung der Mittellinie (Oberfläche)

Back: Zur Einstellung der Mittellinie (Rückseite)

**[Controllo della linea centrale]**

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea centrale (1) sull'originale (a) e la linea centrale (2) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

<Valore di riferimento>

Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia singola:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia duplex:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

2. Usare la modalità di manutenzione U072 per regolare la linea centrale.

Front: Regola la linea centrale (superficie)

Back: Regola la linea centrale (lato posteriore)

**[ 确认中心线 ]**

1. 确认原稿 (a) 中心线 (1) 和复印样本中心线 (2) 之间的偏移值。如果偏移值超过标准值, 则按照下列步骤进行调整。

<标准值> 单面复印时, 中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值:  $\pm 2.0$  mm 以内

双面复印时, 中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值:  $\pm 3.0$  mm 以内

2. 使用维修模式 U072 调整中心线。

Front: 中心位置 (正面) 的调整

Back: 中心位置 (反面) 的调整

**[ 센터 라인 확인 ]**

1. 원고 (a) 센터라인 (1) 과 벨크로 센터라인 (2) 의 차이를 확인합니다 . 차이가 기준치 외의 경우 다음 순서로 조정합니다 .

< 기준치 > 단면의 경우 센터라인 (2) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 2.0$  mm 이내

양면의 경우 센터라인 (2) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 3.0$  mm 이내

2. 메인テナンス 모드 U072 을 세트하고 조정을 합니다 .

Front: 센터 위치 (표면) 의 조정

Back: 센터 위치 (뒷면) 의 조정

**[ センターライン確認 ]**

1. 原稿 (a) の中心線 (1) とコピーサンプルの中心線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

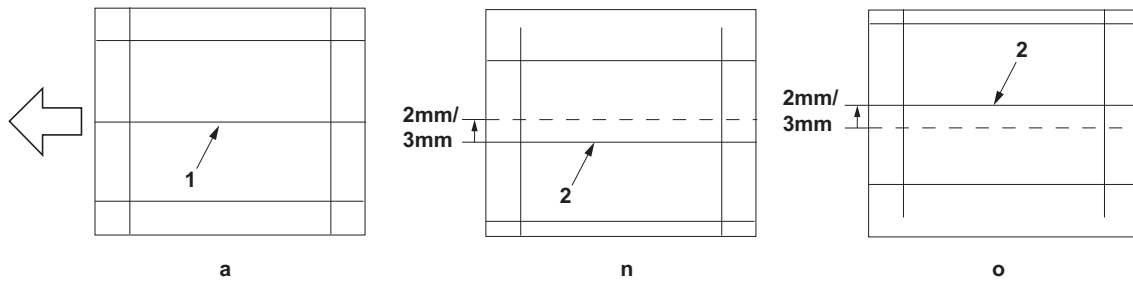
<基準値> 片面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 2.0$  mm 以内

両面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 3.0$  mm 以内

2. メンテナンスモード U072 をセットし、調整を行う。

Front: センター位置 (表面) の調整

Back: センター位置 (裏面) の調整



### 3. Adjust the values.

If the center moves more front, copy example (n): Decreases the value.

If the center moves inner, copy sample (o): Increases the value.

Amount of change per step: 0.085 mm

### 4. Perform a test copy.

### 5. Repeat the steps 2 to 4 above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the reference value.

<Reference value>

Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the single copying:  $\pm 2.0$  mm

Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the duplex copying:  $\pm 3.0$  mm

### 3. Régler les valeurs.

Pour l'exemple de copie (n) dont l'axe se déplace davantage vers l'avant : diminuer la valeur.

Pour l'exemple de copie (o) dont l'axe se déplace vers l'intérieur : augmenter la valeur.

Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,085 mm

### 4. Effectuer une copie de test.

### 5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.

<Valeur de référence>

Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto :  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto-verso :  $\pm 3,0$  mm

### 3. Ajuste los valores.

Si el centro se desplaza más hacia el frente, ejemplo de copia (n): disminuye el valor.

Si el centro se desplaza hacia dentro, ejemplo de copia (o): aumenta el valor.

Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,085 mm

### 4. Haga una copia de prueba.

### 5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.

<Valor de referencia>

Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado por una cara:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado dúplex:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

### 3. Die Werte einstellen.

Wenn die Mitte nach vorne verlagert ist, Kopierbeispiel (n): Den Wert verringern.

Wenn die Mitte nach innen verlagert ist, Kopierbeispiel (o): Den Wert erhöhen.

Änderung pro Schritt: 0,085 mm

### 4. Eine Testkopie erstellen.

### 5. Die Schritte 2 bis 4 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.

<Bezugswert>

Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Einzelkopie:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Duplexkopie:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

### 3. Regolare i valori.

Se il centro si sposta più avanti, esempio di copia (n): riduce il valore.

Se il centro si sposta verso l'interno, esempio di copia (o): aumenta il valore.

Entità modifica per passo: 0,085 mm

### 4. Eseguire una copia di prova

### 5. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 2 a 4 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.

<Valore di riferimento>

Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia singola:  $\pm 2,0$  mm

Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia duplex:  $\pm 3,0$  mm

### 3. 調整設定値。

当中心向前偏移时 复印样本 (n) : 调低设定值

当中心向内偏移时 复印样本 (o) : 调高设定值

设定值的一个调整单位变化量 : 0.085mm

### 4. 进行测试复印。

### 5. 重复上述步骤 2 到 4, 直至复印样本上的线 (2) 的偏移值达到标准值范围内。

<标准值>

单面复印时, 中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值 :  $\pm 2.0$ mm 以内

双面复印时, 中心线 (2) 的左右偏移值 :  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内

### 3. 설정치를 조정합니다.

센터가 바로 앞으로 틀려 있는 경우 샘플 카피 (n): 설정치를 내립니다.

센터가 안으로 틀려 있는 경우 샘플 카피 (o) : 설정치를 높입니다.

1 스텝당 변화량: 0.085mm

### 4. 벨크로를 합니다.

### 5. 벨크로 센터라인 (2) 차이가 기준치 내가 될 때까지 순서 2 ~ 4 를 반복합니다.

<기준치>

단면의 경우 센터라인 (2) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 2.0$ mm 이내

양면의 경우 센터라인 (2) 의 좌우차이:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 이내

### 3. 設定値を調整する。

センターが手前にずれている場合コピーサンプル (n) : 設定値を下げる。

センターが奥にずれている場合コピーサンプル (o) 設定値を上げる。

1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.085mm

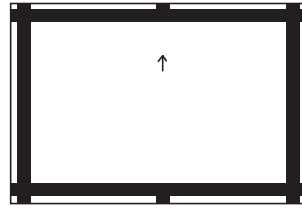
### 4. テストコピーを行う。

### 5. コピーサンプルの中心線 (2) ずれが基準値内になるまで手順 2 ~ 4 を繰り返す。

<基準値>

片面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 2.0$ mm 以内

両面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 3.0$ mm 以内



### [Automatic adjustment using the original for adjustment]

#### If there is no DP auto adjustment original

1. Set the maintenance mode U411 and press [DP Auto Adj] to output the adjustment original.
2. Set the printed original on the contact glass and press the Start key.

3. Set the original on the DP face up and press the Start key to carry out surface adjustment.

4. If "OK" appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment failed. Check the original set position and repeat steps 2 and 3 until "OK" appears. For details, see the service manual.

### [Réglage automatique en utilisant l'original pour effectuer le réglage]

#### Si la machine n'est pas pourvue de la fonction réglage automatique d'original du DP

1. Passez en mode maintenance U411 et appuyez sur [DP Auto Adj] pour imprimer l'original de réglage.
2. Placer l'original qui vient d'être imprimé sur la vitre d'exposition et appuyer sur la touche Start.

3. Placer l'original sur le DP côté imprimé en haut et appuyer sur la touche Start pour procéder au réglage de la surface.

4. Si le message "OK" apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé. Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérifier la position de l'original et recommencer les opérations 2 et 3 jusqu'à ce que le message "OK" apparaisse. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

### [Ajuste automático utilizando el original para el ajuste]

#### Si no existe el original de ajuste automático del DP

1. Configure el modo de mantenimiento U411 y pulse [DP Auto Adj] para imprimir el original de ajuste.
2. Coloque el original impreso sobre el cristal de contacto y pulse la tecla de Start.

3. Coloque el original en el DP cara arriba y pulse la tecla de Start para realizar un ajuste de anverso.

4. Si aparece "OK" en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición ajustada del original y repita los pasos 2 y 3 hasta que aparezca "OK" en la pantalla. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

### [Automatische Einstellung mithilfe des Originals]

#### Falls keine automatische Einstellung des Originals des DP vorhanden ist

1. Aktivieren Sie den Wartungsmodus U411 und wählen Sie [DP Auto Adj], um das Original für die Anpassung auszudrucken.
2. Das ausgedruckte Original auf das Kontaktglas legen und die Start-Taste betätigen.

3. Das Original mit der Druckseite nach oben einlegen und die Start-Taste betätigen, um die Oberflächeneinstellung ausführen zu lassen.

4. Wenn am Display "OK" angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlossen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 2 und 3, bis "OK" angezeigt wird. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

### [Regolazione automatica eseguita con l'originale]

#### Se non è presente l'autoregolazione originale DP

1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U411, quindi premere [DP Auto Adj] per stampare l'originale da utilizzare per la regolazione.
2. Posizionare l'originale stampato sul vetro di appoggio e premere il tasto di Start.

3. Posizionare l'originale sul DP rivolto verso l'alto e premere il tasto di Start per eseguire la regolazione della superficie.

4. Se "OK" appare sul display, la regolazione è completata. Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 2 e 3 fino a quando appare "OK". Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

### [通过调整用原稿进行自动调整]

#### 没有 DP 调整用原稿时

1. 进入维修保养模式 U411, 选择 [DP Auto Adj], 输出测试原稿。
2. 将输出的原稿放在稿台上, 按 Start 键。

3. 将原稿面朝上放在 DP 主机上, 按 Start 键以进行正面的调整。

4. 如果屏幕上出现 "OK" (完成), 则表示调整完成。如果出现 ERROR XX (错误 XX), 则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并重复步骤 2 和 3, 直到 "OK" (完成) 出现。详细内容请参照维修手册。

### [조정용 원고를 이용한 자동조정]

#### DP 조정용 원고가 없는 경우

1. 메인テナンス 모드 U411 을 설정하고 [DP Auto Adj] 를 눌러 조정된 원고를 출력합니다.
2. 출력한 원고를 원고 유리에 장착하고 시작 키를 누릅니다.

3. 원고를 FaceUp 으로 DP 본체로 세트하고 시작 키를 눌러 표면조정을 합니다.

4. 디스플레이에 "OK" 가 표시되면 조정완료가 됩니다. ERROR XX 가 표시된 경우에는 조정실패입니다. 원고 장착위치를 확인하고 "OK" 가 표시될 때까지 순서 2 ~ 3 를 반복합니다. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조

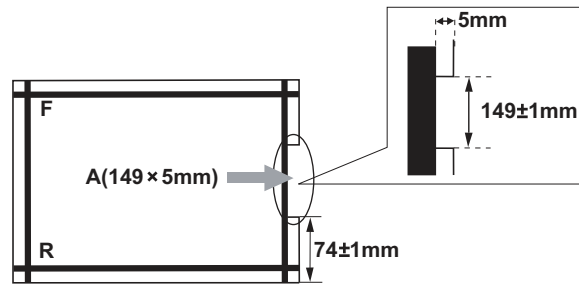
### [調整用原稿による自動調整]

#### DP 調整用原稿が無い場合

1. メンテナンスモード U411 をセットし、[DP Auto Adj] を押し原稿を出力する。
2. 出力した原稿をコンタクトガラス上にセットし、Start キーを押す。

3. 原稿を FaceUp で DP ヘットし、Start キーを押し、表面の調整を行う。

4. ディスプレイに「OK」が表示されれば調整完了となる。ERROR XX が表示された場合は調整失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確認し、「OK」が表示されるまで手順 2 ~ 3 を繰り返す。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。



### Using a DP auto adjustment original

1. Direct F and R of the DP auto adjustment original upward, and set the original from the place where F and R are marked.
2. Set the maintenance mode U411. Press the [DP FU(ChartB)] and the Start key in that order to carry out surface adjustment.

3. If "OK" appears on the display, the adjustment is completed. If ERROR XX appears, the adjustment failed. Check the original set position and repeat steps 1 and 2 until "OK" appears. For details, see the service manual.

### Avec la fonction réglage automatique d'original du DP

1. Diriger F (avant) et R (arrière) de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP vers le haut, puis placer l'original à partir de l'emplacement des repères F et R.
2. Passer au mode maintenance U411. Appuyer sur les touches [DP FU(ChartB)] et Start dans cet ordre pour procéder au réglage de la surface.

3. Si le message "OK" apparaît sur l'affichage, le réglage est terminé. Si le message ERROR XX (erreur XX) s'affiche, le réglage a échoué. Vérifier la position de l'original et recommencer les opérations 1 et 2 jusqu'à ce que le message "OK" apparaisse. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

### Uso del original de ajuste automático del DP

1. Dirija F y R del original de ajuste automático del DP hacia arriba, y coloque el original a partir del sitio en que están marcados F y R.
2. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U411. Pulse las teclas [DP FU(ChartB)] y la tecla de Start, en ese orden, para realizar el ajuste de anverso.

3. Si aparece "OK" en la pantalla significa que el ajuste ha sido realizado. Si aparece ERROR XX, el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la posición ajustada del original y repita los pasos 1 y 2 hasta que aparezca "OK" en la pantalla. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

### Gebrauch der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP

1. F und R der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP nach oben zeigen und das Original an die mit F und R markierte Stelle setzen.
2. Den Wartungsmodus U411 einschalten. [DP FU(ChartB)] und die Start-Taste in dieser Reihenfolge betätigen, um die Oberflächeneinstellung ausführen zu lassen.

3. Wenn am Display "OK" angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung abgeschlossen. Wenn ERROR XX (FEHLER XX) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen. Überprüfen Sie die Originalpositionierung und wiederholen Sie Schritte 1 und 2, bis "OK" angezeigt wird. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

### Uso di un'autoregolazione originale DP

1. Orientare F e R dell'autoregolazione originale DP verso l'alto e disporre l'originale rispetto ai punti in cui sono contrassegnati F e R.
2. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U411. Premere nell'ordine [DP FU(ChartB)] e il tasto di Start, per eseguire la regolazione della superficie.

3. Se "OK" appare sul display, la regolazione è completata. Se compare ERROR XX (ERRORE XX), la regolazione non è riuscita. Verificare la posizione di impostazione dell'originale e ripetere le operazioni 1 e 2 fino a quando appare "OK". Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

### 使用 DP 自动调整原稿时

1. 将 DP 自动调整原稿的 F 和 R 向上, 并把标有 F 和 R 的一侧插入 DP 来设定原稿。
2. 设置维护模式 U411, 按顺序按 [DP FU(ChartB)]、Start 键以进行正面的调整。

3. 如果屏幕上出现 "OK" (完成), 则表示调整完成。如果出现 ERROR XX (错误 XX), 则表示调整失败。检查原稿设定位置并重复步骤 1 和 2, 直到 "OK" (完成) 出现。详细内容请参照维修手册。

### DP 자동조정용 원고를 사용하는 경우

1. DP 자동조정원고 F, R 을 위로 향하게 하고 F, R 이 쓰여져 있는 쪽에서 DP 본체로 세트합니다.
2. 메인テナンス 모드 U411 을 세트하고 [DP FU(ChartB)], 시작 키의 순서로 눌러 표면 조정을 합니다.

3. 디스플레이에 "OK" 가 표시되면 조정완료가 됩니다. ERROR XX 가 표시된 경우에는 조정실패입니다. 원고 장착위치를 확인하고 "OK" 가 표시될 때까지 순서 1 ~ 2 를 반복합니다. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조.

### DP 自動調整原稿を使用する場合

1. DP 自動調整原稿의 F, R 을 상(上)에 향해, F, R 가書かれている方에서 DP 에 세트합니다.
2. 메인テナンス 모드 U411 을 세트하고, [DP FU(ChartB)], Start 키의 순서로 눌러, 표면의 조정을 행합니다.

3. 디스플레이에 "OK" 가 표시되면 조정완료가 됩니다. ERROR XX 가 표시된 경우는 조정실패입니다. 원고의 세트 위치를 확인하고, "OK" 가 표시될 때까지 순서 1 ~ 2 를 반복합니다. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조의 것.

(4) PF-791

# PF-791 / (500 x 2 Paper feeder) Installation Guide



**INSTALLATION GUIDE**

**GUIDE D'INSTALLATION**

**GUÍA DE INSTALACION**

**INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG**

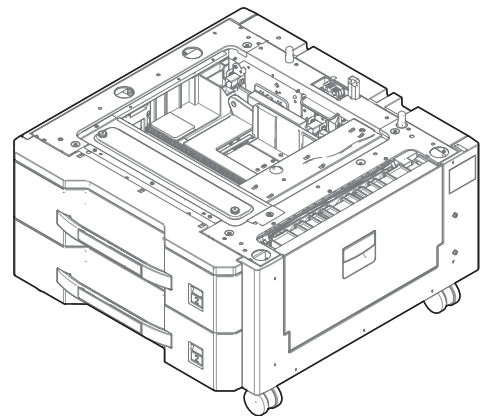
**GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE**

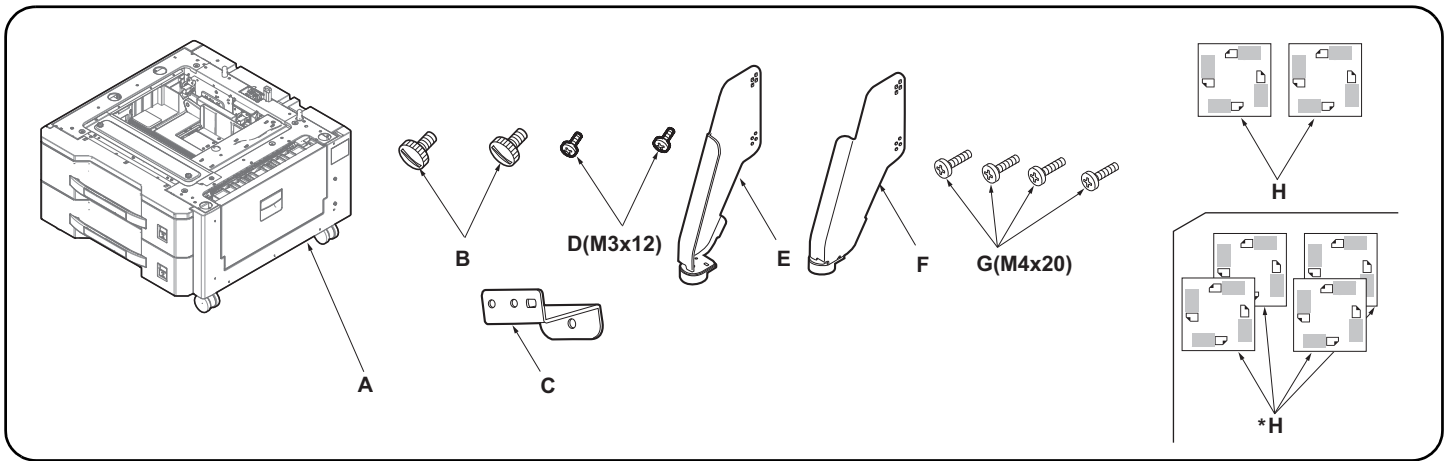
**安装手册**

**설치안내서**

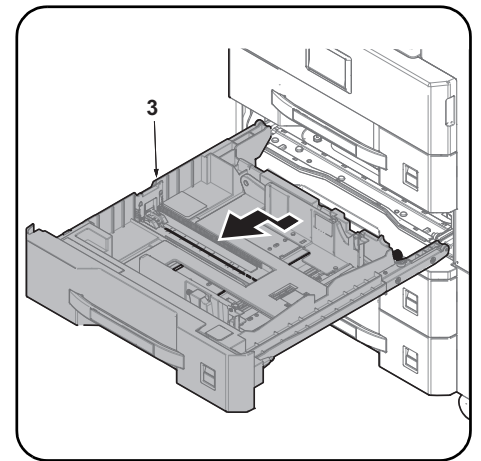
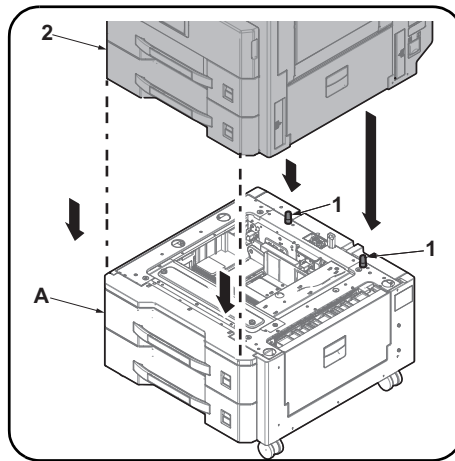
**設置手順書**

**PF-791**





|   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <p><b>English</b></p> <p><b>Supplied parts</b></p> <p>A. Paper feeder ..... 1</p> <p>B. Pin ..... 2</p> <p>C. Retainer ..... 1</p> <p>D. S Tite screw M3 × 12 ..... 2</p>                     | <p>E. Stopper R ..... 1</p> <p>F. Stopper L ..... 1</p> <p>G. S Tite screws M4 × 20 ..... 4</p> <p>H. Paper size plate ..... 2</p>       | <p>Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.</p>                                     |
| <p><b>Français</b></p> <p><b>Pièces fournies</b></p> <p>A. Chargeur de papier ..... 1</p> <p>B. Broche ..... 2</p> <p>C. Élément de retenue ..... 1</p> <p>D. Vis S Tite M3 × 12 ..... 2</p>  | <p>E. Butée R ..... 1</p> <p>F. Butée L ..... 1</p> <p>G. Vis S Tite M4 × 20 ..... 4</p> <p>H. Plaquette du format de papier ..... 2</p> | <p>Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.</p>            |
| <p><b>Español</b></p> <p><b>Partes suministradas</b></p> <p>A. Depósito de papel ..... 1</p> <p>B. Clavija ..... 2</p> <p>C. Retén ..... 1</p> <p>D. Tornillos S Tite M3 × 12 ..... 2</p>     | <p>E. Tope R ..... 1</p> <p>F. Tope L ..... 1</p> <p>G. Tornillo S Tite M4 × 20 ..... 4</p> <p>H. Placa de tamaño de papel ..... 2</p>   | <p>Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.</p>                         |
| <p><b>Deutsch</b></p> <p><b>Enthaltene Teile</b></p> <p>A. Papiereinzug ..... 1</p> <p>B. Stift ..... 2</p> <p>C. Halterung ..... 1</p> <p>D. S-Tite-Schrauben M3 × 12 ..... 2</p>            | <p>E. Anschlag R ..... 1</p> <p>F. Anschlag L ..... 1</p> <p>G. S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 20 ..... 4</p> <p>H. Papierformatkarte ..... 2</p>  | <p>Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.</p> |
| <p><b>Italiano</b></p> <p><b>Parti fornite</b></p> <p>A. Unità di alimentazione della carta ..... 1</p> <p>B. Perno ..... 2</p> <p>C. Fermo ..... 1</p> <p>D. Vite S Tite M3 × 12 ..... 2</p> | <p>E. Fermo R ..... 1</p> <p>F. Fermo L ..... 1</p> <p>G. Vite S Tite M4 × 20 ..... 4</p> <p>H. Piastra formato carta ..... 2</p>        | <p>Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.</p>                                 |
| <p><b>简体中文</b></p> <p><b>附属品</b></p> <p>A. 供纸盒 ..... 1</p> <p>B. 销 ..... 2</p> <p>C. 安装板 ..... 1</p> <p>D. 紧固型 S 螺丝 M3 × 12 ..... 2</p>   | <p>E. 防止倾斜工具 R ..... 1</p> <p>F. 防止倾斜工具 L ..... 1</p> <p>G. 紧固型 S 螺丝 M4 × 20 ..... 4</p> <p>H. 纸张尺寸插片 ..... 4*</p>                       | <p>如果附属品上带有固定胶带, 缓冲材料时务必揭下。</p>  |
| <p><b>한국어</b></p> <p><b>동봉품</b></p> <p>A. 급지대 ..... 1</p> <p>B. 핀 ..... 2</p> <p>C. 리테이너 ..... 1</p> <p>D. 나사 M3×12 S 타이트 ..... 2</p>   | <p>E. 스톱퍼 R ..... 1</p> <p>F. 스톱퍼 L ..... 1</p> <p>G. 나사 M4×20 S 타이트 ..... 4</p> <p>H. 용지 사이즈 플레이트 ..... 2</p>                           | <p>동봉품에 고정 테이프, 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오.</p>  |
| <p><b>日本語</b></p> <p><b>同梱品</b></p> <p>A. ペーパーフィーダー ..... 1</p> <p>B. ピン ..... 2</p> <p>C. 取付板 ..... 1</p> <p>D. ビス M3×12 S タイト ..... 2</p>   | <p>E. 転倒防止金具 R ..... 1</p> <p>F. 転倒防止金具 L ..... 1</p> <p>G. ビス M4×20 S タイト ..... 4</p> <p>H. 用紙サイズプレート ..... 2</p>                       | <p>同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。</p>  |

**Procedure**

Before starting installation, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off, and unplug the power plug from the wall outlet.

1. Place the machine (2) on the paper feeder (A) so that the pins (1) at the rear left and rear right of the paper feeder (A) are aligned with the holes in the base of the machine.

2. Remove the lower paper cassette (3) from the machine.

**Procédure**

Avant de commencer l'installation, s'assurer de mettre la machine hors tension et de débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

1. Montez la machine (2) sur le chargeur de papier (A) de sorte que les broches (1) à l'arrière gauche et à l'arrière droit du chargeur de papier (A) soient alignés avec les trous dans la base de la machine.

2. Retirer le magasin de papier inférieur (3) de la machine.

**Procedimiento**

Antes de iniciar la instalación, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor de encendido de la máquina y desenchufar el cable de alimentación de la toma de pared.

1. Coloque la máquina (2) sobre el depósito de papel (A) de forma que las clavijas (1) en los lados posteriores izquierdo y derecho del depósito de papel (A) estén alineadas con los orificios de la base de la máquina.

2. Quite la bandeja de papel inferior (3) de la máquina.

**Vorgehensweise**

Bevor Sie mit der Installation beginnen überzeugen Sie sich, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet und das Stromkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.

1. Setzen Sie das Gerät (2) so auf den Papiereinzug (A), dass die Stifte (1) hinten links und hinten rechts am Papiereinzug (A) auf die Öffnungen im Boden des Geräts ausgerichtet sind.

2. Entfernen Sie die untere Papierkassette (3) aus dem Gerät.

**Procedura**

Prima di iniziare l'installazione, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.

1. Posizionare la macchina (2) sull'alimentatore carta (A) in modo che i perni (1) sul lato sinistro posteriore e sul lato destro posteriore dell'alimentatore carta (A) siano allineati con i fori presenti sulla base della macchina.

2. Rimuovere il cassetto carta inferiore (3) dalla macchina.

**安装步骤**

安装前务必关闭机器的主电源开关，并从墙壁插座拔下电源插头。

1. 供纸盒 (A) 的左右后面的各插销 (1) 分别对准机器主机底面的孔后，将机器主机 (2) 放在供纸盒 (A) 上。

2. 取出机器的下部纸盒 (3)。

**설치순서**

설치를 시작하기 전에 반드시 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 끄고 벽 콘센트에서 전원 플러그를 분리하십시오.

1. 용지 금지대 (A) 의 후면 좌측과 후면 우측에 있는 핀 (1) 이 본체의 바닥면에 있는 구멍에 맞도록 본체 (2) 를 용지 금지대 (A) 위에 놓습니다.

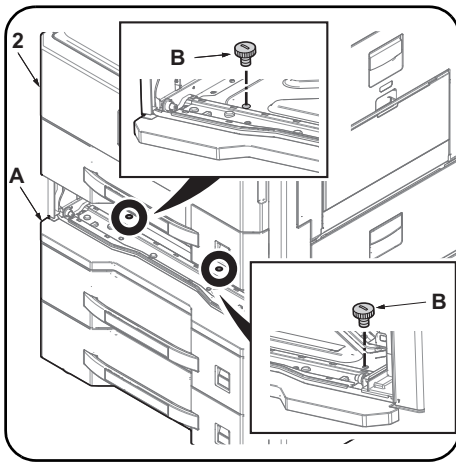
2. 하단 용지 카세트 (3) 를 본체에서 꺼냅니다.

**取付手順**

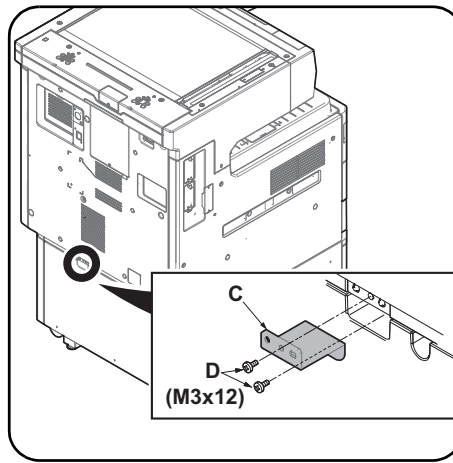
必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチをOFFにし、機械本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

1. ペーパーフィーダー(A)の左右後方の各ピン(1)と機械本体のベースの穴が合うように、ペーパーフィーダー(A)に機械本体(2)を載せる。

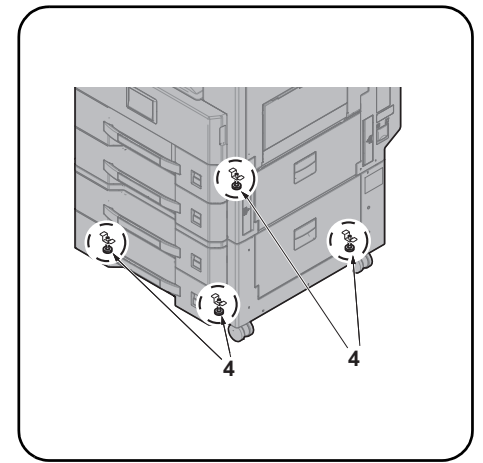
2. 機械本体の下段カセット(3)を引き出す。



3. Secure the machine (2) to the paper feeder (A) with the 2 pins (B).
4. Insert the lower paper cassette (3) into the machine.



5. Install the retainer (C) in the location as shown in the figure using 2 S Tite screws M3 × 12 (D).



6. Turn the adjusters on each corner (4) until they reach the floor and then secure the paper feeder.

3. Fixer la machine (2) au chargeur de papier (A) avec les 2 broches (B).
4. Insérez le magasin de papier inférieur (3) dans la machine.

5. Installer l'élément de retenue (C) à l'endroit indiqué sur la figure avec 2 vis S Tite M3 × 12 (D).

6. Faire tourner les dispositifs de réglage de chacun des coins (4) jusqu'à ce qu'ils touchent le sol et fixer ensuite le chargeur de papier.

3. Fije la máquina (2) al depósito de papel (A) con las dos clavijas (B).
4. Inserte el depósito de papel inferior (3) en la máquina.

5. Instale el retén (C) en el lugar que muestra la ilustración, mediante los 2 tornillos S Tite M3 × 12 (D).

6. Gire los reguladores en cada esquina (4) hasta que lleguen al piso y, a continuación, asegure el depósito de papel.

3. Sichern Sie das Gerät (2) mit den 2 Stiften (B) am Papiereinzug (A).
4. Setzen Sie die untere Papierkassette (3) ins Gerät ein.

5. Die Halterung (C) an der dargestellten Stelle mit den 2 S-Tite-Schrauben M3 × 12 (D) befestigen.

6. Die Einsteller an jeder Ecke (4) drehen, bis sie den Boden berühren, und dann den Papiereinzug sichern.

3. Fissare la macchina (2) sull'alimentatore carta (A) con i 2 perni (B).
4. Inserire il cassetto carta inferiore (3) nella macchina.

5. Installare il fermo (C) nella posizione mostrata in figura, utilizzando le 2 viti S Tite M3 × 12 (D).

6. Ruotare i regolatori (4) presenti su ciascun angolo finché vengano a contatto con il pavimento, e quindi fissare l'unità di alimentazione della carta.

3. 用 2 个固定插销 (B) 将机器主机 (2) 固定在供纸盒 (A) 上。
4. 把下部纸盒 (3) 插到机器主机中。

5. 使用 2 颗紧固型 S 螺丝 M3 × 12 (D) 将安装板 (C) 安装在图示位置。

6. 转动四角上的调节器 (4) 直至与地面接触, 然后再固定供纸盒。

3. 핀 (B) 2 개로 본체 (2) 를 급지대 (A) 에 고정합니다.
4. 하단 용지 카세트 (3) 를 본체에 장착합니다.

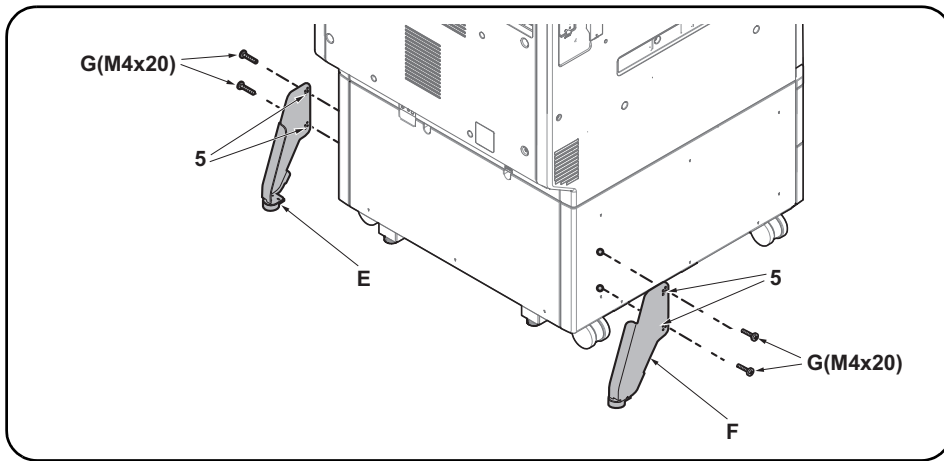
5. 나사 M3 × 12 S 타이트 (D) 2 개를 사용하여 리테이너 (C) 를 그림에 표시된 위치에 설치합니다.

6. 각 모서리에 위치하는 어저스터 (4) 를 맨 안쪽에 닿을 때까지 돌려 급지대를 고정합니다.

3. 핀 (B) 2 本で機械本体 (2) をペーパーフィーダー (A) に固定する。
4. 下段カセット (3) を機械本体に挿入する。

5. イラストの位置に取付板 (C) をビス M3 × 12 S タイト (D) 2 本で取り付ける。

6. 四隅のアジャスター (4) を床に接触する位置まで回し、ペーパーフィーダーを固定する。



7. Select holes (5) and install each stopper (E,F) with 2 S Tite screws M4 × 20 (G) so that the stoppers will be grounded on the floor.

7. Sélectionner les trous (5) et installer chaque butée (E,F) avec 2 vis S Tite M4 × 20 (G) de sorte que les butées reposent sur le sol.

7. Seleccione los orificios (5) e instale cada tope (E,F) con los 2 tornillos S Tite M4 × 20 (G) de manera que los topes se conecten a tierra en el suelo.

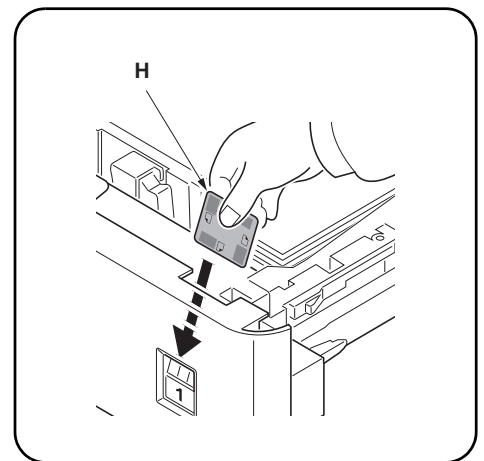
7. Wählen Sie die Öffnungen (5) und befestigen Sie jeden Anschlag (E,F) mit den 2 S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 20 (G) so an, dass die Anschläge am Boden aufsitzen.

7. Selezionare i fori (5) ed installare ogni fermo (E,F) con le 2 viti S Tite M4 × 20 (G) in modo che i fermi siano posti a terra sul pavimento.

7. 在孔 (5) 处各用 2 颗 M4×20 紧固型 S 螺丝 (G) 安装防止倾斜工具 (E,F), 使之和地板接触。

7. 구멍 (5) 을 선택해 스톱퍼 (E,F) 가 바닥면에 닿도록 나사 M4×20 S 타이트 (G) 2 개를 사용하여 설치합니다 .

7. 転倒防止金具 (E,F) が床面に接地するように、穴(5)を選択してビス M4×20 S タイト (G) 各 2 本で取り付け。



#### Setting paper size plate

Insert the paper size plate (H) into the size display slot.

#### Réglage de la plaquette du format de papier

Insérez la plaquette de format de papier (H) dans le logement d'affichage du format.

#### Ajuste de la placa de tamaño de papel

Inserte la placa de tamaño de papel (H) en la ranura de visualización de tamaño.

#### Einsetzen der Papierformatkarte

Setzen Sie die Papierformatkarte (H) in den Schlitz der Formatanzeige ein.

#### Inserimento della piastra formato carta

Inserire la piastra di formato carta (H) nello slot di indicazione formato.

#### 设定纸张尺寸插片

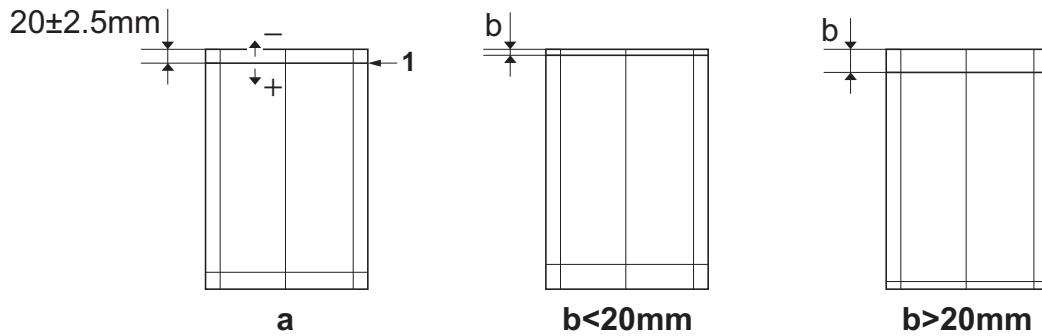
将纸张尺寸插片 (H) 插入到尺寸表示插槽内。

#### 용지 사이즈 플레이트 장착하기

용지 크기 플레이트 (H) 를 해당 사이즈 디스플레이 슬롯에 삽입합니다 .

#### 用紙サイズプレートのセット

用紙サイズプレート (H) を、サイズ表示スロットに挿入する。



### Adjusting the leading edge timing

The reference value for the leading edge timing is  $20 \pm 2.5$  mm at position (1) in the sample image (a). If the timing is outside this range, perform the following adjustment.

1. Set maintenance mode U034, select [LSU Out Top Full] and [Cassette] or [Cassette3]/[Cassette4].
2. Adjust the values.  
b < 20mm : Increase the setting value. b > 20mm : Decrease the setting value.
3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.

### Réglage de la synchronisation du bord de tête

La valeur de référence pour la synchronisation du bord de tête est de  $20 \pm 2,5$  mm à la position (1) sur l'image d'exemple (a). Si la synchronisation est hors de cette plage, procéder au réglage suivant.

1. Passer en mode maintenance U034, sélectionner [LSU Out Top Full] et [Cassette] ou [Cassette3]/[Cassette4].
2. Régler les valeurs.  
b < 20mm : Augmentez la valeur de réglage. b > 20mm : Diminuez la valeur de réglage.
3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.

### Cómo ajustar la sincronización del borde superior

El valor de referencia para la sincronización del borde anterior es  $20 \pm 2,5$  mm en la posición (1) en la imagen de muestra (a). Si la sincronización estuviera fuera de este rango, haga el siguiente ajuste.

1. Entre al modo de mantenimiento U034, seleccione [LSU Out Top Full] y [Cassette] o [Cassette3]/[Cassette4].
2. Ajuste los valores.  
b < 20mm : Aumente el valor de configuración. b > 20mm : Reduzca el valor de configuración.
3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.

### Einstellen des Vorderkanten-Timing

Der Bezugswert des Vorderkantenabstands beträgt  $20 \pm 2,5$  mm an Position (1) des Beispieldokuments (a). Falls das Timing außerhalb dieses Bereichs liegt, ist folgende Einstellung vorzunehmen.

1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U034, wählen Sie [LSU Out Top Full] und [Cassette] oder [Cassette3]/[Cassette4].
2. Die Werte einstellen.  
b < 20mm : Den Einstellwert erhöhen. b > 20mm : Den Einstellwert verringern.
3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.

### Regolazione della sincronizzazione del bordo principale

Il valore di riferimento per la sincronizzazione del bordo superiore è pari a  $20 \pm 2,5$  mm sulla posizione (1) nell'immagine di esempio (a). Se la sincronizzazione è all'infuori di questa gamma, effettuare la regolazione seguente.

1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U034, selezionare [LSU Out Top Full] e [Cassette] o [Cassette3]/[Cassette4].
2. Regolare i valori.  
b < 20mm : Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione. b > 20mm : Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.
3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.

### 前端対位調整

前端対位の基準値は画像様張 (a) の (1) 位置が  $20 \pm 2.5$  mm。超出該範圍時，須進行以下調整。

1. 設置維護模式 U034，選擇 [LSU Out Top Full]、[Cassette] 或 [Cassette3]/[Cassette4]。
2. 調整設定值。  
b < 20mm : 調高設定值。b > 20mm : 調低設定值。
3. 按 Start 鍵，以確定設定值。

### 선단 타이밍 조정

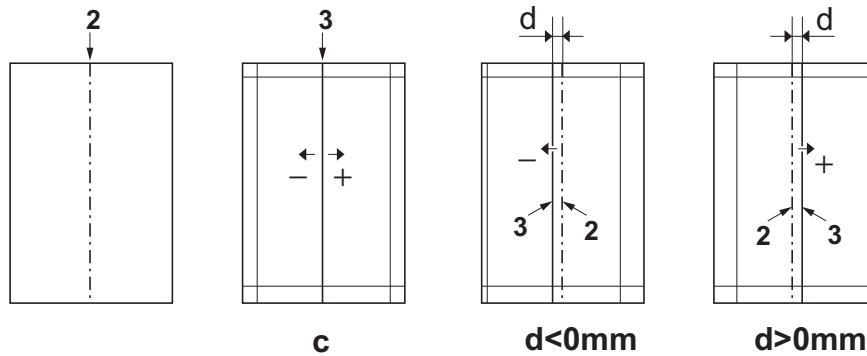
선단 타이밍은 샘플화상 (a) 의 (1) 위치에서 기준치는  $20 \pm 2.5$  mm. 여기에서 벗어나는 것은 이하의 조정을 합니다.

1. 메인터넌스 모드 U034 를 세트하고 [LSU Out Top Full], [Cassette] 또는 [Cassette3]/[Cassette4] 를 선택합니다.
2. 설정치를 조정합니다.  
b < 20mm : 설정치를 높입니다. b > 20mm : 설정치를 내립니다.
3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다.

### 先端タイミング調整

先端タイミングは、サンプルイメージ (a) の (1) の位置で基準値は  $20 \pm 2.5$  mm。これから外れるときは以下の調整をおこなう。

1. メンテナンスモード U034 をセットし、[LSU Out Top Full]、[Cassette] または [Cassette3]/[Cassette4] を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。  
b < 20mm : 設定値を上げる。b > 20mm : 設定値を下げる。
3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。



### Adjusting the center line

The reference value for the center line(2) is  $\pm 2.0$  mm or less at position (3) in the sample image (c). If the center line position is outside this range, perform the following adjustment.

1. Set maintenance mode U034, select [LSU Out Left] and [Cassette3] or [Cassette4].
2. Adjust the values.  
 $d < 0$ mm : Increase the setting value.  $d > 0$ mm : Decrease the setting value.
3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.

### Réglage de l'axe

La valeur de référence pour l'axe (2) est de  $\pm 2,0$  mm ou moins à la position (3) sur l'image d'exemple (c). Si la position de l'axe est hors de cette plage, effectuez le réglage suivant.

1. Passer en mode maintenance U034, sélectionner [LSU Out Left] et [Cassette3] ou [Cassette4].
2. Régler les valeurs.  
 $d < 0$ mm : Augmentez la valeur de réglage.  $d > 0$ mm : Diminuez la valeur de réglage.
3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.

### Ajuste de la línea central

El valor de referencia para la línea central (2) es  $\pm 2,0$  mm o menos en la posición (3) en la imagen de muestra (c). Si la posición de la línea central estuviera fuera de este rango, haga el siguiente ajuste.

1. Entre al modo de mantenimiento U034, seleccione [LSU Out Left] y [Cassette3] o [Cassette4].
2. Ajuste los valores.  
 $d < 0$ mm : Aumente el valor de configuración.  $d > 0$ mm : Reduzca el valor de configuración.
3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.

### Einstellen der Mittellinie

Der Bezugswert der Mittellinie (2) beträgt  $\pm 2,0$  mm oder weniger an Position (3) des Beispieldokuments (c). Falls die Mittellinie außerhalb dieses Bereichs liegt, ist folgende Einstellung vorzunehmen.

1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U034, wählen Sie [LSU Out Left] und [Cassette3] oder [Cassette4].
2. Die Werte einstellen.  
 $d < 0$ mm : Den Einstellwert erhöhen.  $d > 0$ mm : Den Einstellwert verringern.
3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.

### Regolazione della linea centrale

Il valore di riferimento per la linea centrale (2) è pari a  $\pm 2,0$  mm o inferiore sulla posizione (3) nell'immagine di esempio (c). Se la posizione della linea centrale è all'infuori di questa gamma, effettuare la regolazione seguente.

1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U034, selezionare [LSU Out Left] e [Cassette3] o [Cassette4].
2. Regolare i valori.  
 $d < 0$ mm : Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione.  $d > 0$ mm : Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.
3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.

### 中心线调节

中心线的基准值在图像样张(c)的(3),基准值是纸张中线位置(2)两端 $\pm 2.0$ mm以内。超出该范围时,须进行以下调节。

1. 设置维护模式U034,选择[LSU Out Left]、[Cassette3]或[Cassette4]。
2. 调整设定值。  
 $d < 0$ mm : 调高设定值。  $d > 0$ mm : 调低设定值。
3. 按Start键,以确定设定值。

### 센터라인 조정

센터라인(2)은 샘플화상(c)의(3)위치에서 기준치는  $\pm 2.0$ mm 이내. 여기에서 벗어나는 것은 이하의 조정을 합니다.

1. 메인터넌스 모드 U034 를 세트하고 [LSU Out Left], [Cassette3] 또는 [Cassette4] 를 선택합니다.
2. 설정치를 조정합니다.  
 $d < 0$ mm: 설정치를 높입니다.  $d > 0$ mm : 설정치를 내립니다.
3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다.

### センターライン調整

センターラインは、サンプルイメージ(c)の(3)の位置で、基準値は紙のセンター(2)から $\pm 2.0$ mm以内。これから外れるときは以下の調整をおこなう。

1. メンテナンスモードU034 をセットし、[LSU Out Left]、[Cassette3] または [Cassette4] を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。  
 $d < 0$ mm : 設定値を上げる。  $d > 0$ mm : 設定値を下げる。
3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。

(5) PF-810

# PF-810 / (3000-sheet deck) Installation Guide



**INSTALLATION GUIDE**

**GUIDE D'INSTALLATION**

**GUÍA DE INSTALACION**

**INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG**

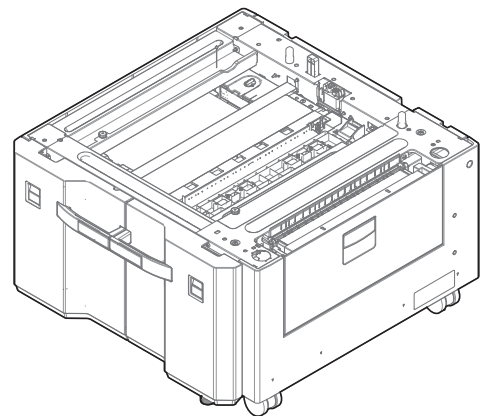
**GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE**

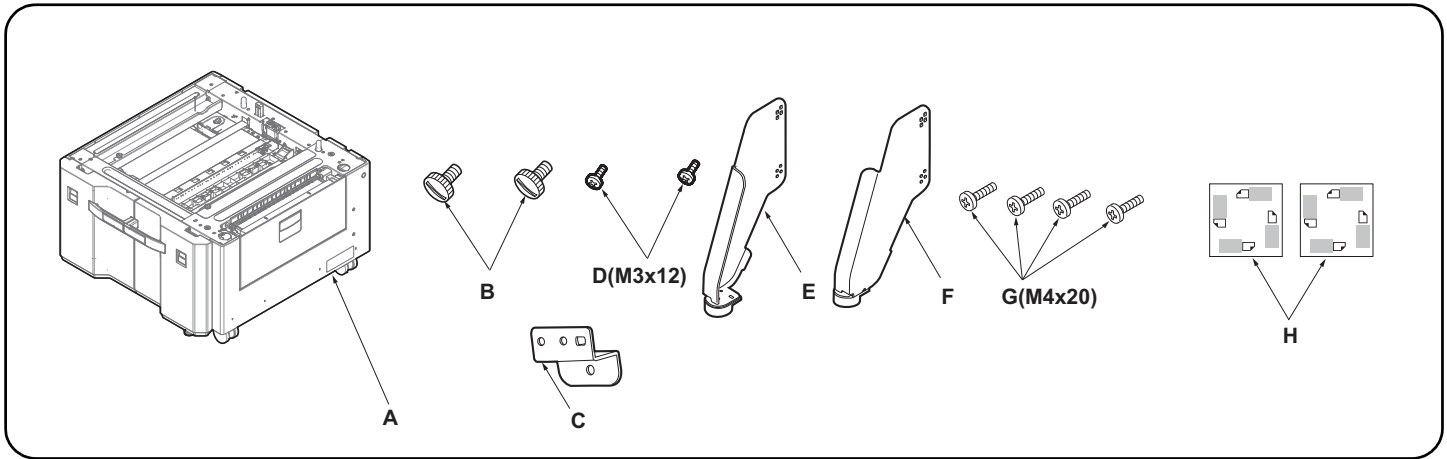
**安装手册**

**설치안내서**

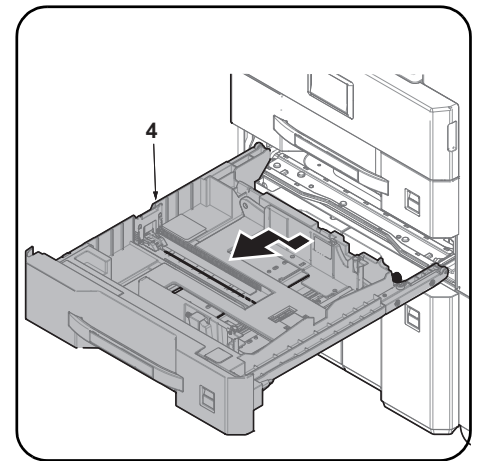
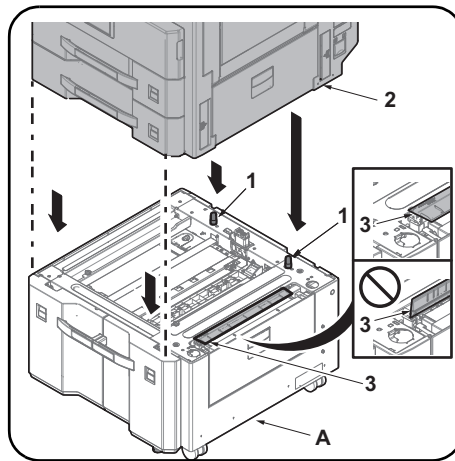
**設置手順書**

**PF-810**





|   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <p><b>English</b></p> <p><b>Supplied parts</b></p> <p>A. Paper feeder ..... 1</p> <p>B. Pin ..... 2</p> <p>C. Retainer ..... 1</p> <p>D. S Tite screw M3 × 12 ..... 2</p>                     | <p>E. Stopper R ..... 1</p> <p>F. Stopper L ..... 1</p> <p>G. S Tite screws M4 × 20 ..... 4</p> <p>H. Paper size plate ..... 2</p>       | <p>Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.</p>                                     |
| <p><b>Français</b></p> <p><b>Pièces fournies</b></p> <p>A. Chargeur de papier ..... 1</p> <p>B. Broche ..... 2</p> <p>C. Élément de retenue ..... 1</p> <p>D. Vis S Tite M3 × 12 ..... 2</p>  | <p>E. Butée R ..... 1</p> <p>F. Butée L ..... 1</p> <p>G. Vis S Tite M4 × 20 ..... 4</p> <p>H. Plaquette du format de papier ..... 2</p> | <p>Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.</p>            |
| <p><b>Español</b></p> <p><b>Partes suministradas</b></p> <p>A. Depósito de papel ..... 1</p> <p>B. Clavija ..... 2</p> <p>C. Retén ..... 1</p> <p>D. Tornillos S Tite M3 × 12 ..... 2</p>     | <p>E. Tope R ..... 1</p> <p>F. Tope L ..... 1</p> <p>G. Tornillo S Tite M4 × 20 ..... 4</p> <p>H. Placa de tamaño de papel ..... 2</p>   | <p>Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.</p>                         |
| <p><b>Deutsch</b></p> <p><b>Enthaltene Teile</b></p> <p>A. Papiereinzug ..... 1</p> <p>B. Stift ..... 2</p> <p>C. Halterung ..... 1</p> <p>D. S-Tite-Schrauben M3 × 12 ..... 2</p>            | <p>E. Anschlag R ..... 1</p> <p>F. Anschlag L ..... 1</p> <p>G. S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 20 ..... 4</p> <p>H. Papierformatkarte ..... 2</p>  | <p>Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.</p> |
| <p><b>Italiano</b></p> <p><b>Parti fornite</b></p> <p>A. Unità di alimentazione della carta ..... 1</p> <p>B. Perno ..... 2</p> <p>C. Fermo ..... 1</p> <p>D. Vite S Tite M3 × 12 ..... 2</p> | <p>E. Fermo R ..... 1</p> <p>F. Fermo L ..... 1</p> <p>G. Vite S Tite M4 × 20 ..... 4</p> <p>H. Piastra formato carta ..... 2</p>        | <p>Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.</p>                                 |
| <p><b>简体中文</b></p> <p><b>附属品</b></p> <p>A. 供纸盒 ..... 1</p> <p>B. 销 ..... 2</p> <p>C. 安装板 ..... 1</p> <p>D. 紧固型 S 螺丝 M3 × 12 ..... 2</p>   | <p>E. 防止倾斜工具 R ..... 1</p> <p>F. 防止倾斜工具 L ..... 1</p> <p>G. 紧固型 S 螺丝 M4 × 20 ..... 4</p> <p>H. 纸张尺寸插片 ..... 2</p>                        | <p>如果附属品上带有固定胶带, 缓冲材料时务必揭下。</p>  |
| <p><b>한국어</b></p> <p><b>동봉품</b></p> <p>A. 급지대 ..... 1</p> <p>B. 핀 ..... 2</p> <p>C. 리테이너 ..... 1</p> <p>D. 나사 M3×12 S 타이트 ..... 2</p>   | <p>E. 스톱퍼 R ..... 1</p> <p>F. 스톱퍼 L ..... 1</p> <p>G. 나사 M4×20 S 타이트 ..... 4</p> <p>H. 용지 사이즈 플레이트 ..... 2</p>                           | <p>동봉품에 고정 테이프, 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오.</p>  |
| <p><b>日本語</b></p> <p><b>同梱品</b></p> <p>A. ペーパーフィーダー ..... 1</p> <p>B. ピン ..... 2</p> <p>C. 取付板 ..... 1</p> <p>D. ビス M3×12 S タイト ..... 2</p>   | <p>E. 転倒防止金具 R ..... 1</p> <p>F. 転倒防止金具 L ..... 1</p> <p>G. ビス M4×20 S タイト ..... 4</p> <p>H. 用紙サイズプレート ..... 2</p>                       | <p>同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。</p>  |

**Procedure**

Before starting installation, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off, and unplug the power plug from the wall outlet.

- Place the machine (2) on the paper feeder (A) so that the pins (1) at the rear left and rear right of the paper feeder (A) are aligned with the holes in the base of the machine.  
\*Before placing the machine (2), be sure to check that the guide (3) of paper feeder (A) is in the horizontal position.

- Remove the lower paper cassette (4) from the machine.

**Procédure**

Avant de commencer l'installation, s'assurer de mettre la machine hors tension et de débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

- Montez la machine (2) sur le chargeur de papier (A) de sorte que les broches (1) à l'arrière gauche et à l'arrière droit du chargeur de papier (A) soient alignés avec les trous dans la base du machine.  
\*Avant de placer la machine (2), assurez-vous de vérifier que le guide (3) du chargeur de papier (A) est en position horizontale.

- Retirer le magasin de papier inférieur (4) de la machine.

**Procedimiento**

Antes de iniciar la instalación, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor de encendido de la máquina y desenchufar el cable de alimentación de la toma de pared.

- Coloque la máquina (2) sobre el depósito de papel (A) de forma que las clavijas (1) en los lados posteriores izquierdo y derecho del depósito de papel (A) estén alineadas con los orificios de la base de la máquina.  
\*Antes de colocar la máquina (2), asegúrese de comprobar que la guía (3) del depósito de papel (A) está en posición horizontal.

- Quite la bandeja de papel inferior (4) de la máquina.

**Vorgehensweise**

Bevor Sie mit der Installation beginnen überzeugen Sie sich, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet und das Stromkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.

- Setzen Sie das Gerät (2) so auf den Papiereinzug (A), dass die Stifte (1) hinten links und hinten rechts am Papiereinzug (A) auf die Öffnungen im Boden des Geräts ausgerichtet sind.  
\*Bevor Sie das Gerät (2) absetzen, überprüfen Sie, ob die Führung (3) des Papiereinzugs (A) sich in horizontaler Position befindet.

- Entfernen Sie die untere Papierkassette (4) aus dem Gerät.

**Procedura**

Prima di iniziare l'installazione, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.

- Posizionare la macchina (2) sull'alimentatore carta (A) in modo che i perni (1) sul lato sinistro posteriore e sul lato destro posteriore dell'alimentatore carta (A) siano allineati con i fori presenti sulla base della macchina.  
\*Prima di installare la macchina (2), assicurarsi che la guida (3) dell'alimentatore carta (A) sia in posizione orizzontale.

- Rimuovere il cassetto carta inferiore (4) dalla macchina.

**安装步骤**

安装前务必关闭机器的主电源开关,并从墙壁插座拔下电源插头。

- 供纸盒 (A) 的左右后面的各插销 (1) 分别对准机器主机底面的孔后,将机器主机 (2) 放在供纸盒 (A) 上。  
\*在放下供纸盒 (A) 的导板 (3) 的状态下,将机器主机 (2) 放在供纸盒上。

- 取出机器的下部纸盒 (4)。

**설치순서**

설치를 시작하기 전에 반드시 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 끄고 벽 콘센트에서 전원 플러그를 분리하십시오.

- 용지 급지대 (A) 의 후면 좌측과 후면 우측에 있는 핀 (1) 이 본체의 바닥면에 있는 구멍에 맞도록 본체 (2) 를 용지 급지대 (A) 위에 놓습니다.  
\* 본체 (2) 를 배치하기 전에 용지 급지대 (A) 의 가이드 (3) 가 수평 위치인지 확인하십시오.

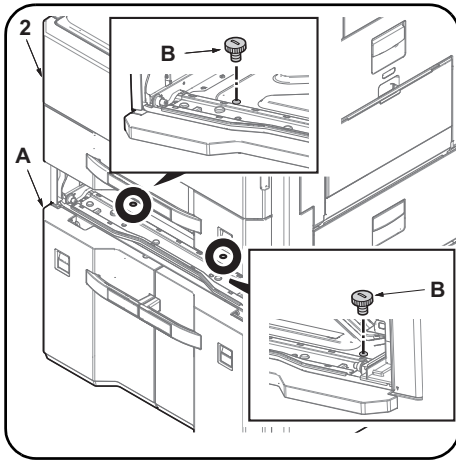
- 하단 용지 카세트 (4) 를 본체에서 꺼냅니다.

**取付手順**

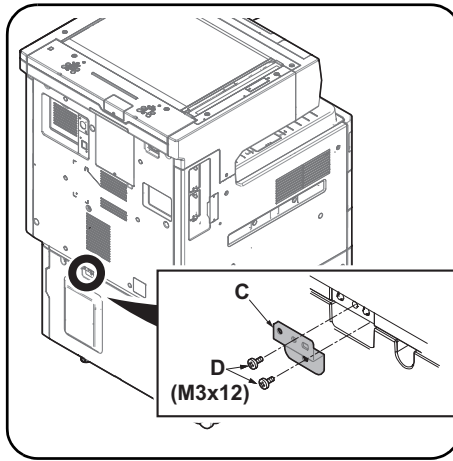
必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチをOFFにし、機械本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

- ペーパーフィーダー(A)の左右後方の各ピン(1)と機械本体のベースの穴が合うように、ペーパーフィーダー(A)に機械本体(2)を載せる。  
\*ペーパーフィーダー(A)のガイド(3)が倒れた状態で機械本体(2)を載せること。

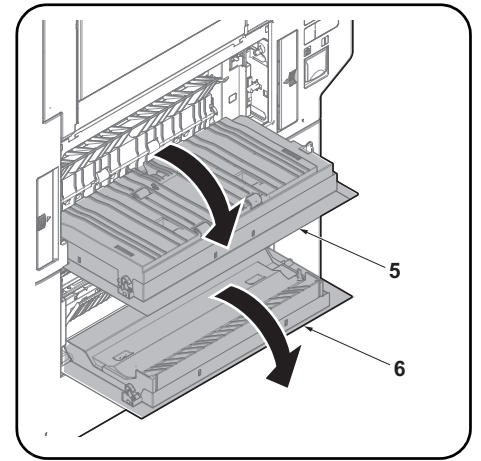
- 機械本体の下段カセット(4)を引き出す。



3. Secure the machine (2) to the paper feeder (A) with the 2 pins (B).
4. Insert the lower paper cassette (4) into the machine.



5. Install the retainer (C) in the location as shown in the figure using 2 S Tite screws M3 × 12 (D).



6. Open the lower right cover (5) on the machine.
7. Open the paper feeder right cover (6).

3. Fixer la machine (2) au chargeur de papier (A) avec les 2 broches (B).
4. Insérez le magasin de papier inférieur (4) dans la machine.

5. Installer l'élément de retenue (C) à l'endroit indiqué sur la figure avec 2 vis S Tite M3 × 12 (D).

6. Ouvrir le capot inférieur droit (5) de la machine.
7. Ouvrir le capot droit (6) du chargeur de papier .

3. Fije la máquina (2) al depósito de papel (A) con las dos clavijas (B).
4. Inserte el depósito de papel inferior (4) en la máquina.

5. Instale el retén (C) en el lugar que muestra la ilustración, mediante los 2 tornillos S Tite M3 × 12 (D).

6. Abra la cubierta derecha inferior (5) de la máquina.
7. Abra la cubierta derecha del depós (6) ito de papel .

3. Sichern Sie das Gerät (2) mit den 2 Stiften (B) am Papiereinzug (A).
4. Setzen Sie die untere Papierkassette (4) ins Gerät ein.

5. Die Halterung (C) an der dargestellten Stelle mit den 2 S-Tite-Schrauben M3 × 12 (D) befestigen.

6. Öffnen Sie die untere rechte Abdeckung (5) des Geräts.
7. Die rechte Abdeckung (6) des Papiereinzugs öffnen.

3. Fissare la macchina (2) sull'alimentatore carta (A) con i 2 perni (B).
4. Inserire il cassetto carta inferiore (4) nella macchina.

5. Installare il fermo (C) nella posizione mostrata in figura, utilizzando le 2 viti S Tite M3 × 12 (D).

6. Aprire il pannello destro inferiore (5) sulla macchina.
7. Aprire il pannello destro (6) dell'unità di alimentazione della carta.

3. 用 2 个固定插销 (B) 将机器主机 (2) 固定在供纸盒 (A) 上。
4. 把下部纸盒 (4) 插到机器主机中。

5. 使用 2 颗紧固型 S 螺丝 M3 × 12 (D) 将安装板 (C) 安装在图示位置。

6. 打开机器主机的右下部盖板 (5)。
7. 打开供纸盒的右部盖板 (6)。

3. 핀 (B) 2 개로 본체 (2) 를 급지대 (A) 에 고정합니다 .
4. 하단 용지 카세트 (4) 를 본체에 장착합니다 .

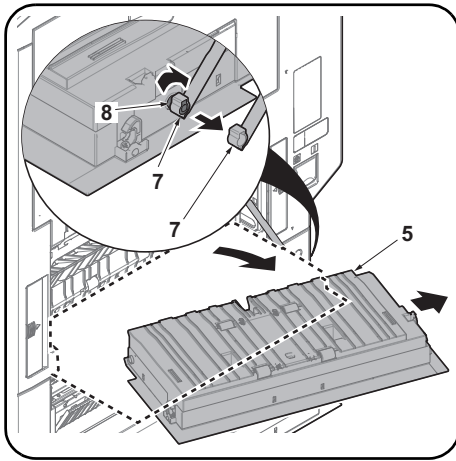
5. 나사 M3 × 12 S 타이트 (D) 2 개를 사용하여 리테이너 (C) 를 그림에 표시된 위치에 설치합니다 .

6. 본체의 오른쪽 하단 커버 (5) 를 엽니다 .
7. 급지대 오른쪽 커버 (6) 를 엽니다 .

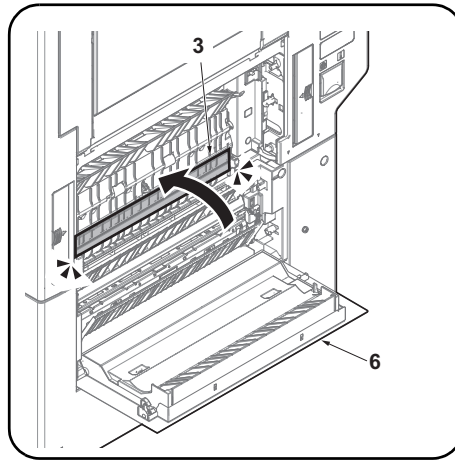
3. 핀 (B) 2 본で機械本体 (2) をペーパーフィーダー (A) に固定する。
4. 下段カセット (4) を機械本体に挿入する。

5. イラストの位置に取付板 (C) をビス M3 × 12 S タイト (D) 2 本で取り付ける。

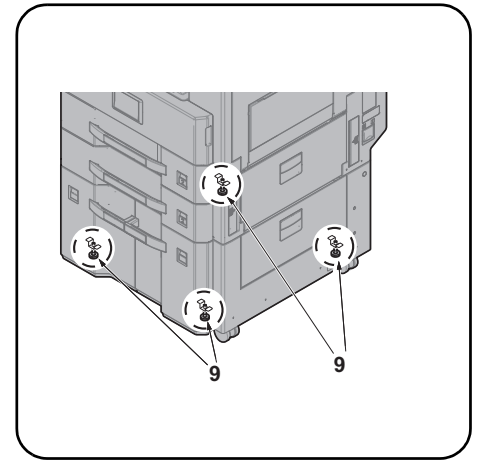
6. 機械本体の右下カバー (5) を開く。
7. ペーパーフィーダーの右カバー (6) を開く。



8. Remove the strap (7) from the shaft (8) and remove lower right cover (5).



9. Lift up the guide (3) until it clicks into place.



12. Turn the adjusters on each corner (9) until they reach the floor and then secure the paper feeder.

8. Déposer la courroie (7) de l'arbre (8) et déposer le capot inférieur droit (5).

9. Soulevez le guide (3) jusqu'à ce qu'il s'enclenche en position.

12. Faire tourner les dispositifs de réglage de chacun des coins (9) jusqu'à ce qu'ils touchent le sol et fixer ensuite le chargeur de papier.

8. Quite la correa (7) del eje (8) y quite la cubierta frontal inferior (5).

9. Levante la guía (3) hasta que encaje en su sitio con un clic.  
10. Cierre la cubierta derecha del depósito de papel (6) y vuelva a colocar la cubierta derecha inferior (5) en la máquina.  
11. Cierre la cubierta derecha inferior (5) de la máquina.

12. Gire los reguladores en cada esquina (9) hasta que lleguen al piso y, a continuación, asegure el depósito de papel.

8. Den Riemen (7) von der Welle (8) abnehmen und dann die untere rechte Abdeckung (5) abnehmen.

9. Heben Sie die Führung (3) an, bis diese in der korrekten Position einrastet.  
10. Schließen Sie die rechte Abdeckung (6) des Papiereinzugs und setzen Sie die untere rechte Abdeckung (5) wieder im Gerät ein.  
11. Schließen Sie die untere rechte Abdeckung (5) des Geräts.

12. Die Einsteller an jeder Ecke (9) drehen, bis sie den Boden berühren, und dann den Papiereinzug sichern.

8. Rimuovere la cinghietta (7) dall'asta (8) e quindi rimuovere il pannello destro inferiore (5).

9. Alzare la guida (3) fino a sentire il clic di blocco in posizione.  
10. Chiudere il pannello destro (6) dell'alimentatore carta e rimontare il pannello destro inferiore (5) sulla macchina.  
11. Chiudere il coperchio destro inferiore (5) sulla macchina.

12. Ruotare i regolatori (9) presenti su ciascun angolo finché vengano a contatto con il pavimento, e quindi fissare l'unità di alimentazione della carta.

8. 将带子 (7) 从轴 (8) 上拆除, 拆下右下部盖板 (5)。

9. 提起导板 (3) 直到听到咔哒音。  
10. 关闭供纸盒的右部盖板 (6), 按原样安装机器的右下部盖板 (5)。  
11. 关闭机器主机的右下部盖板 (5)。

12. 转动四角上的调节器 (9) 直至与地面接触, 然后再固定供纸盒。

8. 스트랩 (7) 을 축 (8) 에서 분리하고 우측 하단 커버 (5) 를 제거합니다 .

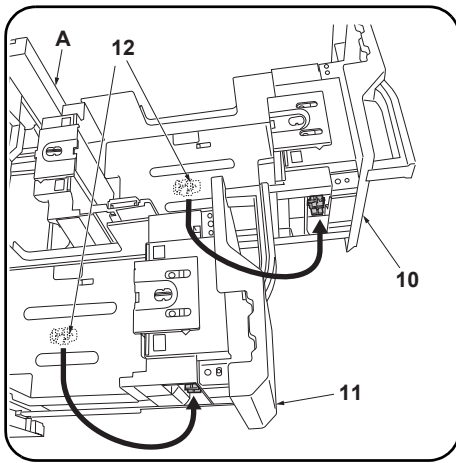
9. 제자리에 장착될 때까지 가이드 (3) 를 위로 올립니다 .  
10. 급지대 오른쪽 커버 (6) 를 닫고 본체의 오른쪽 하단 커버 (5) 를 다시 부착합니다 .  
11. 본체의 오른쪽 하단 커버 (5) 를 닫습니다 .

12. 각 모서리에 위치하는 어저스터 (9) 를 맨 안쪽에 닿을 때까지 돌려 급지대를 고정합니다 .

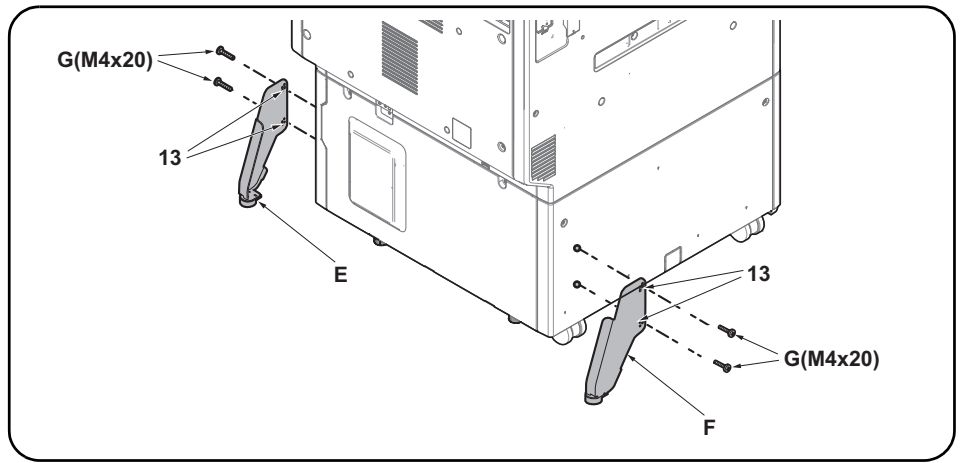
8. 스트랩 (7) を軸 (8) から外し、右下カバー (5) を取り外す。

9. カチッと音がするまでガイド (3) を立てる。  
10. ペーパーフィーダーの右カバー (6) を閉じ、機械本体の右下カバー (5) を元通りに取り付け。  
11. 機械本体の右下カバー (5) を閉じる。

12. 四隅のアジャスター (9) を床に接触する位置まで回し、ペーパーフィーダーを固定する。



13. Pull out the right cassette (10) and the left cassette (11) from the paper feeder (A). Remove the lift plate stopper (12) from each cassette and attach it to the storage location.
14. Gently close each cassette.



15. Select holes (13) and install each stopper (E, F) with 2 S Tite screws M4 × 20 (G) so that the stoppers will be grounded on the floor.

13. Sortez le magasin droit (10) et le magasin gauche (11) du chargeur de papier (A). Retirez la butée de la plaque de levage (12) de chaque magasin et fixez-la dans l'emplacement de stockage .
14. Refermer progressivement chaque tiroir.

15. Sélectionner les trous (13) et installer chaque butée (E, F) avec 2 vis S Tite M4 × 20 (G) de sorte que les butées reposent sur le sol.

13. Extraiga el depósito derecho (10) y el depósito izquierdo (11) del depósito de papel (A). Quite el tope de placa de elevación (12) de cada depósito y póngalo en el espacio reservado para guardarlo .
14. Cierre suavemente cada bandeja.

15. Seleccione los orificios (13) e instale cada tope (E, F) con los 2 tornillos S Tite M4 × 20 (G) de manera que los topes se conecten a tierra en el suelo.

13. Ziehen Sie die rechte Kasette (10) und die linke Kasette (11) aus dem Papiereinzug (A) heraus. Entfernen Sie die Verriegelung des Papierlifts (12) aus jeder Kasette und setzen Sie die Verriegelung in die Parkposition ein.
14. Alle Kassetten sachte schließen.

15. Wählen Sie die Öffnungen (13) und befestigen Sie jeden Anschlag (E, F) mit den 2 S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 20 (G) so an, dass die Anschläge am Boden aufsitzen.

13. Estrarre il cassetto destro (10) e il cassetto sinistro (11) dall'unità di alimentazione carta (A). Rimuovere il fermo della piastra di sollevamento (12) da ogni cassetto e fissarlo sulla posizione a riposo .
14. Chiudere delicatamente ciascun cassetto.

15. Selezionare i fori (13) ed installare ogni fermo (E, F) con le 2 viti S Tite M4 × 20 (G) in modo che i fermi siano posti a terra sul pavimento.

13. 从供纸盒 (A) 拉出右侧纸盒 (10) 以及左侧纸盒 (11) 。  
在每个纸盒上各拆下 1 个升降板限位器 (12) , 并安装在保管场所。
14. 轻轻地推入各纸盒。

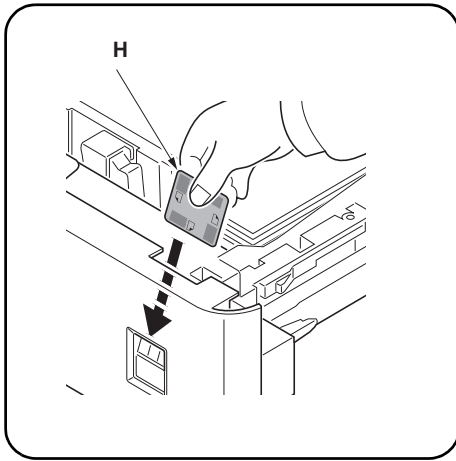
15. 在孔 (13) 处各用 2 颗 M4×20 紧固型 S 螺丝 (G) 安装防止倾斜工具 (E, F) , 使之和地板接触。

13. 금지대 (A) 에서 우측 카세트 (10) 와 좌측 카세트 (11) 를 꺼낸다 .  
각 카세트에서 리프트 플레이트 스톱퍼 (12) 를 제거하고 보관장소에 부착합니다 .
14. 각 카세트를 부드럽게 밀어 넣습니다 .

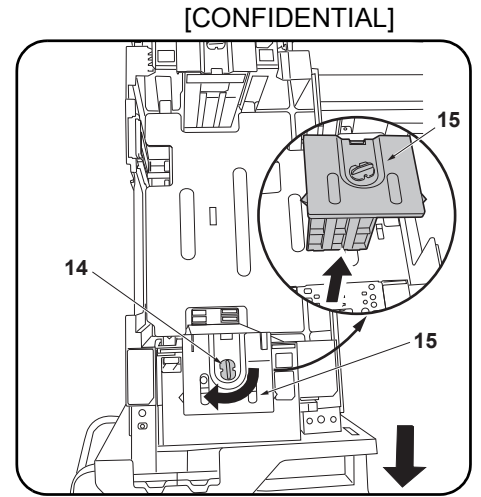
15. 구멍 (13) 을 선택해 스톱퍼 (E, F) 가 바닥면에 닿도록 나사 M4×20 S 타이트 (G) 2 개를 사용하여 설치합니다 .

13. ペーパーフィーダー (A) のカセット右 (10) およびカセット左 (11) を引き出す。リフト板ストッパー (12) 各 1 個を外して保管場所に取り付ける。
14. 各カセットを静かに押し込む。

15. 転倒防止金具 (E, F) が床面に接地するように、穴 (13) を選択してビス M4×20 S タイト (G) 各 2 本で取り付けます。



**Setting paper size plate**  
Insert the paper size plate (H) into the size display slot.



1. Pull out the cassette of the paper feeder.  
2. Turn the front lock lever (14) 90° and remove the front deck cursor (15).

**Réglage de la plaquette du format de papier**  
Insérez la plaquette de format de papier (H) dans le logement d'affichage du format.

**Changing paper size (metric specifications only)**  
At shipment, Letter is set for inch models and A4 is set for metric models. Use the procedure below to change the size to B5.

**Modification du format du papier (pour spécifications métriques seulement)**  
À expédition, les modèles à mesure en pouces sont réglés sur le format Letter et les modèles à mesure métrique sur le format A4. Pour passer au format B5, procéder de la manière suivante.

1. Tirer le magasin du chargeur de papier vers soi.  
2. Faire tourner le levier de verrouillage avant (14) de 90° et déposer le curseur de platine avant (15).

**Ajuste de la placa de tamaño de papel**  
Inserte la placa de tamaño de papel (H) en la ranura de visualización de tamaño.

**Cómo cambiar el tamaño de papel (sólo para las especificaciones métricas)**  
En el momento de salida de fábrica, se configura Carta para los modelos en pulgadas y A4 para los modelos en sistema métrico. Siga este procedimiento para cambiar el tamaño a B5.

1. Abra el casete del depósito de papel.  
2. Gire la palanca de bloqueo frontal (14) 90° y quite el cursor frontal de la plataforma (15).

**Einsetzen der Papierformatkarte**  
Setzen Sie die Papierformatkarte (H) in den Schlitz der Formatanzeige ein.

**Ändern des Papierformats (nur metrische Spezifikationen)**  
Beim Werksversand ist bei Modellen mit Zollmaß das Format Letter voreingestellt und bei Modellen mit metrischem Maß das Format A4. Das Format kann wie folgend auf B5 umgeschaltet werden.

1. Ziehen Sie die Papierlade aus dem Papiererinzug.  
2. Den vorderen Verriegelungshebel (14) um 90° drehen und den vorderen Konsole-Cursor (15) abnehmen.

**Inserimento della piastra formato carta**  
Inserire la piastra di formato carta (H) nello slot di indicazione formato.

**Cambio del formato della carta (solo per le specifiche metriche)**  
Al momento della spedizione, Letter è impostato per le specifiche in pollici e A4 è impostato per le specifiche metriche. Usare la procedura riportata sotto per cambiare il formato a B5.

1. Estrarre il cassetto dell'unità di alimentatore della carta.  
2. Ruotare la leva frontale di blocco (14) di 90° e rimuovere il cursore frontale del deck (15).

**设定纸张尺寸插片**  
将纸张尺寸插片 (H) 插入到尺寸表示插槽内。

**纸张尺寸更改 (仅限公制规格)**  
产品出厂时, 英制规格设定为 Letter、公制规格设定为 A4。要将尺寸更改为 B5 时, 请按以下步骤进行操作。

1. 拉出供纸盒的纸盒。  
2. 将前部锁定杆 (14) 旋转 90°, 拆下堆纸板前部游标 (15)。

**용지 사이즈 플레이트 세팅**  
용지 사이즈 플레이트 (H) 를 해당 사이즈 디스플레이 슬롯에 삽입합니다 .

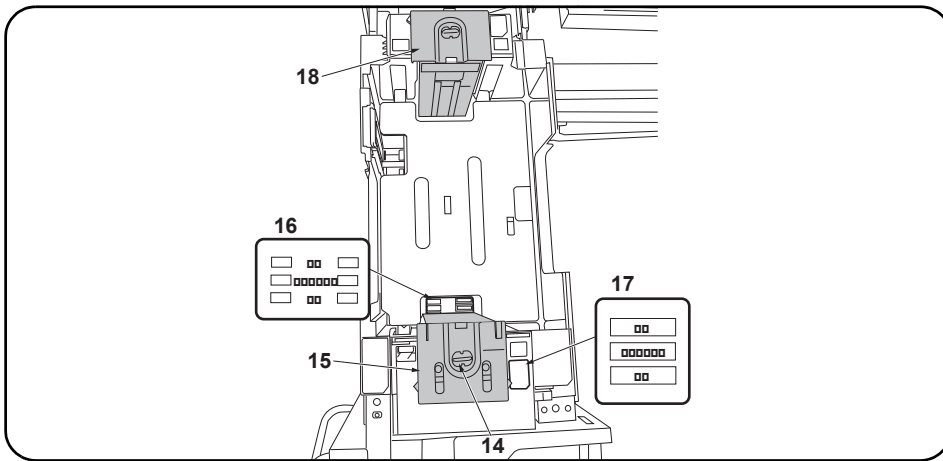
**용지 크기 변경 (센치 사양만)**  
출하시, 인치사양은 Letter, 센치사양은 A4 로 설정되어 있습니다 . 크기를 B5 로 변경하는 경우에는 다음 순서를 진행해 주십시오 .

1. 급지대 카세트를 빼 냅니다 .  
2. 프론트 잠금 레버 (14) 을 90° 회전시켜 프론트 데크커서 (15) 을 제거합니다 .

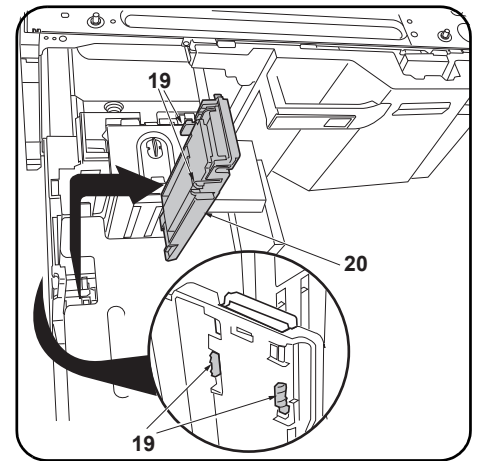
**用紙サイズプレートのセット**  
用紙サイズプレート (H) を、サイズ表示スロットに挿入する。

**用紙サイズ変更(センチ仕様のみ)**  
出荷時、インチ仕様は Letter、センチ仕様は A4 に設定されています。サイズを B5 に変更する場合は次の手順をおこなってください。

1. ペーパーフィーダーのカセットを引き出す。  
2. ロックレバー前 (14) を 90° 回転させ、デッキカーソル前 (15) を取り外す。



3. Move the front deck cursor (15) so that it is aligned with the size indicators on the top (17) and bottom (16) of the cassette.
4. Turn the front lock lever (14) 90° to lock it.
5. Move the rear deck cursor (18) in the same way.



6. Release the hook (19) and remove the deck trailing edge cursor (20).

3. Déplacer le curseur de platine avant (15) de sorte qu'il soit aligné avec les indicateurs de format en haut (17) et en bas (16) du tiroir.
4. Faire tourner le levier de verrouillage avant (14) de 90° pour le verrouiller.
5. Déplacer le curseur de platine arrière (18) en procédant de la même manière.

6. Libérer le crochet (19) et déposer le curseur du bord arrière de la platine (20).

3. Mueva el cursor frontal de la plataforma (15) para que quede alineado con las indicadores de tamaño de la parte superior (17) e inferior (16) del cajón.
4. Gire la palanca de bloqueo frontal (14) 90° para bloquearla.
5. Mueva el cursor trasero de la plataforma (18) de la misma forma.

6. Libere el gancho (19) y quite el cursor del borde inferior de la plataforma (20).

3. Den vorderen Konsole-Cursor (15) so verschieben, dass er mit den Formatanzeigen oben (17) und unten (16) an der Kassette fluchtet.
4. Den vorderen Verriegelungshebel (14) zum Verriegeln um 90° drehen.
5. Den hinteren Konsole-Cursor (18) auf gleiche Weise verschieben.

6. Den Haken (19) lösen und den Hinterkante-Cursor (20) der Konsole abnehmen.

3. Spostare il cursore frontale del deck (15) in modo che esso risulti allineato con gli indicatori di formato sulla parte superiore (17) e inferiore (16) del cassetto.
4. Ruotare la leva frontale di blocco (14) di 90°, per bloccarla.
5. Spostare il cursore posteriore del deck (18) allo stesso modo.

6. Rilasciare il gancio (19) e rimuovere il cursore del bordo di uscita del deck (20).

3. 移动堆纸板前部游标 (15), 使纸盒下部的尺寸标记 (16) 与纸盒上部的尺寸标记 (17) 对齐。
4. 将前部锁定杆 (14) 旋转 90° 以固定。
5. 按同样方式移动后部堆纸板后部游标 (18)。

6. 解除挂钩 (19), 拆下堆纸板后部游标 (20)。

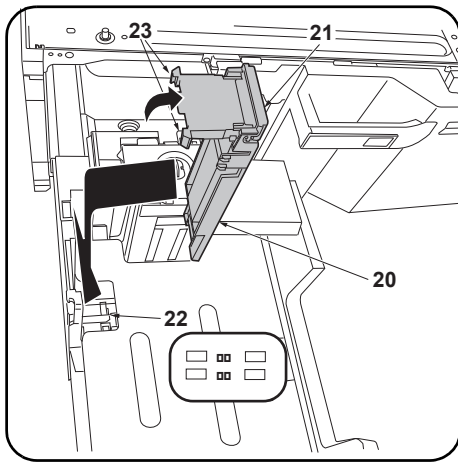
3. 카세트 상단 (17) 과 하단 (16) 의 사이즈 지침에 맞춰 프론트 데크 커서 (15) 을 이동합니다 .
4. 프론트 잠금레버 (14) 을 90° 회전시켜 고정합니다 .
5. 리어 데크커서 (18) 도 같은방식으로 이동시킵니다 .

6. 후크 (19) 를 해제하고 데크 뒷단커서 (20) 를 제거합니다 .

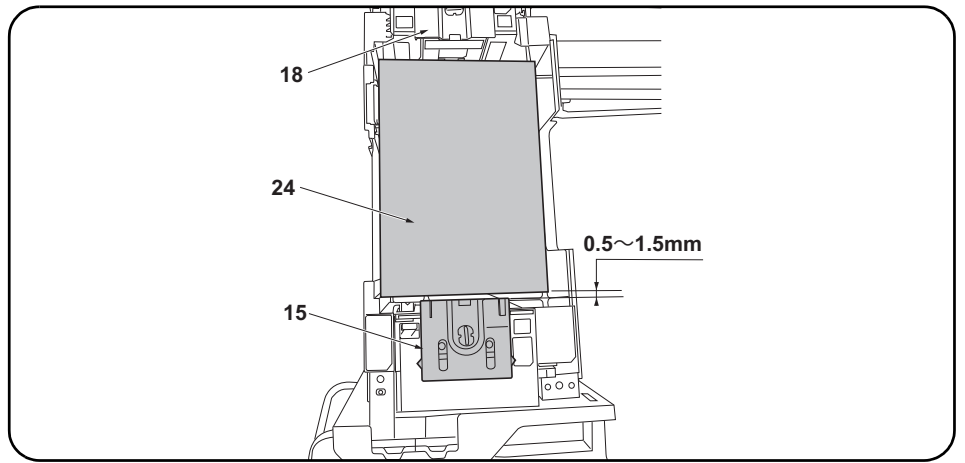
3. カセット下のサイズ表示 (16) とカセット上のサイズ表示 (17) に合わせてデッキカーソル前 (15) を移動させる。
4. ロックレバー前 (14) を 90° 回転させ固定する。
5. 同様にデッキカーソル後 (18) を移動させる。

6. フック (19) を解除し、デッキ後端カーソル (20) を取り外す。





7. Lift up the sub-cursor (21).
8. Align with the size indicator (22), engage the hook (23) and install the deck trailing edge cursor (20).



#### Adjusting the cursor width

1. Load paper in the cassettes.
2. If the gap between the front deck cursor (15) and the paper (24) is outside the 0.5 to 1.5 mm range when the paper (24) is touching up against the rear deck cursor (18), perform the following adjustment.
  - \* A cursor width that is too small can hinder paper feeding, while a cursor width that is too large can lead to problems such as skewed paper feed.

7. Lever le curseur secondaire (21).
8. Aligner avec l'indicateur de format (22), engager le crochet (23) et reposer le curseur du bord arrière de la platine (20).

#### Réglage de la largeur du curseur

1. Charger les tiroirs en papier.
2. Si l'écartement entre le curseur de platine avant (15) et le papier (24) est hors des limites de 0,5 à 1,5 mm quand le papier (24) touche le curseur de platine arrière (18), procéder au réglage suivant.
  - \* Une largeur trop faible du curseur risque d'empêcher l'entraînement du papier et une largeur trop grande risque d'entraîner des problèmes du type entraînement du papier de biais.

7. Levante el cursor secundario (21).
8. Alinee con el indicador de tamaño (22), enganche el gancho (23) e instale el cursor del borde inferior de la plataforma. (20).

#### Cómo ajustar la anchura del cursor

1. Cargue papel en los cajones.
2. Si la separación entre el cursor frontal de la plataforma (15) y el papel (24) está fuera del rango de 0,5 a 1,5 mm cuando el papel (24) toca el cursor trasero de la plataforma (18), haga el siguiente ajuste.
  - \* Una anchura del cursor demasiado pequeña puede impedir la alimentación de papel; una anchura del cursor demasiado grande puede provocar problemas con la alimentación torcida de papel.

7. Den Unter-Cursor (21) anheben.
8. Auf die Formatanzeige (22) ausrichten, den Haken (23) einsetzen und den Hinterkante-Cursor (20) der Konsole anbringen.

#### Einstellen der Cursor-Breite

1. Papier in die Papierladen einlegen.
2. Falls der Abstand zwischen dem vorderen Konsole-Cursor (15) und dem Papier (24) außerhalb des Bereichs 0,5 bis 1,5 mm liegt, wenn das Papier (24) am hinteren Konsole-Cursor (18) anliegt, ist folgende Einstellung vorzunehmen.
  - \* Eine zu kleine Cursor-Breite kann den Papiereinzug behindern, wogegen eine zu große Cursor-Breite verkanteten Papiereinzug und ähnliche Probleme verursachen kann.

7. Sollevare il cursore secondario (21).
8. Allineare con l'indicatore formato (22), fissare il gancio (23) e installare il cursore del bordo di uscita del deck (20).

#### Regolazione della larghezza del cursore

1. Caricare carta nei cassetti.
2. Se lo spazio tra il cursore frontale del deck (15) e la carta (24) è fuori della gamma da 0,5 a 1,5 mm quando la carta (24) tocca il cursore posteriore del deck (18), eseguire la regolazione seguente.
  - \* Una larghezza dei cursori troppo piccola può ostacolare l'alimentazione della carta, mentre una larghezza dei cursori troppo grande può essere causa di problemi, come ad esempio l'alimentazione obliqua della carta.

7. 抬起副游标 (21)。
8. 对齐尺寸标记 (22)，将挂钩 (23) 嵌入以安装堆纸板后部游标 (20)。

#### 游标宽度的调节

1. 在纸盒中装入纸张。
2. 在堆纸板后部游标 (18) 与纸张 (24) 接触的状态下，如果堆纸板前部游标 (15) 与纸张 (24) 的间隙超出了 0.5 ~ 1.5mm 的范围，须进行以下调节。
  - ※ 如果游标宽度过小，可能造成不供纸，游标宽度过大，则可能发生歪斜进纸等情况。

7. 서브커서 (21) 를 세웁니다 .
8. 사이즈 지침 (22) 에 맞춰 후크 (23) 를 부착 후 , 데크 후단 커서 (20) 를 설치합니다 .

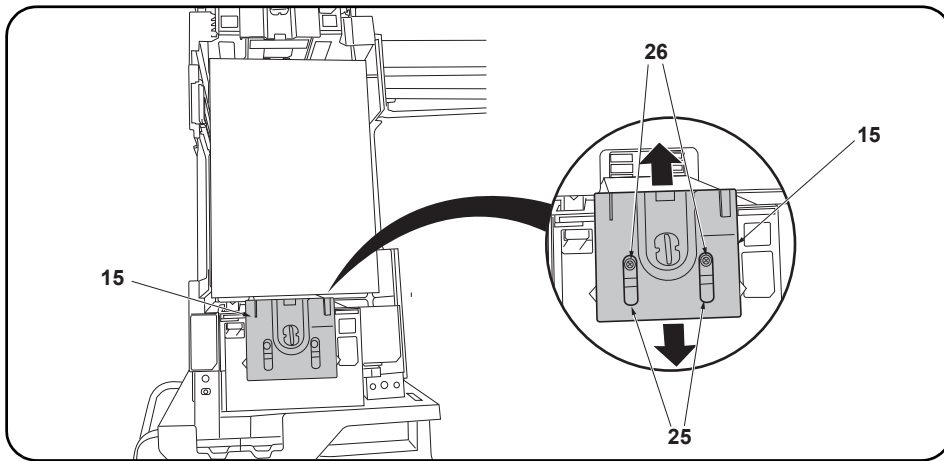
#### 커서 폭 조정

1. 카세트에 용지를 장착합니다 .
2. 데크커서 뒤 (18) 에 용지 (24) 가 접하고 있는 상태에서 데크커서 앞 (15) 과 용지 (24) 의 틈이 0.5 ~ 1.5mm 의 범위외의 경우에는 이하의 조정을 합니다 .
  - ※ 커서 폭이 작으면 무급지 , 커서 폭이 크면 경사급지 등이 발생할 가능성이 있습니다 .

7. サブカーソル (21) を起こす。
8. サイズ表示 (22) に合わせて、フック (23) をはめデッキ後端カーソル (20) を取り付ける。

#### カーソル幅の調整

1. カセットに用紙をセットする。
2. デッキカーソル後 (18) に用紙 (24) が接している状態で、デッキカーソル前 (15) と用紙 (24) の隙間が 0.5 ~ 1.5mm の範囲外の場合は、以下の調整をおこなう。
  - ※ カーソル幅が小さいと無給紙、カーソル幅が大きいと斜め給紙などが発生する可能性がある。



3. Insert a Philips-head screwdriver into the 2 long slots (25) in the front deck cursor (15) and loosen the 2 adjusting screws (26). Then move the front deck cursor (15).

4. Retighten the 2 adjusting screws (26).  
5. Check that the gap between the front deck cursor (15) and the paper is between 0.5 and 1.5 mm.

3. Insérer un tournevis cruciforme dans les 2 longues fentes (25) du curseur de platine avant (15) et desserrer les 2 vis de réglage (26). Déplacer ensuite le curseur de platine avant (15).

4. Resserrer les 2 vis de réglage (26).  
5. Vérifier que l'écartement entre le curseur de platine avant (15) et le papier est entre 0,5 et 1,5 mm.

3. Inserte un destornillador de cabeza Philips en las dos ranuras largas (25) en el cursor frontal de la plataforma (15) y afloje los 2 tornillos de ajuste (26). Después, mueva el cursor frontal de la plataforma (15).

4. Vuelva a apretar los 2 tornillos de ajuste (26).  
5. Verifique que la separación entre el cursor frontal de la plataforma (15) y el papel sea de entre 0,5 y 1,5 mm.

3. Einen Kreuzschlitzschraubendreher in die 2 langen Öffnungen (25) im vorderen Konsole-Cursor (15) stecken und die 2 Einstellschrauben (26) lösen. Danach den vorderen Konsole-Cursor (15) verschieben.

4. Die 2 Einstellschrauben (26) wieder anziehen.  
5. Vergewissern Sie sich, dass der Abstand zwischen dem vorderen Konsole-Cursor (15) und dem Papier im Bereich 0,5 bis 1,5 mm liegt.

3. Inserire un cacciavite con testa a croce tipo Philips nelle 2 fessure lunghe (25) nel cursore frontale del deck (15) e allentare le 2 viti di regolazione (26). Quindi spostare il cursore frontale del deck (15).

4. Ristringere le 2 viti di regolazione (26).  
5. Controllare che lo spazio tra il cursore frontale del deck (15) e la carta sia compreso nella gamma tra 0,5 e 1,5 mm.

3. 将十字螺丝刀从堆纸板前部游标 (15) 的 2 处长孔 (25) 处插入, 拧松 2 颗调节螺丝 (26), 移动堆纸板前部游标 (15)。

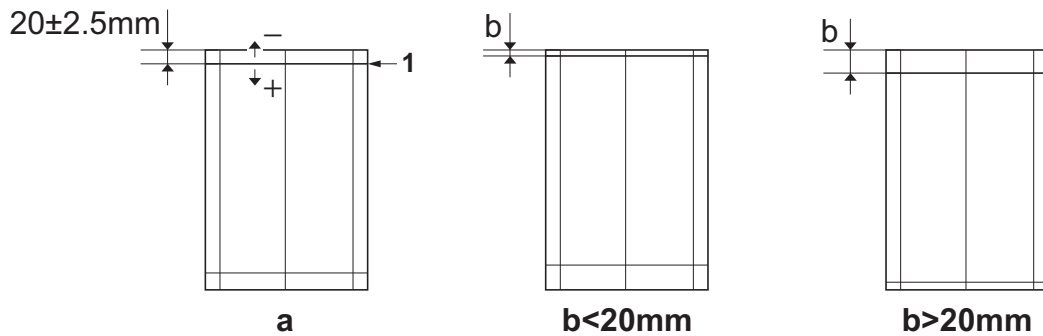
4. 拧紧 2 颗调节螺丝 (26)。  
5. 确认堆纸板前部游标 (15) 与纸张的间隙在 0.5 ~ 1.5mm 的范围内。

3. 프론트 데크커서 (15) 의 두 군데의 긴 구멍 (25) 에서 십자 드라이버 삽입하고 조정 나사 (26) 2 개를 풀어 프론트 데크 커서 (15) 를 이동시킵니다 .

4. 조정나사 (26) 2 개를 조입니다 .  
5. 데크커서 앞 (15) 과 용지의 틈이 0.5 ~ 1.5 mm 범위내가 되어 있는 것을 확인합니다 .

3. デッキカーソル前 (15) の 2箇所 の長穴 (25) からプラスドライバー挿入し、調整ビス (26) 2本を緩め、デッキカーソル前 (15) を移動させる。

4. 調整ビス (26) 2本を締め付ける。  
5. デッキカーソル前 (15) と用紙の隙間が 0.5 ~ 1.5mm の範囲内になっていることを確認する



### Adjusting the leading edge timing

The reference value for the leading edge timing is  $20 \pm 2.5$  mm at position (1) in the sample image (a). If the timing is outside this range, perform the following adjustment.

1. Set maintenance mode U034, select [LSU Out Top Full] and [Cassette] or [Cassette3]/[Cassette4].
2. Adjust the values.  
b < 20mm : Increase the setting value. b > 20mm : Decrease the setting value.
3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.

### Réglage de la synchronisation du bord de tête

La valeur de référence pour la synchronisation du bord de tête est de  $20 \pm 2,5$  mm à la position (1) sur l'image d'exemple (a). Si la synchronisation est hors de cette plage, procéder au réglage suivant.

1. Passer en mode maintenance U034, sélectionner [LSU Out Top Full] et [Cassette] ou [Cassette3]/[Cassette4].
2. Régler les valeurs.  
b < 20mm : Augmentez la valeur de réglage. b > 20mm : Diminuez la valeur de réglage.
3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.

### Cómo ajustar la sincronización del borde superior

El valor de referencia para la sincronización del borde anterior es  $20 \pm 2,5$  mm en la posición (1) en la imagen de muestra (a). Si la sincronización estuviera fuera de este rango, haga el siguiente ajuste.

1. Entre al modo de mantenimiento U034, seleccione [LSU Out Top Full] y [Cassette] o [Cassette3]/[Cassette4].
2. Ajuste los valores.  
b < 20mm : Aumente el valor de configuración. b > 20mm : Reduzca el valor de configuración.
3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.

### Einstellen des Vorderkanten-Timing

Der Bezugswert des Vorderkantenabstands beträgt  $20 \pm 2,5$  mm an Position (1) des Beispieldokuments (a). Falls das Timing außerhalb dieses Bereichs liegt, ist folgende Einstellung vorzunehmen.

1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U034, wählen Sie [LSU Out Top Full] und [Cassette] oder [Cassette3]/[Cassette4].
2. Die Werte einstellen.  
b < 20mm : Den Einstellwert erhöhen. b > 20mm : Den Einstellwert verringern.
3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.

### Regolazione della sincronizzazione del bordo principale

Il valore di riferimento per la sincronizzazione del bordo superiore è pari a  $20 \pm 2,5$  mm sulla posizione (1) nell'immagine di esempio (a). Se la sincronizzazione è all'infuori di questa gamma, effettuare la regolazione seguente.

1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U034, selezionare [LSU Out Top Full] e [Cassette] o [Cassette3]/[Cassette4].
2. Regolare i valori.  
b < 20mm : Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione. b > 20mm : Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.
3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.

### 前端对位调节

前端对位的基准值在图像样张 (a) 的 (1) 位置为  $20 \pm 2.5$  mm。超出该范围时，须进行以下调节。

1. 设置维护模式 U034，选择 [LSU Out Top Full]、[Cassette] 或 [Cassette3]/[Cassette4]。
2. 调整设定值。  
b < 20mm : 调高设定值。 b > 20mm : 调低设定值。
3. 按 Start 键，以确定设定值。

### 선단 타이밍 조정

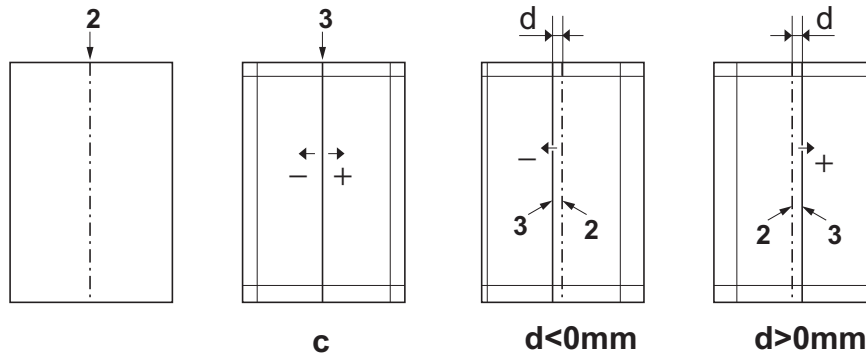
선단 타이밍은 샘플화상 (a) 의 (1) 위치에서 기준치는  $20 \pm 2.5$  mm. 여기에서 벗어나는 것은 이하의 조정을 합니다.

1. 메인터넌스 모드 U034 를 세트하고 [LSU Out Top Full], [Cassette] 또는 [Cassette3]/[Cassette4] 를 선택합니다.
2. 설정치를 조정합니다.  
b < 20mm : 설정치를 높입니다. b > 20mm : 설정치를 내립니다.
3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다.

### 先端タイミング調整

先端タイミングは、サンプルイメージ (a) の (1) の位置で基準値は  $20 \pm 2.5$  mm。これから外れるときは以下の調整をおこなう。

1. メンテナンスモード U034 をセットし、[LSU Out Top Full]、[Cassette] または [Cassette3]/[Cassette4] を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。  
b < 20mm : 設定値を上げる。 b > 20mm : 設定値を下げる。
3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。



### Adjusting the center line

The reference value for the center line (2) is  $\pm 2.0$  mm or less at position (3) in the sample image (c). If the center line position is outside this range, perform the following adjustment.

1. Set maintenance mode U034, select [LSU Out Left] and [Cassette3] or [Cassette4].
2. Adjust the values.  
 $d < 0$ mm : Increase the setting value.  $d > 0$ mm : Decrease the setting value.
3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.

### Réglage de l'axe

La valeur de référence pour l'axe (2) est de  $\pm 2,0$  mm ou moins à la position (3) sur l'image d'exemple (c). Si la position de l'axe est hors de cette plage, effectuez le réglage suivant.

1. Passer en mode maintenance U034, sélectionner [LSU Out Left] et [Cassette3] ou [Cassette4].
2. Régler les valeurs.  
 $d < 0$ mm : Augmentez la valeur de réglage.  $d > 0$ mm : Diminuez la valeur de réglage.
3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.

### Ajuste de la línea central

El valor de referencia para la línea central (2) es  $\pm 2,0$  mm o menos en la posición (3) en la imagen de muestra (c). Si la posición de la línea central estuviera fuera de este rango, haga el siguiente ajuste.

1. Entre al modo de mantenimiento U034, seleccione [LSU Out Left] y [Cassette3] o [Cassette4].
2. Ajuste los valores.  
 $d < 0$ mm : Aumente el valor de configuración.  $d > 0$ mm : Reduzca el valor de configuración.
3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.

### Einstellen der Mittelinie

Der Bezugswert der Mittelinie (2) beträgt  $\pm 2,0$  mm oder weniger an Position (3) des Beispieldokuments (c). Falls die Mittelinie außerhalb dieses Bereichs liegt, ist folgende Einstellung vorzunehmen.

1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U034, wählen Sie [LSU Out Left] und [Cassette3] oder [Cassette4].
2. Die Werte einstellen.  
 $d < 0$ mm : Den Einstellwert erhöhen.  $d > 0$ mm : Den Einstellwert verringern.
3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.

### Regolazione della linea centrale

Il valore di riferimento per la linea centrale (2) è pari a  $\pm 2,0$  mm o inferiore sulla posizione (3) nell'immagine di esempio (c). Se la posizione della linea centrale è all'infuori di questa gamma, effettuare la regolazione seguente.

1. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U034, selezionare [LSU Out Left] e [Cassette3] o [Cassette4].
2. Regolare i valori.  
 $d < 0$ mm : Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione.  $d > 0$ mm : Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.
3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.

### 中心线调节

中心线的基准值在图像样张(c)的(3),基准值是纸张中线位置(2)两端 $\pm 2.0$ mm以内。超出该范围时,须进行以下调节。

1. 设置维护模式U034,选择[LSU Out Left]、[Cassette3]或[Cassette4]。
2. 调整设定值。  
 $d < 0$ mm : 调高设定值。  $d > 0$ mm : 调低设定值。
3. 按Start键,以确定设定值。

### 센터라인 조정

센터라인(2)은 샘플화상(c)의(3)위치에서 기준치는  $\pm 2.0$ mm 이내. 여기에서 벗어나는 것은 이하의 조정을 합니다.

1. 메인テナンス 모드 U034 를 세트하고 [LSU Out Left], [Cassette3] 또는 [Cassette4] 를 선택합니다.
2. 설정치를 조정합니다.  
 $d < 0$ mm : 설정치를 높입니다.  $d > 0$ mm : 설정치를 내립니다.
3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다.

### センターライン調整

センターラインは、サンプルイメージ(c)の(3)の位置で、基準値は紙のセンター(2)から $\pm 2.0$ mm以内。これから外れるときは以下の調整をおこなう。

1. メンテナンスモードU034 をセットし、[LSU Out Left]、[Cassette3] または [Cassette4] を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。  
 $d < 0$ mm : 設定値を上げる。  $d > 0$ mm : 設定値を下げる。
3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。

(6) DF-791

# DF-791 / (3000-sheet finisher) Installation Guide

**INSTALLATION GUIDE**

**GUIDE D'INSTALLATION**

**GUÍA DE INSTALACION**

**INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG**

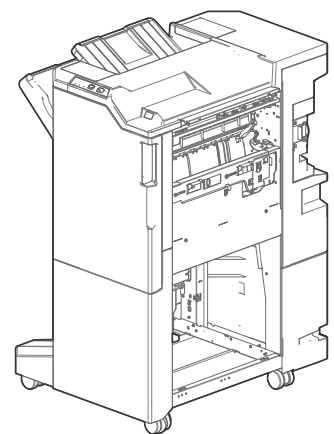
**GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE**

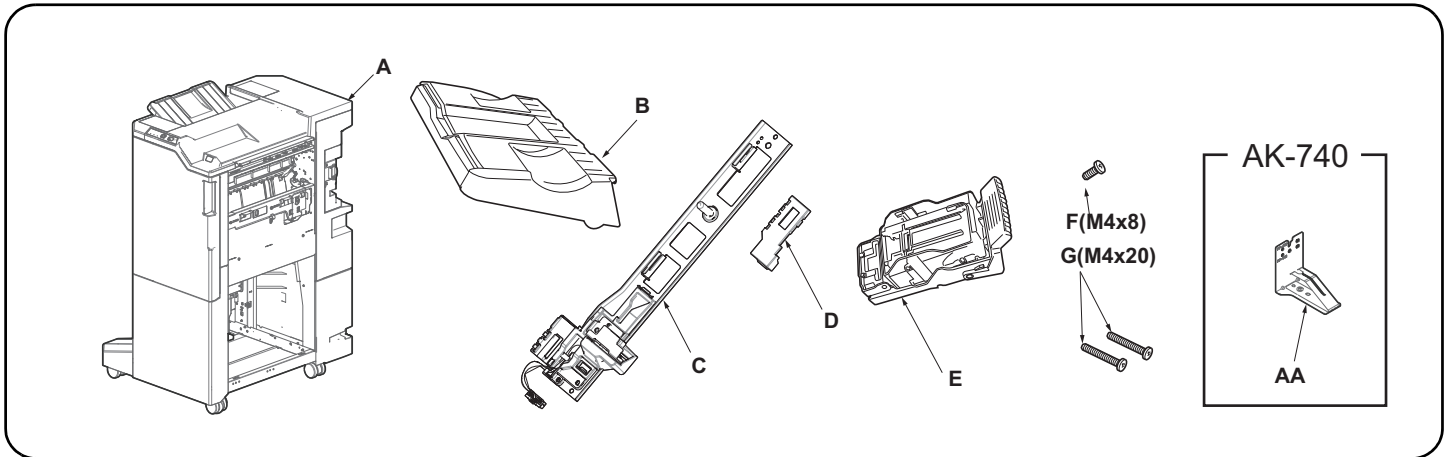
**安装手册**

**설치안내서**

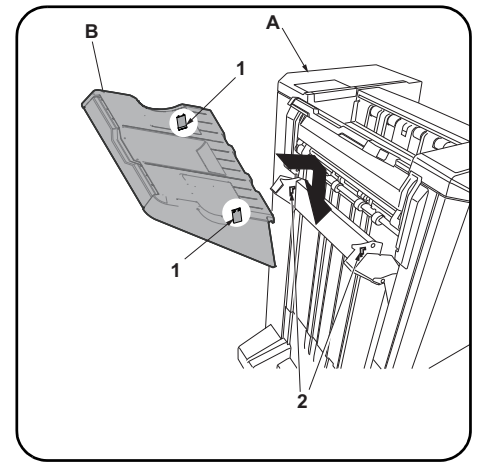
**設置手順書**

**DF-791**





|   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <p><b>English</b></p> <p><b>Supplied parts</b></p> <p>A. Document finisher..... 1</p> <p>B. Eject tray..... 1</p> <p>C. Connecting plate..... 1</p> <p>D. Connector cover ..... 1</p>                               | <p>E. Staple cartridge..... 1</p> <p>F. M4 × 8 screw ..... 1</p> <p>G. M4 × 20 screw ..... 2</p> <p>AA.Earth Plate ..... 1</p>                         | <p>Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.</p>                                     |
| <p><b>Français</b></p> <p><b>Pièces fournies</b></p> <p>A. Finisseur de document ..... 1</p> <p>B. Bac d'éjection ..... 1</p> <p>C. Plaque de connexion ..... 1</p> <p>D. Cache de connecteur ..... 1</p>           | <p>E. Cartouche d'agrafes ..... 1</p> <p>F. Vis M4 × 8 ..... 1</p> <p>G. Vis M4 × 20 ..... 2</p> <p>AA.Plaque de terre ..... 1</p>                     | <p>Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.</p>            |
| <p><b>Español</b></p> <p><b>Partes suministradas</b></p> <p>A. Finalizador de documentos ..... 1</p> <p>B. Bandeja de salida ..... 1</p> <p>C. Placa de conexión ..... 1</p> <p>D. Cubierta del conector..... 1</p> | <p>E. Cartucho de grapas ..... 1</p> <p>F. Tornillo M4 × 8 ..... 1</p> <p>G. Tornillo M4 × 20 ..... 2</p> <p>AA.Placa de conexión a tierra ..... 1</p> | <p>Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.</p>                         |
| <p><b>Deutsch</b></p> <p><b>Enthaltene Teile</b></p> <p>A. Finisher..... 1</p> <p>B. Auswerffach ..... 1</p> <p>C. Verbindungsplatte..... 1</p> <p>D. Stecker-Abdeckung ..... 1</p>                                 | <p>E. Heftklammer-Magazin..... 1</p> <p>F. M4 × 8 Schraube ..... 1</p> <p>G. M4 × 20 Schraube ..... 2</p> <p>AA.Grundplatte ..... 1</p>                | <p>Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.</p> |
| <p><b>Italiano</b></p> <p><b>Parti fornite</b></p> <p>A. Finisher documenti ..... 1</p> <p>B. Vassoio di espulsione ..... 1</p> <p>C. Piastra di connessione ..... 1</p> <p>D. Copri connettore ..... 1</p>         | <p>E. Contenitore punti ..... 1</p> <p>F. Vite M4 × 8..... 1</p> <p>G. Vite M4 × 20..... 2</p> <p>AA.Piastra di messa a terra..... 1</p>               | <p>Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.</p>                                 |
| <p><b>简体中文</b></p> <p><b>附属品</b></p> <p>A. 装订器..... 1</p> <p>B. 排纸托盘..... 1</p> <p>C. 连接板..... 1</p> <p>D. 接插件盖板..... 1</p>   | <p>E. 装订针盒 ..... 1</p> <p>F. M4×8 螺丝 ..... 1</p> <p>G. M4×20 螺丝 ..... 2</p> <p>AA. 接地板 ..... 1</p>   | <p>如果附属品上带有固定胶带, 缓冲材料时务必揭下。</p>  |
| <p><b>한국어</b></p> <p><b>동봉품</b></p> <p>A. 도큐먼트 피니셔..... 1</p> <p>B. 배출 트레이..... 1</p> <p>C. 연결판 ..... 1</p> <p>D. 커넥터 커버..... 1</p>   | <p>E. 스테이플 카트리지..... 1</p> <p>F. 나사 M4×8..... 1</p> <p>G. 나사 M4×20..... 2</p> <p>AA. 접지판 ..... 1</p>   | <p>동봉품에 고정 테이프, 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오 .</p>   |
| <p><b>日本語</b></p> <p><b>同梱品</b></p> <p>A. ドキュメントフィニッシャー..... 1</p> <p>B. 排出トレイ..... 1</p> <p>C. 連結板..... 1</p> <p>D. コネクターカバー..... 1</p>  | <p>E. ステープルカートリッジ ..... 1</p> <p>F. ビス M4×8 ..... 1</p> <p>G. ビス M4×20 ..... 2</p> <p>AA. アース板 ..... 1</p>   | <p>同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。</p>  |

**NOTICE**

The Attachment Kit (AK-740) must be installed before the document finisher is installed.

**Procedure**

Before starting installation, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off, and unplug the power plug from the wall outlet.

1. Install eject tray (B) to document finisher (A) by inserting the 2 hooks (1) on the back of the tray in the holes (2) of the finisher lift plate.

**REMARQUE**

Le kit de fixation (AK-740) doit être installé avant d'installer le finisseur de document.

**Procédure**

Avant de commencer l'installation, s'assurer de mettre la machine hors tension et de débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

1. Installez le bac d'éjection (B) sur le finisseur de document (A) en insérant les 2 crochets (1) au dos du bac d'éjection (B) dans les trous (2) du dispositif de levage du finisseur.

**AVISO**

El Kit de conexión (AK-740) se debe instalar antes de instalarse el finalizador de documentos.

**Procedimiento**

Antes de iniciar la instalación, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor de encendido de la máquina y desenchufar el cable de alimentación de la toma de pared.

1. Instale la bandeja de salida (B) en el finalizador de documentos (A); para ello, inserte los 2 enganches (1) de la parte posterior de la bandeja en los orificios (2) de la placa de elevación del finalizador.

**ANMERKUNG**

Das Attachment Kit (AK-740) muss installiert werden, bevor der Finisher installiert wird.

**Vorgehensweise**

Bevor Sie mit der Installation beginnen überzeugen Sie sich, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet und das Stromkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.

1. Setzen Sie das Ausgabefach (B) in den Finisher (A), indem Sie die 2 Haken (1) auf der Rückseite des Fachs in die beiden Löcher (2) der Finisher-Lift-Platte einsetzen.

**AVVISO**

Installare l'unità Attachment Kit (AK-740) prima di collegare il finisher documenti.

**Procedura**

Prima di iniziare l'installazione, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.

1. Installare il vassoio di uscita (B) sul finisher documenti (A) inserendo i 2 ganci (1) sul retro del vassoio nei fori (2) della piastra di elevazione del finisher.

**注意**

安装装订器前，必须先安装连接组件 (AK-740)。

**安装步骤**

安装前务必关闭机器的主电源开关，并从墙壁插座拔下电源插头。

1. 将排纸托盘 (B) 内侧的 2 个挂钩 (1) 装入装订器 (A) 的升降板的孔 (2) 中。

**주의**

도큐먼트 피니셔를 설치하기 전에 어태치먼트 키트 (AK-740) 를 설치해야 합니다 .

**설치순서**

설치를 시작하기 전에 반드시 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 끄고 벽 콘센트에서 전원 플러그를 분리하십시오 .

1. 배출 트레이 (B) 의 후면 후크 (1) 2 개를 문서 피니셔 (A) 의 리프트 플레이트 구멍 (2) 에 장착합니다 .

**注意**

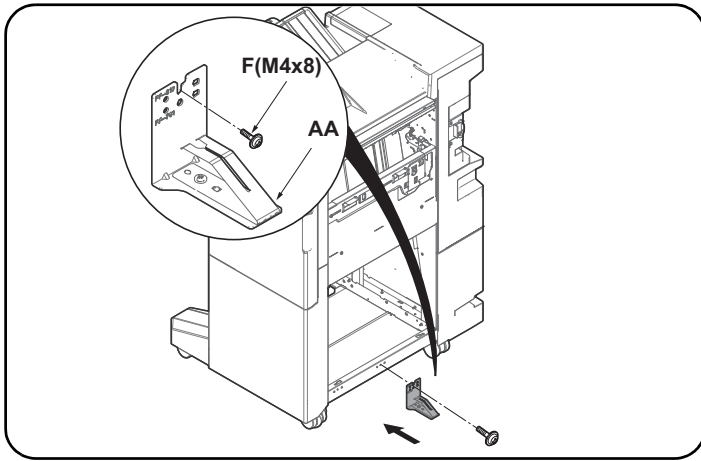
ドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける前に、アタッチメントキット (AK-740) の取り付けをおこなうこと。

**取付手順**

必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、機械本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

1. 排出トレイ (B) の裏側のフック (1) 2 個をドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の昇降板の穴 (2) に入れて、取り付ける。



**If PF-810 is installed**

2. Install earth plate (AA) to the bottom center of document finisher using an M4 × 8 screw (F). Secure the plate at the location marked "PF-810". Earth plate (AA) is supplied with AK-740. Proceed to step 3. If PF-791 is installed, see the next.

**Si le PF-810 est installé**

2. Installez la plaque de terre (AA) en bas au centre du finisseur de document à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 8 (F). Fixez la plaque à l'emplacement marqué "PF-810". La plaque de terre (AA) est fournie avec l'AK-740. Passer à l'étape 3. Si le PF-791 est installé, voir ci-après.

**Si está instalado PF-810**

2. Instale la placa de conexión a tierra (AA) a la parte central inferior del finalizador de documentos con un tornillo M4 × 8 (F). Fije la placa a la ubicación con la marca "PF-810". Con AK-740 se proporciona la placa de conexión a tierra (AA). Vaya al paso 3. Si está instalado PF-791, consulte lo siguiente.

**Falls der PF-810 installiert ist**

2. Installieren Sie die Grundplatte (AA) mit der Schraube M4 × 8 (F) unten in die Mitte des Finishers. Sichern Sie die Platte an der Stelle, die mit "PF-810" markiert ist. Die Grundplatte (AA) wird mit dem AK-740 geliefert. Gehen Sie weiter zu Schritt 3. Falls der PF-791 installiert ist, folgen Sie den weiteren Schritten.

**Quando è installato l'alimentatore carta modello PF-810**

2. Installare la piastra di messa a terra (AA) al centro della base del finisher documenti utilizzando una vite M4 × 8 (F). Fissare la piastra nella posizione contrassegnata con "PF-810". La piastra di messa a terra (AA) viene fornita con AK-740. Procedere al passo 3. Se invece è installato l'alimentatore carta modello PF-791, vedere più avanti.

**当安装了 PF-810 的情况时**

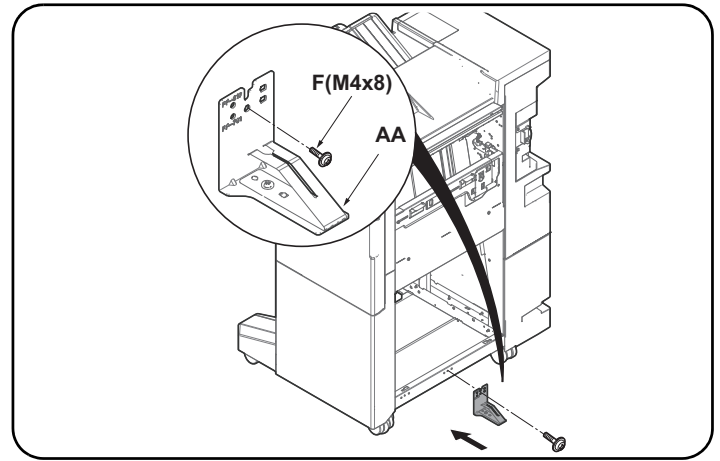
2. 使用 M4×8 (F) 螺丝, 将接地板 (AA) 安装至装订器下部中央位置。将接地板固定在刻有“PF-810”印记的位置。接地板 (AA) 是随附在 AK-740 内的。进至步骤 3。当安装了 PF-791 的情况时。参考如下内容。

**PF-810 이 설치되어 있는 경우**

2. 나사 M4 × 8(F) 을 이용하여 도큐먼트 피니셔 하부 중앙에 접지판 (AA) 을 설치합니다. "PF-810" 으로 표시된 곳에 플레이트를 고정하십시오. 접지판 (AA) 은 AK-740 과 함께 제공됩니다. 스텝 3 을 진행합니다. PF-791 이 설치되어 있는 경우 다음을 참조하십시오.

**PF-810 が装着されている場合**

2. アース板 (AA) をドキュメントフィニッシャー下部センターにビス M4 × 8(F) で取り付けます。PF-810 の刻印のある位置で固定する。アース板 (AA) は AK-740 の同梱品。手順 3 に進む。PF-791 が装着されている場合は次に記載しています。

**If PF-791 is installed**

2. Install earth plate (AA) to the bottom center of document finisher using an M4 × 8 screw (F). Secure the plate at the location marked "PF-791". Earth plate (AA) is supplied with AK-740.

**Si le PF-791 est installé**

2. Installez la plaque de terre (AA) en bas au centre du finisseur de document à l'aide d'une vis M4 × 8 (F). Fixez la plaque à l'emplacement marqué "PF-791". La plaque de terre (AA) est fournie avec l'AK-740.

**Si está instalado PF-791**

2. Instale la placa de conexión a tierra (AA) a la parte central inferior del finalizador de documentos con un tornillo M4 × 8 (F). Fije la placa a la ubicación con la marca "PF-791". Con AK-740 se proporciona la placa de conexión a tierra (AA).

**Falls der PF-791 installiert ist**

2. Installieren Sie die Grundplatte (AA) mit der Schraube M4 × 8 (F) unten in die Mitte des Finishers. Sichern Sie die Platte an der Stelle, die mit "PF-791" markiert ist. Die Grundplatte (AA) wird mit dem AK-740 geliefert.

**Quando è installato l'alimentatore carta modello PF-791**

2. Installare la piastra di messa a terra (AA) al centro della base del finisher documenti utilizzando una vite M4 × 8 (F). Fissare la piastra nella posizione contrassegnata con "PF-791". La piastra di messa a terra (AA) viene fornita con AK-740.

**当安装了 PF-791 的情况时**

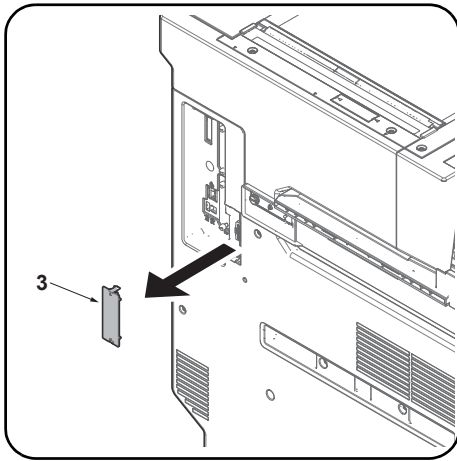
2. 使用 M4×8 (F) 螺丝, 将接地板 (AA) 安装至装订器下部中央位置。将接地板固定在刻有“PF-791”印记的位置。接地板 (AA) 是随附在 AK-740 内的。

**PF-791 이 설치되어 있는 경우**

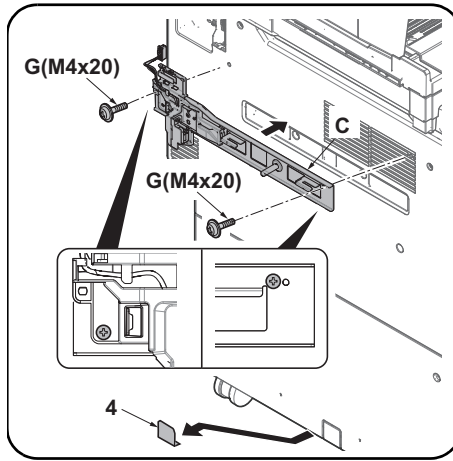
2. M4 × 8 나사 (F) 를 사용하여 접지판 (AA) 을 도큐먼트 피니셔의 하부 중앙에 부착합니다. "PF-791" 이 표시된 지점에 플레이트를 고정합니다. 접지판 (AA) 은 AK-740 과 함께 제공됩니다.

**PF-791 が装着されている場合**

2. アース板 (AA) をドキュメントフィニッシャー下部センターにビス M4 × 8(F) で取り付けます。PF-791 の刻印のある位置で固定する。アース板 (AA) は AK-740 の同梱品。



3. Remove the machine interface cover (3).



4. Attach the connecting plate (C) to the machine using 2 M4 × 20 screws (G). Attach them at the point as shown above.

**Only if PF-810 is installed, execute step 5**

5. Remove the breakaway cover (4) from the left cover.  
If PF-791 is installed, proceed to step 6.

3. Déposer le couvercle d'interface (3) de la machine.

4. Fixez la plaque de connexion (C) à la machine à l'aide de 2 vis M4 × 20 (G). Raccordez-les au point indiqué ci-dessus.

**N'exécutez l'étape 5 que si le PF-810 est installé.**

5. Déposer le couvercle amovible (4) du couvercle gauche.  
Si le PF-791 est installé, passez à l'étape 6.

3. Quite la cubierta de la interfaz (3) de la máquina.

4. Fije la placa de conexión (C) a la máquina mediante 2 tornillos M4 × 20 (G). Conéctelas en el punto que se muestra arriba.

**Solo si está instalado PF-810, ejecute el paso 5.**

5. Quite la cubierta divisoria (4) de la cubierta izquierda.  
Si está instalado PF-791, vaya al paso 6.

3. Nehmen Sie die Schnittstellenabdeckung (3) des Geräts ab.

4. Bringen Sie die Verbindungsplatte (C) mit 2 M4 × 20 Schrauben (G) am Gerät an. Bringen Sie diese an der in der Abbildung gezeigten Stelle an.

**Nur wenn der PF-810 installiert ist, führen Sie Schritt 5 aus.**

5. Nehmen Sie die Ablösungsabdeckung (4) von der linken Abdeckung ab.  
Falls PF-791 installiert ist, führen Sie Schritt 6 aus.

3. Rimuovere la copertura di interfaccia (3) della macchina.

4. Applicare la piastra di connessione (C) alla macchina utilizzando le 2 viti M4 × 20 (G). Fissare nella posizione sopra indicata.

**Se è installato solo l'alimentatore carta modello PF-810, eseguire il punto 5.**

5. Rimuovere il coperchio di distacco (4) dal coperchio sinistro.  
Se è installato solo l'alimentatore carta modello PF-791, proseguire con il punto 6.

3. 拆下机器的接口盖板 (3)。

4. 使用 2 顆 M4 × 20 (G) 螺丝将连接板 (C) 安装到机器上。按图示位置来安装。

仅安装了 PF-810 的情况时, 执行步骤 5。

5. 去除左侧盖板上的可去除部 (4)。  
当安装了 PF-791 的情况时, 进入步骤 6。

3. 본체의 인터페이스 커버 (3) 를 제거합니다 .

4. 나사 M4 × 20(G) 2 개를 사용하여 연결판 (C) 을 본체에 부착합니다 . 위에 표시된 위치에 부착합니다 . 위에 표시된 위치에 부착합니다 .

PF-810 만 설치되어 있는 경우 스텝 5 를 실행하십시오 .

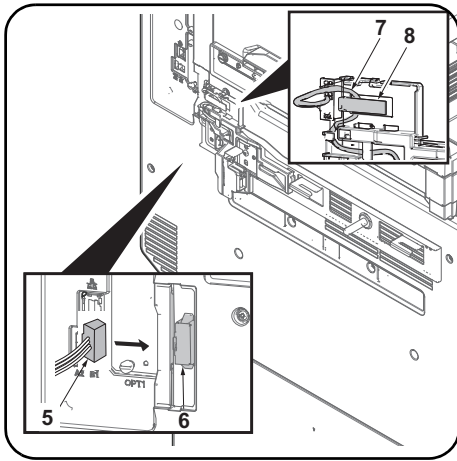
5. 좌측커버의 분할커버부 (4) 를 떼어 냅니다 .  
PF-791 이 설치되어 있는 경우 스텝 6 을 진행하십시오 .

3. 機械本体のインターフェイスカバー (3) を取り外す。

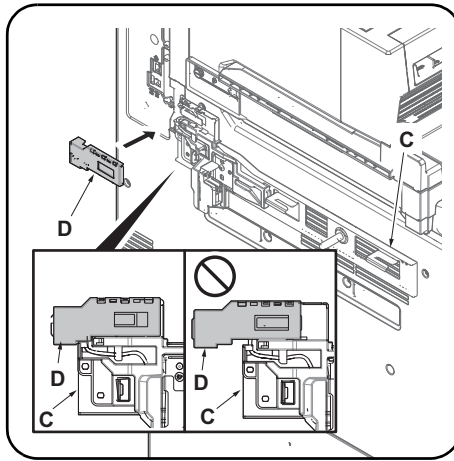
4. 連結板 (C) をビス M4 × 20(G) 2 本で、機械本体に取り付ける。図の位置で取り付けること。

PF-810 が装着されている場合のみ手順 5 を行う。

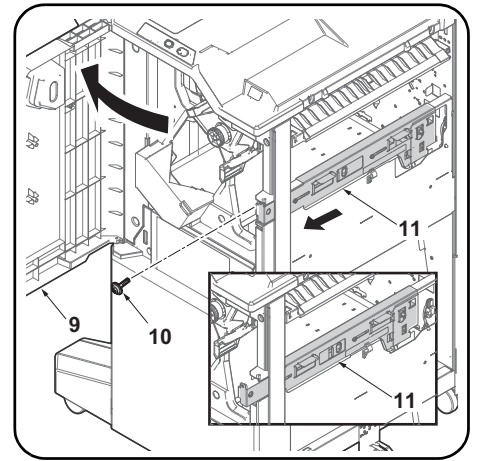
5. 左カバーの割りカバー部 (4) を切り取る。  
PF-791 が装着されている場合は手順 6 に進む。



6. Connect the signal line connector (5) to the connector (6) on the machine. Hook the signal line wire (7) onto the hook (8).



7. Fit the connector cover (D) in the connecting plate (C). Take care not to get the cable pinched by objects. Attach it at the point as shown above. Check that the signal line connector is covered by the connector cover (D).



8. Open the document finisher upper front cover (9). Remove the screw (10). Pull the lock frame (11) frontwards.

6. Raccorder le connecteur de ligne de signal (5) sur le connecteur (6) de la machine. Accrocher le fil de ligne de signal (7) sur le crochet (8).

7. Placer le couvercle de connecteur (D) dans la plaque de connexion (C). Prendre soin à ne pas pincer le câble. Raccordez-les au point indiqué ci-dessus. Vérifier que le connecteur de ligne de signal est couvert par le couvercle de connecteur (D).

8. Ouvrir le couvercle avant supérieur du finisseur de document (9). Retirez la vis (10). Tirer le cadre de verrouillage (11) vers le bas.

6. Conecte el conector de línea de señales (5) al conector (6) de la máquina. Enganche el cable de la línea de señales (7) en el enganche (8).

7. Acople la cubierta del conector (D) en la placa de conexión (C). Tenga cuidado de que el cable no quede atrapado por objetos. Conéctelas en el punto que se muestra arriba. Compruebe que el conector de la línea de señales quede cubierto por la cubierta del conector (D).

8. Abra la cubierta frontal superior del finalizador de documentos (9). Quite el tornillo (10). Empuje el marco de cierre (11) hacia delante.

6. Verbinden Sie den Stecker der Signalleitung (5) mit dem Steckverbinder im Gerät (6). Hängen Sie das Kabel der Signalleitung (7) in den Befestigungshaken (8) ein.

7. Setzen Sie die Stecker-Abdeckung (D) in die Verbindungsplatte (C) ein. Stellen Sie sicher, dass das Kabel nicht eingeklemmt wird. Bringen Sie diese an der in der Abbildung gezeigten Stelle an. Überprüfen Sie, ob der Stecker der Signalleitung von der Stecker-Abdeckung (D) abgedeckt ist.

8. Öffnen Sie die obere vordere Abdeckung des Finishers (9). Entfernen Sie die Schraube (10). Ziehen Sie die Verriegelung (11) nach vorne.

6. Collegare il connettore di linea del segnale (5) al connettore (6) sulla periferica. Agganciare il cavo di linea del segnale (7) al gancio (8).

7. Inserire il copri connettore (D) nella piastra di connessione (C). Fare attenzione a non impigliare il cavo. Fissare nella posizione sopra indicata. Controllare che il connettore della linea del segnale sia coperto dal copri connettore (D).

8. Aprire il coperchio frontale superiore del finisher documenti (9). Togliere la vite (10). Tirare in avanti la frame di blocco (11).

6. 把信号线的接插件 (5) 和机器本体的接插件 (6) 相连接。把信号线 (7) 挂到挂钩 (8) 上。

7. 将接插件盖板 (D) 嵌入到连接板 (C)。请注意不要夹住电线。按图示位置来安装。请确认信号线的接插件是否完全隐藏在接插件盖板中 (D)。

8. 打开装订器的前上盖板 (9)。取下螺丝 (10)。向身体前侧拉出固定架 (11)。

6. 시그널 라인 연결 커넥터 (5) 를 본체의 커넥터 (6) 에 연결합니다. 시그널 라인 와이어 (7) 를 후크 (8) 에 겁니다.

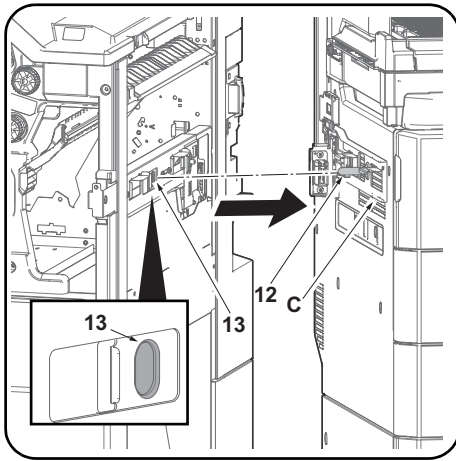
7. 커넥터 커버 (D) 를 연결판 (C) 에 맞추어 끼웁니다. 케이블이 커넥터 커버 (D) 에 끼이지 않도록 주의합니다. 위에 표시된 위치에 부착합니다. 시그널라인 커넥터가 커넥터 커버 (D) 에 덮여있는지 확인합니다.

8. 도큐먼트 피니셔의 상단 프론트 커버 (9) 를 엽니다. 나사 (10) 를 제거합니다. 잠금 프레임 (11) 을 앞으로 뺍니다.

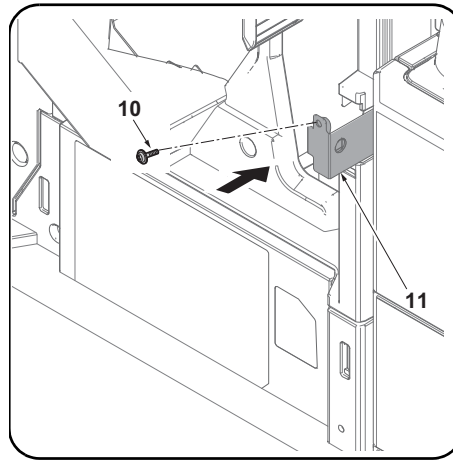
6. 信号線のコネクタ (5) を機械本体のコネクタ (6) に接続する。信号線 (7) は、フック (8) に掛けること。

7. コネクタカバー (D) を連結板 (C) にはめ込む。電線を挟み込まない様注意すること。図の位置で取り付けすること。信号線のコネクタがコネクタカバー (D) で隠れていることを確認する。

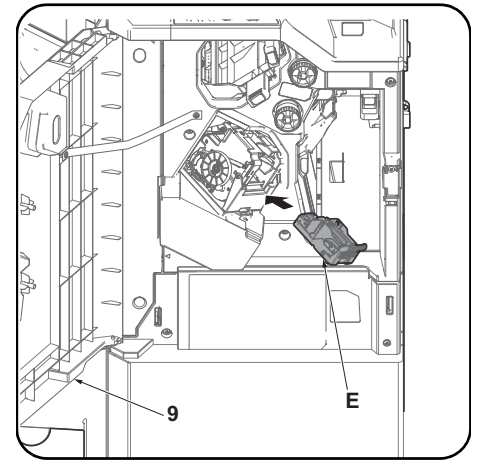
8. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの前上カバー (9) を開く。ビス (10) を外す。ロックフレーム (11) を手前に引く。



9. Insert the pin (12) on the connecting plate (C) into the hole (13) on the document finisher. Connect the document finisher to the machine.  
\* If the document finisher doesn't comply with the reference of the height as described on page 7, adjust the height.



10. Slowly push the lock frame (11) fully into the machine so that the connectors at the far end are connected.  
11. Secure the lock frame (11) using the screw (10) removed in step 8.



12. Install the staple cartridge (E).  
13. Close the upper front cover (9).  
Proceed to adjusting the stapling position on page 12.

9. Introduire l'ergot (12) sur la plaque de connexion (C) dans le trou (13) sur le finisseur de document. Connecter le finisseur de document sur la machine.  
\* Si le finisseur de document n'est pas conforme à la référence de hauteur comme décrit à la page 7, ajustez la hauteur.

10. Pousser doucement le cadre de verrouillage (11) à fond dans la machine de sorte que les connecteurs à l'extrémité soient raccordés.  
11. Fixez le bâti de verrouillage (11) à l'aide de la vis (10) déposée à l'étape 8.

12. Installer la cartouche d'agrafes (E).  
13. Refermer le couvercle avant supérieur (9).  
Passez à l'ajustement de la position d'agrafage page 12.

9. Inserte la clavija (12) de la placa de conexión (C) en el orificio (13) del finalizador de documentos. Conecte el finalizador de documentos a la máquina.  
\* Si el finalizador de documentos no cumple con la referencia de altura como se describe en la página 7, ajuste la altura.

10. Empuje lentamente y hasta el fondo el marco del cierre (11) hacia la máquina de modo que se conecten los conectores en el extremo más lejano.  
11. Asegure la carcasa de bloqueo (11) por medio del tornillo (10) quitado en el paso 8.

12. Instale el cartucho de grapas (E).  
13. Cierre la cubierta frontal superior (9).  
Proceda al ajuste de la posición de grapado en la página 12.

9. Setzen Sie den Stift (12) der Verbindungsplatte (C) in die Öffnung (13) des Finishers. Verbinden Sie den Finisher mit dem Gerät.  
\* Falls die Höhe des Finishers nicht mit der auf Seite 7 in der Referenz beschriebenen Höhe übereinstimmt, justieren Sie die Höhe.

10. Schieben Sie die Verriegelung (11) wieder langsam ins Gerät, so dass die Verbindungen am anderen Ende des Geräts geschlossen werden.  
11. Befestigen Sie den Fixierrahmen (11) mit der in Schritt 8 entfernten Schraube (10).

12. Installieren Sie das Heftklammer-Magazin (E).  
13. Schließen Sie die obere vordere Abdeckung (9).  
Fahren Sie mit der Justage der Heftposition auf Seite 12 fort.

9. Inserire il perno (12) della piastra di connessione (C) nel foro (13) del finisher documenti. Collegare il finisher documenti alla macchina.  
\* Se il finisher documenti non è conforme con il riferimento altezza come descritto a pagina 7, regolare l'altezza.

10. Spingere lentamente la frame di blocco (11) nella macchina in modo che i connettori all'estremità risultino collegati.  
11. Fissare il telaio di bloccaggio (11) utilizzando la vite (10) rimossa nel passo 8.

12. Installare il contenitore punti (E).  
13. Chiudere il coperchio superiore anteriore (9).  
Proseguire con la regolazione della posizione di pinzatura a pagina 12.

9. 将连接板 (C) 的销钉 (12) 插入装订器的孔 (13) 中。把装订器连接到机器本体。  
※ 若不符合 P7 的高度调整的基准时, 执行高度调整。

10. 慢慢的把固定架 (11) 完全推入机器, 这样机器里侧的接插件就可以顺利连接。  
11. 使用在步骤 8 中取下的 1 颗螺丝 (10) 来固定锁框 (11)。

12. 安装装订针盒 (E)。  
13. 关闭前部上盖板 (9)。  
跳至 P12「调节装订位置」。

9. 연결판 (C) 의 핀 (12) 을 두큐먼트 피니셔의 구멍 (13) 에 삽입합니다. 도큐먼트 피니셔를 본체에 연결합니다.  
※ 연결할 도큐먼트 피니셔가 7 페이지에 설명된 높이 기준에 부합하지 않으면 높이를 조정하십시오.

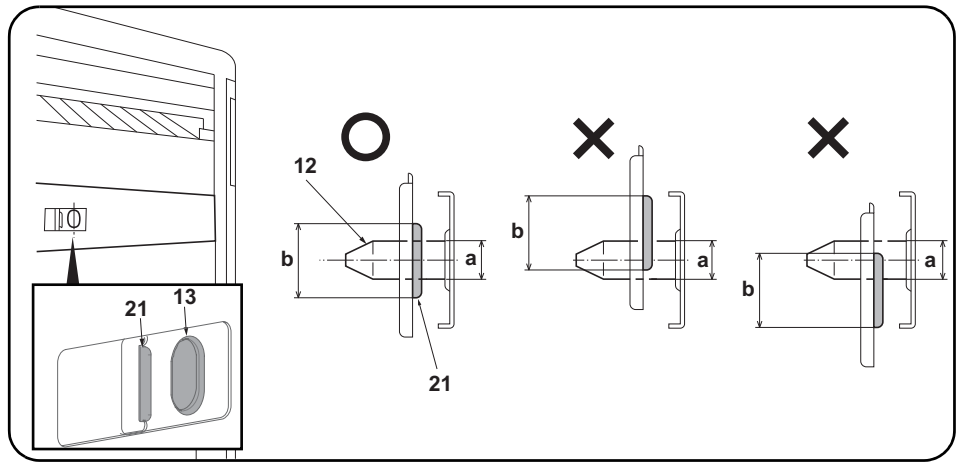
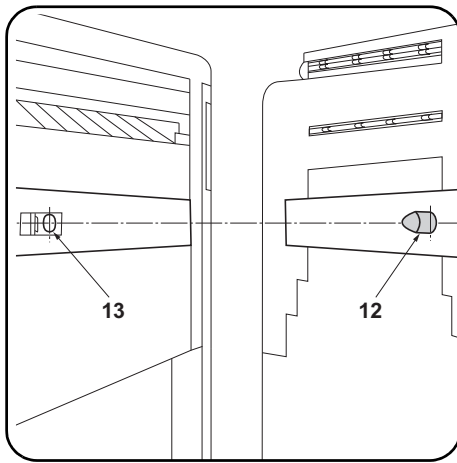
10. 본체 뒷쪽의 커넥터가 연결되도록 잠금 프레임 (11) 을 본체 안으로 천천히 밀어 넣습니다.  
11. 스텝 8 에서 뺀 나사 (10) 1 개로 잠금 프레임 (11) 을 고정합니다.

12. 스테이플 카트리지를 (E) 를 설치합니다.  
13. 상단 프론트 커버 (9) 를 닫습니다.  
12 페이지의 스테이플 위치 조정을 진행합니다.

9. 連結板 (C) のピン (12) をドキュメントフィニッシャーの穴 (13) に挿入する。ドキュメントフィニッシャーを機械本体に接続する。  
P7 の高さ調整の基準に適合しない場合は、高さ調整を行う。

10. 機械奥側のコネクタが接続されるように、ロックフレーム (11) をゆっくり奥に押し。  
11. 手順 8 で外したビス (10) で、ロックフレーム (11) を固定する。

12. ステープルカートリッジ (E) を取り付け。  
13. 前上カバー (9) を閉じる。  
P12「ステープル位置の調整」に進む。



### Adjusting the height

1. Check that the respective heights of the pins (12) on the connecting plate installed on the machine and the connecting holes (13) on the document finisher comply with the references below.

Compliant: The diameter (a) of the pin (12) is within the height range (b) of the curved section (21).  
Non-compliant: The diameter (a) of the pin (12) extends beyond the height range (b) of the curved section (21).

If the heights are non-compliant, use the procedure below to adjust the height.

### Réglage de la hauteur

1. Vérifiez que les hauteurs respectives des ergots (12) sur la plaque de connexion installée sur la machine et les trous de connexion (13) sur le finisseur de document sont conformes aux références ci-dessous.

Bon : Le diamètre (a) de l'ergot (12) est dans les limites de hauteur (b) de la partie courbée (21).

Mauvais : Le diamètre (a) de l'ergot (12) dépasse les limites de hauteur (b) de la partie courbée (21).  
Si la hauteur n'est pas conforme, l'ajuster en procédant comme indiqué ci-dessous.

### Ajuste de la altura

1. Compruebe que las alturas correspondientes de las clavijas (12) de la placa de fijación instalada en la máquina y los orificios de conexión (13) del finalizador de documentos cumplen las referencias de abajo.

Cumple: el diámetro (a) de la clavija (12) está dentro del rango de altura (b) de la sección curvada (21).

No cumple: el diámetro (a) de la clavija (12) sobrepasa el rango de altura (b) de la sección curvada (21).

Si las alturas no cumplen con las especificaciones, utilice el siguiente procedimiento para ajustar la altura.

### Einstellen der Höhe

1. Überprüfen Sie, dass die jeweilige Höhe der Stifte (12) der am Gerät installierten Verbindungsplatte und Verbindungsöffnungen (13) des Finishers mit den unten angegebenen Werten übereinstimmen.

Korrekt: Der Durchmesser (a) des Stifts (12) befindet sich im Höhenbereich (b) des Kurvenabschnitts (21).

Nicht korrekt: Der Durchmesser (a) des Stifts (12) ragt über den Höhenbereich (b) des Kurvenabschnitts (21) hinaus.

Falls die Höhen nicht korrekt sind, müssen Sie sie wie folgend einstellen.

### Regolazione dell'altezza

1. Controllare che le rispettive altezze dei perni (12) sulla piastra di connessione installata sulla macchina e i fori di connessione (13) sulla finisher documenti corrispondano ai riferimenti mostrati sotto.

Conformità: Il diametro (a) del perno (12) è compreso nella gamma di altezza (b) della sezione curvata (21).

Non conformità: Il diametro (a) del perno (12) si estende oltre la gamma di altezza (b) della sezione curvata (21).

Se le altezze sono non corrispondenti, utilizzare la procedura riportata sotto per regolare l'altezza.

### 高度调节

1. 确认机器主机上安装的连接板的销钉 (12) 和装订器的连接用的孔 (13) 的高度是否符合以下标准。

符合: 销钉 (12) 的直径 (a) 在弯曲部 (21) 的高度 (b) 的范围内。

不符合: 销钉 (12) 的直径 (a) 超出了弯曲部 (21) 的高度 (b) 的范围。

不符合时, 通过以下步骤进行调节。

### 높이조정

1. 본체에 설치된 연결판의 핀 (12) 과 도큐먼트 피니셔의 연결용 구멍 (13) 의 각 높이가 아래의 기준에 부합하는지 확인합니다.

적합 : 핀 (12) 의 직경 (a) 가 곡선부 (21) 의 높이 (b) 의 범위에 들어간다.

부적합: 핀 (12) 의 직경 (a) 가 곡선부 (21) 의 높이 (b) 의 범위를 넘는다.

부적합의 경우에는 이하의 순서대로 조정합니다.

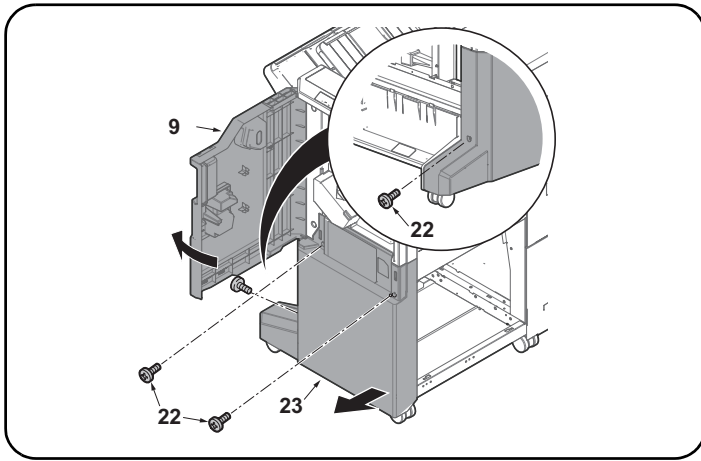
### 高さ調整

1. 機械本体に取り付けた連結板のピン (12) とドキュメントフィニッシャーの連結用の穴 (13) の高さが以下の基準に適合するか確認する。

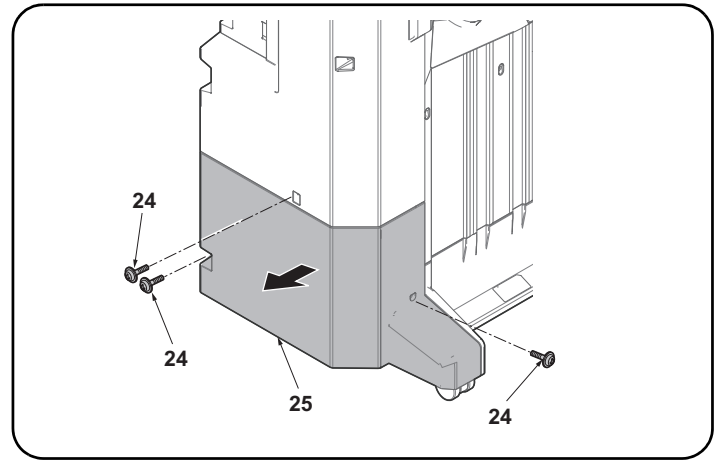
適合: ピン (12) の直径 (a) が曲げ部 (21) の高さ (b) の範囲に収まっている。

不適合: ピン (12) の直径 (a) が曲げ部 (21) の高さ (b) の範囲からはみだしている。

不適合の場合は、以下の手順で調整する。



2. Open the upper front cover (9) of the document finisher.
3. Remove the 3 screws (22). Remove the lower front cover (23).



4. Remove the 3 screws (24) and remove the lower rear cover (25).

2. Ouvrir le couvercle avant supérieur (9) du finisseur de document.
3. Déposer les 3 vis (22). Déposer le couvercle avant inférieur (23).

4. Déposer les 3 vis (24) puis le couvercle arrière inférieur (25).

2. Abra la cubierta frontal superior (9) del finalizador de documentos.
3. Quite los 3 tornillos (22). Quite la cubierta frontal inferior (23).

4. Quite los 3 tornillos (24) y quite la cubierta posterior inferior (25).

2. Öffnen Sie die obere vordere Abdeckung (9) des Finishers.
3. Entfernen Sie die 3 Schrauben (22). Entfernen Sie die untere vordere Abdeckung (23).

4. Entfernen Sie die 3 Schrauben (24) und nehmen Sie die untere hintere Abdeckung (25) ab.

2. Aprire il coperchio superiore anteriore (9) della finisher documenti.
3. Rimuovere le 3 viti (22). Rimuovere il coperchio frontale inferiore (23).

4. Rimuovere le 3 viti (24) e quindi rimuovere il coperchio inferiore posteriore (25).

2. 打开装订器的前部上盖板 (9)。
3. 拆除 3 颗螺丝 (22)。拆下前部下盖板 (23)。

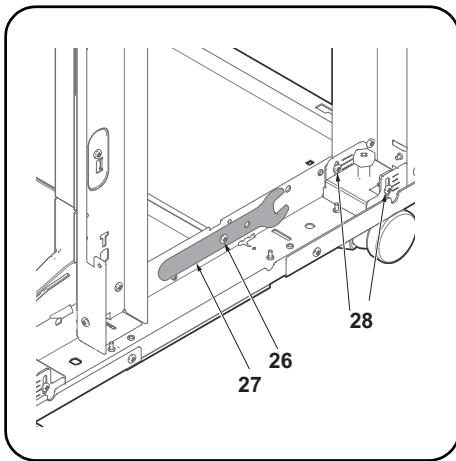
4. 拆除 3 颗螺丝 (24)，拆下后部下盖板 (25)。

2. 도큐먼트 피니셔 프론트 상단 커버 (9) 를 엽니다 .
3. 나사 (22) 3 개를 제거합니다 . 프론트 하단 커버 (23) 를 떼어 냅니다 .

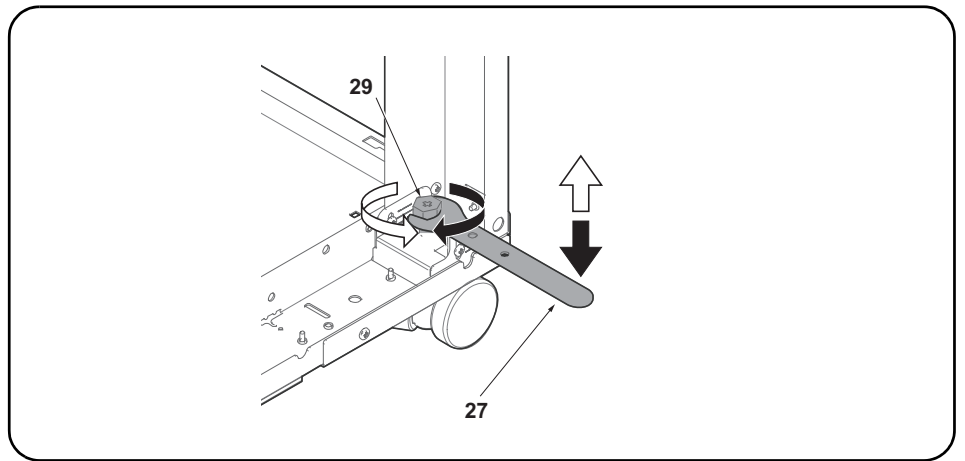
4. 나사 (24) 3 개를 제거하고 , 하단 리어 커버 (25) 를 제거합니다 .

2. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの前上カバー(9)を開く。
3. ビス(22)3本を外し、前下カバー(23)を取り外す。

4. ビス(24)3本を外し、後下カバー(25)を取り外す。



5. Remove the screw (26) to remove the spanner (27).
6. Loosen the 2 screws (28) on the front right and on the rear right of the document finisher.



7. Turn the adjustment bolts (29) with the spanner (27) to adjust the height of the document finisher. Turning the adjustment bolt clockwise lifts the document finisher, and turning it counterclockwise lowers the document finisher.
8. Retighten each of the 2 screws (28) and attach the spanner (27) to its original position.

5. Déposer la vis (26) pour libérer la clé (27).
6. Desserrer les 2 vis (28) du côté avant droit et arrière droit du finisseur de document.

7. Faire tourner les boulons de réglage (29) avec la clé (27) pour ajuster la hauteur du finisseur de document. Tourner le boulon de réglage dans le sens horloger pour lever le finisseur de document, et dans le sens contraire au sens horloger pour le descendre.
8. Resserrer les 2 vis (28) et repositionner la clé (27) au même endroit.

5. Quite el tornillo (26) para extraer la llave inglesa (27).
6. Afloje los 2 tornillos (28) en los lados derecho frontal y derecho posterior del finalizador de documentos.

7. Gire los pernos de ajuste (29) con la llave inglesa (27) para ajustar la altura del finalizador de documentos. Al girar el perno de ajuste en la dirección de las manecillas del reloj se levanta el finalizador de documentos y al girar en sentido contrario a las manecillas del reloj baja el finalizador de documentos.
8. Vuelva a apretar los 2 tornillos (28) y coloque la llave inglesa en su lugar (27).

5. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (26), um den Schlüssel (27) abzunehmen.
6. Lösen Sie die 2 Schrauben (28) vorne rechts und hinten rechts am Finisher.

7. Drehen Sie die Einstellschrauben (29) mit dem Schlüssel (27), um die Höhe des Finishers einzustellen. Durch Drehen der Einstellschraube im Uhrzeigersinn wird der Finisher angehoben, während er durch Drehen entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn abgesenkt wird.
8. Ziehen Sie die 2 Schrauben (28) wieder an und verstauen Sie den Schlüssel (27) wieder.

5. Rimuovere la vite (26) per rimuovere la chiave (27).
6. Allentare le 2 viti (28) sulla parte anteriore destra e posteriore destra della finisher documenti.

7. Ruotare i bulloni di regolazione (29) con la chiave (27) per regolare l'altezza della finisher documenti. Ruotando il bullone di regolazione in senso orario si solleva la finisher documenti, mentre ruotandolo in senso antiorario si abbassa la finisher documenti.
8. Ristringere ciascuna delle 2 viti (28) e riporre la chiave (27).

5. 取下螺丝 (26) 以便拆下扳手 (27)。
6. 拧松装订器右前侧与右后侧的各 2 颗螺丝 (28)。

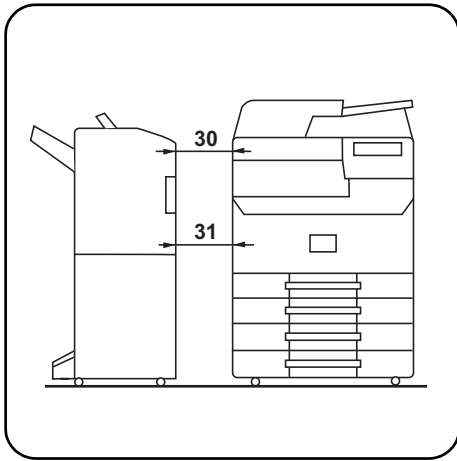
7. 使用扳手 (27) 旋转调节螺栓 (29)，以调节装订器的高度。将调节螺栓向顺时针方向旋转，装订器的高度升高，逆时针方向旋转则装订器的高度降低。
8. 拧紧各 2 颗螺丝 (28)，按原样安装扳手 (27)。

5. 나사 (26) 1 개를 빼고, 스패너 (27) 를 떼어 냅니다.
6. 도큐먼트 피니셔 우측 프론트와 리어의 나사 (28) 각 2 개를 느슨하게 합니다.

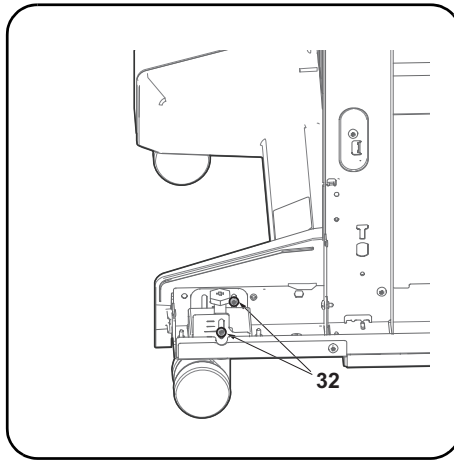
7. 스패너 (27) 로 조정 볼트 (29) 를 돌려 도큐먼트 피니셔의 높이를 조정한다. 조정 볼트를 시계방향으로 돌리면 도큐먼트 피니셔의 높이가 높아지고, 반 시계방향으로 돌리면 낮아 집니다.
8. 나사 (28) 각 2 개를 조이고 스패너 (27) 를 원래 자리에 장착합니다.

5. 비스 (26) 1 본を外し、スパナ (27) を取り外す。
6. ドキュメントフィニッシャー右前と右後のビス (28) 各 2 本を緩める。

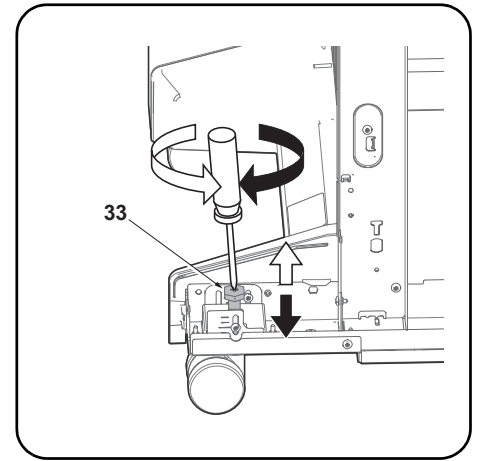
7. 스패너 (27) で調整볼트 (29) を回し、ドキュメントフィニッシャーの高さを調整する。調整볼트를時計方向に回すとドキュメントフィニッシャーの高さが高くなり、反時計方向に回すと低くなる。
8. 비스 (28) 各 2 本を締め付け、スパナ (27) を元通り取り付け。



9. If the distances between the document finisher and the machine (30, 31) are unequal, use the procedure below to adjust the spacing.



10. Loosen the 2 screws (32) on the front left and on the rear left of the document finisher.



11. Turn the adjustment bolts (33) with a Philips-head screwdriver to adjust the height of the document finisher. Turning the adjustment bolt clockwise lifts the document finisher, and turning it counter-clockwise lowers the document finisher.

9. Si les distances entre le finisseur de document et la machine (30, 31) sont inégales, régler l'espacement en procédant de la manière suivante.

10. Desserrer les 2 vis (32) du côté avant gauche et arrière gauche du finisseur de document.

11. Faire tourner les boulons de réglage (33) à l'aide d'un tournevis cruciforme pour ajuster la hauteur du finisseur de document. Tourner le boulon de réglage dans le sens horloger pour lever le finisseur de document, et dans le sens contraire au sens horloger pour le descendre.

9. Si las distancias entre el finalizador de documentos y la máquina (30, 31) no son iguales, utilice el siguiente procedimiento para ajustar la separación.

10. Afloje los 2 tornillos (32) en los lados izquierdo frontal e izquierdo posterior del finalizador de documentos.

11. Gire los pernos de ajuste (33) con un destornillador de cabeza Philips para ajustar la altura del finalizador de documentos. Al girar el perno de ajuste en la dirección de las manecillas del reloj se levanta el finalizador de documentos y al girar en sentido contrario a las manecillas del reloj baja el finalizador de documentos.

9. Falls die Abstände zwischen dem Finisher und dem Gerät (30, 31) ungleich sind, führen Sie die unten angegebenen Schritte aus, um den Abstand zu korrigieren.

10. Lösen Sie die 2 Schrauben (32) vorne links und hinten links am Finisher.

11. Stellen Sie die Einstellschrauben (33) mit einem Kreuzschlitzschraubendreher ein, um die Höhe des Finishers zu korrigieren. Durch Drehen der Einstellschraube im Uhrzeigersinn wird der Finisher angehoben, während er durch Drehen entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn abgesenkt wird.

9. Se le distanze tra la finisher documenti e la macchina (30, 31) sono diverse, attenersi alla sottostante procedura per regolare la spaziatura.

10. Allentare le 2 viti (32) sulla parte anteriore sinistra e posteriore sinistra della finisher documenti.

11. Ruotare i bulloni di regolazione (33) con un cacciavite con testa a croce tipo Philips per regolare l'altezza della finisher documenti. Ruotando il bullone di regolazione in senso orario si solleva la finisher documenti, mentre ruotandolo in senso antiorario si abbassa la finisher documenti.

9. 装订器与机器的间隙(30、31)不等时,按以下步骤进行调节。

10. 拧松装订器左前侧与左后侧的各2颗螺丝(32)。

11. 使用十字螺丝刀旋转调节螺栓(33),以调节装订器的高度。将调节螺栓向顺时针方向旋转,装订器的高度升高,逆时针方向旋转则装订器的高度降低。

9. 도큐먼트 피니셔와 본체의 거리(30, 31)가 동일하지 않는 경우 아래의 절차에 따라 간격을 조정합니다.

10. 도큐먼트 피니셔 좌측 프론트와 리어의 나사(32) 각 2개를 느슨하게 합니다.

11. 플러스 드라이버로 조정 볼트(33)를 돌려 도큐먼트 피니셔 높이를 조정합니다. 조정 볼트를 시계방향으로 돌리면 도큐먼트 피니셔의 높이가 높아지고, 반 시계방향으로 돌리면 낮아 집니다.

9. ドキュメントフィニッシャーと機械本体の間隔(30、31)が等しくない場合は、以下の手順で調整を行う。

10. ドキュメントフィニッシャー左前と左後のビス(32)各2本を緩める。

11. プラスドライバーで調整ボルト(33)を回し、ドキュメントフィニッシャーの高さを調整する。調整ボルトを時計方向に回すとドキュメントフィニッシャーの高さが高くなり、反時計方向に回すと低くなる。



12. Retighten each of the 2 screws (32).  
13. Reinstall the lower front cover (23) and lower rear cover (25).
- 

12. Resserrer les 2 vis (32).  
13. Reposez le couvercle avant inférieur (23) et le couvercle arrière inférieur (25).
- 

12. Vuelva a apretar los 2 tornillos (32).  
13. Vuelva a instalar la cubierta frontal inferior (23) y la cubierta posterior inferior (25).
- 

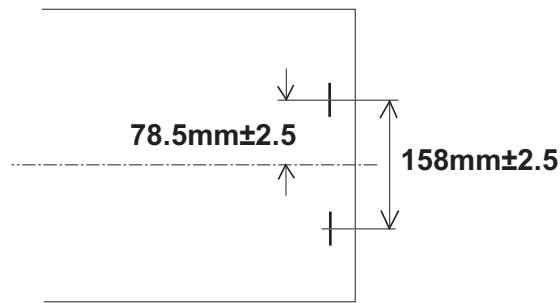
12. Ziehen Sie die 2 Schrauben (32) nach.  
13. Setzen Sie die untere vordere Abdeckung (23) und die untere hintere Abdeckung (25) wieder ein.
- 

12. Ristringere ciascuna delle 2 viti (32).  
13. Reinstallare il coperchio frontale inferiore (23) e il coperchio posteriore inferiore (25).
- 

12. 拧紧各 2 颗螺丝 (32)。  
13. 按原样安装前部下盖板 (23)、后部下盖板 (25)。
- 

12. 나사 (32) 각 2 개를 조입니다 .  
13. 프론트 하단 커버 (23), 리어 하단 커버 (25) 를 원래 자리에 장착합니다 .
- 

12. ビス (32) 各 2 本を締め付ける。  
13. 前下カバー (23)、後下カバー (25) を元通りに取り付ける。
-



#### Adjusting the stapling position

1. Connect the machine power plug to the wall outlet and turn the machine main power switch on.
2. Make a test copy using staple mode (double stapled).
3. Check whether the stapling position is off-center. If the staple position is off-center, follow the procedure below to adjust the position.  
<Reference value> 78.5 mm  $\pm$ 2.5 mm from the center of the paper

#### Ajustement de la position d'agrafage

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise murale et mettre la machine sous tension.
2. Procéder à une copie d'essai en mode agrafage (double agrafage).
3. Vérifier que la position d'agrafage n'est pas en décalage. Si la position d'agrafage est décalée, la régler en procédant de la manière suivante.  
<Valeur de référence> 78,5 mm  $\pm$ 2,5 mm depuis le milieu de la feuille de papier.

#### Ajuste de la posición de grapado

1. Conecte el enchufe de la máquina al receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal de la máquina.
2. Haga una copia de prueba en el modo de grapado (grapado doble).
3. Compruebe si la posición de grapado está descentrada. Si la posición de grapado está descentrada, realice el siguiente procedimiento para ajustar la posición.  
<Valor de referencia> 78,5 mm  $\pm$  2,5 mm del centro del papel

#### Justage der Heftposition

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des Geräts in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie das Gerät am Hauptschalter ein.
2. Erstellen Sie eine Probekopie im Heftmodus (doppelt geheftet).
3. Prüfen Sie, ob die Heftposition außermittig ist. Falls die Heftposition außermittig ist, müssen Sie sie wie folgend einstellen.  
<Bezugswert> 78,5 mm  $\pm$ 2,5 mm von der Blattmitte

#### Regolazione della posizione di pinzatura

1. Collegare la spina alla presa di corrente a muro e accendere l'interruttore di alimentazione della macchina.
2. Eseguire una copia di prova utilizzando la modalità di spillatura con punti metallici (spillatura doppia).
3. Verificare che la posizione di spillatura non sia fuori centro. Se la posizione di spillatura è fuori centro, seguire la procedura riportata sotto per regolare la posizione.  
<Valore di riferimento> 78,5 mm  $\pm$  2,5 mm dal centro del foglio

#### 调节装订位置

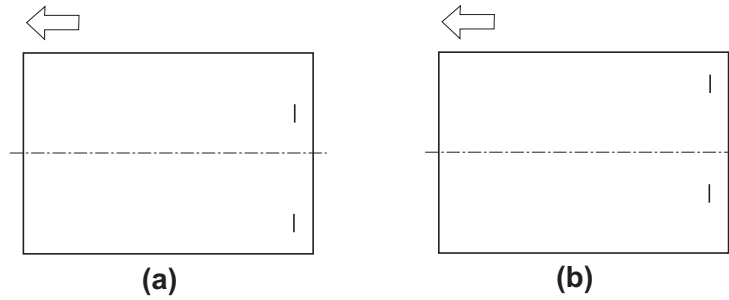
1. 将机器上的电源插头插入电源插座中，打开主电源开关。
2. 在装订模式（2点固定）下进行测试复印。
3. 确认装订位置的偏差。装订位置偏离中心时，按以下步骤进行调节。  
<基准值> 距离纸张中心 78.5mm  $\pm$  2.5mm

#### 스태이플 위치 조정

1. 본체 전원플러그를 콘센트에 꽂고 주 전원 스위치를 ON으로 합니다.
2. 스타이플 모드(더블 스타이플)에서 테스트 카피를 합니다.
3. 스타이플 위치의 센터 어긋남을 확인합니다. 스타이플 위치가 중심에서 벗어난 경우 다음 순서로 조정을 합니다.  
<기준치> 용지 센터에서 78.5mm  $\pm$  2.5mm

#### ステーブル位置の調整

1. 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチをONにする。
2. ステーブルモード(2箇所止め)でテストコピーを行う。
3. ステーブル位置のセンターずれを確認する。ステーブル位置が中心からずれていた場合、次の手順で調整を行う。  
<基準値> 用紙センターより 78.5mm  $\pm$  2.5mm



4. Set maintenance mode U246, select Finisher, Staple HP.  
 5. Adjust the values.  
 If the paper is stapled too close to the front of the machine (a): Increase the setting value.  
 If the paper is stapled too close to the rear of the machine (b): Decrease the setting value.

6. Perform a test copy.  
 7. Repeat steps 4 to 6 until the staple position is within the reference value.  
 <Reference value> 78.5 mm  $\pm$  2.5 mm from the center of the paper

4. Passer en mode maintenance U246, sélectionner Finisher et Staple HP.  
 5. Régler les valeurs.  
 Si le papier est agrafé trop près de l'avant de la machine (a): augmenter la valeur de réglage.  
 Si le papier est agrafé trop près de l'arrière de la machine (b): réduire la valeur de réglage.

6. Effectuer une copie de test.  
 7. Recommencer les étapes 4 à 6 jusqu'à ce que la position d'agrafe soit conforme à la valeur de référence  
 <Valeur de référence> 78,5 mm  $\pm$  2,5 mm depuis le milieu de la feuille de papier.

4. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione Finisher y Staple HP.  
 5. Ajuste los valores.  
 Si el grapado del papel se encuentra demasiado cerca del frente de la máquina (a): aumente el valor de configuración.  
 Si el grapado del papel se encuentra demasiado cerca de la parte posterior de la máquina (b): disminuya el valor de configuración.

6. Haga una copia de prueba.  
 7. Repita los pasos 4 a 6 hasta que la posición de grapado se encuentre dentro del valor de referencia.  
 <Valor de referencia> 78,5 mm  $\pm$  2,5 mm del centro del papel

4. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U246, wählen Sie Finisher und Staple HP.  
 5. Die Werte einstellen.  
 Falls das Papier zu nahe am vorderen Rand des Geräts (a) abgestapelt wird: Vergrößern Sie den Stellwert.  
 Falls das Papier zu nahe am hinteren Rand des Geräts (b) abgestapelt wird: Verkleinern Sie den Stellwert.

6. Eine Testkopie erstellen.  
 7. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 4 bis 6, bis die Heftposition im Bereich des Bezugswerts liegt.  
 <Bezugswert> 78,5 mm  $\pm$  2,5 mm von der Blattmitte

4. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U246, selezionare Finisher e Staple HP.  
 5. Regolare i valori.  
 Se il foglio viene spillato troppo vicino alla parte anteriore della macchina (a): Aumentare il valore di impostazione.  
 Se il foglio viene spillato troppo vicino alla parte posteriore della macchina (b): Diminuire il valore di impostazione.

6. Eseguire una copia di prova.  
 7. Ripetere i passi 4 to 6 finché la posizione di spillatura risulta all'interno del valore di riferimento.  
 <Valore di riferimento> 78,5 mm  $\pm$  2,5 mm dal centro del foglio

4. 设置维护模式 U246, 选择 Finisher、Staple HP。  
 5. 调整设定值。  
 装订位置向机器前部偏移时 (a): 调高设定值。  
 装订位置向机器后部偏移时 (b): 调低设定值。

6. 进行测试复印。  
 7. 重复步骤 4 ~ 6, 直到装订位置在基准范围内为止。  
 <基准值> 距离纸张中心 78.5mm  $\pm$  2.5mm

4. 메인テナンス 모드 U246 을 설정하고 Finisher, Staple HP 를 선택합니다.  
 5. 설정값을 조정합니다.  
 스테이플 위치가 기기앞측으로 벗어난 경우 (a): 설정치를 높입니다.  
 스테이플 위치가 기기뒷측으로 벗어난 경우 (b): 설정치를 내입니다.

6. 테스트 카피를 합니다.  
 7. 스테이플 위치가 기준치 이 내로 될 때까지 스텝 4 ~ 6 을 반복합니다.  
 < 기준치 > 용지 센터에서 78.5mm  $\pm$  2.5mm

4. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、Finisher、Staple HP を選択する。  
 5. 設定値を調整する。  
 ステープル位置が機械前側にずれている場合 (a): 設定値を上げる。  
 ステープル位置が機械後側にずれている場合 (b): 設定値を下げる。

6. テストコピーを行う。  
 7. ステープル位置が基準値内になるまで、手順 4 ~ 6 を繰り返す。  
 < 基準値 > 用紙センターより 78.5mm  $\pm$  2.5mm

(7) DF-7120

# DF-7120 / (1000-sheet finisher) Installation Guide

**INSTALLATION GUIDE**

**GUIDE D'INSTALLATION**

**GUÍA DE INSTALACION**

**INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG**

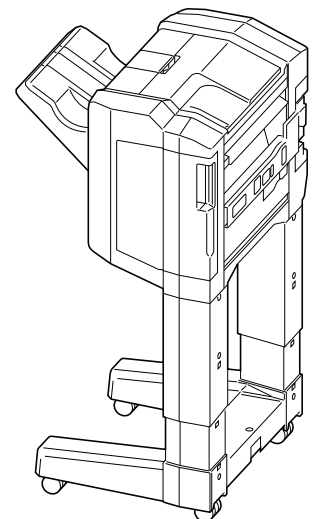
**GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE**

**安装手册**

**설치안내서**

**設置手順書**

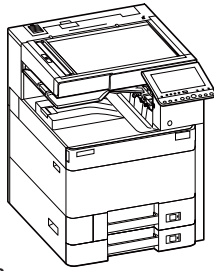
**DF-7120**



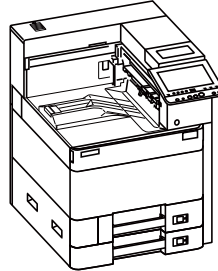
**A**

Color MFP  
25/25ppm,32/32ppm,  
35/35ppm,40/40ppm,  
50/50ppm,60/55ppm

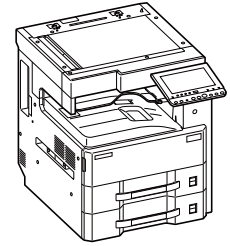
Black & White MFP  
40ppm,50ppm,60ppm



Color Printer  
60/55ppm

**B**

Black & White MFP  
30ppm,32ppm,  
35ppm,40ppm

**English**

A different procedure is required depending on the product which is installed with this unit. Each procedure is described in the following pages. For installation with the MFP(A) / Printer, see Page 1 to Page 5, Page 14 to Page 15. For installation with a MFP(B), see Page 6 to Page 15.

**Français**

Une procédure différente est requise selon le produit qui est installé avec cette unité. Chaque procédure est décrite dans les pages suivantes. Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(A) / Imprimante, voir Page 1 à Page 5, Page 14 à Page 15. Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(B), voir Page 6 à Page 15.

**Español**

El procedimiento es diferente según el producto que se instale con esta unidad. En las siguientes páginas, se describe cada procedimiento. Para la instalación con un MFP(A) / Impresora, consulte las páginas de la 1 a la 5, páginas de la 14 a la 15. Para la instalación con un MFP(B), consulte las páginas de la 6 a la 15.

**Deutsch**

Je nach verwendetem Modell ist eine andere Vorgehensweise zur Installation dieses Teils erforderlich. Die unterschiedlichen Vorgehensweisen werden auf den folgenden Seiten erläutert. Bei Installation an einem MFP(A) / Drucker siehe Seiten 1 bis 5, Seiten 14 bis 15. Bei Installation an einem MFP(B) siehe Seiten 6 bis 15.

**Italiano**

Si richiede una procedura diversa in funzione del prodotto su cui è installata l'unità. Le singole procedure sono descritte nelle pagine seguenti. Per l'installazione con un MFP(A) / stampante, vedere le pagine da 1 a 5, pagine da 14 a 15. Per l'installazione con un MFP(B), vedere le pagine da 6 a 15.

**简体中文**

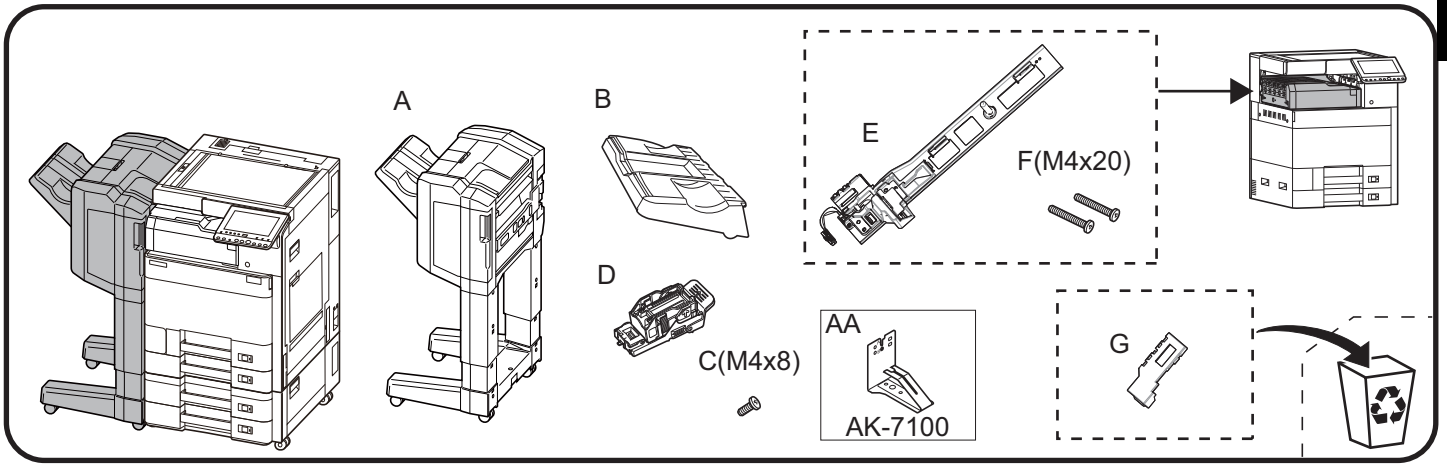
根据安装对象, 安装步骤略有不同。各个步骤记载在下面的页面。  
安装到 MFP(A) / 打印机上时, 请参见 P1-P5, P14-P15。  
安装到 MFP(B) 上时, 请参见 P6-P15。

**한국어**

이 장치에 설치되는 제품에 따라 절차가 다릅니다. 다음 페이지에서 각 절차를 설명합니다.  
MFP(A) / 프린터에 설치하는 경우 1 페이지 ~ 5 페이지, 14 페이지 ~ 15 페이지를 참조하십시오.  
MFP(B) 에 설치하는 경우 6 페이지 ~ 15 페이지를 참조하십시오.

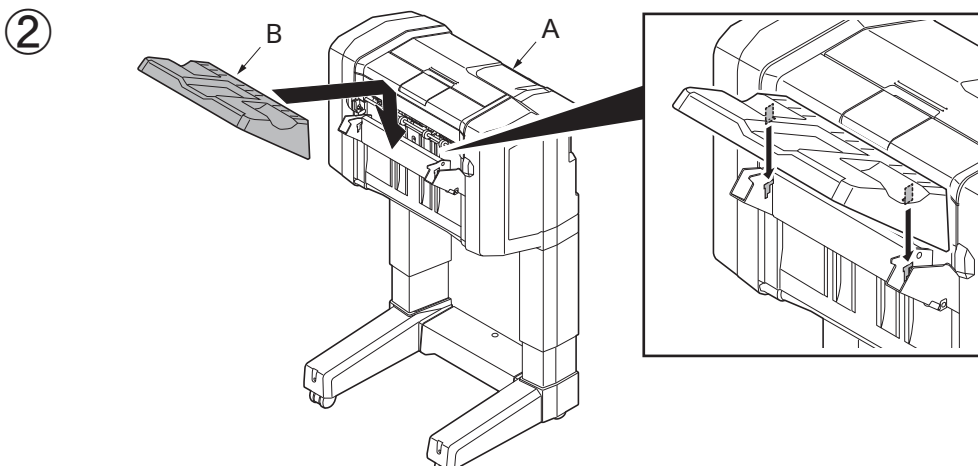
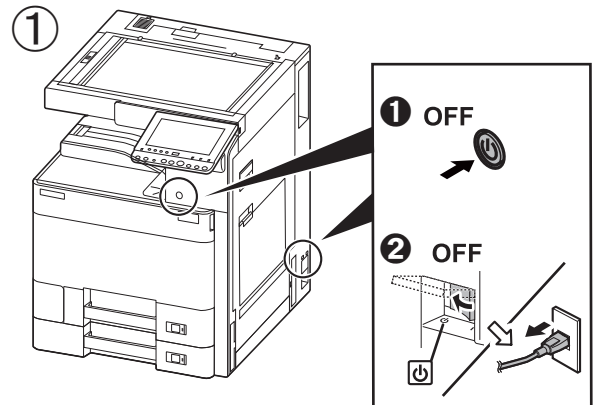
**日本語**

装着する対象によって、取付手順は異なります。それぞれ、以下のページに記載しています。  
MFP(A) / プリンターに設置する場合; 1 ページ ~ 5 ページ、14 ページ ~ 15 ページ  
MFP(B) に設置する場合; 6 ページ ~ 15 ページ



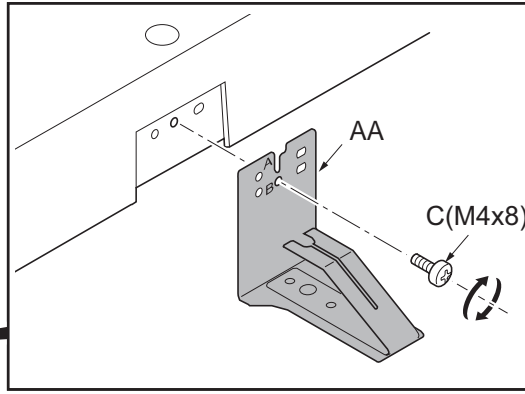
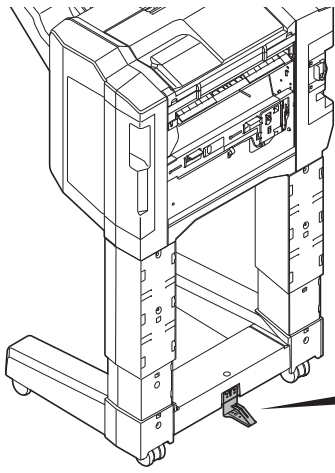
- (ENG) Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
- (FR) Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- (ES) Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- (DE) Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.
- (IT) Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.
- (CN) 如果附属品上带有固定胶带、缓冲材料时，请务必揭下。
- (KO) 동봉품에 고정 테이프, 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오.
- (JP) 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。

- (ENG) While the illustrations in this installation guide are for the MFP models, contents of the installation work are common for the MFP and printer models.
- (FR) Les illustrations de ce guide d'installation concernent les modèles MFP, mais les interventions d'installation sont communes aux modèles MFP et imprimantes.
- (ES) Aunque las ilustraciones de esta guía de instalación hacen referencia a los modelos MFP, el contenido de los procedimientos de instalación es el mismo para los modelos MFP y de impresora.
- (DE) Obwohl die Abbildungen in dieser Installationsanleitung sich auf MFPs beziehen, ist die Vorgehensweise für MFPs und Drucker die gleiche.
- (IT) Sebbene le illustrazioni contenute in questa guida di installazione siano relative a modelli MFP, i contenuti della procedura di installazione sono gli stessi per MFP e stampanti.
- (CN) 安装步骤中的视图是 MFP 机型，不过 MFP 和打印机的安装步骤是相同的。
- (KO) 이 설치 가이드는 MFP 모델용이지만, 설치 작업은 MFP와 프린터 공통입니다.
- (JP) 設置手順書内のイラストは、MFP ですが、設置作業は MFP/プリンター共通です。

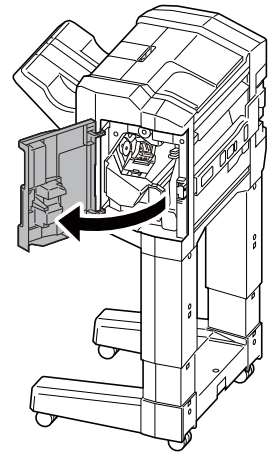


A

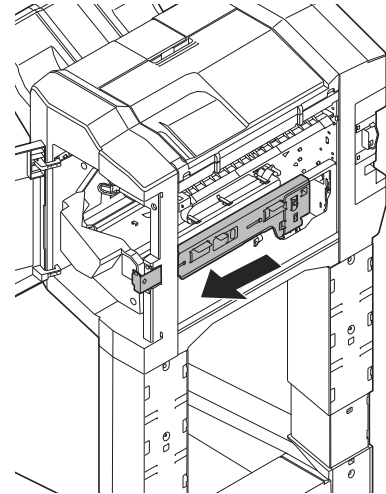
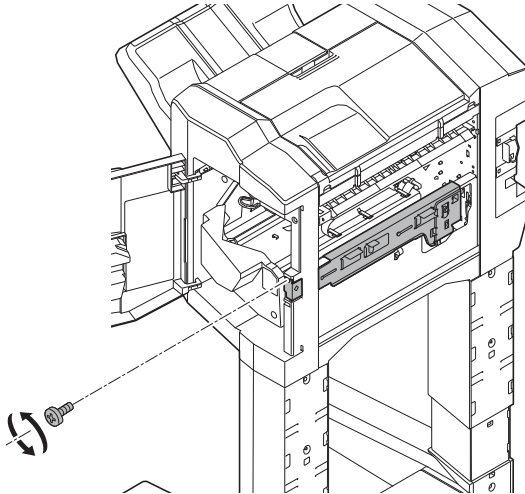
③



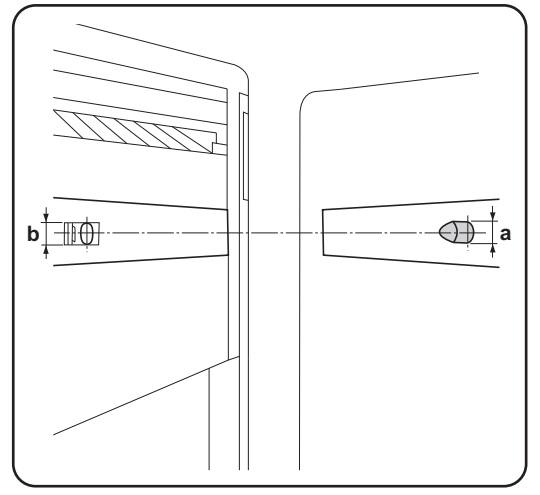
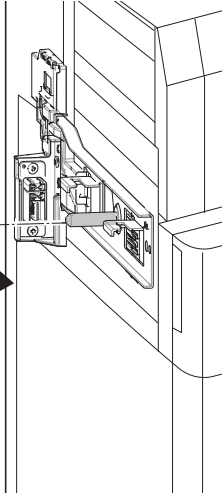
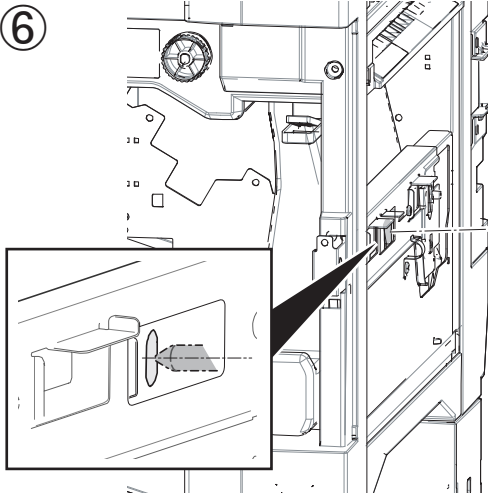
④



⑤



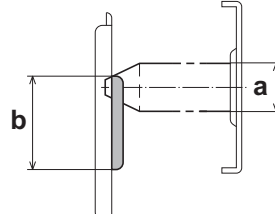
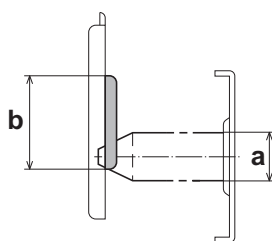
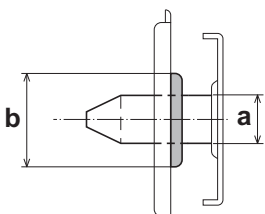
⑥



○ → ⑮

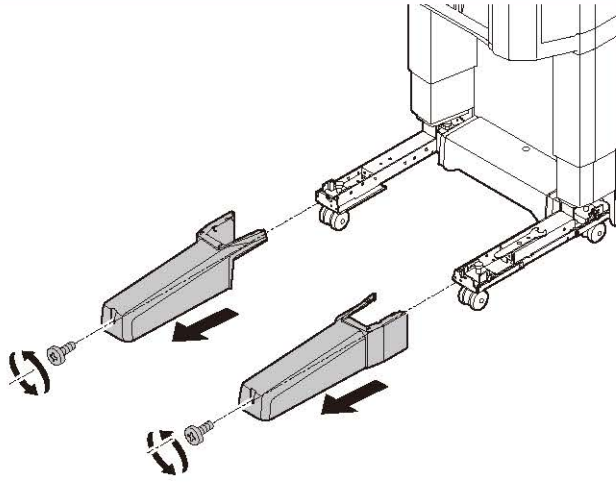
✗ → ⑦

✗ → ⑦

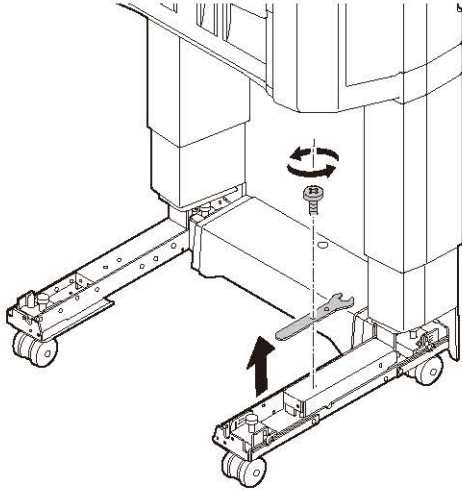




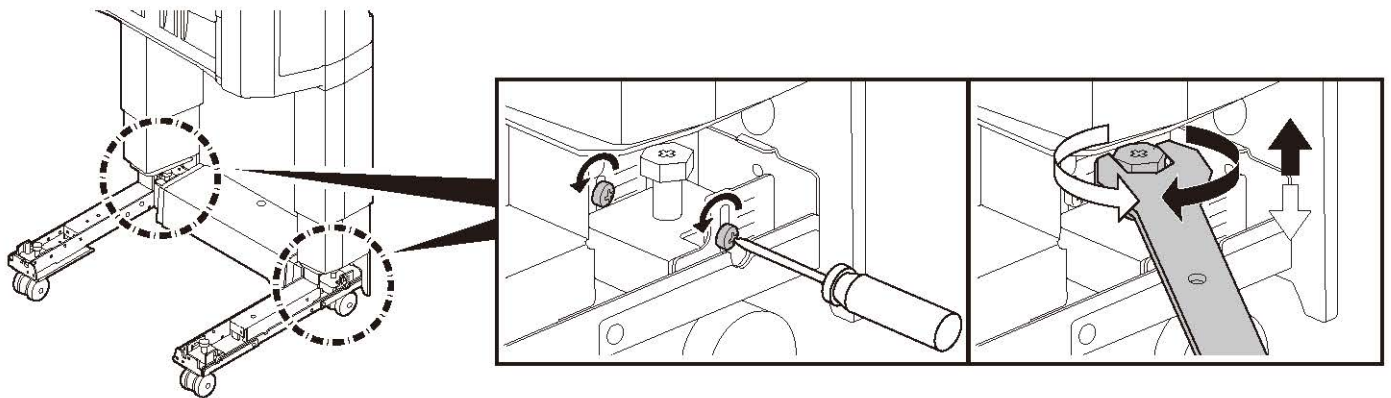
7



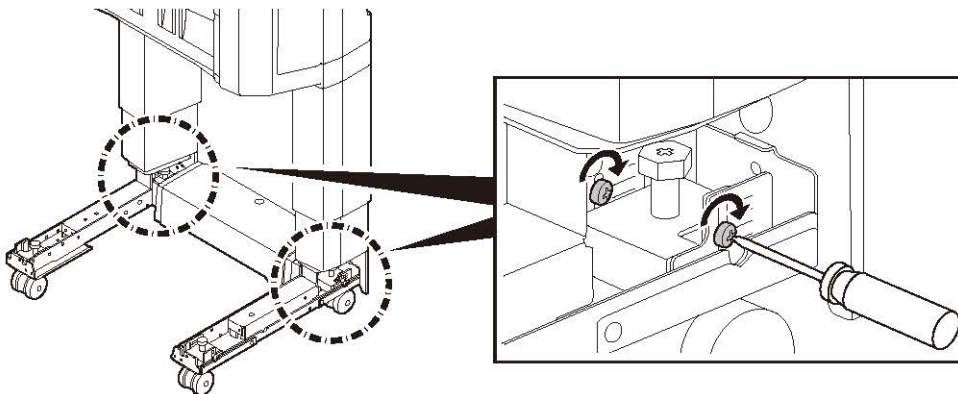
8



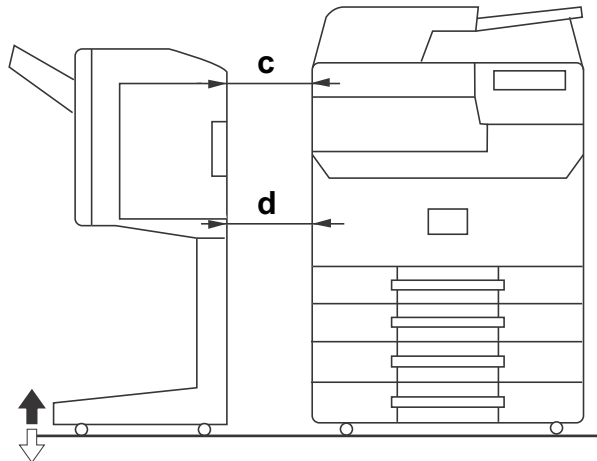
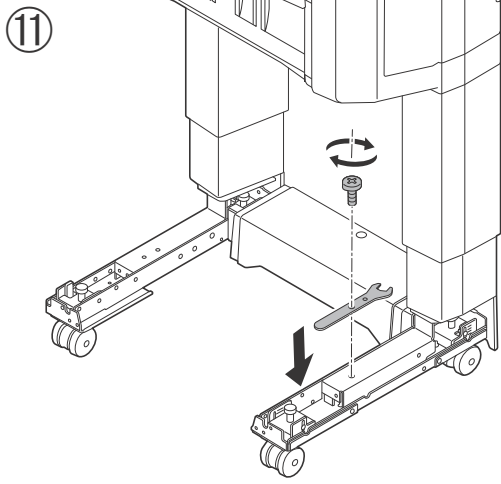
9



10

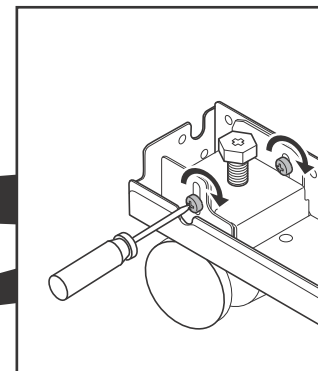
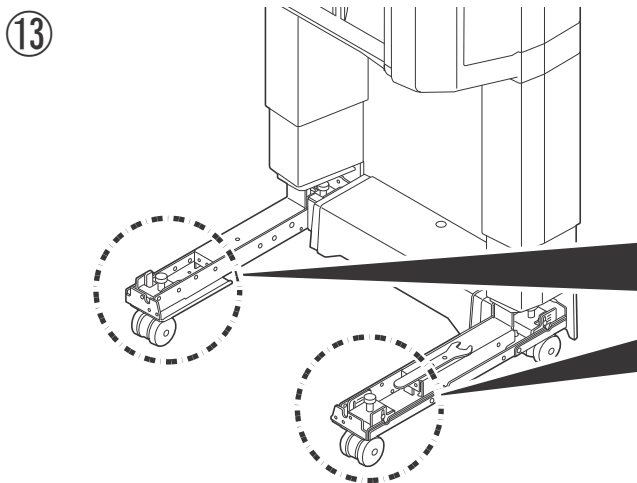
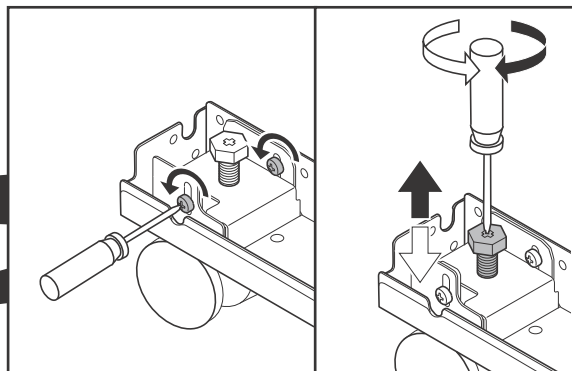
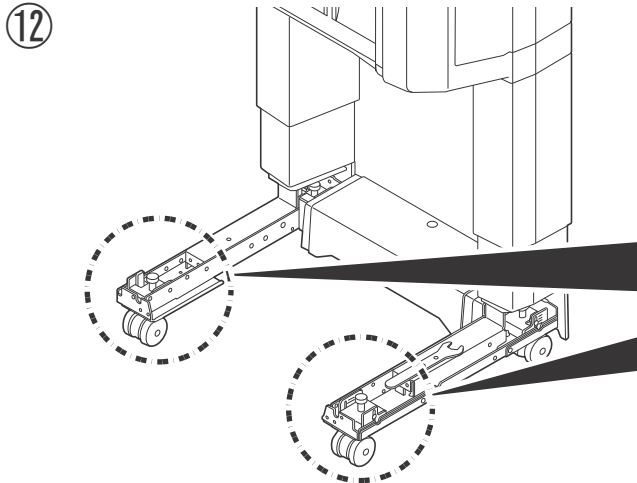


A

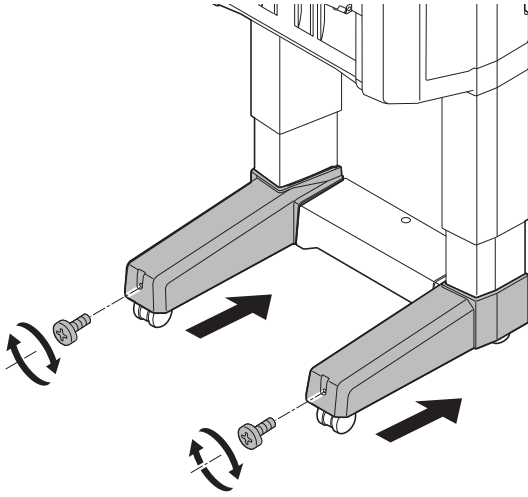


**c = d** → 14

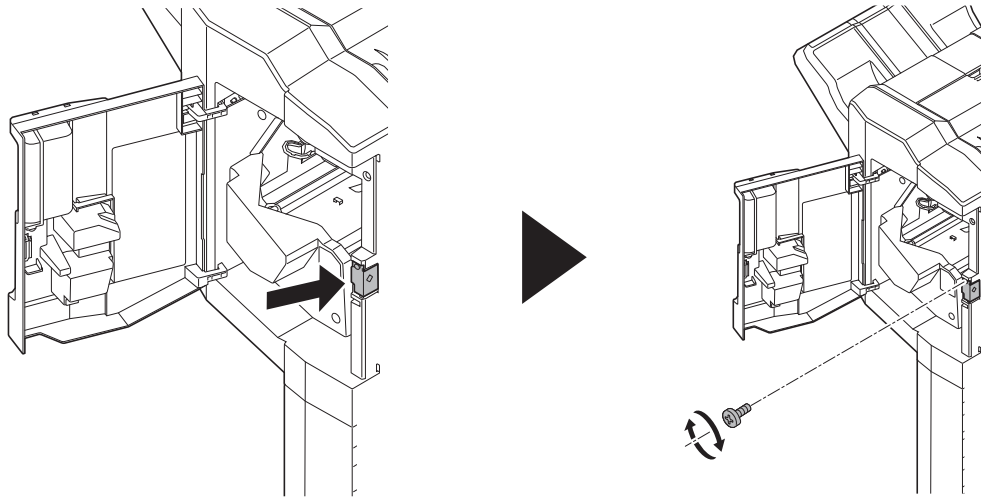
**c > d, c < d** → 12



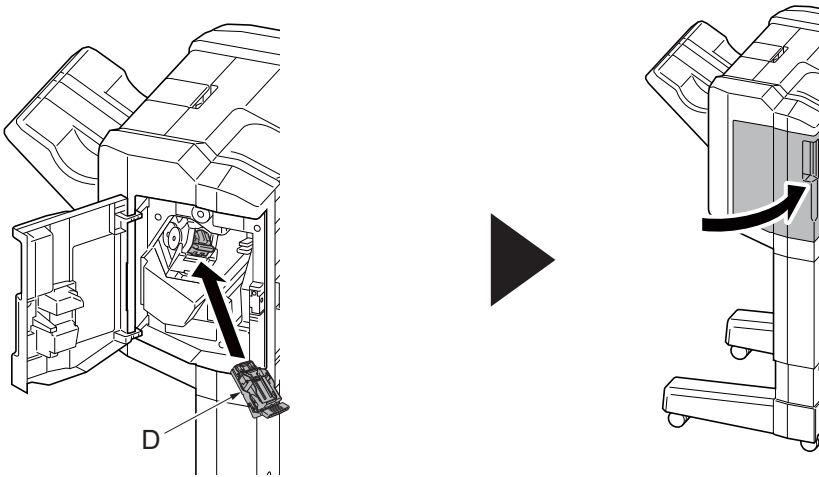
14



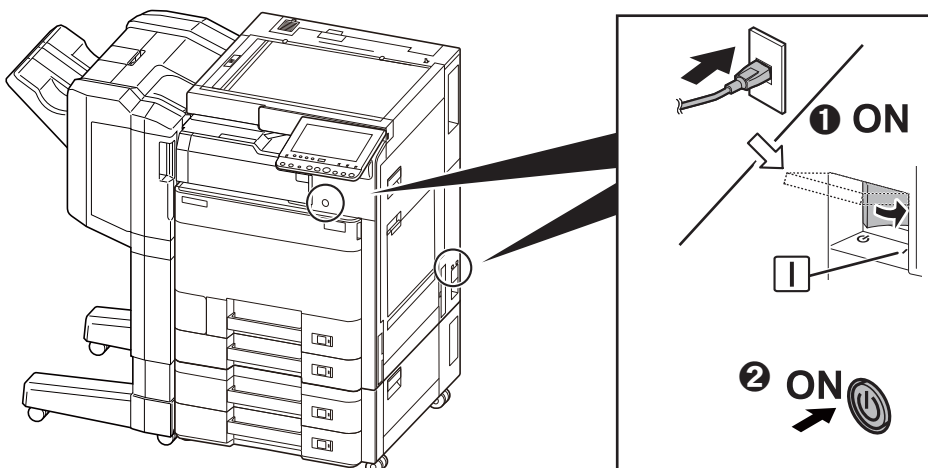
15



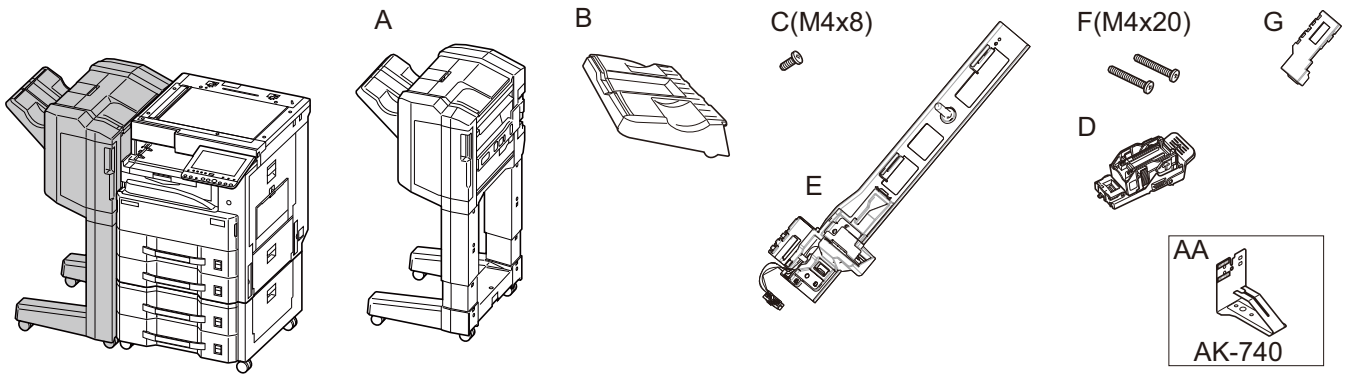
16



17

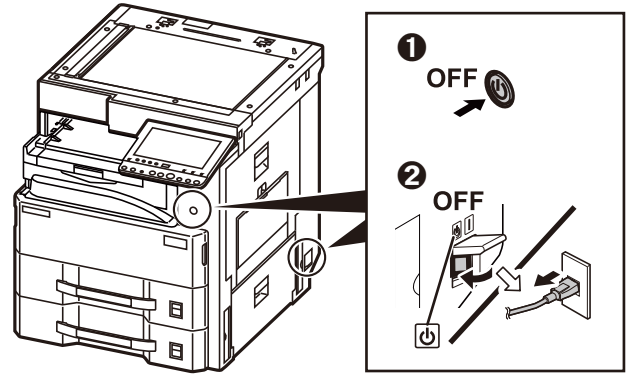


B

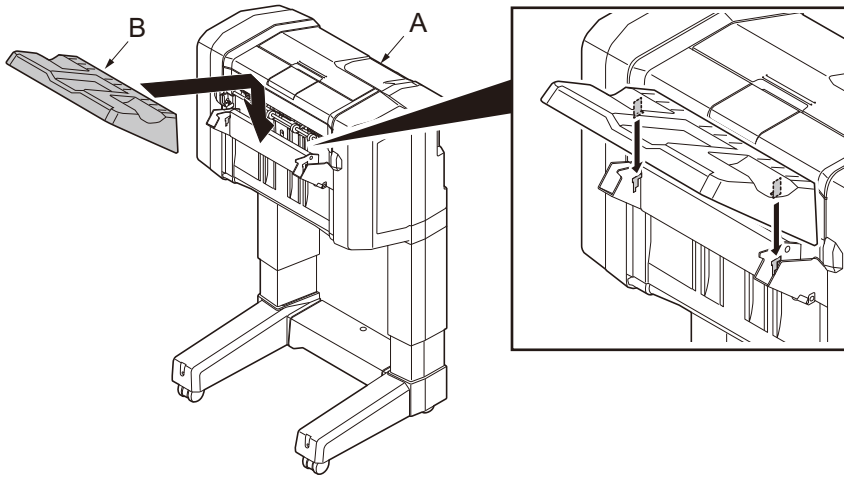


①

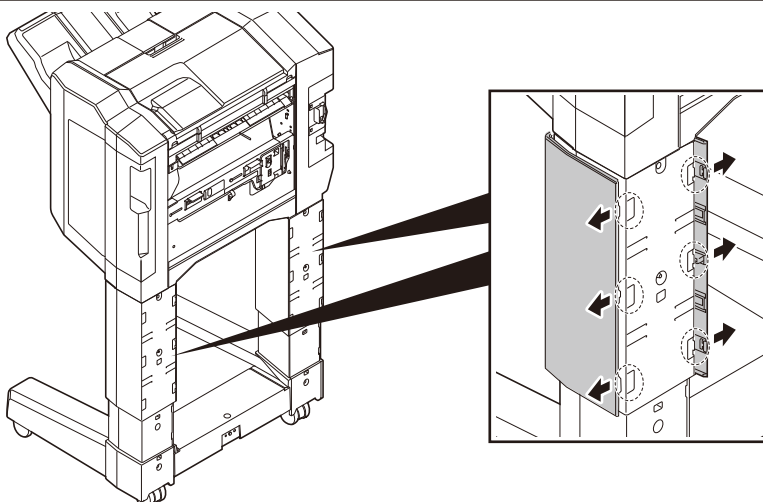
- Ⓜ ENG Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.
- Ⓜ FR Veuillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.
- Ⓜ ES Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.
- Ⓜ DE Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.
- Ⓜ IT Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.
- Ⓜ CN 如果附属品上带有固定胶带, 缓冲材料时务必揭下。
- Ⓜ KO 동봉품에 고정 테이프, 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오.
- Ⓜ JP 同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。



②

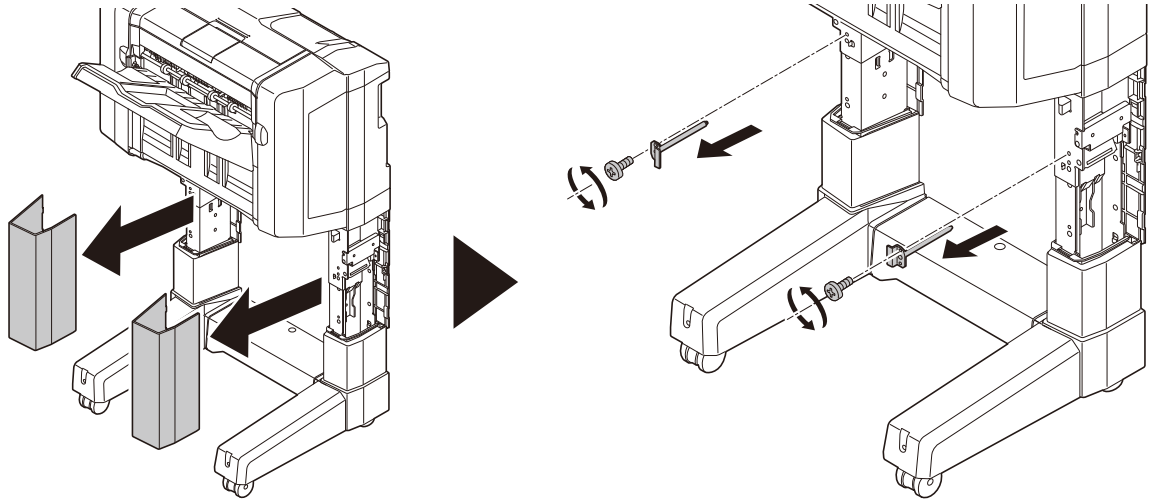


③

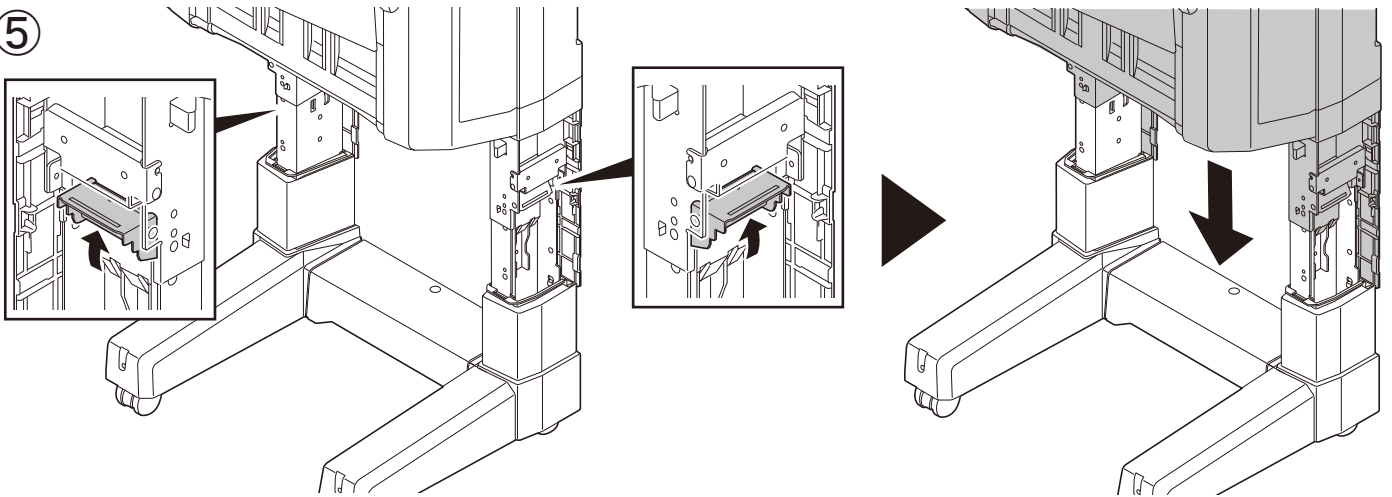


B

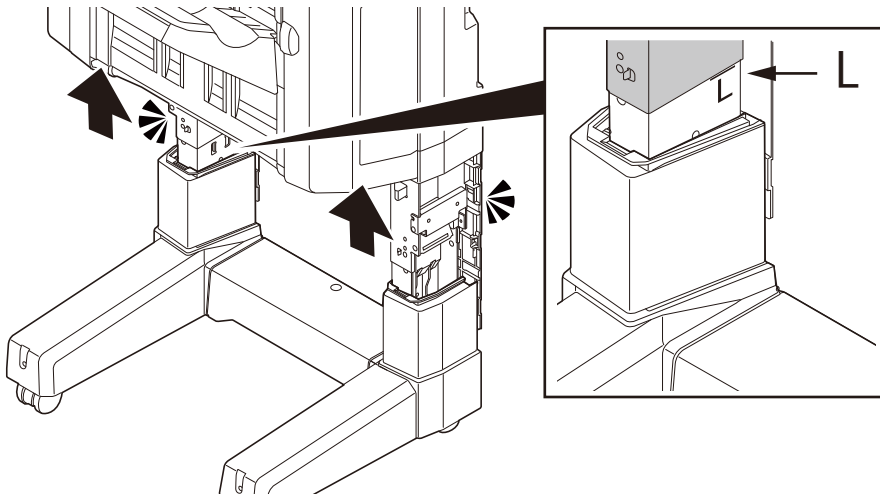
④



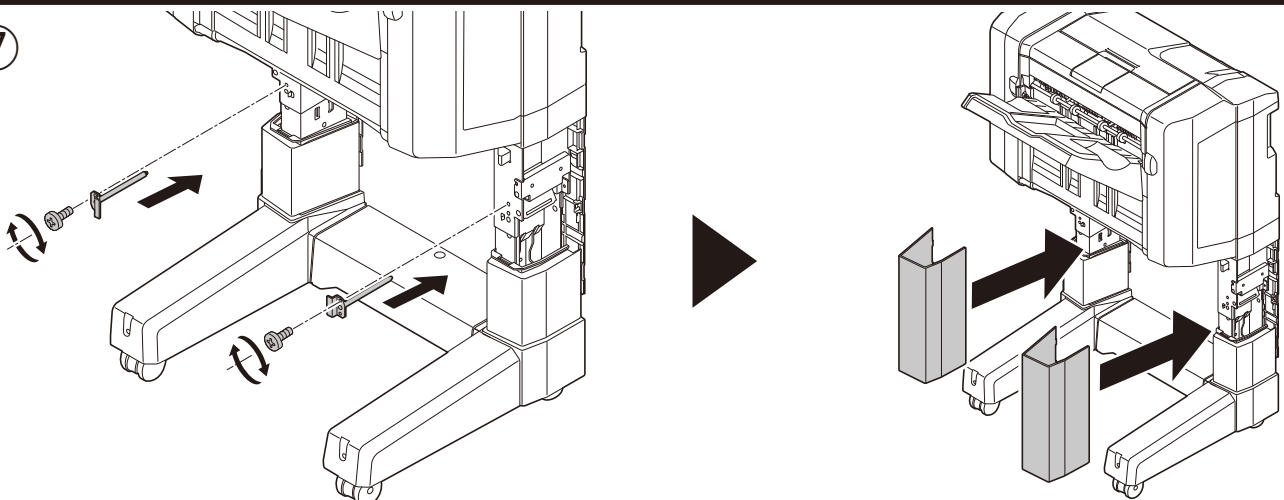
⑤



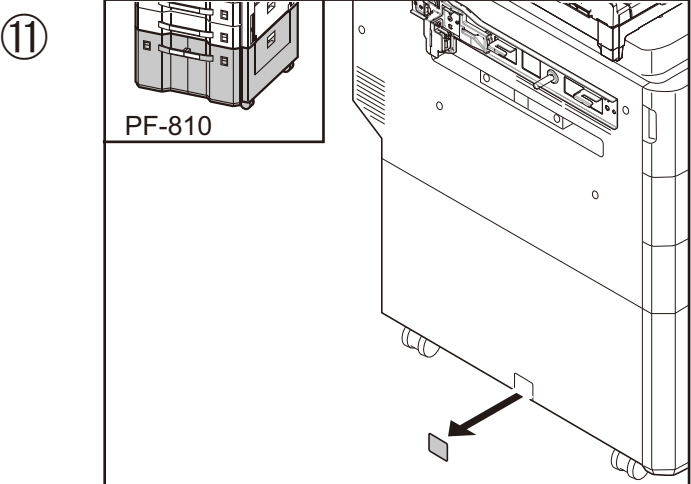
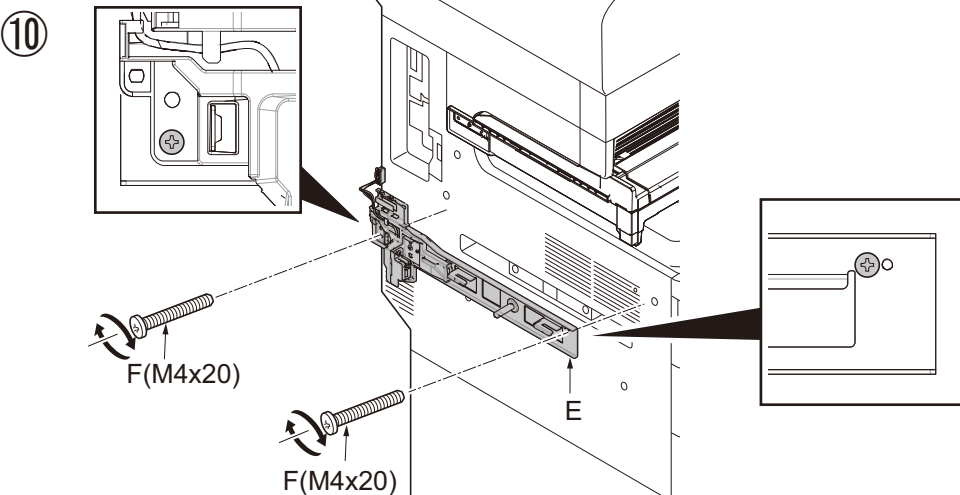
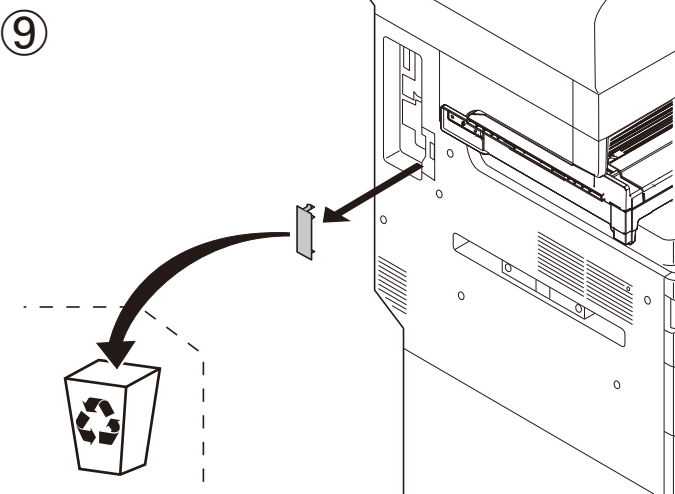
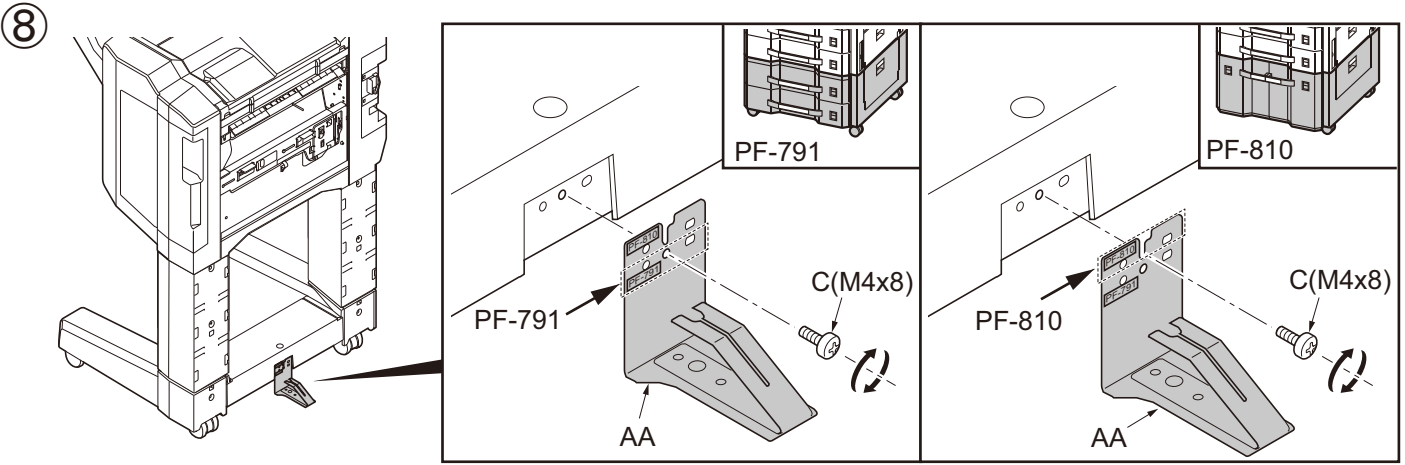
⑥



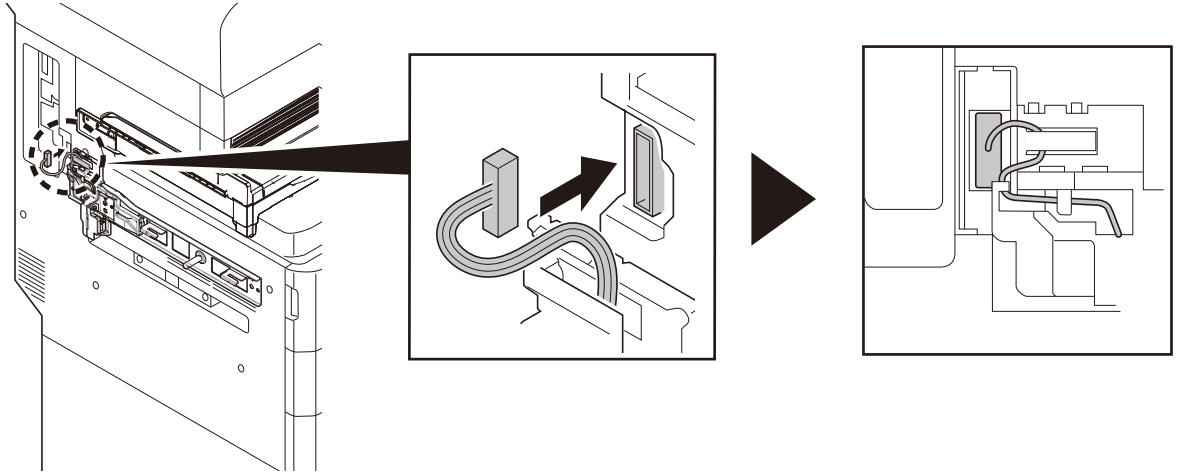
⑦



B

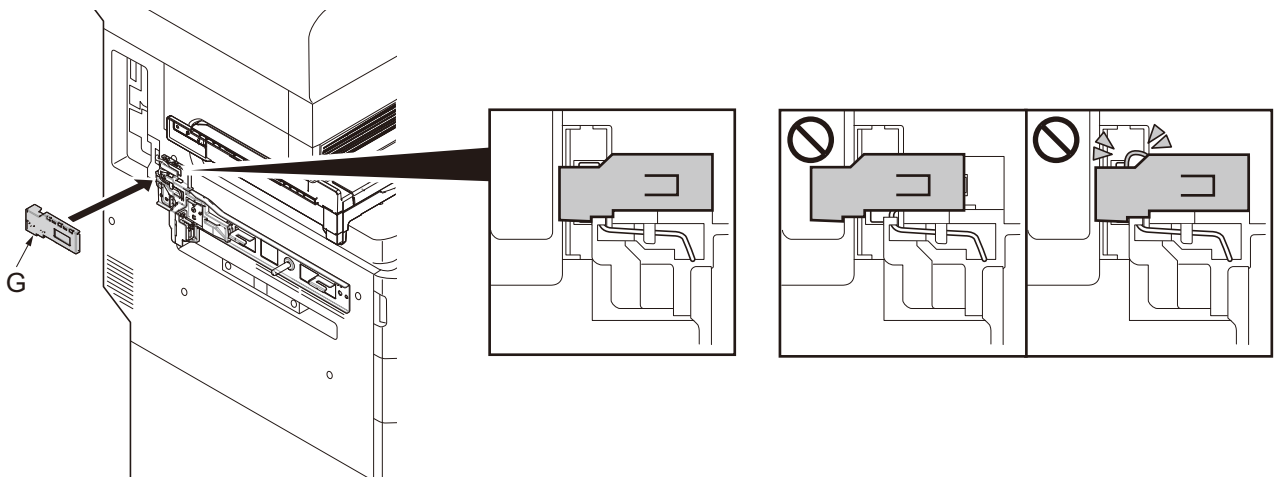


12

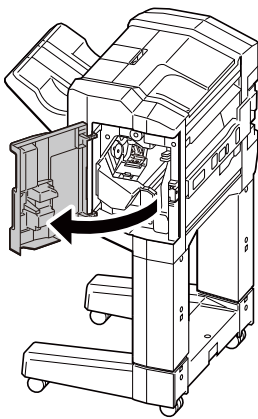


B

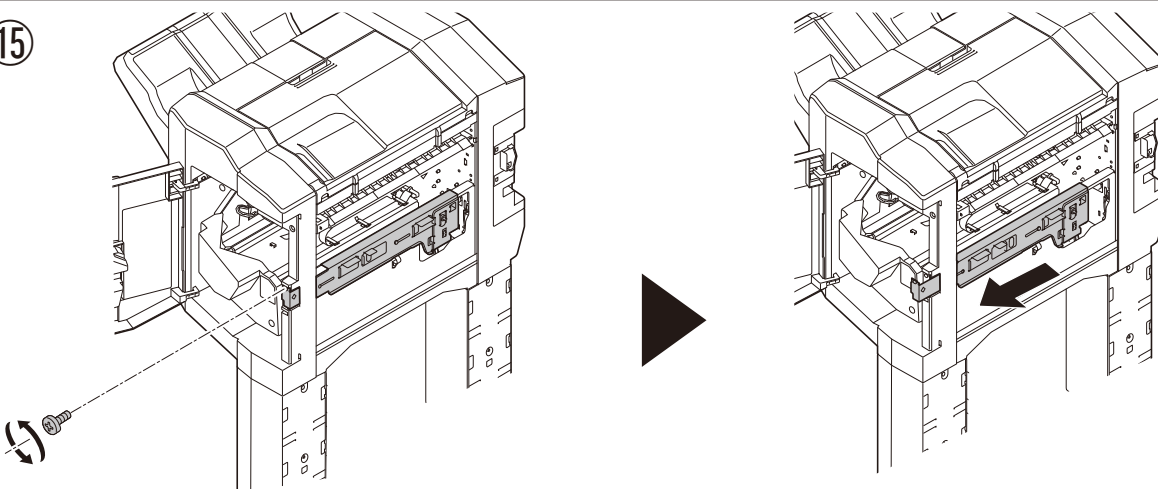
13



14

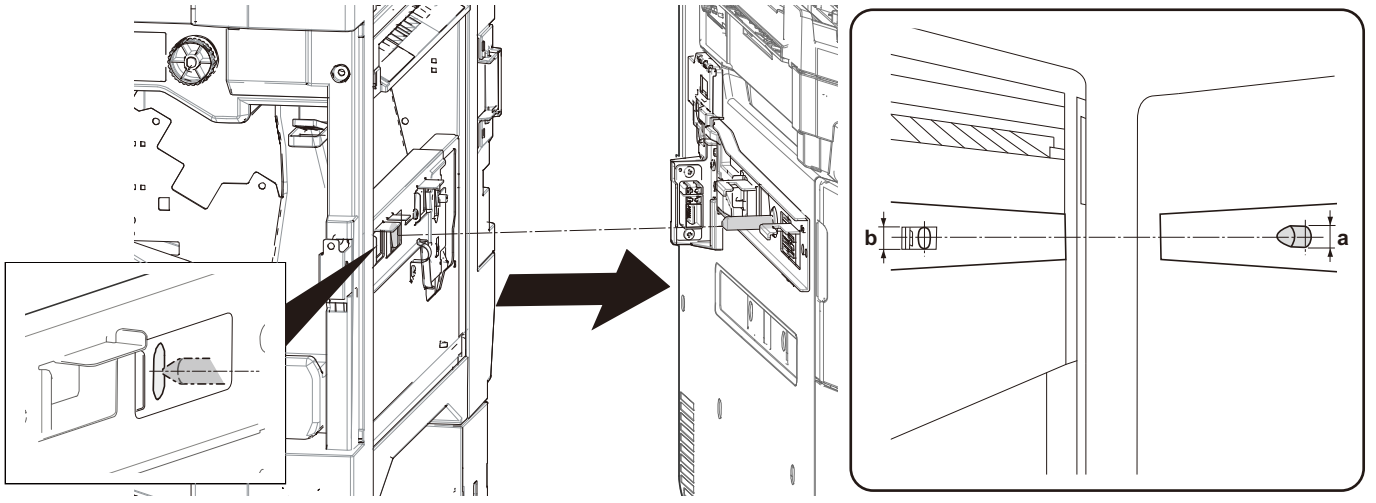


15



B

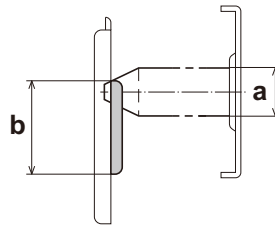
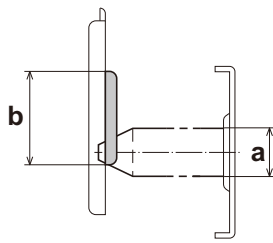
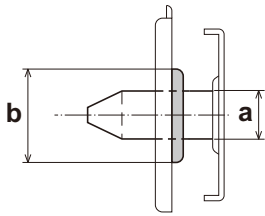
16



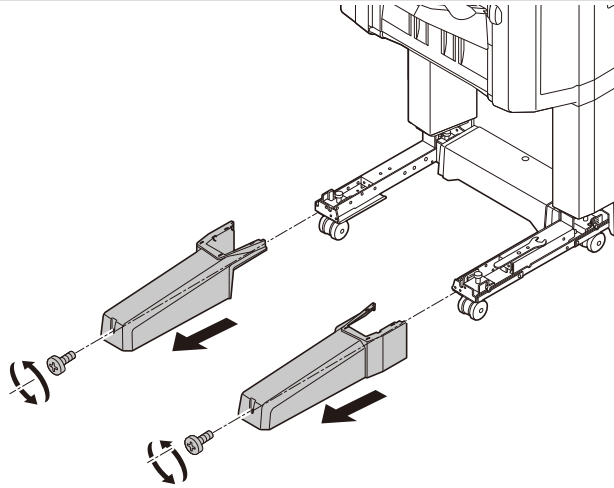
○ → 25

✗ → 17

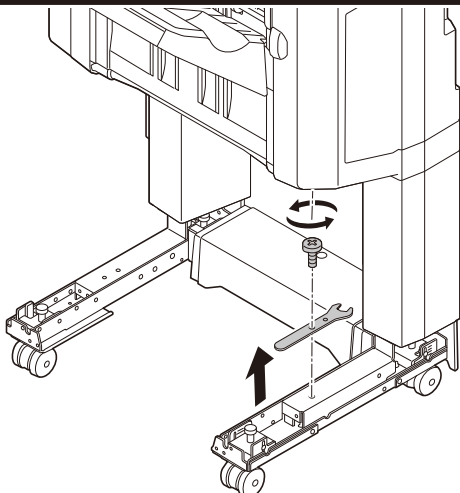
✗ → 17



17



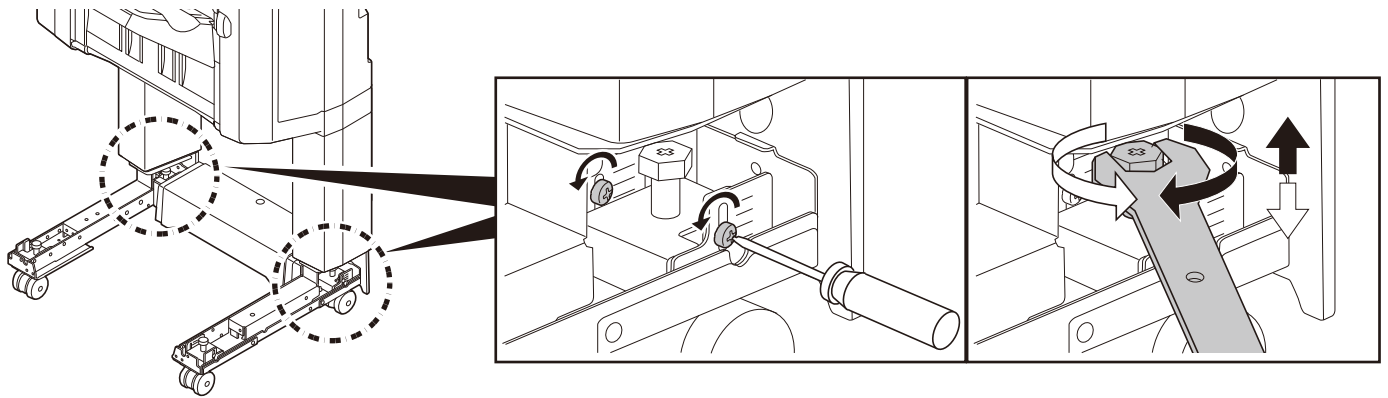
18



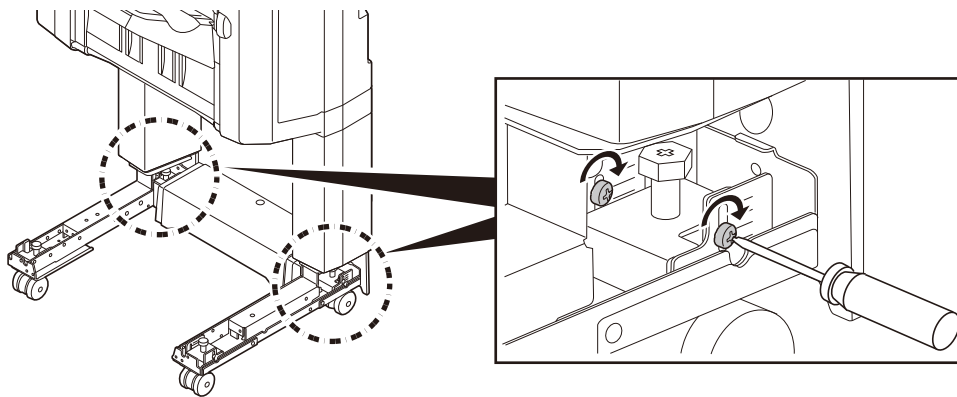


B

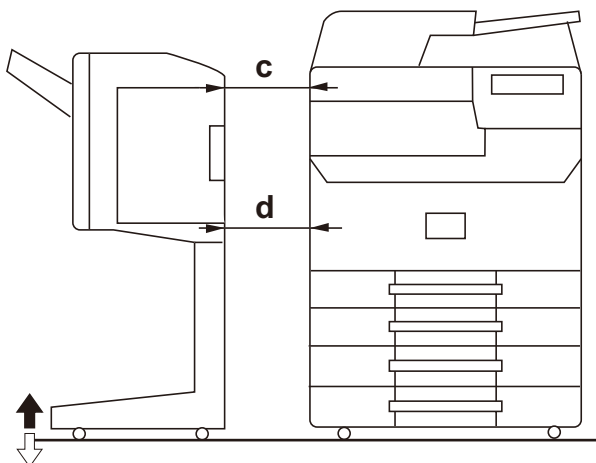
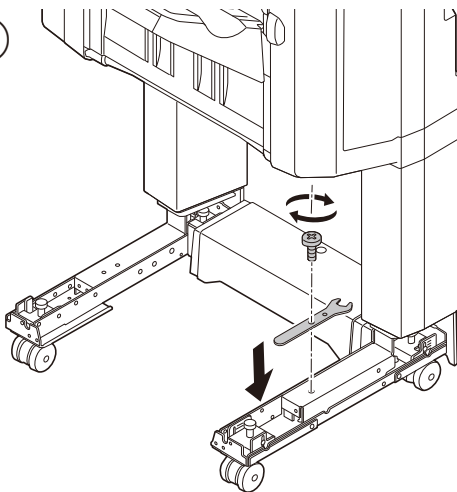
19



20



21

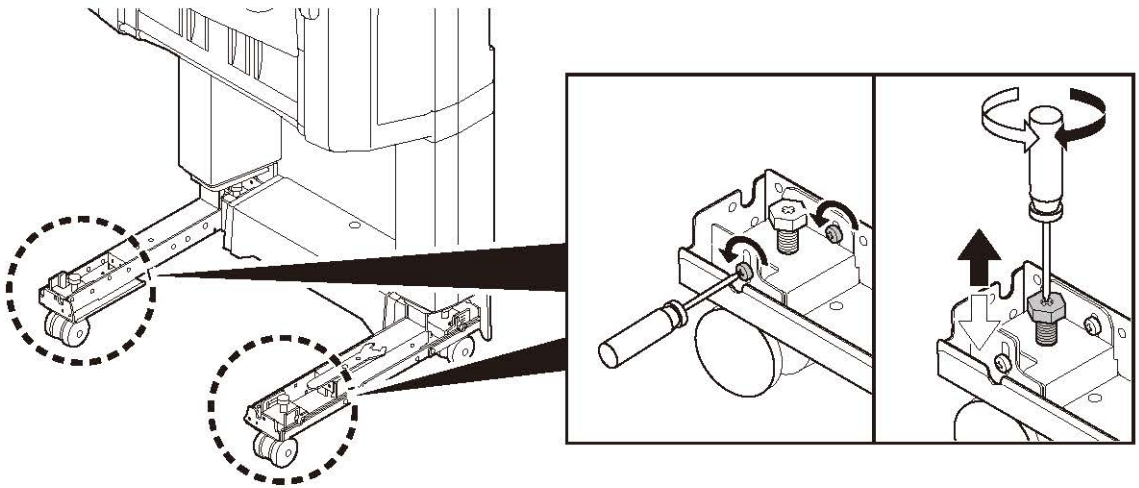


$c = d \rightarrow 24$

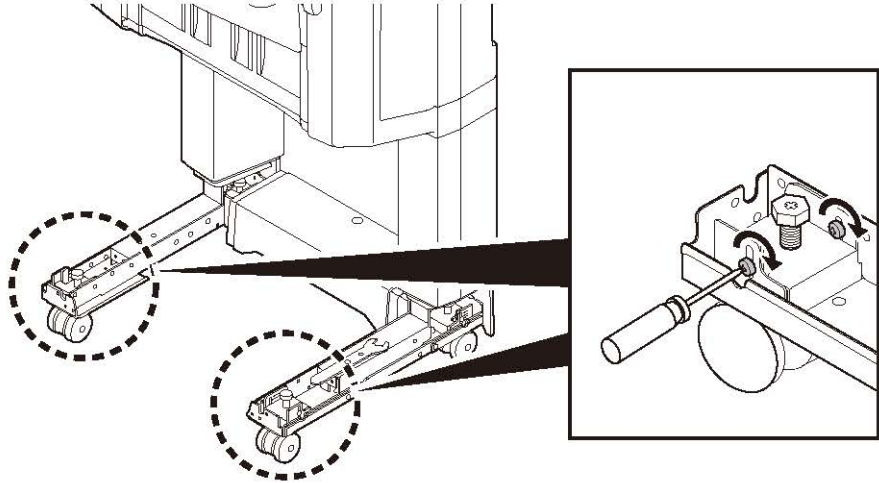
$c > d, c < d \rightarrow 22$

B

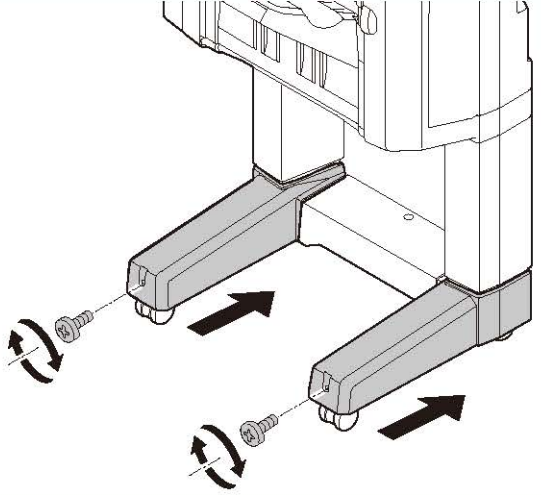
22



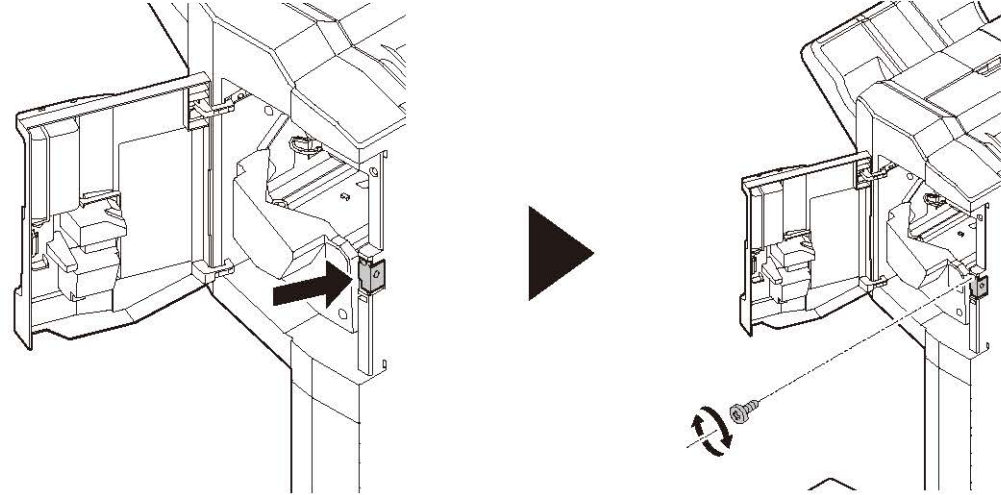
23



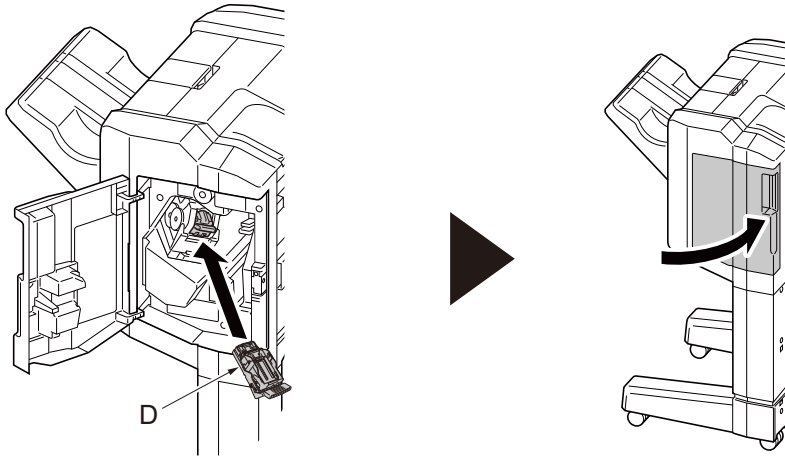
24



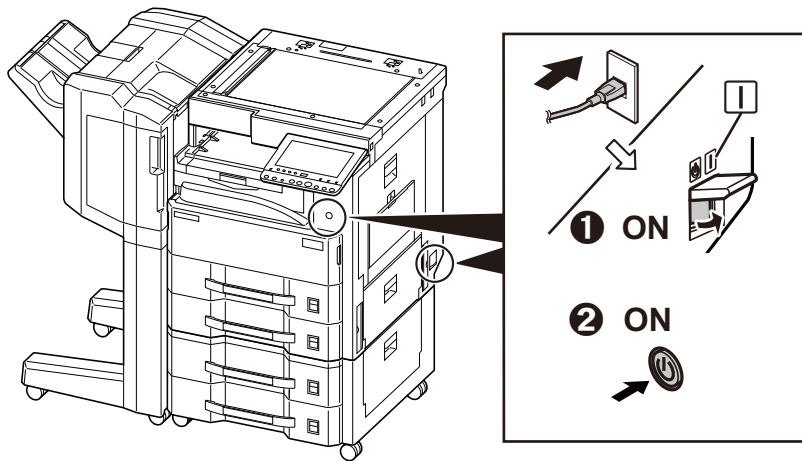
25

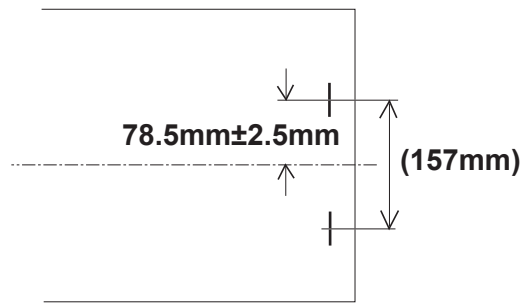


26



27



**English****Adjusting the stapling position**

1. Connect the machine power plug to the wall outlet and turn the machine main power switch on.
2. Make a test copy using staple mode (double stapled).
3. Check whether the stapling position is off-center. If the staple position is off-center, follow the procedure below to adjust the position.  
<Reference value> 78.5 mm  $\pm$  2.5 mm from the center of the paper

**Français****Ajustement de la position d'agrafage**

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise murale et mettre la machine sous tension.
2. Procéder à une copie d'essai en mode agrafage (double agrafage).
3. Vérifier que la position d'agrafage n'est pas en décalage. Si la position d'agrafage est décalée, la régler en procédant de la manière suivante.  
<Valeur de référence> 78,5 mm  $\pm$  2,5 mm depuis le milieu de la feuille de papier

**Español****Ajuste de la posición de grapado**

1. Conecte el enchufe de la máquina al receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal de la máquina.
2. Haga una copia de prueba en el modo de grapado (grapado doble).
3. Compruebe si la posición de grapado está descentrada. Si la posición de grapado está descentrada, realice el siguiente procedimiento para ajustar la posición.  
<Valor de referencia> 78,5 mm  $\pm$  2,5 mm del centro del papel

**Deutsch****Justage der Heftposition**

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des Geräts in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie das Gerät am Hauptschalter ein.
2. Erstellen Sie eine Probekopie im Heftmodus (doppelt geheftet).
3. Prüfen Sie, ob die Heftposition außermittig ist. Falls die Heftposition außermittig ist, müssen Sie sie wie folgend einstellen.  
<Bezugswert> 78,5 mm  $\pm$  2,5 mm von der Blattmitte

**Italiano****Regolazione della posizione di pinzatura**

1. Collegare la spina alla presa di corrente a muro e accendere l'interruttore di alimentazione della macchina.
2. Eseguire una copia di prova utilizzando la modalità di spillatura con punti metallici (spillatura doppia).
3. Verificare che la posizione di spillatura non sia fuori centro. Se la posizione di spillatura è fuori centro, seguire la procedura riportata sotto per regolare la posizione.  
<Valore di riferimento> 78,5 mm  $\pm$  2,5 mm dal centro del foglio

**简体中文****调节装订位置**

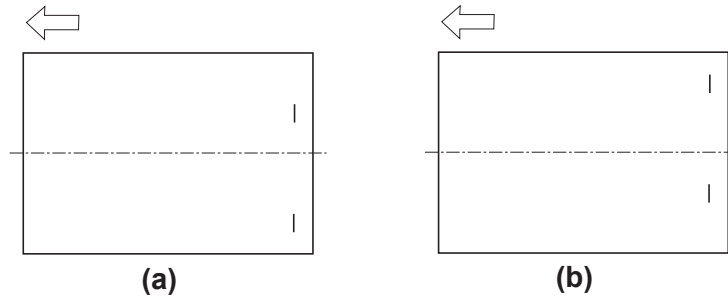
1. 将机器上的电源插头插入电源插座中，打开主电源开关。
2. 在装订模式（2点固定）下进行测试复印。
3. 确认装订位置的偏差。装订位置偏离中心时，按以下步骤进行调节。  
<基准值> 距离纸张中心 78.5mm $\pm$ 2.5mm

**한국어****스태플 위치 조정**

1. 본체 전원플러그를 콘센트에 꽂고 주 전원 스위치를 ON으로 합니다.
2. 스테이플 모드(2점)에서 시험복사를 합니다.
3. 스테이플 위치의 센터 어긋남을 확인합니다. 스테이플 위치가 중심에서 벗어난 경우, 다음 순서로 조정을 합니다.  
<기준치> 용지 센터에서 78.5mm $\pm$ 2.5mm

**日本語****ステーブル位置の調整**

1. 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチをONにする。
2. ステーブルモード(2箇所止め)でテストコピーを行う。
3. ステーブル位置のセンターずれを確認する。ステーブル位置が中心からずれていた場合、次の手順で調整を行う。  
<基準値> 用紙センターより 78.5mm $\pm$ 2.5mm



4. Set the maintenance mode U246 and select [Finisher] > [Staple HP].
5. Adjust the values.  
If the paper is stapled too close to the front of the machine (a): Increase the setting value.  
If the paper is stapled too close to the rear of the machine (b): Decrease the setting value.  
Amount of change per step: 0.1 mm

6. Press the [Start] key to confirm the setting value.
7. Perform a test copy.
8. Repeat steps 4 to 7 until the staple position is within the reference value.  
<Reference value> 78.5 mm  $\pm$  2.5 mm from the center of the paper

4. Passez en mode maintenance U246 et sélectionnez [Finisher] > [Staple HP].
5. Régler les valeurs.  
Si le papier est agrafé trop près de l'avant de la machine (a): augmenter la valeur de réglage.  
Si le papier est agrafé trop près de l'arrière de la machine (b): réduire la valeur de réglage.  
Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,1 mm

6. Appuyer sur la touche de [Départ] pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.
7. Effectuer une copie de test.
8. Recommencer les étapes 4 à 7 jusqu'à ce que la position d'agrafe soit conforme à la valeur de référence.  
<Valeur de référence> 78,5 mm  $\pm$  2,5 mm depuis le milieu de la feuille de papier

4. Configure el modo de mantenimiento U246 y seleccione [Finisher] > [Staple HP].
5. Ajuste los valores.  
Si el grapado del papel se encuentra demasiado cerca del frente de la máquina (a): aumente el valor de configuración.  
Si el grapado del papel se encuentra demasiado cerca de la parte posterior de la máquina (b): disminuya el valor de configuración.  
Magnitud del cambio por incremento: 0,1 mm

6. Pulse la tecla de [Inicio] para confirmar el valor de configuración.
7. Haga una copia de prueba.
8. Repita los pasos 4 a 7 hasta que la posición de grapado se encuentre dentro del valor de referencia.  
<Valor de referencia> 78,5 mm  $\pm$  2,5 mm del centro del papel

4. Aktivieren Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 und wählen Sie [Finisher] > [Staple HP].
5. Die Werte einstellen.  
Falls das Papier zu nahe am vorderen Rand des Geräts (a) abgestapelt wird: Vergrößern Sie den Stellwert.  
Falls das Papier zu nahe am hinteren Rand des Geräts (b) abgestapelt wird: Verkleinern Sie den Stellwert.  
Änderung pro Schritt: 0,1 mm

6. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der [Start]-Taste bestätigen.
7. Eine Testkopie erstellen.
8. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 4 bis 7, bis die Heftposition im Bereich des Bezugswerts liegt.  
<Bezugswert> 78,5 mm  $\pm$  2,5 mm von der Blattmitte

4. Impostare la modalità manutenzione U246, quindi selezionare [Finisher] > [Staple HP].
5. Regolare i valori.  
Se il foglio viene spillato troppo vicino alla parte anteriore della macchina (a): Aumentare il valore di impostazione.  
Se il foglio viene spillato troppo vicino alla parte posteriore della macchina (b): Diminuire il valore di impostazione.  
Entità modifica per passo: 0,1 mm

6. Premere il tasto di [Avvio] per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.
7. Eseguire una copia di prova.
8. Ripetere i passi 4 to 7 finché la posizione di spillatura risulta all'interno del valore di riferimento.  
<Valore di riferimento> 78,5 mm  $\pm$  2,5 mm dal centro del foglio

4. 进入维修保养模式 U246, 把 [Finisher]>[Staple HP] 。
5. 调整设定值。  
装订位置向机器前部偏移时 (a) : 调高设定值。  
装订位置向机器后部偏移时 (b) : 调低设定值。  
设定值的一个调整单位变化量 : 0.1mm

6. 按 [ 开始 ] 键, 以确定设定值。
7. 进行测试复印。
8. 重复步骤 4 ~ 7, 直到装订位置在基准范围内为止。  
<基准值> 距离纸张中心 78.5mm $\pm$ 2.5mm

4. 메인テナンス 모드 U246 을 설정하고 [Finisher] > [Staple HP] 를 선택합니다 .
5. 설정치를 조정합니다 .  
스테이플 위치가 기기앞측으로 벗어난 경우 (a): 설정치를 높입니다 .  
스테이플 위치가 기기뒷측으로 벗어난 경우 (b): 설정치를 낮춥니다 .  
1 스텝당 변화량 : 0.1mm

6. [ 복사 / 시작 ] 키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다 .
7. 시험복사를 합니다 .
8. 스테이플 위치가 기준치내가 될 때까지 순서 4 ~ 7 을 반복합니다 .  
< 기준치 > 용지 센터에서 78.5mm $\pm$ 2.5mm

4. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、[Finisher] > [Staple HP] を選択する。
5. 設定値を調整する。  
ステープル位置が機械前側にずれている場合 (a) : 設定値を上げる。  
ステープル位置が機械後側にずれている場合 (b) : 設定値を下げる。  
1 ステップ当たりの変化量 : 0.1mm

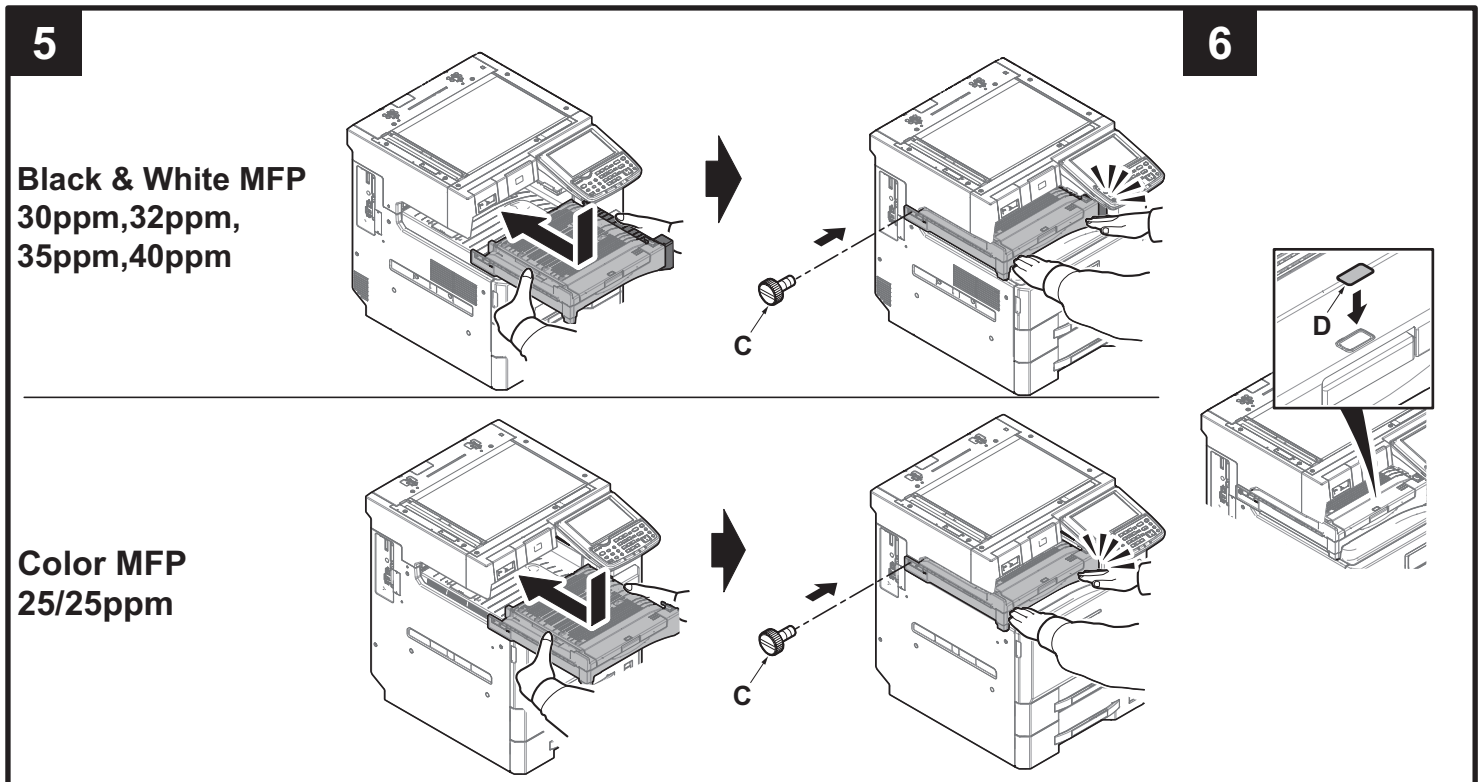
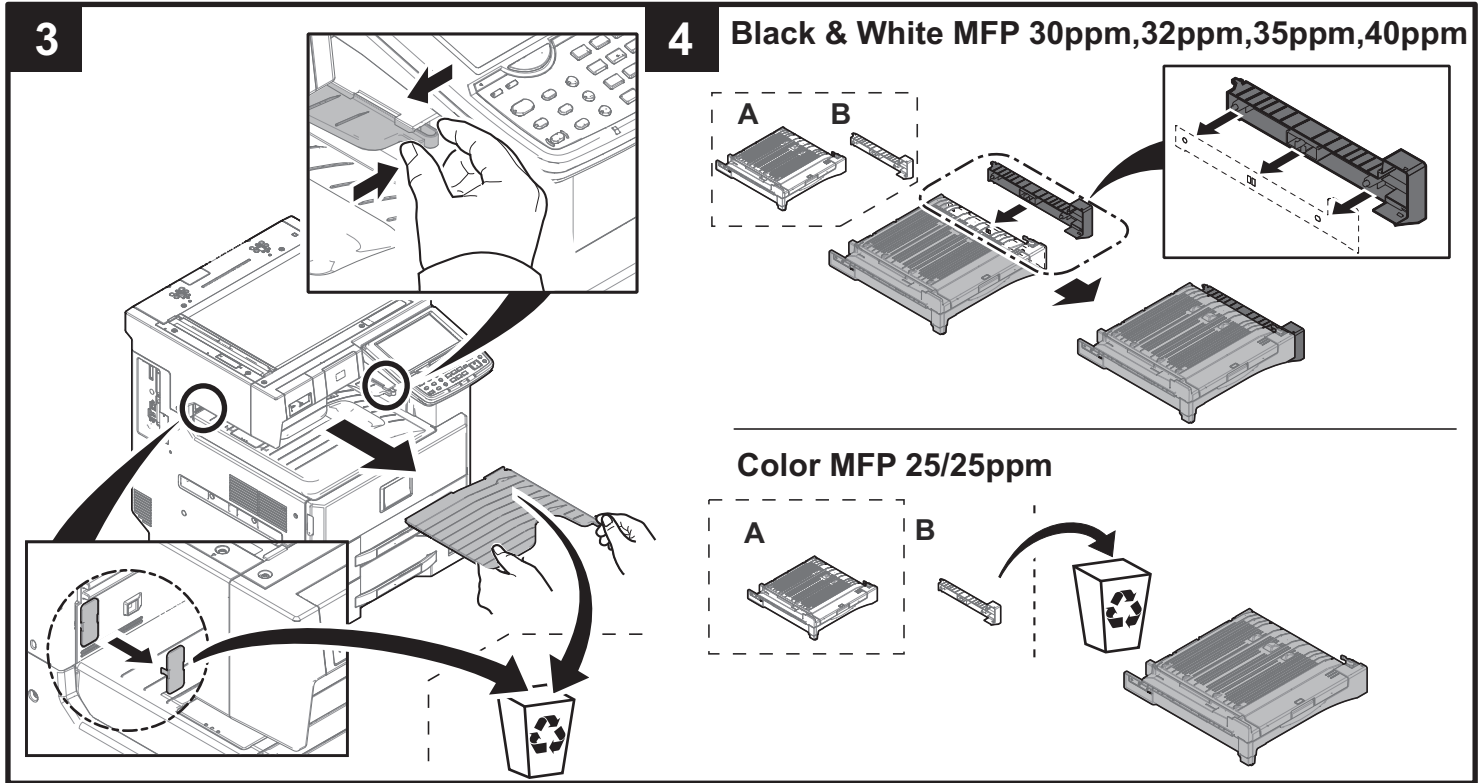
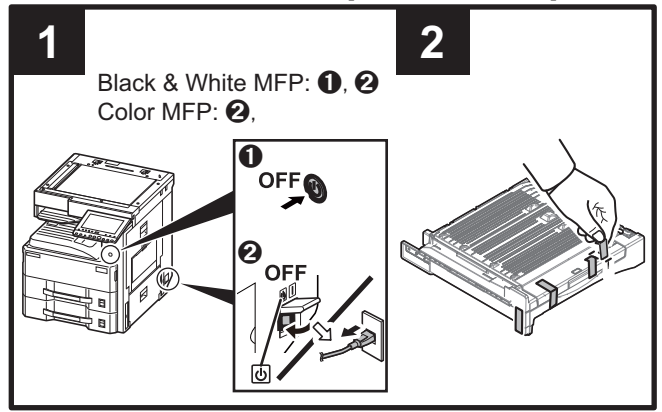
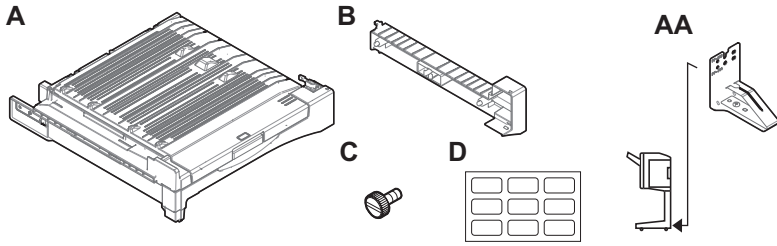
6. [ スタート ] キーを押し、設定値を確定する。
7. テストコピーを行う。
8. ステープル位置が基準値内になるまで、手順 4 ~ 7 を繰り返す。  
< 基準値 > 用紙センターより 78.5mm $\pm$ 2.5mm

(8) AK-740

# AK-740 / (Bridge unit) Installation Guide

# AK-740 ATTACHMENT KIT

for Black & White MFP 30ppm,32ppm,35ppm,40ppm  
Color MFP 25/25ppm



303PD5671002

(9) MT-730

# MT-730 / (Mailbox) Installation Guide



**INSTALLATION GUIDE**

**GUIDE D'INSTALLATION**

**GUÍA DE INSTALACION**

**INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG**

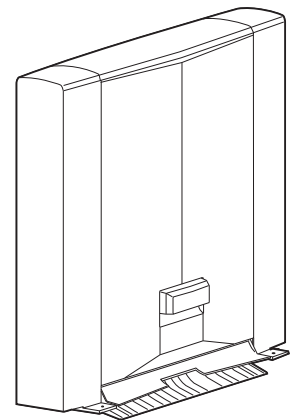
**GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE**

**安装手册**

**설치안내서**

**設置手順書**

**MT-730(B)**



### English

A different procedure is required depending on the product which is installed with this unit. Each procedure is described in the following pages.  
When installing to a document finisher, see Page 1 to Page 6.  
When installing to a Printer, see Page 7 to Page 12.

---

### Français

Une procédure différente est requise selon le produit qui est installé avec cette unité. Chaque procédure est décrite dans les pages suivantes.  
Lors de l'installation sur un module finition de documents, voir Page 1 à Page 6.  
Lors de l'installation sur une imprimante, voir Page 7 à Page 12.

---

### Español

El procedimiento es diferente según el producto que se instale con esta unidad. En las siguientes páginas, se describe cada procedimiento.  
Para la instalación con un finalizador de documentos, consulte las páginas de la 1 a la 6.  
Para la instalación con una impresora, consulte las páginas de la 7 a la 12.

---

### Deutsch

Je nach verwendetem Modell ist eine andere Vorgehensweise zur Installation dieses Teils erforderlich. Die unterschiedlichen Vorgehensweisen werden auf den folgenden Seiten erläutert.  
Bei Installation an einem Dokumentenfinisher siehe Seiten 1 bis 6.  
Bei Installation an einem Drucker siehe Seiten 7 bis 12.

---

### Italiano

Si richiede una procedura diversa in funzione del prodotto su cui è installata l'unità. Le singole procedure sono descritte nelle pagine seguenti.  
Quando si installa un finisher documenti, vedere le pagine da 1 a 6.  
Quando si installa una stampante, vedere le pagine da 7 a 12.

---

### 简体中文

根据安装对象，安装步骤略有不同。各个步骤记载在下面的页面。  
安装到装订器时，请参见第 1 ~ 6 页。  
安装到打印机时，请参见第 7 ~ 12 页。

---

### 한국어

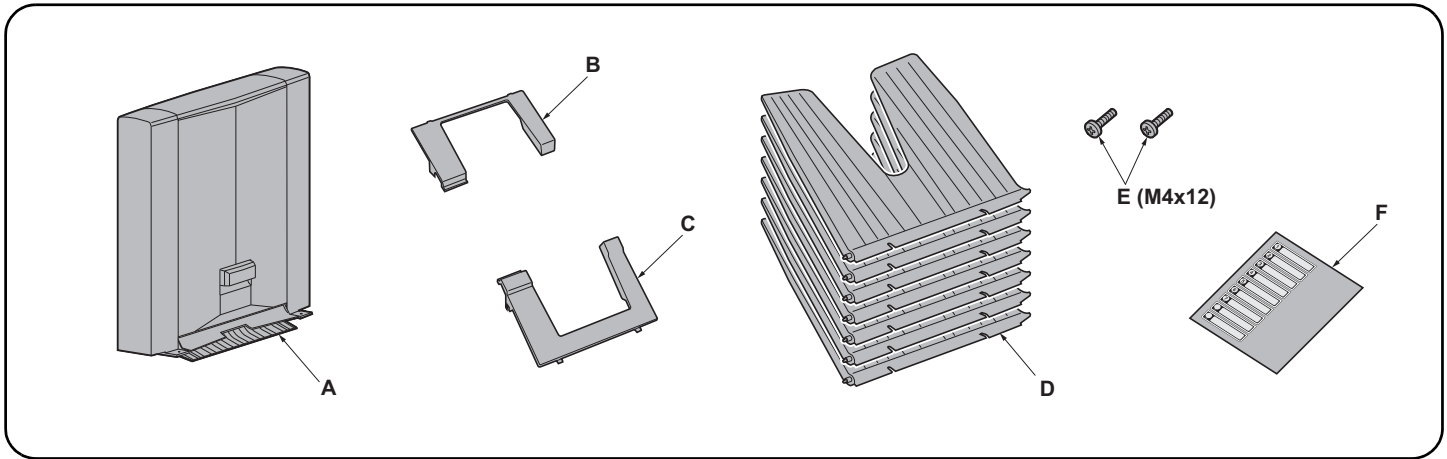
이 장치에 설치되는 제품에 따라 절차가 다릅니다. 다음 페이지에서 각 절차를 설명합니다.  
문서 피니셔에 설치하는 경우 1 페이지 ~ 6 페이지를 참조하십시오.  
프린터에 설치하는 경우 7 페이지 ~ 12 페이지를 참조하십시오.

---

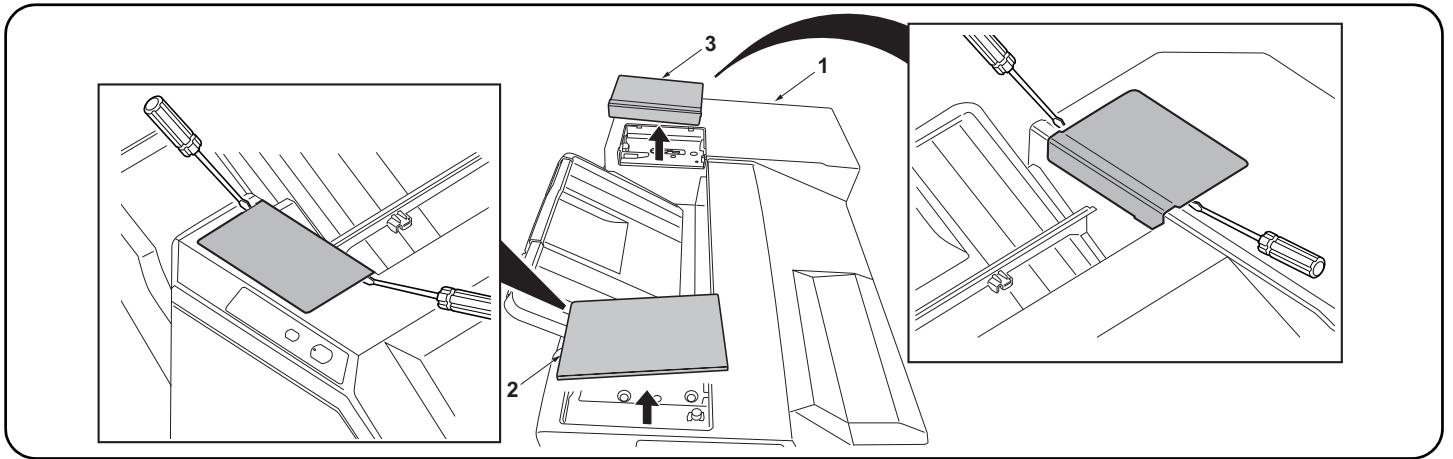
### 日本語

装着する対象によって、取付手順は異なります。それぞれ、以下のページに記載しています。  
ドキュメントフィニッシャーに設置する場合; 1 ページ ~ 6 ページ  
プリンターに設置する場合; 7 ページ ~ 12 ページ

---



|   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <p><b>English</b></p> <p><b>Supplied parts</b></p> <p>A. Mailbox ..... 1</p> <p>B. Front mounting plate cover ..... 1</p> <p>C. Rear mounting plate cover ..... 1</p> <p>D. Copy eject bins ..... 7</p>   | <p>E. M4 × 12 screw ..... 2</p> <p>F. Tray name label (for users)..... 1</p>                         | <p>Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.</p>                                     |
| <p><b>Français</b></p> <p><b>Pièces fournies</b></p> <p>A. Boîte à lettres ..... 1</p> <p>B. Couvercle de la plaque de montage avant ..... 1</p> <p>C. Couvercle de la plaque de montage arrière ... 1</p> <p>D. Case d'éjection de copies ..... 7</p>          | <p>E. Vis M4 × 12 ..... 2</p> <p>F. Étiquette de nom de plateau (pour les utilisateurs) ..... 1</p>  | <p>Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.</p>            |
| <p><b>Español</b></p> <p><b>Partes suministradas</b></p> <p>A. Buzón de correo ..... 1</p> <p>B. Cubierta de la placa de montaje frontal ..... 1</p> <p>C. Cubierta de la placa de montaje trasera .... 1</p> <p>D. Bandejas de expulsión de copias ..... 7</p> | <p>E. Tornillo M4 × 12 ..... 2</p> <p>F. Etiqueta de nombre de la bandeja (para usuarios)..... 1</p> | <p>Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.</p>                         |
| <p><b>Deutsch</b></p> <p><b>Enthaltene Teile</b></p> <p>A. Mailbox ..... 1</p> <p>B. Vordere Abdeckung der Montageplatte ..... 1</p> <p>C. Hintere Abdeckung der Montageplatte ..... 1</p> <p>D. Kopienausgabefächer ..... 7</p>                                | <p>E. Schraube M4 × 12 ..... 2</p> <p>F. Fachnamenaufkleber (für Benutzer) ..... 1</p>               | <p>Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.</p> |
| <p><b>Italiano</b></p> <p><b>Parti fornite</b></p> <p>A. Mailbox ..... 1</p> <p>B. Coperchio della piastra di montaggio anteriore .. 1</p> <p>C. Coperchio della piastra di montaggio posteriore. 1</p> <p>D. Scomparti di espulsione delle copie ..... 7</p>   | <p>E. Vite M4 × 12 ..... 2</p> <p>F. Etichetta di nome del vassoio (per utenti) ..... 1</p>          | <p>Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.</p>                                 |
| <p><b>简体中文</b></p> <p><b>附属品</b></p> <p>A. 邮箱 ..... 1</p> <p>B. 支撑板前盖板 ..... 1</p> <p>C. 支撑板后盖板 ..... 1</p> <p>D. 接纸盘 ..... 7</p>   | <p>E. M4×12 螺丝 ..... 2</p> <p>F. 托盘名称标贴 (用户用) ..... 1</p>  | <p>如果附属品上带有固定胶带, 缓冲材料时必须揭下。</p>  |
| <p><b>한국어</b></p> <p><b>동봉품</b></p> <p>A. 메일박스 ..... 1</p> <p>B. 부착판커버 앞 ..... 1</p> <p>C. 부착판커버 뒤 ..... 1</p> <p>D. 배출핀 ..... 7</p>  | <p>E. 나사 M4 × 12 ..... 2</p> <p>F. 트레이 명칭 스티 (사용자용) ..... 1</p>                                      | <p>동봉품에 고정 테이프, 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오.</p>  |
| <p><b>日本語</b></p> <p><b>同梱品</b></p> <p>A. メールボックス ..... 1</p> <p>B. 取付板カバー前 ..... 1</p> <p>C. 取付板カバー後 ..... 1</p> <p>D. 排出ピン ..... 7</p>  | <p>E. ビス M4×12 ..... 2</p> <p>F. トレイ名称シール(ユーザー用) ..... 1</p>   | <p>同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。</p>   |

**Procedure**

Before starting installation, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off, and unplug the power plug from the wall outlet.

1. Remove the front top cover (2) and rear top cover (3) at the top of the finisher (1) using a flat-blade screwdriver or the like.

**Procédure**

Avant de commencer l'installation, s'assurer de mettre la machine hors tension et de débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

1. Retirer le couvercle supérieur avant (2) et le couvercle supérieur arrière (3) situés en haut du retoucheur (1) à l'aide d'un tournevis à tête plate ou d'un outil équivalent.

**Procedimiento**

Antes de iniciar la instalación, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor de encendido de la máquina y desenchufar el cable de alimentación de la toma de pared.

1. Remueva la cubierta superior delantera (2) y la cubierta superior trasera (3) en la parte superior del finalizador (1) utilizando un destornillador de punta plana o similar.

**Verfahren**

Bevor Sie mit der Installation beginnen überzeugen Sie sich, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet und das Stromkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.

1. Entfernen Sie die vordere obere Abdeckung (2) und die hintere obere Abdeckung (3) an der Oberseite des Finishers (1) mit einem Klingenschraubendreher oder dergleichen.

**Procedura**

Prima di iniziare l'installazione, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.

1. Rimuovere il coperchio superiore anteriore (2) e il coperchio superiore posteriore (3) dalla parte superiore del finitore (1) utilizzando un cacciavite a punta piatta, o un attrezzo simile.

**安装步骤**

安装前务必关闭机器的主电源开关，并从墙壁插座拔下电源插头。

1. 用一字形螺丝刀拆下装订器 (1) 上部的顶罩前盖板 (2) 和顶罩后盖板 (3)。

**설치순서**

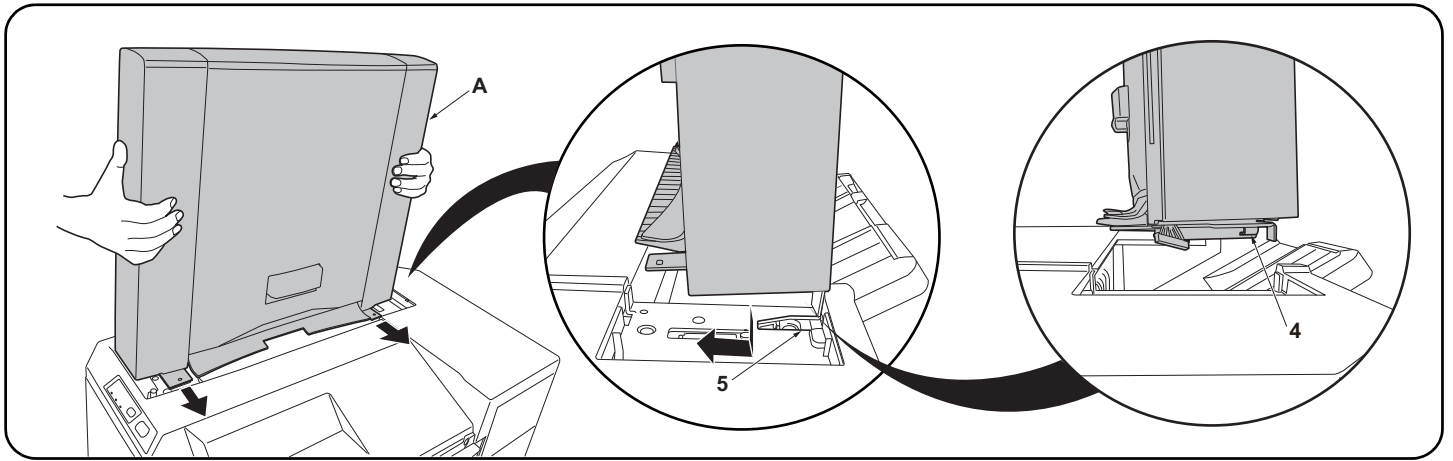
설치를 시작하기 전에 반드시 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 끄고 벽 콘센트에서 전원 플러그를 분리하십시오.

1. 피니셔 (1) 상부의 윗커버 앞 덮개 (2), 윗커버 뒤 덮개 (3) 를 마이너스 드라이버 등으로 제거합니다.

**取付手順**

必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチをOFFにし、機械本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

1. フィニッシャー (1) 上部の天カバー前フタ (2)、天カバー後フタ (3) をマイナスドライバーなどで取り外す。



2. Fit the hooks (4) located at the front and rear of the bottom of the mailbox (A) into the notches (5) located at the front and rear of the top of the finisher (1) as shown in the illustration and attach the mailbox (A) to the finisher (1).

**Note:**

Lift the front and rear of the mailbox (A) lightly upward to make sure that no gap is made between the mailbox (A) and the machine.

2. Insérer les crochets (4) se trouvant à l'avant et à l'arrière au fond de la boîte à lettres (A) dans les encoches (5) situées à l'avant et à l'arrière en haut du retoucheur (1) comme illustré ici, puis fixer la boîte à lettres (A) au retoucheur (1).

**Remarque:**

Lever légèrement l'avant et l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A) de sorte qu'il n'y ait aucun interstice entre la boîte à lettres (A) et la machine.

2. Coloque los ganchos (4) ubicados en la parte inferior frontal y trasera del buzón de correo (A) en las muescas (5) ubicadas en la parte superior frontal y trasera del finalizador (1), como se muestra en la ilustración, y coloque el buzón de correo (A) en el finalizador (1).

**Nota:**

Levante ligeramente la parte frontal y trasera del buzón de correo (A) para asegurarse de que no queda espacio entre el buzón de correo (A) y la máquina.

2. Setzen Sie die Haken (4) an der Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) in die Öffnungen (5) vorne und hinten an der Oberseite des Finishers (1) ein, wie in der Abbildung dargestellt, und bringen Sie die Mailbox (A) am Finisher (1) an.

**Hinweis:**

Heben Sie die Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) ein wenig an, damit sich kein Spalt zwischen der Mailbox (A) und dem Gerät bildet.

2. Inserire i ganci (4) posizionati sul davanti e sul dietro della parte di fondo della mailbox (A), negli incavi (5) posizionati sul davanti e sul dietro della parte superiore del finitore (1) come mostrato nell'illustrazione, e fissare la mailbox (A) al finitore (1).

**Nota:**

Sollevare leggermente la parte anteriore e posteriore della mailbox (A) verso l'alto per accertarsi che non vi sia dello spazio tra la mailbox (A) e la macchina.

2. 如图所示, 将位于邮箱 (A) 底部前后侧的卡扣 (4) 嵌入位于装订器 (1) 顶部前后侧的凹口 (5), 并将邮箱 (A) 安装至装订器 (1)。

**注:**

轻轻向上提升邮箱 (A) 的前后侧, 确保邮箱 (A) 未处于悬浮状态。

2. 메일박스 (A) 하부의 앞뒤에 있는 후크 (4) 를 피니셔 (1) 상부의 앞뒤에 있는 파인 홈에 (5) 에 일러스트와 같이 삽입하고 메일박스 (A) 를 피니셔측에 장착합니다 .

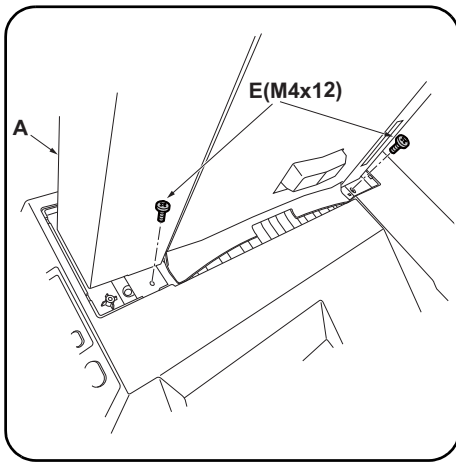
**주**

메일박스 (A) 의 앞뒤를 각각 상방향으로 가볍게 들어 메일박스 (A) 가 떠 있지 않은 것을 확인합니다 .

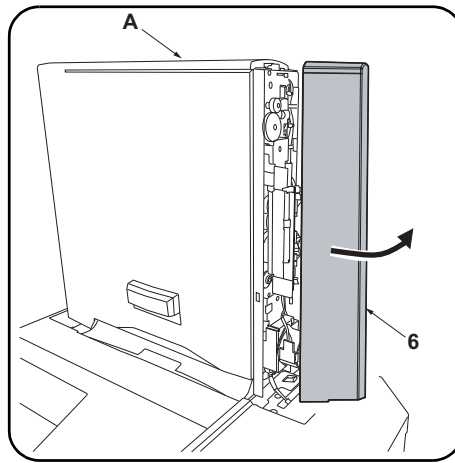
2. メールボックス (A) 下部の前後にあるフック (4) をフィニッシャー(1) 上部の前後にある切り欠き部 (5) にイラストのように挿入し、メールボックス (A) をフィニッシャー(1) に取り付ける。

**注意**

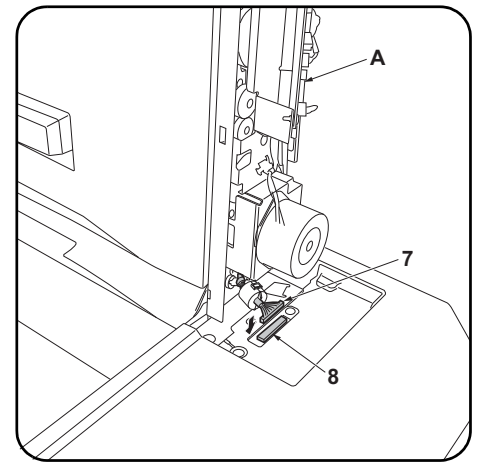
メールボックス (A) の前後をそれぞれ上方向に軽く持ち上げ、メールボックス (A) が浮かないことを確認する。



3. Secure the mailbox (A) using the two screws M4x12 (E).



4. Remove the rear cover (6) of the mailbox (A).



5. Plug the connector (7) of the mailbox (A) into the connector (8) of the machine body.  
6. Reinstall the rear cover (6) of the mailbox (A).

3. Fixer la boîte à lettres (A) à l'aide de deux vis M4x12 (E).

4. Retirer le couvercle arrière (6) de la boîte à lettres (A).

5. Brancher le connecteur (7) de la boîte à lettres (A) dans le connecteur (8) du corps de la machine.  
6. Remonter le couvercle arrière (6) de la boîte à lettres (A).

3. Fije el buzón de correo (A) con dos tornillos M4x12 (E).

4. Quite la cubierta posterior (6) del buzón de correo (A).

5. Enchufe el conector (7) del buzón de correo (A) al conector (8) del cuerpo de la máquina.  
6. Vuelva a instalar la cubierta posterior (6) del buzón de correo (A).

3. Sichern Sie die Mailbox (A) mit zwei Schrauben M4x12 (E).

4. Entfernen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (6) der Mailbox (A).

5. Stecken Sie den Stecker (7) der Mailbox (A) in die Steckbuchse (8) des Gerätegehäuses.  
6. Bringen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (6) der Mailbox (A) wieder an.

3. Fissare la mailbox (A) utilizzando le due viti M4x12 (E).

4. Rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (6) della mailbox (A).

5. Collegare il connettore (7) della mailbox (A) al connettore (8) del corpo macchina.  
6. Reinstallare il coperchio posteriore (6) della mailbox (A).

3. 使用两个螺丝 M4x12 (E) 固定邮箱 (A)。

4. 拆下邮箱 (A) 的后部盖板 (6)。

5. 将邮箱 (A) 的接插件 (7) 插入机器的接插件 (8)。  
6. 重新安装邮箱 (A) 的后盖板 (6)。

3. M4x12 나사 (E) 두 개를 사용하여 메일박스 (A) 를 고정합니다 .

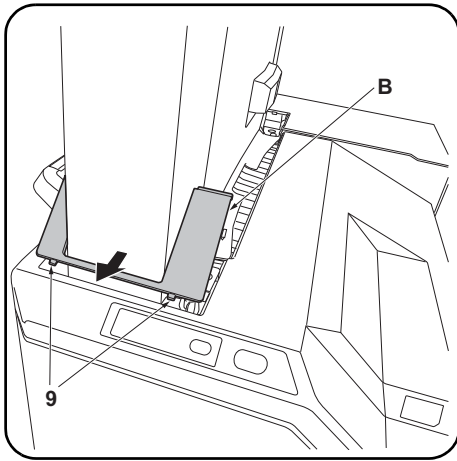
4. 메일박스 (A) 의 뒤커버 (6) 를 떼어냅니다 .

5. 메일박스 (A) 의 커넥터 (7) 를 본체의 커넥터 (8) 에 연결합니다  
6. 메일박스 (A) 의 뒤커버 (6) 를 다시 장착합니다 .

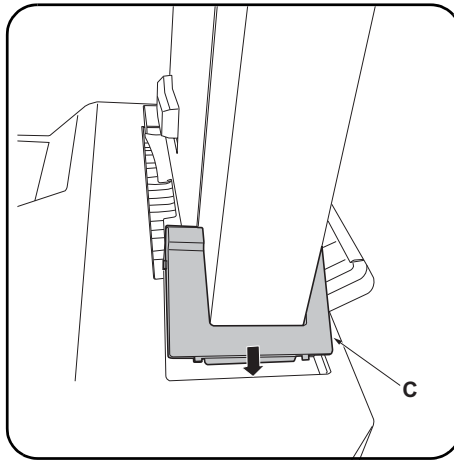
3. ビス M4×12(E)2 本で、メールボックス (A) を固定する。

4. メールボックス (A) の後カバー (6) を取り外す。

5. メールボックス (A) のコネクタ (7) を機械本体のコネクタ (8) に接続する。  
6. メールボックス (A) の後カバー (6) を元通りに取り付ける。



7. Insert the 2 hooks (9) on the front mounting plate cover (B) for the mailbox into the finisher to install the cover (B).



8. Install the rear mounting plate cover (C) on the finisher in the same way.

7. Insérer les 2 crochets (9) du couvercle de la plaque de montage avant (B) de la boîte à lettres dans le retourneur pour installer ce couvercle (B).

8. Installer le couvercle de la plaque de montage arrière (C) sur le retourneur en procédant de la même manière.

7. Para instalar la cubierta (B), inserte los 2 ganchos (9) de la cubierta de la placa de montaje frontal (B) para el buzón de correo en el finalizador.

8. Instale de la misma manera la cubierta de la placa de montaje trasera (C) en el finalizador.

7. Setzen Sie die 2 Haken (9) an der vorderen Abdeckung der Montageplatte (B) für die Mailbox in den Finisher ein, um die Abdeckung (B) zu installieren.

8. Bringen Sie auf gleiche Weise die hintere Abdeckung der Montageplatte (C) am Finisher an.

7. Inserire nel finitore i 2 ganci (9) posizionati sul coperchio della piastra di montaggio anteriore (B) per la mailbox, per installare il coperchio (B).

8. Installare il coperchio della piastra di montaggio posteriore (C) sul finitore nella stessa maniera.

7. 将邮箱的安装板前部盖板 (B) 的 2 个卡扣 (9) 插入到装订器中, 以安装安装板前部盖板 (B)。

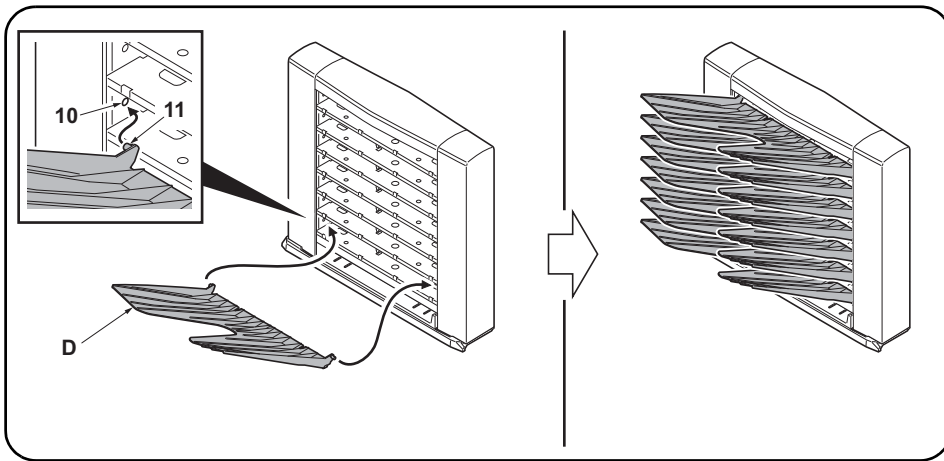
8. 按相同方法将安装板后部盖板 (C) 安装到装订器上。

7. 메일박스의 부착판 커버 앞 (B) 의 후크 (9) 2 곳을 피니셔에 삽입하고 부착판 커버 앞 (B) 을 장착합니다 .

8. 같은 방식으로 부착판 커버 뒤 (C) 를 피니셔에 장착합니다 .

7. メールボックスの取付板カバー前 (B) のフック (9) 2箇所をフィニッシャーに挿入し、取付板カバー前 (B) を取り付ける。

8. 同様に取付板カバー後 (C) をフィニッシャーに取り付ける。



- 9.** Fit the seven copy eject bins (D) to the ejection section of the mailbox (A) from the lowest bin to the highest.  
Press both ends of each copy eject bin (D) to bend it a little, then fit the bin by inserting the front and rear pins (10) into the round holes (11) at the front and rear of the mailbox.

- 10.** Insert the power plug from the machine into the outlet, turn the main power switch on, and verify the machine operates normally.

- 9.** Fixer les sept cases d'éjection de copies (D) sur la section d'éjection de la boîte à lettres (A), en procédant de la case située tout en bas à celle située tout en haut.  
Appuyer sur les deux extrémités de chaque case d'éjection des copies (D) pour cintrer légèrement cette pièce, puis monter la case en insérant les broches avant et arrière (10) dans les trous ronds (11) à l'avant et à l'arrière de la boîte à lettres.

- 10.** Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise et mettre la machine sous tension, puis vérifier qu'elle fonctionne correctement.

- 9.** Presione ambos extremos de cada bandeja de expulsión de copias (D) para doblarlas un poco; después, coloque la bandeja insertando los pasadores delantero y trasero (10) en los orificios redondos (11) en la parte frontal y posterior del buzón de correo.

- 10.** Enchufe el cable de alimentación de la máquina en la toma de corriente y encienda el interruptor principal para comprobar que la máquina funciona correctamente.

- 9.** Setzen Sie die sieben Kopienausgabefächer (D) in die Ausgabeöffnungen der Mailbox (A) ein, beginnend vom untersten Fach zum höchsten.  
Drücken Sie beide Enden jedes Kopienausgabefachs (D) zusammen, um es etwas zu biegen. Setzen Sie das Fach ein, indem Sie die vorderen und hinteren Stifte (10) in die Rundlöcher (11) vorne und hinten an der Mailbox einsetzen.

- 10.** Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des Geräts in eine Steckdose und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter des Geräts ein, um den Betrieb zu prüfen.

- 9.** Installare i sette scomparti di espulsione delle copie (D) nella sezione di espulsione della mailbox (A), iniziando dallo scomparto più in basso fino a quello più in alto.  
Premere le due estremità di ciascuno scomparto di espulsione delle copie (D) in modo da piegarlo leggermente, quindi installare lo scomparto inserendo i perni anteriore e posteriore (10) nei fori rotondi (11) presenti sul fronte e sul retro della mailbox.

- 10.** Inserire la spina nella presa di corrente, accendere la macchina e controllare che funzioni correttamente.

- 9.** 从邮箱 (A) 的排出部下面起按顺序安装 7 个接纸盘 (D)。  
按住接纸盘 (D) 的左右两侧并使其稍稍下垂, 通过将前后的销钉 (10) 插入邮箱前后的圆孔 (11) 中来安装接纸盘。

- 10.** 将机器的电源插头插入插座, 然后打开主电源开关并确认机器能否正常操作。

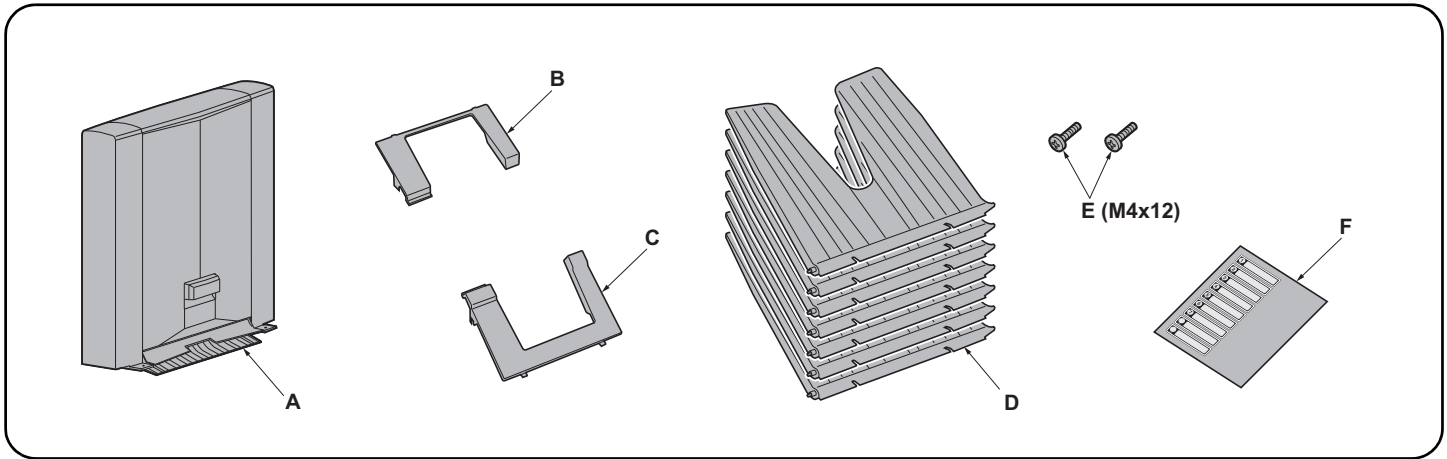
- 9.** 배출핀 (D) 7 개를 메일박스 (A) 의 배출부에 밑에서부터 순서대로 장착합니다 .  
배출핀 (D) 의 좌우를 밀어 조금 휘게해 앞뒤의 핀 (10) 을 메일박스의 앞뒤의 둥근 구멍 (11) 에 삽입합니다 .

- 10.** 기기본체의 전원 플러그를 콘센트에 꽂고 주 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 해서 동작을 확인 합니다 .

- 9.** 排出ピン (D) 7 枚をメールボックス (A) の排出部に下から順番に取り付ける。  
排出ピン (D) の左右を押し少したわませ、前後のピン (10) をメールボックスの前後の丸穴 (11) に挿入する。

- 10.** 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にして動作を確認する。





|   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <p><b>English</b></p> <p><b>Supplied parts</b></p> <p>A. Mailbox ..... 1</p> <p>B. Front mounting plate cover..... 1</p> <p>C. Rear mounting plate cover ..... 1</p> <p>D. Copy eject bins ..... 7</p>  | <p>E. M4 × 12 screw ..... 2</p> <p>F. Tray name label (for users)..... 1</p> <p>B and C are not used.</p>                              | <p>Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning materials from the parts supplied.</p>                                     |
| <p><b>Français</b></p> <p><b>Pièces fournies</b></p> <p>A. Boîte à lettres ..... 1</p> <p>B. Couvercle de la plaque de montage avant..... 1</p> <p>C. Couvercle de la plaque de montage arrière ... 1</p> <p>D. Case d'éjection de copies..... 7</p>            | <p>E. Vis M4 × 12..... 2</p> <p>F. Étiquette de nom de plateau (pour les utilisateurs) ..... 1</p> <p>B et C ne sont pas utilisés.</p> | <p>Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies.</p>            |
| <p><b>Español</b></p> <p><b>Partes suministradas</b></p> <p>A. Buzón de correo ..... 1</p> <p>B. Cubierta de la placa de montaje frontal ..... 1</p> <p>C. Cubierta de la placa de montaje trasera..... 1</p> <p>D. Bandejas de expulsión de copias ..... 7</p> | <p>E. Tornillo M4 × 12 ..... 2</p> <p>F. Etiqueta de nombre de la bandeja (para usuarios)..... 1</p> <p>B y C no se utilizan.</p>      | <p>Asegúrese de quitar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas.</p>                         |
| <p><b>Deutsch</b></p> <p><b>Enthaltene Teile</b></p> <p>A. Mailbox ..... 1</p> <p>B. Vordere Abdeckung der Montageplatte ..... 1</p> <p>C. Hintere Abdeckung der Montageplatte ..... 1</p> <p>D. Kopienausgabefächer..... 7</p>                                 | <p>E. Schraube M4 × 12 ..... 2</p> <p>F. Fachnamenaufkleber (für Benutzer) ..... 1</p> <p>B und C werden nicht benötigt.</p>           | <p>Stellen Sie sicher, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und/oder Polstermaterial von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt wurden.</p> |
| <p><b>Italiano</b></p> <p><b>Parti fornite</b></p> <p>A. Mailbox ..... 1</p> <p>B. Coperchio della piastra di montaggio anteriore .. 1</p> <p>C. Coperchio della piastra di montaggio posteriore. 1</p> <p>D. Scomparti di espulsione delle copie ..... 7</p>   | <p>E. Vite M4 × 12..... 2</p> <p>F. Etichetta di nome del vassoio (per utenti) ..... 1</p> <p>B e C non sono utilizzati.</p>           | <p>Rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o i materiali di protezione dalle parti fornite.</p>                                 |
| <p><b>简体中文</b></p> <p><b>附属品</b></p> <p>A. 邮箱..... 1</p> <p>B. 支撑板前盖板..... 1</p> <p>C. 支撑板后盖板..... 1</p> <p>D. 接纸盘..... 7</p>   | <p>E. M4×12 螺丝 ..... 2</p> <p>F. 托盘名称标贴 (用户用) ..... 1</p> <p>不使用 B 和 C。</p>  | <p>如果附属品上带有固定胶带, 缓冲材料时必须揭下。</p>  |
| <p><b>한국어</b></p> <p><b>동봉품</b></p> <p>A. 메일박스..... 1</p> <p>B. 부착판커버 앞..... 1</p> <p>C. 부착판커버 뒤..... 1</p> <p>D. 배출핀..... 7</p>  | <p>E. 나사 M4 × 12..... 2</p> <p>F. 트레이 명칭 스티 (사용자용) ..... 1</p> <p>B 와 C 는 사용되지 않습니다 .</p>  | <p>동봉품에 고정 테이프, 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거하십시오 .</p>   |
| <p><b>日本語</b></p> <p><b>同梱品</b></p> <p>A. メールボックス..... 1</p> <p>B. 取付板カバー前..... 1</p> <p>C. 取付板カバー後..... 1</p> <p>D. 排出ピン..... 7</p>  | <p>E. ビス M4×12 ..... 2</p> <p>F. トレイ名称シール(ユーザー用) ..... 1</p> <p>B, C は使用しない。</p>   | <p>同梱品に固定テープ、緩衝材がついている場合は、必ず取り外すこと。</p>  |

**Note**

The Attachment Kit(AK-736) must be installed before the mailbox is installed.

**Procedure**

Before starting installation, be sure to turn the main power switch of the machine off, and unplug the power plug from the wall outlet.

**Remarque**

L'Attachment Kit (AK-736) doit être installé avant d'installer la boîte à lettres.

**Procédure**

Avant de commencer l'installation, s'assurer de mettre la machine hors tension et de débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

**Nota**

El Attachment Kit (AK-736) se debe instalar antes de la instalación del buzón de correo.

**Procedimiento**

Antes de iniciar la instalación, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor de encendido de la máquina y desenchufar el cable de alimentación de la toma de pared.

**Hinweis**

Das Attachment Kit (AK-736) muss vor der Installation der Mailbox installiert werden.

**Vorgehensweise**

Bevor Sie mit der Installation beginnen überzeugen Sie sich, dass der Netzschalter des Geräts ausgeschaltet und das Stromkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist.

**Nota**

Installare l'Attachment Kit (AK-736) prima di installare il vassoio mailbox.

**Procedura**

Prima di iniziare l'installazione, spegnere la macchina e scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.

**注**

在安装邮箱前, 请先安装连接组件 (AK-736)。

**安装步骤**

安装前务必关闭机器的主电源开关, 并从墙壁插座拔下电源插头。

**주**

메일박스를 설치하기 전에 부착 키트 (AK-736) 를 설치해야 합니다 .

**설치순서**

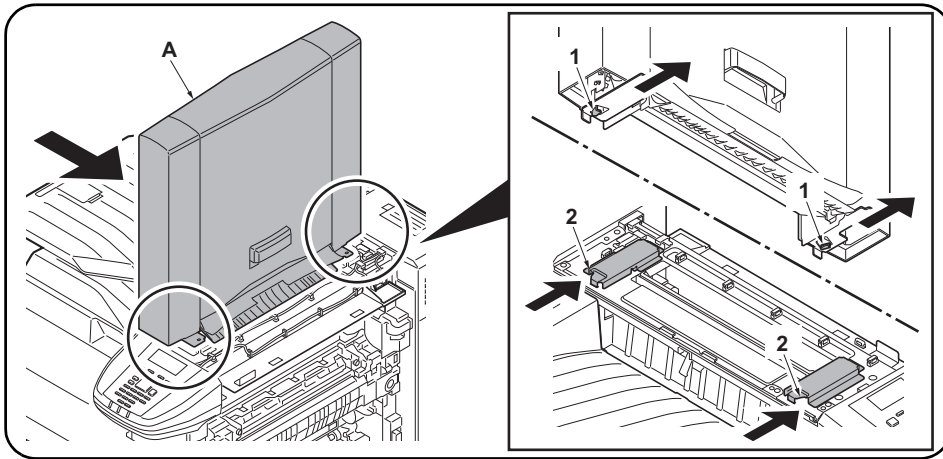
설치를 시작하기 전에 반드시 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 끄고 벽 콘센트에서 전원 플러그를 분리하십시오 .

**注意**

メールボックスを取付ける前にアタッチメントキット (AK-736) の取付けをおこなうこと。

**取付手順**

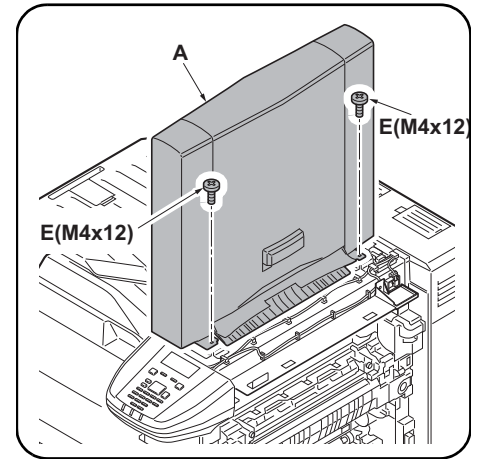
必ず機械本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、機械本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。



1. Insert the hooks (1) located at the front and rear of the bottom of the mailbox (A) into the notches (2) of the machine and attach the mailbox (A) to the machine.

**Note**

Lift the front and rear of the mailbox (A) lightly upward to make sure that no gap is made between the mailbox (A) and the machine.



2. Secure the mailbox (A) using the two screws M4x12 (E).

1. Insérer les crochets (1) situés à l'avant et à l'arrière du fond de la boîte à lettres (A) dans les encoches (2) de la machine et fixer la boîte aux lettres (A) à la machine.

**Remarque**

Lever légèrement l'avant et l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A) de sorte qu'il n'y ait aucun interstice entre la boîte à lettres (A) et la machine.

2. Fixer la boîte à lettres (A) à l'aide de deux vis M4x12 (E).

1. Inserte los enganches (1) que se encuentran en la parte frontal y trasera de la parte inferior del buzón de correo (A) en las hendiduras (2) de la máquina y acople el buzón de correo (A) a la máquina.

**Nota**

Levante ligeramente la parte frontal y trasera del buzón de correo (A) para asegurarse de que no queda espacio entre el buzón de correo (A) y la máquina.

2. Fije el buzón de correo (A) con dos tornillos M4x12 (E).

1. Führen Sie die Haken (1), die sich hinten und vorne an der Unterseite der Mailbox (A) befinden, in die Aufnahmen (2) des Geräts ein und befestigen Sie die Mailbox (A) am Gerät.

**Hinweis**

Heben Sie die Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) ein wenig an, damit sich kein Spalt zwischen der Mailbox (A) und dem Gerät bildet.

2. Sichern Sie die Mailbox (A) mit zwei Schrauben M4x12 (E).

1. Inserire i ganci (1) posti sul fronte e sul retro della sezione inferiore della mailbox (A) negli incavi (2) presenti sulla macchina e fissare la mailbox (A) sulla macchina.

**Nota**

Sollevarle leggermente la parte anteriore e posteriore della mailbox (A) verso l'alto per accertarsi che non vi sia dello spazio tra la mailbox (A) e la macchina.

2. Fissare la mailbox (A) utilizzando le due viti M4x12 (E).

1. 将位于邮箱 (A) 底部前、后侧的挂钩 (1) 插入机器的凹槽 (2)，然后将邮箱 (A) 安装至机器。

**注**

轻轻向上提升邮箱 (A) 的前后侧，确保邮箱 (A) 未处于悬浮状态。

2. 使用两个螺丝 M4x12 (E) 固定邮箱 (A)。

1. 메일박스 (A) 의 전후면 하단에 있는 후크 (1) 를 본체의 노치 (2) 에 삽입하여 메일박스 (A) 를 본체에 부착합니다.

**주**

메일박스 (A) 의 앞뒤를 각각 상방향으로 가볍게 들어 메일박스 (A) 가 떠 있지 않은 것을 확인합니다.

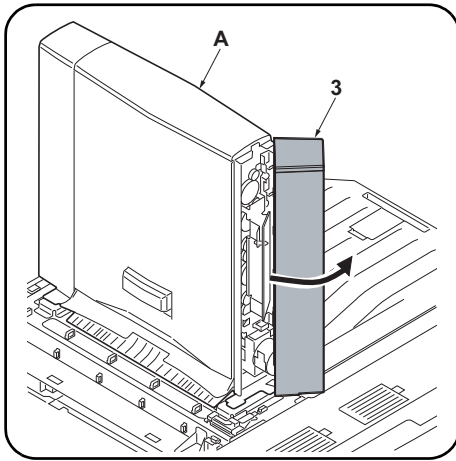
2. M4x12 나사 (E) 2 개를 사용하여 메일박스 (A) 를 고정합니다.

1. 메일박스 (A) 下部の前後にあるフック (1) を機械本体の切り欠き (2) に挿入し、メールボックス (A) を機械本体に取り付ける。

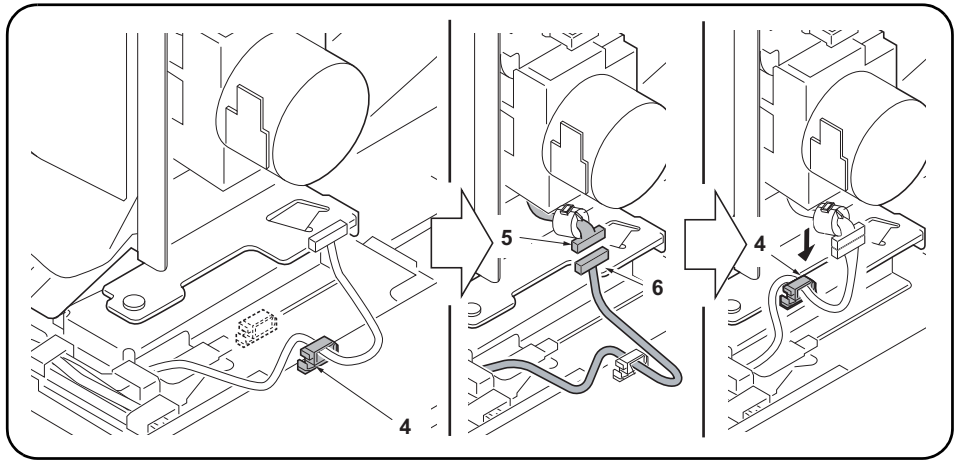
**注意**

메일박스 (A) の前後をそれぞれ上方向に軽く持ち上げ、메일박스 (A) が浮かないことを確認する。

2. ビス M4×12 (E) 2 本で、メールボックス (A) を固定する。



3. Remove the rear cover (3) of the mailbox (A).



4. Remove the wire saddle (4).  
5. Plug the connector (5) of the mailbox (A) into the connector (6) of the machine body.  
6. Install the wire saddle (4) in the position as shown in the figure.  
7. Reinstall the rear cover (3) of the mailbox (A).

3. Retirer le couvercle arrière (3) de la boîte à lettres (A).

4. Retirer le serre-câble (4).  
5. Brancher le connecteur (5) de la boîte à lettres (A) dans le connecteur (6) du corps de la machine.  
6. Installer le serre-câble (4) dans la position illustrée sur la figure.  
7. Remonter le couvercle arrière (3) de la boîte à lettres (A).

3. Quite la cubierta posterior (3) del buzón de correo (A).

4. Retire la abrazadera del cable (4).  
5. Enchufe el conector (5) del buzón de correo (A) al conector (6) del cuerpo de la máquina.  
6. Instale la abrazadera del cable (4) en la posición que se muestra en la imagen.  
7. Vuelva a instalar la cubierta posterior (3) del buzón de correo (A).

3. Entfernen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (3) der Mailbox (A).

4. Entfernen Sie die Kabelbefestigung (4).  
5. Stecken Sie den Stecker (5) der Mailbox (A) in die Steckbuchse (6) des Gerätegehäuses.  
6. Installieren Sie die Kabelbefestigung (4) an der im Bild gezeigten Position.  
7. Bringen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (3) der Mailbox (A) wieder an.

3. Rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (3) della mailbox (A).

4. Rimuovere l'unità sella (4).  
5. Collegare il connettore (5) della mailbox (A) al connettore (6) del corpo macchina.  
6. Installare l'unità sella (4) nella posizione indicata in figura.  
7. Reinstallare il coperchio posteriore (3) della mailbox (A).

3. 拆下邮箱 (A) 的后部盖板 (3)。

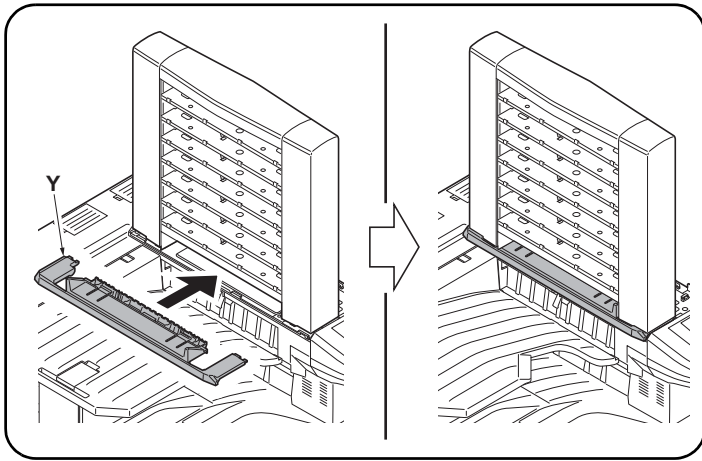
4. 取下束线夹 (4)。  
5. 将邮箱 (A) 的接插件 (5) 插入机器的接插件 (6)。  
6. 把束线夹 (4) 安装到图示位置。  
7. 重新安装邮箱 (A) 的后盖板 (3)。

3. 메일박스 (A) 의 뒤커버 (3) 를 떼어냅니다 .

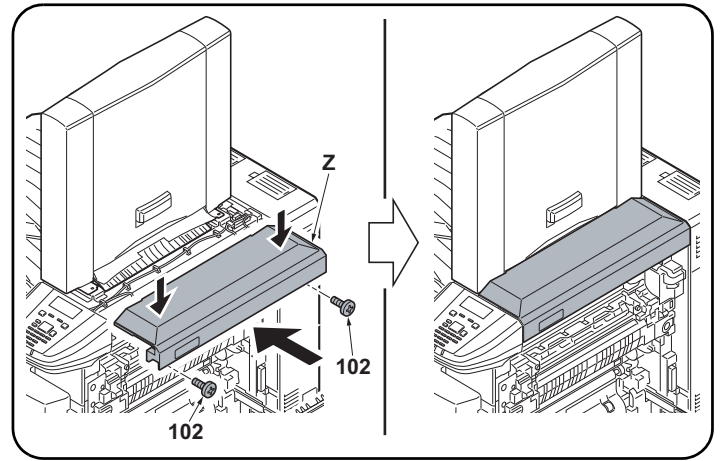
4. 와이어 새들 (4) 을 분리합니다 .  
5. 메일박스 (A) 의 커넥터 (5) 를 본체의 커넥터 (6) 에 연결합니다 .  
6. 와이어 새들 (4) 을 그림에 표시된 위치에 설치합니다 .  
7. 메일박스 (A) 의 뒤커버 (3) 를 다시 장착합니다 .

3. メールボックス (A) の後カバー (3) を取り外す。

4. ワイヤースドル (4) を外す。  
5. メールボックス (A) のコネクタ (5) を機械本体のコネクタ (6) に接続する。  
6. ワイヤースドル (4) を図の位置に取り付ける。  
7. メールボックス (A) の後カバー (3) を元通りに取り付ける。



8. Install the left cover (Y) in place.



9. Using the two screws (102) removed in step 2 in the installation guide for the AK-736, install the right cover (Z).

\*While pressing the right cover (Z) downwards, fix the right cover (Z).

8. Monter le couvercle gauche (Y) en position.

9. À l'aide des deux vis (102) retirées à l'étape 2 du guide d'installation pour l'AK-736, installez le capot droit (Z).

\*Fixer le capot droit (Z) en le maintenant enfoncé vers le bas.

8. Instale la cubierta izquierda (Y) en la ubicación prevista.

9. Con los dos tornillos (102) que quitó en el paso 2 de la guía de instalación para AK-736, instale la cubierta derecha (Z).

\*A la vez que ejerce presión sobre la cubierta derecha (Z), fije la cubierta derecha (Z).

8. Installieren Sie die linke Abdeckung (Y).

9. Mit den zwei Schrauben (102), die Sie in Schritt 2 der Installationsanleitung für das AK-736 entfernt haben, bringen Sie die rechte Abdeckung (Z) wieder an.

\*Drücken Sie die rechte Abdeckung (Z) leicht nach unten, während Sie diese befestigen.

8. Installare il coperchio di sinistra (Y) in posizione.

9. Utilizzando le due viti (102) rimosse al punto 2 della procedura descritta nella guida di installazione del kit AK-736, installare il coperchio destro (Z).

\*Premere verso il basso il coperchio destro (Z) per fissarlo in posizione.

8. 将左盖板 (Y) 安装到位。

9. 请用 AK-736 安装手册步骤 2 中取下的 2 颗螺丝 (102) 来安装右盖板 (Z)。

\*把右盖板 (Z) 边向下按, 边固定。

8. 좌측 커버 (Y) 를 제자리에 장착합니다 .

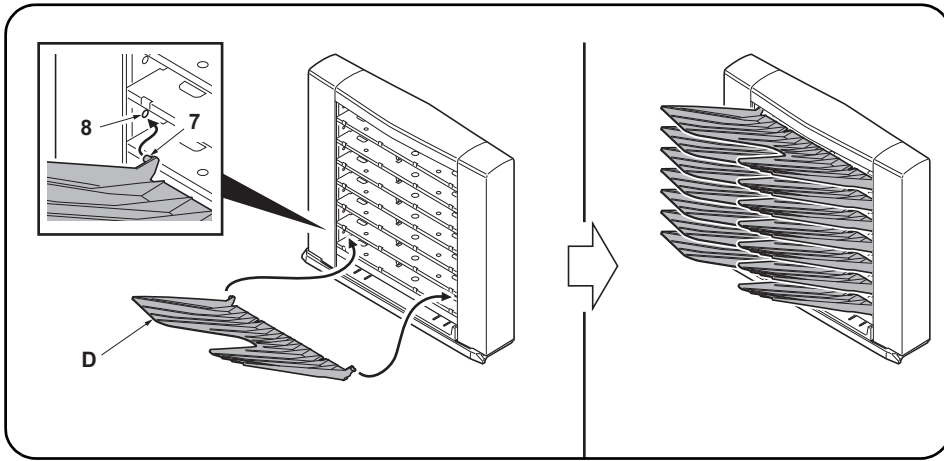
9. AK-736 설치 설명서의 2 단계에서 분리한 나사 (102) 두 개를 사용하여 우측 커버 (Z) 를 장착합니다 .

\* 우측 커버 (Z) 를 아래쪽으로 누르는 동시에 우측 커버 (Z) 를 고정하십시오 .

8. 左カバー (Y) を取り付ける。

9. AK-736 設置手順書の手順 2 で外したビス (102) 2 本で、右カバー (Z) を取付ける。

\* 右カバー (Z) を下方向に押さえながら、固定する。



- 10.** Fit the seven copy eject bins (D) to the ejection section of the mailbox (A) from the lowest bin to the highest.  
Press both ends of each copy eject bin (D) to bend it a little, then fit the bin by inserting the front and rear pins (7) into the round holes (8) at the front and rear of the mailbox.

- 10.** Fixer les sept cases d'éjection de copies (D) sur la section d'éjection de la boîte à lettres (A), en procédant de la case située tout en bas à celle située tout en haut.  
Appuyer sur les deux extrémités de chaque case d'éjection des copies (D) pour cintrer légèrement cette pièce, puis monter la case en insérant les broches avant et arrière (7) dans les trous ronds (8) à l'avant et à l'arrière de la boîte à lettres.

- 10.** Presione ambos extremos de cada bandeja de expulsión de copias (D) para doblarlas un poco; después, coloque la bandeja insertando los pasadores delantero y trasero (7) en los orificios redondos (8) en la parte frontal y posterior del buzón de correo.

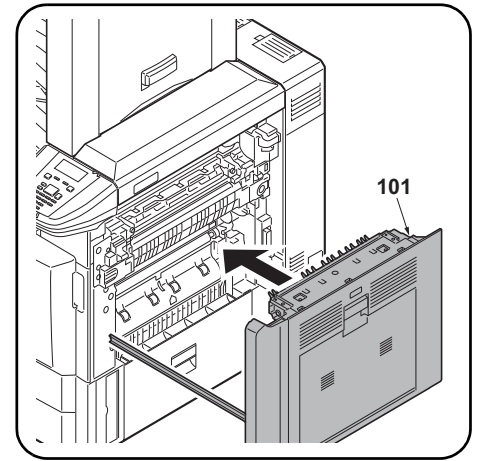
- 10.** Setzen Sie die sieben Kopienausgabefächer (D) in die Ausgabeöffnungen der Mailbox (A) ein, beginnend vom untersten Fach zum höchsten.  
Drücken Sie beide Enden jedes Kopienausgabefachs (D) zusammen, um es etwas zu biegen. Setzen Sie das Fach ein, indem Sie die vorderen und hinteren Stifte (7) in die Rundlöcher (8) vorne und hinten an der Mailbox einsetzen.

- 10.** Installare i sette scomparti di espulsione delle copie (D) nella sezione di espulsione della mailbox (A), iniziando dallo scomparto più in basso fino a quello più in alto.  
Premere le due estremità di ciascuno scomparto di espulsione delle copie (D) in modo da piegarlo leggermente, quindi installare lo scomparto inserendo i perni anteriore e posteriore (7) nei fori rotondi (8) presenti sul fronte e sul retro della mailbox.

- 10.** 从邮箱 (A) 的排出部下面起按顺序安装 7 个接纸盘 (D)。  
按住接纸盘 (D) 的左右两侧并使其稍稍下垂, 通过将前后的销钉 (7) 插入邮箱前后的圆孔 (8) 中来安装接纸盘。

- 10.** 배출핀 (D) 7 개를 메일박스 (A) 의 배출부에 밑에서부터 순서대로 장착합니다 .  
배출핀 (D) 의 좌우를 밀어 조금 휘게해 앞뒤의 핀 (7) 을 메일박스의 앞뒤의 둥근 구멍 (8) 에 삽입합니다 .

- 10.** 排出ビン (D) 7 枚をメールボックス (A) の排出部に下から順番に取り付ける。  
排出ビン (D) の左右を押し少したわませ、前後のピン (7) をメールボックスの前後の丸穴 (8) に挿入する。



- 11.** Close the paper conveying unit (101).  
**12.** Insert the power plug from the machine into the outlet, turn the main power switch on, and verify the machine operates normally.

- 11.** Fermer l'unité de transport du papier (101).  
**12.** Insérer la fiche d'alimentation de la machine dans la prise et mettre la machine sous tension, puis vérifier qu'elle fonctionne correctement.

- 11.** Cierre la unidad de transporte de papel (101).  
**12.** Enchufe el cable de alimentación de la máquina en la toma de corriente y encienda el interruptor principal para comprobar que la máquina funciona correctamente.

- 11.** Schließen Sie die Papierführung (101).  
**12.** Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des Geräts in eine Steckdose und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter des Geräts ein, um den Betrieb zu prüfen.

- 11.** Chiudere l'unità trasporto carta (101).  
**12.** Inserire la spina nella presa di corrente, accendere la macchina e controllare che funzioni correttamente.

- 11.** 关闭纸张传输单元 (101)。  
**12.** 将机器的电源插头插入插座, 然后打开主电源开关并确认机器能否正常操作。

- 11.** 반송 유닛 (101) 를 닫습니다 .  
**12.** 기기본체의 전원 플러그를 콘센트에 꽂고 주 전원 스위치를 ON 으로 해서 동작을 확인 합니다 .

- 11.** 搬送ユニット (101) を閉じる。  
**12.** 機械本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にして動作を確認する。

(10) PH-7A/C/D

# PH-7A/C/D / (Punch unit) Installation Guide

**INSTALLATION GUIDE**

**GUIDE D'INSTALLATION**

**GUÍA DE INSTALACION**

**INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG**

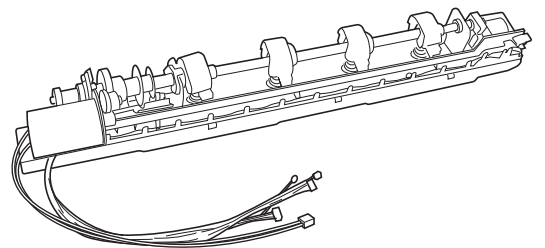
**GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE**

**安装手册**

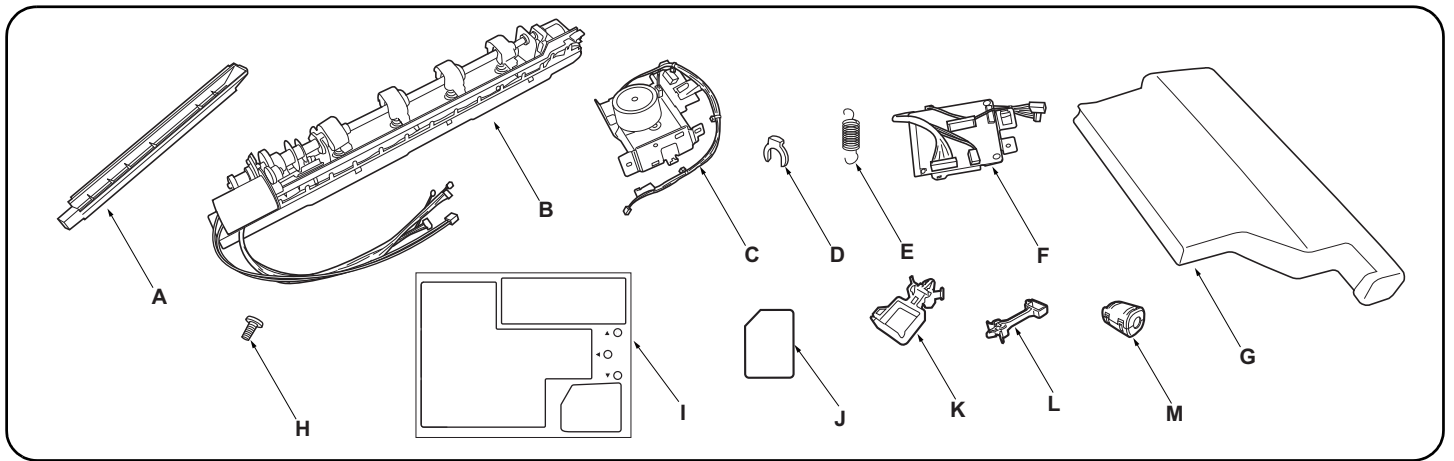
**설치안내서**

**設置手順書**

**PH-7A/PH-7B/PH-7C/PH-7D**







|                               |                                   |   |  |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>English</b>                |                                   | <b>E. Spring</b> ..... 1                            | <b>L. Large clamp (for DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110)</b> .. 1                     |
| <b>Supplied parts</b>         |                                   | <b>F. Punch PWB</b> ..... 1                         | <b>M. Ferrite core</b> ..... 1   |
| <b>A. Punch guide</b> ..... 1 | <b>B. Hole punch unit</b> ..... 1 | <b>G. Waste hole punch box</b> ..... 1              | Be sure to remove any tape and/or cushioning material from supplied parts. |
| <b>C. Motor unit</b> ..... 1  | <b>D. Stop ring</b> ..... 1       | <b>H. M3 x 8 tap Tight S screw</b> ..... 3          | *1:DF-7110/DF-7120:(J) is not used.  |
|                               |                                   | <b>I. Label sheet</b> ..... 1                       |  |
|                               |                                   | <b>J. Film (for DF-770/DF-790/DF-791)*1</b> ..... 1 |  |
|                               |                                   | <b>K. Small clamp (for DF-770/DF-7120)</b> ..... 1  |  |

|   |                                 |  |  |
|---|---------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>Français</b>                         |                                 | <b>E. Ressort</b> ..... 1                                | <b>L. Grand collier (pour DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110)</b> . 1   |
| <b>Pièces fournies</b>                  |                                 | <b>F. PWB de la perforatrice</b> ..... 1                 | <b>M. Noyau de ferrite</b> ..... 1   |
| <b>A. Guide de perforatrice</b> ..... 1 | <b>B. Perforatrice</b> ..... 1  | <b>G. Bac de récupération de la perforatrice</b> ..... 1 | Veillez à retirer les morceaux de bande adhésive et/ou les matériaux de rembourrage des pièces fournies. |
| <b>C. Moteur</b> ..... 1                | <b>D. Bague d'arrêt</b> ..... 1 | <b>H. Vis S taraudée M3 x 8</b> ..... 3                  | *1:DF-7110/DF-7120:(J) n'est pas utilisé.  |
|   |                                 | <b>I. Feuillet d'étiquettes</b> ..... 1                  |  |
|   |                                 | <b>J. Film (pour DF-770/DF-790/DF-791)*1</b> ..... 1     |  |
|   |                                 | <b>K. Petit collier (pour DF-770/DF-7120)</b> ..... 1    |  |

|                                       |                                  |  |   |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>Español</b>                        |                                  | <b>E. Resorte</b> ..... 1                                | <b>L. Sujetador grande (para DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110)</b>                                       |
| <b>Partes suministradas</b>           |                                  | <b>F. PWB de perforación</b> ..... 1                     | <b>M. Núcleo de ferrita</b> ..... 1   |
| <b>A. Guía de perforación</b> ..... 1 | <b>B. Perforadora</b> ..... 1    | <b>G. Caja para desechos de la perforación</b> ..... 1   | Asegúrese de despegar todas las cintas y/o material amortiguador de las partes suministradas. |
| <b>C. Unidad motriz</b> ..... 1       | <b>D. Anillo de tope</b> ..... 1 | <b>H. Tornillo de ajuste M3 x 8</b> ..... 3              | *1:DF-7110/DF-7120:(J) no se utiliza.   |
|                                       |                                  | <b>I. Hoja con etiqueta</b> ..... 1                      |   |
|                                       |                                  | <b>J. Película (para DF-770/DF-790/DF-791)*1</b> ..... 1 |   |
|                                       |                                  | <b>K. Sujetador pequeño (para DF-770/DF-7120)</b> .. 1   |   |

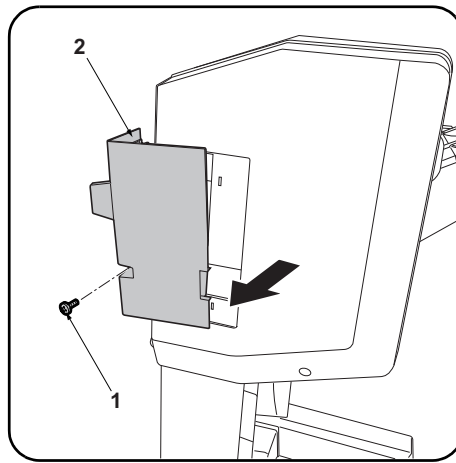
|                                 |                                 |  |   |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|---|
| <b>Deutsch</b>                  |                                 | <b>E. Feder</b> ..... 1                              | <b>L. Große Klemme (für DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110)</b> 1  |
| <b>Gelieferte Teile</b>         |                                 | <b>F. Locher-PWB</b> ..... 1                         | <b>M. Ferritkern</b> ..... 1  |
| <b>A. Locherführung</b> ..... 1 | <b>B. Lochereinheit</b> ..... 1 | <b>G. Lochungsabfallbehälter</b> ..... 1             | Entfernen Sie Klebeband und/oder Dämpfungsmaterial vollständig von den mitgelieferten Teilen. |
| <b>C. Motoreinheit</b> ..... 1  | <b>D. Anschlagring</b> ..... 1  | <b>H. M3 x 8 Passstift-Verbandschrauben</b> ..... 3  | *1:DF-7110/DF-7120:(J) wird nicht benötigt.   |
|                                 |                                 | <b>I. Aufkleberbogen</b> ..... 1                     |   |
|                                 |                                 | <b>J. Film(für DF-770/DF-790/DF-791)*1</b> ..... 1   |   |
|                                 |                                 | <b>K. Kleine Klemme (für DF-770/DF-7120)</b> ..... 1 |   |

|                                      |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|---|---|
| <b>Italiano</b>                      |   | <b>E. Molla</b> ..... 1                                     | <b>L. Morsetto grande (per DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110)</b> 1   |
| <b>Parti di forniture</b>            |   | <b>F. Scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione</b> .... 1 | <b>M. Nucleo di ferrite</b> ..... 1   |
| <b>A. Guida perforazione</b> ..... 1 | <b>B. Unità di perforazione</b> ..... 1 | <b>G. Scarto perforazione</b> ..... 1                       | Accertarsi di rimuovere tutti i nastri adesivi e/o il materiale di imbottitura dalle parti fornite. |
| <b>C. Unità motore</b> ..... 1       | <b>D. Anello di bloccaggio</b> ..... 1  | <b>H. Viti con testa a croce S M3 x 8</b> ..... 3           | *1:DF-7110/DF-7120:(J)non è utilizzato.   |
|                                      |   | <b>I. Foglio di etichette</b> ..... 1                       |   |
|                                      |   | <b>J. Pellicola(per DF-770/DF-790/DF-791)*1</b> .... 1      |   |
|                                      |   | <b>K. Morsetto piccolo (per DF-770/DF-7120)</b> ..... 1     |   |

|                         |                        |   |  |
|-------------------------|------------------------|---|--|
| <b>简体中文</b>             |                        | <b>E. 弹簧</b> ..... 1                            | <b>K. 固定夹 小 (DF-770/DF-7120 用)</b> ..... 1     |
| <b>附属品</b>              |                        | <b>F. 打孔单元电路板</b> ..... 1                       | <b>L. 固定夹 大 (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110 用)</b> .. 1 |
| <b>A. 打孔导向板</b> ..... 1 | <b>B. 打孔单元</b> ..... 1 | <b>G. 打孔纸屑盒</b> ..... 1                         | <b>M. 磁环</b> ..... 1                           |
| <b>C. 电机单元</b> ..... 1  | <b>D. 止动环</b> ..... 1  | <b>H. M3 X 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺丝</b> ..... 3             | 如果附属品上带有固定胶带, 缓冲材料时务必揭下。                       |
|                         |                        | <b>I. 标签纸</b> ..... 1                           | *1:DF-7110/DF-7120: 不使用 (J)。                   |
|                         |                        | <b>J. 胶片 (DF-770/DF-790/DF-791 用)*1</b> ..... 1 |  |

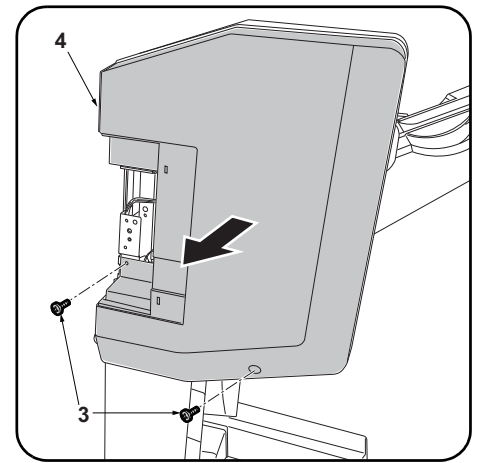
|                         |                        |   |  |
|-------------------------|------------------------|---|--|
| <b>한국어</b>              |                        | <b>E. 스프링</b> ..... 1                           | <b>K. 클램프 소 (DF-770/DF-7120 용)</b> ..... 1     |
| <b>동봉품</b>              |                        | <b>F. 펀치기판</b> ..... 1                          | <b>L. 클램프 대 (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110 용)</b> .. 1 |
| <b>A. 펀치가이드</b> ..... 1 | <b>B. 펀치유닛</b> ..... 1 | <b>G. 펀치폐기박스</b> ..... 1                        | <b>M. 페라이트 코어</b> ..... 1                      |
| <b>C. 모터유닛</b> ..... 1  | <b>D. 스톱링</b> ..... 1  | <b>H. 나사 M3x8 탭타이트 S</b> ..... 3                | 동봉품에 고정 테이프, 완충재가 붙어 있는 경우에는 반드시 제거할 것.        |
|                         |                        | <b>I. 라벨 시트</b> ..... 1                         | *1:DF-7110/DF-7120:(J) 는 사용되지 않습니다.            |
|                         |                        | <b>J. 필름 (DF-770/DF-790/DF-791 용)*1</b> ..... 1 |  |

|                            |                           |   |  |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|---|--|
| <b>日本語</b>                 |                           | <b>E. バネ</b> ..... 1                              | <b>L. クランプ大 (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110 用)</b> .. 1 |
| <b>同梱品</b>                 |                           | <b>F. パンチ基板</b> ..... 1                           | <b>M. フェライトコア</b> ..... 1                      |
| <b>A. パンチガイド</b> ..... 1   | <b>B. パンチユニット</b> ..... 1 | <b>G. パンチくずボックス</b> ..... 1                       | 同梱品に固定テープ, 緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。               |
| <b>C. モーターユニット</b> ..... 1 | <b>D. ストップリング</b> ..... 1 | <b>H. ビス M3x8 タップタイト S</b> ..... 3                | *1:DF-7110/DF-7120:(J) は使用しない。                 |
|                            |                           | <b>I. ラベルシート</b> ..... 1                          |  |
|                            |                           | <b>J. フィルム (DF-770/DF-790/DF-791 用)*1</b> ..... 1 |  |
|                            |                           | <b>K. クランプ小 (DF-770/DF-7120 用)</b> ..... 1        |  |

**Removing the cover (DF-770/DF-7120)**

If installing on the DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110, proceed to step 1 on page 3.

1. Remove the screw (1) and remove the small rear cover (2).



2. Remove the 2 screws (3) and remove the upper rear cover (4).

**Procedure**

Before installing the hole punch unit, make sure the MFP's main power switch is turned off and that its power cord is unplugged from the power outlet.

Install the document finisher first and then install the hole punch unit.

**Procédure**

Avant d'installer la perforatrice, s'assurer que l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP est hors tension et que le câble d'alimentation est débranché de la prise secteur.

Installer d'abord le finisseur de document, puis installer la perforatrice.

**Dépose du couvercle (DF-770/DF-7120)**

Pour l'installation sur le modèle DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110, passer à l'étape 1 de la page 3.

1. Déposer la vis (1) et déposer le petit couvercle arrière (2).

2. Déposer les 2 vis (3) et déposer le couvercle supérieur arrière (4).

**Procedimiento**

Antes de instalar la perforadora, asegúrese de que el interruptor principal de la alimentación del MFP esté desconectado y de que el cable de alimentación esté desenchufado de la toma de corriente de la pared.

Instale primero el finalizador de documentos y luego instale la perforadora.

**Extracción de la cubierta (DF-770/DF-7120)**

Si realiza la instalación en el DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110, vaya al paso 1 de la página 3.

1. Quite el tornillo (1) y, después, quite la cubierta trasera pequeña (2).

2. Quite los 2 tornillos (3) y, después, quite la cubierta trasera superior (4).

**Verfahren**

Bevor Sie mit dem Einbau der Lochereinheit beginnen, stellen Sie sicher, dass der Hauptschalter des Kopierers ausgeschaltet und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist. Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher zuerst und dann erst die Lochereinheit an.

**Entfernen der Abdeckung (DF-770/DF-7120)**

Zur Installation des DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110 weitergehen zu Schritt 1 auf Seite 3.

1. Die Schraube (1) entfernen und die kleine hintere Abdeckung (2) abnehmen.

2. Die 2 Schrauben (3) entfernen und die obere hintere Abdeckung (4) abnehmen.

**Procedura**

Prima di installare l'unità di perforazione, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale dell'MFP sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione sia scollegato dalla presa di corrente.

Installare prima la finitrice e poi procedere all'installazione dell'unità di perforazione.

**Rimozione del coperchio (DF-770/DF-7120)**

Se si installa sull'unità DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110, procedere al passo 1 a pagina 3.

1. Rimuovere la vite (1) e quindi rimuovere il pannello posteriore piccolo (2).

2. Rimuovere le 2 viti (3) e quindi rimuovere il pannello superiore posteriore (4).

**安装步骤**

安装打孔单元时，必须事先关闭 MFP 主机的主电源开关，并拔下电源插头后再进行作业。首先安装装订器，然后安装打孔单元。

**拆下盖板 (DF-770/DF-7120 时)**

安装到 DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110 上时，跳至 P3 的步骤 1。

1. 拆除 1 颗螺丝 (1)，拆下后部小盖板 (2)。

2. 拆除 2 颗螺丝 (3)，拆下后上部盖板 (4)。

**설치순서**

펀치유니트를 부착할 때에는 반드시 MFP 본체의 주 전원 스위치를 OFF 로 하고 전원플러그를 뺀 다음 작업을 할 것 .  
문서 피니셔를 설치 후 , 펀치유니트를 설치 할 것 .

**커버제거 (DF-770/DF-7120 의 경우)**

DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110 에 장착하는 경우에는 P3 의 순서 1 로 진행합니다 .

1. 나사 (1) 1 개를 제거하고 뒷 소커버 (2) 를 제거합니다 .

2. 나사 (3) 2 개를 제거하고 뒷 상커버 (4) 를 제거합니다 .

**取付手順**

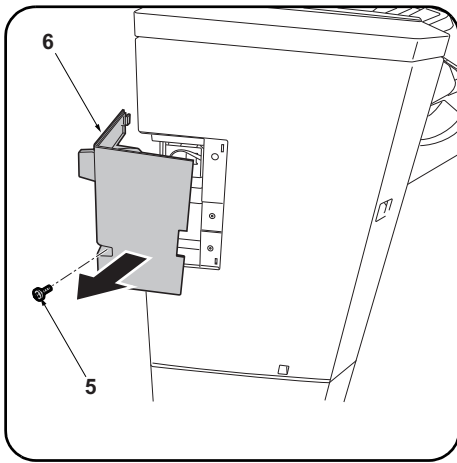
パンチユニットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体の主電源スイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。  
ドキュメントフィニッシャーを設置後、パンチユニットを設置すること。

**カバーの取り外し (DF-770/DF-7120 の場合)**

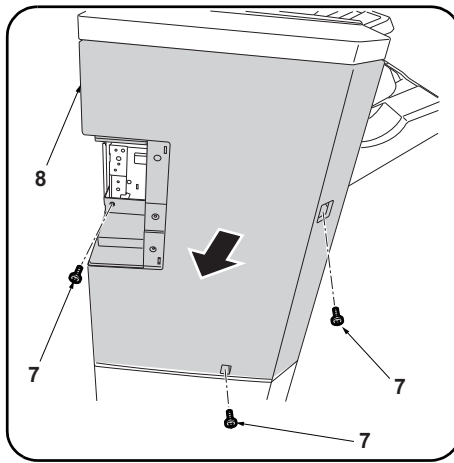
DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110 に装着の場合は、P3 の手順 1 へ進む。

1. ビス (1) 1 本を外し、後小カバー (2) を取り外す。

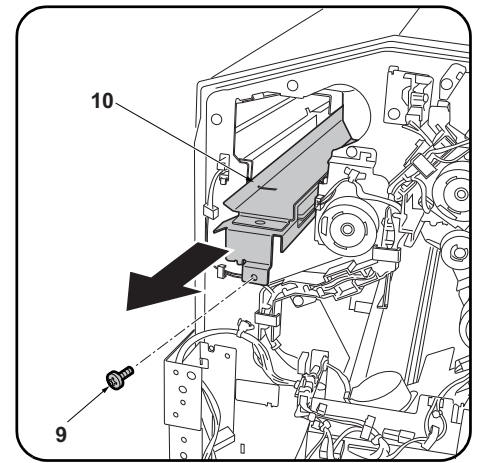
2. ビス (3) 2 本を外し、後上カバー (4) を取り外す。


**Removing the cover (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110)**

1. Remove the screw (5) and remove the small rear cover (6).



2. Remove the 3 screws (7) and remove the upper rear cover (8).


**Installing the hole punch unit**

3. Remove the screw (9) and pull the guide (10) outwards.

**Dépose du couvercle (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110)**

1. Déposer la vis (5) et déposer le petit couvercle arrière (6).

2. Déposer les 3 vis (7) et déposer le couvercle supérieur arrière (8).

**Installation de la perforatrice**

3. Déposer la vis (9) et tirer le guide (10) vers l'extérieur.

**Extracción de la cubierta (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110)**

1. Quite el tornillo (5) y, después, quite la cubierta trasera pequeña (6).

2. Quite los 3 tornillos (7) y, después, quite la cubierta trasera superior (8).

**Instalación de la perforadora**

3. Quite el tornillo (9) y tire de la guía (10) hacia fuera.

**Entfernen der Abdeckung (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110)**

1. Die Schraube (5) entfernen und die kleine hintere Abdeckung (6) abnehmen.

2. Die 3 Schrauben (7) entfernen und die obere hintere Abdeckung (8) abnehmen.

**Anbringen der Lochereinheit**

3. Die Schraube (9) entfernen und die Führung (10) nach außen ziehen.

**Rimozione del coperchio (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110)**

1. Rimuovere la vite (5) e quindi rimuovere il pannello posteriore piccolo (6).

2. Rimuovere le 3 viti (7) e quindi rimuovere il pannello superiore posteriore (8).

**Installare l'unità di perforazione**

3. Rimuovere la vite (9) ed estrarre la guida (10) verso l'esterno.

**拆下盖板 (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110 时)**

1. 拆除 1 颗螺丝 (5), 拆下后部小盖板 (6)。

2. 拆除 3 颗螺丝 (7), 拆下后上部盖板 (8)。

**安装打孔单元**

3. 拆除 1 颗螺丝 (9), 将导向板 (10) 向外拉出。

**커버제거 (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110 의 경우)**

1. 나사 (5) 1 개를 제거하고 뒷 소커버 (6) 를 제거합니다 .

2. 나사 (7) 3 개를 제거하고 뒷 상커버 (8) 를 제거합니다 .

**펀치유닛 부착**

3. 나사 (9) 1 개를 제거하고 가이드 (10) 을 앞으로 끌어 당깁니다 .

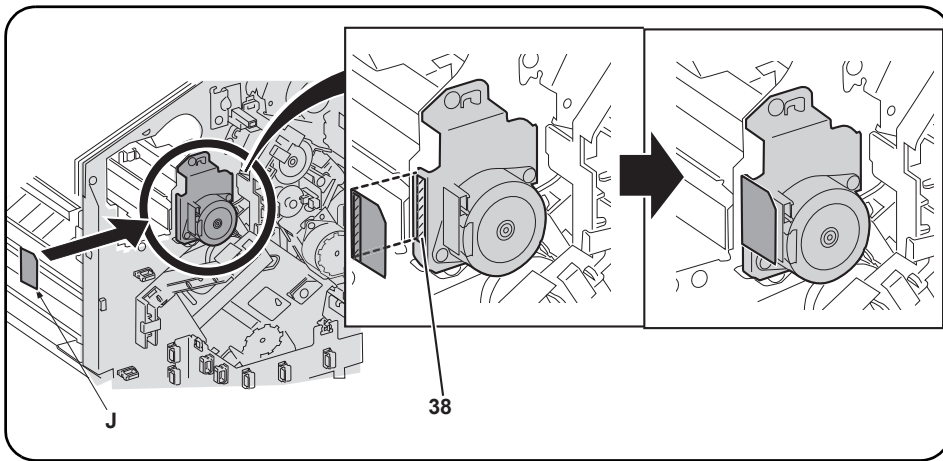
**カバーの取り外し (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110 の場合)**

1. ビス (5) 1 本を外し、後小カバー (6) を取り外す。

2. ビス (7) 3 本を外し、後上カバー (8) を取り外す。

**パンチユニットの取り付け**

3. ビス (9) 1 本を外し、ガイド (10) を手前に引き出す。



4. After using alcohol to clean the shaded portion (38) of the motor shown for adhering the film (J), adhere the film. (DF-770/DF-790/DF-791 only)

4. Après avoir utilisé de l'alcool pour nettoyer la partie du moteur hachurée (38) sur laquelle le film (J) est apposé, coller ce film. (DF-770/DF-790/DF-791 uniquement)

4. Después de utilizar alcohol para limpiar la parte sombreada (38) del motor mostrada en la ilustración para pegar la película (J), pegue la película. (DF-770/DF-790/DF-791 solamente)

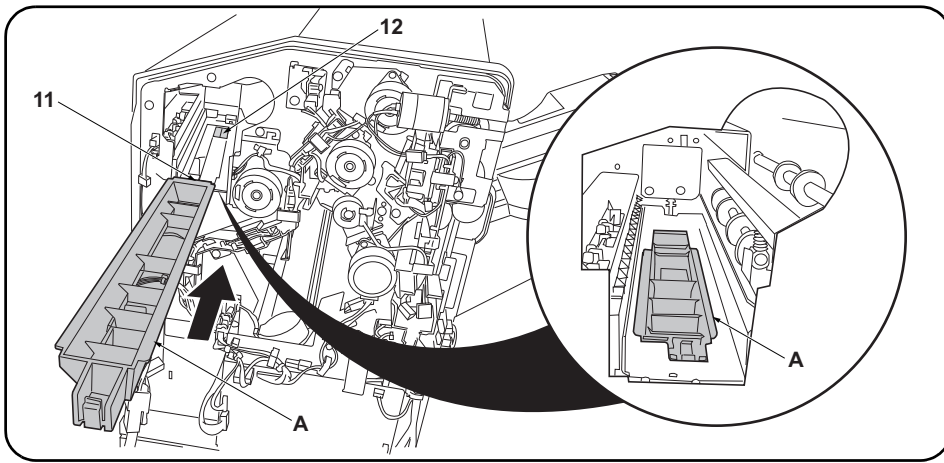
4. Den in der Abbildung grau dargestellten Teil (38) des Motors zum Anbringen des Films (J) mit Alkohol reinigen und dann den Film anbringen. (nur DF-770/DF-790/DF-791)

4. Dopo aver usato l'alcool per pulire la parte ombreggiata (38) del motore, illustrata per l'adesione della pellicola (J), far aderire la pellicola. (solo DF-770/DF-790/DF-791)

4. 用酒精清洁电机斜侧处 (38) 的粘贴位置后, 粘贴胶片 (J)。(仅限 DF-770/DF-790/DF-791)

4. 모터 사선부 (38) 의 부착위치를 알코올 청소 후, 필름 (J) 을 부착합니다. (DF-770/DF-790/DF-791 만)

4. モーター斜線部 (38) の貼り付け位置をアルコール清掃後、フィルム (J) を貼り付ける。(DF-770/DF-790/DF-791 のみ)



5. Install the punch guide (A) so that the leading edge of the guide (11) is below the document finisher frame (12).

5. Monter le guide de la perforatrice (A) de sorte que le bord d'attaque du guide (11) se trouve sous le bâti du retoucheur de document (12).

5. Instale la guía de perforación (A) de forma tal que el borde delantero de la guía (11) quede debajo de la carcasa del finalizador de documentos (12).

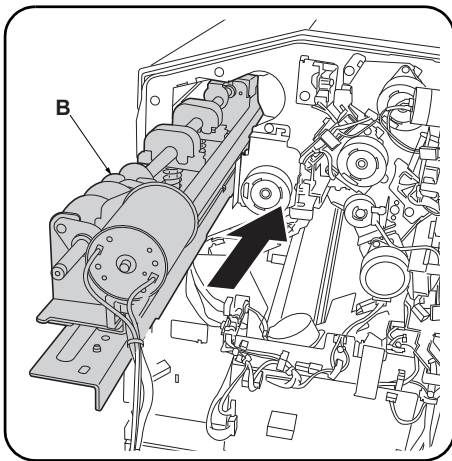
5. Die Locherführung (A) so einsetzen, dass die Vorderkante der Führung (11) unter dem Rahmen (12) des Dokument-Finishers liegt.

5. Installare la guida perforazione (A) in modo che il bordo principale della guida (11) sia sotto il telaio (12) della finitrice di documenti.

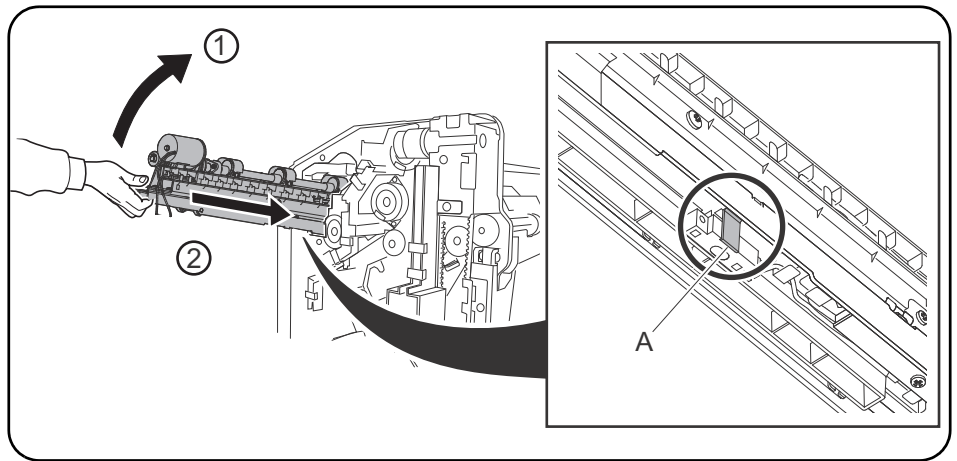
5. 将打孔导向板 (A) 的前端 (11) 安装在装订器的框架 (12) 的下部。

5. 펀치가이드 (A) 의 끝 (11) 이 문서 피니셔의 프레임 (12) 밑으로 되도록 장착합니다 .

5.パンチガイド (A) の先端 (11) がドキュメントフィニッシャーのフレーム (12) の下になるように取り付ける。



6. Insert the hole punch unit (B) into the document finisher.



#### Notes When Installing the Punch Unit

When installing the punch unit at the procedure 6 on page 6, please insert it while slightly holding it up (①, ②). Please note that the hook at the bottom (A) might be damaged if the punch unit is forcibly installed while holding it down.

6. Insérer la perforatrice (B) dans le retoucheur de document.

#### Notes lors de l'installation de l'unité de perforation:

Lors de l'installation de l'unité de perforation à la procédure 6 de la page 6, veuillez l'insérer en la soulevant légèrement (①, ②). Veuillez noter que le crochet du bas (A) peut être endommagé si l'unité de perforation est installée de force en la maintenant vers le bas.

6. Inserte la perforadora (B) en el finalizador de documentos.

#### Nota al instalar el kit perforador

Al instalar el kit perforador según página 6 del procedimiento 6, introdúzcalo elevándolo ligeramente (①, ②). Tenga en cuenta que la pestaña de la parte inferior (A) se puede dañar si el kit de perforado se fuerza en la instalación.

6. Die Lochereinheit (B) in den Dokument-Finisher einsetzen.

#### Hinweis zur Installation der Lochereinheit

Wenn Sie die Lochereinheit wie in Schritt 6 auf Seite 6 beschrieben installieren, halten Sie die Lochereinheit beim Einsetzen ein wenig nach oben (①, ②). Bitte beachten Sie, dass der Haken (A) am Boden beschädigt werden kann, wenn die Lochereinheit bei der Installation nach unten gehalten wird, so dass zu viel Kraftaufwand erforderlich ist.

6. Inserire l'unità di perforazione (B) nella finitrice di documenti.

#### Note per l'installazione dell'unità di perforazione.

Installare l'unità di perforazione, come da procedura 6 pagina 6, inserendola delicatamente e tenendola sollevata (①, ②). Fare attenzione al gancio nella parte inferiore (A) che potrebbe venir danneggiato se si forza verso il basso durante l'istallazione.

6. 将打孔单元 (B) 插入到装订器中。

#### 安装打孔单元时的注意事项:

按第 6 页中的第 6 步骤安装打孔单元时、请先把打孔单元微微向上提起后才插入 (①、②)。请注意打孔单元在没有向上提起而被强行插入的话、有可能会损坏打孔单元底部的扣位 (A)。

6. 펀치유닛 (B) 를 문서 피니셔에 삽입합니다.

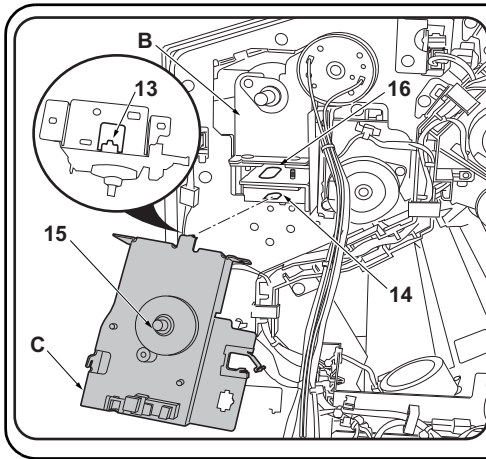
#### 펀치유닛 조립시의 주의점

6 페이지 수순 6에서 펀치유닛을 삽입할 때는 펀치유닛을 약간 들어올리면서 삽입하여 주세요. (①、②) 펀치유닛을 아래로 내리면서 강하게 삽입하면 펀치유닛 바닥부의 후크 (A) 를 파손 할 수 있으므로 주의하여 주세요.

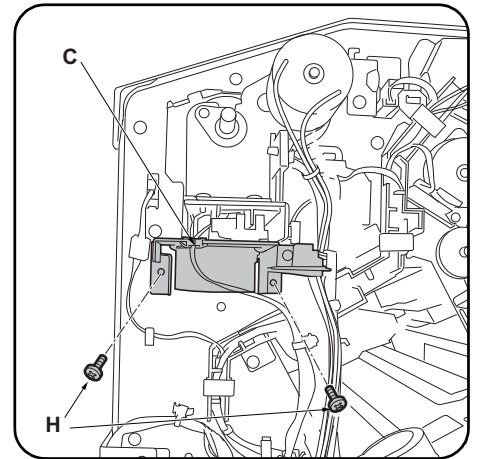
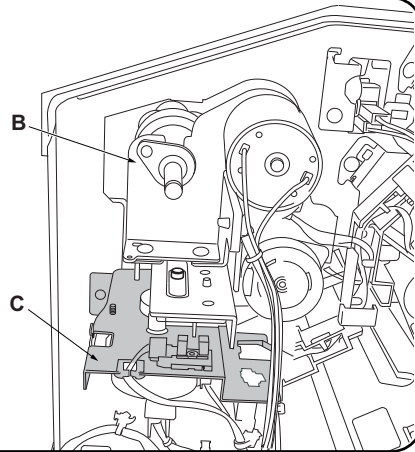
6.パンチユニット (B) をドキュメントフィニッシャーに挿入する。

#### パンチユニット取付時の注意点

6ページ手順6でパンチユニットを挿入するときは、ユニットを少し持ち上げながら挿入して下さい。(①、②)パンチユニットを下げながら強く挿入するとパンチユニット底部のフック (A) を破損するおそれがありますので、ご注意ください。



7. Raise the hole punch unit (B) slightly and fit the hook (13) on the motor unit (C) into the groove (14) in the document finisher. At the same time, insert the rod (15) on the motor unit (C) into the hole (16) in the hole punch unit (B).



8. Secure the motor unit (C) with the 2 screws (H).

7. Lever légèrement la perforatrice (B) et insérer le crochet (13) du moteur (C) dans la rainure (14) du retoucheur de document. Insérer en même temps la tige (15) du moteur (C) dans le trou (16) de la perforatrice (B).

8. Fixer le moteur (C) à l'aide de 2 vis (H).

7. Levante ligeramente la perforadora (B) y encaje el gancho (13) de la unidad motriz (C) en la ranura (14) del finalizador de documentos. Al mismo tiempo, inserte la varilla (15) de la unidad motriz (C) en el orificio (16) de la perforadora (B).

8. Asegure la unidad motriz (C) con los 2 tornillos (H).

7. Die Lochereinheit (B) leicht anheben und den Haken (13) an der Motoreinheit (C) in die Nut (14) des Dokument-Finishers einsetzen. Dabei auch die Stange (15) an der Motoreinheit (C) in die Öffnung (16) der Lochereinheit (B) einstecken.

8. Die Motoreinheit (C) mit den 2 Schrauben (H) sichern.

7. Sollevare leggermente l'unità di perforazione (B) ed inserire il gancio (13) sull'unità motore (C) nella scanalatura (14) della finitrice di documenti. Contemporaneamente, inserire l'asta (15) sull'unità motore (C) nel foro (16) dell'unità di perforazione (B).

8. Fissare l'unità motore (C) con le 2 viti (H).

7. 稍稍抬起打孔单元 (B), 将电机单元 (C) 的卡扣 (13) 嵌入装订器的沟槽 (14) 内。与此同时, 将电机单元 (C) 的轴 (15) 插入打孔单元 (B) 的孔 (16) 中。

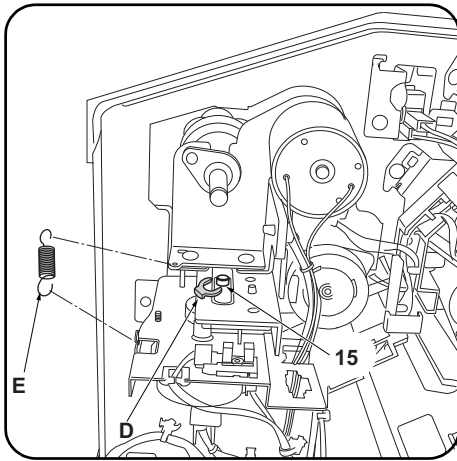
8. 使用 2 颗螺丝 (H) 来固定电机单元 (C)。

7. 펀치유닛 (B) 를 조금 들면서 모터유닛 (C) 후크 (13) 를 문서 피니셔의 구 (14) 에 꽂습니다. 이것과 동시에 모터유닛 (C) 의 축 (15) 을 펀치유닛 (B) 구멍 (16) 에 삽입합니다.

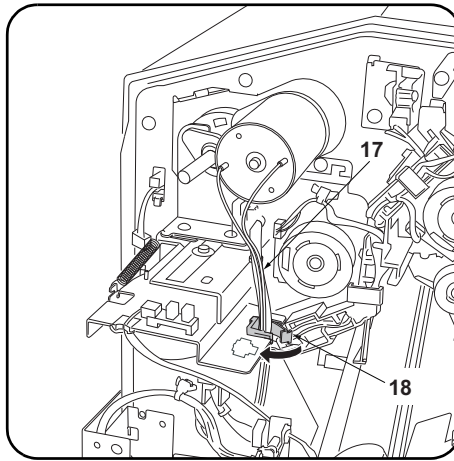
8. 나사 (H) 2 개로 모터유닛 (C) 를 고정합니다.

7.パンチユニット (B) を少し持ち上げながら、モーターユニット (C) のフック (13) をドキュメントフィニッシャーの溝 (14) にはめ込む。これと同時に、モーターユニット (C) の軸 (15) をパンチユニット (B) の穴 (16) に挿入する。

8.ビス (H) 2 本で、モーターユニット (C) を固定する。



**9.** Fit the stop ring (D) over the motor unit rod (15) and fit the spring (E) between the hole punch unit and motor unit.



**10.** Run the hole punch unit wire (17) through the motor unit edging (18).

**9.** Monter la bague d'arrêt (D) sur la tige du moteur (15) et insérer le ressort (E) entre la perforatrice et le moteur.

**10.** Faire passer le câble de la perforatrice (17) dans le passage de câbles du moteur (18).

**9.** Coloque el anillo de tope (D) sobre la varilla de la unidad motriz (15) y coloque el resorte (E) entre la perforadora y la unidad motriz.

**10.** Tienda el cable de la perforadora (17) a través de la pestaña de la unidad motriz (18).

**9.** Den Anschlagring (D) auf die Stange (15) der Motoreinheit setzen und die Feder (E) zwischen Lochereinheit und Motoreinheit einsetzen.

**10.** Das Kabel (17) der Lochereinheit durch den Kantenschutz (18) der Motoreinheit führen.

**9.** Inserire l'anello di bloccaggio (D) sull'asta (15) dell'unità motore ed inserire molla (E) tra l'unità di perforazione e l'unità motore.

**10.** Far passare il cavo dell'unità di perforazione (17) attraverso il bordo (18) dell'unità motore.

**9.** 将止动环 (D) 嵌入到电机单元的轴 (15) 上, 在打孔单元与电机单元之间安装弹簧 (E)。

**10.** 将打孔单元的电线 (17) 穿过电机单元的包边孔 (18)。

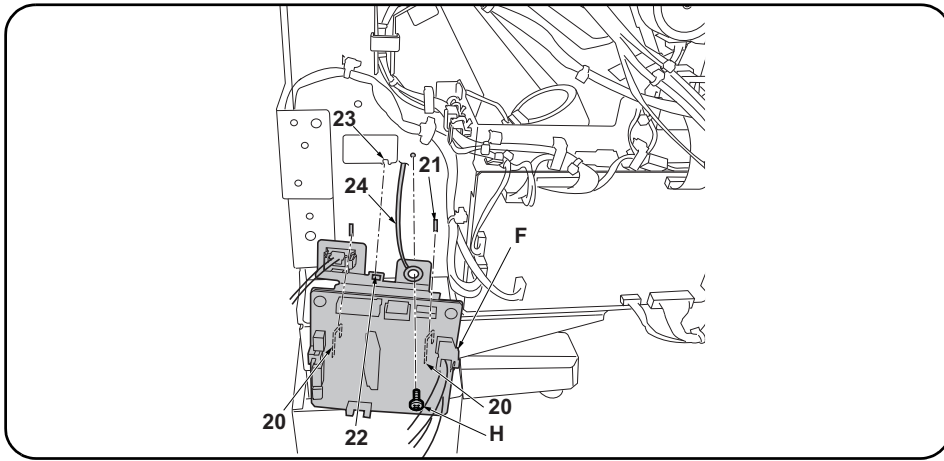
**9.** 모터유닛 축 (15) 에 스톱링 (D) 을 끼고 펀치유닛과 모터유닛 사이에 스프링 (E) 을 설치합니다 .

**10.** 펀치유닛의 전선 (17) 을 모터유닛의 에징 (18) 에 지나가게 합니다 .

**9.** 모터유닛의 축 (15) にストップ링 (D) をはめ、パンチユニットとモーターユニットの間にバネ (E) を取り付けます。

**10.** パンチユニットの電線 (17) をモーターユニットのエッジング (18) に通す。

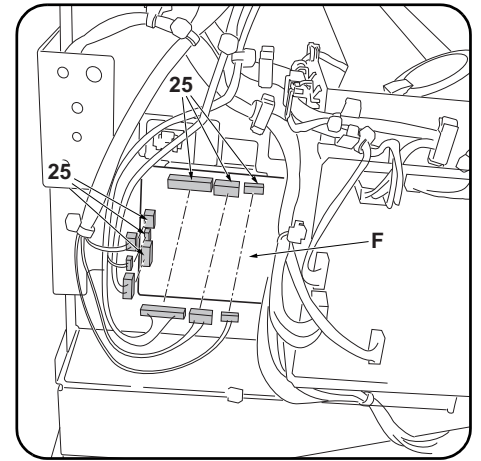




### Installing the punch PWB and waste hole punch box (DF-770/DF-7120)

If installing on the DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110, proceed to step 11 on page 13.

- Fit the 2 hooks (20) in the punch PWB (F) into the cut (21) in the document finisher. At the same time, insert the projection (23) on the document finisher into the hole (22) in the punch PWB (F).
- Using the screw (H), tighten the hole punch unit ground wire (24) and the punch PWB (F) together.



- Plug the 6 hole punch unit wires into the connectors (25) on the punch PWB (F).

### Installation de la PWB de la perforatrice et du bac de récupération de la perforatrice (DF-770/DF-7120).

Pour une installation sur le modèle DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110, passer à l'étape 11 en page 13.

- Insérer les 2 crochets (20) de la PWB de la perforatrice (F) dans la découpe (21) du retoucheur de document. Insérer en même temps la saillie (23) du retoucheur de document dans le trou (22) de la PWB de la perforatrice (F).

- Fixer le câble de terre de la perforatrice (24) à la PWB de la perforatrice (F) à l'aide d'une vis (H).
- Raccorder les 6 câbles de la perforatrice aux connecteurs (25) de la PWB de la perforatrice (F).

### Instalación del PWB de perforación y la caja para desechos de la perforación (DF-770/DF-7120)

Si realiza la instalación en el DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110, vaya al paso 11 de la página 13.

- Coloque los 2 ganchos (20) del PWB de perforación (F) en el corte (21) del finalizador de documentos. Al mismo tiempo, inserte el resalto (23) del finalizador de documentos en el orificio (22) del PWB de perforación (F).

- Usando el tornillo (H), apriete juntos el cable de conexión a tierra de la perforadora (24) y el PWB de perforación (F).
- Enchufe los 6 cables de la perforadora a los conectores (25) del PWB de perforación (F).

### Installation der Locher-PWB und des Lochungsabfallbehälters (DF-770/DF-7120)

Zur Installation des DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110 weitergehen zu Schritt 11 auf Seite 13.

- Die 2 Haken (20) in der Locher-PWB (F) in die Aussparung (21) am Dokument-Finisher einsetzen. Dabei auch den Vorsprung (23) am Dokument-Finisher in die Öffnung (22) auf der Locher-PWB (F) einsetzen.

- Mit der Schraube (H) das Massekabel (24) der Lochereinheit an der Locher-PWB (F) festziehen.
- Die 6 Kabel der Lochereinheit an die Steckverbinder (25) der Locher-PWB (F) anschließen.

### Installazione della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione e dello scarto perforazione (DF-770/DF-7120)

Se si installa sull'unità DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110, procedere al passo 11 a pagina 13.

- Inserire i 2 ganci (20) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F) nell'intaglio (21) della finitrice di documenti. Contemporaneamente, inserire la sporgenza (23) sulla finitrice di documenti nel foro (22) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F).
- Utilizzando la vite (H), stringere insieme il cavo di terra (24) dell'unità di perforazione e la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F).

- Collegare i 6 cavi dell'unità di perforazione nei connettori (25) sulla scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F).

### 安装电路板与打孔纸屑盒 (DF-770/DF-7120 时)

安装到 DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110 上时, 跳至 P13 的步骤 11。

- 将打孔电路板 (F) 的 2 个卡扣 (20) 挂在装订器的缺口 (21) 上。同时, 将打孔电路板 (F) 的孔 (22) 卡入装订器的突出部 (23)。
- 使用 1 颗螺丝 (H) 将打孔单元的接地线 (24) 与打孔电路板 (F) 一起固定。

- 将打孔单元的 6 根电线与打孔电路板 (F) 的接插件 (25) 相连接。

### 기판과 펀치폐기박스의 부착 (DF-770/DF-7120 의 경우)

DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110 에 장착하는 경우에는 P13 의 순서 11 로 진행합니다 .

- 펀치기판 (F) 의 후크 (20) 2 곳을 문서 피니셔의 구멍 (21) 에 걸립니다 . 동시에 펀치기판 (F) 구멍 (22) 을 문서 피니셔의 돌기 (23) 에 넣습니다 .
- 나사 (H) 1 개로 펀치유니트의 접지선 (24) 과 펀치기판 (F) 을 함께 조입니다 .

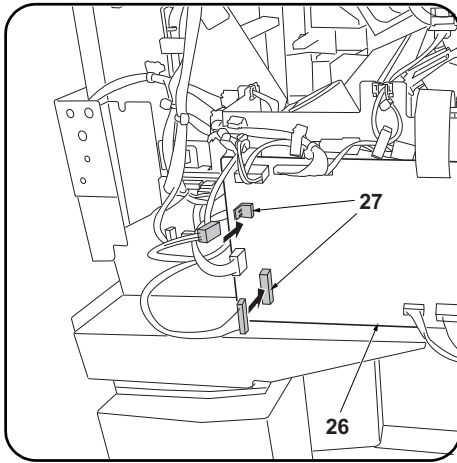
- 펀치유니트의 전선 6 선을 펀치기판 (F) 커넥터 (25) 에 접속합니다 .

### 基板とパンチくずボックスの取り付け (DF-770/DF-7120 の場合)

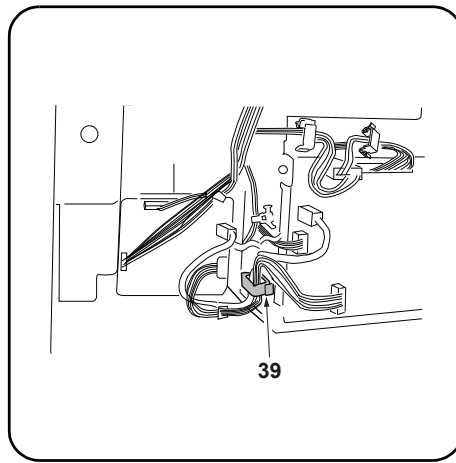
DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110 に装着の場合は、P13 の手順 11 へ進む。

- パンチ基板 (F) のフック (20) 2箇所をドキュメントフィニッシャーの切り欠き (21) に引っ掛ける。同時に、パンチ基板 (F) の穴 (22) をドキュメントフィニッシャーの突起 (23) に入れる。
- ビス (H) 1本で、パンチユニットのアース線 (24) とパンチ基板 (F) を共締めする。

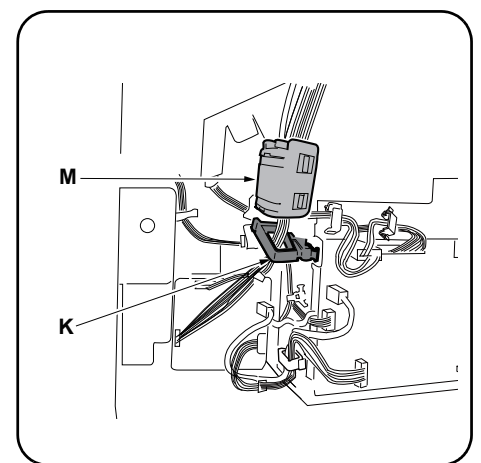
- パンチユニットの電線 6本を、パンチ基板 (F) のコネクタ (25) に接続する。



14. Plug the 2 punch PWB wires into the connectors (27) on the DF main PWB (26).



15. Fasten two wires which were connected in step 14 with the clamp (39).



16. Install the small clamp (K) on the finisher, then pass and fasten the wires from the motor unit and hole punch unit.  
17. Attach the ferrite core (M) to the wire.

14. Raccorder les 2 câbles de la PWB de la perforatrice aux connecteurs (27) de la PWB principale du DF (26).

15. Attacher les deux fils qui ont été connectés à l'étape 14 avec le collier (39).

16. Monter le petit collier (K) sur le retoucheur puis faire passer les câbles du moteur et de la perforatrice dans ce collier pour les fixer en place.

17. Fixer le noyau en ferrite (M) au câble.

14. Enchufe los 2 cables del PWB de perforación a los conectores (27) del PWB principal del DF (26).

15. Apriete los dos cables que conectó en el paso 14 con la abrazadera (39).

16. Instale el sujetador pequeño (K) en el finalizador, después tienda y ajuste los cables de la unidad motriz y la perforadora.

17. Fije el núcleo de ferrita (M) al cable.

14. Die 2 Kabel der Locher-PWB an die Steckverbinder (27) der DF-Haupt-PWB (26) anschließen.

15. Befestigen Sie die beiden Kabel, die in Schritt 14 verbunden wurden, mit der Schelle (39).

16. Die kleine Klemme (K) am Finisher anbringen, dann die Kabel von der Motoreinheit und der Lochereinheit hindurchführen und befestigen.

17. Den Ferritkern (M) am Kabel befestigen.

14. Collegare i 2 cavi della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione nei connettori (27) sulla scheda principale PWB (26) della DF.

15. Fissare i due cavi collegati al punto 14 con il morsetto (39).

16. Installare il morsetto piccolo (K) sul finitore, e quindi passare e fissare i cavi dall'unità motore e dall'unità di perforazione.

17. Applicare il nucleo in ferrite (M) al cavo.

14. 将打孔电路板的 2 根电线与 DF 主电路板 (26) 的接插件 (27) 连接。

15. 使用固定夹 (39) 来固定步骤 14 中连接的 2 根电线。

16. 把小固定夹 (K) 安装在装订器上, 从电机单元和打孔单元出来的导线穿过固定夹来固定。

17. 用磁环 (M) 套住导线。

14. 펀치기판의 전선 2 선을 DF 주 회로기판 (26) 의 커넥터 (27) 에 접속합니다 .

15. 순서 14 로 접속한 2 개의 전선을 클램프 (39) 로 고정해 주십시오 .

16. 클램프 소 (K) 를 피니셔에 장착, 모터 유니트와 펀치 유니트에서부터 전선을 통과시키고 고정합니다 .

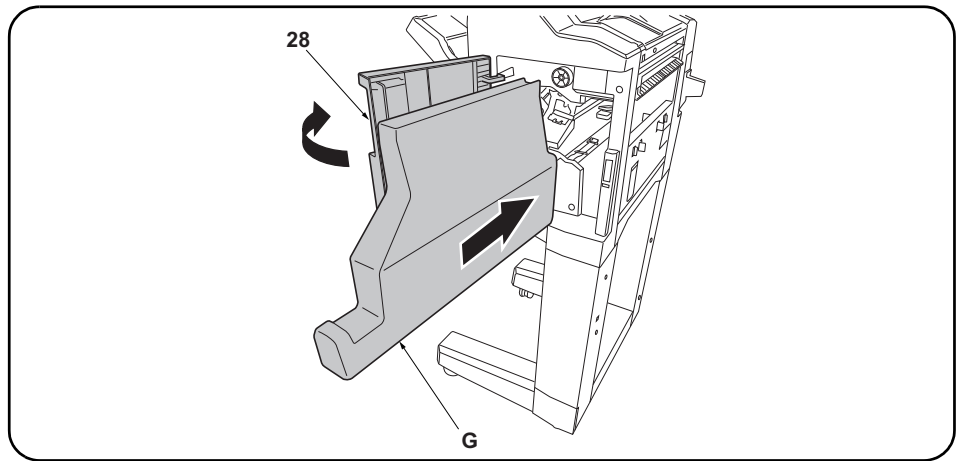
17. 페라이트 코어 (M) 를 전선으로 장착합니다 .

14. パンチ基板の電線 2 本を DF 主回路基板 (26) のコネクタ (27) に接続する。

15. 手順 14 で接続した 2 本の電線をクランプ (39) で固定する。

16. クランプ小 (K) をフィニッシャーに取り付け、モーターユニットとパンチユニットからの電線を通し、固定する。

17. フェライトコア (M) を電線に取り付ける。



18. Replace the upper rear cover (4) and small rear cover (2).

19. Open the upper front cover (28) and insert the waste hole punch box (G).

18. Reposer le couvercle supérieur arrière (4) et le petit couvercle arrière (2).

19. Ouvrir le couvercle supérieur avant (28) et insérer le bac de récupération de la perforatrice (G).

18. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta trasera superior (4) y la cubierta trasera pequeña (2).

19. Abra la cubierta delantera superior (28) e inserte la caja para desechos de la perforación (G).

18. Die obere hintere Abdeckung (4) und die kleine hintere Abdeckung (2) wieder einsetzen.

19. Die obere vordere Abdeckung (28) öffnen und den Lochungsabfallbehälter (G) einsetzen.

18. Ricollocare il pannello superiore posteriore (4) e il pannello posteriore piccolo (2).

19. Aprire il pannello superiore anteriore (28) ed inserire lo scarto perforazione (G).

18. 按原样安装后上部盖板 (4) 与后部小盖板 (2)。

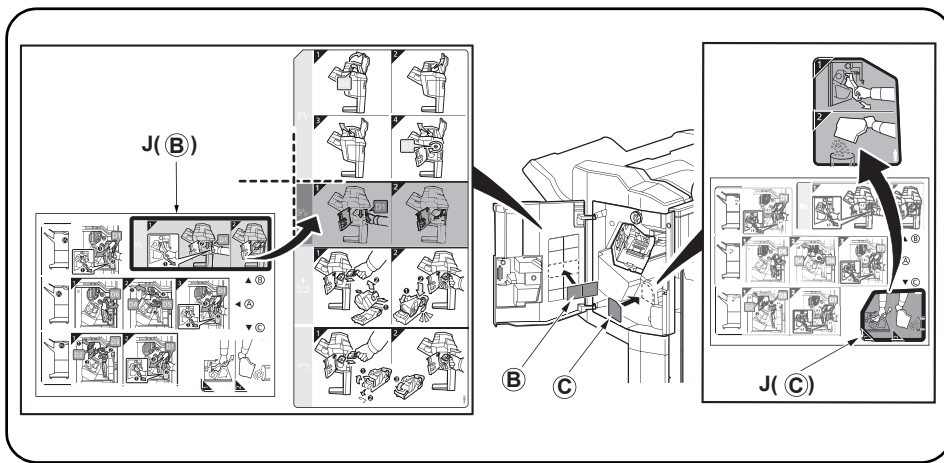
19. 打开前上部盖板 (28), 插入打孔纸屑盒 (G)。

18. 뒤 상커버 (4) 와 후 소커버 (2) 를 원래대로 부착합니다 .

19. 앞 상커버 (28) 를 열고 펀치폐기박스 (G) 를 삽입합니다 .

18. 後上カバー (4) と後小カバー (2) を元通り取り付ける。

19. 前上カバー (28) を開き、パンチくずボックス (G) を挿入する。



20. After cleaning each area with alcohol, adhere the following labels from the label sheet (J) at the locations shown in the illustration: B, C.

21. Close the upper front cover (28).

20. Après avoir nettoyé chaque zone à l'alcool, apposer les étiquettes suivantes du feuillet d'étiquettes (J) aux emplacements indiqués dans l'illustration : B, C.

21. Fermer le couvercle supérieur avant (28).

20. Después de limpiar todas las zonas con alcohol, despegue de la hoja de etiquetas (J) las etiquetas siguientes, y péguelas en los sitios que se indican en la ilustración: B, C.

21. Cierre la cubierta delantera superior (28).

20. Nachdem Sie alle Flächen mit Alkohol gereinigt haben, kleben Sie bitte die folgenden Aufkleber vom Aufkleberbogen (J) an die in der Abbildung angegebenen Stellen: B, C.

21. Die obere vordere Abdeckung (28) schließen.

20. Dopo aver pulito ciascuna zona con alcol, applicare le seguenti etichette del foglio di etichette (J) sui punti mostrati nell'illustrazione: B, C.

21. Chiudere il pannello superiore anteriore (28).

20. 用酒精清洁各区域后, 请在如图所示位置粘贴从标签纸上 (J) 撕下的下列标签 B, C。

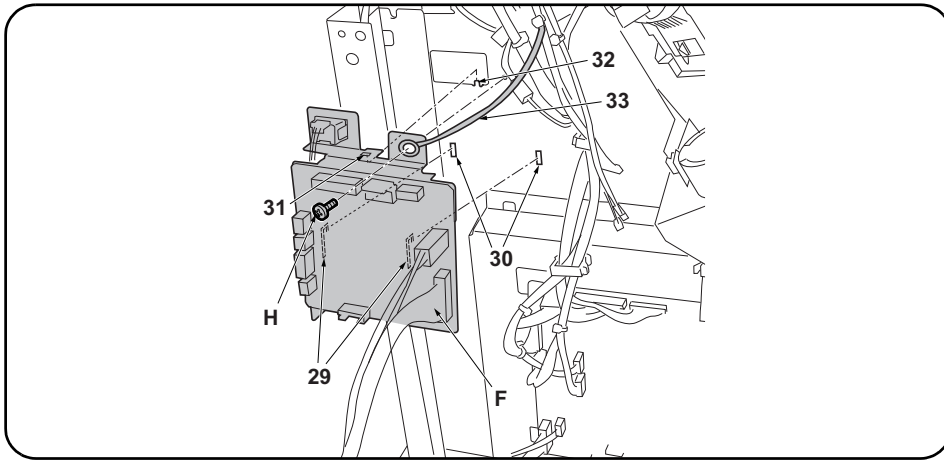
21. 关闭前上部盖板 (28)。

20. 라벨 시트 ( J ) 내의 하기 라벨을 일러스트의 위치에 알코올청소 후 붙입니다: B, C .

21. 앞 상커버 (28) 를 닫습니다 .

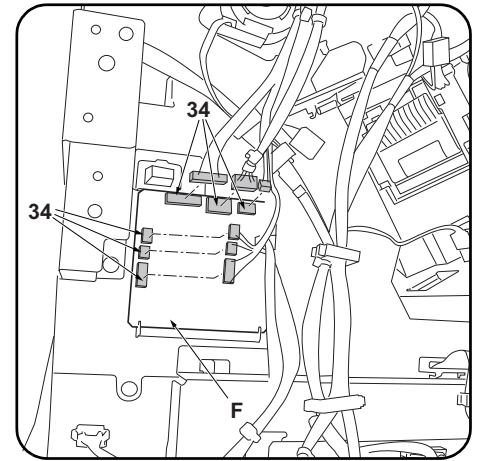
20. ラベルシート (J) 内の B、C をイラストの位置にアルコール清掃後貼り付ける。

21. 前上カバー (28) を閉じる。



#### Installing the punch PWB and waste hole punch box (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110)

11. Fit the 2 hooks (29) in the punch PWB (F) into the cut (30) in the document finisher. At the same time, insert the projection (32) on the document finisher into the hole (31) in the punch PWB (F).
12. Using the screw (H), tighten the hole punch unit ground wire (33) and the punch PWB (F) together.



13. Plug the 6 hole punch unit wires into the connectors (34) on the punch PWB (F).

#### Installation de la PWB de la perforatrice et du bac de récupération de la perforatrice (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110).

11. Insérer les 2 crochets (29) de la PWB de la perforatrice (F) dans la découpe (30) du retoucheur de document. Insérer en même temps la saillie (32) du retoucheur de document dans le trou (31) de la PWB de la perforatrice (F).
12. Fixer le câble de terre de la perforatrice (33) à la PWB de la perforatrice (F) à l'aide d'une vis (H).

13. Raccorder les 6 câbles de la perforatrice aux connecteurs (34) de la PWB de la perforatrice (F).

#### Instalación del PWB de perforación y la caja para desechos de la perforación (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110)

11. Coloque los 2 ganchos (29) del PWB de perforación (F) en el corte (30) del finalizador de documentos. Al mismo tiempo, inserte el resalto (32) del finalizador de documentos en el orificio (31) del PWB de perforación (F).
12. Usando el tornillo (H), apriete juntos el cable de conexión a tierra de la perforadora (33) y el PWB de perforación (F).

13. Enchufe los 6 cables de la perforadora a los conectores (34) del PWB de perforación (F).

#### Installation der Locher-PWB und des Lochungsabfallbehälters (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110)

11. Die 2 Haken (29) in der Locher-PWB (F) in die Aussparung (30) am Dokument-Finisher einsetzen. Dabei auch den Vorsprung (32) am Dokument-Finisher in die Öffnung (31) auf der Locher-PWB (F) einsetzen.
12. Mit der Schraube (H) das Massekabel (33) der Lochereinheit an der Locher-PWB (F) festziehen.

13. Die 6 Kabel der Lochereinheit an die Steckverbinder (34) der Locher-PWB (F) anschließen.

#### Installazione della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione e dello scarto perforazione (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110)

11. Inserire i 2 ganci (29) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F) nell'intaglio (30) della finitrice di documenti. Contemporaneamente, inserire la sporgenza (32) sulla finitrice di documenti nel foro (31) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F).
12. Utilizzando la vite (H), stringere insieme il cavo di terra (33) dell'unità di perforazione e la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F).

13. Collegare i 6 cavi dell'unità di perforazione nei connettori (34) sulla scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (F).

#### 安装电路板与打孔纸屑盒 (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110 时)

11. 将打孔电路板 (F) 的 2 个卡扣 (29) 挂在装订器的缺口 (30) 上。同时, 将打孔电路板 (F) 的孔 (31) 卡入装订器的突出部 (32)。
12. 使用 1 颗螺丝 (H) 将打孔单元的接地线 (33) 与打孔电路板 (F) 一起固定。

13. 将打孔单元的 6 根电线与打孔电路板 (F) 的接插件 (34) 相连接。

#### 기판과 펀치폐기박스의 부착 (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110 의 경우)

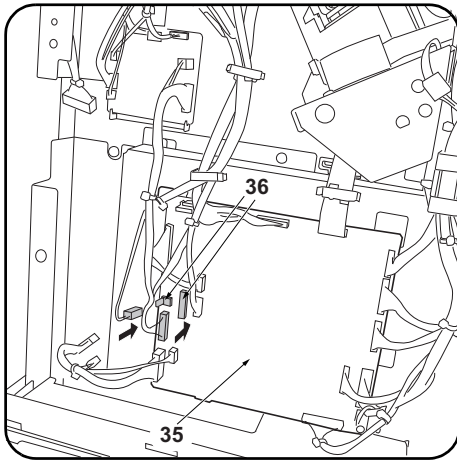
11. 펀치기판 (F) 의 후크 (29) 2 곳을 문서 피니셔의 구멍 (30) 에 걸니다 . 동시에 펀치기판 (F) 구멍 (31) 을 문서 피니셔의 돌기 (32) 에 넣습니다 .
12. 나사 (H) 1 개로 펀치유닛의 접지선 (33) 과 펀치기판 (F) 을 함께 조입니다 .

13. 펀치유닛의 전선 6 선을 펀치기판 (F) 커넥터 (34) 에 접속합니다 .

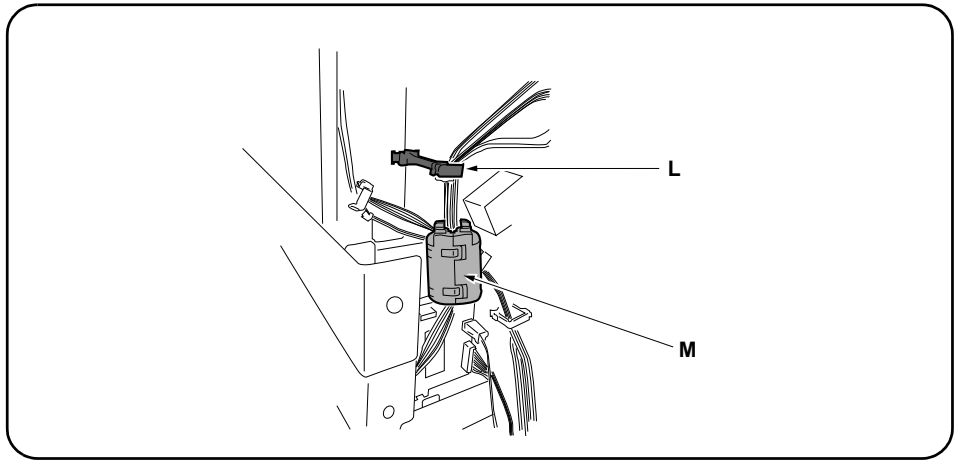
#### 基板とパンチくずボックスの取り付け (DF-790/DF-791/DF-7110 の場合)

- 11.パンチ基板 (F) のフック (29) 2箇所をドキュメントフィニッシャーの切り欠き (30) に引っ掛ける。同時に、パンチ基板 (F) の穴 (31) をドキュメントフィニッシャーの突起 (32) に入れる。
- 12.ビス (H) 1本で、パンチユニットのアース線 (33) とパンチ基板 (F) を共締めする。

- 13.パンチユニットの電線 6本を、パンチ基板 (F) のコネクタ (34) に接続する。



14. Plug the 2 punch PWB wires into the connectors (36) on the DF main PWB (35).



15. Install the small clamp (L) on the finisher, then pass and fasten the wires from the motor unit and hole punch unit.

16. Attach the ferrite core (M) to the wire.

14. Raccorder les 2 câbles de la PWB de la perforatrice aux connecteurs (36) de la PWB principale du DF (35).

15. Installer le grand collier (L) sur le retoucheur puis faire passer les câbles du moteur et de la perforatrice dans ce collier pour les fixer en place.

16. Fixer le noyau en ferrite (M) au câble.

14. Enchufe los 2 cables del PWB de perforación a los conectores (36) del PWB principal del DF (35).

15. Instale el sujetador grande (L) en el finalizador, después tienda y ajuste los cables de la unidad motriz y la perforadora.

16. Fije el núcleo de ferrita (M) al cable.

14. Die 2 Kabel der Locher-PWB an die Steckverbinder (36) der DF-Haupt-PWB (35) anschließen.

15. Die große Klemme (L) am Finisher anbringen, dann die Kabel von der Motoreinheit und der Lochereinheit hindurchführen und befestigen.

16. Den Ferritkern (M) am Kabel befestigen.

14. Collegare i 2 cavi della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione nei connettori (36) sulla scheda principale PWB (35) della DF.

15. Installare il morsetto grande (L) sul finitore, e quindi passare e fissare i cavi dall'unità motore e dall'unità di perforazione.

16. Applicare il nucleo in ferrite (M) al cavo.

14. 将打孔电路板的 2 根电线与 DF 主电路板 (35) 的接插件 (36) 连接。

15. 把大固定夹 (L) 安装在装订器上, 从电机单元和打孔单元出来的导线穿过固定夹来固定。

16. 用磁环 (M) 套住导线。

14. 펀치기판의 전선 2 선을 DF 주 회로기판 (35) 의 커넥터 (36) 에 접속합니다 .

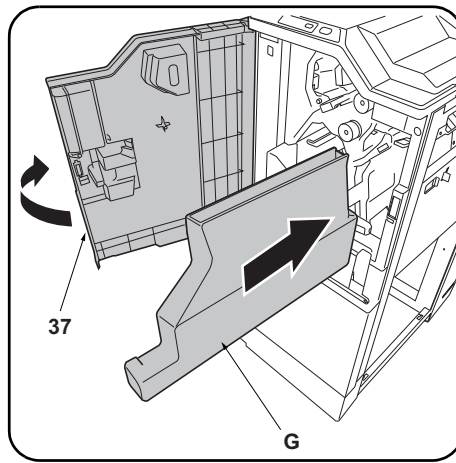
15. 클램프 대 (L) 를 피니셔에 장착 , 모터 유닛과 펀치 유닛에서부터 전선을 통과시키고 고정합니다 .

16. 페라이트 코어 (M) 를 전선으로 장착합니다 .

14. パンチ基板の電線 2 本を DF 主回路基板 (35) のコネクタ (36) に接続する。

15. クランプ大 (L) をフィニッシャーに取り付け、モーターユニットとパンチユニットからの電線を通し、固定する。

16. フェライトコア (M) を電線に取り付ける。



17. Replace the upper rear cover (8) and small rear cover (6).

18. Open the upper front cover (37) and insert the waste hole punch box (G).

17. Reposer le couvercle supérieur arrière (8) et le petit couvercle arrière (6).

18. Ouvrir le couvercle supérieur avant (37) et insérer le bac de récupération de la perforatrice (G).

17. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta trasera superior (8) y la cubierta trasera pequeña (6).

18. Abra la cubierta delantera superior (37) e inserte la caja para desechos de la perforación (G).

17. Die obere hintere Abdeckung (8) und die kleine hintere Abdeckung (6) wieder einsetzen.

18. Die obere vordere Abdeckung (37) öffnen und den Lochungsabfallbehälter (G) einsetzen.

17. Ricollocare il pannello superiore posteriore (8) e il pannello posteriore piccolo (6).

18. Aprire il pannello superiore anteriore (37) ed inserire lo scarto perforazione (G).

17. 按原样安装后上部盖板 (8) 与后部小盖板 (6)。

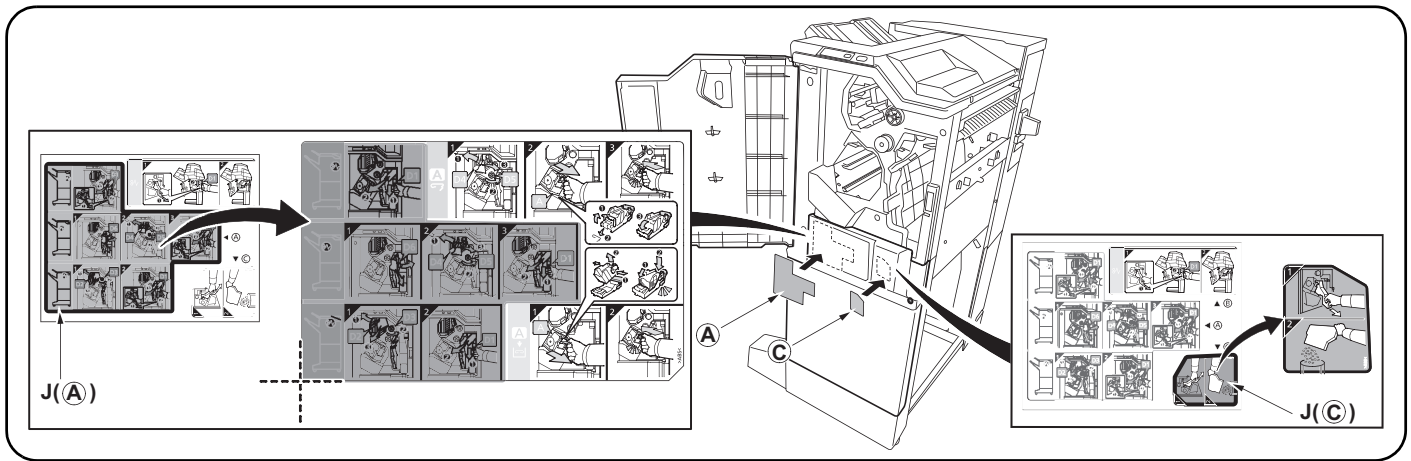
18. 打开前上部盖板 (37)，插入打孔纸屑盒 (G)。

17. 뒤 상커버 (8) 와 후 소커버 (6) 를 원래대로 부착합니다 .

18. 앞 상커버 (37) 를 열고 펀치폐기박스 (G) 를 삽입합니다 .

17. 後上カバー (8) と後小カバー (6) を元通り取り付ける。

18. 前上カバー (37) を開き、パンチくずボックス (G) を挿入する。



19. After cleaning each area with alcohol, adhere the following labels from the label sheet (J) at the locations shown in the illustration: A, C.  
 20. Close the upper front cover (37).

19. Après avoir nettoyé chaque zone à l'alcool, apposer les étiquettes suivantes du feuillet d'étiquettes (J) aux emplacements indiqués dans l'illustration :  
 A, C.  
 20. Fermer le couvercle supérieur avant (37).

19. Después de limpiar todas las zonas con alcohol, despegue de la hoja de etiquetas (J) las etiquetas siguientes, y péguelas en los sitios que se indican en la ilustración: A, C.  
 20. Cierre la cubierta delantera superior (37).

19. Nachdem Sie alle Flächen mit Alkohol gereinigt haben, kleben Sie bitte die folgenden Aufkleber vom Aufkleberbogen (J) an die in der Abbildung angegebenen Stellen: A, C.  
 20. Die obere vordere Abdeckung (37) schließen.

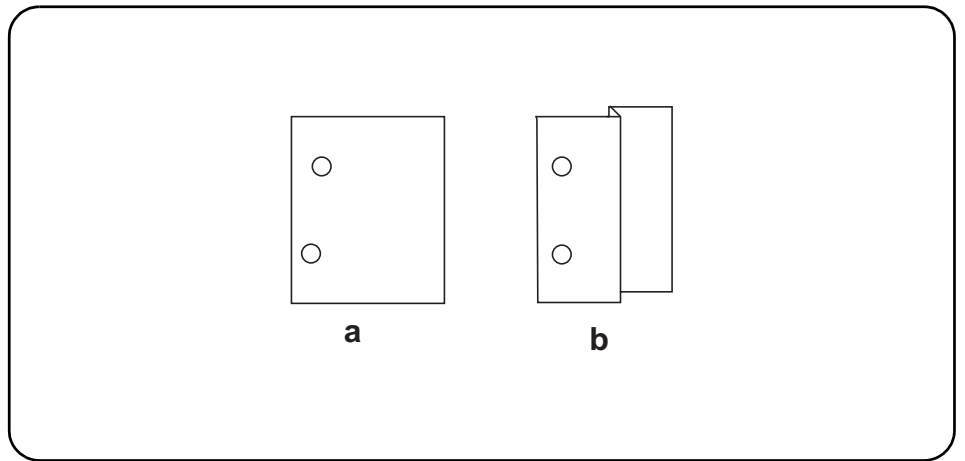
19. Dopo aver pulito ciascuna zona con alcol, applicare le seguenti etichette del foglio di etichette (J) sui punti mostrati nell'illustrazione: A, C.  
 20. Chiudere il pannello superiore anteriore (37).

19. 用酒精清洁各区域后, 请在如图所示位置粘贴从标签纸上 (J) 撕下的下列标签 A, C。  
 20. 关闭前上部盖板 (37)。

19. 라벨 시트 ( J ) 내의 하기 라벨을 일러스트의 위치에 알코올청소 후 붙입니다: A, C .  
 20. 앞 상커버 (37) 를 닫습니다 .

19. ラベルシート (J) 内の A、C をイラストの位置にアルコール清掃後貼り付ける。  
 20. 前上カバー (37) を閉じる。



**[Adjusting the hole punch position]**

1. Connect the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the MFP main power switch on.
2. Make a test copy in punch mode.
3. If any off-centering is observed, follow the procedure below to adjust the hole position.

**Adjusting the hole punch entry registration**

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select Finisher and Punch Regist.
2. Adjust the values.  
When the paper fed in skewed copy example (a): Increase the setting value.  
When the paper crimped copy example (b): Decrease the setting value.
3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.

**[Réglage de la position des perforations]**

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sous tension.
2. Effectuer une copie d'essai en mode perforation.
3. Si les perforations sont décentrées, suivre la procédure ci-dessous pour ajuster la position de perforation.

**Réglage de l'enregistrement de l'entrée des perforations**

1. Passer en mode maintenance U246, sélectionner Finisher et Punch Regist.
2. Régler les valeurs.  
Si le papier est alimenté de travers exemple de copie (a): Augmentez la valeur de réglage.  
Si le papier est froissé exemple de copie (b): Diminuez la valeur de réglage.
3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.

**[Ajuste de la posición de perforación]**

1. Conecte el enchufe del MFP en el receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP.
2. Haga una copia de prueba en el modo de perforación.
3. Si observa descentrado, siga el procedimiento de abajo para ajustar la posición del agujero.

**Ajuste del registro de entrada de perforación**

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione Finisher y Punch Regist.
2. Ajuste los valores.  
Cuando el papel alimentado está torcido copia de muestra (a): Aumente el valor de configuración.  
Cuando el papel se dobló copia de muestra (b): Reduzca el valor de configuración.
3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.

**[Einstellen der Lochungsposition]**

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie den MFP am Hauptschalter ein.
2. Eine Testkopie im Lochungsmodus erstellen.
3. Falls eine außermittige Lochung erfolgte, ist die Lochungsposition wie folgend nachzustellen.

**Einstellen der Lochungsregistrierung**

1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U246, wählen Sie Finisher und Punch Regist.
2. Die Werte einstellen.  
Wenn Papier verkantet eingezogen wird Kopiebeispiel (a): Den Einstellwert erhöhen.  
Wenn Papier verknittert wird Kopiebeispiel (b): Den Einstellwert verringern.
3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.

**[Regolazione di posizione dei fori di perforazione]**

1. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.
2. Eseguire una copia di prova in modalità di perforazione.
3. Nel caso in cui non lo siano, eseguire la procedura indicata qui di seguito per regolarne la posizione.

**Regolazione del registro del foro di perforazione**

1. Entrare in modalità manutenzione U246, selezionare Finisher e Punch Regist.
2. Regolare i valori.  
Quando l'alimentazione della carta risulta obliqua esempio di copia (a): Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione.  
Quando la carta risulta increspata esempio di copia (b): Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.
3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.

**[打孔位置的调节]**

1. 将 MFP 主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中，打开主电源开关。
2. 在打孔模式下进行测试复印。
3. 打孔位置有偏差时，按以下步骤进行调节。

**打孔装入定位调节**

1. 设置维护模式 U246，选择 Finisher、Punch Regist。
2. 调整设定值。  
纸张斜向搬运时的复印样本 (a)：调高设定值。  
纸张作 Z 字折时的复印样本 (b)：调低设定值。
3. 按 Start 键，以确定设定值。

**[핀치위치의 조정]**

1. MFP 본체 전원플러그를 콘센트에 꽂고 주 전원 스위치를 ON으로 합니다.
2. 핀치모드에서 시험복사를 합니다.
3. 핀치위치가 벗어난 경우에는 다음 순서로 조정합니다.

**핀치반입 레지스트 조정**

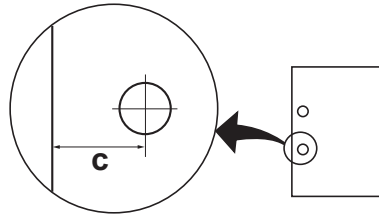
1. 메인テナンス 모드 U246 를 세트하고 Finisher, Punch Regist 를 선택합니다.
2. 설정치를 조정합니다.  
용지가 경사로 반송되는 경우의 복사샘플 (a): 설정치를 높입니다.  
용지가 Z 折임이 있는 경우의 복사샘플 (b): 설정치를 내립니다.
3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다.

**[パンチ位置の調整]**

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、主電源スイッチを ON にする。
2. パンチモードでテストコピーを行う。
3. パンチ位置がずれていた場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

**パンチ搬入レジスト調整**

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、Finisher、Punch Regist を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。  
用紙が斜めに搬送される場合コピーサンプル (a)：設定値を上げる。  
用紙が Z 折れする場合コピーサンプル (b)：設定値を下げる。
3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。



### Adjusting the hole punch position feed

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select Finisher and Punch Feed.
2. Adjust the values.  
If the punch hole position is closer to the edge than the reference value (c): Increase the setting value.  
If the punch hole position is further from the edge than the reference value (c): Decrease the setting value.

3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.  
<Reference value (c)>  
Metric specification: 13 mm; Inch specification: 9.5 mm

### Réglage de la position du point de perforation

1. Passer en mode maintenance U246, sélectionner Finisher et Punch Feed.
2. Régler les valeurs.  
Si la perforation est plus proche du bord de la feuille que défini par la valeur de référence (c): Augmentez la valeur de réglage.  
Si la perforation est plus loin du bord de la feuille que défini par la valeur de référence (c): Diminuez la valeur de réglage.

3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.  
<Valeur de référence (c)>  
Spécifications métriques: 13 mm; Spécifications en pouces: 9,5 mm

### Ajuste de la alimentación de la posición de perforación

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione Finisher y Punch Feed.
2. Ajuste los valores.  
Si la posición de perforación está más cerca del borde que el valor de referencia (c): Aumente el valor de configuración.  
Si la posición de perforación está más alejada del borde que el valor de referencia (c): Reduzca el valor de configuración.

3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.  
<Valor de referencia (c)>  
Sistema métrico: 13 mm; en pulgadas: 9,5 mm

### Einstellen des Transports der Lochungsposition

1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U246, wählen Sie Finisher und Punch Feed.
2. Die Werte einstellen.  
Falls die Lochungsposition näher an der Kante liegt als der Bezugswert (c) erlaubt: Den Einstellwert erhöhen.  
Falls die Lochungsposition ferner von der Kante liegt als der Bezugswert (c) erlaubt: Den Einstellwert verringern.

3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.  
<Bezugswert (c)>  
Metrischer Abstand: 13 mm; Abstand in Zoll: 9,5 mm

### Regolazione spostamento di posizione dei fori di perforazione

1. Entrare in modalità manutenzione U246, selezionare Finisher e Punch Feed.
2. Regolare i valori.  
Se la posizione dei fori di perforazione è più vicina al bordo rispetto al valore di riferimento (c): Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione.  
Se la posizione dei fori di perforazione è più lontana dal bordo rispetto al valore di riferimento (c): Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.

3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.  
<Valore di riferimento (c)>  
Specificazione in unità metrica: 13 mm; Specificazione in pollici: 9,5 mm

### 打孔位置搬运调节

1. 设置维护模式 U246, 选择 Finisher、Punch Feed。
2. 调整设定值。  
打孔位置比基准值 (c) 短时: 调高设定值。  
打孔位置比基准值 (c) 长时: 调低设定值。

3. 按 Start 键, 以确定设定值。  
<基准值 (c) >  
公制规格: 13mm、英制规格: 9.5mm

### 핀치위치 반송조정

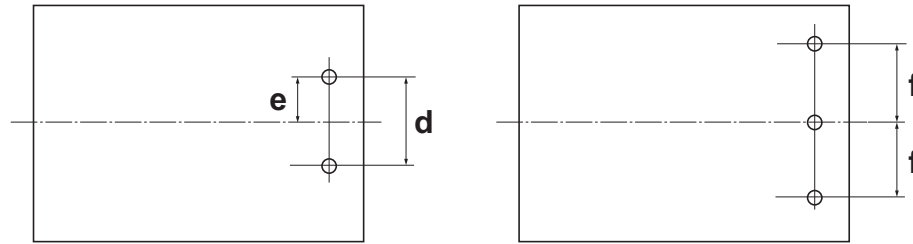
1. 메인터너스 모드 U246 를 세트하고 Finisher, Punch Feed 를 선택합니다.
2. 설정치를 조정합니다.  
핀치구멍의 위치가 기준치 (c) 보다 짧은 경우: 설정치를 높입니다.  
핀치구멍의 위치가 기준치 (c) 보다 긴 경우: 설정치를 내립니다.

3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다.  
<기준치 (c) >  
센치사양: 13mm, 인치사양: 9.5mm

### パンチ位置搬送調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、Finisher、Punch Feed を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。  
パンチ穴の位置が基準値 (c) より短い場合: 設定値を上げる。  
パンチ穴の位置が基準値 (c) より長い場合: 設定値を下げる。

3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。  
<基準値 (c) >  
センチ仕様: 13mm、インチ仕様: 9.5mm



### Centering the hole punch position

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select Finisher and Punch Width.
2. Adjust the values.  
If the punch hole is too close to the front of the machine: Decrease the setting value.  
If the punch hole is too close to the rear of the machine: Increase the setting value.

3. Press the Start key to confirm the setting value.

<Reference value>

Metric specification:  $d = 80 \text{ mm} \pm 0.5$ ,  $e = 40 \text{ mm} \pm 2$

Inch specification:  $d = 2.75 \text{ inch} \pm 0.5$ ,  $e = 1.375 \text{ inch} \pm 2$ ,  
 $f = 4.25 \text{ inch} \pm 0.5$

### Centrage de la position de perforation

1. Passer en mode maintenance U246, sélectionner Finisher et Punch Width.
2. Régler les valeurs.  
Si la perforation est trop proche de l'avant de la machine: Diminuez la valeur de réglage.  
Si la perforation est trop proche de l'arrière de la machine: Augmentez la valeur de réglage.

3. Appuyer sur la touche de Start pour confirmer la valeur de réglage.

<Valeur de référence>

Spécifications métriques:  $d = 80 \text{ mm} \pm 0.5$ ,  $e = 40 \text{ mm} \pm 2$

Spécifications en pouces:  $d = 2,75 \text{ pouces} \pm 0,5$ ,  $e = 1,375 \text{ pouces} \pm 2$ ,  
 $f = 4.25 \text{ pouces} \pm 0,5$

### Centrado de la posición de perforación

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione Finisher y Punch Width.
2. Ajuste los valores.  
Si la perforación se encuentra demasiado cerca del frente de la máquina: Reduzca el valor de configuración.  
Si la perforación se encuentra demasiado cerca de la parte trasera de la máquina: Aumente el valor de configuración.

3. Pulse la tecla de Start para confirmar el valor de configuración.

<Valor de referencia>

Sistema métrico:  $d = 80 \text{ mm} \pm 0,5$ ,  $e = 40 \text{ mm} \pm 2$

En pulgadas:  $d = 2,75 \text{ pulgada} \pm 0,5$ ,  $e = 1,375 \text{ pulgada} \pm 2$ ,  
 $f = 4.25 \pm 0,5 \text{ pulgada}$

### Zentrieren der Stanzlochposition

1. Schalten Sie in den Wartungsmodus U246, wählen Sie Finisher und Punch Width.
2. Die Werte einstellen.  
Falls die Lochung zu nah an der Gerätefront liegt: Den Einstellwert verringern.  
Falls die Lochung zu weit weg von der Gerätefront liegt: Den Einstellwert erhöhen.

3. Den Einstellwert durch Drücken der Start-Taste bestätigen.

<Bezugswert>

Metrischer Abstand:  $d = 80 \text{ mm} \pm 0,5$ ;  $e = 40 \text{ mm} \pm 2$

Abstand in Zoll:  $d = 2,75 \text{ Zoll} \pm 0,5$ ,  $e = 1,375 \text{ Zoll} \pm 2$ ,  
 $f = 4.25 \text{ Zoll} \pm 0,5$

### Centrata della posizione dei fori di perforazione

1. Entrare in modalità manutenzione U246, selezionare Finisher e Punch Width.
2. Regolare i valori.  
Se la posizione dei fori di perforazione è troppo vicina alla parte anteriore della macchina: Diminuire il valore dell'impostazione.  
Se la posizione dei fori di perforazione è troppo vicina alla parte posteriore della macchina: Aumentare il valore dell'impostazione.

3. Premere il tasto di Start per confermare il valore dell'impostazione.

<Valore di riferimento>

Specificazione in unità metrica:  $d = 80 \text{ mm} \pm 0,5$ ,  $e = 40 \text{ mm} \pm 2$

Specificazione in pollici:  $d = 2,75 \text{ pollici} \pm 0,5$ ,  $e = 1,375 \text{ pollici} \pm 2$ ,  
 $f = 4.25 \text{ pollici} \pm 0,5$

### 打孔位置中心调节

1. 设置维护模式 U246, 选择 Finisher、Punch Width。
2. 调整设定值。  
打孔位置向机器前部偏移时: 调低设定值。  
打孔位置向机器后部偏移时: 调高设定值。

3. 按 Start 键, 以确定设定值。

<基准值>

公制规格:  $d=80\text{mm} \pm 0.5$ 、 $e=40\text{mm} \pm 2$

英制规格:  $d=2.75\text{inch} \pm 0.5$ 、 $e=1.375\text{inch} \pm 2$ 、 $f=4.25\text{inch} \pm 0.5$

### 펀치위치 센터조정

1. 메인터넌스 모드 U246 를 세트하고 Finisher, Punch Width 를 선택합니다.
2. 설정치를 조정합니다.  
펀치구멍이 기기 앞측으로 벗어난 경우: 설정치를 내립니다.  
펀치구멍의 위치가 기기 뒷측으로 벗어난 경우: 설정치를 높입니다.

3. 시작키를 누르고 설정치를 확인합니다.

<기준치>

센치 사양:  $d=80\text{mm} \pm 0.5$ ,  $e=40\text{mm} \pm 2$

인치 사양:  $d=2.75\text{inch} \pm 0.5$ ,  $e=1.375\text{inch} \pm 2$ ,  $f=4.25\text{inch} \pm 0.5$

### パンチ位置センター調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、Finisher、Punch Width を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。  
パンチ穴の位置が機械前側にずれている場合: 設定値を下げる。  
パンチ穴の位置が機械後側にずれている場合: 設定値を上げる。

3. スタートキーを押し、設定値を確定する。

<基準値>

センチ仕様:  $d=80\text{mm} \pm 0.5$ 、 $e=40\text{mm} \pm 2$

インチ仕様:  $d=2.75\text{inch} \pm 0.5$ 、 $e=1.375\text{inch} \pm 2$ 、 $f=4.25\text{inch} \pm 0.5$

(11) FAX System 12

# FAX System 12 Installation Guide

**INSTALLATION GUIDE**

**GUIDE D'INSTALLATION**

**GUÍA DE INSTALACION**

**INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG**

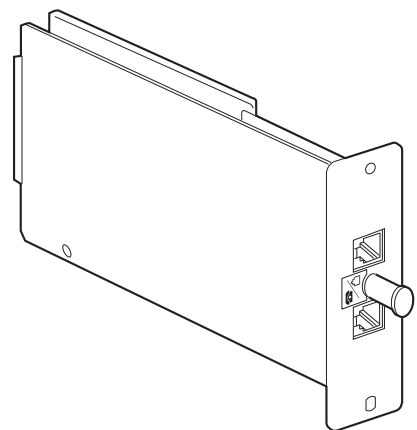
**GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE**

**安装手册**

**설치안내서**

**設置手順書**

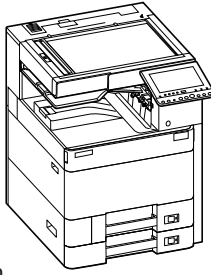
# **FAX System 12**



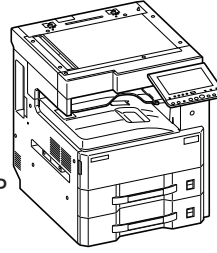
**A**

Color MFP  
25/25ppm,32/32ppm,  
35/35ppm,40/40ppm,  
50/50ppm,60/55ppm

Black & White MFP  
40ppm,50ppm,60ppm

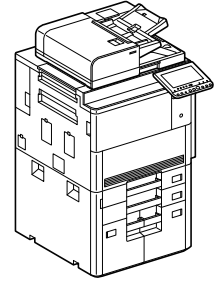
**B**

Black & White MFP  
30ppm,32ppm,  
35ppm,40ppm

**C**

Color MFP  
70/65ppm,80/70ppm

Black & White MFP  
70ppm,80ppm

**English**

A different procedure is required depending on the product which is installed with this unit. Each procedure is described in the following pages.

For installation with a MFP(A), see Page 1 to Page 4.

For installation with a MFP(B), see Page 5 to Page 8.

For installation with a MFP(C), see Page 9 to Page 12.

**Français**

Une procédure différente est requise selon le produit qui est installé avec cette unité. Chaque procédure est décrite dans les pages suivantes.

Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(A), voir Page 1 à Page 4.

Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(B), voir Page 5 à Page 8.

Pour l'installation avec une imprimante multifonction(C), voir Page 9 à Page 12.

**Español**

El procedimiento es diferente según el producto que se instale con esta unidad. En las siguientes páginas, se describe cada procedimiento.

Para la instalación con un MFP(A), consulte las páginas de la 1 a la 4.

Para la instalación con un MFP(B), consulte las páginas de la 5 a la 8.

Para la instalación con un MFP(C), consulte las páginas de la 9 a la 12.

**Deutsch**

Je nach verwendetem Modell ist eine andere Vorgehensweise zur Installation dieses Teils erforderlich. Die unterschiedlichen Vorgehensweisen werden auf den folgenden Seiten erläutert.

Bei Installation an einem MFP(A) siehe Seiten 1 bis 4.

Bei Installation an einem MFP(B) siehe Seiten 5 bis 8.

Bei Installation an einem MFP(C) siehe Seiten 9 bis 12.

**Italiano**

Si richiede una procedura diversa in funzione del prodotto su cui è installata l'unità. Le singole procedure sono descritte nelle pagine seguenti.

Per l'installazione con un MFP(A), vedere le pagine da 1 a 4.

Per l'installazione con un MFP(B), vedere le pagine da 5 a 8.

Per l'installazione con un MFP(C), vedere le pagine da 9 a 12.

**简体中文**

根据安装对象, 安装步骤略有不同。各个步骤记载在下面的页面。

安装到 MFP(A) 上时, 请参见 P1-P4。

安装到 MFP(B) 上时, 请参见 P5-P8。

安装到 MFP(C) 上时, 请参见 P9-P12。

**한국어**

이 장치에 설치되는 제품에 따라 절차가 다릅니다. 다음 페이지에서 각 절차를 설명합니다.

MFP(A) 에 설치하는 경우 1 페이지 ~4 페이지를 참조하십시오.

MFP(B) 에 설치하는 경우 5 페이지 ~8 페이지를 참조하십시오.

MFP(C) 에 설치하는 경우 9 페이지 ~12 페이지를 참조하십시오.

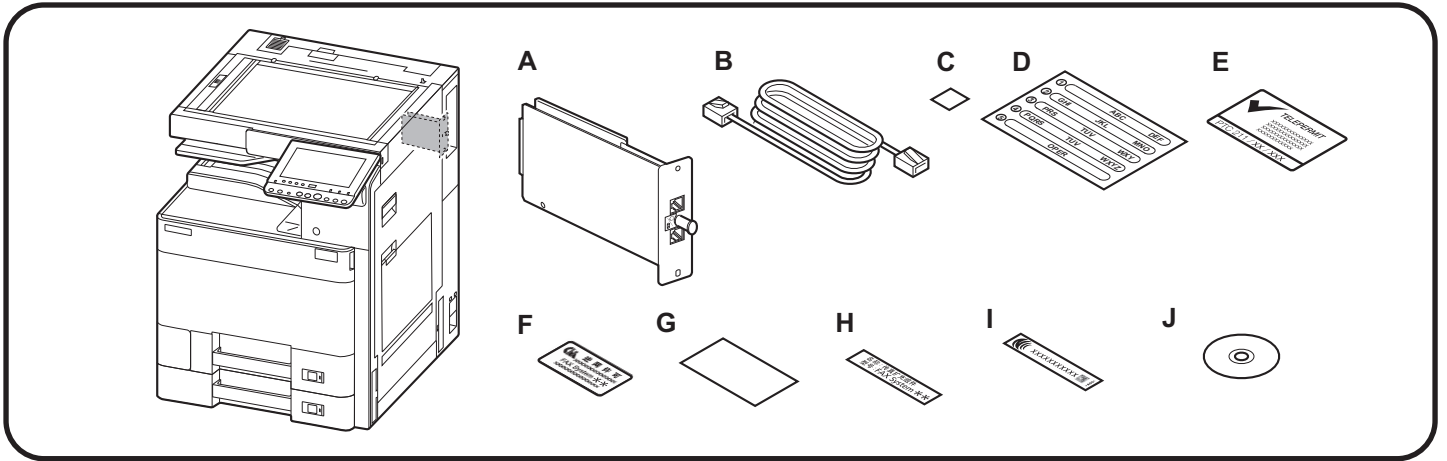
**日本語**

装着する対象によって、取付手順は異なります。それぞれ、以下のページに記載しています。

MFP(A) に設置する場合; 1 ページ ~ 4 ページ

MFP(B) に設置する場合; 5 ページ ~ 8 ページ

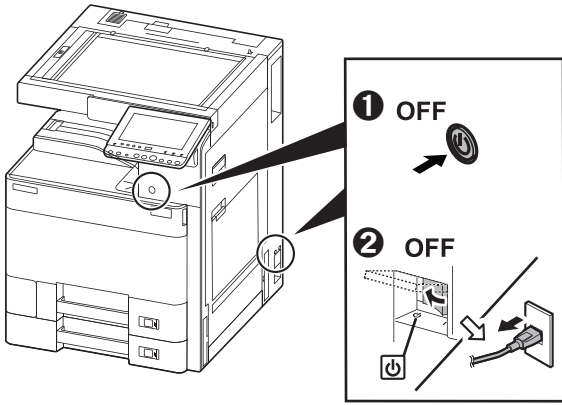
MFP(C) に設置する場合; 9 ページ ~ 12 ページ



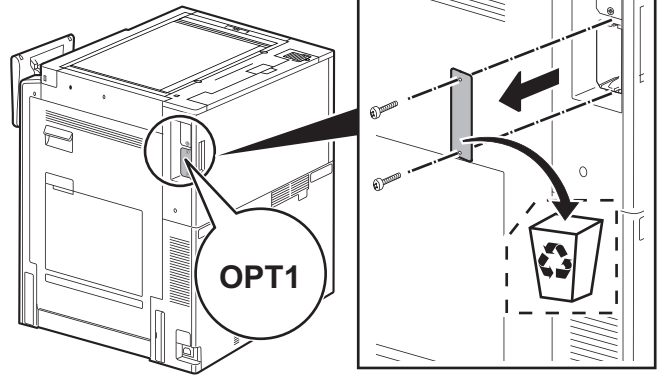
|          | 100V  | 120V                            | 230V   | 240V                      | 110V   | 220V  | 220-240V       |
|----------|-------|---------------------------------|--------|---------------------------|--------|-------|----------------|
|          | Japan | North America/<br>Latin America | Europe | Australia/<br>New Zealand | Taiwan | China | Asia/<br>Korea |
| <b>A</b> | 1     | 1                               | 1      | 1                         | 1      | 1     | 1              |
| <b>B</b> | 1     | 1                               | -      | 1                         | -      | 1     | -              |
| <b>C</b> | 1     | 1                               | 1      | 1                         | 1      | 1     | 1              |
| <b>D</b> | -     | 1                               | 1      | 1                         | 1      | 1     | 1              |
| <b>E</b> | -     | -                               | -      | 1                         | -      | -     | -              |
| <b>F</b> | -     | -                               | -      | -                         | -      | 1     | -              |
| <b>G</b> | -     | -                               | -      | -                         | -      | 1     | -              |
| <b>H</b> | -     | -                               | -      | -                         | -      | 1     | -              |
| <b>I</b> | -     | -                               | -      | -                         | 1      | -     | -              |
| <b>J</b> | -     | -                               | -      | -                         | -      | 1     | -              |

A

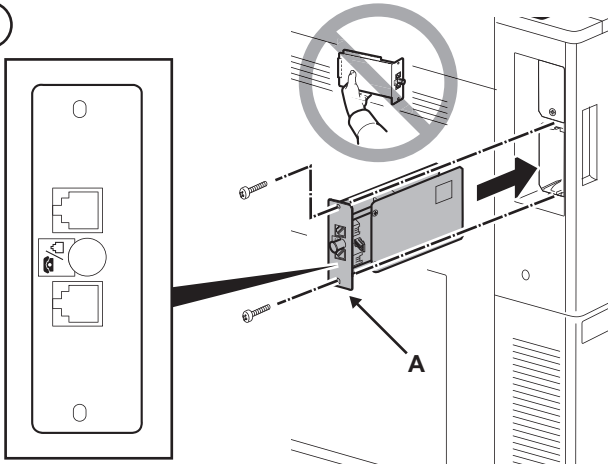
①



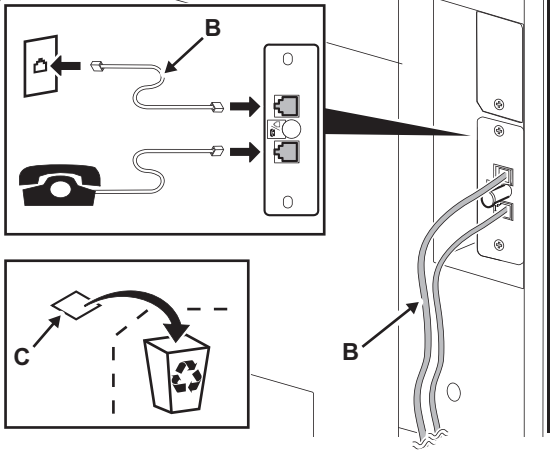
②



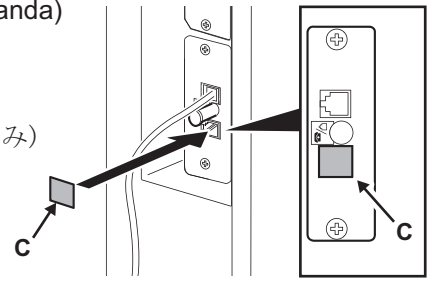
③



④

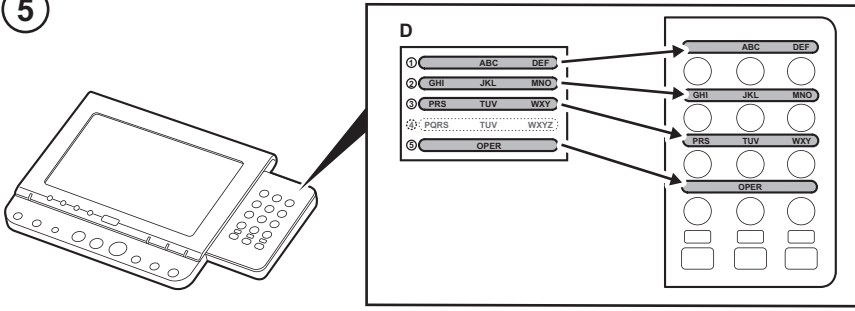


- ① (ENG) (For New Zealand model)
- ② (FR) (Modèle pour la Nouvelle-Zélande)
- ③ (ES) (Para el modelo Nuevo Zelandés)
- ④ (DE) (Für Neuseeland-Modell)
- ⑤ (IT) (Per il modello Nuova Zelanda)
- ⑥ (CN) (仅适用于新西兰型号)
- ⑦ (KO) (뉴질랜드 사양만)
- ⑧ (JP) (ニュージーランド仕様のみ)



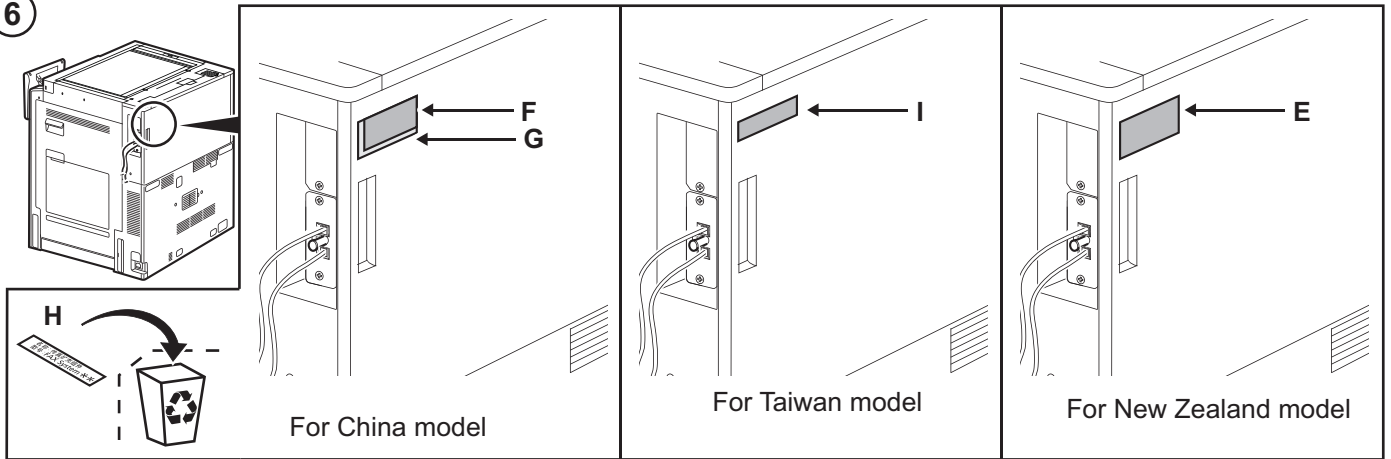


5



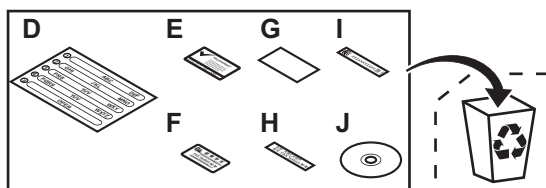
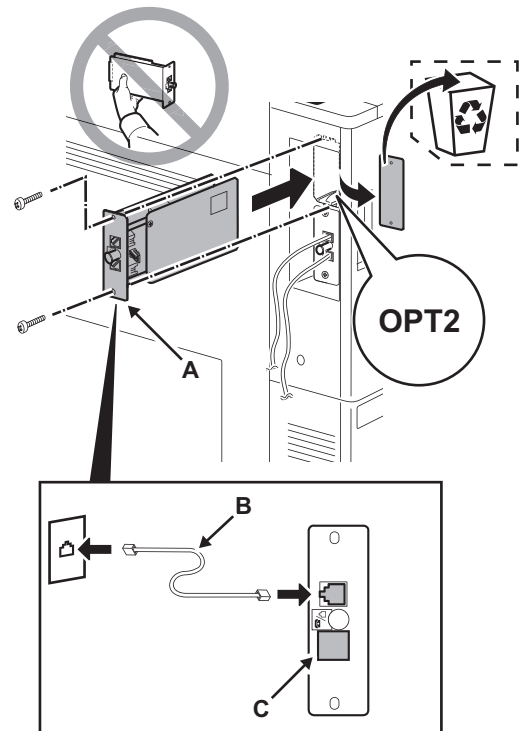
- ENG (Only when NK-7110/NK-7100 is installed) (Excluding 100 V models)
- FR (Uniquement lors de l'installation de NK-7110/NK-7100) (Sauf sur les modèles 100 V)
- ES (Solo si está instalada la unidad NK-7110/NK-7100) (A excepción de los modelos de 100 V)
- DE (Nur wenn NK-7110/NK-7100 installiert ist) (Ausgenommen 100-V-Modelle)
- IT (Solo quando è installato NK-7110/NK-7100) (Esclusi i modelli da 100 V)
- CN (当设置 NK-7110/NK-7100 时) (100V 规格以外)
- KO (NK-7110/NK-7100 이 설치된 경우만) (100V 사양 이외)
- JP (NK-7110/NK-7100 を設置している場合のみ) (100V仕様以外)

6



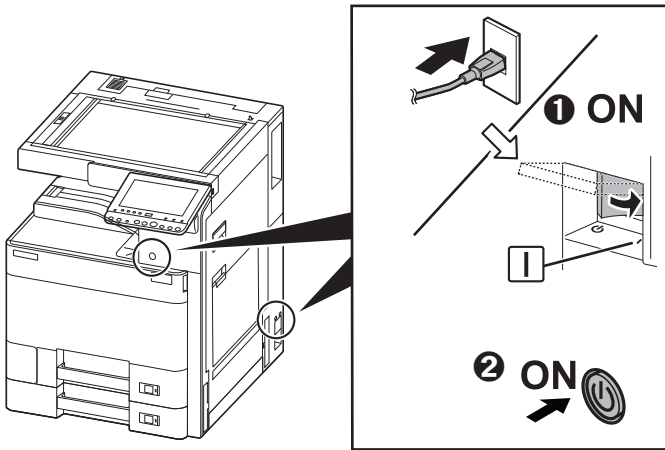
7

- ENG (When installing the Multiport)
- FR (En cas d'installation de la deuxième ligne de fax)
- ES (Al instalar la segunda línea de fax)
- DE (Wenn Sie eine zweite Fax-Karte installieren)
- IT (Quando si installa la seconda linea Fax)
- CN (安装了多功能端口)
- KO (멀티포트를 설치하는 경우)
- JP (マルチポートを設置する場合)



A

8



9

ENG

**Initialize the FAX circuit board.**

- 1.If the FAX PWBs were installed simultaneously to OPT1 and OPT2 (all Fax PWBs are initialized), perform the maintenance mode U600 to initialize the FAX PWBs.
- 2.If the FAX circuit board has been added to OPT2 (to initialize the FAX circuit board in OPT2)  
Initialize OPT2 by pressing [PORT2], and the [Start] key in this order in the maintenance mode U698 and executing the maintenance mode U600. If [ALL] is selected in U698, both OPT1 and OPT2 are initialized.  
For details, see the service manual.

FR

**Initialiser la carte à circuits FAX.**

- 1.Si les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax ont été installées en même temps que OPT1 et OPT2 (toutes les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax sont initialisées), exécutez le mode maintenance U600 pour initialiser les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax.
- 2.Si la carte à circuits FAX a été ajoutée à l'OPT2 (pour initialiser la carte à circuits FAX dans l'OPT2)  
Initialiser l'OPT2 en appuyant sur [PORT2] et la touche [Départ] dans cet ordre en mode de maintenance U698, et exécuter le mode de maintenance U600. Si [ALL] est sélectionné dans U698, l'OPT1 et l'OPT2 de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

ES

**Inicialice la tarjeta de circuitos FAX.**

- 1.Si se instalaron FAX PWB simultáneamente a OPT1 y OPT2 (se inician todos los FAX PWB), ejecute el modo de mantenimiento U600 para inicializar los FAX PWB.
- 2.Si la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX se agregó a OPT2 (para inicializar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX en OPT2)  
Inicialice el OPT2 presionando [PORT2] y la tecla de [Inicio] en ese orden en el modo de mantenimiento U698 y ejecutando el modo de mantenimiento U600. Si se selecciona [ALL] en U698, se inicializan ambos OPT1 y OPT2. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

DE

**Initialisieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.**

- 1.Falls die FAX-Karten gleichzeitig in OPT1 und OPT2 installiert werden (alle FAX-Karten werden initialisiert), führen Sie den Wartungsmodus U600 aus, um die FAX-Karten zu initialisieren.
- 2.Wenn die FAX-Leiterplatte zu OPT2 hinzugefügt worden ist (um die FAX-Leiterplatte in OPT2 zu initialisieren)  
OPT2 initialisieren. Dazu [PORT2] und die [Start]-Taste im Wartungsmodus U698 in dieser Reihenfolge drücken und den Wartungsmodus U600 ausführen. Wenn [ALL] in U698 gewählt wird, werden OPT1 und OPT2 initialisiert. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

IT

**Inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX.**

- 1.Se sono state installate simultaneamente le schede FAX PWB su OPT1 e OPT2 (tutte le schede FAX PWB sono inizializzate), eseguire il modo manutenzione U600 per inizializzare le schede FAX PWB.
- 2.Se la scheda a circuiti è stata aggiunta all'OPT2 (per inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX nell'OPT2)  
Inizializzare OPT2 premendo [PORT2] e il tasto [Avvio] in questo ordine nel modo di manutenzione U698 ed eseguendo il modo di manutenzione U600. Se viene selezionato [ALL] nel modo U698, entrambi OPT1 e OPT2 sono inizializzati. Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

CN

**传真电路板的初始化**

- 1.当把传真电路板同时安装到 OPT1 和 OPT2 时 (全部的传真电路板初始化), 执行维修保养模式 U600, 初始化传真电路板。
- 2.在 OPT2 上增设时  
(OPT2 的传真电路板初始化)  
只进行 OPT2 初始化时, 在维修保养模式 U698 状态下, 按顺序按下 [PORT2]、[开始]键, 执行维修保养模式 U600。在 U698 状态下设定 [ALL]时, 会使 OPT1 和 OPT2 均初始化。有关详细信息, 请参见维修手册。

KO

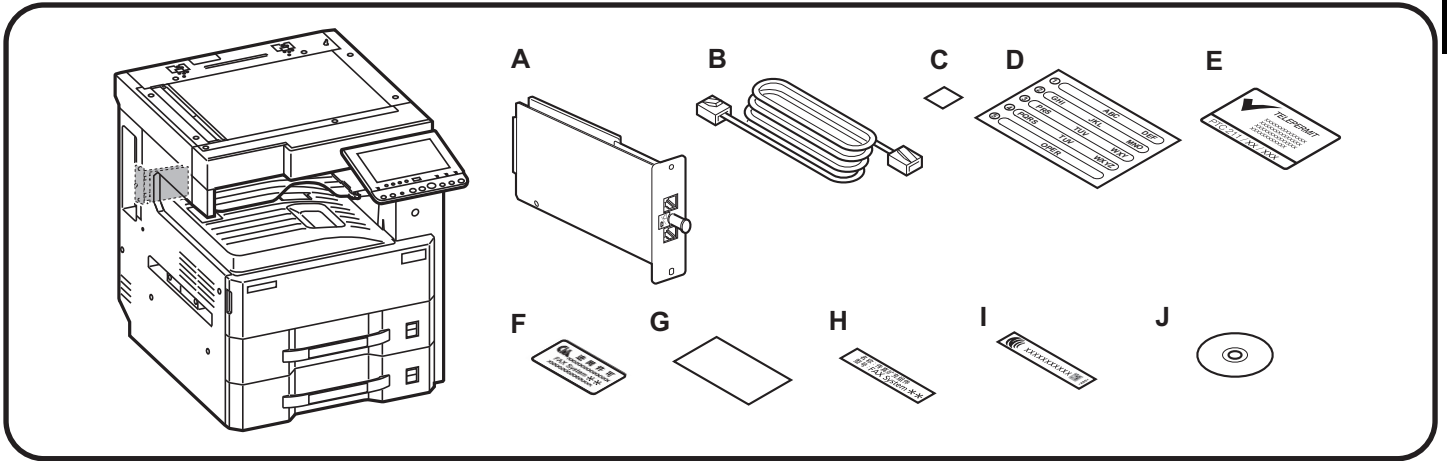
**FAX 회로기판의 초기화**

- 1.OPT1 과 OPT2 에 FAX 회로기판을 동시에 설치한 경우 ( 모든 FAX 회로기판이 초기화됨 ), 메인テナンス 모드 U600 을 수행하여 FAX 회로기판을 초기화합니다 .
- 2.OPT2 에 증설한 경우 (OPT2 의 FAX 기판을 초기화 )  
메인テナンス모드 U698 에서 [PORT2], [시작]키 순으로 누릅니다 .  
메인テナンス 모드 U600 을 실행하고 FAX 회로기판을 초기화합니다 .U698 에서 [ALL]을 설정하면 OPT1 과 OPT2 양쪽을 초기화하기 때문에 주의할 것 .  
상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조할 것 .

JP

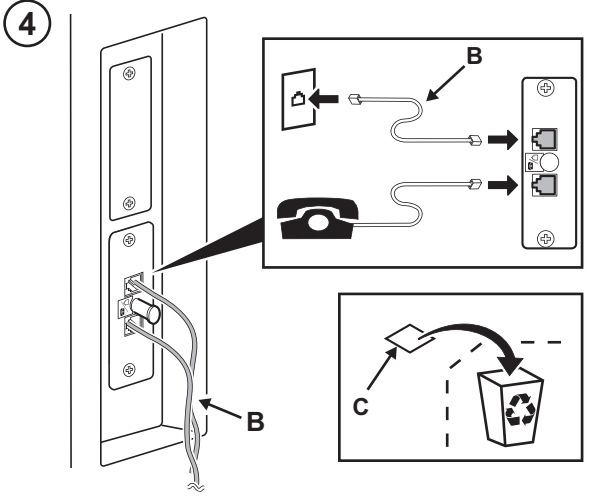
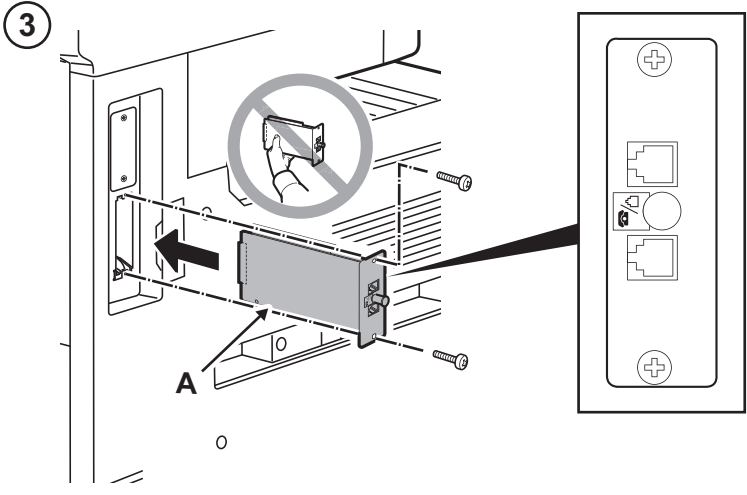
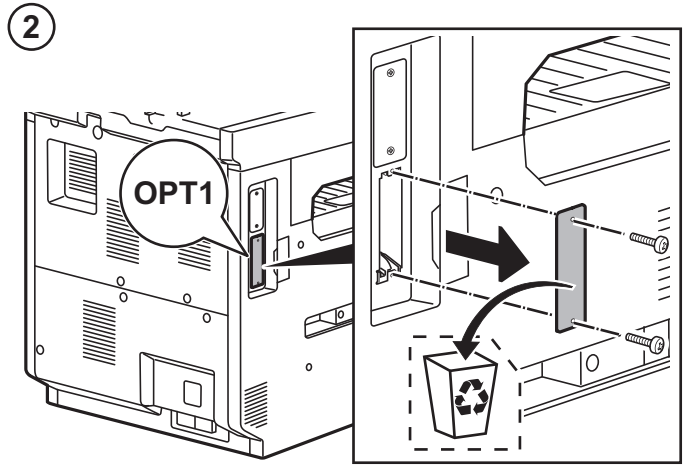
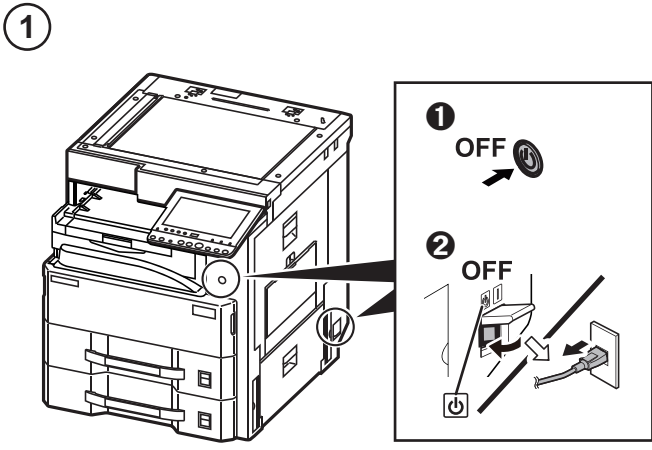
**FAX 基板の初期化**

- 1.OPT1 と OPT2 に FAX 基板を同時に設置した場合 (すべての FAX 基板を初期化) メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。
- 2.OPT2 に増設した場合 (OPT2 の FAX 基板を初期化)  
メンテナンスモード U698 で [PORT2]、[スタート]キーの順に押す。メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。U698 で [ALL] を設定すると OPT1 と OPT2 両方を初期化するので注意すること。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

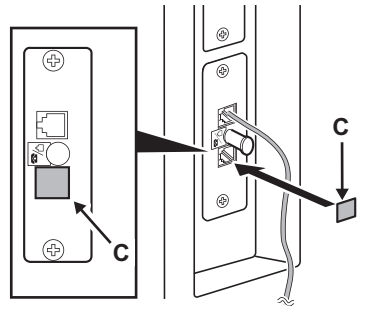


|          | 100V  | 120V                            | 230V   | 240V                      | 110V   | 220V  | 220-240V       |
|----------|-------|---------------------------------|--------|---------------------------|--------|-------|----------------|
|          | Japan | North America/<br>Latin America | Europe | Australia/<br>New Zealand | Taiwan | China | Asia/<br>Korea |
| <b>A</b> | 1     | 1                               | 1      | 1                         | 1      | 1     | 1              |
| <b>B</b> | 1     | 1                               | -      | 1                         | -      | 1     | -              |
| <b>C</b> | 1     | 1                               | 1      | 1                         | 1      | 1     | 1              |
| <b>D</b> | -     | 1                               | 1      | 1                         | 1      | 1     | 1              |
| <b>E</b> | -     | -                               | -      | 1                         | -      | -     | -              |
| <b>F</b> | -     | -                               | -      | -                         | -      | 1     | -              |
| <b>G</b> | -     | -                               | -      | -                         | -      | 1     | -              |
| <b>H</b> | -     | -                               | -      | -                         | -      | 1     | -              |
| <b>I</b> | -     | -                               | -      | -                         | 1      | -     | -              |
| <b>J</b> | -     | -                               | -      | -                         | -      | 1     | -              |

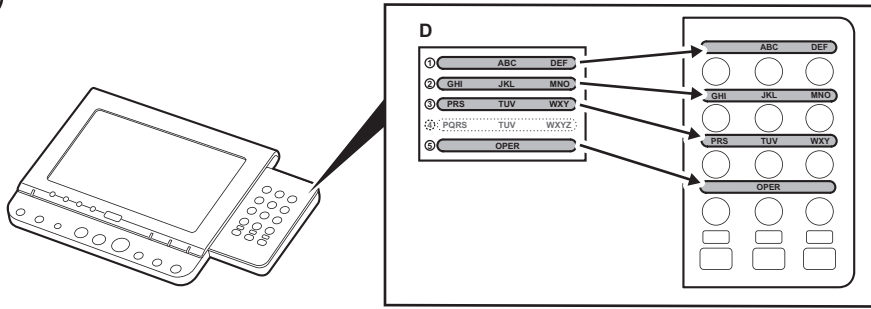
B



- ① ENG (For New Zealand model)
- ② FR (Modèle pour la Nouvelle-Zélande)
- ③ ES (Para el modelo Nuevo Zelandés)
- ④ DE (Für Neuseeland-Modell)
- ⑤ IT (Per il modello Nuova Zelanda)
- ⑥ CN (仅适用于新西兰型号)
- ⑦ KO (뉴질랜드 사양만)
- ⑧ JP (ニュージーランド仕様のみ)



5



ENG (Only when NK-7110/NK-7100 is installed) (Excluding 100 V models)

FR (Uniquement lors de l'installation de NK-7110/NK-7100) (Sauf sur les modèles 100 V)

ES (Solo si está instalada la unidad NK-7110/NK-7100) (A excepción de los modelos de 100 V)

DE (Nur wenn NK-7110/NK-7100 installiert ist) (Ausgenommen 100-V-Modelle)

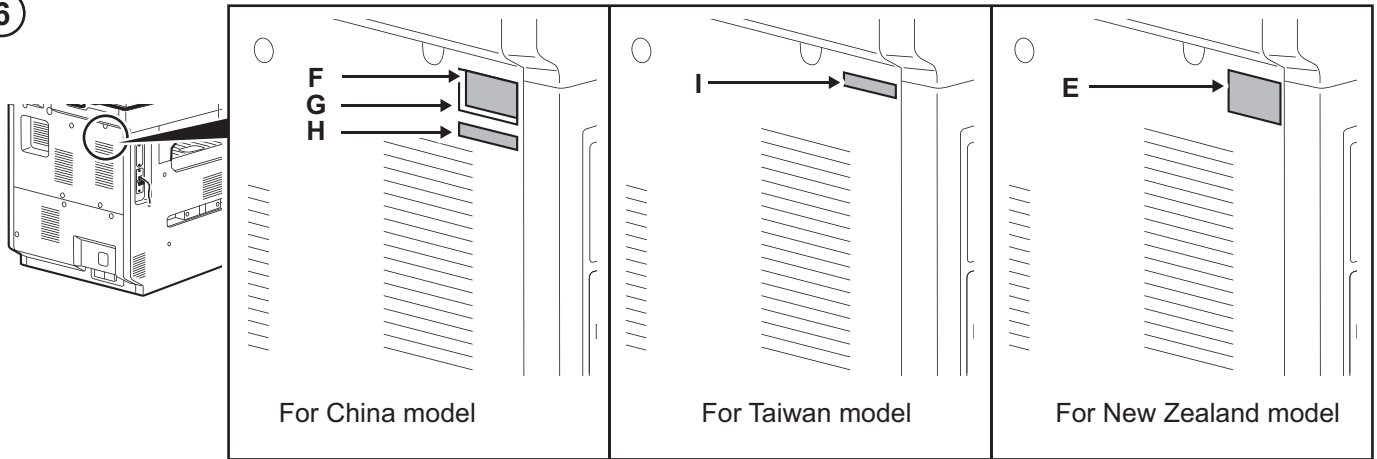
IT (Solo quando è installato NK-7110/NK-7100) (Esclusi i modelli da 100 V)

CN (当设置 NK-7110/NK-7100 时) (100V 规格以外)

KO (NK-7110/NK-7100 이 설치된 경우만) (100V 사양 이외)

JP (NK-7110/NK-7100 を設置している場合のみ) (100V仕様以外)

6



7

ENG (When installing the Multiport)

FR (En cas d'installation de la deuxième ligne de fax)

ES (Al instalar la segunda línea de fax)

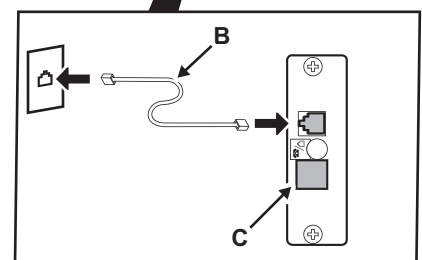
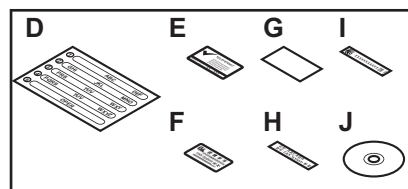
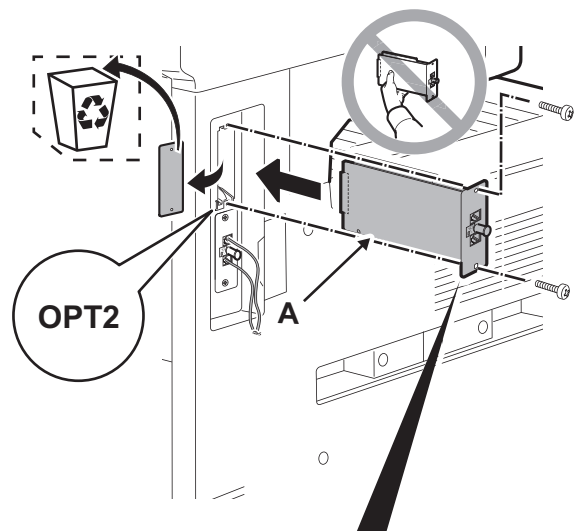
DE (Wenn Sie eine zweite Fax-Karte installieren)

IT (Quando si installa la seconda linea Fax)

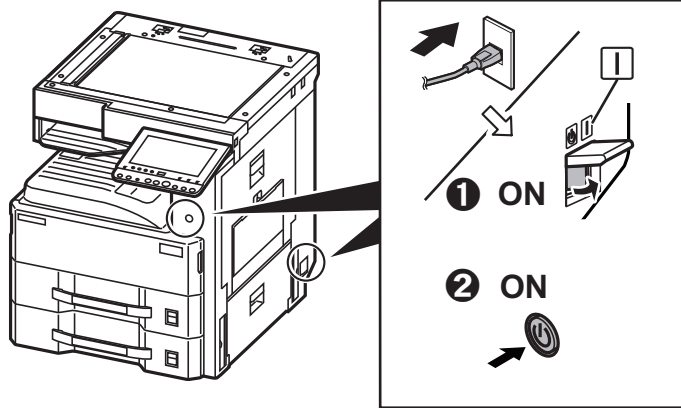
CN (安装了多功能端口)

KO (멀티포트를 설치하는 경우)

JP (マルチポートを設置する場合)



8



B

9

ENG

**Initialize the FAX circuit board.**

- 1.If the FAX PWBs were installed simultaneously to OPT1 and OPT2 (all Fax PWBs are initialized), perform the maintenance mode U600 to initialize the FAX PWBs.
- 2.If the FAX circuit board has been added to OPT2 (to initialize the FAX circuit board in OPT2)  
Initialize OPT2 by pressing [PORT2], and the [Start] key in this order in the maintenance mode U698 and executing the maintenance mode U600. If [ALL] is selected in U698, both OPT1 and OPT2 are initialized.  
For details, see the service manual.

FR

**Initialiser la carte à circuits FAX.**

- 1.Si les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax ont été installées en même temps que OPT1 et OPT2 (toutes les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax sont initialisées), exécutez le mode maintenance U600 pour initialiser les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax.
- 2.Si la carte à circuits FAX a été ajoutée à l'OPT2 (pour initialiser la carte à circuits FAX dans l'OPT2)  
Initialiser l'OPT2 en appuyant sur [PORT2] et la touche [Départ] dans cet ordre en mode de maintenance U698, et exécuter le mode de maintenance U600. Si [ALL] est sélectionné dans U698, l'OPT1 et l'OPT2 de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

ES

**Inicialice la tarjeta de circuitos FAX.**

- 1.Si se instalaron FAX PWB simultáneamente a OPT1 y OPT2 (se inician todos los FAX PWB), ejecute el modo de mantenimiento U600 para inicializar los FAX PWB.
- 2.Si la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX se agregó a OPT2 (para inicializar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX en OPT2)  
Inicialice el OPT2 presionando [PORT2] y la tecla de [Inicio] en ese orden en el modo de mantenimiento U698 y ejecutando el modo de mantenimiento U600. Si se selecciona [ALL] en U698, se inicializan ambos OPT1 y OPT2. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

DE

**Initialisieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.**

- 1.Falls die FAX-Karten gleichzeitig in OPT1 und OPT2 installiert werden (alle FAX-Karten werden initialisiert), führen Sie den Wartungsmodus U600 aus, um die FAX-Karten zu initialisieren.
- 2.Wenn die FAX-Leiterplatte zu OPT2 hinzugefügt worden ist (um die FAX-Leiterplatte in OPT2 zu initialisieren)  
OPT2 initialisieren. Dazu [PORT2] und die [Start]-Taste im Wartungsmodus U698 in dieser Reihenfolge drücken und den Wartungsmodus U600 ausführen. Wenn [ALL] in U698 gewählt wird, werden OPT1 und OPT2 initialisiert. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

IT

**Inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX.**

- 1.Se sono state installate simultaneamente le schede FAX PWB su OPT1 e OPT2 (tutte le schede FAX PWB sono inizializzate), eseguire il modo manutenzione U600 per inizializzare le schede FAX PWB.
- 2.Se la scheda a circuiti è stata aggiunta all'OPT2 (per inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX nell'OPT2)  
Inizializzare OPT2 premendo [PORT2] e il tasto [Avvio] in questo ordine nel modo di manutenzione U698 ed eseguendo il modo di manutenzione U600. Se viene selezionato [ALL] nel modo U698, entrambi OPT1 e OPT2 sono inizializzati. Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

CN

**传真电路板的初始化**

- 1.当把传真电路板同时安装到 OPT1 和 OPT2 时 (全部的传真电路板初始化), 执行维修保养模式 U600, 初始化传真电路板。
- 2.在 OPT2 上增设时  
(OPT2 的传真电路板初始化)  
只进行 OPT2 初始化时, 在维修保养模式 U698 状态下, 按顺序按下 [PORT2]、[开始]键, 执行维修保养模式 U600。在 U698 状态下设定 [ALL]时, 会使 OPT1 和 OPT2 均初始化。有关详细信息, 请参见维修手册。

KO

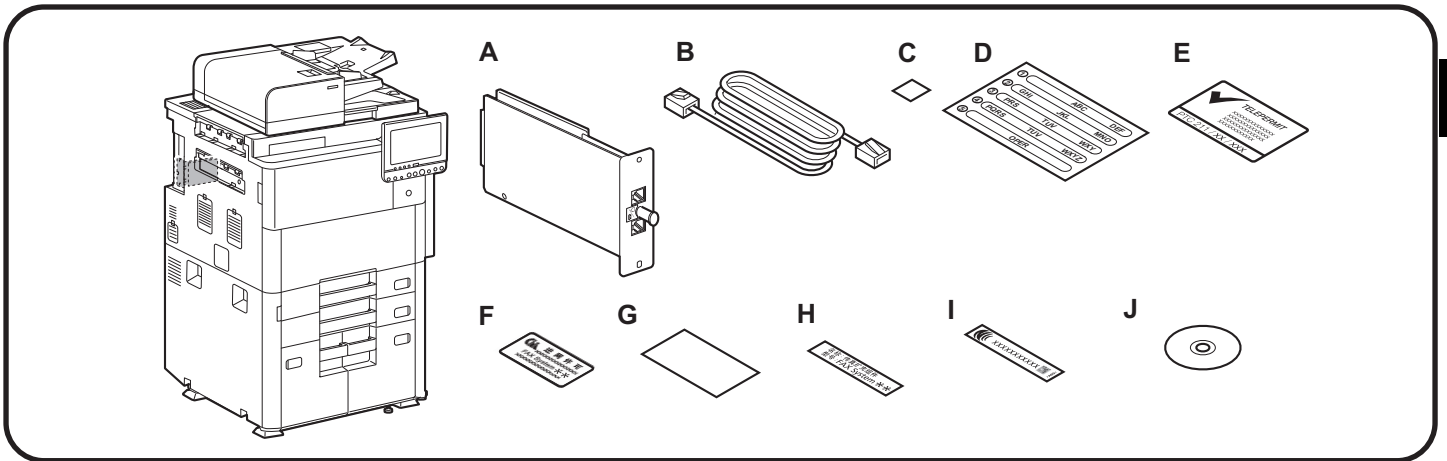
**FAX 회로기판의 초기화**

- 1.OPT1 과 OPT2 에 FAX 회로기판을 동시에 설치한 경우 ( 모든 FAX 회로기판이 초기화됨 ), 메인テナンス 모드 U600 을 수행하여 FAX 회로기판을 초기화합니다 .
- 2.OPT2 에 증설한 경우 (OPT2 의 FAX 기판을 초기화 )  
메인テナンス모드 U698 에서 [PORT2], [시작]키 순으로 누릅니다 .  
메인テナンス 모드 U600 을 실행하고 FAX 회로기판을 초기화합니다 .U698 에서 [ALL]을 설정하면 OPT1 과 OPT2 양쪽을 초기화하기 때문에 주의할 것 .  
상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조할 것 .

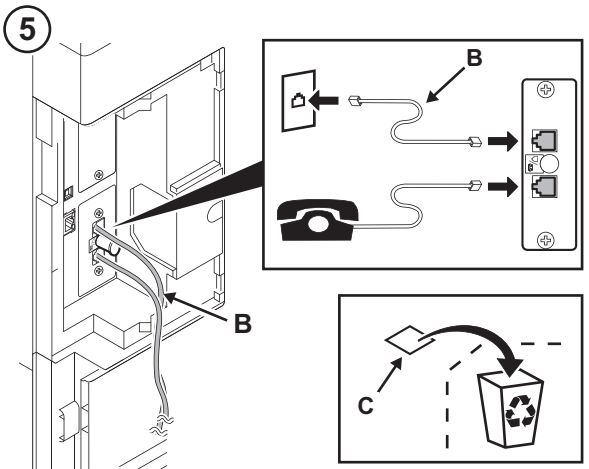
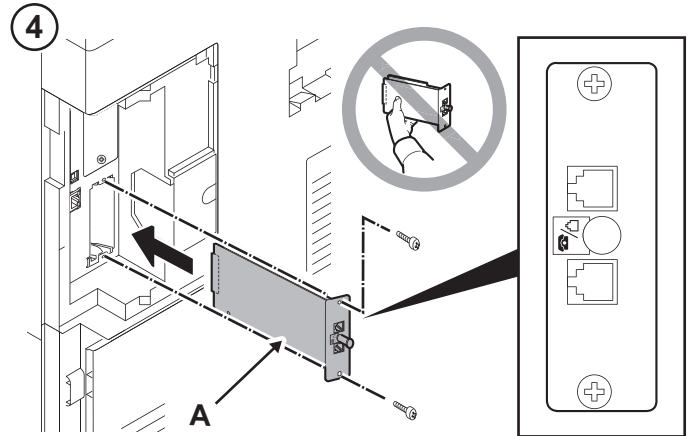
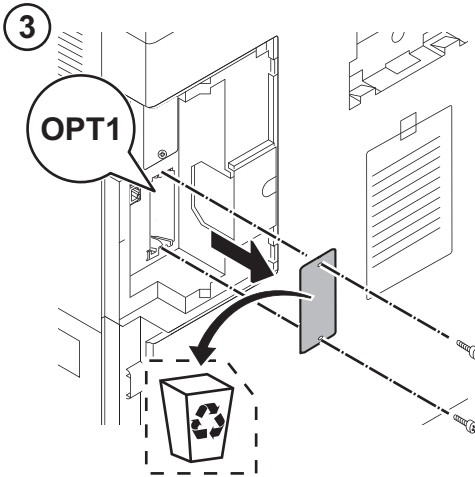
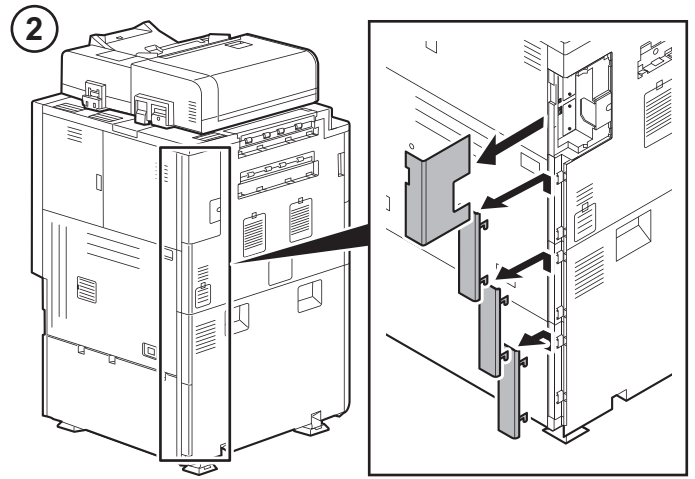
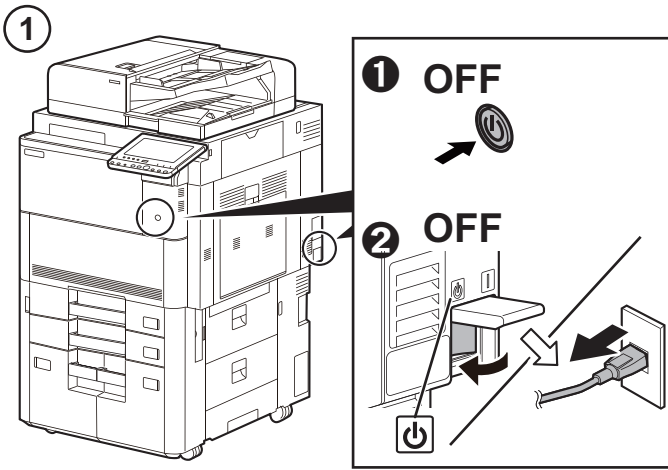
JP

**FAX 基板の初期化**

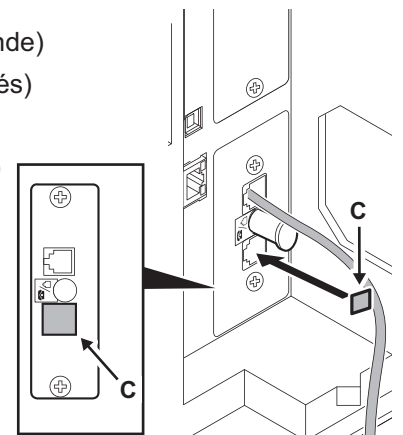
- 1.OPT1 と OPT2 に FAX 基板を同時に設置した場合 (すべての FAX 基板を初期化) メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。
- 2.OPT2 に増設した場合 (OPT2 の FAX 基板を初期化)  
メンテナンスモード U698 で [PORT2]、[スタート]キーの順に押す。メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。U698 で [ALL] を設定すると OPT1 と OPT2 両方を初期化するので注意すること。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。



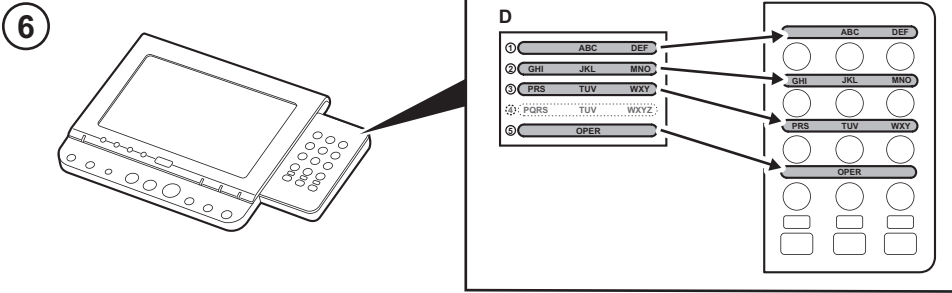
|          | 100V  | 120V                            | 230V   | 240V                      | 110V   | 220V  | 220-240V       |
|----------|-------|---------------------------------|--------|---------------------------|--------|-------|----------------|
|          | Japan | North America/<br>Latin America | Europe | Australia/<br>New Zealand | Taiwan | China | Asia/<br>Korea |
| <b>A</b> | 1     | 1                               | 1      | 1                         | 1      | 1     | 1              |
| <b>B</b> | 1     | 1                               | -      | 1                         | -      | 1     | -              |
| <b>C</b> | 1     | 1                               | 1      | 1                         | 1      | 1     | 1              |
| <b>D</b> | -     | 1                               | 1      | 1                         | 1      | 1     | 1              |
| <b>E</b> | -     | -                               | -      | 1                         | -      | -     | -              |
| <b>F</b> | -     | -                               | -      | -                         | -      | 1     | -              |
| <b>G</b> | -     | -                               | -      | -                         | -      | 1     | -              |
| <b>H</b> | -     | -                               | -      | -                         | -      | 1     | -              |
| <b>I</b> | -     | -                               | -      | -                         | 1      | -     | -              |
| <b>J</b> | -     | -                               | -      | -                         | -      | 1     | -              |



- ① ENG (For New Zealand model)
- ② FR (Modèle pour la Nouvelle-Zélande)
- ③ ES (Para el modelo Nuevo Zelandés)
- ④ DE (Für Neuseeland-Modell)
- ⑤ IT (Per il modello Nuova Zelanda)
- ⑥ CN (仅适用于新西兰型号)
- ⑦ KO (뉴질랜드 사양만)
- ⑧ JP (ニュージーランド仕様のみ)







ENG (Only when NK-7110/NK-7100 is installed) (Excluding 100 V models)

FR (Uniquement lors de l'installation de NK-7110/NK-7100) (Sauf sur les modèles 100 V)

ES (Solo si está instalada la unidad NK-7110/NK-7100) (A excepción de los modelos de 100 V)

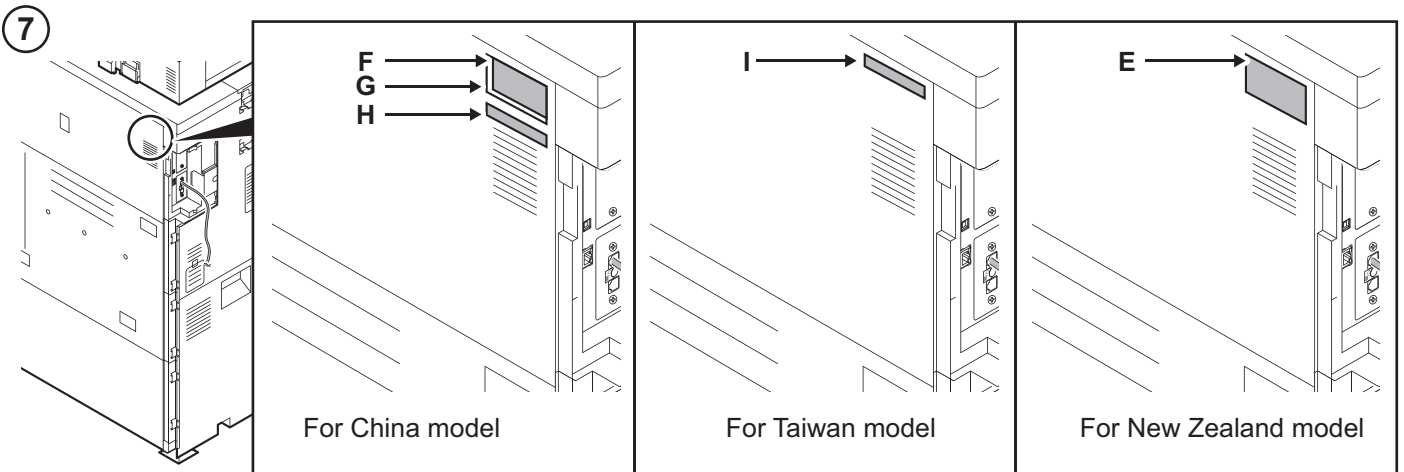
DE (Nur wenn NK-7110/NK-7100 installiert ist) (Ausgenommen 100-V-Modelle)

IT (Solo quando è installato NK-7110/NK-7100) (Esclusi i modelli da 100 V)

CN (当设置 NK-7110/NK-7100 时) (100V 规格以外)

KO (NK-7110/NK-7100 이 설치된 경우만) (100V 사양 이외)

JP (NK-7110/NK-7100 を設置している場合のみ) (100V仕様以外)



8 ENG (When installing the Multiport)

FR (En cas d'installation de la deuxième ligne de fax)

ES (Al instalar la segunda línea de fax)

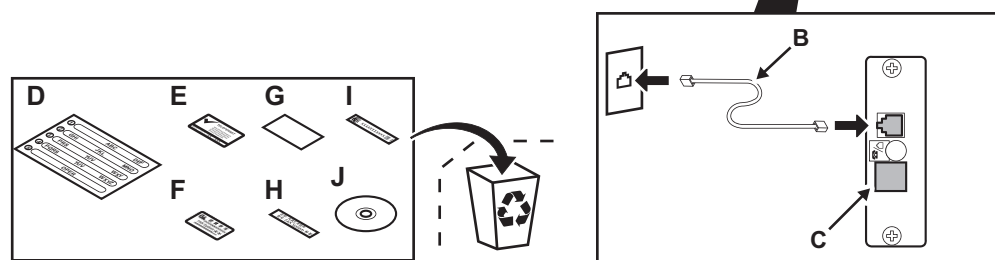
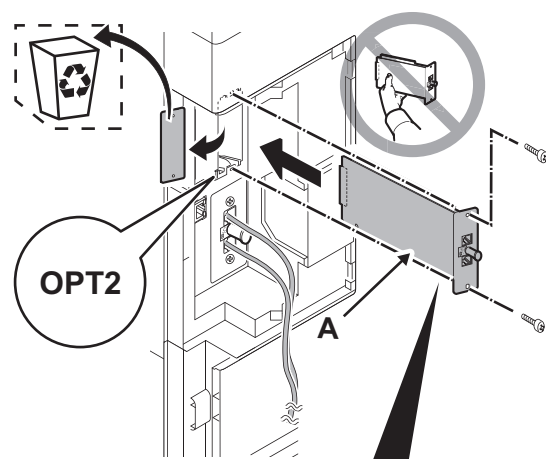
DE (Wenn Sie eine zweite Fax-Karte installieren)

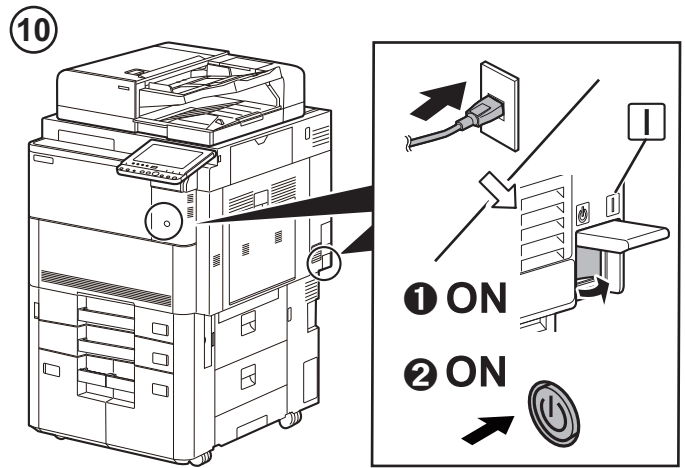
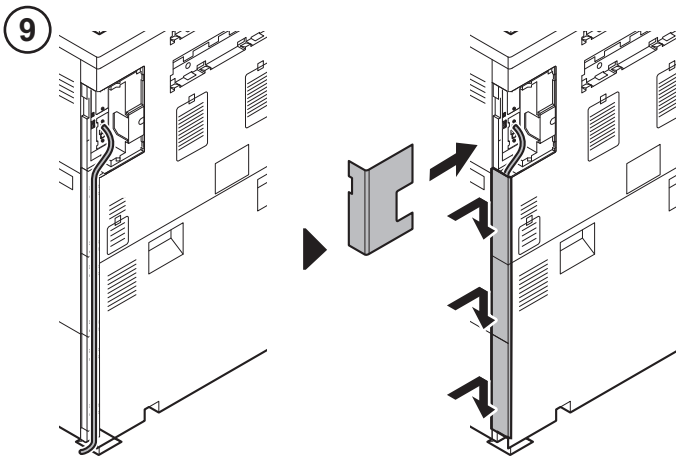
IT (Quando si installa la seconda linea Fax)

CN (安装了多功能端口)

KO (멀티포트를 설치하는 경우)

JP (マルチポートを設置する場合)





11

ENG

**Initialize the FAX circuit board.**

- 1.If the FAX PWBs were installed simultaneously to OPT1 and OPT2 (all Fax PWBs are initialized), perform the maintenance mode U600 to initialize the FAX PWBs.
- 2.If the FAX circuit board has been added to OPT2 (to initialize the FAX circuit board in OPT2)  
Initialize OPT2 by pressing [PORT2], and the [Start] key in this order in the maintenance mode U698 and executing the maintenance mode U600. If [ALL] is selected in U698, both OPT1 and OPT2 are initialized.  
For details, see the service manual.

FR

**Initialiser la carte à circuits FAX.**

- 1.Si les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax ont été installées en même temps que OPT1 et OPT2 (toutes les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax sont initialisées), exécutez le mode maintenance U600 pour initialiser les cartes de circuit imprimé du fax.
- 2.Si la carte à circuits FAX a été ajoutée à l'OPT2 (pour initialiser la carte à circuits FAX dans l'OPT2)  
Initialiser l'OPT2 en appuyant sur [PORT2] et la touche [Départ] dans cet ordre en mode de maintenance U698, et exécuter le mode de maintenance U600. Si [ALL] est sélectionné dans U698, l'OPT1 et l'OPT2 de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

ES

**Inicialice la tarjeta de circuitos FAX.**

- 1.Si se instalaron FAX PWB simultáneamente a OPT1 y OPT2 (se inician todos los FAX PWB), ejecute el modo de mantenimiento U600 para inicializar los FAX PWB.
- 2.Si la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX se agregó a OPT2 (para inicializar la tarjeta de circuitos de FAX en OPT2)  
Inicialice el OPT2 presionando [PORT2] y la tecla de [Inicio] en ese orden en el modo de mantenimiento U698 y ejecutando el modo de mantenimiento U600. Si se selecciona [ALL] en U698, se inicializan ambos OPT1 y OPT2. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

DE

**Initialisieren der FAX-Leiterplatte.**

- 1.Falls die FAX-Karten gleichzeitig in OPT1 und OPT2 installiert werden (alle FAX-Karten werden initialisiert), führen Sie den Wartungsmodus U600 aus, um die FAX-Karten zu initialisieren.
- 2.Wenn die FAX-Leiterplatte zu OPT2 hinzugefügt worden ist (um die FAX-Leiterplatte in OPT2 zu initialisieren)  
OPT2 initialisieren. Dazu [PORT2] und die [Start]-Taste im Wartungsmodus U698 in dieser Reihenfolge drücken und den Wartungsmodus U600 ausführen. Wenn [ALL] in U698 gewählt wird, werden OPT1 und OPT2 initialisiert. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

IT

**Inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX.**

- 1.Se sono state installate simultaneamente le schede FAX PWB su OPT1 e OPT2 (tutte le schede FAX PWB sono inizializzate), eseguire il modo manutenzione U600 per inizializzare le schede FAX PWB.
- 2.Se la scheda a circuiti è stata aggiunta all'OPT2 (per inizializzare la scheda a circuiti FAX nell'OPT2)  
Inizializzare OPT2 premendo [PORT2] e il tasto [Avvio] in questo ordine nel modo di manutenzione U698 ed eseguendo il modo di manutenzione U600. Se viene selezionato [ALL] nel modo U698, entrambi OPT1 e OPT2 sono inizializzati. Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.

CN

**传真电路板的初始化**

- 1.当把传真电路板同时安装到 OPT1 和 OPT2 时 (全部的传真电路板初始化), 执行维修保养模式 U600, 初始化传真电路板。
- 2.在 OPT2 上增设时 (OPT2 的传真电路板初始化)  
[进行 OPT2 初始化时, 在维修保养模式 U698 状态下, 按顺序按下 [PORT2]、[开始]键, 执行维修保养模式 U600。在 U698 状态下设定 [ALL]时, 会使 OPT1 和 OPT2 均初始化。有关详细信息, 请参见维修手册。

KO

**FAX 회로기판의 초기화**

- 1.OPT1 과 OPT2 에 FAX 회로기판을 동시에 설치한 경우 (모든 FAX 회로기판이 초기화됨), 메인テナンス 모드 U600 을 수행하여 FAX 회로기판을 초기화합니다.
- 2.OPT2 에 증설한 경우 (OPT2 의 FAX 기판을 초기화)  
메인テナンス 모드 U698 에서 [PORT2], [시작]키 순으로 누릅니다.  
메인テナンス 모드 U600 을 실행하고 FAX 회로기판을 초기화합니다. U698 에서 [ALL]을 설정하면 OPT1 과 OPT2 양쪽을 초기화하기 때문에 주의할 것. 상세는 서비스 매뉴얼을 참조할 것.

JP

**FAX 基板の初期化**

- 1.OPT1 と OPT2 に FAX 基板を同時に設置した場合 (すべての FAX 基板を初期化) メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。
- 2.OPT2 に増設した場合 (OPT2 の FAX 基板を初期化)  
メンテナンスモード U698 で [PORT2]、[スタート]キーの順に押す。メンテナンスモード U600 を実行し、FAX 基板を初期化する。U698 で [ALL] を設定すると OPT1 と OPT2 両方を初期化するので注意すること。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

**KYOCERA Document Solutions America, Inc.****Headquarters**

225 Sand Road,  
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008, USA  
Phone: +1-973-808-8444  
Fax: +1-973-882-6000

**Latin America**

8240 NW 52nd Terrace Dawson Building, Suite 301  
Miami, Florida 33166, USA  
Phone: +1-305-421-6640  
Fax: +1-305-421-6666

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Canada, Ltd.**

6120 Kestrel Rd., Mississauga, ON L5T 1S8,  
Canada  
Phone: +1-905-670-4425  
Fax: +1-905-670-8116

**KYOCERA Document Solutions****Mexico, S.A. de C.V.**

Calle Arquimedes No. 130, 4 Piso, Colonia Polanco  
Chapultepec, Delegacion Miguel Hidalgo,  
Distrito Federal, C.P. 11560, México  
Phone: +52-555-383-2741  
Fax: +52-555-383-7804

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Brazil, Ltda.**

Alameda África, 545, Pólo Empresarial Consbrás,  
Tamboré, Santana de Parnaíba, State of São Paulo, CEP  
06543-306, Brazil  
Phone: +55-11-2424-5353  
Fax: +55-11-2424-5304

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Chile SpA**

Jose Ananias 505, Macul. Santiago, Chile  
Phone: +562-2350-7000  
Fax: +562-2350-7150

**KYOCERA Document Solutions****Australia Pty. Ltd.**

Level 3, 6-10 Talavera Road North Ryde N.S.W, 2113,  
Australia  
Phone: +61-2-9888-9999  
Fax: +61-2-9888-9588

**KYOCERA Document Solutions****New Zealand Ltd.**

Ground Floor, 19 Byron Avenue, Takapuna, Auckland,  
New Zealand  
Phone: +64-9-415-4517  
Fax: +64-9-415-4597

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Asia Limited**

13/F., Mita Centre, 552-566, Castle Peak Road Tsuen Wan,  
New Territories, Hong Kong  
Phone: +852-2496-5678  
Fax: +852-2610-2063

**KYOCERA Document Solutions****(China) Corporation**

8F, No. 288 Nanjing Road West, Huangpu District,  
Shanghai, 200003, China  
Phone: +86-21-5301-1777  
Fax: +86-21-5302-8300

**KYOCERA Document Solutions****(Thailand) Corp., Ltd.**

335 Ratchadapisek Road, Wongsawang, Bangsue,  
Bangkok 10800,  
Thailand  
Phone: +66-2-586-0333  
Fax: +66-2-586-0278

**KYOCERA Document Solutions****Singapore Pte. Ltd.**

12 Tai Seng Street #04-01A,  
Luxasia Building, Singapore 534118  
Phone: +65-6741-8733  
Fax: +65-6748-3788

**KYOCERA Document Solutions****Hong Kong Limited**

16/F., Mita Centre, 552-566, Castle Peak Road Tsuen Wan,  
New Territories, Hong Kong  
Phone: +852-3582-4000  
Fax: +852-3185-1399

**KYOCERA Document Solutions****Taiwan Corporation**

6F., No.37, Sec. 3, Minquan E. Rd.,  
Zhongshan Dist., Taipei 104, Taiwan R.O.C.  
Phone: +886-2-2507-6709  
Fax: +886-2-2507-8432

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Korea Co., Ltd.**

#10F Daewoo Foundation Bldg 18, Toegyero, Jung-gu,  
Seoul, Korea  
Phone: +822-6933-4050  
Fax: +822-747-0084

**KYOCERA Document Solutions****India Private Limited**

Second Floor, Centrum Plaza, Golf Course Road,  
Sector-53, Gurgaon, Haryana 122002, India  
Phone: +91-0124-4671000  
Fax: +91-0124-4671001

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Europe B.V.**

Bloemlaan 4, 2132 NP Hoofddorp,  
The Netherlands  
Phone: +31-20-654-0000  
Fax: +31-20-653-1256

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Nederland B.V.**

Beechavenue 25, 1119 RA Schiphol-Rijk,  
The Netherlands  
Phone: +31-20-5877200  
Fax: +31-20-5877260

**KYOCERA Document Solutions (U.K.) Limited**

Eldon Court, 75-77 London Road,  
Reading, Berkshire RG1 5BS,  
United Kingdom  
Phone: +44-118-931-1500  
Fax: +44-118-931-1108

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Italia S.p.A.**

Via Monfalcone 15, 20132, Milano, Italy,  
Phone: +39-02-921791  
Fax: +39-02-92179-600

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Belgium N.V.**

Sint-Martinusweg 199-201 1930 Zaventem,  
Belgium  
Phone: +32-2-7209270  
Fax: +32-2-7208748

**KYOCERA Document Solutions France S.A.S.**

Espace Technologique de St Aubin  
Route de l'Orme 91195 Gif-sur-Yvette CEDEX,  
France  
Phone: +33-1-69852600  
Fax: +33-1-69853409

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Espana, S.A.**

Edificio Kyocera, Avda. de Manacor No.2,  
28290 Las Matas (Madrid), Spain  
Phone: +34-91-6318392  
Fax: +34-91-6318219

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Finland Oy**

Atomitie 5C, 00370 Helsinki,  
Finland  
Phone: +358-9-47805200  
Fax: +358-9-47805212

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Europe B.V., Amsterdam (NL) Zürich Branch**

Hohlstrasse 614, 8048 Zürich,  
Switzerland  
Phone: +41-44-9084949  
Fax: +41-44-9084950

**KYOCERA Bilgitas Document Solutions Turkey A.S.**

Altunizade Mah. Prof. Fahrettin Kerim Gökay Cad. No:45  
34662 ÜSKÜDAR ISTANBUL, TURKEY  
Phone: +90-216-339-0020  
Fax: +90-216-339-0070

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Deutschland GmbH**

Otto-Hahn-Strasse 12, 40670 Meerbusch,  
Germany  
Phone: +49-2159-9180  
Fax: +49-2159-918100

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Austria GmbH**

Wienerbergstraße 11, Turm A, 18. OG, 1100 Wien,  
Austria  
Phone: +43-1-863380  
Fax: +43-1-86338-400

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Nordic AB**

Esbogatan 16B 164 75 Kista, Sweden  
Phone: +46-8-546-550-00  
Fax: +46-8-546-550-10

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Norge Nuf**

Olaf Helsetsv. 6, 0619 Oslo, Norway  
Phone: +47-22-62-73-00  
Fax: +47-22-62-72-00

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Danmark A/S**

Ejby Industrivej 60, DK-2600 Glostrup,  
Denmark  
Phone: +45-70223880  
Fax: +45-45765850

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Portugal Lda.**

Rua do Centro Cultural, 41 (Alvalade) 1700-106 Lisboa,  
Portugal  
Phone: +351-21-843-6780  
Fax: +351-21-849-3312

**KYOCERA Document Solutions South Africa (Pty) Ltd.**

KYOCERA House, Hertford Office Park,  
90 Bekker Road (Cnr. Allandale), Midrand, South Africa  
Phone: +27-11-540-2600  
Fax: +27-11-466-3050

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Russia LLC.**

Building 2, 51/4, Schepkina St., 129110, Moscow,  
Russia  
Phone: +7(495)741-0004  
Fax: +7(495)741-0018

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Middle East**

Dubai Internet City, Bldg. 17,  
Office 157 P.O. Box 500817, Dubai,  
United Arab Emirates  
Phone: +971-04-433-0412

**KYOCERA Document Solutions Inc.**

2-28, 1-chome, Tamatsukuri, Chuo-ku  
Osaka 540-8585, Japan  
Phone: +81-6-6764-3555  
<http://www.kyoceradocumentsolutions.com>